W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 5400 Class No. 9942

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

EULOGIUM

(HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS):

CHRONICON AB ORBE CONDITO USQUE AD ANNUM DOMINI M.CCC.LXVI.,

A MONACHO QUODAM MALMESBURIENSI EXARATUM.

ACCEDUNT CONTINUATIONES DUÆ, QUARUM UNA AD ANNUM M.CCCC.XIII. ALTERA AD ANNUM M.CCCC.XC. PERDUCTA EST.

EDITED

BY

FRANK SCOTT HAYDON, B.A.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

CROYDON FREE PUBLIC LIBRARY CENTRAL

VOL. III.

LONDON:
LONGMAN, GREEN, LONGMAN, ROBERTS, AND GREEN.

1863.

42

L R5409
L 1948

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL LS
CLASS
L65
ACC.
01814 6954

[909]

Printed by
Eyre and Spottiswoode, Her Majesty's Printers,
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

PREFACE.

THE present Volume contains the concluding portion of the Fifth Book of the Eulogium Historiarum, commencing, to use the words of the author, with the "History of the Saxon Kings." The Genealogy of the Kings of England, the Monastic Chronology, and the Index of the author to his work are appended, followed by the Continuation down to A.D. 1413, which completes the present edition. The Manuscripts of the Fourth and Fifth Books having been already described in the Prefaces to the preceding Volumes, it remains only to give an account of the authorities followed in that portion of the work here printed.

The transition from the conclusion of the Historia of Geoffrey of Monmouth to the account of the Saxons is managed by an identification, overtly stated, of Ini the nephew of Cadwallader with Ina of Wessex, in cap. LXXIX. This Ini or Yne is stated to have been the son of Kenten, a person of British extraction, and of a mother of Saxon origin. The genealogy of Kenten (a name which appears to be a corruption of Centwine the king of Wessex third in order before Ina), is not given.

After a very brief recapitulation of the dates and other particulars of the deaths of S. Oswald and Oswine of Deira, and a mention of the victories of Offa of Mercia, the whole of which recalls the corresponding portion of the French Chronicle of Brut we

come in cap. LXXX., to a brief account of the quarrel between Osberht of Northumbria and Buern Butsecarl, which is placed by our author in the reign of Offa. This story is found also in the Estoire des Engles of Geoffrey Gaimar, the Chronicle attributed to John of Brompton, and the French Brut. The account in the Eulogium, though more concise in detail, bears a closer resemblance to that in the latter work than to those in the two former.

It is probable that the succeeding portion of the Eulogium,[1] from cap. LXXXI. to cap. LXXXIV., both included, have been taken from the same source. In the latter part of cap. LXXXIV. there is a reference to the "Gesta Britonum," and both there and in the early part of cap. LXXXV., traces of the phraseology of William of Malmesbury show themselves. A long extract from his "Gesta Regum Anglorum," describing the presents sent by Hugh, Count of Paris, to Aethelstan in A.D. 926 is subsequently made, terminating with the account of the donations of that king to the Abbey of Malmesbury. There seems to be an original addition here in the shape of a notice of the exact spot in which the bodies of Aelwine and Aethelwine, the nephews of the king were buried: "ad caput feretri Sancti Aldelmi" (p. 13, l. 11 from bottom). These words do not occur among the various readings in the Edition of the Gesta Regum published by the English Historical Society, and may, therefore, be presumed not to exist in any MS. of that work. They are just such an addition as might have been made by an inmate of the Abbey of Malmesbury.

---

[1] The narrative is followed very closely, and in some portions of it the Latinized proper names are relinquished for those forms which are met with in the French Chronicle, as "Eldulph," "Eldred," "Alured," "Ellendoun" (p. 6), for "Etheluulfus," "Eldredus," "Aluredus," "Escendune."

Malmesbury is still followed with occasional interpolations from the Brut in caps. LXXXVI. and LXXXVII., and in cap. LXXXVIII. a direct quotation is given from his Gesta by name. The same work is the source of the greater part of caps. LXXXIX., XC. (where a direct reference for further information is made to the "Gesta Anglorum") and XCI.[1] The second account of the murder of Edmund Ironside in cap. XCII. is from some other source, perhaps the French Brut. The fabulous cause assigned for the change of feeling on the part of Cnut towards the sons of Eadmund is not in either. The account of the mission of Wigar, and the remainder of the chapter correspond to the narrative of the Brut. Malmesbury again supplies the greater part of cap. XCIII., the whole of caps. XCIV., and all of cap. XCV., except the date of the coronation of Harthacnut, which is inconsistent with the length of his reign there given; the mission to Aelfred and Edward, and the version of the murder of Aelfred, appear to be from the Brut. Malmesbury furnishes the materials of cap. XCVI., and, if we do not misinterpret the author's reference of his reader for fuller information to the "Gesta Anglorum," of cap. XCVII. also; at all events the very words of that work are used immediately after this direction, and followed to the end of the chapter. After a brief account of the birth, and early life of William the Conqueror in cap. XCVIII., the Gesta Regum is almost verbally transcribed, with the exception of a legendary account of the foundation of the Abbey of Battle in cap. CI., down to the end of cap. CIII. After this Malmesbury, still the sole authority, is not quite so closely followed, though the whole of cap. CV. is nearly

[1] The notice of the issue of Aethelred is from the Brut, as well as the short account of the expulsion of Aethelred by Sweyn. Here again the forms of the names "Edwyn," "Eldred," and "Swayn" are noticeable.

a verbal transcript from the Historia Novella. In cap. CVIII. an account of the Castle of Malmesbury is found, which appears to be original, and in a short space gives the history of that foundation down to the petition of Walter Loryng, abbot of Malmesbury, in the 15th year of the reign of King John.

In cap. CX. the date of the coronation of King Stephen is given in the very words of Malmesbury, but for the portion of the narrative which intervenes between the words "et Sarum" (p. 65, l. 5), and "cum exercitu" (p. 66, l. 1), at which our author takes up the Annales of Nicholas Trivet, it is not certain what authority he has followed. From these last words, however, down to the words "dies xx." (p. 193, l. 12), the "Annales "Sex Regum Angliæ," have been largely used, and contribute the chief portion of the narrative. The very words of Trivet have been employed in the majority of the extracts, but occasionally the effect only of a passage is given. The selections are frequently made without regard to their arrangement in the Annales. There are occasional additions from other sources, chiefly the French Brut, or some authority common to that Chronicle and the Eulogium, and the Polichronicon; and in some few cases the source cannot be definitely ascertained. The text of the Annales having been already printed, it will be unnecessary to exhibit the minute differences between it and that of the Eulogium, except in important instances. The results of a collation of the two are given, so far as it is needed, in the foot note.[1] The edition of the Chronicle

[1] In p. 66, l. 14, the date "MCXLX." should be "MCXL." according to Trivet (Ed. Hog. p. 12); the correct date is different from both of these. In p. 67, l. 9, "ditaverat" is "dotarat" (Hog. p. 30). In p. 68, l. 13, Trivet (p. 31) reads "optimatum" for "primatum;" l. 19, for "episcopis III. . . . . Normanniæ" has (p. 32) "archiepiscopis Hugone Rothomagensi cum tribus suffraganeis, Rogero Eboracensi cum cæteris episcopis Angliæ, ac Theodorico comite

of Trivet which has been employed, is that published by the Historical Society.

Flandrensi cum comitibus et proceribus Anglicani regni," the words "Mores vero . . . sequebatur," which follow in our text, are found in the Annales (p. 36, l. 8). In p. 69, l. 8 from bottom, "mœniæ" is "materiæ" in Trivet (p. 42, l. 5). The regnal years in pp. 69–71, from the 2nd to the 12th, both included, are one in advance of the corresponding numbers in Trivet. In p. 71, l. 2, "convinci" is "conjici" in Trivet (p. 54), and "Mariæ matris" (l. 9) is "Valeriæ martyris" in the Annales (p. 55, l. 9). In p. 76, last line, for "ecclesia suo destituerunt ornatu. Rogabant . ." Trivet (p. 95) reads "ne ecclesia suo destitueretur ornatu, rogabant . . ." In p. 81, l. 14, for "die sequenti" Trivet (p. 115) has "Die vero tertia sequenti," which *was* a Sunday. In p. 91, l. 5 from bottom, for "debito modo" Trivet (p. 164) has "modo jure propinquitatis." In p. 94, l. 5, before "Petrum" Trivet (p. 179) reads "per." In p. 114, l. 11 from bottom, the words "in festo Beati Clementis Martyris" are applied by Trivet (p. 203) to the departure of Gualo; l. 6 from bottom, the words "qui et Turci" are not in Trivet. The regnal years in pp. 114–5, are each a unit in advance of those in the Annales. In p. 117, l. 2, for "suspendere" Trivet (p. 215) reads "dejicere;" l. 6 from bottom, the words "ministrante . . . . archiepiscopo," l. 2 from bottom, the words "et . . . saluberrimum," are not in the Annales. (pp. 220–1.) In p. 118, l. 18, Trivet (p. 228) reads "Seysi" for "Beysi." In p. 121, l. 12, the words "vel vivus vel mortuus ignoratur" are not in Trivet, who (p. 251) expressly says that Besilles was taken alive; l. 8 from bottom, the words "convitia eam maledicebat" are in Trivet (p. 251–2) "convicia . . . . in eam . . . . congessit." In p. 123, l. 8, after "Philippum" Trivet (p. 255) adds "Marmioun, Joannem de Vallibus, Rogerum de Leyborne, Henricum de Percy, Philippum." In p. 124, l. 9, after "Glouerniæ" a passage in Trivet (p. 256) is omitted, giving an account of the king's proceedings at Rochester and Tunbridge. In p. 127, l. 10 from bottom, for "tertiæ Johannes filius Johannis, Willielmus de Monte Camisii," Trivet (p. 259) reads "cum Johanne filio Johannis et Willielmo de Monte Camisii; tertiæ, in qua erant Londonienses, Nicolaus de Segrave." In p. 128, l. 13, "in crastino" is not in the Annales (p. 260). In p. 129, l. 2, after "audissent," Trivet (p. 261) adds "Londonienses," and in l. 3, after "abstulerunt," "Exinde . . . remanserunt;" in l. 6, for "regis" has "terræ fortiora." In p. 130, l. 16, for "marchio" Trivet (p. 264) has "Marchia;" in l. 18, after "societatem" adds "Joannes de Warenna Surreyæ et Sussexiæ, ... et Penbrochiæ applicantes," and in l. 19 for "adiens" has "regem secum ducens proficiscitur." In p. 131, l. 5, for "duo" Trivet (p. 264) has "dominorum Rogeri de Mortuo Mari, et Rogeri de Clifford;" in l. 7 from bottom after "tendebant"

The French Brut, or sources common to it and the Eulogium (for we have no longer in this portion of the Fifth Book the double forms of proper names noticed in the former part)[1] appears to have supplied the basis of the following notices: — In the reign of Henry II. the notice of the appointment of Thomas à Beket to the Chancellorship (p. 69, l. 1):[2]

Trivet (p. 265) adds "adjuncto sibi comite Gloverniæ, sero de Wigornia illuc tendens." In p. 132, l. 11, for "Evesham; veneruntque ex una parte. Ex duabus aliis . . ." Trivet (p. 266) has "Eveshamiæ ex parte una, veneruntque ex duabus aliis . . . ." In p. 133, l. 13, after "regem" Trivet (p. 267) adds "juxta voluntatem suam plectendos jubet carceri mancipari," and l. 15, after "regem" has "steterant." In p. 134, last line but one, "redemptio" is omitted after "hæc." In p. 137, l. 6 from bottom, for "princeps infectus" Trivet (p. 280) has "præceps in factis." In p. 141, last line but one, for "sorores" Trivet (p. 292) reads "sororii." In p. 145, l. 18, "mali" is "clam" or "talem" in Trivet (p. 302), both inferior readings. In p. 146, l. 3 from bottom, for "Antonio" Trivet (p. 309) has "Antonius." In p. 147, l. 11, for "non matre" Trivet (p. 310) has "cum difficultate ad instantiam matris." In p. 148, l. 14, for "bonorum tempore . . . . Eodem anno" Trivet (p. 316) has "bonorum. Tempore . . . . cum." In p. 149, l. 5, for "regem" Trivet has "regis." In p. 152, l. 11, after "sibi" Trivet (p. 320) adds "tradi." In p. 163, l. 14, "et alium comitem" is omitted by Trivet (p. 351), who for "alium," in l. 15, reads "Alanum;" l. 18, after "Scociam," Trivet adds "interdicens." In p. 170, l. 3, for "concessa" Trivet (p. 376) reads "commissa," and in l. 6 from bottom, for "Londoniis" has "apud Eboracum." In p. 173, l. 4, after "Angliæ" a verb "pervenit" (Trivet, p. 380) is wanting; in l. 10 from bottom, for "muneris" Trivet (p. 381) has "numinis." In p. 174, l. 17, before "superioris" Trivet has "jure."

[1] There is an uncertainty as to which "edition" of this chronicle has been followed, that of which Harl. 200, Dom. A. X., &c., are the type and which is the older, or the revised edition (to borrow from a learned paper on the subject in "Notes and Queries," 2nd Ser., No. 1, by Sir Frederick Madden), represented by Old Royal MS., 20 A. iii. In its main features the Eulogium agrees with the later text, as is evidenced by the presence of the story of king John's death by poison and of other notices peculiar to that edition, but of minor variations it contains many which are found only in the earlier text.

[2] The words of the Brut are: "En mesme cele temps (an. Dom. A. X.) Thomas Beket de Loundres Erchedeakne de Caunterbirs fust feat Chaunceler le Roy." Hoveden, Bosham, and Gervase of Tilbury agree with Trivet. Roger Wendover, however, supports the date in

Trivet (p. 43) places this in A.D. 1157; the notices of the destruction of the castles erected in the previous reign, and of the resumption of the alienated vills, cities, &c., which Trivet (p. 36) places in 1 Hen. II.;[1] the notice of the cession of territory made by Malcolm, here called David, after what authority I am unable to say; this Trivet (p. 43) places in 2 Hen. II.,[2] and omits all mention of the "comitatum Lancastriæ;' the notice of the change of coinage, which Trivet omits, and of the birth of Geoffrey earl of Bretagne, whose dignity Trivet (p. 44) does not notice; the entries (p. 70) of the expedition against Toulouse, of which Trivet (pp. 46, 47) gives a long account and a different termination;[3] of the death of Theobald archbishop of Canterbury and the destruction of Canterbury by fire, the former of which events Trivet (p. 50) dates precisely, omitting the latter; of the consecration of à Beket on S. Barnabas day (June 11),[4] and the birth of the Princess Eleanor;[5] of the translation of S. Edward Confessor, of the council of Northampton and flight of à Beket by night; in p. 71 the notices of the birth of the Princess Joan,[5] of the death of the Empress Maud, of the birth of Prince John, of the marriage and issue of the Princess Matilda and

---

our text; and in the Great Roll of the Pipe for 2 Henry II. (19 Dec. A.D. 1155–18 Dec. 1156), the name "Thomas Cancellarius" occurs.

[1] The Brut has no entry for 3 Hen. II.

[2] The Brut says "En mesme lan,' *i.e.*, the 4th, "le Roi Descoce rendi a luy quantqe il auoit en sa main, cest assauoir la cite de Caerleil, de Baumburgh, le nouel Chastel sur Tyne et le Counte de Launc'." Diceto (531) has "comitatum Lodonensem;" so also Paris (p. 96).

[3] The Brut has: "Le vj^{me}. an il amesna graunt ost a Tholouse et la conquist." The last three words are omitted in MS. Cott. Dom. A. X. Wendover states that Toulouse was taken.

[4] This date is wrong and should be Trinity Sunday (3 June), 8 Hen. II. Trivet (p. 52) gives the year correctly but omits the day. The mistake in our text may have arisen from the substitution of "iii. idus" for "iii. nonas."

[5] Omitted by Trivet.

Henry the Lion,[1] of the death of Robert earl of Leicester, of his foundations[2] and the conquest of "Babylon";[3] in p. 72, of the coronation of Prince Henry, and the marriage of the Princess Eleanor,[4] of the rupture between the king and his sons[5] and the death of Prince Henry (p. 73); and in p. 76 of the narrative of the events which led to the capture of Jerusalem by Saladin. In the reign of Richard I. we have apparently from this source the notice of the expedition to the Holy Land, in p. 81; of the surrender of Acre, the attack on Gisours by Philip Augustus and his defeat by Richard I.[6] (which is transposed from its proper place after the return of the king from Germany) in p. 82;[7] and of the interview with Bertram Gordon in p. 84. In the reign of king John the notice of the loss of Anjou and Normandy, the account of the election of Stephen Langton, absurdly placed in 1 John (the phrase in the Brut being "En mesme cele "temps qe ceo,"—the imposition of a tenth on the clergy, —"fust") and of the commencement of the disputes between King John and the Holy See in p. 92, l. 13—p. 93, l. 7; the continuation of the account of the same disputes in p. 94, l. 9—p. 96, l. 16; omitting the mention of the grant of the castle of Malmesbury in p. 108, the whole of the narrative in p. 97, l. 4—p. 111, l. 9, where Trivet is taken up at the words

---

[1] Omitted by Trivet.

[2] Omitted by Trivet.

[3] Omitted by Trivet.

[4] "Alfonso regi Hispaniæ," Trivet p. 66. "Edelfouns Roy Dalmaynes," according to the French Brut.

[5] Trivet places the commencement of the rupture in 19 Hen. II. not in 16 Hen. II. The Brut says: "Et tost apres" the martyrdom of S. Thomas.

[6] The account of the incident which gave rise to the enmity of the duke of Austria to Richard I. is not in the French Brut.

[7] The passage "impetratum fuit . . . . . quod a nobis visum est" has no prototype in the Brut. From the last words it would seem that the authority here followed was a contemporary.

"Sepultusque est," appears[1] to have been enlarged from the French Brut or from some source common to it and the Eulogium, the public documents having been most probably supplied from a Latin authority. This is especially obvious in the story of the death of King John by poison, which, though containing many additions rendering it more dramatic, is obviously either founded on the Brut or taken from the same source as the account in that Chronicle.[2] In the reign of Henry III. there are few extracts from this Chronicle; they are the account of the council of Bristol in p. 113, 4; the notice of the Parliament in 2 Hen. III. (placed by the Brut in 4 Hen. III.) in p. 115, the sentence describing the capture of Fulk de Breaute in p. 116,[3] the account of the coronation of Queen Eleanor and of the chil-

[1] It is almost unnecessary to say that there is no satisfactory evidence of the first mission of Pandulph and Durand to England, assigned in the Eulogium to A.D. 1211. The account in our text of the interview of the legates with the king at Northampton may be compared with that in the Annals of Burton, to which it bears a strong resemblance. The theatrical character of the whole scene and the suspicious minuteness of the details are sufficient to condemn it.

[2] The additions are chiefly found in the speeches put into the mouths of the actors in the scene. Thus (p. 109, l. 21) the words "cujus ponderis" are not in the Brut, nor of course the corresponding portion of the monk's reply. The "cum juramento" which follows is, however, exchanged for a more specific phrase in the Brut, "ha dieu" being the exclamation there put into the king's mouth. The remarks made by John on the cause of his annoyance, his inquiry (p. 110) why the monk looked at him so earnestly, and the resulting secret prayer of the monk (!), the application of the speech of Caiaphas to him, his remark after the usual "wassail," and the king's subsequent reflection upon it (p. 111), are all added either by our author or the original which he is here following. The monk's confession to his abbot is placed in the Brut before and not after the poisoning of the king's cup. By a remarkable mistake in the common original of B. and D. it is the poison of an *owl* ("bubo"), and not of a *toad* (bufo"), which causes the death of the king in both those MSS.

[3] The entry under A.D. 1230 in p. 116 is not from the Brut.

dren of Henry III. in p. 119[1] down to the words "Natus est autem," where Trivet is taken up, the whole of p. 120[2] from the words "De Foresta," and the account of the surrender of Kenilworth castle and the flight of Symon de Montfort, jun., and the countess of Leicester in p. 135. In the reign of Edward I. there are but few extracts; perhaps the first paragraph of Cap. CXLIV. (p. 143); the whole of p. 158 and part of p. 159[3] down to the word "gubernarent" (l. 5); the account of the treachery of Sir Thomas Turbervile (pp. 163, 164), of the oath of the Scottish nobles, which is placed after the siege of Berwick in the Brut, in pp. 164, 165, the whole of p. 166 down to the words "quoscumque invenit trucidat" (l. 7 from bottom) where Trivet is taken up; the notice of the death of Brian Jay in p. 169 (last line); the account of the siege of Stirling Castle, which is misdated by three years, and repeated under its proper date in p. 187; the notice of the capture of Wallace, in pp. 187, 188; and the notice of the death of Frisel, and the capture of John de Atheles in p. 190, 191.

Besides these additions to the narrative of Trivet, there are two interpolations from other sources of considerable extent in pp. 73–75, and pp. 86–89. The former, from the generally close coincidence of the phraseology and chronology with those of the chronicle ascribed to Thomas Wikes appears to have been taken from that work, with perhaps additions from the Flores Historiarum, the Annals of Waverley, and the same source as the Chronologia Augustinien-

---

[1] Here (l. 12) "flos largitatis" is the literal equivalent of "flur de largesce" of the French Brut. There is an omission of a daughter: "Katerine qe morust virgine en Religioun."

[2] Here "et immobilium" (l. 5) is an addition.

[3] The account here of the famine and of the attack on Dover is from some other source than Trivet or the Brut. "Quidam dicunt" may be in allusion to the former.

sis; the latter, which was added after a part of the reign of King John had been written (see note) is undoubtedly borrowed from the Polichronicon.

The sources of the brief account of Edward II. are not satisfactorily attainable. The verbal coincidence of a large part of it, with the shorter chronicle of Geoffrey le Baker of Swinbroke, completed according to that author, in A.D. 1347,[1] is obvious on the most cursory inspection, though there are a few entries in the Eulogium which are not found in that work. The most natural conclusion is that either our author transcribed this work, or that both followed some common source, the chronology of which may have been identical with that of Baker, that of the Eulogium, or different from both. An examination of the autograph A makes it evident that our author added particulars after the whole had been transcribed, and in more than one instance he has supplied a date, *e.g.*, that of the escape of Roger Mortimer, jun., from the Tower of London, which is not to be found in Baker, but is given by Murimuth and others. There is a curious instance of carelessness in p. 196 in the double date assigned to the capture of the earl of Lancaster. The first is "in prima hebdomada "quadragesimæ, die Lunæ," *i.e.*, the Monday in the first week in Lent. Now, Easter day fell on 11th April in A.D. 1322, and therefore Shrove Tuesday on the 2nd March; the first Monday in Lent was consequently the 8th March. The second date, the correct one,

[1] This date, however, is not perhaps quite trustworthy, for Baker in the heading of his larger Chronicle describes it as having been written in 21 Edward III. (25. Jan. 1347–24. Jan. 1348), and yet (p. 91) in his account, after De la Moor, of certain ill-treatment practised upon the unfortunate Edward II., he says that his authority was alive after the Great Pestilence, which did not terminate until the autumn of A.D. 1349. It is probable that "XXI." in the regnal year is a clerical error for "XXXI."

is "die Martis proxima post festum Sancti Gregorii" the 16th March. Our author has written this latter date in the margin of his autograph subsequently to the text, and omitted to erase the former. Baker gives no date. The list of executions which precedes this (pp. 196–7) agrees in arrangement with that in Baker, but differs from that given by him in the substitution of "Gloucestriam" (p. 197, l. 9) for "Kerdif," in the insertion of the names of William Hemyng (l. 10), Thomas de Berkley (l. 19), of the notice of the death of Maurice de Berkley (last lines) and of the passage "junior . . . Johannes Mauduyt" (p. 198, l. 3–6). The list in the French Chronicle of London (pp. 445) agrees with the Eulogium in most of its statements, but differs from it in omitting the names of the Mortimers, the Berkleys, and Robert de Howlond, and adding that of Hugh de Audeley, in the list of surrenders, in omitting the notice of the death of Maurice de Berkley, and of all names but those of Hugh de Audeley (junior) and Robert de Holond in the list of those who were captured and imprisoned, the number of knights being given at ninety-two instead of sixty-two. The names of Thomas Page, Bartholomew de Asshburnham, Stephen Barat, and Roger Damory are also found in the list in question, and various orthographical differences will be observed on comparing the two. Neither Baker nor the Chronicle of London gives the names of the judges of the earl of Lancaster, which have been inserted subsequently to the context in the autograph of the Eulogium (p. 196, l. 10–12). The accounts of the parliament in A.D. 1315, of the famine in A.D. 1319, and of the mortality in A.D. 1321 (to employ the chronology of the Eulogium) are from some source not at present ascertained. The dates of execution of the two Despensers (p. 198, ll. 2 and 5 from bottom) have

been also added, after the transcription of the text of our author's autograph, from some other source; perhaps the French Chronicle of London. Neither Murimuth, De la Moor, nor Baker's shorter Chronicle give the dates of the days of execution. Higden gives only the former.

The chronology of this reign is very irregular in the Eulogium. It cannot be better described than by saying that the author has copied the words of Baker and the dates of Murimuth. We have the coronation of Edward II. placed: first, in the same year as the recal of Gaverston (p. 193, l. 5 from bottom), that is, according to our author (ib. l. 10 from bottom) in A.D. 1307; then (ib. l. 2 from bottom) in A.D. 1308; and again (p. 194, ll. 1 and 5) in A.D. 1309. The day is given: first, with Baker and Hemingburgh, as "VI. kal. Martii," or 25th February (p. 193, l. 4 from bottom), and again with Murimuth, as "vicesimo die mensis ejusdem" (p. 194, l. 4). These inconsistencies indicate the employment of more than one source; but it is not easy to devise a system of chronology which would bring an event happening on 28th January A.D. 1308 into the year A.D. 1309, and leave one which occurred on 6th August A.D. 1307 in A.D. 1307; something besides a plurality of sources is needed for the purpose; the, to an editor, unwelcome hypothesis of gross carelessness, or gross stupidity, will perhaps be found to explain the facts of the case. All the subsequent dates agree with those in the Chronicle of Murimuth (occasionally varying from those in Baker), except the dates of the arrest of the Templars in England in p. 194, and those of the parliament, the famine, and the mortality in p. 195. The former act is assigned by Baker to A.D. 1307. The writs to the sheriffs for the capture are dated 15th and 20th December,

1 Edward II. Our author seems to have adopted the phraseology of Baker and the date assigned by Murimuth to a subsequent part of the proceedings; the Council of London. The two latter dates are correct, for the famine and mortality commenced respectively in A.D. 1317 and 1319, and lasted three and two years. Different chronicles give different years, included between the limits of duration, for the epochs of both occurrences.

We now come to the reign of Edward III. The difficulty of satisfactorily assigning the sources of the earlier portion is insuperable, as there are many authorities for the period whose chronological order it is impossible to settle. The later portion displays remarkable occasional coincidences with the Continuator of Murimuth, that is, with the Polichronicon and its Continuation, but these are the more easily explicable, as this part of the Eulogium is the very one which supplies abundant evidence of original and contemporary composition.

Commencing with cap. CLXXIV., we find the first three entries almost verbally the same as the corresponding notices in Baker, our author with him assigning the *third* and not the *first*[1] of February as the coronation day of the king. There can be little doubt that this date is incorrect.

---

[1] This date agrees with that assigned by Murimuth (p. 52), Higden (Harl. 655), The French Chronicle of London (p. 58), and the Wardrobe Account of the Expenses of the Coronation preserved in the Record office, in the heading and body of the roll; in the former is the phrase, "circa coronationem . "... domini Regis ... videlicet "primo die Februarii ...."; in the latter an item, "in apparatu et "ornamento pulpituli Regis .... "die coronationis ipsius Regis ... "primo die Februarii anno regni sui "Primo," and another entry. Avesbury gives 25th January. Hemingburgh's MSS., according to Mr. Hamilton (p. 297, note [2]) give 2nd February.

The account, under the year A.D. 1328, of the serious conflict at York, between the townspeople and the Hainaulters, may either refer to a well-known riot which took place in A.D. 1327, or to some other similar conflict. If to the former, it exhibits important differences from the corresponding narrative in the Chroniques of Froissart, for that author, besides assigning the origin of the riot to an entirely different cause, states that it first broke out on Trinity Sunday (11th May) A.D. 1327, instead of on a Tuesday in September in the following year.[1]

It is most probable, however, that the date given by Froissart is correct, for in the particulars of account attached to an indenture in the Record Office, dated 2nd March 2 Edw. III., between Master John de Paris, clerk of Sir John de Hainault, and Robert de Wodehous, keeper of the king's wardrobe, is an item for expenses "pro . . . . rebus medicinalibus et "aliis expensis factis circa quosdam de comitiva dicti "domini Johannis" [sc. de Hanonia] "vulneratos apud "Eborum *die Sanctæ Trinitatis* anno supradicto" [sc. primo] "et circa (?) sepulturas quorundam interfecto- "rum ibidem . . . . ." A royal commission was issued on the 14th June 1 Edward III., to make inquisition concerning a riot at York between the Hainaulters and the men of Northampton, Lincoln, and York, and the letter of safe-conduct "ad partes "suas" for John of Hainault and his colleagues bears

---

[1] The account in the Eulogium is quoted from it by Leland in his Collectanea, vol. I. pt. 1. p. 307, and the quotation referred to by Buchon in the notes to his edition of the Chroniques of Froissart and by Mr. Aungier in his edition of the French Chronicle of London (p. 60, note ‡). Neither of them seems to have any notion of the source of Leland's quotation, and both assume that it relates to the same event as their texts. Drake, in his Eboracum, also uses the quotation, but applies it to a second riot in A.D. 1328.

date the 22nd August in the same year.[1] The conflict is mentioned by most of the chroniclers of the period, who almost universally place it earlier in the year than the siege of Stanhope Park, which occurred in August. One exception, however, (and there may be others) is found in the French Chronicle of London, which states (p. 60) that the riot took place when the king had returned to York after the siege, that is about the middle of August or later. The particularity of the account in our text, in which are specified not only the numbers killed, but the numbers killed on the spot, the numbers mortally wounded and dying on the third and fourth day, and the numbers drowned in the Ouse, with the names of the parish burned down, and of that in which the affray took place, seems to indicate that our author obtained his details from some contemporary local chronicle or witness; and if this were the case the improbability of error in the date which he has assigned to the event would of course be considerable. It is not impossible that the dislike of the English for their allies, exasperated by their own defeat in the riot which preceded the siege, might have broken out afresh after the return of the army to York, supposing that all the Hainaulters did not leave England at once with John of Hainault; and an entry in the above indenture for "consimilibus expensis "suis et *totius sequelæ suæ* veniendo ad partes "Angliæ pro guerra Scociæ simul cum passagiis et "custumis ad mare ab viij° die Maij anno Domini "nostri Regis supradicti primo usque viij. diem "Septembris anno eodem," shows that all of them had not left England before the 8th September

[1] See Rymer, Fœdera, sub anno 1 Edw. III., 707, &c. The return to the commission cannot be found; this is much to be regretted, for the particulars of the affray would have been doubtless very full, and the evidence of the highest value. According to the Brut, the inquisition was taken at York.

1 Edw. III. This fact of course destroys the possibility of an affray with the Hainaulters at York after the 8th September; but as the 1st was a Tuesday in A.D. 1327, it still remains open to doubt whether a second conflict might not have occurred on that day. If, however, we assume the year given in the Eulogium (A.D. 1328) to be correct, and not a mistake for A.D. 1327, or a mere numerical difference arising from a difference of epoch, we must suppose that some second conflict took place at York between the same combatants in September A.D. 1328. This might possibly have arisen in the following manner:— On 25th January A.D. 1328, Edward III. was married to Philippa of Hainault at York, who was accompanied thither by John of Hainault and a second retinue of Hainaulters. If these men remained at York until September, a second conflict might have taken place in that month with the results mentioned in our text. There is no evidence, however, in the Public Records[1] or elsewhere that this was the case, and I do not know of any chronicler but our author who has assigned the event to a date so late as September A.D. 1328. The difficulty must therefore remain unsolved; for it would be clearly rash to assume either that our author had misdated by sixteen months an event of which his account is remarkable for minuteness of detail, or that no second riot ever took place, because there is no notice of it discoverable elsewhere at present.

The date assigned to the birth of Edward the Black Prince (p. 200) agrees with that given by Murimuth (p. 64), but the two dates immediately following, that of the birth of the princess Isabella, and the battle of Gladsmuir, and that of the capture of Roger Mortimer,

[1] Among the Miscellaneous Writs formerly in the White Tower is a bundle of writs addressed to the sheriffs of different counties, ordering them to summon all persons who have complaints against the Flemings to appear at York on the feast of S. Peter-ad-Vincula, 2 Edw. III.

appear to have been interchanged. The account of the battle is brief, the locality agrees with that given by Higden, and the date is the same as his, but the list of the supporters of Edward Balliol is more complete than in the Polichronicon, or in Murimuth. The siege of Stanhope Park is placed most unaccountably in A.D. 1332. The phrase "eodem anno in æstate "sequenti," combined with the assertion that the execution and capture of Mortimer took place after Michaelmas, seems to show that our author is here following a chronicler who commences his year with that feast, that is, probably, Murimuth; but particulars are given which are not mentioned by him: the peculiar effect of want of food on the Scots, and the contemporary report that they escaped by the treachery of Henry de Beaumont. The date "IIII. idus "Julii" of the commencement of the siege of Berwick agrees with that in the Polichronicon. The date of the battle of Halidon Hill agrees in all particulars with Murimuth (p. 70), but the account is not in his words. The surrender of Berwick is placed on the same day as the battle, the battle having been really fought on the vigil, and not on the feast, of S. Margaret Virgin, and the surrender having been made on the morning after. The date of the act of homage of Edward Balliol is placed one day in advance of the date given by Hemingburgh (p. 309), and, if the "circa festum Sancti Johannis" of Murimuth (p. 75) be assumed to mean 24th June, five days earlier than his date; the year is one in advance of both. The day of the death of Pope John XXII. is given as Advent Sunday, which fell on 27th November in A.D. 1334, and this, if the new year were commenced at Michaelmas, would convert the complete date into Advent A.D. 1335; the printed text of Murimuth (p. 77) gives 4th December A.D. 1334, agreeing with Geoffrey le Baker (p. 162). His successor is not named in our text, for what

reason it is not easy to say. If our author were following Murimuth, or writing much after the date of the event, it is not easy to see why he left out Benedict XII., especially as he mentions his death at p. 206. The date of the parliament of February A.D. 1337 is also given in terms which necessitate the commencement of the year before 25th March, *i. e.*, in 1st January, 25th December, or Michaelmas. The list of earls created agrees with that in Rymer, and in the chronicles of Hemingburgh (pp. 312–3), Murimuth (p. 81), Baker (p. 128), and Knighton (col. 2568), with the omission of Roger de Ufford, earl of Suffolk. Knighton, however, adds (col. 2569) Hugh de Courtenay, earl of Devonshire. The notice of the remarkable natural productions in this year is found also in (p. 200) of Walsingham's Historia (recently published in the present series), but considerably amplified. I am unable to say from what source it has been derived by our author, if it be not original.

In cap. CLXXVI. we find the first of a series of extracts from the Continuation of Murimuth, or, more properly speaking, from the Polichronicon, with which and its Continuation the Continuation of Murimuth closely coincides. It appears to have been followed down to the words "collectis undique" (p. 203, l. 4), where it is relinquished, and a brief notice given of subsequent events down to the retirement of the French on Paris in A.D. 1339. The former portion of this notice is probably abbreviated from Murimuth (pp. 85, 86).[1] There appears to be, however, a slight

[1] The variations between our text and the printed texts of the Continuation and the Polichronicon (ap. Knighton) are worth noting. The date in the former is 1337; it adds the regnal year; omits "et alibi in "partibus transmarinis" after "Was-"conia" (p. 202, last line), "et "injuste tenuerat" after "usurpa-"verat" (p. 203, l. 1); adds "Angliæ plures" after rex (l. 2), and substitutes "humiles" for "supplices" (l. 2), and "pecuniis" for "auxiliis cum militia copiosa" (l. 5). It omits the place of embarkation of Edward, and his stay at

dislocation in the latter paragraph, for our author places the assumption of the French arms by Edward III. before his invasion of France in September A.D. 1339, Murimuth placing the same act subsequent to his return into Brabant (p. 92). The actual date of this assumption appears to be uncertain; the marginal date, 8th February, is the date of the patent addressed to the people of Flanders by the king, and noticed in our chronicle; this is not given nor noticed by Murimuth, but is to be found in Hemingburgh (pp. 336–40). This latter portion may possibly be original in the Eulogium. The account of the concessions of the parliament of 29th March A.D. 1340 is almost as full as that given by Hemingburgh (pp. 354–5), but there is no reason to suppose that our author used his chronicle; the numerous coincidences might very well arise from the peculiarity of the subject, which consists of an enumeration of aids and reliefs, necessitating the employment of the same or nearly the same technical words by any writer who fully detailed the particulars. We here observe that the author places 29th March A.D. 1340 in A.D. 1339, although in the very next entry, that of the death of Adam de la Hoke, abbot of Malmesbury, we have 25th March A.D. 1340 placed in A.D. 1340. The date of the parliament is repeated twice, and on the second occasion it is written on an erasure in the autograph, but the erased letters cannot now by any means be rendered visible.

Antwerp. The Polichronicon coincides so closely with the Continuator that its deviations are not worth notice. The year assigned by Murimuth himself agrees with that in the Eulogium, the day being one in advance of our author's (in spite of Mr. Hog's note, which would lead a careless reader to suppose that it was five days in advance). Murimuth has many particulars omitted in our text, *e.g.* the first interview between Edward and the Emperor, before the election of the latter.

The account of the naval engagement at Sluys, and the siege of Tournay in cap. CLXXVIII., approximates very closely to that in the Polichronicon and the Continuation of Murimuth (pp. 172–3). There are variations between the two accounts of slight importance, and an addition in the Eulogium giving the exact duration of the former conflict. The cause of the truce is, however, differently stated, Higden and the Continuator assigning it to the non-arrival of pecuniary supplies from England, and the Eulogium to the mediation of the Countess of Hainault and another cause "tactam," *i.e.*, probably "touched upon" (by the authority he is employing). Higden is still followed in the new chapter, where, however, our author, instead of representing with him that the severe storm which attacked Edward on his return from Brittany was said to be due to the arts of the necromancers of the king of France (!), contents himself with recording the report as simply attributing it to necromancers and mischief-makers, without any more particular specification of their official position and authority. In cap. CLXXX. we have a notice of the death of pope Benedict XII., with a number of details of his previous preferments, not found in the Polichronicon, and a character of his successor, Clement VI., differing greatly from the more carefully weighed estimate of Higden. It certainly has the effect, brief as it is, of a panegyric rather than a criticism. It was most probably written before the death of its subject, for the length of his pontificate has been inserted in the autograph by the author long subsequently to the context.

Character of Pope Clement VI.

The account of the campaign of Cressy in caps CLXXXI. and CLXXXII. commences in nearly the same words as the corresponding portion of the narrative of the Continuator of Murimuth, which here coincides

Account of the campaign of Cressy.

Campaign of Cressy.

verbally with the Policronicon.[1] After the word "ap- "plicuit" (p. 207, l. 3), it is difficult to say what source our author has employed. The account was evidently left unfinished by him, a blank still remaining in the autograph (p. 209) for the letter of Philip to Edward. Ample materials exist for a full narrative of the campaign. The original letters, preserved by Robert of Avesbury, from Michael de Northburgh, and the Confessor of Edward III., the letter of the king himself printed by Mr. Coxe in his edition of the poem of the Black Prince by Chandos Herald,[2] in conjunction with the Itinerary compiled, with his usual accuracy, by the late Mr. Hunter from the Account of the Kitchen of Edward III., preserved among the Wardrobe Accounts in the Record Office (Archæologia, vol. xxxii., pp. 379-87), will serve as a standard of comparison, and we shall find many divergencies in our author's narrative which are worthy of notice.

Omitting the knighting of the Black Prince, and the sons of lord Roger de Mortimer and lord William de Montagu,[3] which is not mentioned either by Northburgh or Froissart, the progress of the king to Valognes and Carentan, and the repairing of the Pont d'Ove, are given in the same order as by North-

---

[1] The words "apud Portesmouthe" (p. 206, l. 3 from bottom), "cum "mille et quingentis navibus bene "apparatis" (ib. ll. 3 2) are additions to the Polychronicon. Murimuth's Continuator (p. 175, l. 20) has "ductu" instead of the "ducatu" in our text (ib. l. 2). According to memorandum on the Close Roll 20 Edw. III. (m. 26 d.) the king was at the Isle of Wight on his way to parts beyond seas, on Sunday, 2nd July, 20 Edward III. (A.D. 1346). The translation of S. Thomas *Apostle* falling on 3rd July, it is not improbable that our author, or the writer whom he follows, may have written "Martyris" for "Apostoli," and "festo" for "vigilia."

[2] Appendix, p. 352.

[3] Baker says: "princeps et fecit "milites dominos de Mortimer, de "Monte Acuto, et de Ros . . . . . "..." (p. 160).

burgh, who, however, omits to notice the destruction of the town and castle of Valognes, which is mentioned by Baker and Froissart ("si la prirent et ro- " bèrent toute, et puis l'ardirent"). Northburgh further says that only a part, "mult de la ville," of the town of Carentan was burnt, in spite of the efforts of the king to save it, while Froissart describes the siege of the castle and the total destruction of the castle and town. The account of the capture of Caen contains a particular omitted by Baker, Knighton, Northburgh, and Froissart; it is the title of Marshal of France applied to the Chamberlain of Tankerville; this is found in the letter from the king himself already referred to.[1] The notice of the assignment of the prisoners to the Earl of Huntingdon is mentioned by Knighton and Froissart, but not by Baker nor Northburgh. Campaign of Cressy.

The sequel of the capture of Caen is briefly told in our text; but it contains a tolerably full account of the negotiations between the king and the Papal legates at Lisieux,[1] which is not found in Froissart, but appears in a letter from the king's Confessor, preserved by Avesbury (p. 128). There is one slight difference between a statement in this letter and in our Chronicle; neither the spoliation of the legates, nor the restitution of their horses, is mentioned by the confessor. Baker briefly notices the negotiations, which are not mentioned by Knighton. The portion of the narrative which intervenes between the notices of the return of the cardinals and the arrival of the king at Poissy, is rather confused, and incapable of illustration from other sources. The brief notices of the death of Edward de Boys, and of the wounding of Richard Talbot and Thomas de Holond, are perhaps evidence of the employment of the accounts of eye-witnesses, such unimportant particulars

[1] "qestoit a la iourne escriez " Mareschal de Fraunce." p. 352.

[2] Here called "civitatem Luxo- niensem" and not "Luxouiensem;" probably therefore transcribed, and not taken down from dictation.

not being likely to be found in general histories; the attack on the castle of Roche-Guyon may be referred to some similar source. Only a general notice of the reduction of castles and fortified places is given in the letter of the Confessor, while by Froissart it is particularly stated that the English abstained from destroying the fortresses, and assaulted neither walled town nor castle ("n'y assaillirent ville fermée ni châtel"), because the king wished to spare his men and his artillery. Baker says that the castle of *Roche-Blanche*, "quæ stat *ultra* Seganam," was burned two days before arriving at Poissy. For the portion of the campaign between the king's arrival at Poissy and the battle of Cressy, both included, we have again a letter from Northburgh, dated 4th September A.D. 1346, preserved by Avesbury. In this letter we find a brief notice of the attack on the English, engaged in repairing the bridge at Poissy, by a party including the men of Amiens, and their defeat by the Earl of Northampton, confirming partially our author's statement that a capture was made at the bridge of some waggons ("chariettos") coming from Amiens with provisions and tents, the guard accompanying them being defeated with great slaughter. Froissart takes no notice of this incident.[1] Baker describes it fully, and says that a body of men came from "France and "Amiens" to prevent the passage of the English. The letter of Philip de Valois to Edward, given by Hemingburgh and others, was evidently intended to have followed here by our author.

In cap. CLXXXII. our author agrees with Froissart, and apparently with Baker (or De la Moor), in asserting that the king destroyed the castle and town of Poix, Northburgh attributing the capture to the rear-guard. With respect to the exact position of the spot at

[1] The name "Amyas" for Amiens is noticeable, as indicating a French source, such as the letter of Northburgh.

which the English army crossed the Somme, called by Froissart the passage of Blanche-Tache (in the present day Blanque-Taque), our author appears to be in error, as he places it between the towns of Valéry-sur-Somme and La Crotoy. He agrees with the Continuator of William de Nangis and the author of the Chronique de Flandre, in asserting that the body of Frenchmen under Godemar du Fay took flight without offering any resistance, and with Northburgh in his notice of the great slaughter, notwithstanding this want of bravery. The account of the feat of one Colvyle, an Englishman, is, so far as I am aware, peculiar to our chronicle. The battle is briefly described ; the list of killed and the other particulars being only slightly touched upon. The defeat of the French appears to be attributed, partly at least, to panic arising from a false idea of the overwhelming numerical superiority of the English force. The subsequent events, up to the siege of Calais, are very hastily passed over.

The brief account of the victory of Nevile's Cross (pp. 211–2), provides an additional proof[1] of the inaccuracy of Froissart's assertion that Queen Isabella was present there. No mention of her presence is made ; an omission most unlikely to occur, if she had really been there, in a Chronicle so nearly contemporary with the victory. The construction of one of the passages is a very remarkable example of the carelessness of our Chronicler. The blunder which creates the confusion is of such a character as even to raise a slight suspicion that he was here copying that which he did not understand. I have, however, left the text uncorrected as the correction is easy. A comma after "tri-" umphabant" (p. 212, l. 3), and a parenthesis including the words "sed Dei . . . . . Eboraci archi-" episcopatu" (ll. 2–6) will render the whole construable.

[1] See the preface to "Political Poems and Songs," by Thomas Wright, Esq., p. xxiv.

In cap. CLXXXIII. we again come upon a passage almost verbally coinciding with the Continuation of Murimuth (pp. 177–8.) The only variations of any importance are given in a foot-note.[1]

The account of the First Great Pestilence in cap. CLXXXIV. differs in two important particulars from the corresponding notices of other contemporary writers. In the first place the date at which it is stated to have commenced is earlier by a whole year than that assigned by the majority of them. In the second the duration attributed to it in England exceeds the greatest of the durations given by any of them by more than a year.[2] No date being here

---

[1] In p. 212, l. 6 from bottom "et" and "nocturnando" are additions.

[2] Knighton (col. 2,598) the continuator of Murimuth (p. 178), Avesbury (p. 178), all agree in assigning A.D. 1348 as the year of its arrival in England. The first says that it commenced "in autumpno" and terminated at the same time in the following year; Avesbury is more precise, and says that it began in Dorset about the Feast of Saint Peter-ad-Vincula (1st Aug.), reached London about All-Saints'-Day (1st Nov.), ceased there about Pentecost (31st May, A.D. 1349), travelling northwards, where it died out about the ensuing Michaelmas. Baker (p. 190) says that it began at Bristol about the Assumption (15th Aug.) A.D. 1349, reached London about Michaelmas, and lasted more than a year in England.

The dates given by Sir Harris Nicolas (Chronology of History, 389) must be artificial, and not true, for that the plague had commenced in Westminster before A.D. 1349 is clear from the words of the royal writ dated 1st January, A.D. 1349, proroguing the Parliament summoned thither on the 19th January: "Quia . . . subita "plaga pestilentiæ mortalis in loco "prædicto" (sc. Westmonasterio) "et aliis partibus circumvicinis, adeo "indies invalescit quod de securo "accessu hominum ad locum illum "formidatur admodum hiis diebus." Fœdera, iii. 180.

In the spring of A.D. 1348 the plague had commenced in Florence, according to Boccacio (Decameron. Prohemio.): "Dico adunque "che gia erano gli anni della frut-"tifera incarnatione del figliuolo di "Dio al numero pervenuti di mille "trecento quarantotto quando nella "egregia citta di Fiorenza . . . . "pervenne la mortifera pestilenza . "quasi nel principio della "primavera dell' anno predetto hor-"ribilmente comminciò i suor dolo-"rosi effetti."

assigned to the termination of this plague, we are left in uncertainty as to whether the word "Anglia" (p. 214, l. 12), was intended by our author to mean, as it commonly did, England only, or to include Scotland and Ireland, or was unintentionally substituted by him for Britain. In either of the latter cases, the duration given of more than two years, would fall short by a little of the true period instead of greatly exceeding it, and the date of commencement in the text might very well have been a slip of the pen for "MCCCXLVIII." In the former the duration given is probably erroneous, and the initial date more probably than in the other cases, a blunder and not a slip. The details of the course, severity, and effects of this terrible scourge, are confirmed for the most part by other writers; I do not find, however, in other accounts any notice of the sterility which is here said to have followed it. The list of the prices of grain and cattle may be compared with similar accounts in Knighton (col. 2599, 2600); the asserted scarcity of labourers actually produced a rise in wages which was the subject of a petition of the commonalty to the Parliament of 25 Edw. III. (Parl. Rolls, II. 227). The price of labour was artificially lowered by a statute of the same Parliament (ib. pp. 233–5). After a notice of the death of John Tyntern, abbot of Malmesbury, which is placed on the 8th Aug. A.D. 1350, but which appears by the escheator's account of the temporalities of the abbey, and other documents preserved in the Record Office, to have taken place on 8th Aug. A.D. 1349,[1] we come to the campaign of Poitiers, in reference to which our author has some curious and valuable information to give in the shape of an Itinerary of the progress of the Prince from the 4th Aug. to the 2nd Oct. A.D. 1356.

Itinerary of the Poitiers campaign.

[1] The appointment of his successor, Simon de Aumeney, is assigned to A.D. 1349 in the Kalendary Chronicle.

So far as I can ascertain, no other copy of this Itinerary exists in contemporary chronicles. Neither in Avesbury, Knighton, Baker, the Continuator of Murimuth, Chandos Herald, nor among the valuable known fragments of contemporary correspondence on the campaign printed and unprinted, does any such document exist, neither are materials to be found out of which it might have been compiled. There is a MS. of the Itinerary itself still in existence, but I have hitherto failed to discover it.[1]

Another MS. known, but not discoverable.

But though no other copy of the Itinerary can be discovered at present, there are a few contemporary accounts of the movements of the Black Prince during the period which it includes, with which it can be compared, and which in the main confirm its dates and localities. These are the brief accounts in the letters of the Black Prince himself to the Mayor and Corporation of London,[2] and to the bishop of Worcester,[3] and the account in contemporary chronicles.

Probably composed by a person who accompanied the Black Prince, and why

I am inclined to think that the original composer of the Itinerary or at least of its groundwork, must have accompanied the expedition.

One of the peculiarities about it which induces this belief is the omission of the exact names of persons and places, and their identification by means of circumstances or attributes. Thus we have "duas magnas "villas muratas *quas dominus de Marsan ad usum* "*domini principis custodivit*," "quandam villam *quæ* "*fuit episcopi de Peragor . . . sedes ibi fuit ca-* "*thedralis*," "quandam villam cum castro . . . . "*fuerunt domino Jacobo de Burboun, ubi uxor sua* "*morabatur*," "captum est *unum castrum fortissi-* "*mum*," "unus nobilis miles, licet juvenis, cognomento "de la Brette, et unus armiger generosus, *qui fuit* "*cum capitaneo de la Buche*," *unus magnus* de Was-

[1] It was known to the late Mr. Petrie.

[2] Chronicle of London, pp. 204–6.

[3] Archæologia.

" conia," " unum castrum de comitatu de Bloys, *quod* " *situm est super amnem de Cher'*," " juxta *unum* " *castrum forte*," " aquam *quæ tendit ad Poyters*," " fuerunt capti comites duo, scilicet Danser *et unus* " *alius*." These are just such descriptions as would be given by a person who had been at or near the localities, but had only been able to command imperfect information, or possessed insufficient leisure in the hurry of the march to obtain fuller particulars.

Other indications of originality are the frequent mention of personal feats and of the deaths and casualties occurring to unimportant persons, and even the very brevity of the account of the battle itself, both of which peculiarities are generally observable in the accounts of eye-witnesses personally engaged in a battle, and easily explicable by general causes.[1]

copied into the Eulogium from a written source,

It is probable, however, from the uniformity of the handwriting in the autograph of our Chronicle, that this journal was copied by our author from only one original source, and that this was a written and not an oral source is also likely from the fact that the few errors in the names of places which are found in it are errors arising from the confusion between letters of similar forms, and never between letters of similar sounds. Thus we have only (p. 218, l. 62) " Citerau*f*" for " Citerau*s*," (l. 8) " Cos*ini*" for " Cos*mi*," (p. 221, l. 29) " Cha*n*igny" for " Cha*u*igny," (p. 222, l. 8) " Cha-" *n*igne" for " Cha*u*igny," and (p. 22) " Da*n*ser" for " Da*u*ser" (d'Auxerre). Such blunders as these could only have been made by a transcriber, and by a transcriber ignorant of the correct forms of the words; their existence, therefore, excludes the supposition that the writer was either here writing from dictation, or fair-copying his own rough notes (originally made from

why;

[1] See the very interesting and valuable work on the Origin of the Gospels, by J. Smith, Esq., of Jordanhill for examples of this from contemporary historians of the Peninsular War.

and from *one* written source.

dictation) themselves, or at least that part of them in which these words occur. The uniformity of the handwriting in the autograph tends to prove that from whatever source he was compiling any one portion of the Itinerary, from that same source he compiled the whole of it.[1]

If it were possible to find among the Accounts of the Wardrobe of the Household of the Black Prince a roll similar to that discovered by Mr. Hunter for the Cressy expedition, we should be able to verify the statements of the unknown compilers of this curious diary by the highest conceivable authority; but unhappily, in the Record Office at least, very few Household Accounts of the Black Prince are to be found, and those that are preserved belong to an earlier period than the year of the campaign of Poitiers. There is also in the same office a register of patents and charters commonly known as the "Black "Prince's Book," and a volume of enrolments of documents relating to the Duchy of Cornwall; but the former contains only documents of the years A.D. 1346–8, and the latter, though extending over the Poitiers year, has very few instruments enrolled in it which are not dated "Londres." The narratives of contemporary chroniclers, as it has been already observed, are extremely scanty, even Froissart supplying but few data by which the statements of our Itinerary can be checked. Taking such evidence as we have,

[1] From the forms of the proper names it seems most probable that the original groundwork of the Itinerary was written in Norman French, as it would probably have been if it had been the account of a lay witness. We have "Brige-"rake" and not "Bergeracum," "Peragor," "Bremptoun," "Roche-"war," "Litherp," "Burboun," "Seynt Yman," "Isoldoun," "Gyen," "Virizon," "Mountba-"son," "le Haye," "Croesce," "Chastel Heraud," "Vienne," "Poyters," "le Roche," &c. Twice we find "leucas" as a measure of distance, instead of the ordinary "miliaria."

however, we shall find that the statements in the Itinerary are in the main confirmed.

From the letter of the Prince to the Bishop of Worcester, we learn that he set out on the 6th July, A.D. 1356; during the siege of Breteuil, according to Froissart. The prince briefly describes his march as being towards the parts of Bourges in Berry, Orleans, and Tours; Froissart is more particular, however. He says that the prince crossed the Garonne (? the Dordonne) at Bergerac, then the Dordonne in entering Rovergne, that he then entered Auvergne, and crossed and recrossed the Allier several times; the next time he is mentioned we find him near Bourges in Berry. This gives a line of march obviously more circuitous than that in our Itinerary; probably the two accounts are not really inconsistent, but only describe different portions of the movement of the whole body, and are derived from different originals. In the letter of the Prince to the Mayor and Corporation of London, it appears that his route lay through Perigort and Limousin "tout droit vers Bourges en Were" (? Beri). After leaving Bourges, Froissart, so far as he goes, agrees with the Itinerary, the points of contact of the two taking place at the towns of Issoudon, Vierzon, and Romorentin. The spirited description of the siege of the latter place in the French author's Chronicle is replaced in the Eulogium by a much briefer account, which still contains particulars omitted in the other. The siege is said to have lasted four days by our author, Froissart apparently assigning only two days to the reduction of the castle. The letter of the Prince to the Corporation, however, assigns *five* days to the siege of Romorentin, thus confirming the superior accuracy of our Itinerary over the account of the French historian. Both our author and Froissart agree in noticing the deaths of La Brette and De Zedulach, Froissart only giving the name of the latter.

After the capture of the castle of Romorentin, Froissart says that the prince proceeded through Anjou and Touraine on his return towards Bordeaux, that the French king marched from Chartres, by La Haie, to Chavigny, which he reached on Thursday, 15th September, and left on the Friday following. The Itinerary, on the contrary, states that the prince when at Chastelleraud, which he reached on the 14th, and left on the 17th,[1] heard that the king had been at Chavigny on the Saturday preceding, that is, the 11th. Froissart continues that, after the king had crossed the Croesce (Vienne) at Chavigny on the 16th, the Counts d'Aucerre and de Joigny, and the Seigneur de Chastillon-sur-Marne, and others, stayed behind to avoid the confusion, and crossed on the next morning; and that the prince, who with his army had moved on the same morning from an adjoining village, sent couriers forward to gather news of the enemy; that these couriers fell in with the Count d'Aucerre and his companions, who pursued them up to the very banner of the prince, and, after a severe fight, were all taken prisoners or killed; and that the prince then heard that the king had passed through Chavigny before him, and saw that a battle was inevitable. Our Itinerary, as it has been stated, says that the prince heard at Chastelleraud that the French king had been at Chavigny, and adds that on Saturday, the 17th, after crossing the Vienne, his baggage having gone over on the night of the 16th, he heard that the main body of the French was marching towards Poitiers, and that a great multitude of them was crossing "ibi," that is, at Chavigny. That he then pushed on "ultra modum" after them, and that his couriers came upon the rear-guard of the French, and

[1] The Prince in his letter to the Corporation says that he remained four days at Chastel-heraud.

put them to flight, but forbore from pursuing them, lest the middle or van-guard should reinforce them. All this is fully confirmed by the account of the prince himself in the letter above quoted. He says that on hearing that the king was crossing the "Vivane," he decided to march rapidly towards him to force him to give battle; but that the French army had passed, except about 700 men, before his arrival. These were pursued to Chavigny, about five leagues off, by his own people. Our author adds that the Count Danser and another were taken in the skirmish. This agrees with Avesbury, who mentions the Counts d'Aunser and de Juny by name; Froissart mentions only Joigny; Baker, de Juyny and de Wanterre.[1] The Prince in his letter to the Corporation notices the capture of the Counts of Auxerre,[2] Juhny, and the seigneur de Chastillon. The interposition of the cardinal of Perigort is probably correctly interpreted in our Itinerary; the motives assigned by Froissart are of the first order of excellence. Baker notices the increase of the French force during the time wasted in negotiation, but makes no comment on the circumstance.

Obstinacy of the struggle at Poitiers.

The account of the battle is very brief, and noticeable principally for the manner in which duration of the struggle is dwelt upon. The author says that in old times men could tell, after the third or fourth or at the outside the sixth pull of the bow, with which side the victory would lie; but that here a single archer fired a hundred arrows, and without hurry, and still neither side yielded. Such an obstinate fight was never heard of. It was said, he further adds, but he will not affirm it for true, that the French saw an armed knight sitting on horseback in the air and fighting against them. The numbers of the prisoners agree

A legend.

[1] So in the printed text (ed. Giles); probably a mistake for "Waucerre."

[2] Printed "Soussoire" by Sir Harris Nicolas.

nearly with those in the list sent to the bishop of Worcester by the prince himself.

A short diary of the march back to Bordeaux concludes this curious piece of contemporary history.

Celebration of the Nativity in A.D. 1357;

The celebration of the Nativity, A.D. 1357, by the king and queen at Marlborough is confirmed by the attestations of the writs of Privy Seal of the 31st Edw. III. preserved in the Record Office; from these it appears that the king was at Marlborough from the 24th to the 27th of December, A.D. 1357, both included, and that on the 28th he was at Hampstead-Marshal in Berks, while by an entry in the Scotch Roll 31 Edw. III. it is proved that he was again at Marlborough on the 30th of the same month. Our author further states that about the Circumcision (A.D. 1st Jan. 1358) the royal pair moved towards Bristol, where nocturnal hastiludes of hitherto unheard-of magnificence were celebrated. The Privy Seal writs again partially confirm our chronicler's statement, for from them we learn that on the 6th Jan., 31 Edw. III., as well as on the 13th of that month, the king was at Bristol, and again at Marlborough on the 16th. On the 28th we find him again at Hampstead-Marshal, where he appears to have remained until the 30th, when he proceeded to Yel-Hampstead, where we find him on the 31st.

of the feast of S. George in A.D. 1358.

A difficulty.

The next statement, that the king kept the feast of S. George (23rd April), A.D. 1358, at Windsor, is also confirmed by these invaluable instruments, which show him to have been there on the 20th, 23rd, and 25th of April in that year. Now, however, we come to a difficulty. Our author adds that the king and queen stayed during the whole summer at Marlborough and Corsham. There is good reason to doubt the perfect accuracy of this statement as applied to the king. The Privy Seal Writs, Patent and Close Rolls, Fine and Gascon Rolls, show that during nearly the whole of June the king was at Westminster, Chertsey, and

Henley; on the 5th, however, it seems that he was at Clarendon in Wiltshire, during nearly the whole of July at the former, and at Hadley and Havering-atte-Bower; in the early part of August at Windsor Park, on the 24th at Clarendon; at Clarendon on 1st and 5th September, at Marlborough on the 14th, 18th, 20th, and 22nd, both included, on the 24th and 29th and on 1st October at Ramsbury, on the 3rd at Windsor, on the 4th at Westminster, and on the 5th at Mortlake.

There appears to be sufficient evidence, therefore, to show that in A.D. 1358 the king at least could not have been at Marlborough during the whole summer; but that he was in the neighbourhood early in June, and in the latter part of August, and there, or near it, during the whole of September, is extremely probable. There seems to be no reason, therefore, to doubt the account given of the accident to the queen at Corsham, which is described with just the amount of particularity which we should expect from an inhabitant of the neighbouring abbey of Malmesbury.

Accident to the queen at Corsham.

The succeeding notices of the death of Isabella the queen-mother at "Risinges, near London," on the day of SS. Timothy and Simphorian (22nd August)[1] A.D. 1358,

Death of the queen-mother.

[1] Her death is assigned to 26th August, A.D. 1357, by the Continuator of Murimuth (p. 191), and to A.D. 1358 by Knighton (col. 2618). Dr. Pauli (Gesch. von Engl. IV. Stammtafel.) adopts the former date, although the date in the Eulogium is confirmed by an entry on Close Roll 32 E. 3. m. 1, where are found the words "vicesimo secundo "die Augusti proximo præterito, "quo die .... mater nostra obiit," in an instrument dated 22 Jan. 32 E. 3. Of the eleven inquisitions taken after her death, one says that she died on 23rd August, one is illegible, seven that she died on 22nd August, and two omit all mention of the date. The place of death is mentioned in one only. M. Buchon is still more unfortunate than Dr. Pauli, for he asserts that the queen actually died in November, A.D. 1358. In a wardrobe-book of her household, preserved in the Record Office there are lists of her clothes, furniture, &c. One of the entries contains a catalogue of her books, which is so curious that I cannot forbear from transcribing it, in the belief that it has never been printed before: "Libri Romanizati:—Unus liber

and of her funeral on 27th November[1] in the same year at the church of the Grey Friars in London, appear to have been transcribed with but few alterations from what may be called the rough notes of the author in this Kalendary Chronicle. They doubtless form the original authority for the common account of the two events; for the Eulogium having been most probably completed down to A.D. 1362 in that year, these entries in it cannot have been written later than four years after the occurrence of the events which they describe, and the original entry, from which they were doubtless taken, probably made as soon as the author heard the news. This earlier entry makes no mention of the place of the queen's death, which it appears, both from the Inquisition *post mortem* for Wilts in the Record Office, and from a book of accounts of the queen's household among the Cottonian MSS., was Hertford Castle. The description in the Eulogium of Rising Castle as "near London" appears to me to indicate a combination of two accounts, one of which, though imperfect, was accurate as far as it went. The cause of death there given, on the authority probably of popular rumour, to judge from the phrase "dicunt "quidam," appears to be hardly reconcileable with the evidence afforded by the Household Accounts; but the dates in our text of the death and funeral are confirmed by the same invaluable document, of which an

"qui vocatur Tresor et Bruyt in "fine; unus magnus liber coopertus "cum coreo albo de gestis Arthuri; "unus liber consimilis de sanguine "regali; unus liber de Tristram et "Isolda; unus liber Romanizatus "duce de Basyns; unus liber con- "similis de Emery et Nerbon; unus "liber consimilis de Perceval et "Gauwayn; unus liber consimilis "de bello Trojano; unus liber con- "similis de Baudrous;," and a gradual, ordinal, and book of homilies. From side entries it appears that the first four were delivered to the Queen of Scotland and the rest to Edward III.

[1] An order to clear Bishopsgate Street and Algate Street for the procession, dated 20th Nov. A.D. 1358, is printed in the Fœdera.

admirable analysis has been given in the Archæologia (vol. xxxv. p. 454) by Mr. Bond.[1]

Mission of the duke of Lancaster to Calais.

The accounts of the mission to Calais of the duke of Lancaster and of the expedition of the king in A.D. 1359 are very brief, but display a particularity in dates which point to contemporary authority. The date attributed to the embarkation of the king (27th Oct.) is, however, one day too early; an entry on the Close Rolls 33 Edw. III.,[2] asserting that it was on the 28th, between daybreak and sunrise, that the king embarked at Sandwich, and that he reached Calais on the same day about the hour of vespers. The account in the Kalendar, on which that in the Chronicle is probably an improvement, is full of inaccuracies; it was most likely written from closely contemporary rumour, before the more authentic reports reached our author, which he has incorporated in the later notices in his Chronicle. We have there the royal expedition of A.D. 1359 described as a mere day's stay in Calais, and the invasion which terminated in the peace of Bretigny, postponed to October in the succeeding year. The date assigned to the embarkation of the duke of Lancaster (27 Sept.) is rather earlier than would be inferred from the statements of Knighton and Froissart.[3] The length of his sojourn at Calais it is not easy to discover. Our author's account is probable, for it is clear from what Froissart says that the duke was anxious to leave Calais as soon as possible.

An aurora.

The "nebula lucida" of 25th February, A.D. 1362, is very carefully, though briefly, described; it was most

[1] A notice of the entry of the Bones Homes into their monastery at Edington is added at the end of A.D. 1358 in the Kalendar.

[2] Cf. Close Roll 33 Edw. III. m. 9d. The memorandum is printed in Rymer.

[3] Knighton (col. 2621) says that the duke reached Calais "post festum Sancti Michaelis;" Froissart (p. 414, 2), "environ la fête S. Rémy" (1 Oct.). He could hardly have occupied two or three days in crossing from Sandwich to Calais, as appears from the last note.

probably nothing more than a very fine aurora. The brilliancy must have been of unusual intensity, however, since it enabled men to thread needles, and to distinguish pebbles, and even grains of dirt. No wonder, therefore, that it "cast a great fear upon those that "saw it. The tempest of the 15th January in the same year is mentioned by most chroniclers of the period; it appears to have been merely a south-wester ("ab Meridie et Occidente proveniens") of great severity, and its ravages seem to have extended over a very wide area.[1]

A tempest.

Battle of Brignai.

The great battle between the French and the "gentes "sine capite," one of the contemporary titles of the Great Company by which France was at this time overrun, stated by our author to have been fought near Montpellier in the beginning of Lent, appears to be the famous battle of Brignai, near Lyons, in which Jacques de Bourbon fell. Our author is more correct in this date than Froissart, who assigns the battle to the Friday after Easter (2nd April), A.D. 1361, which disagrees both with the date, Wednesday before Palm Sunday (6th April), A.D. 1362, given in the epitaph of Jacques de Bourbon, and that, 6th April, A.D. 1362, given in the Grandes Chroniques de France;[2] the Eulogium coincides with both as to the year. With regard to the locality of the battle, however, our author is clearly wrong, Montpellier being at a considerable distance from Brignai. It is not unlikely that the fact that De Bourbon was sent *from* Montpellier by the king of France[3] may have had something to do with the mistake in a contemporary account, written at a distance from the scene of the action. The fortifica-

---

[1] The deaths of Henry, duke of Lancaster, and John de Beauchamp are recorded in the Kalendar under A.D. 1361.

[2] See Buchon's note, vol. i. p. 455.

[3] Froissart, vol. i. p. 454.

tion and victualling of the papal palace at Avignon by Innocent VI. from fear of the attacks of the Companies, the frustration of his intention to remove from Avignon by death[1] from a dropsical disorder, the death of Joan, queen of Scotland, the sitting of the celebrated Parliament in which the Statute of Purveyors was enacted, and pleadings in the English tongue first introduced into the courts of law, are all narrated in clear and concise language, which I think may be safely assumed to be that of our author himself. To the same source I would attribute the curious tirade against the rage of the English for dress in A.D. 1361 and 1362, which immediately succeeds, and which furnishes at once a very good specimen of our chronicler's power of composition, and incidentally a very minute and valuable description of the costume of his countrymen during those years.

The costume of A.D. 1361–2.

His main objection to the prevailing fashions appears to be the effeminacy of the male dress. The "goun," a word which he oddly derives from "gounyg," which properly means, he says, (or is correctly pronounced,) "wounyg, quasi aperta derisio," is not open in front, as is becoming *in men*, and those who wear them, viewed from behind, look more like *women* than males; the small hoods, fastened up under the chin, are buttoned after the manner of *women;* the split boots, which are tied to the "paltok," are called harlots, and "thus one *harlot* serves another;" while the paltok itself would be more properly worn by an ecclesiastic than a layman, and for the strangest of all conceivable reasons, viz.: because in the Books of Kings it is said that Solomon never in all his life made use of

[1] His death is entered in the Kalendar on 11th September, A.D. 1362. He died on the 12th. The election of Urban V. is correctly entered on the vigil of All Saints (31st October) in the same year. The death of Simon (de Aumeney), abbot of Malmesbury, and the election of Walter de Cam conclude the notices for the year.

such garments, or, in other words, never put on a "paltok." This will be easily conceded. The profusion of gold, silver, and precious stones worn by all classes, the peaked shoes called "crakowes,"[1] more like the claws of devils than the ornaments of human beings, are also condemned, and a character given of those who wore this costume, which is evidently considerably exaggerated, and in which may perhaps be traced the bitterness of one debarred from the vanities which he condemns. It is hardly possible to help thinking that the memory of the "opera . . . in sæculo præhabita" which our author complains in his proem occasionally disturbed his pious meditations must have here, unconsciously perhaps, lent vigour and pungency to his comparisons. However applicable his other accusations may have been, it is certain that at least "in campis lepores" cannot have been generally true of his fashionable contemporaries, many of whom must have fought at Cressy and Poitiers; and it is certain that their censor must have known that it was false.[2]

Visit of the Black Prince to Gascony in A.D. 1363.

We now come to the visit of the Black Prince to Gascony in A.D. 1363. This is assigned to 9th June, and his arrival at Bordeaux to 11th June. The joyful reception with which he met is confirmed to some extent by Froissart.[3] The death of Ralph de Salopia

[1] These are commonly believed not to have been introduced until A.D. 1390. See Pauli, Gesch. v. Engl. iv. 651, note (2). On the subject of the English costume of this period see the Prophecies of John of Bridlington in the Political Poems and Songs edited by Mr. Wright, in the present series, vol. i. pp. 183, l. 14–19, and 186, l. 12 to end, and preface of same volume, pp. xlv., xlvi. It appears from these passages that there was a change of fashion *eleven times* in one year. The attack of Chaucer in the Canterbury Tales (Persones Tale, *Contra Luxuriam*) refers to the costume of a later date.

[2] Similar accusations to those in the Eulogium are made against the petits maîtres of the period, by way of prophecy, by John of Bridlington: "In bello tales nulli fient speciales" (p. 183, l. 15, and p. 186, l. 17). The "swells," however, of that age, as well as of this and of most others, had shown that they could fight when the necessity arose.

[3] Book i. pt. ii., cap. cliii.

gives occasion to some severe remarks on the number of episcopal changes in England at the time, and the simoniacal methods of obtaining ecclesiastical dignities. The outspokenness of our chronicler is worthy of notice; other examples of it will be seen as we proceed. In the following notice of the Parliament of Oct. A.D. 1363, and of the sumptuary laws therein enacted, the text of the Eulogium coincides almost verbally with that of the Continuation of Murimuth, that is, of Higden; I hope to show in the sequel that the Continuator has here, and in a few other subsequent passages, followed the Eulogium, and not the Eulogium the Continuator.

Simony in England.

Parliament of October A.D. 1363.

We now come to a grave chronological difficulty. Our author states that king John of France arrived in London on 6th Nov., A.D. 1363, while the Parliament was sitting, that is, according to his own assertion, on the same day as the king of Cyprus, and a week before the king of Scotland. Now Knighton[1] says that the king of France did not reach London until after the Feast of the Purification (2nd Feb.), A.D. 1363, *i.e.* A.D. 1364 (the Grandes Chroniques de France[2] fix the exact date on Sunday, 14th Jan.), and though he agrees with the Eulogium in making the two kings present at the same time in London, in which he is in contradiction with Froissart,[3] it is difficult to see how both could have been mistaken in a date likely to be so publicly known as that of the arrival of an illustrious prisoner on an important mission, but not less so to explain a similar blunder in an author more recently contemporary than either of them with the event in question.[4] The death of king John is placed on the

Difficulty as to date of arrival of king John of France in England in A.D. 1363–4.

[1] Col. 2627.

[2] Grandes Chroniques, ed. Paulin Paris, vi. p. 228. Buchon (Froissart, i. p. 469, note) gives Sunday 24th February, as the date assigned by the French Chronicle.

[3] Book i. pt. ii. cap. clix.

[4] Letters of safe conduct for the king, about to come to England, dated 5th December, 37 Edward III., are printed in the Fœdera, p. 718.

6th April, instead of the 8th. The general order to the clergy to celebrate his funeral service is noticed; and it is asserted that the king accompanied his body to a distance of two leagues from London. Froissart makes no mention of this act of respect in his account of the funeral.[1] The account of the battle which follows agrees in date with the battle of Cocherel, in which Bertrand du Guesclin defeated the Captal de Buch, and in most of the particulars specified. The remark with which the account concludes is curious, as containing a contemporary distinction, "secundum "leges armatorum," between the word "bellum," a battle, in which a king was engaged, and the phrases "conflictio," "congressus," and "discussio," in which this was not the case.

Distinction between "bellum" (a battle) and "conflictio," &c.

There seems to be nothing worthy of note in the notices which follow of the works at Windsor and Sheppey, of the frauds of the Lombards,[2] the Parliament of January, A.D. 1365, the embassy to Flanders in A.D. 1364,[3] and the battle of Auray, except the verbal coincidence with the Continuator of Murimuth in the second, the very free application of a proverbial phrase to the king in the third, and the differences between the last of the corresponding narrative in Froissart, who makes no mention of the report noticed by our author that Eustace, nephew of queen Philippa, was present and gained much glory and many prisoners.[4]

Battle of Auray.

---

[1] Book i. pt. ii. cap. clxiv.

[2] This entry must have been written after the liberation of the merchants from the Tower.

[3] In the Great Roll of the Pipe for 38 Edw. III. is an account of Simon, bishop of London, for expenses, receipts, &c. "eundo in "nunciis regis versus partes Flan- "driæ pro facto maritagii comitis "Cantebrugg' et ducissæ de Burgon' "filiæ comitis Flandriæ . . . . . "a xix. die "Julii . . . anno xxxviij., quo "die iter suum arripuit de London' "versus partes prædictas, usque xiij. "diem Septembris proximo sequen- "tem, quo die rediit London . . . ." The date in the Eulogum, "circa "Ad vinculam Sancti Petri," is included between these limits.

[4] The phrase "mediante Dei aux- "ilio et domini Johannis de Chan- "dos," oddly as it sounds, recalls

The birth of Edward, son of the Black Prince,[1] at Angoulême is described with much particularity; his baptism is said to have been performed "in civitate "Castelli." The words "xxvij die Januarii, *primâ die* "*hebdomadæ*," seem to indicate that the 27th Jan. in the year of the birth fell on Sunday; unfortunately, however, the years, A.D. 1359 and A.D. 1370, are the two nearest years to A.D. 1364 (the date given in the text) in which this is the case. There are two ways of escaping the contradiction. We may assume a mistake in the MS. for "xxviij.," which would make the year A.D. 1364; or we may suppose that "prima dies "hebdomadæ" is not the same as "feria prima," but means Monday, which would give A.D. 1365. The latter is the more probable, inasmuch as the chronology of our author seems to require the year to commence after January; I have therefore adopted it in the margin. Froissart puts the event in A.D. 1363, the Continuator of Murimuth in A.D. 1365.

Date of the birth of Edward, son of the Black Prince.

With regard to the asserted mission of Edmund, earl of Cambridge, the bishop of Ely, and others, to Flanders after Christmas in A.D. 1365, I am unable to discover any satisfactory record of the fact; it is quite possible, however, that the mission may have been a secret one, not generally known. There are numerous accounts of ambassadors to Flanders enrolled on the Pipe Rolls, but the object of their mission is not generally stated; and in the few original accounts which

Secret mission of the earl of Cambridge and others to Flanders.

---

the remark of Jean de Montfort to Sir John Chandos on the field after the victory, recorded by Froissart: "Après Dieu, je vous en dois "savoir plus grand gré que à tout "le monde." The "N." preceding the name of De Montfort in our text is evidently a mistake for "J."

[1] The title "principi Aquitaniæ" here applied to the Black Prince contrasted with that of "princeps "Walliæ," before uniformly given to him, is noticeable and indicative, I think, of the contemporaneousness, as it is certainly of the accuracy of the writer. The duchy of Aquitaine was granted to the prince by patent, 19 July, A.D. 1362.

remain among the Miscellanea of the Queen's Remembrancer, there is nothing which will throw light on the subject. Thomas de Uvedale, knight, certainly accounts for a journey to Flanders on secret service of the king from 19th Jan., 39 Edw. III. (A.D. 1366), to 12th Feb. next, and, in the absence of contradictory evidence, I have provisionally adopted these dates in the margin, but they must be received for what they are worth, and no more.

Earthquake in the island of Rhodes.

The account of the earthquake in the island of Rhodes, given on the authority of Richard Chastellayn, who communicated the particulars orally to a monk of Malmesbury, is very interesting, and remarkable as containing no detail of a miraculous character, though the peculiar severity and destructiveness of the phenomenon might have excused a supernatural interpretation, or a few additions to the narrative of the eye-witness, who, judging from his temperate narrative, seems to have been a very sensible man.

Battle of Sirf-Sindughi.

The account of the battle between the Christians and the Infidels near Adrianople appears to apply to the defeat of the former in the plains of Sirf-Sindughi[1] on 1st Nov. in the year of the Hegira 766; this (Art de Vérifier les Dates. Table des Eres) commenced on 28th Sept. A.D. 1364, in which year therefore the battle was fought. The Christians were surprised at night by the Turks; and Louis, king of Hungary, barely escaped with his life. Our author, from the phrase "ex relatu eorum qui interfuerunt in illo bello," would seem to have obtained his information from eye-witnesses. The Continuator of Murimuth has apparently copied this notice, and erroneously placed the king of Hungary, whom he calls John, after the Eulogium, among the slain.

---

[1] See Hammer, Histoire de l'Empire Ottoman. Ed. Hellert, Paris, 1835, p. 226. M. Hammer, or his translator, places the battle in the year of the Hegira 766, and in A.D. 1363, incorrectly.

Parliament of May, A.D. 1366.

The notice of the Parliament of May, A.D. 1366, is remarkable chiefly for the freedom of the author's comment on the claim of Urban V. It is an indication of the strength of popular feeling upon the subject.

Date of death of Simon de Islip.

The notice of the death of Simon de Islip supplies the date of his death, not to be found in the Registrum Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ of Mr. Stubbs, nor in the last edition of Le Neve. The simplicity of his funeral is remarked, and exemplified by the fact that there were only six lights burning round the corpse. This is followed by a notice of the death of William de Edington, whose bounty to the poor is specially mentioned. The foundation of the College of Bons Hommes is inserted in the Kalendar; it appears from this that the members entered their monastery at Edington in the octave of the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin, A.D. 1358. His successor is not here named.

Death of William de Edington.

Accounts of a remarkable Aurora Borealis.

Next to this entry follows a description of a remarkable celestial phenomenon, which occurs only in the autograph, in which it had been partially deleted, apparently by some fluid when the MS. came into my hands for transcription. I think it very probable that the notice on p. 241 is another account of the same phenomenon; and that this first account was made up from rumour, and was intended to give place to the second, which, it is said, was communicated to the author by two eye-witnesses. The first account affirms that on the 22nd October, at daybreak and the full moon shining, a number of fiery torches, of a blood-red colour, descended from the orb of the moon, and, discharging small torches or jets of fire, darted hither and thither, and sent flashes of fire towards the north-east and north. More than a hundred stars also were seen to fall from a starless sky. The phenomenon was seen by more than three hundred persons in Oxfordshire, Gloucestershire, and Wiltshire.

In the second description the date is changed to Thursday, the 8th October, and the details given are much more minute. The fiery jets are said to have extended from the moon to the earth; some as large as a human thigh, and about three cubits in length, some six, some twelve cubits, very sharp at the end, like a spear, but growing larger towards the base, constructed like a torch, but a hundredfold bigger, and displaying their length in front, *i.e.* in the direction of motion. The two monks who saw the "visio," and described it to our author, asserted, he says, that it lasted for two whole hours. Many compared the "luminary" (as if the different parts of it had a common origin, or were in some way connected), as they saw it within the concave firmament, to a lighted candle in a house or other hollow space shining through a window or an open chink; and it showed within like a beam of fire, very sharp at the end or point, at the base much wider; and decreasing by degrees down to evanescence, it crossed slowly from the south-west to the north-east.

The author does not intimate that the phenomenon was regarded as supernatural by those who saw it, neither does it appear that he so regarded it himself. His description, in fact, implies an amount of coolness on the part of those who observed it inconsistent with the supposed presence of the miraculous, and an amount of investigation on his own part which would do no discredit even to a positive philosopher.

It is clear that we may quite safely decide with our chronicler that this appearance was not a lunar eclipse.[1]

---

[1] His reasons for this conclusion are the peculiarly satisfactory one that the light of the moon was not at all obscured, and another "quia a nullo elemento cruciabatur," which, I confess, I do not understand.

The fall of stars mentioned in both accounts suggests a shower of aërolites, and the moving luminary might have been a large meteor; against this solution there lie the long duration of the appearance and the time of year. One of maximum periods of "falling stars," which occurs now about the end of November, takes place a little later every year, but the annual change is not large enough to bring the date of maximum as early as 8th October (O.S.) in A.D. 1366; for these reasons I think we must reject the meteoric interpretation. Another phenomenon, which agrees well with the description, is the aurora borealis. The fall of stars might in this case very well have been a shower of so-called sparks, such as frequently accompany the flashes and brushes of the true aurora.[1]

The Chronicle concludes with a notice of the election of William of Wykeham as bishop of Winchester, a promise of an account of his consecration, and a mention of the popular rumour that John Barnet, bishop of Bath, would be translated to the see of Ely.

Account of the Continuation.

The manuscript from which the text of the Continuation printed in the present volume has been taken occupies the latter portion of the Cotton MS. Galba E. VII. (f. 190, col. 1, to f. 207, col. 1). It is written in one hand apparently of the former half of the fifteenth century, and is remarkably free from erasures

[1] I am indebted for the suggestion of the aurora to my friend the Lowndean Professor of Astronomy at Cambridge, by whom, through the kindness of Professor Miller, I am referred to an account of a similar phenomenon (if not the same) in the same year, quoted from some chronicle in Poggendorf's Annalen, B. 48. S. 612 (1839): "Eodem anno (*i.e.* 1366) "die sequenti post festum xi. millia "virginum ab hora matutina usque "ad primam visæ sunt quasi stellæ "de cœlo cadere continua" (? continue), "et in tanta magnitudine "quod nemo narrare sufficit."

and interlineations. It is therefore in all probability not the autograph of the author of the Chronicle which it represents; but it is evidently a nearly contemporary copy.

The narrative extends from A.D. 1364 to A.D. 1413, commencing two years before the date of the last entry in the Eulogium itself, and is full of matter of great interest and value. A very cursory examination is sufficient to show that either it must have been composed at very different periods, or that more than one source has been drawn upon in its compilation; for in the account of the marriage of Richard II. with Anne of Bohemia the writer mentions Philip the Hardy, duke of Burgundy, in these words: "Qui comitatum nunc habet," which evidently imply that the duke was alive when they were originally written; they must therefore have been first written before A.D. 1404, in which year he died. But the entry which describes the death of Wickliffe in A.D. 1384 also notices his exhumation and the dispersion of his ashes, which did not take place until A.D. 1428, after which date therefore the entry must have been made, whether in the present Chronicle or in the narrative here followed by its author.

I am unable, however, to say from what sources, if it be not entirely original, this curious fragment has been compiled; that a great part of it is not to be found elsewhere, original or not, I think there can be very little doubt. A few extracts from it have been already printed in the Appendix to a volume published by the Camden Society (an English Chronicle of the reigns of Richard II., Henry IV., Henry V., and Henry VI., 1856), under the editorship of the Rev. J. S. Davies;[1] Dr.

[1] The readings given by Mr. Davies differ in many instances from my own. I have thought it advisable to record the more important variations from my text in the footnotes, where I have distinguished them by the affix "Da."

Pauli has also quoted it occasionally in his History of England for the reign of Henry IV., sometimes directly, sometimes from the extracts in Leland's Collectanea;[1] Bishop Wilkins has taken from it his account of the Councils of Oxford and London in A.D. 1408 and A.D. 1409; and Speed has used it through an English translation (forming a portion of the Chronicle edited by Mr. Davies mentioned above).

Nothing is known of its author; and I have been unable to discover anything which will leadto his identification. Those writers who have not examined the autograph of the Eulogium itself have generally assumed, naturally enough, that the compiler of that work and of the present belonged to the same monastery.[2] That the writer of the Continuation and the scribe of the MS. of the Eulogium which precedes it in the volume from which it is here printed were inmates of the same religious house is not perhaps so very improbable; but there is nothing whatever to show that the scribe in question was an inmate of the

---

[1] By what process Dr. Pauli has arrived at the remarkable conclusion that the Chronicle throws light on the relations between Henry IV. and his son, the Prince of Wales, I am utterly unable to divine. Certainly not from reading the work.

[2] Thus Leland (Collectanea, vol. i. pt. ii. p. 308) heads his extracts from the latter part of the Eulogium and the Continuation with the title: "Ex "paralipomenis sive derelictis ab "autore Eulogii," even confounding the writers of the two works, and by implication their places of residence. The quotations which follow this heading commence with a few extracts from the last part of the Eulogium, and are continued without a break into the Continuation through half a dozen pages. Mr. Davies also, in the Preface to his "English Chronicle of the "reigns of Richard II." to "Henry "VI.," alluded to in the text, says: "It may be inferred that the writer "of our English Chronicle was of "the same monastery as the authors "of the Eulogium . . . . .," meaning the Eulogium "proper" and its Continuation. It would seem that Leland had used some holograph MS. of both works, for it is very unlikely that he would have assumed two parts of a manuscript in different hands to have been the work of one author. If so, there must be some MS. of both Chronicles which I have not succeeded in discovering.

abbey of Malmesbury, to which, I think, unquestionably, the author of the Eulogium itself may be asserted to have belonged; and further, scanty as the evidence in the Continuation itself is which may fairly be held to indicate the place in which it was written, the whole of that evidence points to Canterbury and not to Malmesbury at all, of which there is not a single notice to be found in the whole course of the narrative.[1]

The author being unknown, we are thrown entirely upon the work itself for evidence of his trustworthiness, as well as of the value of the facts which he has to communicate. But before examining into these points, it will be desirable to give an account of the period included in the Chronicle.

It commences with a notice of the visit of the king of Cyprus to France and England for aid against the Saracens, and passing to the contest between Peter the Cruel and Henry the Bastard,[2] gives a brief ac-

[1] The notices of Canterbury which seem to indicate a residence there on the part of the writer, are the following:—(p. 337), "In redeundo "autem ad curiam singulis mona- "chis Cantuariæ dabat aurum;" (p. 346), "Et nundinæ Cantuari- "enses in vico principali statue- "bantur, sed statim archiepiscopus "rogabat regem ut intra prioratum "revocarentur;" (p. 347), "Hoc "anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis "Symon Sudbury cœpit ædificare "ecclesiam suam cathedralem et "muros civitatis Cantuariæ; et "proposuit ibi ædificasse pulcher- "rimam et fortissimam civitatem;" (p. 354), "Et illi qui redierunt "Cantuariam fecerunt proclama- "tiones ordinationum suarum, et "quendam burgensem ibidem re- "clamantem occiderunt. Cartas, "munimenta, et scripturas in domo "judicii combusserunt;" (p. 358), "Feretrum Sancti Thomæ Cantua- "riensis Symoni de Burley con- "stabulario Doveriæ tradebatur "custodiendum in castro Doveriæ, "et ordinatum fuit quod omnes "homines recederent cum bonis "suis ab Insula Thaneti et eam "vacuam dimitterent; sed hoc mo- "nachi Cantuarienses et insulam "non patiebantur;" (pp. 379, 380), the notice of the visit of Richard II. to the shrine of S. Thomas.

[2] Cont. Mur. p. 202. There is a similarity in the phraseology of both which suggests a common origin. Murimuth's Continuator says, for example: "Rex prædictus ". . . . fugit in Vasconiam ad . . . "principem Walliæ, poscens ab eo "subsidium et juvamen."

count of the battle of Najara, and of the murder of Peter by order of Henry. We then come to the renewal of the war between England and France, the invasion of Ponthieu and the taking of Abbeville,[1] the appeal of the Gascon nobles to the king of France against the exactions of the Black Prince, the commencement of his illness, the proceedings of Du Guesclin in Aquitaine, the rebellion of De Cliçon against John duke of Brittany, the elevation of Simon Langham to the cardinalate, and his interposition in favour of Edward III. with Urban V., the visit of the pope to Rome, the sack of Limoges by the Black Prince, his return into England, the return of the duke of Brittany, and the second assumption of the title of king of France by the king of England.

We then come to a curious account of the publication of the famous bull of pope Gregory XI., excommunicating the Florentines by William Courtenay, bishop of London, at Paul's Cross, and the trouble which his conduct brought him into. This narrative seems to be original; at least I am unable to find a similar account in any other chronicle of the period which I have consulted.[2] It appears from their text that the king, on the Florentines being brought before him by the mayor of the city of London, promised them his protection, in spite of the interdict threatened in the bull to those potentates who should disobey its mandate; that the bishop was immediately summoned before the chancellor and asked how he had dared to

[1] Here again the accounts in the Continuation of Murimuth and our text are verbally similar. Murimuth's Continuator, for example, uses the phrase: "Causam . . . "fractionis pacis . . . imponebant" (p. 205).

[2] Walsingham (pp. 190, 191) says simply: "Eodem anno" (sc. 1376) "excommunicantur a papa," and gives an account of the immediate cause of the sentence.

publish the bull without consulting the king and his council against the statutes of the realm. He could only reply: "Because the pope commanded it." "Choose "then," said the chancellor, "between losing your "temporalities and revoking your words with your "own mouth." The bishop naturally chose the latter alternative, and with the greatest difficulty obtained permission to make the necessary revocation by proxy. His official representative seems to have been a most thoroughgoing performer in his line; and must have been, to judge from his conduct, tolerably practised in doing the "dirty work" of others. He denied utterly in the face of the very persons who had been present, that the bishop had spoken a single word about the interdict; and actually expressed the greatest astonishment that his audience should have so completely misunderstood the speaker. "It is wonderful," he said, "when you are in the habit of hearing so many "sermons in this place, that you should not understand "what people say." How this explanation was received by the audience the chronicler does not tell us.

Passing over the expedition of the dukes of Lancaster and of Brittany into France in A.D. 1371 (apparently a mistake for 1373), and the victory of the earl of Hereford in the same year[1] over the Flemings and French, we come to a statement that in A.D. 1372 the duke of Lancaster went over to Bruges and remained there during the whole summer occupied in negotiations for peace with the duke of Berry, and that he returned unsuccessful to England. There seems to be some confusion here. The duke of Lancaster in A.D. 1372 appears to have returned to England and remained there until the ensuing July, when he entered France with the duke of Brittany. He returned to

[1] See Froissart, i. pt. ii. chap cccxxxii.

England after his expedition with the duke of Brittany in April A.D. 1374.

He seems to have been at Calais during the winter of A.D. 1374–5, and to have proceeded to Bruges in A.D. 1375, where a truce was concluded between England and France on 27th June in that year. I have, however, allowed the date in the text to be repeated in the margin, as I am unable to accommodate, in any satisfactory manner, the real date and the narrative to one another.

We now come to the expedition of the duke into France in A.D. 1373, all notice of the duke of Brittany who accompanied him being, however, omitted; and two incidents introduced here, one at least of which certainly belongs to the former expedition in A.D. 1369, namely, the visit of the earl of Warwick,[1] by permission of the king, and his subsequent death at Calais by poison, according to the contemporary popular report, says the chronicler. An earl of Warwick died there of the plague on 13th November, A.D. 1369.[2] The blunder, if there be not an actual confusion here between the two expeditions of A.D. 1369 and A.D. 1373, may have arisen as follows: Thomas de Beauchamp, earl of Warwick, second son of the earl mentioned above, actually did accompany the duke of Lancaster in the expedition of A.D. 1373, as appears by the documentary evidence in the foot-note;[3] and

[1] See Cont. Mur. p. 206.

[2] Out of twenty-two inquisitions taken after his death, preserved in the Record Office, one is illegible, two omit the date of his death, seventeen give it as 13th November, one as 3rd November, and one as 14th November (Wednesday after the feast of S. Martin), A.D. 1369; three only mention Calais as the place of his decease.

[3] Among the Miscellanea of the Court of Exchequer in the Record Office is an account headed: "Par- "ticulæ compoti Thomæ de Beau- "champ comitis Warr' de quodam "viagio per ipsum facto in servicio "regis . . . . in comitiva . . . "ducis Lancastriæ," from 16th June 47 E. 3. (A.D. 1373), on which day he embarked at Sandwich, to 26th April next (A.D. 1374), when he landed at Dartmouth.

a confusion between him and his father would have been followed, as a natural consequence, by a confusion between their modes of death. This last earl, however, did not die until A.D. 1402.

A notice of the visit of Simon Langham to England as papal nuncio follows, with an account of the serious reprimand which he received from the papal court: "Pro eo quod . . . . . suum deposuit capicium "regi Angliæ." His peace was not made until he had returned to Rome, and proved by satisfactory testimony "quod non nisi medietatem capicii deponebat." On his way to Rome he made a present of money to each of the monks of Canterbury.

We now come to a very curious and interesting account of the proceedings of a great council at Westminster after Pentecost, A.D. 1374. I can find no notice of it elsewhere.[1] The cause of convocation was declared by the chancellor to be a claim on the part of Gregory XI. as lord spiritual and paramount of the realm of England, by the gift of king John, to a subsidy against the rebellious Florentines, which he commanded the king to levy by way of tallage. The Black Prince, William Whittlesey, archbishop of Canterbury, all the lords spiritual and temporal, the provincial of the Friars Preachers, John Owtred, a monk of Durham, John Mardisley, a Friar Minor, who had preached before Edward III. on the day of Pentecost, and Thomas Asshburne, an Augustinian friar, are stated to have been present.

The spiritual lords, being first asked, all declared that the pope was "dominus omnium." The pro-

[1] It is not enrolled on the Rolls of Parliament; and Mr. Parry, in his Parliaments of England, makes no mention of it, though he once quotes an account of a council from the Eulogium itself through Sir Robert Cotton (Cottoni Posthuma).

vincial of the Friars Preachers begged to be excused from replying, and advised that, according to the custom of his order in matters of difficulty, the hymn "Veni Creator," or the mass "De Spiritu "Sancto," should be sung, so that the truth might be more easily arrived at. The monk of Durham replied, by way of a collation, taking as his text, "Ecce duo "gladii hic," and attempting to show that S. Peter had both the temporal and the spiritual power. Mardisley immediately quoted the command, "Mitte gla- "diumtuum in vaginam," proving (in the estimation, at least of the narrator, but the reasoning is peculiar), that the two swords did not signify the two powers in question, and declaring that Christ possessed no temporal dominion, nor did He leave it to His apostles, but on the other hand taught them to relinquish it. He seems, by the account given, to have proved his position by an abundance of evidence, scriptural, scholastic, and historical. The Augustinian alleged that Peter is known by his keys, Paul by his sword. "The "pope is Peter carrying the keys, 'in foro confes- "'sionis.' You, my lord prince, were wont to be "Paul carrying the sword. But because you have "laid aside the sword of the Lord, Peter will not re- "cognize Paul. Wield it, therefore, and he will do "so." With this speech the first day of the discussion ended. The archbishop remarked that there was good counsel enough in England without the friars. To which the prince is said to have replied: "It "was your fatuity which obliged us to call them "together; had we followed your counsel, we should "have lost the kingdom." Next day the archbishop had advanced so far as to be able to say that he did not know what to answer. A sharp reproof from the prince, however, soon brought him to the desired conclusion. "Answer, you ass ('asine')! your duty is "to inform all of us." To which he replied, that it

was his wish that the pope should not be lord here. And, adds the chronicler, one may fancy a little mischievously, "Et hoc consequenter omnes prælati dixe-" runt." When it came to the turn of the monk of Durham, he made the same answer: "Quod non erat " dominus." "Where are the two swords, then?" asked the prince. "My lord, I am better informed now " than I was." The expressed opinion of a majority had produced its usual effect.

The temporal lords all agreed in declaring that, as king John had given his kingdom to the court of Rome without the consent of the realm and the barons, he had done that which he could not do lawfully; and that, therefore, the Charter of Donation was of no force.

We now come to the defeat of the earl of Pembroke by the Spanish on his way to Gascony. This event is not dated at all, but appears to have been intended to belong to the year A.D. 1374. The same remark applies to the notice of the king's unsuccessful attempt to relieve Rochelle, and of its capture by the French, both of which appear to be placed two years too late. The Third Pestilence (A.D. 1369) is also placed in the same year. The latter years of Edward III. are passed over very rapidly. In the notice of the attack of the French and Spanish (p. 340) there seems to be a confusion between two separate invasions, the one in A.D. 1377, in which the Isle of Wight, Winchelsea, Rotyndene, and Rye were ravaged,[1] and another in A.D. 1380, in which the French sailed up the Thames and burned Gravesend.[2] We have next a full account of the origin of the Great Schism after the death of Gregory XI., with a summary of the opinions of the

[1] Cont. Mur. p. 229. Walsingham, pp. 198, 199.

[2] Cont. Mur. p. 241.

learned ("sapientes") on various points of difficulty arising out of the secession of the cardinals.

In the account which follows of the murder of John Hawle, in Westminster Abbey, there are two important differences from the ordinary version of the facts. In the first place, the prisoner, who was in the custody of Hawle and Shakyll, is not generally asserted to have been the count de Denia himself, but his son, whom he had left as a hostage in England on his return to Spain; and it is not commonly said to have been the Spanish who demanded the delivery of the prisoner by Richard II., but the duke of Lancaster who offered a price for him to his custodians. The rest of the narrative agrees with the common accounts. The mention of the passage[1] which the deacon was reading when Hawle was killed is curious, and certainly seems to point to closely contemporary information. What follows calls for no particular notice, except, perhaps, the account of a discussion on the privileges of sanctuary claimed by Westminster Abbey (pp. 345–6), and the epithet "flos Oxoniæ," applied to Wickliffe (p. 345),[2]

[1] "Si sciret paterfamilias qua hora "fur veniret."

[2] It is difficult to assign here the true date of the events related in text. The position: "quod domini "temporales . . . . auferre possunt "bona temporalia ab ecclesiasticis "delinquentibus" is placed among the list of Wickliffe's earliest heresies in the Fasciculi Zizaniorum (p. 3); and these appear to have been first openly avowed in A.D. 1363, the approximate date of his doctorate according to Mr. Shirley (Fasc. Ziz. xvii.) The Continuator of the Eulogium, however, appears to refer to some disputations held at Oxford in the year (which he calls 1378) preceding Wickliffe's appearance before the archbishop of Canterbury and the bishop of London, in consequence of the bull of Gregory XI. (Fasc. Ziz. pp. 242–4), which latter event he places in A.D. 1379. It actually took place early in A.D. 1378 (Fasc. Ziz. xxxi. note [4]). I have, therefore, given 1377 as the date of the disputation. The dates assigned to the commencement of Wickliffe's heresies by Walsingham (p. 191) and the Continuator of Murimuth (p. 121) are respectively 1377 and 1376. With regard to the marginal date assigned to the wreck of the fleet sent to Gascony under John de Arundel, I have founded it on a document in the Record Office, pre-

until we come to an interesting narrative (pp. 347, 348, 349) of the proceedings at Oxford upon the bull of Gregory XI. directed to the chancellor against the great reformer. The hesitation of the university is well known.[1] But nothing is said here about the interruption of the subsequent proceedings at Lambeth by the irruption of the London mob.

Passing over the intervening part of the Chronicle,[2] we come (pp. 350, 351) to a short account of the condemnation of Wickliffe's doctrine of the eucharist in A.D. 1381(?),[3] in which the reply of John de Tyssyngton[4] to the famous Confession is mentioned as being extant in the Chronicler's day among the archives of the university. The account here given of Wickliffe's conclusions is tolerably accurate, and very temperate, the only intimation of the chronicler's views being found in the favourable opinion which he expresses of Tyssyngton's tract.

The narrative of the rebellion under Wat the Tyler is curious. The chronicler agrees with Knighton (or the pseudo-Knighton rather), (col. 2635), and Walsingham (p. 249), in opposition to the monk of Evesham (p. 26), in his account of the destruction of the Savoy.

---

served among the Navy Accounts formerly in the Chapter House, entitled: "Solutiones et regardæ "factæ per avisamentum magni "consilii domini regis diversis ma- "gistris alienigenis et dominis di- "versarum navium submersarum et "naufragatarum in le Mounkesbay "in Cornubia proficiscent, in comi- "tiva domini Johannis Darundell, "et aliorum dominorum secum pro- "ficiscentium versus partes Britan- "niæ." The subsidiary accounts all terminate in December 3 Richard II. See Cont. Mur. (p. 238); Wals. (p. 233).

[1] Walsingham (p. 201) says: "Diu (sc. rectores) hærebant utrum "bullam papalem deberent cum ho- "nore recipere vel omnino cum "dedecore refutare" (? recusare).

[2] The date assigned to the proceedings against the chancellor and vice-chancellor of Oxford (pp. 348–9) is that of the writ summoning them to appear before the council. Close Roll. and 1 Ric. II. m. 41, printed in Rymer.

[3] Fasc. Ziz. xliii. note.

[4] Fasc. Ziz. pp. 133–180.

The mob, he says, carried nothing away with them; and the simple words he attributes to them, "Nolu- "mus esse fures," are probably much nearer the truth than Knighton's more elaborate, "Zelatores veritatis "et justitiæ, non fures aut latrones." He differs from most annalists, however, in representing the young king as greatly alarmed.[1]

The accounts of the proceedings of the parliament of A.D. 1386 against Michael de la Pole, of the council at Nottingham in A.D. 1387, the narrative of events occurring between that council and the parliament of A.D. 1388, and the account of the proceedings of this last parliament, seem to exhibit but few peculiarities, and to agree closely with the narratives of the printed chroniclers and the evidence of the rolls of parliament themselves. But there is a difficulty as to the date of the embassy of the duke of Lancaster to Amiens (p. 369), which is assigned to A.D. 1395, instead of A.D. 1392;[2] and of that of the parliament before

[1] The words "et statim venit "civitas *splendide* armata" recall Walsingham's: "partem vero alii "milites fulgentem armis *splendi-* "*dissime* ad regis præsentiam per- "duxerunt" (p. 253).

[2] See Walsingham, p. 347. Knighton, col. 2471, says he went to Calais. According to both he went again in A.D. 1393 (Wals. 349; Kn. col. 2471). According to Walsingham he returned about the Feast of S. John Baptist in A.D. 1394 (p. 350). Froissart (iv. c. 27) says that the "assemblée des seigneurs de France "et d'Angleterre . . . se fit en la "bonne cité d'Amiens sur forme de "paix et de trêves en celle saison "que on compta pour lors en l'an de "grâce notre Seigneur mil trois "cent quatre vingt et onze, au mi- "carême." The duke of Lancaster returned to Windsor, he further says, on 23rd April, where the proposals of France were discussed. The French ambassadors returned to France shortly afterwards. Again he states that at the parliament of Michaelmas ensuing the truce was prolonged to 24th June, A.D. 1394; and that finally peace was concluded at Lolinghen in A.D. 1393. The conditions mentioned in our text (p. 369) as having been brought to England by the duke agree nearly with those specified by the French historian (iv. c. 27). A series of documents printed in the Fœdera proves that a truce was concluded at Lolinghen on 18th June, A.D. 1389, to last until 16th Aug., A.D. 1392; this truce was confirmed by Richard

which, on his return, he laid the proposals of the French king.

The account of the capture of the earl of Arundel (pp. 372–3) is confirmed by the Parliament Rolls (III. 418), as is also that of the murder of the duke of Gloucester (p. 373), and of the proceedings of the parliament of A.D. 1397–8, which are given at great length (pp. 373–377). The visit of the king to the shrine of S. Thomas of Canterbury before his expedition to Ireland, the landing of Henry of Lancaster, the return of the king,[1] the treachery of Sir Thomas Percy, the interview at Flint (which is erroneously

---

II. on 10th August, A.D. 1389. On the 8th April, A.D. 1391 (French Roll. 15 Ric. II. m. 2) it was prorogued by the duke to Michaelmas, A.D. 1392, and thence to Michaelmas, A.D. 1393; the prorogation being ratified by the king on 5th May, A.D. 1392. It was again prorogued (Fr. Roll. 17 Ric. II. m. 17) on 28th April, A.D. 1393 to Michaelmas A.D. 1394; and finally prorogued by the duke at Lolinghen (Fr. Roll. 17 Ric. II. m. 3.) on 27th May, A.D. 1394 to Michaelmas, A.D. 1398, the prorogation being confirmed on 5th June, A.D. 1394. Lastly, at Paris, on the 9th March, A.D. 1396, a truce of 28 years, from Michaelmas, A.D. 1398, was concluded in extension of this last prorogation, and this was confirmed 11th March, A.D. 1396. It seems difficult to decide what date can be intended by A.D. 1395 in our text. I have placed in A.D. 1394 the parliament at London, to which our chronicler says that the duke brought back the proposals of the French king, identifying it with the parliament at Westminster, 17 Ric. II. Mr. Davies identifies it with the parliament of Winchester in 16 Ric. II. But this is, I submit, unlikely to be the parliament intended by our chronicler, inasmuch as there is no allusion to the conditions of peace apparent during its sittings (Rolls, III. 300), while on the other hand peace was assented to by the parliament of A.D. 1394 (Rolls, III. 315–6). The duke was present at both (*ib.*, 300, 314). The difficulty is to hit upon a parliament at which the duke of Lancaster was present, and in which the conditions of peace are alluded to, after the meeting at Amiens and before the peace of Lolinghen in A.D. 1394. That of A.D. 1394 satisfies all these conditions. Again in the parliament of November, A.D. 1391, the duke is asked to go, and consents (Rolls, III. 286 *b*). The account of the claim made in this parliament by John of Ghent in behalf of his son is certainly erroneous.

[1] In the margin I have given the commonly received date of the king's landing in Wales (25th July). But

called Conway), between the duke of Lancaster, Thomas de Arundel, and the king, the renunciation and deposition of Richard II., and the coronation of Henry IV., are all minutely and accurately narrated; and the account ends with a character in which the luxury, effeminacy, and gluttony of the deposed monarch are especially dwelt upon.

In pp. 385–6 is a very curious account of the discovery of the earl of Huntingdon's conspiracy, which I am unable to find elsewhere. It is quoted by Leland among his extracts from the Eulogium; and from Leland by Mr. Webbe, in the notes to Creton's Histoire (Archæologia, XX.) as the account given in the "Malmes- "bury Chronicle." There can be little doubt that it is founded on contemporary rumour. The death of Richard II. is attributed, with many chroniclers, to voluntary starvation, in consequence of grief at the failure of the plot (p. 387).[1]

The reply of the parliament to the advice of the bishop of S. Asaph in the matter of the complaint of Owen Glyndwyr, "se de scurris nudipedibus non "curare," rests, I believe, on the sole authority of the present Chronicle. It is quoted by Dr. Pauli from Leland.

The long account of the proceedings against Sir Roger Clarendon, the prior of Laund, a Minorite of Aylesbury, and eight Minorites of Leicester (pp. 389–393), is apparently original, and is certainly full of interest; and though, perhaps, the details of the conversations between the king and the friars may have

---

from an account, enrolled in the foreign accounts, 1–6 Hen. IV., of John Lufwyk, esquire, receiver of the chamber, it appears that Richard II. did not leave Dublin until 27th July.

[1] The restitution of queen Isabella, as appears by an account of Richard Cifford, clerk, keeper of her wardrobe (For. Accts. 1–6 Hen. IV.), took place on 31st July, 2 Hen. IV., "quo die prædicta nuper "regina restituta fuit patri suo regi "Franciæ apud Loulyngham."

been somewhat amplified, there can be little doubt, I think, that they are in the main authentic.[1]

[1] The date (p. 384) assigned to the capture of Edmund Mortimer by Glyndwr is found in an account (For. Accts. 7–13 Hen. IV.) rendered by John Hayvarin, esquire, and John Depenham. The latter accounts for the issues of the manor of Gussich, late of Edmund Mortimer, from 22nd June, 3 Hen. IV., "quo die dictus Edmundus captus "fuit per rebelles Wall'." The date of the capture of lord Grey of Ruthin by Glyndwr, is inferred from an entry on the Chester Recognizance Roll, 2–3 Hen. IV. (m. 6), dated 18th April (3 Hen. IV.), in which the event is spoken of as having just taken place. I have to thank my colleague, Peter Turner, Esq., for calling my attention to this instrument.

The date of the attack on the Isle of Wight by the count de S. Pol (p. 399) may be inferred from an entry on Close Roll 5 Hen. IV., p. 1, m. 21 *d.* (Rym. viii. 343). That of the siege of Cardiff by Glyndwr (p. 401) I infer from an account (For. Acc. 1–6 Hen. IV.) of William Rye, serjeant of the pistrina, of receipts of money, provisions, pay of men-at-arms, archers, and mariners, to proceed to Cardiff Castle, to remove the siege, 5 Hen. IV., laid by the Welsh rebels. There is an item of pay for six days in December, 5 Hen. IV. That of the siege of the Castle of Marc (p. 401) is obtained from Close Roll 6 Hen. IV. m. 10 (Rym. viii. 397). That of the appointment of Thomas of Lancaster as keeper of the sea (p. 401) is found on Patent Roll 6 Hen. IV. p. 1, m. 4. That of the imprisonment of the countess of Oxford (p. 401) from an account of Peter Bukton, surveyor of her possessions (For. Accts. 1–6 Hen. IV.), appointed by Pat. 8 May, 5 Hen. IV. (Pat. 5 H. 4, p. 2, m. 19). The account runs from this date to 30th Sept. next, and states that by writ under the G.S. 5 Dec., 6 Hen. IV. (Pat. 6. H. 4. p. 1. m. 14), the king pardoned her and restored her possessions. That of the capture and execution of Serle (p. 402) from an account (For. Accts. 1–6, Hen. IV.) of Thos. Swynbourne, sheriff of Essex and Herts, of his expenses "in executione tractationis "Willielmi Serle proditoris infra "villam regis Colcestr., etc., anno "quinto," and another in the same series of Thos. Wilughby, late sheriff of Lincoln, who states that he received Serle at Melton Mowbray on the 1st August, 5 Hen. IV. (A.D. 1404), and took him to Lenn-Episcopi on the 14th. That of the marriage of the princess Blanche (p. 403) from an account (For. Accts. 1–6 Hen. IV.) of Richard Clifford, keeper of her wardrobe, fr. 21 Feb. 3 Hen. IV. to 6 July next, "quo "die præfata filia regis sponsata "fuit . . filio regis Romanorum . . ." The date of the marriage of the princess Philippa (p. 409) may be inferred from the account of Richard Clifford, clerk (For. Accts. 7–13 Hen. IV.), late keeper of the wardrobe to that princess. He accounts from 14th July 7 Hen. IV. (A.D. 1406), to . . . Nov. next, when he delivered the receipts of his office to her by indenture at Lounde "[post] sponsalia ejusdem filiæ "regis ibidem regi Daciæ." The Roll is much decayed.

The date (p. 397) assigned to the battle of Shrewsbury, 22nd July, is a day later than that given by Walsingham (p. 369), which is confirmed by a very curious account to be found among the foreign accounts of the Court of Exchequer 1–6 Hen. IV. I give an abstract of it in the foot-note.[1]

From this point to the end of the Chronicle there is little that calls for special remark.

Relation between the Eulogium and the Continuation of the Chronicle of Adam de Murimuth.

The Eulogium might be described, with sufficient accuracy, as a new edition of the Polichronicon, with a Continuation down to the year A.D. 1366. The Continuation of the Chronicle of Adam de Murimuth has already been described, with perfect accuracy, as a portion of the Polichronicon and its Continuation.[2] It would be likely, *à priori*, therefore, that there should be occasional coincidences between the two works; and this is actually the case. In pp. 202–3, 204, 205, 206, 207, 212–13, 232, 234, 238, of the present volume, are to be found passages closely approximating to others in pp. 171, 172, 173, 175, 177, 198, 199, 200–1, of the Continuation (ed. Hog.). In order to exhibit the more clearly the nature of the approxi-

[1] It is an account of Wm. Banastre, sheriff of Salop, of expenses incurred in the carrying of the four quarters of Henry Percy (Hotspur), and of the heads of the baron of Kynnerton and Richd. Vernon, knt., "qui nuper contra regem .... se "insurrexerunt apud Husefeld' "juxta Salop' die Sabbati in vigilia "Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ anno "quarto regis hujus et per ipsum "victi," etc., one quarter was sent to London, one to Bristol, one to Newcastle-on-Tyne, one (with the two heads) to Chester. The remains appear to have been preserved in sacks, tied and sealed, with "clowes, "comyn, anys," salt, &c.. and there is an item for "perbulyng' eorum-"dem quarteriorum," *i.e.* the *par-boiling* of the quarters of Percy. Their advanced decomposition is also mentioned.

[2] In the Introduction to the Monumenta, p. 32.

mation between the two, I give the passages in both, two and two, in extenso.

Eulogium (pp. 202–3).

Anno Domini m.ccc.xxxviii. orta est grandis discordia inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, ex eo quod rex Franciæ multas terras et oppida in Wasconia et alibi in portibus transmarinis improbe usurpaverat et injuste tenuerat; qua de causa rex oblationes supplices regi Franciæ fecerat si terras suas recuperare posset. Sed cum nihil proficeret, rex Angliæ collectis undique auxiliis cum militia copiosa, idus Julii apud Orwelle mare prospere transiit. . .

Continuator or Higden (p. 171.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xxxvii. et regis Anglorum Edwardi tertii anno xi. orta est grandis discordia inter reges Franciæ et Angliæ ex eo quod rex Franciæ multas terras et oppida in Vasconia improbe usurpaverat; qua de causa rex Angliæ plures oblationes humiles regi Franciæ fecerat, si saltem sic terras suas recuperare posset; sed cum nil proficeret, collectis undique pecuniis, mare transire disposuit.

Id. (pp. 204–5.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xl. in vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ rex Angliæ cum ducentis ferme navibus mare ingressus est versus Flandriam, juxta le Scluys classem Franciæ copiosam obviam habuit, quapropter per totum illum diem cum suis quid foret faciendum habuit diligentem deliberationem. In crastino enim venit in ejus auxilium miles ille validus Robertus de Morleya cum Boreali classe Angliæ, et commissum est navale bellum fortissimum, ubi, favente Deo, Franci et Normanni ceciderunt, partim cæsi, partim gratis submersi, partim capti. Navibusque eorum exceptis paucis quæ affugerant totaliter ab Anglis occupatis. Duravit autem conflictus ille fortissimus qualis circa Angliæ oras nunquam est ante audita, ab hora diei nona usque ad ortum solis diei sequentis. Rex inde adunato exercitu copioso Borealem partem Franciæ devastavit, urbemque munitissimam Torneie obsedit; . . .

Id. (pp. 172–3.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xl. et regis Anglorum Edwardi tertii anno xiv., idem rex Edwardus in vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ cum ducentis navibus mare ingressus est versus Flandriam; sed juxta maritima Flandriæ classem Francorum copiosam et instructam obviam habuit. Qua de causa per totum diem illum cum suis deliberans, in crastino superveniente in ejus auxilium valente milite Roberto de Morleia cum Boreali classe Angliæ, commissum est navale bellum fortissimum quale circa oras Angliæ nusquam est visum; ubi, Deo favente, Franci et Normanni, acriter sagittati per Anglos, sunt devicti; partim cæsi, partim gratis[1] submersi, partim capti, navibusque eorum, exceptis paucis quæ aufugerant, totaliter occupatis. Inde rex Angliæ Flandriam attingens, adunato exercitu copioso, Borealem partem Franciæ vastavit, urbem munitissimam diuscule obsedit; . . .

[1] *gratis*] This word may possibly be a misreading of "e ratis."

Eulogium (pp. 205–6).

Anno Domini m.ccc.xli. rex Edwardus cum navigio Britanniam Minorem adiit, ubi per cibos inconvenientes et potus plures de suis amisit. Missi tamen sunt ad regem Angliæ a domino papa duo cardinales, qui treugas trienniales inter reges Anglia et Franciæ indixerunt, in quo spatio jus quod rex Angliæ in regnum Franciæ vendicaverat ad plenum posset discuti. In redeundo versus Angliam rex multa incommoda per magnam maris tempestatem perpessus est, quæ per ingromanticos et maleficos dicebatur contingere.

Id. (p. 206).

Anno Domini m.ccc.xlii. obiit papa Benedictus XII. . . . . cui successit Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Clemens VI. vir . . . . sine pari literatus; . . .

Id. (p. 207.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xlvi. in festo Translationis Beati Thomæ Martyris dominus Edwardus, rex Angliæ, apud Portesmouthe ingressus est mare cum mille et quingentis navibus bene apparatis ducatu cujusdam militis, nuper de Francia relegati cognomento Harecourt, omnibus suis quorsum tenderet penitus ignorantibus, atque in Australi parte Normanniæ apud Hogges juxta Sequanam flumen prospere applicuit . . . . . Inde versus Cadamum tendens villam et castrum de Valoy, igne combussit . . . . . cum autem rex venisset ad Cadomum, illam in manu forti cepit et devastavit. . . .

Id. (pp. 212–3.)

Circa festum Sancti Bartholomæi, Philippus, rex Franciæ, qui ad obsi-

Continuator or Higden (p. 173).

Anno Domini m.ccc.xli. et regis Anglorum Edwardi tertii anno xv., idem rex Edwardus cum navigio suo adiit Britanniam; ubi per cibos et potus inconvenientes, plures de suis amisit. Missi sunt tamen ad eum duo cardinales, qui ex parte papæ, treugas trienniales inter reges indixerunt; sub quo spatio de jure quod rex Angliæ vendicavit in regnum Franciæ, ad plenum posset discuti. In redeundo quoque de Britanniæ rex Edwardus maxima incommoda per marinam tempestatem perpessus est, quæ utique per negromanticos regis Franciæ dicebantur procurari.

Id. (p. 137).

Anno Domini m.ccc.xlii., et regis Anglorum Edwardi tertii anno xvi., obiit Benedictus papa: successit cito Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Clemens sextus vocatus; vir quidem insignis literaturæ.

Id. (p. 175.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xlv. . . . . in festo Translationis Sancti Thomæ, rex Edwardus ingressus est mare, ignorantibus omnibus suis quorsum tendere. Sed tandem ductu cujusdam militis de Harecourt, nuper de Francia exlegati, in Australi parte Normanniæ, apud Hogges juxta Sequanam flumen applicuit. Cadomum et alias urbes spoliavit. . .

Id. (pp. 177–8.)

Anno Domini m.ccc.xlvii., et regis Anglorum Edwardi tertii anno

dionem Kalesiæ dissolvendum propius accesserat diluculo et clam nocturnando aufugit, derelictis tentoriis cum victualibus plurimis, quo viso Kalesienses urbem regi Angliæ cum summa humilitate reddiderunt. Quam rex per mensem disponens circa festum Sancti Michaelis in Angliam rediit, concessis etiam treugis novem mensium ad domini papæ instantiam, sed in redeundo sicut alias de Britannia maximam in mari tempestatem perpessus est, quamplures enim validos homines amisit. Unde ipse rex in talem admirantiam et querimoniam prolapsus est, dicens : " O domina mea " Maria, quid protendit, quod ten- " dendo versus Franciam aura grata " potior, mare arridet, et cuncta mihi " eveniunt prospere, sed in redeundo " versus Angliam infortunia nimis " adversa perpetor ? "

xxi., circa festum Sancti Bartholomæi, Philippus rex Franciæ, qui ad dissolvendum obsidionem Calesiæ non procul accesserat, diluculo clam aufugit, relictis tentoriis cum victualibus abunde refertis : quo viso confestim Calesiense, reddiderunt villam prædictam regi Angliæ; qui, propter ejus dispositionem et ordinationem, quasi per unius mensis spatium mansit ibidem. Tandem, ad instantiam domini papæ, concessa treuga inter duo regna. Rex Edwardus, circa festum Sancti Michaelis, in Angliam est reversus ; sed in redeundo, sicut quondam de Britannia Minori repatrians, maximam tempestatem perpessus est in mari, ubi quosdam valentes milites et probos de suis amisit, unde Beatæ Virgini conquestus est, dicens: " O " Beata Maria, domina mea, quid " est et quid portendit, quod ten- " dendo versus Franciam felici aura " potior, mare placatur, et cuncta " mihi prospere succedunt ; sed in " redeundo versus Angliam sæva " infortunia, et nimis adversa, mihi " eveniant ?"

Eulogium (p. 232).

Eodem anno (sc. 1363) factum est parliamentum Londoniis ix. die mensis Octobris, a quo nullus magnas potuit se excusare ; in quo damnatur omne ornamentum argenteum, scilicet, in cultellis, in cingulis, in annulis, in monilibus, in cæteris ornamentis corporalibus, nisi fuerit talis qui xl. libras argenti per annum poterat expendere.

Continuator of Higden (p. 198).

Item hoc anno (sc. 1363), nono die Octobris, tenuit Edwardus tertius Londoniis unum parliamentum, a quo nullus magnus se potuit excusare; in quo omne ornamentum aureum sive argenteum erat damnatum, scilicet, in cultellis, cingulis, annulis, monilibus, et in cæteris corporalibus ornamentis, nisi fuerit talis qui per annum xl. libras posset expendere.

Id. (ib.)

Eodem anno incepit gelare vii. idus Decembris et duravit usque v. idus Martii; dicebatur in populo quod hoc fuit invisum ad centum annos clapsos.

Id. (p. 199.)

Eodem anno, vii. idus Decembris, cœpit gelare, duravitque gelu usque ad xiv. kal. Aprilis.

Eulogium (p. 234).

Eodem anno (sc. 1364) accusati sunt Lombardi mercatores a consociis suis de infidelitate magna ad regem in mercimoniis faciendis, pro qua ne major pars illorum hospitati sunt in Turri Londoniarum per aliquot tempus quousque finem fecerant regi de infidelitate illorum secundum regis voluntatem. Dictum erat in populo quod defraudabant regem de tribus milibus librarum argenti quolibet anno.

Continuator of Higden (p. 200).

Eodem anno (sc. 1364) accusati sunt Lombardi mercatores a consociis suis de magna infidelitate in mercimoniis suis facta regi, unde major pars illorum in Turri Londoniarum aliquandiu inclusa fuit, quousque finem regi juxta voluntatem ipsius fecissent.

Id. (p. 238.)

Hoc anno (sc. 1364) commissum est [bellum] lethale inter Christianos et Paganos in die Omnium Sanctorum, unde principes Christianorum fuerunt: Johannes rex Hungariæ, qui parem in toto mundo bonitatis non habet, Siwardus rex Gorgoniæ, Magister Hospitalis Insulæ de Rodis, cum multitudine copiosa Christianorum ; ubi occubuerunt Pagani xl. m. numerati et multo plures non numerati ; de Christianis v. m. ii. c. x. et xv. peregrini capti et ix. milites et armigeri capti et incarcerati in castello de Chaundelour. Bellum fuit commissum in planis Turkiæ, unde isti fuerunt principes Paganorum : Soldanus Babiloniæ, rex Turkiæ, rex Baldak, rex Belmarinus, rex Tartarorum, rex de Lecco ; tres reges Paganorum ibi occubuerunt per relatum eorum qui interfuerunt in illo bello, sed post iii. menses Lumbardi peregrini emerunt de incarceratis xviii., reliqui martyrizati fuerunt.

Id. (pp. 200–1.)

Eodem anno (sc. 1364) in planis Turkiæ commissum est bellum valde letale, in die Omnium Sanctorum, inter Christianos et Paganos ; in quo de Christianis ceciderunt princeps Joannes rex Hungariæ, Siwardus rex Gorgoniæ, Magister Hospitalis Insulæ de Rodes, cum multitudine Christianorum quinque mill. ccx. ; de Paganis vero occubuerunt xl. mill. virorum robustorum, cum aliis popularibus infinitis ; fueruntque principes Paganorum soldanus Babiloniæ, rex Turkiæ, rex Baldath, rex Belmarinus, rex Tartarorum, rex de Lettowe ; ex quibus tres fuerunt interfecti, ut ipsi qui interfuerunt dicto prælio referebant.

With regard to the first six of these passages, I think that a simple inspection of the two texts will at once suggest a great probability that the Continuation and the Eulogium have been both copied from a common

source, which it is obvious must have been in this case the Polichronicon. The Eulogium, as I have attempted to show in the Preface to volume II., having been completed down to A.D. 1362 in that year, and the Polichronicon having been undoubtedly brought down to a date later than A.D. 1347 before A.D. 1362, there can be no doubt that Higden did not use the Eulogium in these passages; and nearly as little therefore that our author has continued to draw upon him in the latter part of his Fifth Book as it is certain he has drawn upon him in many portions of the four preceding books. The coincidence between the two here also, as before, is not accurately verbal; in the later work we find transpositions and amplifications of phraseology, and sometimes additional particulars, the result, very likely, of newer information and more extensive inquiry.

When we pass, however, to the consideration of the last four of the parallel passages in the Eulogium and the Continuation, the difficulty of rightly assigning priority to one of the two is very considerably increased. The only known MS. of the second work is that preserved in Queen's College, Oxford, from which Hall's edition was printed. It is a holograph MS. terminating with the year A.D. 1380, and therefore written about or after that date. Nothing is known at present which would lead to the determination of the date of composition of the work itself except the fact mentioned in the Introduction to the Monumenta (p. 32), that in the year A.D. 1387 Trevisa employed it down to A.D. 1361 in the compilation of his own chronicle. Before that date, therefore, it must have been completed down to A.D. 1361. If now we assume provisionally that the text of the Queen's College MS. exactly represents the original text of the Continuation in the portions referred to below, that is, if we assume that the notices of the later events are not additions made to the earliest text by a later hand and subsequently copied into the text either of the Queen's

College MS. or its original, we may allege the following facts as establishing the priority of the Eulogium:

1. The notice by the Continuator in the account of the birth in A.D. 1365 of Edward of Angoulême, son of the Black Prince, of his death in his seventh year, that is, in A.D. 1372, before which event therefore the entry of the birth could not have been written.
2. The notice, in the account of the matrimonial negotiations between England and Flanders in A.D. 1364, of the subsequent marriage of Margaret, daughter of the count of Flanders, to Philip of Burgundy, which took place in A.D. 1369, before which date therefore the account could not have been written.

As it has been proved in the Preface to volume II. that the last entry in the Eulogium could not have been written at latest after A.D. 1367, the existence of either of these notices in the Continuation would be sufficient to prove the priority of our author on the assumption which we have made.

If, however, the assumption itself be not admitted, and much may be alleged against its admission, there are still, it seems to me, sufficient critical grounds for asserting, or at the least for refusing to relinquish, the belief that it is the Continuator of Murimuth who has followed our author, and not the latter who has copied from the former. I will enumerate the peculiarities which induce this conclusion. The remarkably ungrammatical construction in p. 232, "ubi damnatur "omne ornamentum argenteum. . . . . *nisi* "*fuerit talis* qui XL. libras argenti per annum poterat "expendere," which is peculiarly characteristic of the Latin style of our author, is found in the Continuation (p. 198), the style of which is entirely free from similar blemishes in all other portions of the work. Again, our author's mistake of calling Louis, king of

Hungary, "Johannes" (p. 238), is found in the Continuation (p. 200). In addition to committing these two suspicious blunders, the Continuator, in the parallel passages (pp. 199, 200), omits the references to contemporary rumour found in the Eulogium, and in the last (pp. 200–1) might be almost said to have arranged in good order the broken jottings of the Eulogium, which may almost be supposed to have been taken down from particulars communicated *vivâ voce* to the author. It is certainly in this instance infinitely more difficult to believe that our author followed and amplified the Continuator[1] than that the Continuator arranged and condensed the materials before him in the Eulogium, copying the mistakes which he found there, and adding, we may remember, a few of his own.

On these grounds, I think, it may be concluded that in the last four of the parallel passages enumerated above, it is not the author of the Eulogium who follows the Continuator, but the latter who either draws from the former or from the sources employed by him; and bearing in mind the marks of originality in the autograph of our Chronicle, we may decide with fair probability, I think, that the Continuator has been indebted, mediately at least, to the Eulogium itself.

Historical Credibility and Value of the Works.

The credibility of a witness to historical facts depends jointly, like the credibility of any other witness, upon his desire to tell the truth, and upon his power of telling it. The value of his work depends simply upon the importance of the facts to which he testifies,

[1] Why, for example, should our author have given himself the trouble of disarranging a carefully ordered narrative when he might, according to his wont, have simply transcribed it?

and this importance may vary with the objects and tastes of every new reader.

To commence with the credibility of our witness, it is clear that his power of recording the truth, the desire being presupposed, depends jointly upon his power of acquiring a knowledge of the truth and his power of accurately reproducing that knowledge. In order, therefore, to evaluate with complete accuracy the trustworthiness of this or of any other historical work, so far at least as it relates to matter not so antecedently improbable as to render superfluous all examination of the evidence in its favour,[1] we ought to be

[1] This is, perhaps, not the place to discuss the influence of belief in miracles on the credibility of a mediæval annalist. It seems clear, however, that such a belief would be far less likely to affect injuriously the powers of observation and judgment in reference to common unmiraculous events in an age when it was universally accepted than in ours in which it is the badge of a contemptible minority. Yet we should, I think, be hardly justified now in refusing to ask the most determined spiritualist to direct us from S. Paul's to Charing Cross. Why, then, should we doubt the mediæval historian's statement that an accident happened to the queen of Edw. III. at Corsham, because we find that he has also recorded the legend of the Old Woman of Berkeley, and the appearance of an armed man in the air at the battle of Poitiers? Yet a rejection of all the testimony of all supernaturalists seems to be implied in the condemnation passed by the late Mr. Buckle, upon the whole body of mediæval historians, whom he has declared to be all unworthy of credit, because some of their number have recorded miraculous events. The truth is that mediæval miracles, excluding those which are misinterpretations of natural events or merely extraordinary facts, would have been extremely difficult of disproof, if those who heard of them had been inclined to sift the evidence in their favour. There were many peculiarities about them which rendered their investigation difficult or impossible; the locality of most of them was remote, the epoch of very many of them distant, and, in the entire absence of those general principles in accordance with which we should now reject similar narratives without any examination at all, the examination necessary to justify their rejection was, in almost all cases, impossible. Besides this, many of the tales themselves were recommended to believers by the support which they afforded to the "side of virtue;" and it is by no means impossible that a pious monk, innocent of all idea of "Laws of Nature," rather

able to establish by sufficient evidence the personal veracity of the writer, to ascertain his relation to motives of falsehood, his position with regard to means of information, and his powers of what may be conveniently called "accurate repetition," including his character as a transcriber of written documents, and his character as a perpetuator of oral narratives. The evidence on each of these points might be either derived from the Chronicle or independent of it, either direct or indirect, and any or all of these. On some points, as the veracity of the author, his own direct testimony would be clearly inadmissible.

In dealing with those portions of the work which are actually known to be derived from authorities of established credibility, or, if independent of them, verifiable by comparison with their statements, the consideration of the personal veracity of the author need not of necessity enter into the investigation; but in all cases in which he is the sole known witness, or the sole known original witness, to a fact, it is, or ought to be, clear that his character for honesty and accuracy, as represented by competent witnesses, would be an important and necessary element of the materials for forming a conclusion. Unfortunately, in the case of most mediæval annalists, this sort of evidence to character is either wanting or worthless; generally of

---

of a critical temper in the matters of this world, a tolerably keen sifter of testimony to ordinary events, might yet, for the sake of an apparent revelation, the moral, or the example, lay aside his shrewdness and surrender his belief to some now transparent tale of a saintly apparition "in punishment of wickedness and vice," or "in maintenance of true religion and virtue." Even in the present day, hundreds of persons who would reject a simply extraordinary story without investigation, would accept in a similar manner a decidedly miraculous one, more especially if it tended to support a favourite opinion; so impossible is it to conclude from the effect of the professedly supernatural to the treatment of that which makes no claim to anything more than rarity of occurrence.

a date far later than that of the work itself, and often based upon an estimate of the accuracy of the author as a mere compiler. There is, in fact, as it has been happily said, "nothing but the case to try the witness "by, and nothing but the witness to try the case by."

The present instance forms no exception to these remarks; the earliest witness to the truthfulness of our author being the compiler Pits, whose estimate, though certainly quite independent of the work, for it is perfectly clear that he never read a line of it, does not show a pedigree of sufficient antiquity to entitle it to much consideration. The testimony of the earliest known witness, Capgrave, comes down to us at second hand, and on the untrustworthy authority of Bale, and besides is silent as to the character of our chronicler. Boston, of Bury, who might have given contemporary evidence, omits all notice of the Eulogium from his catalogue, so far as it is represented by Tanner and the Middle-Hill MS.; and besides this, it did not apparently enter into the plan of his work to give a critical estimate of the writers whom he enumerates.

We are, therefore, reduced to the evidence of the author himself, and the evidence to be derived from an examination of his work. The former, indirectly given in the Proem to the Chronicle, where he tells us that he had been often pressed by his prior to undertake an historical work, is hardly admissible in proof of his character for truthfulness, as it is in proof of the other qualities needed to constitute a credible annalist, for we must evidently assume that the statement itself is true, in order to establish the truthfulness in question. There are accompanying particulars, however, confessions of sinfulness, evil thoughts, weakness, weariness at the lessons and prayers to which he was compelled to listen, and even of ignorance and dulness, which seem to augment the credibility of the assertion, and which throw an air of truth over that which,

if it had stood alone, might have been, as it very often was in similar cases, a pure invention.

The evidence, derivable from an examination of the work itself, of the author's desire to tell the truth, consists in a number of particulars, partly dependent upon the peculiarities of the autograph, partly belonging to the work itself. To the former class I would assign the numerous corrections, erasures, interlineations, and other additions, and even blanks, as being all distinct proofs of an anxiety on the part of the compiler to render his work as perfect and accurate as possible. To the latter belongs his choice of authorities, which, if it had been bad, would hardly have established more against him than a want of judgment, but being very good, proves his carefulness, and his power of weighing evidence and selecting witnesses.

His relation to motives of falsehood it is not easy to discover. He seldom expresses any opinion of his own, and our means of ascertaining his likes and dislikes are consequently very scanty. But taking such evidence as he has left us, he appears to have been a very good hater and tolerably impartial in the distribution of blame. Pope, king, and commonalty all come in for a rating, the latter especially for some of his strongest language. If Urban V. fails in obtaining from the English parliament payment of the arrears of Peter's Pence, our monk celebrates the defeat of a pope by an: "unde "scribitur. 'Multa petenti pauca debentur.'" If Edward III. succeeds in getting from the same body a renewal of the grant of the toll on exported wools he comes down upon a king with a: "Sed, ut scri- "bitur, 'Quanto plus habet tanto plus auget, quanto "'ditior tanto cupidior.'" Does he condemn the extravagance of his contemporaries in dress, they are "Fatui," "nebulones," "citherones," "histriones," "mimi," "in aula leones, in campis lepores"; their

long-toed boots, "ungula dæmonum," their short gowns "aperta derisio." And, worst of all, the unfortunate monk of Chester, who has roused his ire by contradicting William of Malmesbury, is a "madidus monachus," a dreamer, and a despiser of "the wisdom of our an-"cestors." His admiration, infrequently as he expresses it, is equally warm. Clement VI. is "vir bonus, affabilis, "jocundus, facetus, morigeratus, *sine pari* literatus." Louis of Hungary, "parem in *toto mundo* bonitatis non "habet." It is to be regretted that the narrative of his own time is not more full, for there can be no question that with the liveliness of feeling that these few extracts indicate, he would have given an animated picture of the habits and events of the latter part of the fourteenth century. What he has given us makes us regret that he did not take the trouble to give us more.

Evidence of position on affecting his power of acquiring information.

As to his power of acquiring information, the evidence of his position is much more copious and of higher value than any which we have hitherto been discussing. As it has been fully investigated in the Preface to the First Volume, a repetition of the result arrived at is only necessary here; and it will be assumed as established that he was a monk of the abbey of Malmesbury. The importance of his position as the chosen annalist of such a monastery at such a period can hardly be overrated. The abbot of Malmesbury was one of the twenty-five parliamentary abbots retained by Edward III., and his name appears upon the Close Rolls in writs of summons several times between A.D. 1350 and A.D. 1366. On each occasion of his appearence in obedience to the writ he would doubtless obtain in addition to his acquaintance with the business of the parliament, much valuable information in regard to important political events, which, we may fairly suppsoe, would be communicated to the Chronicler of the abbey, who

would thus be placed in a very favourable position with regard to the important events of the latter part of his work, with which he has been already shown to have been contemporary. Whether he was even an original witness of any fact narrated by him does not appear from his own avowal, and no other evidence that he was is extant. It has been established, however, that he occasionally employs contemporary report, and in two instances he himself states that his accounts were derived from the narratives of eye-witnesses, in one instance directly, in the other indirectly. In another most important instance, the very curious Itinerary of the Black Prince in the Campaign of Poitiers, it is clear from internal evidence that he has availed himself of the testimony—probably the written testimony—of a person accompanying the English army; who that person was is not at present known. It is moreover tolerably certain that he noted down the events of the latter years of his chronicle while they must have been quite fresh in his memory.

Not known if ever an eye-witness.

Employs contemporary report, and narratives of eye-witnesses.

Character as a transcriber and compiler.

With regard to his character as a transcriber and compiler, there is, I fear, but little to be said in his favour.

With few exceptions, which are fortunately in the more important parts of the work, the transcription, condensation, and combination of authorities are done in a slovenly manner, but if judged by reference to similar works of about the same period, not perhaps in a more slovenly manner than the average of monastic annalists, but certainly more inaccurately than the portions, for example, of the contemporary Polichronicon copied from other writers. I should be glad, for his own sake, to be able to attribute the errors which deface the pages of his autograph to monastic fidelity in following the MSS. employed by him; but this is almost impossible, for the probability is extremely

small that all the MSS. to which he had access, and which represent works of the most varied dates and characters, from S. Isidorus of Seville to Ralph Higden of Chester, should be everywhere corrupted by similar inaccuracies. To explain such a community of error, we must either assume that they were all the work of one scribe, or, if of many, then all making similar blunders. Of these suppositions, the most probable is the first, and this is extremely unlikely, for even if all the MSS. employed belonged to *one* monastery, it is very unlikely that they should have been the work of one hand, for many scribes were engaged at one time, and the same monastic library of course contained MSS. of many different dates. If every allowance be made for the probable inaccuracies of the MSS., from which our author copied or compiled, there is still a considerable surplus of mistakes, of a limited number of kinds, which it is very difficult to escape assigning to his own carelessness or ignorance. There is a doubt, however, of which the benefit may justly be allowed him, and that arises from the rarity of autographs and our consequent ignorance of the extent to which the scribes of "fair copies" may have corrected the errors of transcription in the first draughts of other mediæval works. So far as autographs have been examined, their evidence would certainly seem to show that our author's slovenliness was no such unusual phenomenon; and in his own case it is clear that in some one of the original transcripts a large proportion of his errors had actually been rectified. Be this as it may, however, when we investigate his character as an original writer, there is nothing for him but praise. His brief notices of events are clear and concise, and so far as they can be independently verified accurate in every particular; his accounts of remarkable natural phenomena, a taste for recording which he seems to have possessed in a degree exceeding his fellow annalists,

are very curious and minute, and show a considerable power of description and illustration. The absence of miraculous stories from the original portion of the work is also remarkable, but not peculiar to our author, and tends to confirm what has been said in a previous portion of this Preface, that the miracles recorded by monastic writers were generally removed either from the locality or the epoch of the writers. On the whole, combining the evidence which we have collected of his veracity, position, and impartiality, it will be safe to assume that the notices peculiar to the Chronicle are to be received as correct, and that his unsupported assertions, in the absence of contradictory testimony, may be fully credited, in spite of the manifest inaccuracies which diminish the trustworthiness of the earlier portions of this work. The *value* of the facts testified to opens another question, and one it appears to me which is incapable of a satisfactory reply. The value of anything whatever, from a coin to a musical note is relative, and depends entirely upon the standard by which it is measured. This standard, in the case of a work like the present, is manifestly quite arbitrary, and varies with the object of every new reader. The Eulogium contains nothing more than the information of a monastic annalist, of average intelligence, in a good position, and probably in close relation with those who were *au fait* of current events. It must be remembered that the writer is not a historian, but an annalist, a collector of historical materials; a hodman, and not an architect; and it is as a hodman, and not as an architect, that he must be judged. He is a hodman of great industry, if not of the highest abilities, and his "tale of bricks" is of full measure.

Independently, however, of the direct value of the Chronicle as a narrative undoubtedly contemporary of the period A.D. 1350—A.D. 1366, the earlier portion

of the work has an indirect value of its own, which must not be overlooked. It is a monument of opinion; and among materials for the history of a period the beliefs of that period are some of the most important. If it were nothing more it would be interesting (and often amusing) to learn the historical, geographical, physical, and metaphysical creed of an age as influential as the Fourteenth Century; and that creed is fully and fairly represented by the first four books of the Eulogium. But such knowledge is something more than interesting, it is important and necessary in the highest degree.

With regard, finally, to the credibility and value of the Continuation, we are reduced to the evidence derivable from the work itself, nothing whatever being known of the character or position of its author. Comparing it with the printed chronicles of the same period, its statements are in the main confirmed by them. Here and there, as in all similar works, we find confusion and error; but the mistakes are certainly rather below than above the average. The account of the proceedings of parliament in the reign of Richard II., a most important part of the narrative, is very full, and, compared with the records on the Parliament Rolls themselves, appears to be remarkable for minuteness and accuracy. This, of course, implies the employment of trustworthy sources of information. The language is good, free from grammatical errors, and offers no difficulties of construction like those which occasionally present themselves in the Chronicle to which it is a supplement; from which it may be fairly concluded that the author was a person of greater cultivation than the compiler of the Eulogium.

The notices peculiar to the Chronicle, such as the account of the proceedings of Courtenay, bishop of London, on the bull of Gregory XI. against the Florentines, that of the Great Council summoned by Ed-

ward III. in consequence of a demand of the same pope for aid, that of the proceedings at Oxford on another bull of the same pope against Wickliffe, the account of the discovery of the plot of the earl of Huntingdon and others against Henry IV., of the proceedings against the Minorites in the reign of that king, and other less important particulars, are certainly of great interest and value. There is nothing in them which would, *à priori*, indicate untrustworthiness, except, perhaps, the minuteness of the details; and this, in the absence of evidence of falsehood in those parts of the Chronicle verifiable by comparison with other sources, may be held to prove access to the testimony of original witnesses. It is of necessity evidence either of falsehood or of autopticity; and, as of the former there is no additional proof, we are justified, until such proof be presented, in receiving the accounts as true, and if true, then as the testimony, mediately or immediately given, of those whose position must have been that of eye-witnesses.

The personality of the writer is completely disguised. He expresses few opinions which would indicate his leanings; and if he had expressed more, we should be embarrassed by the difficulty commonly encountered in dealing with the work of a mediæval annalist whose name and position are unknown, and whose autograph is lost or undiscoverable, viz.: that of deciding if the opinions expressed are his own or merely those of the author whom he is following for the time being, and which might bear any conceivable relation to his own views, from perfect coincidence to absolute contradiction.

In conclusion, I readily admit that the author or authors of the Eulogium and its Continuation have recorded much that is not new, much also which, in the present state of historical literature, will appear to many readers trivial and unimportant. But these disadvantages, if disadvantages they are to be called,

are inseparable both from the uniform practice of annalists of the middle ages, and from the plan of these publications, which leaves no option to an editor of omitting what he himself may deem of little value. I am, however, decidedly of opinion that there is an amount of original historical information contained in the Chronicle which very far outweighs the trivialities, the repetitions, and the mistakes which deface it.

Moreover, although it is no part of my duty as editor to defend works of this nature, assuming that they need defence, or to rescue them from the charge of dulness, but rather to present the text of my author to my readers, leaving it to them to decide the question of his value in relation to their own researches, I must be allowed to express my conviction that mediæval annalists, as a class, are quite as trustworthy as modern historians of acknowledged credit. They enjoyed no peculiar immunity from the tendency to error common to all men; and it is, perhaps, very fortunate for their accuracy that their ambition soared no higher than to a bare unpolished narrative of facts, and that, with the scanty philosophy of their age, they did not attempt to theorise. We have reason to be grateful that they were content to reproduce that which they saw and heard, so far as human fallibility would allow, exactly as they saw and heard it, and not as they desired to see it or to hear it, or wished that they had seen it or heard it. Their function was to preserve, not to interpret or even to classify, the facts with which they dealt.

With reference to the plan of the Index, I have aimed at making it, especially for the earlier and less directly valuable portion of the Eulogium, an index of subjects rather than an index of names and places. For the portion of the Chronicle having reference to English history, I have given fuller entries. No person can be more painfully conscious than I am of the

many imperfections of that part of the work for which I am responsible, namely, the foot-notes, prefaces, and Index; but I trust that I have erred rather on the side of too great detail than in the opposite direction. At least I hope that the volumes are not unworthy of the Government for which they have been undertaken.

Record Office,
23rd March 1863.

ERRATA.

Page xxxviii, foot note, col. 2, line 1, *for* Baudrous; *read* Baudrous.
„ 76, line 4, *for* ab *read* ob.
„ 147, line 10 (from bottom), *after* Gallias *insert* transiens.
„ „ „ „ in marg., *after* Gascony *insert* 14 May.
„ 157, line 9, *for* comparent *read* comparens.
„ 194, line 8, *for* custodia *read* custodiæ.
„ 197, line 1, *for* Thomas *read* dominus.
„ 199, *transfer two last lines of note* [2] *to end of note* [1].
„ 200, line 1, in marg., *for* A.D. 1330 *read* A.D. 1327.
„ „ line 8, in marg., *insert* A.D. 1330.
„ 211, last line in marg., *for* 30 Sept. *read* [17 Oct.]
„ 230, line 5, in marg., *for* 24 March *read* [7 Sept.]
„ 277, *for* DCXXVIII. *read* DCXCVIII.
„ 313, line 5 of note [3], *dele* but.
„ 353, line 20, *for* dicentes *read* dicentem, *and dele foot note.*
„ 409, line 8 from bottom, *dele* A.D. 1405.
„ „ line 4 „ „ „ A.D. 1406.
„ 425, col. 2, line 11, *for* ib. *read* 42.

EULOGIUM HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS.

Cap. LXXIX.

Of the Saxon kings.

Venientibus nepotis[1] de terra Armoricana, scilicet, Yuor filius Cadwaladri[2] et Yne nepos ejus cum magna classi portum Silliæ applicuerunt, fatigati[3] in mare[4] per v. dies quieverunt, qui[5] tandem Saxones infestantes minimum lucraverunt.[6] Yuor vero in congressu cum Saxonibus mortuus est. Yne nutu Divino non quasi Britonus[7] sed quasi Saxo in regem est unctus, nam mater ejus de stirpe Saxonica generata est, pater ejus Kenten de stirpe Britonum est oriundus. Yne autem regnavit xxxvii. annis et tandem Romæ mortuus est. Ferunt quidam quod, ipso moriente, campanæ per totam civitatem sine tactu humano per iiii. horas pulsarunt[8] et ideo ipsum autumant esse sanctum.

Ini of Wessex. A.D. 688.

Dies at Rome.

Tempore enim[9] quo[10] Athelbrith[11] in Orientali

---

[1] *nepotis*] nepotibus. B.D.

[2] *Cadwaladri*] Interlined in A.

[3] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[4] *mare*] mari. B.D.

[5] De Rege Yne. in marg. D.

[6] *lucraverunt*] lucrati sunt. D.

[7] *Britonus*] Brito. B. the *nus* erased.

[8] *pulsarunt*] pulsaverunt. B.D.

[9] *enim*] autem. D.

[10] *quo*] q℈. A. the usual contraction for *quod*.

[11] *Athelbrith*] Ethelberth. D.

A.D. 642. Saxonia[1] regnavit[2] et Edelfrid[3] in Deira, occisus est Sanctus Oswaldus[4] per regem Canciæ Cadwallonem et Peandam regem Merciorum. Peanda vero occisus est ab Oswyo fratre Oswaldi anno regni sui XXII.[5] Occisus est Sanctus Oswaldus Dominicæ Incarnationis anno DCXLII., Theodoro papa super ecclesiam triumphante.

Death of Oswine of Deira. A.D. 651. Sanctus autem rex Oswinus martyrizatur in regione Loidis,[6] anno Domini D.CLI., regni sui XVII., et in quodam rupi[7] super mare honorifice humatus, ubi non cum minima monachorum multitudine ad Dei honorem veneratur et colitur multis miraculis coruscando; locus autem sepulturæ Tynemutha vocitatur.

Rex autem Oswy anno primo regni[8] sui Peandam occidit in vere sequenti; duces vero gentis Merciorum

Wulfheri of Mercia. A.D. 657. filium regis Peandæ Wlfher[9] nomine in regem statuerunt et Northumbros fugaverunt.

Eo anno quo rex Oswyn occisus est Aydan episcopus Dunelmiæ mortuus est. Accidit autem quod quidam rex Angliæ, nomine Offa, plures regulos sibi subjugavit. Reguli enim[10] tunc erant in Mercia, in Deira,[11] in Vestseax,[12] Estengle, scilicet, Cancia, Suthseax,[13] Cornubia, Northumbria; et tandem orta est tanta dissensio inter regulos quod ille qui fortis fuit

Offa. A.D. 757. opprimebat debilem; tandem Offa super omnes militabat.

---

[1] *Saxonia*] Saxona. B.D.
[2] *regnavit*] regnabat. B.D.
[3] *Edelfrid*] Edelfrith. B.
[4] Sanctus Oswal[dus]. in marg. A. the remainder having been cut off in binding. Sanctus Oswaldus. in marg. D.
[5] *XXII.*] 21. D.
[6] Sanctus Oswinus. in marg. A.D.
[7] *rupi*] rupe. B.D.
[8] *regni*] A short erasure follows in A.
[9] *Wlfher*] Wlfer. B.D.
[10] *enim*] om. B.D.
[11] *Deira*] Deyra. B.D.
[12] *Vestseax*] Westsex. B. Westseax. D.
[13] *Suthseax*] Suthsex. B.

Cap. LXXX.[1]

Story of Osberht of Northumbria and Buern Butsecarl.

Offa itaque militante ingruebat magna discordia inter Osbrith regem Northamhymbrorum et quendam ducem regni sui, Buern nomine. Hic autem munimen habuit in litore maris ad inimicos expellendos, si qui supervenirent. Ipso existente in wardo maris venit rex Osbrith et vi oppressit uxorem ducis Buern magnatis sui. Buern vero de mari veniente videns[2] vultum uxoris suæ in mœstitia et tristitia conversum, quod ante illud jocunditatem et hilaritatem sibi ostendebat, ultra modum mirabatur et causam diligenter quæsivit. Illa autem causam revelans et nihil celans consolata est a viro suo promittens[3] se vindicari ab[4] illa ingratitudine et injuria[5] sibi illata. Dux autem intra se cogitans et mortem regis machinans navigium paravit et Danemarchiæ adivit, et auxilium a rege flagitavit, et omnia injuria sibi illata palam propalavit.

Buern seeks aid of the Danes.

Guthorm promises assistance.

Rex autem Danemarchiæ, Godrik nomine, audita querela illius ducis, lætatus est valde ob quod querelam habere posset ad Angliam invadendam, promittendo duci se bene de rege Osbrith vindicari; erat enim Buern[6] de parentela regis Danorum. Jam parant navigia, jam adunant cœtus, jam homines et arma parant, quibus paratis rex Godrik constituit duos fratres ad principandum super illa turma; nomina fratrum, Yngwar[7] et Ubba.

Invasion of Hingwar and Hubba.

[1] De Rege Offa. præm. B. in rubric as a heading. Many of the succeeding chapters in B. have similar headings which have not been more particularly noticed as being unimportant. It is a marginal note in D.

[2] *veniente videns*] veniente et vidente. B. veniens et videns. D.

[3] *promittens*] promittente. B.D.

[4] *ab*] de. D.

[5] *injuria*] injuriosa. B. the *os* interlined by a later hand.

[6] *Buern*] Interlined in A.

[7] *Yngwar*] Ynguar. B.

Cap. LXXXI.

A.D. 866. The Danes land in East Anglia.

Dispositis[1] itaque turmis naves intrant, mare sulcant, vela levant, venti flant, prosperum litus arripiunt, terram Anglicanam intrantes homines cædunt et occidunt, villas et oppida destruunt et comburunt,

A.D. 867. They proceed to York.

mulieres et infantulos tormentis dilaniant et afficiunt, totam patriam depopulant. Incedentes itaque per Holdernes[2] Eboracum adeunt, civitatem obsident. Rex vero Osbrith[3] parva manu suorum villam exiens bellum cum Danis inivit, ille autem non valens resistere in congressu occisus est cum tota sua familia, et statim civitas Danis reddita est.

Death of Osberht.

Erat enim illo[4] tempore in Northumbria quidam rex electus, nomine Elle, per consensum totius patriæ, regem vero Osbrith omnino renuntiantes. Ille tandem audiens de morte Osbrith per Danos et de civitate capta, et de vastatione patriæ, cœtum congregat, turmam adunat, Eboraco adiit. Danis igitur de civitate exeuntibus contra Elle regem bellum non longe a villa committunt, in una pratella quæ usque in hodiernum diem Ellecroft vocitatur.

Death of Aelle.

A.D. 868. The Danes proceed to Lincoln, Lindesey, and winter in Nottingham.

Rege autem Elle occiso, procedunt Dani Northumbriam et illam dirimunt et devastant; positis ibidem custodibus, procedunt Dani usque Lincolniam et Lindeseyam[5] et ad Snotyngham,[6] et ibi morantur per totam hyemem; familia autem illorum[7] in Holand morabatur. Nulla enim patria est qui[8] eis possit resistere.

---

[1] *Dispositis*] The *si* interlined in A.

[2] *Holdernes*] Holdernesse. B.

[3] *Osbrith*] Interlined in A. Osbryth̃. B. passim.

[4] *illo*] in. præm. B.

[5] *Lindeseyam*] Lyndeseyam. B.

[6] *Snotyngham*] Notyngham. D. There is an erasure before the initial *N*, apparently, however, of the parchment merely, as the trace of any obliterated letter is not discernible.

[7] *illorum*] eorum. B.

[8] *qui*] quæ. B.D.

Tandem Pagani omnem terram destruentes et eis subjicientes venerunt ad villam de Tetford, ubi sedes episcopalis tunc inerat, et ibi per III. dies morati sunt. Ibi enim invenerunt unum regem Christianum, nomine Edmundum, qui adversus eos congrediens nihil profuit, et Dani regem fugantes usque ad unum de castris suis eum insecuti sunt obsidendo.[1] Rex vero de castro latenter exiens in cuneum Danorum, non tamen sicut rex se manifestavit; obviante autem[2] illo Paganis petitus est si de castro venisset; ille etiam econtra[3] dixit: Sic; et illi: Vidistisne[4] regem Edmundum? Et ille: Me existente in castro, ille ibi interfuit; me discedente, Edmundus discessit, et ego discessi; si Edmundus evadat vel non ad voluntatem Dei relinquatur. Pagani nomen Dei ipsum ita frequenter audientes monstrare[5] crediderunt ipsum fuisse Christianum, et injecentes[6] manus in eum tenuerunt, et ipsum tentum firmiter ligaverunt. Medio enim tempore agnitus est quod rex fuerat Edmundus; ipsi autem illum[7] aggredientes ut Christianitatem relinqueret, et sectam illorum imitaret, ipse omnino renuens[8] et[9] citius morti se tradens quam legem Dei sui in aliquo offendere. A.D. 870. They proceed to Thetford.

Dani vero constantiam ejus prætendentes[10] regem Edmundum ceperunt et ad unum[11] quercum, ut dicitur, ligaverunt, et sagittarii ipsum ita sagittis infixerunt quod citius diceretur ericius plenus spinis quam corpus humanum; non enim desistebat nomen Domini incessanter clamitare; ipso itaque perforato quod jacula Martyrdom of S. Eadmund of East Anglia. 20 Nov.

---

[1] De rege Edmun[do]. in marg. A. the remainder having been cut off in binding. De Rege Edmundo. in marg. D.

[2] *autem*] om. B.D.

[3] *econtra*] om. D.

[4] *Vidistisne*] Vidistine. B.D.

[5] *monstrare*] nominare. B.D.

[6] *injecentes*] injicientes. B.D.

[7] *illum*] ipsum. D.

[8] *renuens*] renuit. B.D.

[9] *et*] om. D.

[10] *prætendentes*] videntes. D.

[11] *unum*] unam. D.

A.D. 870. jaculis locum dabant, ipsum ultimo decapitabant. Edmundus autem [1] rex erat Northfolchiæ et sicut historia sua plenius enarrat [2] reddidit Deo talentum sibi creditum cum lucro.

A.D. 871. The Danes proceed to Reading. Danis itaque insanientibus usque [3] Radyng pervenerunt. Civitates, villas, oppida, et frugifera, homines utriusque sexus dilaniantes, non resistentiam invenientes priusquam veniret Eldulf, rex Uest-Saxonum, cum magna feritate eis in [4] obviam. Ingwar [5] vero et Ubba [6] de villa de Radyng exeuntes congressum cum rege Eldulf inierunt.[7] Congressu inito, occisus est quidam dux nobilis de Danis, nomine Sidrac,[8] pro quo Pagani multum ululârunt.

Battle of Englefield;

Postera deinde [9] die venit rex Eldred et frater ejus Alured ad regem Eldulfum, qui omnes cum Danis congressi sunt, et illo die Danis remisit victoria. Quarto die sequenti [10] iterum congressi sunt in campo de Ellendoun [11] anno Domini [12] et ibi occisus est quidam rex Danorum nomine Rothenger [13] et IV. comites magni valoris, et fugati sunt usque ad Engelfeld;[14] post XV. dies iterum pugnarunt [15] apud Basynges, ibi enim triumphabant Dani et Saxones fugati sunt. Iterum mense elapso pugnatum est apud Merton,[16] et ibi triumphabant Dani et Angli fugati.[17] Dehinc [18] versus est unus magnus tyrannus Danorum, nomine Royn. Hic adivit Radingiæ et omnem civi-

of Ashdune;

of Basing;

of Merton.

---

[1] *autem*] enim. B.D.
[2] *enarrat*] narrat. D.
[3] *usque*] ad. add. B.D.
[4] *in*] om. B.D.
[5] *Ingwar*] Inguar. B.
[6] *Ubba*] Hubba. D.
[7] *inierunt*] The second *i* interlined in A.
[8] *Sidrac*] Sydrac. B.D.
[9] *deinde*] om. B.D.
[10] *sequenti*] sequente. B.D. corrected in B. from *sequenti*.
[11] *Ellendoun*] Ellendoñ. B.D. corr. Escendune.
[12] The date is left blank in A.B.D.
[13] *Rothenger*] The Anglo-Saxon *th* "hard" in A.D. Royenger. B.
[14] *Engelfeld*] Egenfeld. B.
[15] *pugnarunt*] pugnaverunt. B.D.
[16] *Merton*] Mertoñ. B.
[17] *fugati*] sunt. add. B.D.
[18] *Dehinc*] The first word of f. 47 v. A. headed: De Rege Aluredo.

tatem devastavit, ecclesias et monasteria humi prostravit. Rex autem Eldred ei obviavit in congressu et vulneratus est ibi, de quo in brevi tempore postea interiit, et ad [1] Wonborne [2] est sepultus; quinque enim annos [3] regnavit. A.D. 871. Death of Aethelred. 23 April.

Cap. LXXXII.

Mortuo Eldredo, Aluredus frater ejus regnavit pro eo. Dani autem audientes novum regem consecratum paraverunt se ad prœlium et ad Wiltoun [4] novum regem invenerunt. Rex autem Aluredus nihil cogitans de pugna aufugit in Westseax [5] et maximum [6] numerum bellatorum de suo regno adunavit, et Danos viriliter insecutus est. Dani vero videntes se novo regi non posse resistere datis obsidibus pacem petierunt, sub tali conditione quod de patria ista discederent et nunquam reverterent. Aelfred the Great. Defeated at Wilton.

Dani igitur habita licentia a rege de patria ista recedere ita festinanter sunt itinerati quod nunquam cessarunt priusquam ad Exoniam venti sunt. Ipsis ibidem venientibus vi et armis villam ceperunt, et ibidem morati sunt. Rex vero ista nova audiens ad Exoniam cum parva manu hominum et cum obsidibus se direxit. Dani eventum regis audientes reversi sunt in Estsax, [7] Aluredus autem Danos præivit et ad [8] Chippenham congressi sunt; ibi enim occisus est Ubba rex Danorum, et Buerna dux Deiræ, [9] et Bogardus Danus, et multa milia ceciderunt ex utraque A.D. 876. The Danes take Exeter; A.D. 877. Aelfred proceeds to Exeter; Battle at Chippenham. Death of Hubba.

---

[1] *ad*] apud. D.

[2] *Wonborne*] Womborn̄. B. Wymborne. D.

[3] *annos*] Interlined in A. annis. B.D.

[4] *Wiltoun*] Wyltoñ. B.D. 769. in marg. B. in hand (a).

[5] *Westseax*] Westsex. B.

[6] *maximum*] maxīmū. A.

[7] *Estsax*] Estsex. B. Estseax. D.

[8] *ad*] apud. D.

[9] *Deiræ*] Deyræ. B.D.

A.D. 877. parte, sed victoria Danis remisit. Dani vero corpora suorum occisorum sepelientes[1] et corpus Ubbæ invenientes magno mœrore perculsi sunt. Ipsum vero sepelierunt more Paganorum; fecerunt magnum[2] struem lapidum vel quod in vulgo dicitur, congeriem, quod usque in hodiernum diem vocatur Ubbeslawe, quod[3] est in Deuonia.

Ubbeslawe.

A.D. 878. Rex autem Aluredus congregans cœtum copiosum de comitibus, baronibus, militibus,[4] et pedestribus, et[5] per II. dies et noctes insecuti sunt Danos[6] et tandem juxta Abindon[7] inventi sunt. Ibi enim commissum est bellum quod homines nescirent de qua parte major strages facta fuerat; tandem enim nutu Divino Anglis remisit victoria. Rex autem Aluredus per XV. dies ita Danos insecutus est quod nescirent qua parte diverti;[8] insuper regem eorum, Gordinum nomine, amiserunt per quindenam.

Battle of Ethandune (Edington).

The Danes pray for peace. Dani quoque de guerra fatigati pacem petierunt. Rex autem Aluredus pacem eis firmam concessit, si Christianitatem gratis vellent accipere; illi vero spondentes et regem eorum[9] amissum quærentes tandem invenerunt et regi Aluredo præsentaverunt; ille enim[10] apud Westmonasterium baptizatus est et Athelstanus vocatus, qui prius fuerat Gordinus nominatus.[11] Baptizati sunt etiam cum eo XXXVI. de validioribus Danorum; tertia enim die universus populus eorum[12] qui remanserat[13] baptizati sunt, et per dies XII. cum rege

Baptism of Guthorm.

---

[1] *sepelientes*] sepelierunt. D.

[2] *magnum*] magnam. B.D.

[3] *quod*] quæ. B.D.

[4] *militibus*] equitibus. D.

[5] *et*] om. B.D.

[6] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[7] *Abindon*] Abyndoñ. B. Abingdoñ. D.

[8] *diverti*] deberent. add. B.D.

[9] *eorum*] om. B.D. This is the first word in f. 48. A. headed: De rege Aluredo.

[10] *enim*] om. B.

[11] *nominatus*] vocatus. D. De baptismo regis Danorum. in marg. A.B.D.

[12] *eorum*] om. D.

[13] *remanserat*] remanserunt. B. remanserant. D.

Londoniis perhendinantes cum magno honore et muneribus ditati remearunt ad propria. A.D. 878.

Tempore istius Aluredi[1] Johannes Scottus venit de[2] rege Franciæ in Angliam et Malmesburiæ moratus est, et ibidem, ut ferunt,[3] sub se habens[4] discipulos eruditionis causa, qui vir peroptime fuerat[5] literatus, a condiscipulis suis grafis eorum stimulatus inter eos interiit, et sic volunt quidam ipsum esse martyrem. Anno Domini DCCLXXII.[6] Iste Aluredus diem et noctem in XXIIII. horis dividebat, secundum Bedam, per candelam ardentem in capella sua die et nocte. Octo enim horas in labore corporali circa regni negotia, octo in legendo et scribendo et docendo, quia vir literatus in scientia, octo in orationibus faciendis et in eleemosinis; semper enim habebat librum in sinu quod[7] ipse vocabat manuale, quod[7] Anglice vocabat *handbok;* quidam dicunt hoc[8] fuisse Psalterium.

Johannes Scotus.

Aelfred's division of the twenty-four hours.

His "handbook."

Rex iste regnavit XXXII. annos. Hic fecit libros de gestis Britonum, Saxonum, Anglorum, et post obiit et[9] Wyntoniæ est sepultus, anno Domini DCCC. primo.

His works. A.D. 901. His death. 26 Oct.

CAP. LXXXIII.

MORTUO Aluredo, filius ejus Edwardus[10] regnavit pro eo. Tertio anno regni[11] sui venerunt Pagani de Africa, qui prius extiterant in Anglia cum Gurmundo de Africa; Willielmus Malmesburiensis vocat eum

Edward the Elder. A.D. 901.

---

[1] *Aluredi*] Alueredi. A. the first *e* subpuncted. De Johanne Scotto monacho. in marg. A.D.

[2] *de*] a. B.D.

[3] *ferunt*] fertur. B.D.

[4] *habens*] habuit. B.D.

[5] *fuerat*] fuit. B.D.

[6] The date given in Lib. III. is A.D. 876.

[7] *quod*] quem. B.D.

[8] *hoc*] illum. B.D.

[9] *obiit et*] om. B.D.

[10] De rege Edwardo. in marg. A. D.

[11] *regni*] rigni. A.

A.D. 901. Gudrum. Isti associaverunt se Danis Norhamhimbriæ, qui conglobati per totam fere Angliam Christianitatem vastaverunt. Rex vero Edwardus impotens eis fecit treugas,[1] quod[2] parvo tempore duravit;[3] medio enim tempore anno regis Edwardi XXIIII. obiit idem rex et Wyntoniæ juxta patrem suum sepultus est; anno Domini DCCCXXV.[4]

A.D. 924. His death.

Cap. LXXXIV.

Aethelstan. A.D. 924. Edwardo mortuo Athelstanus filius ejus regnare cœpit. Hic anno III. regni sui cum Pictis de Cumberland et de[5] Westmerland viriliter[6] debellavit et superavit et duos reges de Northumbria Paganos de patria fugavit. Nomen unius Haumondus, nomen alterius ignoratur. Hic etiam contra Pictos et Scottos plura bella[7] commisit; anno regni sui XII. congressus est cum rege Norhumbrorum,[8] Arnalafo nomine, apud Donelew[9] in Wilthschire.[10] Ibi[11] enim tot ceciderunt Pictorum, Scottorum, Danorum, quod numerari non possent; ceciderunt autem[12] ibi duo nepotes regis[13] Athelstani, scilicet, Elwyn et Athelwyn. Gesta autem Britonum dicunt Angelum de cœlo missum gladium suum de manu sua lapsum incontinenti regi dedisse. Sancta autem crux quod[14] circa collum suum in bellis[15]

Battle of Donelew. A.D. 938.

---

[1] *treugas*] treuguas. B.

[2] *quod*] quæ. B.D.

[3] *duravit*] duraverunt. B.D.

[4] *Anno . . . . . DCCCXXV.*] Apparently added in A. subsequently to the context by the author.

[5] *de*] om. B.D.

[6] De rege Athe[l]stano. in marg. A. the *l* having been cut off in binding. The chapter is headed in rubric in D.

[7] *plura bella*] bellum. B.

[8] *Norhumbrorum*] Northamhimbrorum. B. Northanhymbrorum. D.

[9] *Donelew*] Dunlew. B.

[10] *Wilthschire*] Wyltshyre. B.D.

[11] *Ibi*] The first word of f. 48 v. headed: De Rege—Athelstano is continued on the top of f. 49.

[12] *autem*] om. B.D.

[13] *regis*] om. B.

[14] *quod*] quam. B.D.

[15] *in bellis*] om. B.D.

gestabat adhuc Malmesburiæ inter sacras reliquias, ut decet, veneratur. A.D. 938.

Rex autem Athelstanus duos nepotes suos Malmesburiæ delatos in monasterio fecit sepeliri. Vixit vero[1] Athelstanus post illum[2] bellum III. annos, IIII. menses, XVI. dies, et Gloucestriæ mortuus est. Per legationem propriam corpus Malmesburiæ delatum est et juxta[3] nepotes suos[4] sepultum, anno Domini DCCCCXIIII.[5] et anno regni[6] sui in toto XVI.[7] et[8] IIII. menses et[8] XVI. dies. A.D. 941. His death. 27 Oct.

CAP. LXXXV.

ATHELSTANO rege[9] debitum solvente et sine liberis discedente Edmundus frater ejus coronatus est. Tertio enim anno coronationis suæ adivit Northumbriam, ubi duos reges Paganos invenerat,[10] nomen uni, Ernulf,[11] nomen alteri, Reynald. Iste XVIII. annos habuit cum regnare cœpisset et VII. annos prospere regnavit. Hic forte bellum contra Pictos commisit et in Cumberland ipsos devicit anno Domini DCCCC. primo. Provinciam illam quæ Comberland[12] nuncupatur dedit Malcolino regi Scottorum sub fidelitate jurisjurandi. Interea beneficia quæ diversis ecclesiis contulit miro affectu Glastoniensem ecclesiam magnis prædiis, honoribus, et privilegiis sublimavit. Eadmund. A.D. 941. He expels Anlaf and Raegenald from Northumbria. A.D. 944. He gives Cumberland to Malcolm king of Scots. A.D. 945.

---

[1] *vero*] autem. B.D.

[2] *illum*] illud. B.D.

[3] *juxta*] Partly crossed out in the text of A. and written in marg.

[4] *nepotes suos*] nepotē suū. B.

[5] *XIIII.*] Written upon an erasure in A.

[6] *anno regni*] Written cramped and smaller than the context in A.

[7] *XVI.*] This was written XV. at first in A. and the I inserted over the dot terminating the numeral.

[8] *et*] om. B.D.

[9] *rege*] om. B.D.

[10] *invenerat*] invenit. B.D.

[11] De rege Edmundo, followed by an erasure, apparently of one word only, in marg. A.

[12] *Comberland*] Cumberland. B. Komberland. D.

A.D. 944. His donation to Glastonbury.

Acta est autem hæc donatio quam Glastoniæ dederat in anno Dominicæ Incarnationis DCCCCXLIIII.

A.D. 926. Hugh, Count of Paris, sends presents to Aethelstan.

De benignitate ac militia et magnanimitate regis Athelstani non est prætereundum. Rex autem Francorum, Hugo nomine, multa sibi misit donaria per duos magnates patriæ suæ; nomina vero eorum, Helfgrim et Offrid.[1] Isti[2] navibus ditissimis, velis sericis cum funiculis ejusdem ordinis ac[3] coloris, pretiosa regi munera Athelstano pro sorore sua in conjugium domino suo regi Franciæ habenda Habendoniæ[4] obtulerunt.

Oblata[5] sunt etiam munera, odores aromatum qualia prius in Anglia non sunt visa; honores gemmarum, præsertim smaragdorum, in quorum viriditate sol repercussus oculos astantium gratiosa[6] luce animaret; equos cursores cum phaleris aureis; vas quoddam ex onychino ita subtili cælatoris arte sculptum, ut vere fluctuare segetes, vere gemmare cutos,[7] vere moveri hominum imagines viderentur, ita lucidum et politum ut vice speculi vultus intuentium[8] emularetur; ensem Constantini Magni, in quo literis aureis nomen antiqui possessoris legebatur; item clavum unum ferreum[9] laminis aureis circumvolutum, unum ex quatuor quos Judaica factio Dominici corporis aptaverat supplicio; lanceam Karoli Magni quam imperator invitissimus[10] contra Saracenos exercitum ducens siquando in hostem vibrabat non nisi victor abibat; ferebatur eadem esse quæ Dominico lateri centurionis manu impacta pretiosi vulneris hiatu Paradisum miseris mortalibus aperuit;

---

[1] *Offrid*] Offrider. D.

[2] *Isti*] In. B.D.

[3] *ac*] et. B.D.

[4] *Habendoniæ*] Abendoniæ. B.

[5] De exennio regi Athelstano missо. in marg. A.D.

[6] *gratiosa*] gloriosa. B.

[7] *cutos*] cutem. B. cutes. D. corr. vites.

[8] *intuentium*] hominum. præm. B.D.

[9] *ferreum*] om. B.D.

[10] *invitissimus*] invictissimus. B. D.

vexillum Mauricii beatissimi martyris et Thebeæ le- A.D. 926.
gionis principis, quo idem rex in bello Hispano quamlibet [1] infestos et confertos inimicorum cuneos disrumpere [2] et in fugam solitus erat cogere ; diadema vero ex auro multo, sed magis gemmis pretiosum, quarum splendor in intuentes faculas luminis jaculabatur ; particulam Sanctæ et Adorandæ Crucis crystallo inclusam, ubi soliditatem lapidis oculos penetrans pæne potest discernere qualis sit ligni color et quæ quantitas ; portiunculamque Coronæ Spineæ eodem modo inclusam quam ad derisionem regni militaris rabies Sacrosancto imposuit Capiti.

His tantis et tam elaboratis donis magnificus rex gavisus non minoribus pæne respondit beneficiis quin et anhelantis animum sororis nuptiis refecit. Et cæteris quidem successores reges dotavit ; partem vero Crucis et Coronæ [3] Malmesburiæ [4] delegavit, quarum sustentaculo illum locum adhuc credo vigere. Nam et ibidem Elwinum et Athelwinum, filios patrui sui Ethelwerdi,[5] quos in bello contra Arnalphum amiserat ad caput feretri Sancti Aldelmi jussit honorifice humari, suique corporis requiem ibidem futuram denuntians, de quo prius dictum est. De conceptione et nativitate regis Athelstani siquis scire desiderat, Gesta Magistri Willielmi Malmesburiensis [6] investigat.[7] De obitu autem Edmundi regis prædicti quem prætaxavimus,[8] prætereundum non est.

In quodam vero convivio apud Cantuariam cultro A.D. 946.
cujusdam nefandissimi miserabiliter interiit. Rex enim[9] Murder of Eadmund. 26 May.
ribaldum percusserat et ad terram prostraverat, et

---

[1] *quamlibet*] Corrected into *quilibet* in B.

[2] *disrumpere*] dirumpere. B.D.

[3] *et Coronæ*] om. B.D.

[4] Malmesburia. in marg. A.

[5] *Ethelwerdi*] Ethelredi. B. Etheldredi. D.

[6] *Malmesburiensis*] Malmysburiensis. B.

[7] *investigat*] investiget. B.D.

[8] *prætaxavimus*] prætaximus. B.

[9] *enim*] autem. B.D.

A.D. 946. rege super eum jacente et ipso subterjacente extracto cultro regem lethali vulnere sauciavit, qui Glastoniæ adductus, et ut perprius elegerat more regio ut decet ibidem est sepultus. Octodecim annos habuit cum regnare cœpisset et VII. annos regnavit et[1] II. menses et XVI. dies circa annos[2] Domini DCCCC.XLII. [alias 945.][3].

Hic[4] Edmundus secundum Petrum Pictaviensem Cancellarium Parisius vicit Scottos rebellantes et Danenses. Ab isto rege Sanctus Dunstanus primus abbas Glastoniæ Wigorniensis et Londoniensis episcopus constitutus est. Iste rex generavit II. filios Edwynum et Edgarum, et Edredum fratrem suum successorem regni reliquit, quia filii ejus infra ætatem erant et ob hoc regnare non poterant. Iste Edmundus VII. annis regnavit, frater Edelstani, et concessit Dunstano abbati Glastoniæ omnes libertates, consuetudines, et omnes forisfacturas terrarum suarum. [B. α.]

CAP. LXXXVI.

Eadred. A.D. 946. ANNO Dominicæ Incarnationis DCCCCXLVI. Edredus Tertius ex filiis[5] Edwardi regnum suscipiens rexit annis IX. et dimidio. Hic et[6] vindicavit mortem patris sui. Ejus bonitatem Sanctus Dunstanus multum commendat. Decessit[7] magno luctu hominum sed gaudio Angelorum prosecutus. Siquidem Dunstanus nuntio ægrotantis audito cum illuc sonipedem calcaribus urgeret, vocem desuper tonantem audierit[8]: Modo A.D. 955. His death. 23 Nov. rex Eddredus in Domino obdormivit. Novem annos et semis regnavit et Wyntoniæ sepultus est.

Iste Edredus, alias Eadredus, fuit benignus, pius, Deum valde timens et diligens et ab eo multum dilectus, qui Sanctam Dei

---

[1] *et*] om. B.

[2] *annos*] annum. B.D.

[3] *alias* 945] Added in text of B. in hand (α).

[4] De Scottis. in marg. B. (α).

[5] *ex filiis*] On an erasure in B. in a different hand from text. De rege Edredo. in marg. A.D.

[6] *et*] om. B.D.

[7] *Decessit*] Discessit. B.D. The first word of f. 49v. A. headed » De Rege Edwio.

[8] *audierit*] audivit. B.D.

Ecclesiam in multis ditavit et honoravit, sed ecclesiam Wyntoniensem maxime, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem. Sanctum Dunstanum familiarem habuit et patronum, et cum de morte regis audivit in itinere quando eum visitare voluit, equus cui insederat vir Dei in terram exanimis corruit, cunctique comites ejus vehementer tremuerunt et stupefacti sunt audientes fragorem tonantis, neminem autem videntes. Tunc vir Dei palatium ingressus regem defunctum invenit, et cum luctu ingenti cunctorum honorifice sepelivit. Decem annis regnavit et defunctus est anno Domini DCCCCLV. Cui successit Edwinus filius Sancti Edmundi, qui, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, Beatum Dunstanum afflixit pro eo quod eum pro suis excessibus arguebat; cujus anima post obitum suum precibus sancti viri a pœnis Inferni liberata in sortem pœnitentum animarum translata esse perhibetur. Hujus tempore non rebellarunt Scotti sed obediebant ei. [B. *α*.] A.D. 946.

CAP. LXXXVII.

ANNO Domini nongentesimo LV. Edwius[1] filius Edmundi, superioris regis, regno potitus annis IIII. regnavit, adolescens et petulans et quia speciosus formæque elegantis fuit libidinibus se dedicavit.[2] Omnes in tota Anglia monastici ordinis prius facultatum auxilio nudatos post in exilio[3] deportatos plurimis calamitatibus affecit. Sanctum vero Dunstanum monachorum primicerium in Flandriam propellit.[4] Ea tempestate status monasteriorum fœda et miserabilis erat. Eadwy. A.D. 955. S. Dunstan is banished. A.D. 956.

Malmesburiense cœnobium fuerat subversum plusquam [ ][5] annis [ ][5] a monachis inhabi- The Abbey of Malmesbury destroyed.

[1] *Edwius*] Edwynus. B.D.

[2] *dedicavit*] decitavit. B. dedit. D.

[3] *exilio*] exilium. B.D.

[4] *propellit*] propulit. B.D.

[5] These blanks have been produced in A. by erasure. De subversione Malmesburiæ. in marg. A.D. The first blank is filled up in B. by the numeral *cc. et* 70 in a different hand from the text; but in very similar ink. The second does not exist. In D. the first blank only occurs, and bears no marks of erasure.

Willielmus Malmesburiensis. A.D. A.D. 959. His death. 1 Oct.

tatum, stabulum fecit clericorum. Tandem cum IIII. annis debacchasset debitum solvit et Wyntoniæ in Novo Monasterio sepultus est.

Cap. LXXXVIII.

Eadgar. A.D. 959.

Edgar post ipsum regnum tenuit omnino Edwy contrario,[1] iste enim in omnibus Deum et fidelitatem dilexit. Iste rex acclamatus, ab omnibus amatus, mœstis ferens lætitiam,[2] pauperibus recreationem, pacem fovens, guerram destruens. A decessu Arthuri non est talis probatus in armis et bellis strenuus, et cibariis et donis munificus, vita et morum honestate et regni gubernatione strenuissimus ac sapientissimus. De quo testatur Willielmus Malmesburiensis in Gestis suis de rege Edgaro dicens;—[3]

Quotation from William of Malmesbury.

"Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis D.CCCC.LIX. Edgarus, "honor Anglorum, filius Edmundi, frater Edwy, juven- "culus annorum sexdecim, regnum adipiscens eodem "annorum numero ferme tenuit."

"Denique vulgatum est quod eo nascente Angelicam "vocem Dunstanus exceperit:[4] Pax Angliæ, quamdiu "puer iste regnaverat[5] et Dunstanus noster vixerit. "Veritas rerum testatur cœlesti oraculo. Illis enim "viventibus splendor ecclesiasticus effloruit et tumultus "bellicus emarcuit. Nullus enim fere annus in chro- "nicis præteritus est quo non magnum et neces- "sarium patriæ aliquid fecerit vel monasterium novum "fundavit.[6] Nullas insidias domesticorum, nullum "exterminium alienorum[7] sensit. Regem Scottorum

---

[1] *Edwy contrario*] Edwyo contrarius. B. Edwy contrarius. D.
[2] De rege Edgaro. in marg. A.
[3] *De quo . . . dicens*] om. B.D.
[4] *exceperit*] acceperit. D.
[5] *regnaverat*] regnaverit. B.D.
[6] *fundavit*] fundaverit. B.D.
[7] *alienorum*] extraneorum. D.

" Kynadium, Cumbrorum Malcolinum, archipiratam A.D. 973.
" Mascusium, omnes reges Wallensium quorum nomina
" sunt [1] hæc: Dufnal, Giffert, Hunal, Jacob, Judeyl, His
" ad curiam coactos uno et perpetuo sacramento sibi triumph on the Dee.
" obligavit, adeo ut apud Civitatem Legionum sibi oc-
" currentes in pompam triumphi per fluvium illos
" deduceret, una enim ipsos omnes navi impositos
" ipse proram sedens remigare cogebat, per hoc osten-
" tans regalem magnificentiam qui subjectam haberet
" tot regum potentium."

Igitur Edgarus postquam reges subjecerat ad Sanctam He turns his attention to the reformation of the church. Ecclesiam oculos induxit; videns [2] eam clericis juvenibus et lasciviis inhabitatam, cogitans [3] intra se qualiter statum ecclesiasticum quovis modo meliorare,[4] inter quos enim [5] cœnobium Malmesburiæ clericis manantem [6] illis hæc verba procudit: [7] Si vellent sub regula vivere et in habitu regulari militare; illi vero religionem renuentes [8] et monasterium cum omnibus prædiis.

Rex autem unum virum famosissimum in omnibus A.D. 974. His donations to Malmesbury. ecclesiasticum, nomine Eluricum, custodem cœnobii constituit, et magnis prædiis ac terris, pratis, pascuis [9] amplissime cœnobium ditavit. Acta sunt hæc anno Domini D.CCCC.LXXIIII.

---

[1] The first word of f. 50. A. headed: De Rege Edgaro.
[2] *videns*] et. præm. B.D.
[3] *cogitans*] et. præm. B.D.
[4] *meliorare*] melioraret. B.D.
[5] *enim*] om. B.D.
[6] *manantem*] manans. D.
[7] *procudit*] profudit. D.
[8] *renuentes*] renuerunt. D
[9] *pascuis*] et. præm. B.D.

Cap. LXXXIX.

His vices. Sunt qui ingenti ejus gloriæ nævum[1] tentent apponere. Denique cum de uxore sua legitima, scilicet, Egelflida, cognomento Candida, filia Ordmeri[2] ducis potentissimi filium protulisset, nomine Edwardum, qui postea Sanctus nominatus est, et Sanctam Eilditham[3] de Wilfrida[4] quam certum est non tunc sanctimonialem fuisse, sed timore regis puellam laicam se velavisse, moxque eandem abrepto velo lecto imperiali deductam. Unde offensum[5] Beatam Dunstanum[6] quod illam concupisset, quæ vel umbratice sanctimonialis fuisset, vigorem Pontificalem in eum egessit.[7] Populus autem in[8] ipsum acclamantes et ipsum primis temporibus in cives crudelem fuisse, libidinosum in virgines extitisse, et ponunt exempla[9] per militem suum Ethelwoldum quem Cornubiæ miserat duci Ordgaro pro filia sua in reginam habenda, nam fama pulchritudinis suæ longe lateque ventilaverat.[10] Miles autem Cornubiæ adiens puellæ pulchritudinem intuens potius eam[11] usui suæ aptaverat quam regi. Miles regi rediens et puellæ pulchritudinem facie tenus ostentans, sed tanto principi nec formæ elegantis nec corpore facturæ decens insinuavit. Rex autem statim[12] igneum amorem prius habitum statim[13] tradidit oblivioni.

Ethelwoldus enim ignescens in[14] amore puellæ petiit a rege puellam tanquam pro promotione habenda, quia

---

[1] *nævum*] venenum. B. the *ne* interlined by another hand. venū. D.

[2] *Ordmeri*] Ordineri. B.

[3] *Eilditham*] Edytham. B.

[4] *Wilfrida*] Wlfrida. D.

[5] *offensum*] offensus est. B.D.

[6] *Beatam Dunstanum*] Beatus Dunstanus. B.D.

[7] *egessit*] egesset. B. ingessit. D.

[8] *in*] Interlined in A.

[9] *exempla*] exemplum. B.D.

[10] *ventilaverat*] ventilabatur. B.D.

[11] *eam*] om. B.D.

[12] *statim*] om. B.

[13] *statim*] om. D.

[14] *in*] om. B.

Ordgarus dux hæredem non habuit corporalem nisi filiam illam, Estrildam nomine. Rex sibi favens petitionem concessit. Ethelwoldus [1] autem Cornubiæ rediens omnia a rege concessa duci ostendit. De cætero nuptiæ parantur, magnates et proceres convocantur, sacramentalia celebrantur. Interea domina gravida facta est et infantulus pulcherrimus in mundo procreatus.

Emensis paucis annis rex pulchritudinem Estrildæ audiens, clavo clavum expellens, fraude fraudem eludens, frontem serenam comiti [2] Ethelwaldo [3] ostendit. Die quo visitaret mulierem tam laudatam quasi joco edixit. Comes vero tam terribili ludo exanimatus, ad conjugem currit,[4] rogans ut suæ saluti consuleret, et quantum posset vestibus deformaret, [5] tunc primum uxori aperiens facti sui consilium. Sed quid non præsumit femina? Ausa est miseri amatoris et primi conjugis fidem fallere, et speculo vultum comere, nihil omittens quod ephebi et potentis lumbos pertentaret; nec citra propositum accidit. Visum [6] enim adeo in eam inarsit [7] ut dissimulato odio comitem in silvam Wherewelliæ [8] gratia venandi accitum jaculo tractaret. Ubi cum filius occisi nothus usu familiari supervenisset, et a rege interrogatus esset qualiter ei talis venatio placuisset, respondisse fertur: Bene, domine rex, quod tibi placet mihi displicere non debet. Quo dicto, ita [9] tumentis animum mansuefecit, ut nihil carius in vita posthæc haberet quam juvenem illum tyranni facti in patrem sedulitate regia [10] in filium allevans. Ob illius

---

[1] The first word in f. 50 v. A. headed: De Rege Edgaro.

[2] *comiti*] om. B.D.

[3] *Ethelwaldo*] Ethelwoldo. B.

[4] *currit*] cucurrit. B.D.

[5] *deformaret*] se. præm. D.

[6] *Visum*] Originally *Visā* in A. but the cross stroke of the *a* has been erased. Visam. B.D.

[7] *inarsit*] exarsit. B.D.

[8] *Wherewelliæ*] Wherwelliæ. B. Werewelliæ. D.

[9] *ita*] ira. B. corrected from *ita*.

[10] *regia*] regina. B.

sceleris expiationem ibidem monasterium ab Elfrida ædificatum sanctimonialium frequentia inhabitatur.

Huic exemplo crudelitatis adjungunt homines aliud libidinis; virginis Deo dicatæ audiens pulchritudinem violenter eam a monasterio subtraxit,[1] abstractæ pudorem rapuit, et nisi semel toro suo collocavit. Quod cum aures Beati Dunstani offendisset, ab eo increpitus[2] septennem pœnitentiam non fastidivit. Rex autem dignatus[3] affligi jejunio simulque diademate carere septennio.

Tertiam adjungunt nequitiam quod cum rex juxta Andeueram prope Wyngtoniam equitaret, cujusdam ducis filiam, cujus formæ fama percrebuerat, adduci præcepit. Quocumque modo[4] lasciviando se gessit finem felicem fecit. Itaque nihil vita ejus[5] sanctius, nihil justa fuit probabilius, exceptis vitiis quæ postea amplis[6] virtutibus delevit. Hic enim patriam suam præclara fortitudine illustrem reddidit, post mortem ejus res et spes Angliæ retro sublapsæ sunt. Hic[7] Edgarus Glastoniæ est sepultus more regio, et Edwardus filius ejus[8] regnare cœpit post eum, qui tres annos et dimidium regno potitus est.

A.D. 975. His death. 8 July.

Edgarus rex, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, amator æquitatis, justitiæ, veritatis, et pacis, cœlitus in regem designatus est a nativitate sua. Hic a Beatis præsulibus Dunstano et Oswaldo et cæteris regni episcopis in civitate Acamanni, id est, Batonia, coronatus fuit et in regem consecratus, qui ecclesiæ Batoniensi multa contulit. Hic XVI. annis regnavit et anno Dominicæ Incarnationis DCCCCLXXV. moritur, cujus tumulum Edwardus abbas Glastoniæ anno Incarnationis Dominicæ MLII. aperiens invenit corpus illius nullius labis conscium, et quia locellus quem præparaverat difficilem per magnitudinem corporis minabatur ingressum regales

The coronation of Edgar. A.D. 973.

The translation of Edgar. A.D. 1052.

---

[1] *subtraxit*] abstraxit. B.D.

[2] *increpitus*] increpatus. B.D. Nota. in marg. A.D.

[3] *dignatus*] est. add. B.D.

[4] *modo*] om. B.D.

[5] *ejus*] est. B.

[6] *amplis*] amplius. B.D.

[7] The first word of f. 51. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[8] *ejus*] Interlined in A.

eximias[1] ferro temeravit, unde continuo sanguis undatim emanavit. A.D. 1052.
Temeratorem vero mox animus reliquit, nec post multum fracta cervice mors invenit; nec in his tantum regis adhæsit sanctitas, sed in ulteriora processit, sanato ibi furioso et cæco. Hujus filia Editha sanctimonialis Wiltoniensis fuit. Tempore istius floruerunt beati pontifices Adelwaldus Wyntoniensis et Oswaldus Wygorniensis, qui regia voluntate et assensu clericos sæculares de ecclesiis suis expellentes, monachos Deo regulariter servientes ibidem constituerunt.

S. Aethelwold, bp. of Winchester, A.D. 963. S. Oswald, bp. of Worcester. A.D. 960.

Edgarus rex Adelwaldi monitis plures novellas plantationes in Anglia instituit. Abbatiam de Abindonia, et de Burgo, et de Rameseie et Torneie et mediis paludibus amœnissimo loco fixit. Est autem palus illa latissima et visu decora, multis lacubus et pernis depicta, insulis et silvis florida, intra quam sunt multæ ecclesiæ, scilicet, Rameseiæ, de Cathelich, Thornegræ, Crolandiæ, Burgi, et Spaldynge, ecclesiam etiam Iuonis et ecclesiam Sancti Ægidii de Crecham et Sanctæ Trinitatis in Theoford. Hic rex Edgarus regem Scottorum et regem Insularum et alios v. subregulos ad curiam coactos per fluvium Deæ in Wallia apud Cestriam in pompam et triumphum una navi impositos, ipse proram sedens remigare cogebat. Tempore Edgari regis beatissimus Dunstanus Cantuariensem suscepit archiepiscopatum. Huic mos erat quando Cantuariæ morabatur loca sancta noctu peragrare et se ibi per contritionem cordis mactare. Quadam igitur vice ad monasterium Sanctorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, ubi beatus Augustinus et alii nonnulli pluresque tumulati sunt, circa mediæ noctis silentia perrexit, ibique diu oravit; egressusque ad oratorium Beatæ Mariæ, quod ad Orientem ipsius monasterii situm erat, divertit, in quo audivit voces psallentium et dicentium: Gaudent in cœlo animæ sanctorum qui Christi vestigia sunt secuti, et quia pro ejus amore sanguinem suum fuderunt,[2] ideo cum Christo regnabunt in æternum.

Edgar's religious foundations.

S. Dunstan archbishop of Canterbury. A.D. 959.

Legend.

Alio tempore, idem memoratum oratorium simili homagio pari voto requirens, ecce Beata Maria cum universo virginum choro venienti viro Dei occurrit, et summo cum honore susceptum ad suam ecclesiam quo tendebat, ducere cœpit, præcinentibus duabus de choro puellis istud dulce carmen: atque dicentibus:—

Legend.

Cantemus Domino, sociæ, cantemus honorem;
Dulcis amor Christi personet ore pio.

Quos versus chorus virginum resumendo percantans, prædictæ binæ cantatrices binos qui sequuntur ordinate subsecutæ sunt versus:—

Primus ad ima ruit magna de luce superbus,
Sic homo cum timuit primus ad ima ruit.

---

[1] corr. exuvias.

[2] *sanctorum . . . . fuderunt*] s. | i i q x v. s. secuti et q̄ꝫ p̄. ejus a. sag. s. fu. B.

A.D. 959. Sicque cum vir Dei in oratorium perductus esset virgineus chorus primos et virgines binæ binos juxta quod series hymni se habet versus modulatæ sunt.

S. Fulbert bishop of Chartres. A.D. 1007. Per idem tempus floruit Fulbertus Carnotensis episcopus, ejus industria et literarum peritia præcipue in amore Sanctæ Mariæ excellit. Huic in mortis janua constituto illa debitrix egregia apparens quid ita timet interrogavit; cui idem de ipsius misericordia sperare respondit sed de Filii ejus modo timere. Tunc illa: Ne timeas, mi Fulberte, et ut certiorem te faciam de futuro, nunc te convalescere faciam de hoc morbo; et producta e sum[1] mammilla pretiosi et balsamiti liquoris tres guttas in eum jecit et abiit; ille statim integræ incolumitati datus cœleste nectar[2] vase argenteo accepit, et ad memoriam servari præcepit.

Death of William Longue Epée. A.D. 943. Circa hæc tempora occiditur Willielmus de Longa Spata,[3] Normannorum dux, filius Rollonis. Pater ejus apud Rathamagum requiescunt. Huic successit filius ejus Ricardus Primus[4] cognominatus Sine Metu, eo quod nunquam timuit. Hujus consuetudo fuit quod ubicumque juxta ecclesiam vel cœmeterium transiret descenderet et oraret: si ecclesiam intrare non posset

Legend. ad ostium ecclesiæ orationem faceret. Quadam autem nocte iter faciens, juxta consuetudinem, cum ad ecclesiam unam devenisset, vidit eam apertam et intravit; invenit ibi corpus humanum mortuum jacens in feretro absque custodia; cum autem usque ad cancellum gladio accinctus transisset, cirothecas[5] e manibus extraxit et juxta se posuit ac devote oravit; cumque orationem complesset audivit post tergum suum sonitum magnum, feretrum concuti et moveri; qui respiciens vidit mortuum erectum et aperto ore contra ipsum brachia extendentem. At ille nil metuens signum Sanctæ Crucis sibi imposuit et adjuravit eum in nomine Domini ut requiesceret; quod cum non faceret, dux indignatus pertransiit, et abstracto gladio corpus per medium abscidit, et in duas partes divisit, ita ut hinc inde ex utroque latere feretri divisum caderet, statimque exiens ad suos venit; cumque cirothecas in cancello oblitus esset securus rediit easque recepit, et iter inceptum peregit; qui demum per totam terram suam generale fecit edictum ne alius deinceps mortuus absque vigilia et custodia relinqueretur donec sepulturæ traderetur; unde postea mos inolevit ut super mortuos custodiæ et vigiliæ[6] haberentur donec sepulturæ traderentur. [B. α.]

---

[1] *sum*] corr. sua?
[2] *cæleste nectar*] cete v^{o}tar. B.
[3] Will. de Longa Spata, in marg. B.
[4] Ricardus Primus, in marg. B.
[5] Mirabile, in marg. B.
[6] Vigiliæ mortuorum, in marg. B.

Cap. XC.

Dunstanus autem illum et cæteri episcopi consentanei contra voluntatem quorumdam optimatum et novercæ suæ regali culmine sublimarunt. Noverca vero filium suum nondum VII. annorum, Egelredum nomine, promoveri conabatur, ut ipsa potius sub eo imperaret. S. Edward the Martyr. A.D. 975.

Tunc visa est cometes,[1] quæ pestem provincialium et regni mutationem portendere pro vero asseverat. Regnante autem Edwardo plenus[2] pietate et misericordia Deum[3] et hominem licet puerulus in omnibus Deum[4] diligens per novercam suam Estrildam juxta Warham occisus est. Estrilda enim erat uxor secunda regis Edgari, de qua genuit unicum filium Eldredum nomine. Coronatus autem est Edwardus anno Domini DCCCCLXXV. Qualiter autem occisus fuit[5] in Gestis Anglorum satis apparet; primo Warham[6] inhoneste sepultus, postea Scaftoniæ[7] honorifice in feretro collocatur. A comet. A.D. 975. A.D. 978. Assassination of S. Edward. 18 March.

Mortuo igitur Edgaro successit ei Sanctus Edwardus, filius ejus; qui, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, regnavit quatuor annis. Hunc noverca sua Elfrida post basia prælibata porrectum poculum avide haurientem per sat[e]llitem suum sica transfodit, et sic occisus apud Corff Castrum feliciter occubuit anno Domini DCCCCLXXIX. Audiens Estrilda alias Elfrida miracula quæ per virtutem[8] dicti Edwardi fiebant, quasi veniam Dei petitura ad locum ubi requiescit accedere volebat; sed cum nec equitare equo retrocedente nec pedibus ullatenus quasi vi quadam repulsa incedere posset, tandem reatum suum intelligens in monasterium Werwellense secessit, et ibi usque ad obitum suum de facto suo miserabiliter pœnituit, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem. [B. α.] The repentance of Elfrida.

---

[1] *cometes*] The *et* interlined in A.

[2] *plenus*] pleno. B.D.

[3] *Deum*] A short erasure follows in A.

[4] *Deum*] Written upon an erasure in A. the word *deū* being faintly traced in marg. A.

[5] *fuit*] est. B.D.

[6] *Warham*] apud. præm. D.

[7] *Scaftoniæ*] Schephtoniæ. B. Septoniæ. D.

[8] *virtutem*] virid. B. α.

Cap. XCI.

Aethelred II. A.D. 978.

Edwardo mortuo Ethelredus[1] filius Edgari et Eilfridæ[2] regnare cœpit anno Incarnationis DCCCCLXXIX. Qui cum a Beato Dunstano in fontem baptismi mergeretur, circumstantibus episcopis alvo profluo sacramentalia interpolavit. Qua re ille turbatus, per Deum, inquit, et Matrem ejus, homo iste ignavus erit.

[A.D.]979. A.[3]D. 14 April.

Die vero coronationis suæ matris suffragio proceribus congregatis, Dies Dominica ut proceribus congregatis Dunstanus adveniret regem jure archiepiscopi coronaturus, ille, licet infensus esset, supersedit resistere. Pontifex ævi maturioris et in sæcularibus emeritus, jam vero diadema componens non se continuit quin spiritum propheticum totis medullis haustum ore pleno effunderet. Quia, inquit, per mortem fratris tui ad regnum aspirasti, propterea audi verbum Domini.

Hæc dicit Dominus Deus: Non delebitur peccatum ignominiosæ matris tuæ et peccatum illorum qui interfuerunt consilio illius[4] nequam, nisi multo sanguine miserorum provincialium. Nec multo post venerunt Hamptonam[5] VII. naves piratarum et populata ora maritima fugerunt in altum, imposterum enim multus sermo inter Anglos de his[6] volitabat. Multa autem damna Angliæ ingesserunt.

The sons of Aethelred, Eadmund Ironside, and Eadwi.

Eldredus[7] etiam duos generavit filios; nomen primi est[8] Edmundus, vocabulo Irenside,[9] nomen secundi Edwyn.[10] Hic Eldred multa opprobria passus est, nam

---

[1] De rege Ethelredo. in marg. A.

[2] *et Eilfridæ*] om. B.D.

[3] In large Arabic numerals in A.

[4] *illius*] ejus. B.D.

[5] *Hamptonam*] Hamptoniam. B.

[6] There is a caret in A. between *his* and *volitabat* and an erased interlineation above.

[7] *Eldredus*] The *r* interlined in A.

[8] *est*] om. D.

[9] *Irenside*] Yrensyde. B.D.

[10] *Edwyn*] The *wyn* corrected into *ward* in B. by a later hand.

per unum regem Danorum, nomine Swayne, fugatus est in Normanniam et ibi per plura tempora quievit. Sweyn[1] vero omnes magnates Angliæ, Northumbriæ, Britanniæ, quæ Wallia dicitur, secum omnino tenuit.[2] Regem enim eorum proprium non dilexerunt propter occisionem Sancti[3] Edwardi. Prædictus vero Swayn per aliquot tempus regnavit, tandem occisus[4] et Eboraco sepultus.

A.D. 1014. Aethelred retires into Normandy. 1 Jan.

Death of Sweyn. 3 Feb.

Tempore[5] etiam istius Ethelredi plura sunt monstra visa et inaudita mirabilia in partibus transmarinis et in via Romana quæ non sunt omittenda, more tamen narrationum se demonstrant, quæ post historiam regum Romanorum in libro tertio[6] revelandæ[7] sunt et præcipue de Gereberto clerico qui post papa factus est, et vocatus est Johannes XV. Hic enim fecit concordiam inter regem Ethelredum et Ricardum comitem Normanniæ, qui longo tempore discordati erant.

Wonders in the reign of Aethelred.

See Book Third.

Ethelredus alias Edelredus, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, Edgari filius frater Edwardi regnavit annis XXXVII. cum maximo labore bellis in eum undique insurgentibus, sicut Beatus Dunstanus de eo prædixit, et quia ejus causa frater ejus Edwardus peremptus est. Hic ex Emma regina,[8] filia Ricardi Primi, ducis Normanniæ, genuit Aluredum et Edwardum qui in pueritia sua missi sunt in Normanniam ad nutriendum. Ex Algiua concubina sua, filia Egilberti, cepit Edmundum qui Latus Ferreum cognominatus est Irenside, et Edwynum et Adelstanum et filiam, vocabulo Edwyne. Hujus tempore venerunt Dani in Angliam. Hic in bello imbecillus, in cunctis pæne actionibus suis monachum potius quam militem se prætendebat. Temporibus istius Edelredi Sanctus Alphegus, primus Batoniæ abbas, Divino nutu per Sanctum Dunstanum Wentanæ ecclesiæ post Beatum Adelwlfum præficitur.

Aethelred.

S. Aelfeah, bp. of Winchester. A.D. 984.

---

[1] *Sweyn*] Swayñ. B. passim. Swayn. D.

[2] *tenuit*] detinuit. B.D.

[3] *Sancti*] om. B.D.

[4] *occisus*] est. præm. B.D.

[5] *Tempore*] The first word of f. 51v. A. headed: De Rege Cnuto.

[6] *Romanorum in libro tertio*] Written upon an erasure in A. in blacker ink and a larger hand than the context, but most probably by the author. Nota. in the same ink in marg. A. Nota in marg. D.

[7] *revelandæ*] revelanda. B.D.

[8] Emma regina. in marg. B.

A.D. 1006. Archbp. of Canterbury. A.D. 1012. His martyrdom.

Ad Cantuariensem postmodum translatus est episcopatum; VII. annis tenuit. Dein a Danis seipsum sponte offerens martyr efficitur, anno Domini MXII. Hujus Edelredi tempore contigit mirabile inauditum de choræa in nocte Natalis supra Libro tertio. [B. *a*.]

CAP. XCII.

Cnut. A.D. 1017. England divided between Eadmund and Cnut. Murder of Eadmund. 30 Nov.

ANNO Dominicæ Incarnationis MXVII. Cnuto[1] regnare cœpit et XX. annis regnavit. Post plura enim bella regnum Angliæ divisum est inter regem Edmundum et Cnutonem.[2] Rex vero[3] Edmundus IX. annis regnavit, et per unum proditorem, Edricum cognomento Stratton,[4] unco ferreo in ano latenter submisso, occisus est, et sic ad magnum populi luctum finem fecit miserrimum. Ista enim fuit divisio inter reges: rex Edmundus dominabatur in Westsaxonia, et Glastoniæ more regio sepelitur, rex vero Knuto regnum Merciorum regebat. Occisio Edmundi, ut ferunt quidam, fuerat[5] per unam imaginem arte nigromantica fabricatum[6] ad modum sagittarii uncum ferreum in balista sua tenentem, quod[7] quando quis eum[8] tetigerit statim arte sua uncum emitteret et sic emisso regem occidit. Tanta enim erat amicitia inter regem Edmundum et Knutonem sicut et[9] essent fratres uterini, nam ut canit versificator:[10]

Another account of the murder of Eadmund.

Post inimicitias clarior exstat[11] amor etc.

Tandem Deo vindicante mortem justorum orta est simultatio verbis asperis inter regem Knutonem et

---

[1] *Cnuto*] Knuto. B.D.
[2] *Cnutonem*] Knutum. B.D.
[3] *Rex vero*] om. B. De rege Edmundo Irensid. in marg. A. D.
[4] *Stratton*] Strattoñ. B.D.
[5] *fuerat*] fuit. D.
[6] *fabricatum*] fabricatam. B.D.
[7] *quod*] quæ. B.D.
[8] *eum*] eam. B.D.
[9] *sicut et*] ac si. B.D.
[10] Versus. in marg. A.D.
[11] *exstat*] est et. B.

Edricum; dum enim colloquerentur ille fiducia meritorum[1] beneficia sua regi quasi amicabiliter inproperans ait: Edmundum pro te primo deserui, post etiam ob tui fidelitatem ipsum[2] extinxi, spem mercedis sperans a te[3] accepturum. Quo dicto Knutoni facies immutari,[4] nam[5] ruborem prodidit,[6] dicens: Merces meritoria tibi de jure debetur. Et continuo prolata sententia, Merito, inquit, et tu morieris cum sis læsæ majestatis reus in Deum et in me, qui dominum proprium et fratrem mihi confœderatum occideris. Sanguis ejus super caput tuum quia os tuum locutum est contra te, eo quod misisti manum[7] in Christum Dominum. Mox ne tumultus fieret in eodem cubiculo proditor fauces elisus et per fenestram in Tamensem[8] aquam præcipitatus, perfidiæ meritum consecutus est. A.D. 1017. The punishment of his murderer Eadric Streona.

Filios Edmundi duos pulcherrimos valde Knude[9] educavit, et ob amorem patris valde dilexit, sed post aliquod tempus per[10] incantationes nocturnas uxoris suæ voluntas sua transmutatur.

Mortuo[11] Edelredo regnavit Edmundus Yrenside, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, prædicandæ indolis juvenis, sic dictus propter insuperabilem strenuitatem, qui patris ignaviam et matris ignobilitatem virtute sua præiveret si parcere nosceret. Hic uno anno regnavit, secundum alios, IX. annis regnavit. Hujus temporibus Cnut rex Daciæ venit in Angliam, cum magno navigio et armatorum multitudine copiosa, contra quem Edmundus pugnavit et devicit eum, qui iterum viribus resumptis contra Edmundum congressus est, eumque debellavit. Demum Edmundus cum Cnuto fœdus percussit, sibi Westsaxoniam retinens, illi concedens Merciam. Eadmund Ironside. A.D. 1016.

---

[1] *meritorum*] mecr̃orum. B. merciorum. D.

[2] *ipsum*] Added in marg. A. and referred to its place by a caret.

[3] *a te*] The first word written upon an erasure in A. the second added beyond the line. me. add. B.D.

[4] *immutari*] immutati. A.D.? the *ri* added in B. by another hand. cœpit. in marg. B. referred to the text before *immutari* by a caret.

[5] *nam*] ira. D.?

[6] *prodidit*] perfudit. D.

[7] *manum*] Added in marg. A. and referred to its place by a caret.

[8] *Tamensem*] Tamenseam. B.

[9] *Knude*] Knuto. B.D.

[10] *per*] The *er* on an erasure in B.

[11] De Edmundo. in marg. B. *a*

A.D. 1017. Edmundo occiso, successit Knutus qui omnium prædecessorum suorum maximus erat, dux totius Daciæ et Angliæ et totius Norwegiæ et Scociæ et Insularum Silliarum; et regnavit xx. annis gloriosissime, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem. Iste Knutus duxit Emmam reginam, relictam Edelredi regis, sororem ducis Ricardi Secundi Normannorum, de qua genuit Hardknutum nomine, et Cunnildam quam dedit Henrico Romanorum imperatori. Knutus filium suum Hardeknutum regem pro se constituit in Danubia. Hic Knutus Romam pergens omnes malas exactiones in via usque ad medietatem diminui fecit. In litore maris sedile suum fecit et mari cum ascenderet imperavit, cumque mare pedes ejus madefaceret insiliens ait: Sciant omnes orbem inhabitantes vanam esse et frivolam regum potentiam nec quempiam regis nomine dignum præter eum cujus legibus cœlum, terra, et mare obediunt. Decessit Knutus anno Domini MXXXV. Emma conjux fuit regum Edelredi et Cnuti, et mater regum Aluredi et Edwardi et Arknuti. Knutus genuit Haraldum de Alicia Hamptonensi. Haraldus, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem, ideo electus est rex, ut conservaret regnum fratri suo Hardknuto. [B. *a*.]

Knut sends the sons of Eadmund into Denmark with Wlgar.

Rex autem Knut per frequentatas[1] uxoris suæ supplicationes pueros in Danemarchiam ad perdendum transmisit, per unum militem strenuum, Wlgar nomine. Miles igitur puerorum pulchritudinem inspiciens misericordia motus dixit intra se illos esse tenerrimos[2] ad occidendum. Iter suum mutavit versus regem Hungariæ, nam prius Wlgar[3] cum illo[4] moram traxerat, a quo honorifice susceptus est. Nomina vero puerorum, primi, Edwardus, secundi, Edmundus. Hic enim post eventum suum VI. annos supervixit et tandem mortuus est. Edwardus a rege Hungariæ[5] miles factus est; hic enim tantæ fuit affabilitatis, urbanitatis, mansuetudinis, et dilectionis quod tota illa patria super illo congratulabatur.

Wlgar takes them to Hungary.

Death of Eadmund.

Edward marries

Rex igitur unicam habens[6] filiam et hæredem quam Edwardo copulavit, de qua Edwardus duos liberos

---

[1] *frequentatas*] frequentas. D.
[2] *tenerrimos*] The *i* interlined in A.
[3] *Wlgar*] Vulgar. B.
[4] *illo*] ipso. B.D.
[5] *Hungariæ*] Interlined in A.
[6] *habens*] habuit. B.D.

procreavit: nomen viri Edgarus, nomen feminæ Margareta, quæ postea Malcolino regi Scotiæ toro maritali copulata est. De quibus una filia generata est quæ postea fuerat[1] Angliæ regina, et Matildis nominata, per regem Henricum filium Conquæstoris cognomento Beauclerk, de qua unicam filiam generavit[2] nomine Matildam, quæ postea fuerat[3] imperatrix; de qua procreatus est Henricus rex, filius imperatricis. A.D. 1017. Agatha, their issue: Eadgar Aetheling and Margaret.

Edwardus vero aliam habuit filiam, nomine Christina,[4] quæ sanctimonialis facta est. Christina the nun.

Cap. XCIII.

Knud[5] igitur in summa prosperitate regnavit, et factus est pius, justus, misericors, et summus eleemosinarius. Duo cœnobia de Sancto Benedicto fundavit, unum in Anglia, alium[6] in Danemarchia. Monasterium Sancti Edmundi a principio fundavit et monachis ibidem instituit, et multis prædiis et possessionibus illud ditavit, ob facinus antecessorum suorum Danorum[7] quod commiserant in sanctum regem. A.D. 1020. Knut rebuilds the monastery of S. Eadmund.

Plura monasteria prostrata relevavit; nam in partibus transmarinis multum aurum eleemosinarie transmisit. Loca omnia in quibus pugnaverat, et præcipue Assendunam, ecclesiis insignivit, qui per sæcula sempiterna pro animabus occisorum supplicarent.[8] Wingtoniæ[9] maxime munificentiæ suæ magnificentiam ostendit, ubi tanta intulit ut moles metallorum terreat advenarum animos, splendor gemmarum reverberet intuentium oculos; ibidem enim præ omnibus elegerat His donations to Winchester.

---

[1] *fuerat*] fuit. B.D.
[2] *generavit*] genuit. B.
[3] *fuerat*] fuit. D.
[4] *Christina*] Christinam. B. Christianam. D.
[5] *Knud*] Knut. B.D.
[6] *alium*] aliud. B.D.
[7] *Danorum*] Interlined in A.
[8] *supplicarent*] orarent. B.D.
[9] *Wingtoniæ*] Wyntoniæ. B.D. passim.

A.D. 1020. juxta patrem suum sepulturam. Ita omnia quæ ipse et antecessores sui deliquerant corrigere satagens proprioris injustitiæ [1] nævum [2] apud Deum fortassis, apud
A.D. 1035. His death. 12 Nov. homines certe abstersit; fecit finem in Deum et Wyngtoniæ quiescit. Duos enim filios generavit, nomen primi Harold, qui propter levitatem corporis vocatus est Harold Harefot;[4] nomen secundi Hardknut vocitatur.

Cap. XCIV.

Harold Harefoot. A.D. 1037. Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis mxxxvi. Haraldus quem fama filium Knutonis ex filia Elfelmi[5] comitis loquebatur, regnavit annis iiii. et mensibus totidem. Electus autem fuit per consensum Danorum et Londoniensium. Angli diu obstiterunt, magis Hardknutum
He exiles Emma. habuisse voluerunt. Haraldus sceptro confirmato de Anglia novercam exiliavit;[6] nihil boni fecit quod in
A.D. 1040. His death. 17 March. scriptis redigi meretur. Apud Oxenfordiam mense Aprili defunctus Westmonasterio[7] tumulatur.

Cap. XCV.

Harthacnut A.D. 1040. Tunc Anglis et Danis in unam sententiam convenientibus propter Hardeknut[8] missum mense Augusto
A.D. 1042. His sudden death. 8 June. coronaverunt. Hic etiam biennio præter x. dies regnans spiritum inter pocula apud Lamhudam juxta Londoniam[9] amisit, et Wyngtoniæ juxta patrem

---

[1] *injustitiæ*] justitiæ. D.

[2] *nævum*] newyn. B. venũ. D.

[3] The first word of f. 52v. A. headed: De Rege Haraldo.

[4] *Harefot*] Harefote. B.

[5] *Elfelmi*] Helfelini. B.

[6] *exiliavit*] The *ili* corrected into *ul* in B.

[7] *Westmonasterio*] apud Westmonasterium. B.D.

[8] *Hardeknut*] Hardknutum. B. D.

[9] De rege Hardknut. in marg. A.

suum sepultus est. Ipso enim vivente matrem suam ab exilio revocavit, quæ exulata fuerat[1] per fratrem suum Haraldum, consulante comite Godwino. A.D. 1042.

Aelfred and Edward sent for.

Hardknut mortuo, tota terra Anglicana longo tempore desolata et orbata extiterat. Ex communi Anglorum assensu miserunt post duos filios regis Ethelredi, scilicet, Aluredum et Edwardum. Aluredus autem veniens cum XII. militibus in Angliam [a] Godwyno comite omnes suffocati sunt. Alluredus autem summo martyrio coronatus.[2]

Murder of Aelfred. A.D. 1036.

CAP. XCVI.

S. Edward the Confessor.

ANNO Incarnationis Domini MXLII. Edwardus, filius Egelredi,[3] suscepit regnum; mansit in eo annis XXIIII. non plenis.[4] Vir propter morum simplicitatem[5] parum imperio idoneus, sed Deo devotus, ideoque ab eo directus.[6] A.D. 1042.

His character.

Denique eo regnante pax et tranquillitas et omnia prospera[7] affluebant; ira, discordia, contentiones et bella omni tempore suo sedati[8] sunt. A.D. 1043.

Leofric and Godiva found the monastery of Coventry.

Eo regnante comes Leofricus cum conjuge sua Goddiua monasterium Couentriæ[9] construxit, et corpus suum et uxoris suæ ad ibidem sepeliendum[10] legavit:[11] fecit etiam Wenlok, Sanctæ Mariæ Stowe,[12] Leonense ecclesias et multa alia. Multa mirabilia fecit et vidit. Septem dormi-

---

[1] *exulata fuerat*] exulavit. D.

[2] *coronatus*] est. præm. B.D. ut supra in fine Libri Quarti. add. B. (*a*).

[3] *Egelredi*] Corrected into *Edelredi*. in B.

[4] *plenis*] plene. B.D.

[5] De rege Edwardo et Sancto. in marg. A.

[6] *directus*] dilectus. B.D.

[7] *prospera*] Written originally ppa in A. the shaft of the second *p* having been afterwards produced upwards and curved over the *a* to form an *s*.

[8] *sedati*] sedata. B.

[9] *Couentriæ*] Couentrei. B. Coventrey. D. Monasterium Couentrei constructum. in marg. A.D.

[10] *sepeliendum*] sepelienda. D.

[11] *legavit*] delegavit. B.D.

[12] *Stowe*] Stow. B.

A.D. 1042. The miraculous powers of Edward.

entes se divertentes vidit; scriptura testatur. Quinquaginta VII. uno die per ablutionem aquæ manuum et unus cæcus Westmonasterio sanati sunt,[1] satellitibus ægrotis aquam ministrantibus.

A.D. 1066. His death. 5 Jan.

Finem fecit laudabilem die Sanctorum Innocentium, et in die Theophaniæ[2] Westmonasterio, ut decet, more regio sepultus est.

A.D. 1043. Coronation of S. Edward the Confessor. 3 April.

Sanctus Edwardus Confessor, filius Edelredi, consecratus fuit ab Eildisio archiepiscopo apud Wyntoniam in die Paschæ, et postea Editham, filiam Godwini, duxit uxorem, in cujus pectore omnium liberalium artium erat gymnasium, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem. Iste Sanctus Edwardus Confessor præstitit juramentum Willielmo Bastard quod si rex, annuente Deo, fieret nullum alium præter illum haberet hæredem. Postea in Angliam remeans anno Domini M.LXVI. fecit dedicari ecclesiam Apostolorum Petri et Pauli Westmonasterio apud Londoniam, et eodem anno ibidem obiit. Item quadam die vidit Willielmum regem Danorum volentem eripere sibi regnum submersum in mari. Item alia die vidit puerum speciosum super altare coram sacrante, et in ipsa sacra immolationis hostia vidit ipsum puerum in manibus sacerdotis, et tandem dicto Willielmo in testamento regnum dedit; et ita progenies Westsaxonum quæ in Britannia a Cerdicio primo rege DLXXI., annis ab Exbrichto CCLXI. regnaverat ad regnandum defecit omnino. Hujus Edwardi jussu Siwardus dux Northumbriæ regem Scottorum in prœlio vita et regno privavit, et Malcolinum filium, regem[3] Cumbrorum, regem pro eo constituit. Circa hæc tempora Sanctus Wlstanus Wygorniensis episcopus floruit, vir simplex ac Deo devotus, primus monachus ejusdem ecclesiæ. Hic cum rex Willielmus, qui postea regnavit, baculum pastorale quem ei rex Edwardus dederat propter nimiam simplicitatem suam auferre voluisset, ipse ad tumbam Sancti Edwardi veniens baculum eundem ibi fixit in petra, statimque permansit. Hoc videntes in admirationem et stuporem conversi sunt, sicque episcopatus suus sibi in pace remansit. Sanctus idem anno Domini MLXXXV. migravit ad Dominum. [B. α.]

A.D. 1065. Consecration of Westminster Abbey. 28 Dec.

A.D. 1054. Edward sends earl Siward against Macbeoth.

A.D. 1062. S. Wulstan bp. of Worcester.

---

[1] *sanati sunt*] om. B. added in marg. B. *pr. man.*

[2] *Theophaniæ*] Epiphaniæ. B.D.

[3] *regem*] corr. regis.

Cap. XCVII.

Hoc die[1] quo Edwardus est sepultus Haraldus se fecit coronari in regem. Edwardus, eo vivente, misit ad Willielmum Normanniæ ducem ut ad ipsum veniret,[2] et ab eo regnum Angliæ susciperet. Ipse enim distulit ob nimietatem amoris quam[3] erga regem Edwardum habuerat. A.D. 1066. Harold seizes the crown.

Haraldus enim duos annos ante mortem Sancti Edwardi misit se in mare, causa ludendi, in una scapha cujusdam piscatoris, at vero tempestate suborta, fugatus a terra, et in magno mari dimissus cecidit in manus barbarorum, qui deductus ad terram prope Normanniam[4] misit ad ducem Willielmum ut sibi succursum præstaret. Ipse vero precibus Haraldi inclinans[5] liberavit eum ab omni servitio barbarorum. Haraldus vero voluntate spontanea et non coactus, juravit se nunquam arma portare contra vexillum Willielmi ducis Normanniæ, et insuper se nunquam uxorem accipiendam,[6] nisi filiam ducis Willielmi. Hoc juramentum, non coactus, non compulsus, duci Willielmo confirmavit; Willielmus ipsum ad Angliam remisit cum honoribus et munificentiis. Harold is driven by a storm on the coast of Ponthieu, made prisoner, and sends to William duke of Normandy. His oath to William.

Haraldo igitur parvo tempore[7] regnante venit quidam rex Danus, Harald Harestring[8] nominatus. Hic regem Angliæ fortiter debellavit, sed rex Angliæ regem Danum superavit et occidit. Longum est enarrare, sed quia diffusum explico compendiose, si quis audire desi- Harold defeats Harald Hardráda at Stamford Bridge. 25 Sept.

---

[1] *Hoc die*] Written *Hodie* in A. and a *c* interpolated. Eo die. B. D. The first word of f. 53. A. headed: De rege Haraldo, filio Godwini.

[2] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[3] *quam*] quem. B.D.

[4] *ad terram prope Normanniam*] prope terram Normanniæ. D.

[5] *inclinans*] inclinatus. B.D.

[6] *accipiendam*] accipiendum. B. D.

[7] *tempore*] Written upon an erasure in A.

[8] *Harestring*] Harestryng. B.

A.D. 1066. He keeps the booty from his friends, many of whom desert.

derat Anglorum Gesta requirat. Haraldo ergo [1] super Danos triumphante, nullis partibus prædæ dignatus commilitones suos visitare. Quapropter multi, quo quisque poterat delapsi, regem ad bellum Hastingiæ proficiscentem destituere. Nam præter stipendiarios et mercenarios milites paucos admodum ex provincialibus habuit, unde cum suis quos ductabat [2] post IX. menses accepti regni et aliquot dies astutia ducis Willielmi circumventus confusus est.

Cap. XCVIII.

Of the birth of William of Normandy. A.D. 1028.

De conceptione [3] ducis Willielmi qualiter patri suo in somnis revelatum fuit, quod omnia pueri intestina primo per totam Normanniam postea dilatando per totam Angliam dilatata sunt, mirabile est enarrare; postea quando natus est in primo [4] de alvo matris egressu,[5] postea sub teneris annis educatus et in custodia deputatus,[6] patre ejus erga [7] Jerusalem [8] proficiscente, et ducatus Normanniæ multis tribulationibus et bellis oppressus et fatigatus populo Normannico acclamante: Væ genti super quem [9] puer dominatur! Tandem nutu Divino viribus succrescentibus et ætate præveniente, exuit puerilia et induit virilia,[10] patriam propriam defendit, hostes opprimit, nationes exteras invadit, et ipsas suo dominio mancipat, et subjugatas summa moderatione gubernat.

A.D. 1035.

A.D. 1066. He prepares to

Interea [11] Willielmus præcogitans terram sibi a Sancto

---

[1] *ergo*] igitur. B.D.

[2] *ductabat*] ducebat. B.D.

[3] De Willielmo Bastard. in marg. A.

[4] *primo*] die. add. B.D.

[5] *egressu*] egressus. B.D.

[6] *et in custodia deputatus*] om. A.D.

[7] *erga*] versus. B.D.

[8] *Jerusalem*] Added beyond the end of a line in A.

[9] *quem*] quam. D.

[10] Nota. in marg. D.

[11] incipit. in marg. A. not in the author's hand.

Edwardo concessam invadere, verum cum magna industria et Dei providentia naves parat. Et ne justam causam temeritas [1] decoloraret, ad Apostolicum quæ ex Anselmo Lucensi [2] episcopo Alexander dicebatur, misit justitiam suscepti belli quantis poterat facundiis allegans. Heroldus [3] id facere supersedit, vel quod turgidus natura esset vel quod causæ diffideret, vel quod nuntios suos a Willielmo et ejus complicibus, qui omnes portus obsidebant, impediri timeret. Quare perpensis apud se utrumque [4] partibus papa vexillum in omen regi Willielmo contulit, quo ille accepto conventum magnatum [5] apud Lissebonam super negotio singulorum transmisit.

A.D. 1066. invade England. He sends to Pope Alexander II., who sends him a consecrated banner.

Omnes enim animati ejus voluntatem magnis plausibus susceperunt. Tunc ita discessum et Sancto Walerico [6] mense Augusto, Deo dante,[7] ventum est. Congregatis undique navibus felix expectabatur [8] aura quæ illas [9] ad destinatum eveheret,[10] qua [11] multis diebus commorante vulgus militum per tentoria mussitabat,[12] et intra se dicebat: Hominem insanire qui alienum solum in jus suum vellet refundere, erga Deum contendere qui ventum arceret. Ista per publicum serebantur quæ possent fortium robur enervare.

He arrives in August at S. Valery-sur-Somme, where he is detained by adverse winds. Discontent of the army.

Dux itaque facto cum senioribus consilio corpus Sancti Walerici [13] foras efferri, et pro vento deprecando sub divo exponi jussit. Nec mora intercessit quin prosper flatus carbasa impleret. Tunc lætus clamor

He causes the body of S. Valery to be carried in procession.

---

[1] *temeritas*] The letters *ti* are erased in A. between the *a* and the *s*. temeritatis. B.D.

[2] *quæ ex Anselmo Lucensi*] qui ex Anselino [Anselmo. D.] Lucenti. B.D.

[3] *Heroldus*] Haraldus. B. Haroldus. D.

[4] *utrumque*] utrisque. B.D.

[5] *magnatum*] magnum. B.D.

[6] *Walerico*] Valerico. B.D.

[7] *dante*] donante. B.D.

[8] *expectabatur*] expectatur. B.

[9] *illas*] illos. B.D.

[10] *eveheret*] veheret. B.D.

[11] *qua*] quo. B.D.

[12] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[13] *Walerici*] Valerici. B. De corpore Sancti Walerici. in marg. B.

A.D. 1066. exortus omnes ad naves invitavit. Comes ipse a continenti primus ad altum provectus cæteros in medio fere mari ancoris jactis sustinuit. Omnibus itaque ad prætoriæ puppis vermiculatum velum convolantibus post cibum sumptum placido cursu Hastingas appulerunt.[1]

He arrives at Hastings. 28 Sept.

In egressu navis pede lapsus eventum in melius commutavit, acclamante sibi proximo milite ; Tenes, inquit, Angliam comes rex futurus. Omnem exercitum a præda continuit, continuisque quindecim diebus adeo se quiete agens, ut nihil minus quam bellum cogitare videretur.[2]

He restrains his army from plunder.

Cap. XCIX.

Harold sends spies into the Norman camp.

Heroldus[3] vero de pugna Noricorum revertebatur, sua æstimatione felix quod vicerat, allatosque ad se nuntios adventum Normannorum explorare jussit et modum ; quibus euntibus et intra castra deprehensis largis eduliis pastos domino incolumes remitti jubet. Redeuntes percunctatur Haraldus quid rerum apportent. Illi verbis amplissimis summam[4] magnificentiam ducis confessi sunt. Calumniabatur enim Willielmus regnum quod rex illi Edwardus concesserat, consilio Stigandi archiepiscopi et Godwini comitis, et Siwardi[5] comitis, ejusque doni obsides filium et nepotem Godwini Normanniam miserat.

---

[1] *appulerunt*] applicuerunt. D.

[2] In marg. A. In the author's hand, and referred to the end of this chapter by a mark, is the note : Quære in fine quarti libri quare Willielmus Angliam vendicavit. It is placed in the space between the two chapters XCVIII. and XCIX. in B. and is in rubric. It stands as a heading in D. the word *Require* being substituted for *Quære.*

[3] *Heroldus*] Haraldus. B.

[4] *summam*] om. B.D.

[5] *Siwardi*] Suardi. B.D.

Disponentes itaque animosi duces acies suas quisque patrio ritu, Angli, ut accepimus, totam noctem insomnem cantibus, potibus, que[1] cantilenis ducentes[2] mane incunctanter in hostem[3] procedunt. Pedites omnes cum bipennibus conserta[4] ante[5] se scutorum[6] testudine impenetrabilem cuneum faciunt, quod profecto illis ea die saluti fuisset nisi Normanni, simulata fuga more suo, confertos manipulos laxassent.[7] Rex ipse pedes juxta vexillum stabat cum fratribus in commune periculo æquato, nemo de fuga cogitaret; vexillum illud quod Anglis fuit post victoriam Willielmus papæ transmisit, figura cujus erat in hominis pugnantis auro et lapidibus pretiosis arte sumptuosa intextum. A.D. 1066. The English spend the night before the battle in drinking and song,

Econtra Normanni nocte tota confessioni peccatorum vacantes, mane Dominico Corpori communicarunt. Pedites cum arcubus et sagittis primam frontem munierunt. Equites retro divisis aliis[8] consistunt. Comes vultu sereno[9] et clara voce suæ utpote parti justiori Domini[10] affuturum pronuntians arma poposcit. Moxque ministrorum tumultu loricam inversam indutus casum risu correxit, Vertetur, inquiens, fortitudo comitatus mei[11] in regnum.[12] Inclamatoque Dei auxilio prœlium consertum est. The Normans in confession and prayer.

Bellatumque est acriter, neutris in multam diei horam[13] cedentibus; quo comperto Willielmus innuit suis ut ficta fuga campo se subtraherent. Hoc ab The battle of Hastings. 14 Oct.

---

[1] *que*] Separated from *potibus* in A. by a stop (.).

[2] *ducentes*] choreas. add. D.

[3] *in hostem*] in hostes. B. the *in* interlined. in hostes. D.

[4] *conserta*] A slight erasure follows in A.

[5] *ante*] autem. B.

[6] *scutorum*] Originally written *scutoriū* in A. the last stroke of the *u* and the accent over the *i* having been erased.

[7] *laxassent*] A letter has been erased in A. betweed the *a* and the *s*.

[8] *aliis*] alis. D.

[9] *sereno*] serenus. B.D.

[10] *Domini*] dñi. A.B. Deum. D.

[11] *mei*] om. D.

[12] Nota. in marg. A.D

[13] *multam . . . . . horam*] multa . . . . . hora. D.

A.D. 1066. William feigns a retreat. Anglis comperto, cuneus eorum statim dissolutus est. Normanni enim [1] conversis ordinibus reversi, dispersi adoriuntur, et in fugam cogunt. Fossatum quoddam compendario præruptum et noto sibi transitu evadentes tot ibi inimicorum conculcavere ut cumulo cadaverum planitiem [2] campi æquarent. Tandem Haraldi vita valefecit, ipso autem occumbente, femur suum [3] unus militum gladio procidit. Hoc autem auribus Willielmi [4] notatum, quod rem ignavam et pudendam fecisset, militia depositus est.

Defeat of theEnglish.

Death of Harold.

Cap. C.

Harold's mother begs and obtains his body, and buries it at Waltham. Peracta ibi victoria suos sepeliendos mirifice curavit, hostibus quoque si qui vellent idem exequendi licentiam præbuit; corpus vero Haraldi matri repetenti sine pretio commisit. Acceptum itaque apud Waltham sepelivit, non tamen sicut decuit, in ecclesia quam ipse ex proprio in honore Sanctæ Crucis canonicis impleverat. Mox igitur Willielmus Londoniam adiens a civibus honorifice susceptus est; tunc ille rex acclamatus, die Natalis Domini coronatus [5] ab Aldredo archiepiscopo;[6] cavebat enim id [7] munus a Stigando suscipere, eo quod esset archiepiscopus [8] non legitime.[9] Civitates munitas et muratas leviter suscepit.

William the Conqueror crowned by Aeldred, Archbp. of York. 25 Dec.

[1] *enim*] vero. B.D.

[2] *planitiem*] planitie. B.D.

[3] *suum*] ejus. D.

[4] *Willielmi*] Wlli. A. vulgi. B.D.

[5] *coronatus*] est. add. B.D.

[6] *archiepiscopo*] Eborum. præm. B. interlined in hand (*a*).

[7] The first word of f. 54v. A. headed : De Willielmo Bastard.

[8] *archiepiscopus*] Cant.' in marg. B. in hand (*a*) referred to the text by a mark.

[9] *legitime*] Secundum Petrum Pictaviensem excommunicatus. in marg. B. in hand (*a*) referred to the text by a mark.

Malcolinus antequam ad manus veniret se dedidit, totoque Willielmi tempore incertis et sæpe fractis fœderibus eum egit. Sed filio Willielmi Willielmo regnante simili modo impetitus falso sacramento insequentem abegit. Nec multo post dum fidei immemor superbius provinciam inquietaret a Rodberto de Molbreia, comite Northumbriæ, cum filio suo cæsus est, humatusque[1] multis annis apud monasterium de Tynmouth[2] nuper ab Alexandro filio in Scociam ad Dunfermlyn portatus est.

A.D. 1072. Malcolm, king of Scots, submits.

A.D. 1093. His death. 13 Nov.

Regnante Willielmo, secundo anno regni sui uxorem suam Matildam de Normannia adduxit in Angliam, et ipsam in reginam die Sancto Pentecosten fecit coronari.

A.D. 1068. Coronation of Queen Matilda. 11 May.

Cap. CI.

Refert quidam historiographus in chronicis suis quod idem Willielmus xiiii. anno regni sui, ipso in lecto suo cubante, multum excogitavit de eventu[3] suo in Angliam, quomodo et quam gratiose tantum dominium nutu Divino adeptus est, et qualiter Deo satisfacere potuit[4] excogitavit.

[A.D. 1080.] Legend of the foundation of Battle-Abbey. A.D. 1067.

Per tres vero hebdomadas in jejuniis, in vigiliis, in orationibus,[5] in eleemosinis se macerans, Dominum diligenter rogavit ut ex sua magna misericordia et gratia speciali sibi intimaret ut[6] quanto tempore hæredes sui et successores in regno Angliæ a se conquæsto regnarent; responsum est sibi Divinitus Angelica voce quod monasterium ædificaret ad voluntatem propriam in longitudine pedum, et quotos

---

[1] *humatusque*] humatisque. B.

[2] *Tynmouth*] Spelt with the Anglo-Saxon "*th* hard" in A.

[3] *eventu*] adventu. B.D.

[4] *potuit*] poterat. B.D.

[5] *in orationibus*] om. D.

[6] *ut*] om. B.D.

A.D. 1067. centos[1] pedum invenisset et ultra centos[2] tot annis sui successores de sobole sua procreati in Anglia regnarent et non ultra fatum Divinum.[3]

Summo vero mane ipso surgente et super visione excogitante, monasterium quingentorum pedum in longitudine propriis pedibus mensuratum, in eodem loco ubi[4] monasterium ædificare disposuerat, mensuravit et ad principium et finem palos finxit.[5] Secunda die ipso summo mane surgente et palos inspiciente metam suam curtatam invenit, et palos infixos ad longitudinem pedum trecentorum et quindecim; hoc etiam tribus invenit diebus, eo in jejuniis existente. Ipso[6] Deo gratias agente monasterium construxit[7] quod vocatum est Monasterium de Bello in honore Sancti Marci Evangelistæ, anno Domini MLXVI.[8]

A.D. 1083. Death of Queen Matilda. 2 Nov. The sons of William by her.

Anno regni sui XVII. Matildis, uxor Willielmi Conquæstoris, debitum solvit humanum, ad magnum damnum totius regni Angliæ et comitatus Normanniæ. Generavit enim Williemus filios ex ea quorum nomina sunt hæc: Willielmus Rufus, Robertus Courthoese, Ricardus qui infans mortuus est, Henricus cognomento Beauclerk; nomina filiorum fere posita sunt ordine præpostero.[9]

Robert Courthose. Normandy refused him.

Robertus[10] senior filiorum, patre adhuc vivente, Normanniam sibi negari ægre ferens in Italiam obstinatus abiit, ut filia Bonifacii marchionis sumpta patri partibus illis adjutus adversaretur, sed petitionis hujuscemodi cassus Philippum Francorum regem contra

Incites Philip of

---

[1] *centos*] centenos. B.D.

[2] *centos*] centum. B.D.

[3] *fatum Divinum*] In large letters in B. Fatum de vita successorum Conquæstoris. in marg. B.

[4] *ubi*] in quo. B. quo. D.

[5] *finxit*] fixit. B.D.

[6] The first word of f. 55. A. headed: De Willielmo Bastard. [Condi]tio monasterii de Bello. in marg. B.

[7] *construxit*] construit. B.

[8] Melius anno Domini 1080, quia anno 1066 intravit primo in Angliam, et jam regnavit annis quatuordecim. added in B. in the hand in which the notes to the Prophecy of Merlin are written in that MS.

[9] *præpostero*] retrogrado. B.

[10] De filiis Willielmi Conquæstoris. in marg. A.D.

patriam excitavit, quare et genitoris benedictione[1] et hæreditate frustratus Angliam[2] post mortem patris caruit, comitatu Normanniæ vix retento. Ea quoque post IX. annos fratri Willielmo invadata Asiaticam expeditionem cum cæteris Christianis aggressus est. Inde transactis IIII. annis clarus militiæ gestis regressus Normanniæ sine difficultate immersit, quod[3] germano Willielmo nuper defuncto Henricus rex novitate tener Angliam in fidelitate tenere satis habuit, quod imposterum est dicendum.

A.D. 1077. France against William.

A.D. 1096. Mortgages Normandy to his brother, and goes on the Crusade.

A.D. 1100. Takes possession of his duchy.

Ricardus secundus filius magnanimo parenti spem laudis alebat; primitii tamen floris indolem mors acerba cito depasta corrupit. Tradunt cervos in Nova Foresta terebrantem tabidi aeris nebula morbum incurrisse.[4] Locus est quem Willielmus pater desertis villis per XXX. et eo amplius miliaria in saltus et lustra ferarum redegerat. Ibi[5] enim multa regio generi infortunia contigere; nam postmodum Willielmus filius ejus in eadem silva, et nepos Ricardi filius Roberti comitis Normanniæ mortem offenderint severo Dei judicio. Ille sagitta pectus, ille collum trajectus, vel, ut quidam dicunt, arboris ramusculo, equo pertranseunte fauces appensus est.

Richard the second son. His premature death. Royal misfortunes in the New Forest.

Willielmus et Henricus quilibet post alterum continua successione regnavere.

His remaining sons William and Henry reign successively.

Cap. CII.

Filiæ ipsius Willielmi quinque fuerunt: Cecilia Cadomensis abbatissa; altera Constantia, comiti Bri-

Daughters of William the Conqueror.

---

[1] *benedictione*] The *c* interlined in A.

[2] *Anglium*] Anglia. B.D.

[3] *quod*] qui. B.D.

[4] *incurrisse*] An *r* interlined in A.

[5] Nota. in marg. A.D. Referred to by Camden. Britannia. New Forest.

A.D. 1083. tanniæ Alano Fergant in conjugium data, austeritate justitiæ provinciales in mortiferam sibi potionem [1] exacuit; tertia Eadeleya,[2] Stephani Blesensis comitis uxor, virago laudatæ potentiæ in sæculo, noviter apud Marcenniacum [3] sanctimonialis habitum sumpsit. Duarum vero nomina ignorantur, unius quæ Haraldo, ut diximus, promissa infra maturos conjugio [4] annos obiit. Alterius virgineam mortem impetravit; repertus in defuncto [5] genibus callus, crebrarum [6] ejus orationum index.

His munificence to monasteries.

Exterarum nationum homines dignanter ad amicitiam admisit, indifferenter honoribus exstulit, eleemosinæ curam habuit, transmarinis ecclesiis multas possessiones largitus,[7] tempore enim suo ultro [8] citroque [9] cœnobialis grex excrevit. Monasteria [10] surgebant religione vetera, ædificiis recentia. Sed hic animadverto [11] musitationem dicentium melius fuisse ut antiqua in suo statu conversarentur quam illis semimutilatis [12] de rapina nova construerentur.

Description of his person and habits.

De ejus forma fidelitatem scire volentibus: Justæ enim staturæ, facie fera, fronte capillis nuda, roboris ingentis in lacertis, ut magno fuerit sæpe spectaculo quia nemo ejus arcum tenderet quem ipse admisso equo pedibus nervo extento sinuaret. Sedens et stans magnæ fuit dignitatis, quamquam obesitas ventris nimis protensa [13] corpus regium deformaret.[14] Commodæ fuit valetudinis, ut qui nunquam aliquo morbo peri-

---

[1] The first word of f. 55. v. A. headed: De Willielmo Bastard.

[2] *Eadeleya*] Aedeleia. B.D.

[3] *Marcenniacum*] Mercenniacum. B.D.

[4] *conjugio*] conjugii. B.D.

[5] *defuncto*] On an erasure in A. defuncti. B.D.

[6] *crebrarum*] cerebrarum. A. On an erasure. The first *r* added in B.

[7] *largitus*] est. add. B.D.

[8] *ultro*] ultra. D.

[9] *citroque*] citraque. B.D.

[10] *Monasteria*] Monesteria. A.

[11] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[12] *semimutilatis*] semimultatis. D.

[13] *protensa*] extensa. B.D.

[14] De statura et moribus. in marg. A.D.

culoso præter in extremo decubuerit.[1] Exercitio nemorum adeo deditus[2] ut multa milia ejectis habitatoribus silvescere[3] juberet, in quibus a cæteris negotiis avocatus animum remitteret. Convivia in præcipuis festivitatibus sumptuosa et magnifica inibat, Natale[4] apud Gloucestriam, Pascha Wyngtoniam, Pentecosten Westmonasterium agens quot annis quibus[5] in Anglia morari[6] liceret. Omnes eo cujuscumque professionis magnates regium edictum accersiebat, ita ut exterarum gentium legati speciem multitudinis apparatumque deliciarum mirarentur. Quem morem convivandi primus successor obstinate tenuit, secundus omnino omisit.

A.D. 1083. His love of hunting.

Cap. CIII.

Extremo vero vitæ tempore in Normannia habitans contractis inimicitiis cum rege Francorum aliquantisper se continuit. Cujus abutens patientia Philippus fertur dixisse: Rex Angliæ jacet Rothomagi, more absolutarum partu feminarum cubile fovens; jocatus in ejus ventrem quem potione alleviarat. Quo perstrictus convicio respondit: Cum ad[7] missam post partum iero centum mille candelas ei libabo. Talia per "resurrectionem et splendorem Dei" pronuntians, quod soleret ex industria talia sacramenta facere quæ ipso hiatu oris terrificum quiddam auditorum mentibus insonarent.

A.D. 1087. His quarrel with the king of France.

Nec multo post, Augusto mense declinante, quando et[8] segetes in agris, botri in vineis, et poma in

He invades France in August.

---

[1] *decubuerit*] The second *u* interlined in A.

[2] *deditus*] est. præm. B.D.

[3] *silvescere*] silvestre. B.D.

[4] *Natale*] Natele. A. Natali. B. D.

[5] *quibus*] om. D.

[6] *morari*] regnari. B.

[7] The first word of f. 56. A. headed: De Willielmo Bastard.

[8] *et*] om. B.D.

A.D. 1087. viridariis copiam sui volentibus faciunt, exercitu coacto Franciam infestus ingreditur. Omnia proterit, cuncta populatur, nihil erat quod furentis animum mitigaret, ut injuriam insolenter acceptam multorum dispendio ulcisceretur.[1] Postremo Medantum civitatem injectis ignibus cremavit, quo successu[2] exhilaratus dum suos audacius incitat ut igni adjiciant pabula, proprius flammas succedens foci calore et autumnalis æstus inæqualitate morbum nactus est.

Burns Mantes.

His last illness.

Dicunt quidam quod præruptam fossam sonipes transiliens interranea[3] sessoris disruperit,[4] quod in anteriori parte sellæ viscera procubabant. Hoc dolore affectus receptui suis cecinit Rothomagumque reversus crescente indies[5] incommodo lecto excipitur. Consulti medici urinæ inspectione certam mortem prædixere ; quo audito querimonia domum replevit,[6] quod[7] cum præoccuparet mors emendationem vitæ præmeditavit. Resumpto animo quæ Christiani sunt executus est, et in confessione et viatico. Normanniam invitus et coactus Rodberto, Angliam Willielmo, possessiones maternas Henrico delegavit. Incarceratos omnes dissolvi præcepit, thesauros offerri ecclesiis et pauperibus. Certum numerum pecuniæ nuper crematæ ecclesiæ indixit.

His death. 6 Sept.

Ordinatis[8] bene rebus octavo idus Septembris[9] discessit, anno regni sui XXI., comitatus LII., vitæ suæ LIX., Dominicæ Incarnationis M.LXXXVII. Ille fuit annus quo Knuto rex Danorum interemptus est, quo Saraceni Hispani in Christianos efferati mox ab Alde-

---

[1] *ulcisceretur*] The last *e* is written over an erasure in A.

[2] *successu*] succensu. B.D.

[3] *interranea*] interiora. D.

[4] *disruperit*] dirupit. B.D. diruperit. D.

[5] *indies*] indie. B.

[6] *replevit*] implevit. B.D.

[7] *quod*] quem. B.D.

[8] De ætat[e] Willielmi. in marg. A. a letter having been cut off in binding. in marg. D. uninjured.

[9] *Septembris*] Decembris. B.

funso rege Gallaciæ ad sua redire coacti, etiam urbibus quas olim tenuerant [1] inviti cessere. A.D. 1087.

Corpus [2] regio solemni curatum per Sequanam Cadonum delatum.[3] Ibi magna frequentia ordinatorum, laicorum; varietatis humanæ tunc fuit videre miseriam quod [4] homo ille totius olim Europæ honor antecessorumque suorum potentior sedem æternæ requietionis sine calumnia impetrare [5] non potuit. Namque miles quidam, ad cujus patrimonium locus ille pertinuerat, clara contestans voce rapinam, sepulturam inhibuit, dicens avito jure solum suum esse, nec illum in loco quem violenter invaserat pausare debere. Quocirca hoc volente [6] Henrico filio, qui solus ex liberis aderat, C. libræ argenti litigatori persolutæ audacem calumniam compescuere. Nam tunc Rodbertus primogenitus in Francia contra patriam bellabat, Willielmus antequam pater plene expiraret Angliam enavigarat, utilius ducens suis imposterum commodis prospicere quam obsequiis paterni corporis interesse. Porro in dispartienda pecunia nec [7] segnis nec parcus, omnem illum thesaurum Wyngtoniæ totis annis regni cumulatum ab arcanis sacrariis eruit [8] in lucem, monasteriis aurum, ecclesiis agrestibus solidos V. argenti, unicuique pago C. libras viritim egenis dividendas largitus. Patris etiam memoriam ingenti congerie auri et argenti cum gemmarum luce conspicue adornavit. His burial. Dispute with Fitz-Arthur.

Sexagenus [9] erat sextus millesimus annus,
Cum pereunt Angli stella minante cometa.

Anno [10] millesimo sexageno quoque seno
Anglorum metæ crimen [11] sensere cometæ.

---

[1] *tenuerant*] tenuerat. B.D.
[2] *Corpus*] Eorpus. B.
[3] *delatum*] est. add. B.D.
[4] *quod*] quam. B.D.
[5] *impetrare*] obtinere. B.D.
[6] The first word of f. 56v. A. headed: De rege Willielmo Rufo.
[7] *nec*] non. B.D.
[8] *eruit*] erūt. A. erunt. B. erupit. D.
[9] Versus in marg. B.
[10] Alii Versus. in marg. B.
[11] *crimen*] crinem?

A.D. 1066. Willielmus Conquæstor tribus de causis venit in Angliam : primo, quia Aluredum cognatum suum Godwynus comes et filii ejus peremerant qui erat hæres Angliæ : secundo, quia Haraldus in perjurio lapsus pro sorore dicti Willielmi quam vilificaverat regnum sine jure invasit : tertio, quia Robertum archiepiscopum et Odonem consulem exulaverat.

Iste Willielmus omnes abbatias Angliæ expoliari fecit anno Domini MLXX. et tunc magna fames fuit,[1] et thesauros inventos suis usibus mancipavit. Hic Novam Forestam, destructis villis et obrutis ecclesiis, per XXX. et eo amplius miliaria, in saltus et lustra ferarum redegit, secundum Petrum Pictaviensem. Iste Willielmus Bastard per justitiarios misit, et per unamquamque schiram Angliæ inquirere fecit per juramentum quot hidæ, id est jugera, uni aratro sufficientia essent in unaquaque villa, et quot animalia, et quid uniuscujusque urbis, castellum, vicus, villa, flumen, palus, silva redderent per annum. Hæc omnia in cartis scripta delata sunt ad regem et inter chirothecas opposita usque hodie servantur.

A.D. 1086. The Great Survey.

A.D. 1076. Gilbert, first abbot of Battle. Anno Domini M.LXXVI. quidam monachus nomine Gilbertus primus abbas factus fuit monasterii de Bello.

A.D. 1072. Homage of Malcolm. Anno Domini MLXXII. Willielmus Bastard subjugavit Scociam, et veniens apud Berwicum accepit homagium a Malcolino, rege Scociæ, et obsides de fidelitate servanda, et anno Domini M.LXXXVII. obiit.

Anno Domini M.LXXIII. ventilata est quæstio inter archiepiscopos Cantuariæ et Eborum de primatia.

A.D. 1079. William reduces Wales. Anno Domini M.LXXIX. rex Willielmus anno regni sui XIIII. Walliam sibi subjugavit, et anno proximo fames magna. [B. α.]

Cap. CIV.

William Rufus. A.D. 1087. Willielmus igitur cognomento Rufus, filius Willielmi Primi, natus est Normanniæ pluribus annis antequam pater ejus Angliam adiret, ingenti cura parentum altus.[2] Genitori in omnibus obsequelam gerens, ejus se oculis in bello ostentans, ejus lateri in pace obambulans, ita a patre ultima[3] valitudine decumbente in successorem[4] adoptatus, antequam ille

[1] *anno . . . fuit*] Added in marg. B. in hand (α).

[2] *altus*] alitus. B.D. the *i* interlined in B.

[3] *ultima*] in. præm. B.D.

[4] *successorem*] successore. B.D.

extremum efflasset[1] ad occupandum regnum conscendit. A.D. 1087. Moxque volentibus animis provincialium exceptus et claves thesaurorum est nactus, quibus fretus totam Angliam animo suo subjecit.

Quibus exactis mox initio veris primus ille conflictus contra Odonem patruum episcopum Baiocensem fuit. A.D. 1088. Conspiracy of Odo.

Secundo[2] regni sui anno decertavit cum fratre suo in Normannia et[3] cum Malcolino rege Scotiæ quem credimus extinctum proxima hyeme sequente ab hominibus Roberti comitis Humbronensium, magis fraude quam viribus. Fuit enim Willielmus corpore decorus, in donis prodigus, vultu austerus, in moribus suis invisus. Excitabat ergo Occidentem totum largitas ejus, Orientem usque pertendens.[4] Veniebant ad eum omnes milites ex omni quæ citra montes est provincia, quos ipse profusissimis expensis munerabat.[5] Itaque cum defecisset quod[6] daret, inops et exhaustus animum ad lucra convertit, accessit regiæ menti fomes cupiditatum.[7] A.D. 1090. William's contention with Robert; A.D. 1091. and with Malcolm king of Scots. The effects of William's prodigality on the kingdom.

Rannulfus quidam clericus regis ex infimo genere hominum natus,[8] lingua et calliditate provectus ad summum, hic ore regio per totam Angliam pensiones regi dari pro guerra tenenda indixit. Primo[9] ab hominibus pecuniam auferentes deinde terras et capita denudantes, non pauperum tenuitas, non opulentum Ralph Flambard.

---

[1] *efflasset*] inflasset. B.

[2] Alii dicunt quod Malcolinus rex Scociæ de mandato hujus Willielmi Rufi anno Domini MXC. interfectus est in prœlio cum progenito suo Edwardo per Morellum militem strenuum eo quod nollent regi obedire. in marg. B. in hand (α).

[3] *et*] etiam. add. B.D.

[4] *pertendens*] protendens. B.D.

[5] *munerabat*] remunerabat. D.

[6] *quod*] cum. D.

[7] The new sentence ought to begin at *accessit*, as *fomes* evidently applies to *Ranulfus*. But *all* the MSS. give *Ranulfus* a large coloured capital for an initial.

[8] *natus*] nattus or nactus. A.

[9] *primo*] The first word of f. 57. A. headed: De Rege Willielmo Rufo.

A.D. 1091. copia tuebatur. Venationes quas rex primo indulserat adeo prohibuit ut cervum prendidisse[1] capitale esset supplicium. Quapropter multa severitate quam nulla[2] condiebat dulcedo, factum est ut sæpe contra ejus
A.D. 1095. salutem a ducibus conjuraretur; quorum unus Rod-
Conspiracy of Robert de Mowbray, William d'Eu, William de Alderic, etc. bertus de Molbrei comes Humbronensium,[3] controversia verborum inter ipsum et regem nacta, rege ipsum persequente tandem captus[4] æternis vinculis irretitus est.

Unus alius Willielmus de Howy proditionis apud regem accusatus delatoremque ad duellium[5] provocans dum se segniter expurgat, extesticulatus est et cæcatus. Plures eandem normam ingressi sunt; unus enim Gwillielmus compatus[6] regis, cognomento de Alderia,[7] speciosæ personæ homo, hic patibulo affigi jussus est. Osmundo episcopo Sarum confessus et per omnes ecclesias oppidi flagellatus itaque dispersis vestibus ad suspendium[8] nudus ibat. Delicatam carnem frequentibus super lapides genuflexionibus cruentans episcopo et populo sequenti[9] ad locum supplicii ita satisfecit: Sic, inquit, adjuvet Deus animam meam et a malis me liberet, ut de qua re accusor immunis sum. Tunc dicta commendatione animæ et aspersa[10] benedicta episcopus discessit, et ille appensus est.

---

[1] *prendidisse*] prenddiisse. A. the *di* interlined.
[2] *nulla*] om. B. added in marg. B.
[3] *Humbronensium*] Hambronensium. B.D.
[4] *captus*] om. B.
[5] *duellium*] duellum. B.
[6] *compatus*] compater. B.
[7] *Alderia*] Aldreia. B.
[8] *suspendium*] suspendendum. B.
[9] *sequenti*] sequente. B. sequentibus. D.
[10] *aspersa*] aspersus aqua. B.D.

Cap. CV.

Siquis vero scire desiderat corporis ejus qualitatem, ut paulisper sed non plane prædixi, noverit eum corpore quadrato fuisse, colore ruffo,[1] crine sufflavo, fronte fenestrata, oculo vario, quibusdam intermicantibus guttis distincto, præcipuo robore quamquam non magnæ staturæ, et ventre paulo projectiore; eloquentiæ nullæ, sed titubantia linguæ notabilis, maxime cum ira succresceret. Plura sub eo tristia et subita acciderunt, quæ singillatim per annos ejus digeremus, veritati maxime secundum chronicorum fidem inserentes. Description of the person of William Rufus. Remarkable occurrences during his reign.

Secundo anno regni sui terræ motus ingens totam Angliam exterruit, III. idus Augusti, horrendo miraculo, ut ædificia omnia eminus resilirent et mox pristino modo residerent. Secuta est inopia omnium fructuum, tarda maturitas frugum, ut vix ad festum Sancti Andreæ messes reconderentur. A.D. 1089. A great earthquake and dearth. 11 Aug.

Quarto[2] anno regni sui tumultus fulgurum, motus turbinum[3]; denique idus Octobris apud Winchelcumbiam ictus de cœlo emissus latus turris impulit tanta vi ut, debilitata materia, in confinio tecti ingens foramen admodum humanæ grossitudinis aperiretur; ibi[4] ingressus trabem maximam pertulit[5] ut fragmina spargerentur in ecclesia, quin et crucifixi caput cum dextra tibia et imaginem Sanctæ Mariæ juxta crucem dejecit; secutus est odor teterrimus hominum importabilis naribus. Tandem monachi felici ausu irrumpentes aquæ benedictæ aspergine præstigias inimici effugarunt. Quid illud omnibus incognitum sæculis? Discordia ventorum inter se dimicantium ab Euro, A.D. 1091. Severe thunderstorms and whirlwinds. The tower of Winchelcumbe struck by lightning. 15 Oct.

---

[1] *ruffo*] rufo. B.D.
[2] *Quarto*] Puarto. B.
[3] *turbinum*] fuit. add. B.D.
[4] The first word of f. 57 v. A. headed: De Re. W. Rufo.
[5] *pertulit*] perculit. B.D.

A.D. 1091. Several houses thrown down in London. 17 Oct. The church of St. Mary-le-Bow unroofed.

Austro veniens XVI. kalendas Novembris Londoniæ plusquam centenas domos effregit; cumulabantur ecclesiæ cum domibus, materiæ cum parietibus. Majus quoque scelus et furor ventorum ausius[1] tectum ecclesiæ Sanctæ Mariæ, quæ[2] Ad Arcus dicitur, pariter sublevavit et duos homines ibi obruit. Quatuor tigna XX. et VI. pedes longa tanta vi in humum sunt impacta[3] ut vix IIII. pedes exstarent, notabili visu quomodo duritiem stratæ publicæ perruperint, eo ibi ordine posita quo in tecto manu artificis fuerant locata, quoad ob impedimenta transeuntium ad planitiem terræ sunt dejecta, eo quod aliter erui nequirent.

A.D. 1092. The tower of Sarum cathedral unroofed. 10 April.

Quinto anno eadem violentia fulminis apud Sarum tectum turris ecclesiæ omnino disjecit,[4] multumque[5] materiam labefactavit, quinta sane die postquam eam[6] dedicaverat Osmundus præclaræ memoriæ episcopus.

A.D. 1093. Heavy rains.

A severe frost.

Sexto anno tantum fuit[7] pluviarum diluvium, tanta tempestas imbrium, quantam nullus ante meminerat. Mox accedente hyeme, fluvii ita sunt congelati ut essent iter equitantibus et plaustra ducentibus; nec mora, resoluto gelu, impetu glacialium crustatarum[8] pontes effracti sunt.

A.D. 1094. Dearth, famine, and pestilence.

Septimo anno propter tributa quæ rex in Normannia positus edixerat agricultura defecit, qua fatiscente fames e vestigio, eaque invalescente mortalitas hominum subsecuta est, adeo crebra ut deesset morituris cura, mortuis sepultura.

Insurrection of the Welsh.

Tunc etiam Walenses in Normannos efferati Cestrensem pagum et partem Scrobesburiensem[9] depopulati Angliam armis obtinuere.

---

[1] *ausius*] anxius. B.D.
[2] *quæ*] qꝫ. A.
[3] *impacta*] pacta. D.
[4] *disjecit*] dejecit. B.D.
[5] *multumque*] multamque. B.D.
[6] *eam*] om. B.D.
[7] *fuit*] fluit. D.
[8] *crustatarum*] crustarum. B.
[9] *Scrobesburiensem*] Written originally *Scrobesburiensis* in A. and altered *prima manu*. Scorisburiæ. B.D.

Decimo anno kalendas Octobris apparuit cometes XV. diebus majorem crinem emittens[1] ad Orientem, minorem versus[2] Austrum. Apparuerunt et aliæ stellæ quasi jacula inter se emittentes.[3] Ille fuit annus quo Anselmus lux Angliæ, ultro tenebras erroneorum effugiens, Romam ivit. A.D. 1097. A comet. 1 Oct. Meteors. Anselm goes to Rome.

Undecimo anno rex Noricorum, Magnus nomine, cum Haraldo filio regis Haraldi quondam Angliæ Orcadas insulas et Meuanias[4] et aliæ[5] quæ in Oceano jacent armis subegit. Jamque Angliam per Anglessiam obstinater[6] petebat sed,[7] occurrerunt ei comites Hugo Cestrensis et Hugo Scrobesburiensis et armis eum expulerunt. Cecidit ibi comes Scrobesburiensis eminus hastili ferreo perfossus. A.D. 1098. Magnus king of Norway lands at Anglesea.

Duodecimo anno fluctus marinus per Tamensim fluvium ascendit et villas multas cum hominibus mersit. A.D. 1099. The Thames overflows.

Tertiodecimo[8] anno, et extremus[9] vitæ suæ fuit, hoc quoque maxime horrendum quod visibiliter Diabolus apparuit hominibus, in saltibus et deviis transeuntes[10] allocutus. Præterea in pago Berruchscire[11] in villa Hamsted[12] XV. diebus fons sanguinem ubertim emanavit, ita ut vicinum vadum inficeret. Audiebat ille hæc et ridebat, nec sua somnia de se nec aliorum visa curans. A.D. 1100. Appearances of the Devil. A fountain emits blood.

Edmerus historicus eo tempore dicit Anselmum exulem nobilissimum, cum quo pariter omnis religio A story told by Eadmer.

---

[1] *emittens*] mittens. D.
[2] *versus*] ad. B.D.
[3] *emittentes*] mittentes. D.
[4] *Meuanias*] Meneuias. B.
[5] *aliæ*] alias. B.D.
[6] *obstinater*] obstinatus. B.D.
[7] The first word of f. 58. A. headed : De Re. W. Rufo.
[8] Nota. in marg. A. Fons emanat sanguinem anno Domini MLXXXXVIII. et tota nocte sequente apparuit cœlum tanquam ardens. in marg. B. in hand (*a*).
[9] *extremus*] exstremus. A. extremo. B.D.
[10] *transeuntes*] transeuntibus. B. D.
[11] *Berruchscire*] Barruchschyr^e. B.
[12] *Hamsted*] de. præm. B.

A.D. 1100. the Historian.

exulabat, Marcenniacum[1] venisse ut Hugonis abbatis Clunacensis[2] conscientiæ querelas curarum suarum ingereret. Ibi cum de rege Willielmo sermo volutaretur abbatem prædictum dixisse ferunt, proxima nocte regem illum ductum ante Summum Judicem et librato judicio adjudicatum et tristem damnationis subisse sententiam.

A vision.

Pridie[3] quam excederet vita vidit per quietem se phlebotomi ictu sanguinem emittere, radium cruoris in cœlum usque protentum[4] lucem obnubilare et diem interpolare. Sancta Maria itaque inclamata ipso terrore excusso lumen inferri præcepit ad videndum si verum esset in actu quod ostensum est in sopore. Paulo post Aurora clarescente quidam sanctus monachus retulit Roberto filio Hamonis viro magnatum principi somnium quod eadem hora de rege viderat, mirum et horrendum, quod in quandam ecclesiam venerat superbo gestu et insolenti, ut solebat, circumstantes despiciens. Tunc crucifixum mordicus apprehendens brachia illi corrosit, crura pæne truncaverat. Crucifixum vero diu tolerasse se tandem pede ita regem depulisse ut supinus caderet, et ex ore jacentis tam effusam flammam exisse ut fumeorum voluminum orbes etiam sidera lamberent.[5] Hoc etiam somnium Rodbertus[6] non negligendum arbitratus regi confestim, eo quod ei a secretis erat, intulit. At ille cachinnos ingeminans, Monachus, inquit, est et monachiliter somniat; date ei C.[7] solidos, taliter enim vult quotidie somniare.

---

[1] *Marcenniacum*] Merceniacum. B.

[2] *Clunacensis*] Cluniacensis. B.

[3] *Pridie*] Predie. A. Iste Willielmus episcopatus et abbatias vendidit, tributis et exactionibus pessimis populos Anglorum excoriavit, et in die qua obiit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem et episcopatum Sarum et XII. abbatias ad firmam tradidit. add. B. *a.* in a foot note.

[4] *protentum*] protensum. B.D.

[5] *lamberent*] haberent. D.

[6] *Rodbertus*] Robertus. B.D.

[7] *c.*] Added in marg. A. the original numeral in the text having been erased.

Rex enim multum motus diu cunctatus est an in silvam, sicut intenderat,[1] iret, suadentibus amicis nec[2] suo dispendio veritatem somniorum experiretur; itaque ante cibum venatu[3] abstinuit, seriis[4] negotiis crudelitatem indomitæ mentis eructuans. Ferunt[5] ea die eum largiter epulatum crebrioribus quam consueverat poculis frontem serenasse; mox igitur post cibum in saltum contendit,[6] paucis comitatus, quorum familiarissimus erat Walterus cognomento Tirel,[7] qui de Francia liberalitate regis adductus venerat. Is, cæteris per moram venationis quo quemque casus tulerat dispersis, solus cum eo remanserat. Jamque Phœbo in Oceanum[8] proclivi rex cervo ante se transeunti extento nervo et emissa sagitta non adeo sævum vulnus inflixit. Diutile adhuc fugitantem vivacitate oculorum prosecutus opposita contra violentiam solarium radiorum manu. A.D. 1100.

Tunc Walterus pulchrum facinus animo parturiens ut, rege alias interim intento, ipse alterum cervum qui forte prope transiebat[9] prosterneret, inscius regium pectus lethali arundine transjecit. Saucius vero ille nullum verbum emisit, sed ligno sagittæ quantum extra corpus extabat effracto moxque supra vulnus cadens mortem accleravit. Accurrit Walterus, sed quia nec sensum nec[10] vocem hausit, perniciter cornipedem insiliens beneficio calcarium probe evasit. Nec vero fuit qui persequeretur; illis convenientibus, istis miserantibus, omnibus postremo alia molientibus. Pars receptacula sua munire, pars furtivas prædas agere, The death of William Rufus. 2 Aug.

---

[1] *intenderat*] The *in* interlined in B.
[2] *nec*] ne. B.D.
[3] *venatu*] a. præm. B.D.
[4] *seriis*] senis. B.D.
[5] The first word of f. 58 v. A. headed: De Re. W. Rufo.
[6] *contendit*] conscendit. B.D.
[7] *Tirel*] Tyrell. B. Tyler. D.
[8] *Oceanum*] Oceano. B.
[9] *transiebat*] transibat. B D.
[10] *nec*] neque. D.

A.D. 1100. pars regem novum jam jamque circumspicere. Pauci rusticorum cadaver in rheda caballaria compositum Wyngtoniam devexere, cruore undatim per totam viam distillante. Ibi infra ambitum turris multorum procerum conventu, paucorum planctu, corpus terræ traditum est.

Obiit[1] anno Dominicæ Incarnationis MC., regni sui XIII., nonas Augusti IIII. Nullum suo tempore concilium fieri memini in quo delictis enervatis vigor ecclesiasticus confirmaretur. Ecclesiasticos honores diu antequam daret deliberabat, sive pro commodo,[2] sive pro trutinando merito; utpote qui eo die quo excessit tres episcopatus et XII. abbatias pastoribus desolatas in manu sua teneret.

Transferences of episcopal sees in this reign.

His temporibus in Anglia tres episcopatus ex antiquis sedibus transiere ad alias: Wellensis scilicet in Batoniam per unum Johannem, Cestrensis per unum Rodbertum[3] in Coventreiam,[4] Thetfordensis per Herbertum in Norwichum. Denique ut primum de postremo dicam, Herbertus[5] cognomento Losyng, ars enim adulationis ei impegerat, ex abbate Ramesiense[6] emit episcopatum Thetfordensem, patre quoque suo Rodberto ejusdem cognominis in abbatiam Wyngtoniæ intruso. Fuit ergo vir ille magnus in Anglia simoniæ[7] fomes. Abbatiam, episcopatum nummis aucupatus, pecunia vero regiam potestatem inviscans[8] et principum favori non leves promissiones assibilans; unde quidam egregius tunc temporis versificus ait:—[9]

Herbert Losyng bishop of Norwich.

---

[1] Nota de morte Willielmi Secundi. in marg. A.D.

[2] *sive pro commodo*] om. B. added in marg. B. in a later hand.

[3] *Rodbertum*] Robertum. B.D. et passim.

[4] *Coventreiam*] Coventriam. B.

[5] The first word of f. 59. A. headed: De rege Henrico primo.

[6] *Ramesiense*] Ramesiensi. B.D.

[7] *simoniæ*] Simonis. B. Symonis. D.

[8] *inviscans*] infiscans. B. insiscans. D.

[9] Versus. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1100. Verses against him.

Surgit in ecclesia monstrum genitore Losynga,
Simonidum[1] secta, canonum virtute resecta;
Petre, nimis tardas, nam Simon ad ardua tentat,
Si præsens esses non Simon ad alta volaret.
Proh[2] dolor! Ecclesiæ nummis venduntur et ære,
Filius est præsul, pater abba, Simon uterque.
Quid non speremus si nummos possideamus?
Omnia nummus habet; quod vult facit, addit et aufert;
Res nimis injusta, nummus[3] fit præsul et abba.

Willielmus Rufus rex Novam Aulam Londoniæ permaximam incepit et perfecit, in qua curiam suam teneret; et cum eam aspecturus primum introisset, et alii satis magnam et æquo viatorem[4] dicerent, rex dixit eam magnitudine debita dimidia parte carere. Iste Willielmus a Lanfranco archiepiscopo Cantuariensi in regem est unctus, anno Domini MXC.

Hic anno Domini MC. in Nova Foresta, quam pater ejus fecit, sagitta percussus interiit.

Hujus Willielmi tempore tres episcopatus, scilicet, Wellensis per Johannem in Batoniensem, Cestrensis per Robertum in Conuentriam, Teoford per Herbertum in Norwych' transierunt.

Anno[5] Domini MLXXXVIII. Ordo Cisterciensis per quendam Hardyng in Anglia et per quosdam alios in Burgundia inceptus est. Sunt enim monachi omnium monachorum religionis norma, studiorum speculum, et desidiosorum exercitium, et ducitur hic ordo in Angliam anno MCXXXV.

Eodem[6] tempore Ordo Kartusiensis inceptus quo Cisterciensis, nec numerum tertium decimum multitudo Cartusiensium in clericis transcendit.

Ordo[7] Præmonstrensis incepit a quodam patre Roberto Coloniensi anno MCXIX.

Circa hoc tempus claruit Beatus B. qui precibus, prælatis, et clerico maledixit quendam diabolum incubum qui vexavit mulierem in Britannia per septennium, et sic liberata est. [B. α.]

---

[1] *Simonidum*] Simoni dum. A.

[2] *Proh*] ꝑht. A.

[3] *nummus*] nummis. B.D.

[4] *viatorem*] corr. majorem. Vid. Mat. Par. in loc.

[5] Cistercienses. in marg. B.

[6] Kartusienses. in marg. B.

[7] Præmonstrenses. in marg. B.

Cap. CVI.

De Rege Henrico Beauclerk.

A.D. 1100. Henry I. elected. 3 Aug.

Occiso vero rege Willielmo et sepulturæ tradito, in regem electus est Henricus; aliquantis tamen ante controversiis inter proceres agitatis atque sopitis, annitente maxime comite Warwicensi Henrico, viro integro, justo et sancto. Jamdudum familiari usus erat ei contubernio.

Reformation of abuses.

Edicto itaque statim per Angliam misso et injustitias a fratre suo et Ranulfo consiliario suo, qui de rusticali sanguine usurpavit potestatem regiam, ut prius injustitias institutas prohibuit; pensionum et vinculorum gratiam fecit, effeminatos curia propellens; lucernarum usum in noctibus in curia restituit, qui tempore fratris sui intermissus;[1] antiquarum moderationem legum revocavit in solidum, sacramento suo et omnium procerum ne luderentur corroborans. Lætus ergo dies visus est reviviscere populis cum post tot anxietatum nubila serenarum promissionum infulgebant lumina. Et ne[2] quid perfecto gaudio ac cumulato[3] abesset et Ranulfo, nequitiarum fæce,[4] tenebris ergastularibus[5] incluso, propter Anselmum pernicibus nuntiis directum. Quapropter certatim,[6] plausu Phœbeio concrepante, in regem nonis Augusti coronatus Londoniis, quarto post obitum fratris die.[7]

Imprisonment of Ralph Flambard. 14 Sept.

Coronation of Henry. 5 Aug.

Hæc eo studiosius celebrantur ne mentes procerum quassarentur pœnitudine eo quod ferebatur rumor Robertum Normanniæ comitem ex[8] Apulia adventantem[9]

---

[1] *intermissus*] fuit. add. B. est. add. D.

[2] *ne*] om. D.

[3] *ac cumulato*] accumulato. B.D.

[4] *fæce*] fere. D.

[5] *ergastularibus*] ergastulatis. D.

[6] *certatim*] om. B.D.

[7] *die*] sui. præm. B.

[8] *ex*] de. D.

[9] The first word of f. 59 v. A. headed: De re. Hen. I°.

jamjamque affore. Nec multo post suadentibus amicis ac maxime pontificibus ut remota voluptate pellicum legitimum amplecteretur connubium, die vero Sancti Martini accepit Matildam[1] filiam Malcolini regis Scottorum, cujus amori jampridem animum appulerat, parvipendens dotales divitias dummodo diu cupitis potiretur amplexibus. Erat enim illa, licet genere sublimis, utpote regis Edwardi ex fratre Edmundo abneptis, modicæ tamen domina supellectilis, utroque parente tunc pupilla. A.D. 1100. Henry marries Maud, daughter of Malcolm, king of Scots. 11 Nov.

Cap. CVII.

Rege enim acclamato fabricam humanam licet ostentare. Erat autem minimos supergrediens, a maximis vincebatur; crine nigrato[2] et juxta frontem profugo; oculis serenis et intuentibus amœnis, thoroso pectore, carnoso corpore,[3] facetiæ[4] plenus, in omni comitiva mensurate jocundus. Famæ pugnacis minus Scipionis Africani dictum repræsentabat ostendendo: Regem vel imperatorem me forte fore mater mea peperit,[5] non bellatorem. Quapropter sapientiam nulli unquam modernorum regum secundus sed pæne dicam omnium antecessorum in Anglia facile[6] primus. Description of the person and habits of Henry.

Libentius consilio quam gladio bellabat, vincebat si poterat sanguine nullo effuso, si aliter non poterat, pauco. Radingiæ cœnobium sumptibus[7] suis propriis fundavit, monachos de Clunacensi[8] ordine ibidem instituit, et corpus suum ibidem sepeliri delegavit. De uxore sua[9] legitima, scilicet, de[10] regis Scociæ filia

[1] *Matildam*] Matildem. D.
[2] *nigrato*] nigro. B.D.
[3] *carnoso corpore*] om. B.D.
[4] *facetiæ*] The *ce* crossed out and subpuncted in B.
[5] Nota. in marg. A.D.
[6] *facile*] om. B.D.
[7] *sumptibus*] sumptis. D.B.
[8] *Clunacensi*] Cluniacensi. B.D.
[9] *sua*] om. B.
[10] *de*] om. B.

A.D. 1120. His sons drowned.

duos filios procreavit, Willielmum vero[1] et Ricardum quos utrumque[2] mare natavit,[3] una die et una hora illos Phœbeios pelagus fulminavit.

A.D. 1101. Translation of S. Oswine.

Hoc anno Sanctus Oswinus[4] in feretro aureo collocatur. Anno Domini MCI.[5]

Robert Courthose duke of Normandy, comes to England, and is reconciled to Henry.

Quarto regni sui anno frater ejus Robertus, Curta Ocrea dictus, de Normannia venit in Angliam, quam terram sibi vindicavit, tanquam rectus hæres et frater senior, et sic illis dimicantibus discordia magna exorta est. Tandem consilio procerum Angliæ et Normanniæ duo fratres concordati sub forma conditionali fœdus inierunt. Modus vero formæ et conditionis hæc est, quod rex Angliæ Henricus Roberto fratri suo annuam reddet[6] pensionem mille argenti librarum[7] et quisquis[8] diutius vixerit illorum Angliæ regnum jure hæreditario possidebit.[9]

A.D. 1106. Henry passes into Normandy.

Exorta tandem inter eos discordia duobus annis elapsis fœderis rupti et pacti rex Henricus in Normanniam manu forti[10] versus est. Omnes enim Normanniæ principes proceresque nobiliores ad regem Henricum Angliæ contra Robertam Courthose dominum illorum legitimum versi sunt, ita quod a gentibus propriis Henrico regi traditur et præcepto regio in Angliam vectus ubi adjudicatur imperpetuum incarcerari. In[11] vulgo tamen fantur ipsum fuisse ante mortem longo tempore obcæcatum[12] et ita miserabiliter vitam finivit; Gloucestriæ vero sepelitur, et sic du-

Robert is imprisoned.

---

[1] *vero*] om. D. Longam Spatam cognomento. in marg. B. in hand (*a*).

[2] *utrumque*] utroque. D.

[3] *natavit*] necavit. B.D. Habuit etiam filiam Matildem. in marg. B. in hand (*a*).

[4] *Oswinus*] Oswynus. B.D.

[5] *Hoc anno . . . MCI*] Added in marg. A. in the author's smaller hand and referred to its place by a mark

[6] *reddet*] redderet. B.D.

[7] *librarum*] libras. B.D.

[8] *et quisquis*]. et si quis. B.

[9] *possidebit*] possideret. B.D.

[10] *forti*] The first word of f. 60. A. headed: De re. Hen. I.

[11] *In*] Twice in B.

[12] *obcæcatum*] cæcatum. B.D.

catus Normanniæ regno Angliæ subjugatur. Anno regni regis Henrici IX. acta sunt, et ab Incarnatione Domini MCV.[f] A.D. 1134. His death. 10 Feb.

Henricus rex Matildam filiam suam thoro maritali Henrico imperatori Alemanniæ copulavit, anno Domini MC. nono. Fuit hic Henricus quintus[1] ejus nominis apud Theutonicos imperator, tres annos supervixit cum imperatrice de qua generavit unicum filium, Willielmum[2] nomine, qui in puberis annis nupsit filiam Fulconis comitis Andegauiæ; Willielmus vero cum pluribus aliis coætaniis versus Angliam iter dirigens apud Barbeflet in mare submersus est. A.D. 1109. Betrothal of Maud, daughter of Henry, to Henry V. Emperor of Germany.

CAP. CVIII.

ANNO regni Henrici regis XXVII., mense Septembri, venit in Angliam prædictus Henricus cum filia sua imperatrice. Proximo vero Natali Domini convocato apud Londoniam magno cleri et optimatum numero uxori suæ filiæ ducis Lorianensis[3] quam post obitum Matildis duxerat in uxorem comitatum Salopiæ dedit quam feminam dolens non concipere et[4] perpetuo sterilem fore timeret.[5] De qua re antea diuque deliberato concilio tunc in eodem concilio omnes totius Angliæ optimates, episcopos, et abbates sacramento adegit[6] et obstrinxit ut si ipse sine hærede masculo discederet, Matildem[7] filiam suam, quondam imperatricem, incunctanter et sine ulla rectractione dominam reciperent, quanto damno patriæ præfatus fortuna A.D. 1126. Henry returns to England with his daughter Maud. Settlement of the succession. 25 Dec.

---

[1] *quintus*] 5. B. corrected into 4.

[2] *Willielmum*] On an erasure in B.

[3] *Lorianensis*] Loriacensis. B. D.

[4] *et*] om. B.D.

[5] *timeret*] timuit. B.D.

[6] *adegit*] abegit. B.

[7] *Matildem*] Matildam. B.

A.D. 1126. Willielmum filium suum sibi surripuisset, cui de jure regnum competeret. Nunc superesse filiam cui soli[1] legitima debeatur esse[2] successio ab avo, ab[3] avunculo, et patre regibus et a materno genere multis retro sæculis.

Siquidem ab Egbrithto Westsaxonum qui primus cæteros insulæ reges vel expulit vel subegit, anno Dominicæ Incarnationis DCCC. sub XIIII. regibus usque ad ejusdem Incarnationis[4] annum MXL. tertium, quo rex Edwardus qui Westmonasterio jacet in regnum sublimatus est, nec unquam ejusdem regalis sanguinis linea defecit, nec in successione regni claudicavit.

Porro Edwardus illius progeniei ultimus idemque præclarissimus proneptem[5] suam Margaritam[6] ex fratre Edmundo Irensyde[7] Malcolini Scottorum regis nuptiis copulavit. Quorum filia Matildis hujus imperatricis mater extitit. Juraverunt imperatrici fidelitatem omnes in illo concilio existentes; primus, Willielmus Cantuariæ[8] archiepiscopus, mox omnes episcopi, post abbates. Laicorum primus juravit Dauid rex Scociæ ejusdem imperatricis avunculus; tunc Stephanus Moritonii comes, et Bononiæ, nepos Henrici regis ex sorore Adala; mox Robertus filius regis quem ante regnum susceptum genuerat et comitem Gloucestriæ fecerat. Omnes ita proceres obstricti in fide et sacramento conjurati sunt.

The nobles swear fealty to the Empress.

A.D. 1127. Marriage of Maud and Geoffrey, son of the earl of Anjou.

Post Pentecostem misit rex filiam suam in Normanniam, jubens eam per Rothomagensem archiepiscopum filio Fulconis comitis Andegauiæ desponsari, adolescenti magnæ nobilitatis et roboris, nec distulit quin eos conjungeret. Quo facto, episcopi Angliæ dicebant se

---

[1] *soli*] sola. B.
[2] *esse*] om. B.D.
[3] *ab*] et. B.D.
[4] The first word of f. 60 v. A. headed: De Re. Hen. I.
[5] *proneptem*] præneptem. B.D.
[6] *Margaritam*] Margaretam. D.
[7] *Irensyde*] Yrenside. B. Yrensyde. D.
[8] *Cantuariæ*] The *u* interlined in A.

solutos a juramento, eo quod ipsa nupserat sine eorum consilio. Eo enim pacto dicunt se jurasse ne rex præter consilium[1] eorum et cæterorum procerum filiam suam cuiquam nuptum[2] dare[3] extra regnum. Fuerunt ejus nuptui Henricus frater ejus[4] comes Gloucestriæ et Brianus filius comitis. A.D. 1127.

Roger, bishop of Salisbury builds the castles of Sherborne, Devises, and Malmesbury. History of the castle of Malmesbury.

Medio enim tempore Rogerus Sarum episcopus tria castella ædificavit, scilicet, Scirbourn, Deuise,[5] et Malmesburiæ.[6] Ibi enim antiquo tempore, idem regis Donewaldi castrum fuerat ædificatum, quod quidem[7] stetit usque ad tempus regis barbari, Gurmundi nomine, a quo tota Britannia simul cum Christianitate destructa legi Paganismo[8] subjugata est, usque dum Deus remedium de supernis saluberrimum suo populo immisisset.

Its situation. It is petitioned by Walter Loryng, abbot of Malmesbury, from king John.

Castello illo tempore Paganorum diruto, usque ad tempus Rogeri Sarum episcopi stetit inædificatum. Rogerio[9] itaque[10] tempore contentionis inter regem Stephanum et imperatricem castrum ædificante, fortissimum factum est, a turri ecclesiæ quantum est jactus lapidis; quod quidem stetit usque ad tempus regis Johannis, in quo tempore[11] impetratum est castrum a rege prædicto in proprium usum monasterii ad dirimendum. Castro[12] vero tempore Johannis regis impetrato[13] per quemdam venerabilem abbatem, nomine Walterum Loryng.[14]

---

[1] *præter consilium*] sine consilio. B.

[2] *nuptum*] nuptui. B.D.

[3] *dare*] daret. B.D. in B. the *t* has been added by a later hand.

[4] *ejus*] om. D.

[5] *Scirbourn, Deuise*] Scirbour. Deuise. A. Schirborn̄, de Vyse. B. Schyrborn̄, De Vyse. D.

[6] Nota. de Malmesburia. in marg. A.D.

[7] *antiquo tempore . . . . quod quidem*] om. B. added in a foot note in a different hand from text.

[8] *Paganismo*] Paganissimo. B.

[9] *Rogerio*] Rogero. B.D.

[10] The first word of f. 61 A. headed: De Re. Hen. I.

[11] *tempore*] om. D.

[12] *Castro*] Castrum. B.D.

[13] *impetrato*] impetratum fuit. B.D.

[14] *Loryng*] Lorynḡ. B.D.

Cap. CIX.

A.D. 1129. Henry returns to England. A monster.

Desponsata, filia regis Henrici[1] Matilda[2] imperatrice, reliquos annos vitæ et regni breviter pertransire libet: anno enim xxviii. rediit rex a Normannia in Angliam. Anno xxix. quoddam monstrum[3] accidebat in Anglia ob nimiam superbiam crinium[4] et comam nutrientium.

A.D. 1130. Henry goes to Normandy.

Anno xxx. rex Henricus transiit in Normanniam.

A.D. 1131. He returns with the Empress. Fealty again sworn to her at Northampton.

Anno xxxi. regni sui rex Henricus rediit in Angliam. Imperatrix quoque eodem anno natali solo[5] adventum suum exhibuit; habitoque[6] non parvo procerum conventu apud Northamptoun[7] priscam fidem apud eos qui dederant renovavit, ab his qui non dederant accepit.

A.D. 1132. A murrain.

Anno xxxi.[8] regni[9] Henrici infesta lues domesticorum animalium totam provagata[10] est Angliam. Plenæ porcorum aræ subito subversæ sunt. Integra boum præsepia repente destituebantur, ut nulla omnino totius regni villa hujus miseriæ immunis alterius incommoda ridere posset.

A.D. 1133. Henry passes into Normandy. 5 Aug. An eclipse of the sun. 2 Aug. An earthquake.

Anno xxxii. regni pridie transacto, Henricus, nonis Augusti, quo die quondam apud Westmonasterium coronæ culmen acceperat Normanniam navigavit, unde nunquam vivus[11] reversus est. Ipsa enim die,[12] hora sexta, [sol] tetra ferrugine caput suum nitidum obtexit, mentes hominum eclipsi sua concutiens. Feria vero sexta proxima primo mane tantus terræ motus fuit ut

---

[1] *Henrici*] H. A.

[2] *Matilda*] Matilde. D.

[3] *monstrum*] Partly on an erasure in B.

[4] *crinium*] civium. B.D.

[5] *solo*] suo. B.D.

[6] *que*] quoque. B.D.

[7] *Northamptoun*] Northamptō. B.D.

[8] Mortalit[as] animalium. in marg. A.D.

[9] *regni*] om. B.

[10] *provagata*] pervagata. B.D.

[11] *vivus*] uiws. A.

[12] *die*] om. B.D.

penitus subsidere videretur[1] horrorifico sono sub terris ante audito. A.D. 1133.

Fuit rex in Normannia tricennio[2] continuo et tanto plus quantum[3] est inter nonas Augusti, quo die, ut dictum est, mare transivit, et kalendas Decembris[4] qua nocte discessit; plura vero egit in Normannia in tribus annis quæ scribi deberent, sed quia prolixa omissa sunt.

Regnavit itaque[5] XXX. quinque annis et a nonis Augusti, ut prius, ad kalendas Decembris; apud Leons exercitio venationis intentus valitudine adversa decubuit. Morbo vero ingruente omnia sua debito modo disposuit, viaticum sumpsit, et debitum humanum persolvit. Cor[6] Rothomago delatum,[7] interraneum in cœnobio Sanctæ Mariæ de Pratis humatum. Corpus[8] Cadomi servatum ut[9] quousque serenas auras paulo clementior hyems inveheret, qua invecta Ridingiæ[10] in Angliam deducitur,[11] et anno Domini MCXXXV. præsente regni successore cum pluribus episcopis et regni proceribus honorifice, ut decuit, sepelitur. A.D. 1135. Death of Henry I. 1 Dec. Disposition of the body.

Tempore[12] hujus Henrici Primi Willielmus rex Scottorum stragem exercuit in Northumbria; cui occurrentes milites comitatus Eborum apud Alnewych ipsum Willielmum ceperunt, regique reddiderunt, et amicos occiderunt, anno Domini MCI.

Item idem Henricus erat vir sapiens, providus, et prudens, de die in diem proficiens in melius; qui libertates[13] omnes et consuetudines bonas quæ tempore regis Edwardi Tertii in regno Angliæ fuerant ecclesiæ Dei regnique magnatibus concessæ. Concessit et inde eis cartam suam fecit. Justitiam in regno severam et pacem firmam tenuit, mulieres quæ sibi placuerant nuptas sive innuptas publice

---

[1] *videretur*] om. D.

[2] *tricennio*] triennio. B.D.

[3] *quantum*] quanto. B.D.

[4] *Decembris*] Septembris. B.

[5] *itaque*] om. D.

[6] *Cor*] *pus* is erased after this in A.

[7] *delatum*] est. præm. B.D.

[8] The first word of f. 61 v. A. headed: De Rege Stephano.

[9] *ut*] et. B.

[10] *Ridingiæ*] Radingiæ. B. Radyngiæ. D.

[11] *deducitur*] ducitur. B.D.

[12] De Rege Scottorum. in marg. B.

[13] Concessio libertatum ecclesiæ et regni. in marg. B.

rapuit, earum illicito, cum reginam haberet, usus est consortio. Hæc Petrus Pictaviensis.

A.D. 1102. Council of London.

Anno[1] Domini MCII. Anselmus archiepiscopus tempore hujus Henrici tenuit concilium apud Londoniam, in quo prohibuit uxores sacerdotibus, antea non prohibitas.

Matildis,[2] alias Matilda, filia istius, quinquennis nupta imperatori ab eo absque liberis relicta nupsit Gaufrido Plantagenest comiti Andegauiæ, ex qua suscepit tres filios, scilicet, Gaufridum Plantagenest juniorem, Henricum Curtmauntel cognominatum, qui postea regnavit in Anglia et Willielmum qui Longa Spata dictus est.

A.D. 1096. Robert Courthose goes to the Holy Land.

Robertus Curta Ocrea frater istius Henrici regis fortissimus dux Normanniæ et consul Demorecius in peregratione extitit. Cum igitur in Pascha Ierosolymis ignis de cœlo more solito expectaretur accensus est divinitus cereus ipsius Roberti, unde elegerunt eum universi in regem. Ipse vero audita morte fratris ejus Willielmi Rufi, aspirans ad regnum Angliæ contempsit donum oblationis Dominicæ, unde rediens in Normanniam congressus est cum Henrico fratre suo rege coronato et ab eo victus est et captus, anno Domini MCVI.; sic igitur Dominus reddidit vicem pro vice Roberto prædicto quia cum gloriosum reddidisset eum in actibus Ierosolymis, regnum Ierosolymitanum sibi oblatum renuit, magis eligens quieti et desidiæ pro regno temporali deservire quam Regi Regum in Sancta Civitate pro regno cœlesti desudare. Damnavit igitur eum rex hic desidia perenni et carcere sempiterno, in quo vinctus decessit anno Domini MCXXXIII.

A.D. 1106. A comet and two full moons.

In signum mortis Roberti prædicti anno Domini MCVI., stella cometa apparuit, et visæ sunt eodem anno duæ lunæ plenæ, una ad Occidentem et altera ad Orientem.

A.D. 1103. Solar halo.

Tempore[3] hujus Henrici anno Domini MCIII. visi IIII. circuli in circuitu solis a sexta usque ad nonam.

A.D. 1110. The Trent dried up.

Et MCX. fluvius Trenta exsiccatus est a mane usque ad nonam, spatio unius miliarii, ita ut homines sicco vestigio per alveum intrarent.

A.D. 1113. The Thames dried up.

Et MCXIIII. Temisia siccatus est juxta pontem Londoniensem, quod homo posset a ripa ad ripam sicco pede transire.

A.D. 1133. A vein of silver found at Carlisle.

Et anno MCXXXIII. vena argentaria inventa est apud Karlille. [B. *a*.]

---

[1] Anselmus. in marg. B.

[2] Hic cave. in marg. B.

[3] Mirabilia. in marg. B.

Cap. CX.

Rege Stephano regnum usurpante coronatus est in regem Angliæ, xi. kalendas Januarii, Dominica, xxii. die post excessum[1] avunculi,[2] anno Dominicæ Incarnationis mcxxxv., præsentibus iii. episcopis, scilicet, archiepiscopo, Wyntoniensis,[3] et Sarum. Ipso vero altercante cum regni proceribus, nunc cum episcopis, nunc cum comitibus, nunc baronibus,[4] ita quod tota vita sua postquam regnum acceperat in pace non est dimissus. A.D. 1135. Coronation of Stephen. 26 Dec.

Tandem eo cogitante quod Henricus[5] comes Gloucestriæ in transmarinis partibus enavigasset post ducem Andegauiæ, ut ipsum[6] cum toto suo auxilio in Angliam eveheret, dimissa imperatrice in castello Oxenfordiæ ipse invasit castellum de Warham et obsedit et lucratus est, et munitionem maximam in ea[7] misit. Veniente itaque Henrico cum classica[8] sua ad[9] Warham portum sumpsit, munitionem regis Stephani in castello dimissum[10] trucidavit. Rex vero imperatricem in oppido[11] Oxenfordiæ obsidebat, ipsa vero dimissa in veste linia alba, quæ vocatur Roket, sicut ancilla familiaris latenter ultra Tamensium[12] fluvium glaciali gressu evasit. A.D. 1142. Stephen besieges Maud in Oxford. Escape of Maud. 20 Dec.

Congredientibus[13] insimul rex Stephanus et Henricus comes cum cœtu suo quod[14] de Normannia duxerat, venit tunc Henricus imperatricis filius cum matre sua, et regnum Angliæ jure hæreditario vendicavit.[15] A.D. 1152. Henry, son of Maud, comes to England.

---

[1] *excessum*] decessum. B.D.
[2] *avunculi*] sui. add. B.D.
[3] *Wyntoniensis*] Wyntoniensi. B.D.
[4] *baronibus*] cum. præm. B.D.
[5] *Henricus*] Crossed out in B. *Robertus* written over in a much later hand than that of text.
[6] *ipsum*] ipse. B.
[7] *ea*] eo. B.D.
[8] *classica*] classe. B.D.
[9] *ad*] apud. B.D.
[10] *dimissum*] dimissam. B.D.
[11] *in oppido*] om. D.
[12] *Tamensium*] Tamensem. B.D.
[13] *congredientibus*] congredientes. B.D.
[14] *quod*] quem. B.D.
[15] *vendicavit*] vendicabat. D.

A.D. 1152. Cum exercitu XL. et centum militum et tribus militibus peditum in Angliam venit; confluentibus ad eum militibus Angliæ qui justitiæ ejus zelum gerebant; de die in diem exercitus ejus augebatur.

Besieges the castle of Malmesbury.

Obsedit[1] primo munitionem Malmesburiæ, ubi regis Stephani erat præsidium; cui rex cum suo exercitu superveniens nec ducem ad prœlium evocare nec obsidionem potuit amovere.

Celebrated men in this reign: Bernard of Clairvaux, Hugh de S. Victor, Richard de S. Victor.

Florebat[2] his temporibus Bernardus Clarevallensis abbas, multa post se sanctitatis et scientiæ monumenta relinquens. Gilbertus Poretanus in Galliis, in omnibus scientiis eruditus, libros Boethii de Trinitate, de Hebdomadibus commentavit. Hugo de Sancto Victore discessit[3] anno Domini MCXLX.,[4] qui de Opere VI. Dierum, et de Sacramentis, de Archa, et multa alia utilia scripsit. Floruit etiam Ricardus de Sancto Victore qui de Trinitate et Unitate libellum brevem conscripsit, principiumque et finem Ezechielis expositione historica commentavit.

Gilbert of Sempringham, Petrus Lombardus.

Claruit his temporibus Gilbertus in Anglia institutor ordinis Semplingham.[5] Anno MCLIIII. floruit magister Petrus Lumbardus, episcopus Parisiensis; hic Librum Sententiarum conscripsit, et super Psalterium et Epistolas Pauli edidit novas glossas.[6] Beatus Bernardus post fundationem CLX. cœnobiorum sui ordinis hoc anno finem fecit lethalem.

Death of Bernard of Clairvaux.

A.D. 1153. The treaty between Stephen and Henry, 7 Nov.

Facta tandem concordia inter regem Stephanum et Henricum filium imperatricis, sub forma conditionali ita quod rex Stephanus gaudeat regia dignitate suo[7] vivente, et post ejus[8] decessum[9] absque ulla contradi-

---

[1] Nota. de Malmesburia. in marg. A.D.

[2] *Florebat*] Floruit. B. Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[3] The first word of f. 62. A. headed: De Re. Stephño.

[4] *MCXLX*] 1150. B.D.

[5] *Semplingham*] Sempryngham. B.

[6] *glossas*] glosas. A.B.

[7] *suo*] se. B.D.

[8] *ejus*] om. D.

[9] *decessum*] discessum. D.

tione Henricus filius imperatricis sit ejus hæres et rex. Istis pactis formatis et sub sacramento ligatis rex et Henricus in amplexibus sunt conglobati. Acta sunt hæc anno Domini MCLII. A.D. 1153.

Rex autem Stephanus in Cancia in infirmitate decumbens VIII. kalendas Novembris decessit,[1] sepultusque est in ecclesia monachorum de Fauersham, quorum monasterium uxor ejusdem Stephani regina Matildis[2] fundaverat, et prædiis plurimis ditaverat. A.D. 1154. Death of king Stephen. 25 Oct.

Tempore[3] hujus Stephani Scotti irruerunt in Northumbriam usque Alunton, qui incendentes ecclesias matres cum filiis occiderunt; misitque Thurstanus archiepiscopus Eborum milites contra eos et turpiter victi sunt Scotti. A.D. 1138. Battle of the Standard. 22 Aug.

Magister Petrus Pictaviensis dicit quod idem Stephanus, nepos regis Henrici Primi, fuit miles optimus, per electionem coronatus, comes Boloniæ, vir magnæ strenuitatis et audaciæ sed nimis impius; quamvis sacramentum fidelitatis Anglici regni Matildi imperatrici filiæ regis Henrici promisisset, fretus vigore et audacia ac impudentia regni diadema invasit, sed insurrexerunt in eum Gaufridus comes Andegauiæ, cum uxore sua prædicta Matilde quondam imperatrice, et contenderunt de regno XVII. annis, donec rex Stephanus caperetur; tunc demum facta pace adoptavit Henricum filium imperatricis prædictæ in successorem. Anno Domini MCLIIII. mortuo rege Stephano, qui regnavit XIX. annis, successit Henricus filius dictæ imperatricis.

Iste Stephanus omnes libertates quas rex Henricus avunculus suus baronibus concessit, et ipse concessit et insuper libertatem forestæ per totum regnum, quod Henricus facere noluit, sed

---

[1] *decessit*] discessit. B.D.

[2] *Matildis*] Matilldis. A., the second *l* being subpuncted. Prima Matildis fuit uxor Willielmi Bastard et regina Angliæ quæ in monasterio sanctimonialium quod construxit Cadomis requiescit. Secunda Matildis regina Angliæ venerabilis, de cujus bonitate largiflua et morum probitate multimoda dicere per singula dies deficiet, fuit uxor Primi Henrici regis, et mater Matildis imperatricis, quæ tandem fuit uxor Stephani regis, et sepulta est in monasterio de Fauersham, quod ipsa una cum domino suo a fundamento ædificavit. add. B. in a note in hand (*a*). It follows on f. 160 v. the words *contra multos deliquerat* on f. 160, and is immediately followed by the entry of the election of Theobald, A.D. 1128. I have thought it best to place it in a note.

[3] De Scotis. in marg. B.

multotiens contra Deum et animam suam in hac parte contra multos deliquerat.[1]

A.D. 1128. Theobald archbishop of Canterbury.

Anno Domini MCXXVIII. Theobaldus factus est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ.

A.D. 1150. A severe frost.

Anno Domini MCL. tam valida glacies erat quod Thamisia gelata fuit, ut equo et carro transiri potuit.

A.D. 1156. An appearance in the moon.

Anno Domini MCLVI., mense Octobris, apparuit signum Sanctæ Crucis in Luna. Eodem anno delata fuit manus Sancti Jacobi apud Redynges.

CAP. CXI.

A.D. 1154. Henry II. is summoned from Normandy. He lands in England. 7 Dec.

STEPHANO[2] mortuo Henricus filius Galfridi et Matildis imperatricis, cognomento Plantegenet,[3] regnare cœpit. Jubente matre de assensu episcoporum et Normanniæ primatum in Angliam transfretans, septimo idus Decembris, anno Domini MCLIIII., a clero et populo cum gaudio magno recipitur et honore.

His coronation. 19 Dec.

Dominica vero ante Nativitatem Domini, quæ quartodecimo fuit kalendarum Januarii, apud Westmonasterium a Cantuarensi archiepiscopo Theobaldo inungitur, præsentibus episcopis III. cum comitibus, baronibus, et certis[4] proceribus Angliæ et Normanniæ ætatis suæ XXII. solemniter coronatur. Mores vero et actus Henrici Primi avi sui fere in omnibus sequebatur.

Nicholas Breakspear is elected Pope. [2 Dec.]

Sextodecimo[5] kalendas Januarii electus est in papam Nicholaus Albanensis episcopus et est vocatus Adrianus IIII. Hic natione Anglicus de urbe Sancti Albani oriundus, &c.

---

[1] Confirmatio libertatis ecclesiasticæ [supra?] in marg. B., with a hand, which is repeated in the margin of the addition to the reign of Hen. I., to which this note refers.

[2] De Henrico II. in marg. A.

[3] *Plantegenet*] Plantgenet. B.

[4] *certis*] c^{9}tis. A. cæteris. B.

[5] De papa de [in. D.] Anglia nato. in marg. A.D.

Eodem anno Thomas[1] Beket archidiaconus Cantuariæ, factus est regis cancellarius. A.D. 1154. A Beket Chancellor.

Secundo anno regni sui prostravit omnia castella quæ Stephanus[2] rex dederat[3] comitibus et baronibus diversis in[4] auxilium sui contra Henricum. A.D. 1155. Henry destroys the castles erected in Stephen's reign.

Tertio anno cepit in manu sua burgas,[5] villas, civitates, maneria quas[6] Stephanus[2] alienavit a corona regni sui in forma prædicta.

Eodem[7] anno, scilicet, Domini MCLVI. in pago Parisiensi tunica Domini nostri Jesu Christi in monasterio Argentili revelatione Divina reperta est, inconsutilis et subrufi coloris, quam gloriosa Mater ejus ei fecerat dum adhuc puer esset, prout repertæ cum ea literæ indicabant. A.D. 1156. Discovery of the Holy Coat.

Eo anno, circa medium mensis Augusti, cœperunt fieri pluviæ insolitæ quæ impediebant collectionem messium et subsequentem seminum sparsionem, quarum[8] inundationibus[9] quia diu durabant multæ turres et antiquæ mœniæ[10] in Anglia et Normannia corruerunt. Heavy rains.

Quarto anno David rex Scociæ sibi omnia reddidit quæ de suis per regem Stephanum habuit, scilicet, Karliolum, Novum Castrum[11] super Tyn,[12] Castellum de Bamburgh,[13] comitatum Lancastriæ. The Scots retire from the north of England.

Quinto anno mutavit monetam suam, et natus est Gaufridus[14] comes Britanniæ. A.D. 1158. Birth of Geoffrey, earl of Bretagne, 23 Sept.

---

[1] *Thomas*] Thms. A.

[2] *Stephanus*] Ste. A.D.

[3] *dederat*] dedederat. B. dedit. D.

[4] The first word of f. 62 v. A. headed: De Re. Hen. II.

[5] *burgas*] burgas. B., the *a* corrected into an *o*.

[6] *quas*] quæ. B.D.

[7] *Eodem*] Eo. B.D. Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[8] *quarum*] quibus. B.

[9] *inundationibus*] inundatione. D.

[10] *antiquæ mœniæ*] antiq; menie. A.

[11] *Castrum*] Castellum. D.

[12] *Tyn*] Tyne. B.

[13] *Bamburgh*] Bamborgh. B.

[14] *Gaufridus*] Gamfridus. A.B.D.

A.D. 1158. Discovery of the bodies of the Three Magi. Visions of S. Elizabeth of Saxony.

Hoc anno,[1] scilicet, MC.LVIII. inventa sunt tria[2] magorum corpora, ab omni corruptione illæsa, in quadam veteri capella juxta urbem Mediolanum in civitate reposita. In partibus Saxoniæ sanctimonialis Elizabet quædam mirabiles visiones de Conceptione, Nativitate, et Assumptione Beatæ Virginis vidit et narravit et de gloria Undecim Milium Virginum.

A.D. 1159. Siege of Toulouse.

Sexto anno duxit magnum exercitum ultra mare ad Tolosam, et eam acquisivit.

A.D. 1160. P. Henry marries the daughter of Louis VII. 2 Dec.

Septimo anno Henricus filius ejus et hæres desponsavit filiam Lodowici regis Francorum.

Octavo anno archiepiscopus Theobaldus obiit, et tota civitas Cantuariæ fere incensa[3] per infortunium.

A.D. 1161. Theobald, archbp. of Cant. ob. 18 April.

Nono anno, hoc est Incarnationis[4] M.CLXII. Thomas Beket cancellarius domini regis archiepiscopus Cantuariæ,[5] die Sancti Barnabæ Apostoli consecratus est.

A.D. 1162. Thomas A Beket cons. archbp.

Eodem anno nata est Alianora[6] filia regis. Eo[7] anno in Britannia Minori in civitate Recello, pluit sanguis, et de rivis cujusdam fontis ibidem effluxit.

Decimo anno translatus est Sanctus Edwardus Londoniis[8] in ecclesia quam ædificaverat cum magno honore cleri et populi.

A.D. 1164. Council of Northampton. 8 Oct. Flight of A Beket.

Undecimo anno tentum est[9] parliamentum apud Northamptoun,[10] ubi exulatus est Thomas archiepiscopus, et nocte latenter aufugit.

Eo[11] anno Reynaldus Coloniensis electus Frederici imperatoris cancellarius trium magorum corpora de Mediolano Coloniam transtulerat.[12] Quorum corpora

---

[1] De tribus magis. Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[2] *tria*] trium. D.

[3] *incensa*] est. add. B.D.

[4] *Incarnationis*] om. B.

[5] *Cantuariæ*] A short erasure follows in A.

[6] *Alianora*] Alienora. B.D. 'Sanguis pluit. in marg. A.D.

[8] *Londoniis*] Londonias. B.D.

[9] *est*] om. B.D.

[10] *Northamptoun*] Northamptoñ. B.D.

[11] Incidentia. iu marg. A.D.

[12] *transtulerat*] transtulit. D. De ætate magorum. in marg. A. De ætate trium magorum. in marg. D.

integra exterius quantum ad cutem et capillos apparent, quantum vero ex eorum aspectu convinci potest unus annorum XV., secundus XXX., tertius XL. esse videtur. Beatus enim Eustorgius[1] dono cujusdam imperatoris de Constantinopolim ea Mediolanum transtulerat, cum quadam mensa cui supposita erant, in quodam vehiculo parvo quod duæ vaccæ indomitæ divina virtute et voluntate trahebant. Transtulit prædictus Reynaldus exinde corpus Beatæ Mariæ, matris Sanctorum Gervasii et Prothasii martyrum, et caput Naboris martyris. A.D. 1164 Translation of the Three Magi to Cologne. Translation of S. Mary, mother of SS. Gervase and Prothase, and the head of S. Nabor.

Duodecimo anno nata est Johanna filia regis. Eo anno Henricus[2] rex misit literas minatorias abbati de Pontiniaco, pro retentione Thomæ archiepiscopi. Thomas vero timens regis malitiam a sanctis viris sponte recessit,[3] sed prius confortatus[4] a Spiritu Sancto quod ad ecclesiam rediturus esset cum gloria et palma martyrii migraturus ad Dominum. A.D. 1165. Birth of the Princess Joanna. A.D. 1166. A Beket leaves Pontigny.

Tertiodecimo anno obiit Matilda[5] imperatrix; eodem anno natus est Johannes filius ejus. A.D. 1167. Birth of P. John. 24 Dec.

Quartodecimo anno dux Henricus de Saxonia desponsavit Matildam[6] filiam regis, et generavit ex ea tres filios: Henricum, Othonem, et Willielmum. A.D. 1168. Marriage of Princess Matilda with Henry the Lion.

Quintodecimo anno obiit nobilis comes de Leycestria[7] Robertus. Hic fundavit abbatias III.: Nunetoun[8] [sanctimonialium][9] juxta Couentriam, abbatiam Laicestriæ canonicorum nigrorum, abbatiam de Geroudoun[10] ordinis Cisterciensis. Eo[11] anno Almaricus Death of Robert, earl of Leicester.

---

[1] *Eustorgius*] Eustrogius. B.

[2] *Henricus*] om. B.D.

[3] *recessit*] discessit. B.D.

[4] *confortatus*] est. add. B.

[5] *Matilda*] Matildis. B.D.

[6] *Matildam*] Matildem. D.

[7] *de Leycestria*] de Gloucestria. B. Gloucestriæ. D. A mark like a *C* or *G* precedes the *L* in A.

[8] *Nunetoun*] Neutoñ. D.

[9] *sanctimonialium*] Written above *Nunetoun* in A. om. B. added in marg. D.

[10] *Geroudoun*] Gerondoñ. B. Gerroudoñ. D.

[11] Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1168. rex Ierusalem acquisivit Babiloniam et penitus eam destruxit, quæ usque huc non[1] est reparata.

A.D. 1170. Coronation of Prince Henry. 14 June. Sextodecimo anno fecit coronari Henricum filium[2] in regem apud Westmonasterium ab archiepiscopo Rogerio Eboracensi, tempore exilii Sancti Thomæ, et in præjudicium Sancti Thomæ; unde a domino papa excommunicati sunt coronans et coronatus. Post coronationem Henrici junioris, Henricus pater secessit in partibus Normanniæ et ibi filiam suam Alianoram[3] tradidit regi Alemanniæ, Edelfi nomine.

Murder of Thomas A Beket. 29 Dec. Post septimum annum exulatus, hoc est anno isto, Sanctus Thomas in ecclesia sua cathedrali quarto die post Natale Domini gladiis impiorum occubuit. Unde versus:—[4]

Anno milleno centeno septuageno,
Anglorum primas corruit ense Thomas.

An inundation. Eo[5] anno circa æquinoctium vernale limites suos mare excedens messes quæ prope erant absorbuit, allivioneque ejus ossa cujusdam gigantis in Anglia detecta sunt[6] cujus ut ferunt L. pedum erat corporis longitudo.

A.D. 1173. Rupture between king Henry and his son Henry. Eodem anno schisma magnum ortum est inter Henricos, patrem et filium, ita quod reges Franciæ et Scociæ sustinebant filium contra patrem, et hoc nutu Divino creditur accidisse propter mortem Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi.

A.D. 1174. Their reconciliation. 30 Sept. Tandem Lodowicus rex Francorum patrem et filium in amicitiam et osculum convocavit. Concordia facta rex pater latenter misit regi Franciæ ut nomina discordiam seminantium inter[7] ipsum et filium suum seriatim nuntiaret. Rex vero Franciæ impiger misit sibi nomina trium filiorum suorum, scilicet, Henrici, Ricardi, et Johannis. Patre

---

[1] *non*] ñ. A.

[2] *filium*] suum. add. B.D.

[3] *Alianŏram*] Alienoram. B.D.

[4] Versus in marg. D.

[5] Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[6] The first word of f. 63 v. A. headed: De Re. Hen. III.

[7] *inter*] et. præm. A. subpuncted.

vero[1] comperto maledixit tempus et horam quod unquam[2] filios procreasset. Henricus autem filius[3] morbo lethali fatigatus veniam a patre valde contritus postulavit, et pater omnia integro animo sibi condonavit,[4] et inter prædecessores suos Londoniis sepultus est. A.D. 1183. Death of Prince Henry. 11 June.

Anno[5] MCLXXIX. Petrus Commestor obiit, qui utriusque Testamenti Historias in uno[6] volumine et Allegorias in alio compilavit. Sepultus est Parisius in ecclesia Sancti Victoris, pauperibus et ecclesiis omnes facultates suas relinquens. A.D. 1179. Death of Petrus Comestor.

Mortuo[7] Henrico I. successit ei Stephanus nepos ejus, qui coronatus est IIII. idus Februarii, anno MCXXXVII. Eodem anno rex Scociæ devastavit omnes terras regis Angliæ ultra Humbram.[8] Recapitulation.

Anno MXLI. Stephanus captus est in obsidione Lincolniæ, et in Bristollia incarceratus, et post VII. menses elapsos Robertus[9] Gloucestriæ comes et multi alii cum eo,[10] omnes in castello de Deuyse,[11] sunt compediti.[12] Interlocutio inter magnates facta est, quod pro rege comes cum suis datæ[13] sint in escambio. Obsidio castri Lincolniæ per regem Stephanum,[14] anno MCXLIII. Rex confusus recessit.[15] A.D. 1141. Stephen taken at Lincoln. 2 Feb. Robt. earl of Gloucester captured. 14 Sept. exchanged for Stephen.

Anno MCXLIIII. fames maxima fuit in terra. Eodem quidem anno puer quidam Willielmus nomine de Norwycho natus crucifixus fuit a Judæis more Christi. 1 Nov. A.D. 1144. A famine.

---

[1] *Patre vero*] Pater vero hoc. B. D.

[2] *quod unquam*] in quibus. B.D.

[3] *filius*] An erasure follows in A. ejus. add. B.D.

[4] *condonavit*] The *na* interlined in A.

[5] Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[6] *uno*] novo. B.

[7] Recapitulatio a rege Stephano. in marg. A.D.

[8] *Humbram*] Humbrum. B.D.

[9] *Robertus*] Robestus. A.

[10] *eo*] A short erasure follows in A.

[11] *Deuise*] Vise. B. De Vyse. D.

[12] *compediti*] compeliti? A. but the word is scarcely legible. pediti. in marg. A. faintly traced in another hand.

[13] *datæ*] dati. B.D.

[14] *per regem Sephanum*] per re. Ste. A. pro rege Ste. B. per regem Ste. D.

[15] *recessit*] discessit. B.D.

A.D. 1147. Anno[1] MCXLVII. fundata est domus de la Bruer ordinis Cisterciencis. Facta est concordia anno MCLIII.
A.D. 1153. inter regem Stephanum et Henricum ducem Normanniæ.

A.D. 1154. Anno[2] MCLIIII. obiit rex Stephanus.

A.D. 1154. Anno MCLV. coronatus est Henricus filius imperatricis.

A.D. 1156. Anno MCLVI. mense Octobri apparuit signum in luna.

A.D. 1157. Richard I. born. 13 Sept. Anno MCLVII. rex Ricardus natus est et comes Oxenfordiæ factus.

A.D. 1161. Anno MCLXI. obiit Theobaldus archiepiscopus Can-
A.D. 1162. tuariæ et in proximo anno consecratus est Sanctus Thomas.[3]

A.D. 1164. Halos and Parhelia. Anno MCLXIIII.[4] quartodecimo kalendas Octobris circa[5] horam primam visi sunt tres circuli varii coloris in firmamento ad modum iris, et illis recedentibus visi sunt duo soles; et eo anno Sanctus Thomas relegatus est.[6]

A.D. 1167. Robt. bp. of Lincoln. ob. 26 Jan. Anno MCLXVII. obiit Robertus Lincolniensis episcopus, et post sedes vacavit XII.[7] annos.

A.D. 1170. Anno MCLXX. Henricus III. coronatus est ab archiepiscopo Eboracensi Rogero, unde ambo sunt excommunicati, et anno sequenti Sanctus Thomas martyrizatus est in gremio materno.[8]

---

[1] Abbatia Bruer. in marg. A. D.

[2] *Anno*] The initial wanting in A.

[3] Sanctus Thomas consecratur. in marg. A.D. in A. in the author's smaller hand and without the rubric, which generally surrounds or underlines these marginal notes, written in a character of the same size as the text.

[4] *MCLXIIII.*] The *x* written in A. in the author's smaller hand above the L.

[5] *circa*] The first word of f. 64. A. headed: De Re. Hen. III.

[6] Sanctus Thomas exulatur. in marg. A.D. in marg. A. in the author's smaller hand and not rubricated.

[7] *XII*] 12. B. corr. VII.

[8] Sanctus Thomas occidi[tur]. in marg. A.D. in A. in the author's smaller hand and not rubricated.

Anno MCLXXII. regina coronata est Londoniis. A.D. 1172.

Anno MCLXXIII. discordia mota est inter Henricos, patrem et filium, et Leycestria destructa est. A.D. 1173.

Anno MCLXXIIII. pater et filius reconciliati sunt. Et Ricardus prior Douoriæ electus est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. A.D. 1174.

Anno MCLXXIX.[1] rex Franciæ Lodowicus proficiscit[2] peregre Cantuariam, et ibi dimisit lapidem pretiosum de annulo suo, qui vocatur regalis Franciæ. A.D. 1179. Louis VII. visits the tomb of A Beket.

Anno MCLXXX.[3] translata est Sancta Frideswitha, et Henricus rex mutavit monetam. A.D. 1180.

Anno MCLXXXII. rex Henricus II. dedit curiæ Romanæ pro morte Sancti Thomæ XL. milia[4] marcarum argenti,[5] V.M.[6] auri. Circa[7] idem tempus fratres de Cartusia primo ingressi sunt sua habitacula. A.D. 1182. Henry gives a sum in atonement for the murder of A Beket.

Eodem anno corona regni Ierusalem ad regem Henricum Angliæ a proceribus patriæ Ierosolomitanæ præsentatur.

Anno MCLXXXIII. obiit rex Henricus Junior in partibus transmarinis et Henricus pater regnum suscepit et in pace vitam finivit. A.D. 1183. Death of Prince Henry.

Proximo anno quidam patriarcha venit in Angliam. A.D. 1185.

Anno sequenti consecratus est Baldewinus archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. A.D. 1185. Baldwin archbp. of Canterbury.

Anno MCLXXXVI. consecratus est Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus qui postea sanctus approbatus est. Eodem anno Sancta Crux apparuit in bello et Ierusalem et Crux Christi[8] capta est a Paganis. 19 May. A.D. 1186. S.Hugh bp. of Lincoln.

Anno MCLXXXIX. obiit rex Henricus II. secundo 21 Sept.

---

[1] Nota. a. in marg. A.D. This entry stands second in A.B.D.

[2] *proficiscit*] proficiscitur. B.D.

[3] b. in marg. A. This entry stands first in A.B.D.

[4] XL. *milia*] 40,000. B. the last zero erased.

[5] *argenti*] monetæ. B.

[6] *V.M.*] 50,000. B. the last zero erased.

[7] Cartusia. in marg. A.D.

[8] *et crux Christi*] Interlined in A. apparently *prima manu.*

A.D. 1189. Death of Henry II. 6 July.

nonas Julii, et Ricardus filius ejus coronatus est Londoniis III. nonas Septembris.

Tempore Henrici III. orta est magna guerra inter Christianos et Paganos ab causam unius traditoris comes[1] de Triple, qui reginam de Ierusalem voluit in uxorem habuisse. Ipsa vero omnino recusans ad propriam voluntatem se maritavit homini robusto, valido, generoso, omni virtute decorato, licet simplici prole procreato. Memoratus comes videns se a regina recusari, Saladino soldano adivit et fœdus secum iniit, et Christianitatem omnino abjuravit.

Die[2] vero belli constituto de exercitu memorati comitis Christiani fideliter sperantes tempore congressus prædictus comes contra Christianos cum exercitu suo faciem suam tyrannidem divertit; unde subsecuta est magna strages Christianorum. In illo enim bello occisi Templarii et Hospitularii sunt et omnes totius Christianitatis nobiliores, et Sancta Civitas Ierusalem capta et Sancta Crux in Babiloniam deducta.[3] Ferunt quidam quod ille maledictus comes die quindecima post bellum commissum sanguinem vomendo miserrime expiravit. Non enim prætereundem est de uno miraculo quod accidebat in partibus transmarinis in civitate Rocham Amatoris tempore regis Henrici Tertii.

A.D. 1187. Jerusalem taken by Saladin. 3 Oct.

[A.D. 1181.] Legend.

Dicitur[4] quod anno Domini MCLXXXI. in prædicta civitate miraculum hujuscemodi contigisse.[5] Monachi de ecclesia Beatæ Virginis a quodam burgensi pecunia mutuo accepta, eidem nomine pignoris cortinas ecclesiæ tradiderunt. Postea vero Gloriosæ Virginis festivitate instante ecclesia[6] suo destituerunt[7] ornatu. Rogabant

---

[1] *traditoris comes*] proditoris comitis. B.D.

[2] *Die*] The first word of f. 64 v. A. headed: De rege.

[3] *deducta*] est. præm. B. est ducta. D.

[4] Miraculum de Beata Virgine. in marg. A.D.

[5] *contigisse*] contigisset. D.

[6] *ecclesia*] ecclesiam. B.D.

[7] *destituerunt*] destituerut. A.

monachi præfatum burgensem ut cortinas eis concederet, statim post festum restituendas; quod[1] cum ad hoc faciendum flecteretur[2] precibus[3] respondit quod illæ cortinæ circa lectum uxoris suæ quæ nuper filiam peperat tendebantur nec inde possent amoveri. Transita igitur festivitate nocte proxima Beata Virgo uxori illius burgensis apparens sic eam alloquitur: Vir tuus peccatum grande commisit nec impietatis ejus excessus relinqui poterit impunitus. Tertia itaque die filius tuus morietur et vir tuus die octavo, pœnas juxta merita recepturus. Tu vero proficiscere ad ecclesiam meam in Bethleem et conspectis ibi tribus[4] sepulchris tibi medium eliges. Interim vero[5] omni feria quarta circa horam nonam deficiet in te spiritus tuus et decurret ab ore et naribus sanguis et usque ad horam nonam Sabbati velut mortua permanebis. Sabbato vero eadem hora spiritus tuus tibi restituetur. His dictis, Beata Virgo disparuit. Mulier autem timore nimio expergefacta somnum repetens illud in crastino conjugi suo per ordinem enarravit. Hic mulieris verba parvipendens, cum enim viderit[6] tertia die filium morientem ad pœnitentiam commotus octava die juxta visionem præostensam mortis solvit debitum. Mulier marito defuncto Romam adiit, summo pontifici visionem revelavit, prænuntiavitque anno quinto post illum famem et pestilentiam futuram.[7] Cupiens vero papa certior esse de his quæ narravit mulier duodecim matronis nobilibus eam commendavit præcipiens eis ut cum illa deficiente spiritu obdormiret plantis ejus calentes subulas[8] infigerent et[9] de sanguine fluente ab ore et

A.D. 1181. Legend.

---

[1] *quod*] qui. B.D.

[2] *flecteretur*] non. præm. B.D.

[3] *precibus*] A short erasure follows in A.

[4] *tribus*] om. D.

[5] *vero*] om. B.D.

[6] *enim viderit*] videret. B.D.

[7] *futuram*] futuras. D.

[8] *subulas*] sibulas or fibulas. B.

[9] *et*] The first word of f. 65. A. headed: Henrico III.

A.D. 1181. Legend. naribus aliquas vestes intingerent. Hæc cum fecissent nec in perforatione plantarum est mota illa, nec infectio vestium a sanguine. Reverso spiritu ejus quotidie die Sabbati viva apparet.

Contigit[1] autem aliquando ut soror comitis Sancti Ægidii in quodam castello Christianorum capta fuit a quodam Soldano, Saphadino nomine. Hic etiam more Gentilium eam sibi copulavit; qui generans ex ea filium qui Yconius vocatus est,[2] hic vero post patrem suum Soldanus factus est. Matre ejus veniente ad extrema filio Soldano quod Christiana esset revelavit, ritum vero Paganorum nequaquam colebat. Rogavitque filium quod[3] in Christum crederet et Christianos omni vice diligeret. Cui filius se[4] non audere[5] propter Sarazenos[6] hoc aperte facere. Dixitque mater: Fili, cum mortua fuero excelsam mihi fac sepulturam sicut pyramidem, et super ea[7] colloca signum Crucis; qui respondit in die hoc non audere, dixit[8] se desiderium suum in nocte implere. Quo facto indignati Saraceni principem eorum volebant occidere. Ascendens quidam Paganus ut Crucem infringeret corruens expiravit. Alius ascendens ad idem agendum casum similem experitur. Tertia vero die conveniente magna multitudine ut ædificium illud diruerent multi de eis coruscatione et fulgure perierunt. Tunc in conspectu illorum omnium Angelus Domini clarissimus super pyramidem signum Crucis prostratum erexit; quo facto, multi in Christum crediderunt et Crucem illam venerandam humiliter adoraverunt. Ferunt[9] contigisse hoc miraculum anno Domini MCLXXXII.

---

[1] Miraculum de Beata Cruce. in marg. A.

[2] *qui Yconius vocatus est*] Yconium nominavit. B.D.

[3] *quod*] ut. B. Suum ut. D.

[4] *se*] om. B.D.

[5] *audere*] respondit. add. B.D.

[6] *Sarazenos*] Saracenos. B.

[7] *ea*] eam. B.D. Miraculum de Beata Cruce. in marg. D.

[8] *dixit*] enim. add. B.D.

[9] *Ferunt*] quidam. add. B.D

Anno MCLXXXVI. Beatus Hugo prior cujusdam domus ordinis Cartusiæ juxta Batoniam in Anglia Hentoun[1] nomine procurante rege Henrico Seniore ob religionem et sanctitatem quam in eum[2] plurimum venerabatur assumptus est ad Lyncolniensis ecclesiæ præsulatum. A.D. 1186. Hugh, prior of Witham, elected bishop of Lincoln. 10 Aug.

Anno[3] sequenti rege Henrico in Normannia existente[4] in castro de Dolys, duo Brabazones[5] ludentes ad tassaras coram imagine Beatæ Virginis Mariæ super columnam ecclesiæ posita, male[6] perdentes quod inique acquisierant in verba blasphemiæ in Deum et Beatam Virginem proruperant, quorum alter lapidem in imaginem projiciens, brachium imaginis pueri Jesu avulsit, statimque sanguis perfluit,[7] qui a multis qui in obsidione erant visus est et tollens multos a variis languoribus inunctos illo infirmos curavit. Brachium sanguinolentum Johannes regis Anglorum filius inter reliquias cum magna veneratione secum portavit. Blasphemus ille infelix eodem die a dæmone arreptus[8] est. Hujus miraculi inter alia mentionem facit qui Marriale[9] conscripsit, dicens quod imago Virginis fracto brachio Pueri vestes Matris divulsit. Asserit se etiam[10] et sanguinem et vestem vidisse divulsam. Eodem anno capta est Ierusalem et Sancta Crux, et belli proditor post[11] XV. dies versus est in amentiam. A.D. 1187. Legend. Jerusalem taken.

Rex autem Henricus postquam regnasset XXXIIII. annis, mensibus VI., hebdomadis tribus, apud Chinonem in ægritudinem decidens diem clausit extremum A.D. 1189. Death of Henry II. 6 July.

---

[1] *Hentoun*] Hentoñ. B.D.
[2] *eum*] eo. B.D.
[3] De Beata Virgine. in marg. A.D.
[4] *existente*] existe. D.
[5] *Brabazones*] bⁿbazones. A Mr. Hindley omits this word.
[6] *male*] mare. D.
[7] *perfluit*] profluit. B.D.
[8] *dæmone arreptus*] dæmonio ereptus. B.D.
[9] *Marriale*] Mariale. B.D.
[10] *etiam*] The first word of f. 65 v. A. headed: De rege Ricardo.
[11] *post*] per. B.D.

A.D. 1189. in octabis Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, Sepultus vero[1] apud Fontem Ebraudi in ecclesia monialium, quarum monasterium multis prædiis ditatum ipse fundavit. Solemnitatem ejus sepulturæ peregerunt Turonensis et Treverensis archiepiscopi, præsente filio ejus comite Pictauensi. Hoc anno contulit capitulo[2] Cisterciensis ordinis monachorum eleemosinarie mille marcas;[3] non enim sciebat mortem tam citius[4] imminere.

A.D. 1170. William, king of Scotland, and his brother David swear fealty to Prince Henry. 15 June.

Tempore hujus Henrici Secundi non rebellarunt Scotti. Hic Henricus in crastino coronationis filii sui Henrici Tertii fecit Willielmum regem Scociæ et David fratrem suum devenire homines ligios suos et Henrici filii sui novi regis. Iste Secundus Henricus genuit etiam Ricardum comitem Pictauiæ qui post eum regnavit, et Gaufridum comitem Britanniæ qui Arthurum genuit et Johannem qui quarto loco regnavit, qui quodam præsagio dictus est Johannes Sine Terra.

A.D. 1174. Henry II. does penance for the murder of A Beket. A famine.

Anno Domini MCLXXIIII. idem Henricus Secundus a Normannia veniens egit pœnitentiam pro interfectione Sancti Thomæ in ecclesia Cantuariensi, a quo, fame pervalida currente in Anglia, X.M. hominum a kalendis Aprilis usque ad novarum frugum abundantiam quotidie sustentabantur.

A.D. 1171. Henry II. invades Ireland.

Iste Secundus Henricus primus omnium regum Angliæ per seipsum Hiberniam intravit eamque sibi subjugavit et superstites tributarios fecit anno Domini MCLXXI.; et eodem anno audita sunt terribilia et quasi ante inaudita tonitrua in nocte Natalis Domini, et sacerdos quidam apud Andeuere in Hamptes' nocte media, præsente populo, in ecclesia subito fulminatus est, aliis nihil mali habentibus sed porcum sicut videbatur inter pedes suos huc atque illuc discurrere scientibus.

A priest killed by lightning.

A.D. 1177. Regulars established at Waltham.

Iste Henricus Secundus anno Domini MCLXXVII. canonicos sæculares de Waltham expulit et regulares intus duxit.

A.D. 1164. Halos and mock sun.

Anno Domini MCLXIIII.; XIIII. kalendas Octobris circa horam primam visi sunt in cœlo tres circuli et quasi duo soles, et eodem anno orta est dissensio inter Henricum Secundum et Beatum Thomam.

A.D. 1161. Canterbury burnt.

Anno Domini MCLXI. tota civitas Cantuariæ pæne combusta est.

---

[1] *vero*] est. add. B.D.

[2] *capitulo*] capl̃o. A. capitl̃o B. capl̃o. D.

[3] *mille marcas*] Added in marg. A. in a tremulous hand, somewhat resembling that of the author, and referred to its place in the text by a caret.

[4] *tam citius*] ita cito. B.D.

Anno MCLXIIII. orta est dissensio inter Sanctum Thomam et regem apud Northampton ita ut imminente sibi periculo mortis a consilio recedens Crucem manibus propriis in altum erigens portaret, venitque in Franciam ad papam Alexandrum. A.D. 1164.

Anno Domini MCLXXIIII. et anno regni regis Henrici Secundi XXII. Hugo Cardinalis et Apostolicæ Sedis legatus venit in Angliam et præstitit auctoritatem trahendi clericos ante judicem sæcularem pro forisfacto forestæ et pro laico feodo. A.D. 1174.

Anno Domini MCLXXV. pons lapideus Londoniæ inceptus est a Petro capellano de Colechurche. A.D. 1175.

Anno MCLXXVIII. celebratum est Concilium Latronense. A.D. 1179.

CAP. CXII.

RICARDUS comes Pictaviæ patri successit in regnum. De Normannia in Angliam navigans, die Sancti Ægidii receptus est Londoniis cum processione solenni; die sequenti, qui est dies Dominicus,[1] inunctus est in regem, ex officio et ministerio exequente Baldewyno Cantuariæ archiepiscopo, assistentibus archiepiscopis Rothomagensi et Treuerensi et Dublinensi, cum suffraganeis eorum plurimis, et in præsentia matris suæ Alianoræ et Johannis fratris sui comitis Moritonii. A patre enim Johannes vocabatur "Jon sanz tere;" nam Henricus II. pater ejus filium suum Henricum III. constituit hæredem, Ricardum vero comitem Pictauiæ, Johannem sine terra vocavit. A.D. 1189. Coronation of Richard I. 3 Sept.

Secundo anno regni sui Terram Sanctam est arreptus cum Baldewino archiepiscopo Cantuariæ, et Huberto Sarum episcopo, et Radulfo comite Gloucestriæ, et multi proceres alii[2] de regno Angliæ. Baldewinus itinerando fecit finem laudabilem. Rex Ricardus iter suum continuavit. A.D. 1190. Richard goes to the Holy Land.

---

[1] *Dominicus*] doc^{o}. A.

[2] *multi proceres alii*] multis proceribus aliis. B.D.

A.D. 1191. Surrender of Acre. 12 July.

Anno regni sui tertio cepit Accon et Viprum[1] et totum prius amissum recuperavit, præter civitatem Ierusalem et duas alias civitates. Rege igitur Ricardo in civitate Accon[2] commorante ad hominum suorum recreationem quia itinere et bello fatigati, eo tempore orta est discordia inter ipsum et regem Franciæ Philippum. Discordia illa mota, rex Philippus cepit villam de Gysours[3] cum castello, in despectu regis Ricardi, et venit in occursum regis Ricardi[4] cum CCC. militibus bene armatis, et cum sectis eorum ad duo milia peditum, et cum CC. dextrariis bene loricatis.

Quarrel between Richard and Philip Augustus.

Rege Ricardo regem Philippum fugante occidit de suis C. milites et XXVI. armigeros et pedites XII.C., et Philippus cum dolore et labore latenter[5] evasit.

A.D. 1192. Richard is seized by Leopold duke of Austria. 20 Dec.

Bello[6] isto commisso rex insipide errans per Almanniam, putans neminem sibi contradicere, captus est a duce Astriæ, Lympoldo[7] nomine, cujus fratrem prius rex Ricardus in ludendo ad scaccarium in curia regis Franciæ cum scaccario occiderat. Nam multi filii nobilium de diversis regionibus illuc missi fuerant ad nutriendum, inter quos filius ducis Astriæ et hæres ibi interfuit; unde dux ille regem Angliæ Ricardum in magnum odium[8] habuit, unde eo accepto[9] fortiter in vinculis catenavit.

Conduct of Prince John.

Johanne fratre regis Ricardi ista de eo audiente valde lætatus est. Episcopi, comites, et barones et cæteri regni proceres contra Johannem resistentes vi et armis ceperunt castellum[10] de Wyndelisor,[11] et plura

---

[1] *Viprum*] Ciprum. B. the *c* on an erasure.

[2] *Accon*] Accon̄. B.

[3] *Gysours*] Gisours. B.

[4] *regis Ricardi*] ejus. D.

[5] *latenter*] om. B. added beyond the line in blacker ink than the context *prima manu*.

[6] *Bello*] The first word of f. 66. A. headed: De Re. Ricardo.

[7] *Lympoldo*] Limpoldo. B.

[8] *magnum odium*] magno odio. B D.

[9] *eo accepto*] eum acceptum. B.D.

[10] *castellum*] catellum. A.

[11] *Wyndelisor*] Windelesore. B. Wyndesore. D.

alia quas[1] sibi Johannes vendicaverat. Anglici multum condolentes de regis incarceratione miserunt pro eo C.M. libras argenti, unde fere omnes calices et omnia vasa argentea fulminata fuerunt[2] in monetam, ut regem suum liberarent, qui honorifice liberatus est. Impetratum fuit a domino papa ut celebrare possent sacerdotes cum calicibus de stanno, et sic longo tempore fecerunt; quod a nobis visum est.

A.D. 1193. Ransom of the king raised in England.

Celebration of Mass with chalices of tin.

Ricardo de carcere liberato et in Angliam redeunte Johannes frater ejus fugit in Normanniam, et ibi sub rege Franciæ latitabat. Ibi enim obviavit regi Ricardo ab eo veniam[3] flagitanti, quarto idus Maii, super commissis culpam incunctanter indulgendo; hoc enim dicitur regem respondisse: Utinam apud me[4] delictum tuum transeat in oblivionem ita quod apud te permaneat in memoria quidquid fecisti. Rex vero acceptis castellis in manu sua quas[5] Johannes frater ejus[6] usurpaverat in manu sua,[7] scilicet, Notingham, Beuuer,[8] Neuwerk, Wyntonia, et plura alia, in parliamento proximo omnes inimicos suos exhæredavit et iterum se fecit coronari.[9] Dux vero Astriæ qui regem incarceravit lite inter papam et ipsum ingruente moritur excommunicatus, anno Domini MCXCVI.

A.D. 1194. Richard set at liberty. 4 Feb. He lands in England. 13 March. John escapes to Normandy. Richard takes possession of the castles of Nottingham, Beauvoir, Newark, and Winchester.

Rex vero Ricardus in partibus transmarinis[10] adiens cum quendam militem super inventione thesauri convenire voluisset[11] quem solent sibi principes vendicare tanquam in hoc eis singulariter natura deserviat, ve-

Is crowned again. 17 April.

[1] *quas*] quæ. B.D.

[2] *fuerunt*] fuerant. B.

[3] *veniam*] Interlined in A. apparently in the author's hand and in darker ink than the text.

[4] *me*] Interlined in A. above *te* subpuncted. Nota. in marg. A. D.

[5] *quas*] quæ. B.D.

[6] *ejus*] suus. B.D.

[7] *in manu sua*] om. B.D.

[8] *Notingham, Beuuer*] Notyngham, Buuer. B. Notingham, Beuuerwyk. D.

[9] Secunda Coronatio Ricardi, anno Domini 1195. in marg. B. in hand (a).

[10] *partibus transmarinis*] partes transmarinas. B.

[11] *voluisset*] noluisset. B.

A.D. 1199. ritus ille severitatem regiam ad vicecomitem Lemonicensem[1] aufugit. Hic rogatus a rege ut militem redderet cum parere neglexisset, rex terras ejus ingressus castrum quoddam quod Caluca dicitur juxta Lemonicas[2] obsedit ac fortiter impugnavit. Septimo vero kalendas Aprilis, dum castrum considerando circuiret inermis, subito balistæ jaculo in humero sinistro lethali confoditur vulnere. Incipiens autem periclitari tres[3] ordinis Cisterciensis accessisse[4] fertur abbates, quibus omnia peccata sua confessus est cum singultu et fletu, quos cum ad injungendam sibi pœnitentiam salutarem cerneret dixit: Ut placetur[5] Justus Judex Deus pœnam purgatoriam usque ad Judicii Diem libens pro meis delictis admittam. Rex autem sagittam balistæ manibus propriis de brachio extraxit, ferrum vero toxicatum in brachio dimissum est. Rex autem suos coram se convocans et castello concesso præcepit adduci coram se illum qui eum ita vulneraverat, dicens[6] illi: Quod est nomen vestrum? Qui respondit: Vocor a nativitate Bertram Gordoun.[7] Et rex illi: Quare facinus illud in me commisisti ut me occideres, ex quo quod nunquam malum tibi feci? Qui respondit: Domine rex, licet corpori meo malum non fecisses,[8] patrem meum et duos fratres meos trucidasti; propterea mercedem tibi reddo lætatus; etiam si moriar vindicor. Et rex: Jesus qui pro nobis omnibus nasci mori[9] dignatus est te[10] condonet, et ego quantum meæ expetit[11] fragilitati. Prolem vero non habens Johannem reliquit hæredem terrarum et

He is wounded before the castle of Chalus-Chabrol. 26 March.

He sends for Bertram Gordon, who wounded him,

whom he pardons.

He acknowledges John as his successor.

[1] *Lemonicensem*] Lenionicensem. B.

[2] *Lemonicas*] Leonicas. B.

[3] *tres*] The first word of f. 66 v. A. headed: De Rege Ric.

[4] *accessisse*] accessisse. B. corrected into *accersisse* by erasure. accersisse D.

[5] *placetur*] placeatur. D.

[6] *vulneraverat, dicens*] vulnerabat et dixit. B. vulneraverat et dixit. D.

[7] *Gordoun*] Gordouñ. B.

[8] *fecisses*] feceris. D.

[9] *mori*] et. præm. B.D.

[10] *te*] tibi. B.D.

[11] *expetit*] expedit. B.

regni.[1] Thesauri vero sui tres partes Othoni nepoti suo, in regem Romanorum jam [2] coronato, contulit, reliquam servientibus que [3] pauperibus divisit. Tandem dierum XI. vexatus languore die duodecimo, octavo idus Aprilis, ætatis suæ anno XLII. et regni sui IX., Incarnationis Domini MCXCIX., diem clausit extremum; cujus animæ propitietur Deus. Amen.[4] A.D. 1199. His death. 6 April.

Coronationi hujus Ricardi Judæi contra prohibitionem se gerentes, rege indignante ejecti sunt et male tractati; ædificia eorum incenderunt et bona eorum diripiunt XXX. circiter in eadem civitate. Christiani [5] etiam per totam civitatem neci traditi. Per alias quoque civitates consimilis furor exarsit donec præsumptorum audacia regio jussu premeretur. A.D. 1189. Massacre of the Jews.

Isti [6] Ricardo Willielmus rex Scociæ fecit homagium de regno suo apud Cantuariam, anno Domini MCXC. William of Scotland does homage.

Iste Ricardus rex Angliæ et Philippus rex Francorum Terram Sanctam cum innumerabili plebe expetierunt, sed rex Francorum parvum vel nihil profuit et ideo repatriavit. Anno Domini MCXCII. castrum invictissimum infra tres dies obsidionis accepit et plus quam XV.M. Saracenorum captivavit. Joppen etiam multis milibus Saracenorum peremptis in ejus potestatem redegit. A.D. 1191. Philip returns home. A.D. 1192. Joppe taken.

Anno Domini MCLXXXVII. et anno hujus Ricardi secundo [7] in civitate Parisius mulier quædam nobilis peperit monstrum habens unicam formam humanam in medio, in extremis duplicem, sed duo capita et IIII. brachia et IIII. pedes. In anterioribus vero virilia membra, in posterioribus muliebria. A.D. 1187. A monster.

Iste Henricus [8] anno sui regni tertio torneamenta primus in Anglia exerceri concessit.

Anno Domini MCLXXXXV. et regni sui anno IX. exiit edictum ut omnium rerum venalium commercia per universum regnum ejus unius mensuræ et ponderis essent.

---

[1] An erasure in marg. A.

[2] *jam*] om. D.

[3] *que*] et. B.D.

[4] *Amen*] om. D. An erased paragraph of thirteen lines follows in A., of which the words which are still legible prove it to have been almost verbally the same as the paragraph which commences the reign of king John. The intervening recapitulation was evidently interpolated by the author after the commencement of the succeeding reign had been written; another proof, if further proof were needed, that we have in A. the first draught of the work.

[5] *Christiani*] ? Judæi.

[6] Homagium regis Scottorum. in marg. B. α.

[7] *anno hujus Ricardi secundo*] a° h r^{i} s° B. α.

[8] Sic in orig.

A.D. 1196. Anno Domini MCLXXXXVI. et anno regni sui X. pugna inter Anglicos et Wallenses in pago Herford juxta castellum Matildis. Corruerunt ex Wallensibus II.M. et multi capti et carcerati, ex quibus una nocte CXXVII. obierunt, et ex Anglicis tantum tres corruerunt.

Iste Ricardus rex VIII. idus Aprilis, anno Domini MCXCIX. sepultus est apud Fontem Ebrardi, secus pedes patris sui Henrici Secundi, hujusmodi habens epitaphium;—

Epitaph of Richard I.

Hic, Ricarde, jaces, sed mors, si cederet armis,
Victa timore tui cederet arma tuis. } Versus.

Cor autem ejus delatum est Rothomagum et in ecclesia Beatæ Mariæ majori translatum. [B. α.]

CAP. CXIII.

[A.D.] 1168. A.D. Supplement to the reign of Henry II.

NON[1] enim[2] prætereundum est quod omisimus de gestis Henrici Secundi et de incidentiis quæ suo tempore eveniebant; præcipue[3] quod suo tempore florebat abbas Joachim in Calabria, qui super Apocalypsim et Libros Prophetarum commenta conscripsit. Prædixit etiam Terram Sanctam adeuntibus quod minime proficerent. Tradunt etiam de isto quod quasi prophetice effigiavit mores, actus, et numerum virorum Apostolicorum qui post venturi forent in ecclesia Dei.

Petrus Comestor flourishes.

Floruit his diebus[4] in Francia Petrus Comestor[5] qui utriusque Testamenti historiam contexuit, quæ vocatur Scholastica Historia; scripsit et Allegorias Veteris et Novi[6] Legis et Sermones insignes.

A.D. 1164. Translation of the bodies of the Three Magi.

Eo tempore Radulfus Coloniensis episcopus corpora Trium Magorum per Fredericum imperatorem destructa de Mediolano ad Coloniam transvexit, quæ primitus

---

[1] *Non*] The first word of f. 67. A. headed: Henricus II.

[2] *enim*] om. D.

[3] Abbas Joachim. in marg. A. D.

[4] *diebus*] temporibus. B.

[5] Petrus Comestor. in marg. A. D.

[6] *Novi*] Novæ. B.

de terra Persida ad Constantinopolim fuerunt transvecta, et postea per Sergium papam usque Mediolanum sunt deducta.[1] A.D. 1164.

Hoc etiam[2] anno, scilicet ab Incarnatione Domini[3] MCLXX., martyrizatus est[4] Beatus Thomas Cantuariæ archiepiscopus; de quo quidam metrice sic ait:—[5]

Verses on the martyrdom of Thomas A Beket.

Pro[6] Christi sponsa, Christi sub tempore, Christi
In templo, Christi verus amator obit;
Anno milleno centeno septuageno
Anglorum primas corruit ense Thomas.
Quis moritur? Præsul: Cur? Pro grege:[7] Qualiter? Ense:
Quando? Natali: Quis locus? Ara Dei.

Post cujus mortem cœpit sors regis Henrici multum attenuari, sub quo rege gloriosus martyr occubuit.

Rege enim[8] Henrico de Hibernia revertenti[9] cœperunt revelationes fieri potissime de vita sua corrigenda. Primo per quendam senem apud castrum de[10] Kaerdife[11] in Orientalibus Walliæ Dominica in Albis post Pascha, ubi post missam auditam dum rex ad equum suum festinaret, astitit subito vir quidam flavus, tonsura rotunda, macer, staturæ[12] procerus, tunica alba indutus, nudisque pedibus; regem[13] Theutonica lingua sic affatur: Godde saue the kyng.[14] Deinde prosequitur eadem lingua: Salutat vos Christus et pia Mater ejus, A.D. 1172. Supernatural warnings to Henry II.

[1] *deducta*] De his tribus regibus plenius in fine libri patebit. add. B.

[2] *etiam*] om. B.

[3] *Domini*] om. B.

[4] *est*] fuit. D.

[5] Thomas ar[ch]i[episcopus] obiit. in marg. A. part having been cut off for binding. In marg. D. uninjured.

[6] Versus in marg. D.

[7] *grege*] rege. B.D.

[8] *enim*] om. B.D. De rege Hen[rico]. in marg. A. the rest having been cut off for binding. In marg. D. uninjured.

[9] *revertenti*] revertente. B.D.

[10] *castrum de*] om. B. Pro die Dominica. in marg. B.

[11] *Kaerdife*] Kaerdif. B.D.

[12] *staturæ*] statura. B.D.

[13] *regem*] que. add. B.D.

[14] *Godde saue the kyng*] God' saue the kyng[9]. B. God saue the kyng. D. The *th* is the Anglo-Saxon "hard" in A.D.

A.D. 1172. Johannes Baptista, et Petrus, mandantes firmiter ne per terras[1] ditionis vestræ fiant mercatus aut aliqua opera servilia diebus Dominicis, exceptis his quæ ad usum ciborum pertinent; quod si feceris, quicquid feceris infelici fine complebis. Rex autem Gallice dixit militi qui frænum dextrarii sui tenebat: Inquire a rustico an ista somniaverat an non. At dum miles hoc Anglice seni exponeret, subjecit ille lingua priori: Sive somniaverim vel non, vide quis dies sit hodie, quia nisi vitam emendaveris, et cætera monita benigne susceperis tales ante annum revolutum audies[2] rumores quod usque ad exitum vitæ tuæ[3] inde dolebis.

A.D. 1173. His dictis, vir ille disparuit. Infra annum III. filii regis, scilicet,[4] Henricus, Galfridus, et Ricardus, ad regem Franciæ contra patrem proprium diverterunt. Rex Scociæ et multi comites Angliæ contra regem insurrexerunt, multæque aliæ præmunitiones[5] divinitus fiebant, sed hæc omnia parvipendebant.[6]

Secundo præmunivit[7] eum quidam Hibernicus cum adjectione signorum secretissimorum.

Tertio quidam miles Philippus nomine de Est Derbi natus, transito Mari Gallico exposuit regem[8] in Normanniam VII. articulos quos emendaret, quod si faceret multa sibi honorifica acciderent; si non, infra annum ignominiose moreretur. Tria[9] prima fuerunt quæ sua in coronatione juravit, scilicet, de ecclesia Dei manutenenda, de legibus justis statuendis, et ne aliquem quamvis reum sine judicio damnaret. Quatuor fuerunt de hæreditatibus injuriose ablatis restituendis;[10] de

---

[1] *terras*] terrā. B.

[2] *audies*] Interlined in A.

[3] *tuæ*] Interlined in A.

[4] *scilicet*] om. B.D.

[5] *præmunitiones*] præmonitiones. B.D.

[6] *parvipendebant*] parvipendebat. B.D.

[7] *præmunivit*] præmonuit. B.D.

[8] *regem*] regi. B.D.

[9] [D]e. VII. articulis. in marg. A. Entire in marg. D.

[10] *restituendis*] om. B. added in marg. B. *prima manu*.

justitia sine pretio facienda, de reddendis stipendiis ministrorum, de Judæis de terra sua expellendis, relinquendo eis partem pecuniæ eorum unde possent abire. Sed rege non correcto, insurrexerunt in eum multi magnates, primo filius suus primogenitus nuper coronatus cum duobus fratribus suis, et rex Franciæ cujus filiam rex Angliæ coronatus desponsaverat, patrem cœperunt inquietare. A.D. 1173.

Rex[1] pater reginam suam de adulterio criminavit, quare ipsam incarceravit; causa vero fuit quia concubinam subterraneo tenuit, nomine Rosmundam, et[2] ipsam abutendo. Huic namque puellæ speciosissimæ fecerat apud Wodestoke mirabilis architecturæ cameram ne a regina Alienora facile deprehenderetur. Hæc vero tandem apud Godestou[3] juxta Oxoniam in capitulo monialium sepulta, tale[4] habet epitaphium: A.D. 1179. Henry imprisons Queen Eleanor.

Hic jacet in tumba Rosa mundi, non Rosa munda;
Non redolet sed olet quod redolere solet. Epitaph on "Fair Rosamond."

Cap. CXIV.

Anno mclxxiii., annuente rege, conventus Cantuariæ eligit[5] fratrem Ricardum Douoriæ priorem in archiepiscopum Cantuariæ, qui sub anno pontificatus sui undecimo apparuit ei Dominus in visu dicens: Tu dissipasti bona ecclesiæ meæ, et ego de terra extirpabo te. Qui perterritus infra octo dies obiit. A.D. 1173. Richard of Dover el. archbp. of Canterbury.

Crucis obsequium quod rex Henricus coram duobus cardinalibus cum juramento dudum promiserat post triennium prosecuturum, lapso triennio Romam misit[6] ad protelandum frustratorie fallax propositum, sub eo

---

[1] [D]e Rosmunda. in marg. A. Entire in marg. D.

[2] *et*] om. B.D.

[3] *Godestou*] Godstowe. B. Godestowe. D.

[4] *tale*] talem. A. the *m* subpuncted. talem. B.D. Versus. in marg. A.D. De Rosmunda. in marg. B.

[5] *eligit*] elegit. B.D.

[6] *misit*] miserat. D.

A.D. 1177. tamen colore quod tria monasteria in Anglia fabricaret, quod et isto modo fecit: Canonicos de Waltham sæculares ad vitam regularem redegit, moniales de Ambresburi[1] quas prius extirpaverat reparavit. Receperat autem rex Henricus filiam Lodowici regis Franciæ in custodiam, ut eam filio suo Ricardo comiti Pictauiæ copularet in matrimonium, verumtamen amasia regis Rosmunda mortua rex illi Francigenæ[2] abusus est. Ricardus filius regis ista audiens, puellæ abrenuntiavit. Rex enim[3] proposuerat illam duxisse in uxorem, si inter ipsum et reginam aliquo colore divortium[4] posset machinari. Ob quam causam cardinalem Huglinum vocavit in amicitiam, ut sic favore Francigenarum potiretur et filios proprios exhæredaret. Ingruente bello inter ipsum et regem Franciæ petiit puellam quam prius habuerat ad usum Johannis filii sui in uxorem una cum comitatibus Pictauiæ et Andegauiæ, sed rex Franciæ sprevit litteras suas et eas Ricardo comiti inspiciendas transmisit, propter quæ[5] inexecrabile odium inter patrem Henricum et filium Ricardum de cætero est exortum.

A.D. 1188. Richard Cœur-de-Lion discards Adelais daughter of Louis VII.

[A.D.] 1177. A violent hail-storm.

Hoc anno tempestas grandinis die Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ blada et pascua concussit, arbores dilaceravit, aves et animalia quadripeda[6] ictu occidit, homines quamplurimos suffocavit.

[A.D.] 1186. Discovery of the bodies of king

Hoc anno inventum est sepulchrum regis Arthuri cum uxore sua regina[7] in uno sarcophago conjuncti; corpus regis in parte superiori et reginæ[8] in inferiori, cum una tabula plumbea hanc scripturam continente:

---

[1] *Ambresburi*] Ambresbury. B. and in marg. B. Ambresbury. D.

[2] *illi Francigenæ*] illa Francigena. B.D.

[3] *enim*] autem. B.

[4] *divortium*] divorsorium. B.D.

[5] *quæ*] quod. B.

[6] *quadripeda*] quadrupedia. B.D.

[7] Sepulchrum regis Arthuri inventum est Glastoniæ. in marg. A. De sepulchro regis Arthuri. in marg. B.

[8] *reginæ*] regina. B.

Arthurus rex [1] cum uxore sua regina [2] jacent hic sepulti.[3] Inventi enim fuerunt in valle Auallonis in fundamento porticus Novi Monasterii ad profunditatem XVI. pedum consepulti propter metum Saxonum, ne aliquod inhonestum corpori mortuo inferrent, quia lethaliter eum oderant. Tempore regis Ricardi inventus [4] fuit. A.D. 1186. Arthur and his Queen at Glastonbury.

Hoc anno obiit Henricus filius, omnibus amabilis, affabilis, gratiosus. Creditur tamen quod non de regno gaudebat [5] quia contra patrem suum guerram tenuit; sic quidam de eo metrice ait: [A.D.] 1182. A.D. Death of Prince Henry. 11 June. A.D. 1183. Verses in his praise.

Omnis [6] honoris honos, decor et decus urbis
et orbis,[7]
Militiæ splendor, gloria, lumen, apex;
Julius ingenio, virtutibus Hector, Achilles,
Viribus Augustus, moribus ore pacis.

Hoc [8] anno Jesus Christus visus est in aere eo modo quo pendebat in cruce, apud Dunstaple ab hora meridiana usque ad noctem.[9] [A.D.] 1188. A.D. Legend.

Cap. CXV.

Rex Johannes Henri[ci] Secundi filius junior ex Alianora [10] ducissa Aquitanniæ, non debito modo sed in testamento fratris sui Ricardi successor designatus, post mortem Ricardi anno supradicto regnum obtinuit [11] Anglicanum. Hic a patre [12] Henrico Johannes Sine Terra nominatur. Fratres enim sui amplissime dita-

---

[1] *rex*] Interlined in A.
[2] *regina*] om. B.D.
[3] *jacent hic sepulti*] jacet hic sepultus. B.
[4] *inventus*] inventū. B.
[5] *gaudebat*] Added below the line in A. and referred to its place in the text by a caret.
[6] Versus. in marg. A.D.
[7] *et orbis*] Added beyond end of verse in B. *prima manu.*
[8] *Hoc*] Aoc. B.
[9] A blank of six lines follows in A.
[10] *Alianora*] Alienora. B.D.
[11] *obtinuit*] tenuit. B.
[12] Nota. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1199. bantur, puta Henricus in regem Angliæ coronatus, Ricardus ducatu Aquitanniæ ditatus, Galfridus ducatu Britanniæ insignitus; Johannes vero omnino nihil habebat, quamquam postea comitatibus fuerit ditatus,[1] in Normannia Moritoniæ, in Anglia Glouerniæ; unde Ricardo mortuo, Dominica infra Octabas Ascensionis, Johannes frater Ricardi ab archiepiscopo in regem Angliæ ungitur[2] et coronatur, assistente prælatorum, comitum, baronum, aliorumque nobilium multitudine copiosa. Erat enim dies coronationis VII. kalendas Julii.[3]

Coronation of John. Ascension-Day.

[A.D.] 1202. A.D. Sickness in England.

Hoc anno magna ægritudo regnabat in Anglia.[4]

A.D. 1203. John loses Normandy.

Primo[5] anno regni sui perdidit ducatum de Angon[6] et dominium Normanniæ. Eodem anno prior et conventus Cantuariæ, sede episcopatus vacante, elegerunt virum nobilem, generosum, idoneum, optime literatum, omnibus moribus decoratum, Stephanum de Langedoun[7] nominatum, in archiepiscopum,[8] curiæ Romanæ cardinalis,[9] quæ electio a domino papa accepta est et confirmata, in quadam civitate nomine Viterbia. Cumque rex audisset quæ facta fuerant, priorem et conventum continuo misit in exilium, firmiter præcipiendo quod nulla litera a sede Apostolica clam vel palam in aliqua parte Angliæ missa deberet ab aliquo acceptari. Papa[10] igitur monitiones et præcepta regis audiente amicabiliter sibi transmisit quod archiepiscopum

A.D. 1207. Stephen Langton cons. 17 June.

John expels the monks. 14 July.

The Pope expostulates with the king,

---

[1] *Galfridus . . . . . fuerit ditatus*] om. B. [Ga]lfridus etc. insig[nitus] . . . nihil [habe]bat . , [fu]erit ditatus. added in marg. B. by another hand; the bracketed parts having been burnt off.

[2] *ungitur*] inungitur. B.D.

[3] *VII. kalendas Julii*] corr. VI. kalendas Junii.

[4] The last word of f. 68 v. A.; below it is an erasure as of a catch-word, in A.

[5] The first word of f. 69. A. headed: De Rege Johanne.

[6] *Angon*] Angoñ. B. Angow. D.

[7] *Langedoun*] Langedoñ. B.D.

[8] *in archiepiscopum*] Interlined in A.

[9] *cardinalis*] cardinalem. B.D.

[10] MCCII. CI. followed apparently by a cross in marg. A. Below it is: hunc annum, with a cross. Both faintly traced in a different hand from the text; followed by a cross.

sineret in officio suo ministrare et quod priorem et conventum Cantuariæ in habitationibus propriis modo[1] ecclesiastico et regulari sicut decet religiosis[2] vivere permitteret. Rex autem omnia mandata Apostolica viis et modis renuens, pro qua re erga dominum papam in magnam indignationem incurrebat, dicente papa se non præceptis paternis ecclesiasticis obedire. A.D. 1207. who refuses to assent to his requests.

Anno MCCI. et regni sui II. obsedit unum castrum in Normannia[3] in quo erat nepos ejus Arthurus et fortis æmulus; quo obsesso tempore brevi ad deditionem coegit, quibus captis ad loca Angliæ diversa concaptos transmisit. Ob istam victoriam multi putant Fatum Merlini de eo sermocinare ubi dicit: Capite[4] leonis coronabitur; et iterum: Linguas taurorum abscindet et colla rugientium onerabit catenis. A.D. 1202. P. Arthur is taken prisoner. 31 July.

Anno MCCIII. et regni sui IIII. claruit Sanctus Dominicus[5] in Hispannia unde[6] natus erat, sanctitate et religione insignis, qui in villa quæ Karologa dicitur ex piis natus parentibus et religiose[7] nutritus.[8] Anno MCCIIII. et regni sui quinto Constantinopolim cum capi[9] ab homine de civibus multi impossibile reputabant,[10] tum propter civitatis fortitudinem, tum propter prophetiam quam habebant antiquam; nempe prophetatum erat quod deberet capi per Angelum et ideo per hominem capi non credebant; sed hostibus per murum ubi Angelus depictus erat intrantibus se per æquivocationem "Angeli" deceptos cognoverunt. A.D. 1203. S. Dominic flourishes. Constantinople taken. 18 July.

Anno[11] MCCVI. et regni sui VII. clericus quidam, nomine Gwalo,[12] a Constantinopoli rediens faciem[13] A.D. 1206. A relic of S. John

---

[1] *modo*] more. B.D.
[2] *religiosis*] religiosos. B.D.
[3] *Normannia*] Noña. A.
[4] Merlinus. in marg. A.
[5] Sanctus Dominicus. in marg. A.D.
[6] *unde*] ubi. B.
[7] *religiose*] religione. B.
[8] *nutritus*] est. præm. D.
[9] *capi*] *non* is placed over this word in D.
[10] *impossibile reputabant*] non putarent. B. reputarent. D.
[11] De capite Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. in marg. A.D.
[12] *Gwalo*] Gualo. B.
[13] *faciem*] et. præm. D.

A.D. 1206. Baptist brought to Amiens.

Sancti Johannis Baptistæ secum deferens, Ambianis eam reposuit in ecclesia cathedrali.

Election of John Grey archbishop of Canterbury.

Rex Johannes anno MCCVII. regni VIII.[1] episcopum Norwicensem volens esse archiepiscopum in omnibus fovebat;[2] Petrum de Cantilupo[3] et Falconem de Cornhille[4] monachos[5] Stephani[6] archiepiscopo faventibus[7] et omnes prælatos majores et minores, omnibus rebus confiscatis in exilium redegit.

A.D. 1207. Expulsion of the supporters of Stephen Langton.

CAP. CXVI.

A.D. 1208. Message of the pope to the king.

DOMINUS papa[8] regi Angliæ nuntiavit per episcopos quod auctoritate papali ipsum[9] præciperent quod archiepiscopum Stephanum et priorem et conventum Cantuariæ in officiis suis ministrare permitteret et[10] præceptis nollet [paternis][11] acquiescere plenam potestatem terram Anglicanam interdicendi eis commisit. Episcoporum nomina sunt hæc: Willielmus Londiniensis, Eustachius Elyensis, Walterus Wigorniensis, Ægidius Herfordensis episcopi. Lachrymantes et ejulantes et coram rege genua flectentes ut præceptis papalibus inclinaret, bullas interdicti illi ostendentes.[12] Rex autem nec papæ nec præceptis nec episcoporum precibus voluit inclinare sed errorem suum semper ampliavit.

England

Tunc[13] factum est interdictum in Anglia per præ-

---

[1] *anno* MCCVII. *regni* VIII.] Interlined in A. in the author's smaller hand. anno 1207. et regni sui 8. B.

[2] *fovebat*] favebat. B.D.

[3] *Cantilupo*] Cantelupo. D.

[4] *Falconem de Cornhille*] Faleonem de Cornhull'. B. Falconem de Cornhulle. D.

[5] *monachos*] Interlined in A. in the author's smaller hand.

[6] *Stephani*] Stephano. B.D.

[7] *faventibus*] faventes. B.D.

[8] *papa*] Erased in A. in the first line of f. 69 v., headed: De Rege Johanne.

[9] *ipsum*] ipsi. D.

[10] *et*] et si. B.D.

[11] *paternis*] Interlined in A. in the author's smaller hand and subpuncted. paternis. B.D.

[12] *ostendentes*] ostendebant. D.

[13] Interdictum Angliæ. in marg. A.B.D.

dictos episcopos generaliter anno Domini MCCVIII. et ostia ecclesiarum omnium per Angliam et Walliam clausa sunt muris lapideis et per haias spinetas extra muros.

A.D. 1208, placed under an Interdict. 23 March.

Post illam pronuntiationem statim rex per ministros suos in manu sua[1] accepit temporalia illorum episcoporum, scilicet, possessiones, redditus, et omnes eorum substantias, ita quod nihil haberent nisi solummodo victum et vestitum et hoc pro minori, et totum residuum cedebat in usum regium. Episcopi vero ore uno omnes raptores, prædones, regis ministros manus temerarias vel nefarias in bonis ecclesiasticis transmittentes contra voluntatem possessorum vel possessoris, excommunicarunt. Episcopi etiam malitiam regis nefandi timentes et damnum sentientes ad archiepiscopum Stephanum in partibus transmarinis adierunt, et gravamina sua ei notificaverunt. Archiepiscopus vero in Angliam illos remittens eis succursum in brevi tempore affuturum.[2]

John seizes the temporalities of the bishops of London, Ely, Worcester, and Hereford, who excommunicate the ministers of the king, and withdraw from England.

Episcopis redeuntibus, rege[3] de eorum adventu audiente misit ad eos comites, barones, multos[4] regni proceres ad tractandum de pace inter ipsum et ipsos et archiepiscopum Stephanum et priorem et conventum Cantuariæ et omnem clerum, promittens omnia spoliata[5] restituere et quod de cætero omnes libertates ecclesiasticas sustineret, et statuta Sancti Edwardi sine læsione observaret. Tractat[i]o de ista concordia redacta est in scriptis indentatis et regi ostensum[6] est. Rex ad omnia consensit, præter de spoliatorum restitutione facienda,[7] et hoc petiit a cartis abradi. Episcopi vero prædicti cum juramento asserentes[8] se

John treats with them for a reconciliation.

He refuses to make restitution.

---

[1] *in manu sua*] om. B.
[2] *affuturum*] promisit. add. B. D.
[3] *rege*] et. præm. B.D.
[4] *multos*] et. præm. B.D.
[5] *spoliata*] spolia. B.D.
[6] *ostensum*] ostensa. B.D.
[7] De pace tractanda. in marg. A.D.
[8] *asserentes*] asseruerunt. B.D.

A.D. 1208. He sends for Stephen Langton.

nec verbum nec syllabam de cartis deponere. Cartis sigillatis et concordia facta, rex misit illos IIII. episcopos post archiepiscopum Cantuariæ Stephanum, ut in Angliam accederet, et in ecclesia sua ministraret; pro conductu archiepiscopi [1] rex misit Gilbertum Peitwyne,[2] Willielmum de la Bruer, justitiarios suos, et Johannem filium Hugonis baronem, ita ut salvo itinere

A.D. 1209. iret et rediret, et sic venit Cantuariam. Rex vero [3] venit in obviam ad quamdam villulam, quæ vocatur Chilham,[4] propius Cantuariæ [5] noluit accidere. Rex voluntatem mittens [6] per concilium suum archiepiscopo. Ipse vero cum concilio suo super illo tractans, videns [7] voluntatem regis cartis non concordare consilium regis omnino remisit inconcessum. Rex indignatus Londoniis adiit, archiepiscopus usque Romam properans, et sic sine amore discesserunt.

A.D. 1210. Expulsion of Jews.

Eo [8] anno, scilicet MCCX., multi Judæi in Anglia captivantur, et bonis eorum confiscatis sub edicto publico de terra expelluntur.

John exacts a heavy tribute for the reduction of the rebels in Ireland.

Eo tempore Hibernici guerram movent erga regem, pro qua re magnum exigebat ab Anglia tributum ad ipsos debellandos; populus autem multum resistens aliquam tamen summam ei concesserunt, scilicet [9] trescentas marcas et III.

A.D. 1212, S. Francis of Assisium renounces the world.

Hoc anno, scilicet, MCCXII., Sanctus Franciscus, natione Tuscus de civitate Assisii,[10] post lasciviam juvenilis ardoris et negotiis [11] sæcularium vanitates mente compunctus abiit et vendidit omnia quæ habuit

---

[1] The first word of f. 70. A. headed: De rege Johanne.

[2] *Peitwyne*] Peytwyne. D.

[3] *vero*] om. B.

[4] *Chilham*] Chillam. B.D.

[5] *Cantuariæ*] Cantuar⁹. A. Cant⁹. B. Cantuariam. D.

[6] *mittens*] misit. B. suam misit. D.

[7] *videns*] et. præm. B.D.

[8] Incidentia. in marg. A.D.

[9] *scilicet*] om. B.D.

[10] Sanctus Franciscus. in marg. A.B.D.

[11] *negotiis*] negotiarum. D.

et ad reparationem cujusdam ecclesiæ obtulit et soli Deo paupertate voluntaria servire decrevit: ab hoc anno usque ad[1] præsens ordo eorum pululavit. A.D. 1212.

Rex[2] interim in ira accensus omnes terras archiepiscopi et prioris, possessiones, prædia,[3] in manu[4] sunt capta, boscagia combusta, prata diruta, et omnes promoti vel beneficiati per archiepiscopum vel priorem in exilium[5] redegit,[6] præcepit etiam quod si aliqua bulla papæ[7] fuerat[8] in Anglia per aliquem directa quod statim nuntius cum litera deberent incendi. A.D. 1209. Fury of the king against the papal party.

Rogavit insuper monachis[9] Cisterciensis ordinis ut aliquod subsidium illi[10] impenderent, qui respondentes[11] se nihil posse dare sine consensu generalis capituli,[12] rex igitur erga totum ordinem indignatus sinistra contra illos machinavit.[13] Omnes vero monachi malitiam regis dubitantes monasteria et omnia[14] bona sua relinquentes in partibus transmarinis[15] aufugerunt. Collectis bonis per regis ministros computantur ad summam IX.M. marcarum et CCC. marcas,[16] et totum cedebat in usum regium. A.D. 1210. Oppression of the Cistercians.

Papa malitiam nefandi regis audiente duos legatos ad pacem reformandam inter regem et sanctam ecclesiam transmisit, scilicet, Pandulfum et Durandum, qui regem[17] excommunicarent nominatim, nisi velit præceptis papalibus obedire;[18] præceptum enim papæ est hoc: Quod[19] rex a persecutione cessaret ecclesiastica [A.D. 1211.]? The pope sends the legates, Pandulph and Durand, to effect a reconciliation between the king and the church.

[1] *ad*] in. D.
[2] Nota. in marg. D.
[3] *prædia*] et. præm. D.
[4] *manu*] ejus. add. B.D.
[5] *exilium*] auxilium. D.
[6] *redegit*] sunt redacti. B.D.
[7] *papæ*] Partly erased in A.
[8] *fuerat*] fuit. B.
[9] *monachis*] monachos. B.D.
[10] *illi*] sibi. B.D.
[11] *respondentes*] responderunt. B. D.
[12] *generalis capituli*] totius concilii generalis. B. generalis concilii. D.
[13] *machinavit*] machinatur. D.
[14] *omnia*] om. D.
[15] *partibus transmarinis*] partes transmarinas. D.
[16] *IX.M. marcarum et CCC. marcas*] 9,300 marcarum. B.D.
[17] *regem*] om. D.
[18] *obedire*] ebedire. A.
[19] *Quod*] The first word of f. 70 v. A. headed: De Rege Johanne.

[A.D. 1211.]? et quod emendaret injuria viris ecclesiasticis illata,[1] et quod restitutionem faciat de bonis injuriose ablatis; et ad istam rem confirmandam papa dedit legatis bullas authenticas, et si rex nollet monitis illorum[2] acquiescere vinculo excommunicationis ipsum innodarent.

Legati[3] in Angliam festinantes portum Taneth arripuerunt[4] una die Jovis mense Aprili, IIII. idus, anno Domini MCCXI.; ipsi[5] ulterius procedentes regem[6] apud Northamptoun[7] invenientes ipsum in his verbis salutarunt:[8] Mandatum domini papæ in his verbis nos vobis insinuamus, pro pace sanctæ ecclesiæ et terræ[9] reformanda: Primo nos petimus obedientiam Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ et sancto patri nostro domino Clementi. Secundo, pacem petimus fieri inter sanctam ecclesiam et vos. Tertio, plenam restitutionem bonorum ecclesiasticorum asportatorum et[10] injuriose asportatorum.

Reply of John to their message. Rex autem petitionem eorum auscultans, ait: Erga[11] priorem et monachos suos vestram concedo plenarie petitionem; pro ipso clerico aspersorio Stephano de Langedon, volo quod papa mihi mittat pro eo literas precarias pro aliquo beneficio sibi competenti[12] et forte expediet; si vero præsumat in terram accedere[13] tanquam archiepiscopus, licet secum portet III. bullas vel IIII., circa collum suum colligatas[14] ligari faciam funem in collo[15] ejus, sine læsione bullarum, et ipsum in

---

[1] *injuria . . . illata*] injuriam . . . . . illatam. B.

[2] *illorum*] eorum. B.

[3] Mandatum papæ. in marg. A. the latter word erased. In marg. D. uninjured.

[4] *arripuerunt*] applicuerunt. B.

[5] *ipsi*] illi. B.

[6] *regem*] et. præm. B.D.

[7] *Northamptoun*] Northamptõ. B.D.

[8] *salutarunt*] salutaverunt. B.D.

[9] *terræ*] terra. B.

[10] *asportatorum et*] om. B.

[11] Responsio regis. in marg. A. D.

[12] *competenti*] competente. B.

[13] *accedere*] ascendere. B.D.

[14] *colligatas*] ligatas. B.D. Derisorium. in marg. A.D.

[15] *in collo*] circa collum. B.D.

sublimi suspendam, sicut tali prælato convenit, et coronam ejus per scapulas radam, ut cæteri metum habeant[1] in terra mea contra voluntatem meam promoveri. [A.D. 1211.]?

Ad hæc Pandulfus: Prælatum legitime electum sine causa rationabili sancta ecclesia nunquam degradat, sed rebelles castigat et deviantes revocat. Ad hæc rex: Quomodo mihi verba minatoria in facie mea imponitis? Ad hæc Pandulfus: Non, sed intima nostri cordis nos vobis annuntiamus et sacra monita Apostolica ostendimus, scientes quod sententia in te lata jam locum tenet; quia si ante istud tempus fuerat[2] conditionalis, hoc est, nisi emendaveris, de cætero est sine conditione, quia spes de correctione non est.

The king's subjects absolved from their allegiance.

Absolvimus[3] omnes et singulos ante istud tempus tibi ministrantes, comites, barones, milites, armigeri,[4] et cujuscumque conditionis homines, ita quod tecum non communicent de cætero. Insuper omnes et singulos tecum communicantes et istam sententiam in te latam præscientes, illos separamus a Filio Beatæ Virginis, et ab omni sacramento ecclesiastico, et eorum fiat habitatio cum Datan et Abiron,[5] quos terra vivos deglutivit, cum quibus sit[6] habitatio tua perpetua.

Absolvimus etiam omnes homines cujuscumque conditionis ab omni servitio sæculari, homagio, feodo tibi debito, et ad istam rem[7] pronuntiandam[8] plenam concedimus potestatem istis episcopis in Anglia: Wyntoniæ et Norwici episcopi;[9] in Scocia: Rofensis et Sarum episcopi;[10] in Wallia et Hybernia: Meneuiæ et Landa-

---

[1] *habeant*] hãent. A. corr. hẽant.

[2] *fuerat*] fuit. B.

[3] Excommunicatio papæ in regem. in marg. A. the second word erased. In marg. D. uninjured.

[4] *armigeri*] armigeros. B.D.

[5] *Abiron*] Abirõn. B.

[6] The first word of f. 71. A. headed: De Rege Jo.

[7] *rem*] om. B.D.

[8] *pronuntiandam*] pronuntiationem. B.D.

[9] *Wyntoniæ et Norwici episcopi*] Wynton. et Norwic. epi. A. Winton. et Norwic. epis. B. Wyntoñ et Norwyc' epis. D.

[10] *episcopi*] episcopis. B.D.

[A.D. 1211.]?

uensis episcopi.[1] Insuper præcipimus omnibus hominibus harum provinciarum prænominatarum, sive nuntii sive mercatores[2] sive peregrini, quod ipsi promulgent istam sententiam in te latam per totam Christianitatem.

Excommunication of all persons affording him support.

Excommunicamus etiam auctoritate papali omnes et singulos favorem, amorem, consilium, vel subsidium tibi præstantes, ita quod error tuus firmius roboretur.

Absolvimus etiam omnes[3] homines[4] tibi molestia, gravamina, nocumenta, dispendia, vel quæcunque infelicia inferentes, prohibendo tamen sub pœna excommunicationis prælibatæ ne quis vel qui[5] manus temerarias in corpus tuum nefandum usque ad occisionem mittant.

Ad hæc respondit rex: Ulterius quid potestis facere? Pro certo habeatis quod in eventu vestro si scivissem vos talia nova mihi intulisse, ordinassem vos[6] more meo priusquam negotium vestrum quicquam[7] ostendissetis; respondentes legati et[8] dicentes se esse promptos pro jure ecclesiæ mortem sustinere.

Cap. CXVII.

Cruelty of the king.

Rex autem furore commotus misit ballivis suis, vicecomitibus, forestariis, carcerariis, et omnibus suis ministris ut omnes legati vel aliquo[9] atachiamento perstricti[10] coram se forent præsentati. De quibus quosdam[11] eruit oculos, alios abscidit brachia, alios

---

[1] *episcopi*] episcopis. B.D.
[2] *mercatores*] fuerint. add. B.D.
[3] *omnes*] om. D.
[4] *homines*] cujuscumque conditionis ab omni servitio sæculari. add. B.
[5] *qui*] aliqui. B.D.
[6] *vos*] contra. præm. B.D.
[7] *negotium vestrum quicquam*] negotii vestri quicquid. B.D.
[8] *et*] om. B.D.
[9] *aliquo*] om. B.
[10] *perstricti*] astricti. D.
[11] *quosdam*] quorundam. D.

nares, vel[1] aures, vel tibias, vel pedes, vel aliquo alio modo deformavit, et totum ad terrorem legatorum. Inter quos incarceratos erat[2] unus clericus qui falsator monetæ fuerat approbatus. Rex autem de persona sua notitiam habens ad terrorem Pandulfi jussit eum excoriari, putans legatum revocare sententiam suam ob terrorem damnatorum. Pandulfus audiens clericum damnatum prosiliit currens post candelam accensam, qua posset excommunicare omnes manus violentas in clericum injecentes.[3] Rex vero post legatum currebat et sibi clericum tradidit; legatus vero clericum emendatum dimisit in pace.

[A.D. 1211.]?

Orders a clerk approved of coining to be flayed.

Cap. CXVIII.

Legati vero Pandulfus et Durandus ad papam reversi rebellionem, injuriam, inobedientiam regis nefarii sibi revelarunt; papa multum ingemiscens super malitiam illius concessit per totam Angliam illo anno unam missam in ecclesiis conventualibus celebrare,[4] ad viaticum faciendum pro debitum humanæ naturæ solventibus, et quod quælibet ecclesia conventualis[5] possessionata[6] haberet[7] in suo monasterio fontem sacræ[8] baptismatis, quod ante illud tempus inter religiosos non fuit usitatum; utitur[9] in monasteriis pro privilegiis exercendis.[10]

Departure of the legates.

Papa vero sciente voluntatem integram regis maledicti, regi Franciæ specialiter transmisit ut colligeret exercitum copiosum ad regem Angliæ debellandum. Rex igitur regnum amittere dubitans, et mala suffocari

A.D. 1212. The pope incites the king of France to invade England.

---

[1] *vel*] alios. B.D.

[2] *erat*] fuit. B.D.

[3] *injecentes*] injicientes. B.D.

[4] *celebrare*] celebrari. D.

[5] *conventualis*] conventuali. A. the *s* having been erased.

[6] *possessionata*] possessianata. B.

The first word of f. 71 v. A. headed: De Re. Jo.

[7] *haberet*] habeat. B.

[8] *sacræ*] sacri. B.

[9] *utitur*] An erasure precedes in A.

[10] *exercendis*] habendis. D.

A.D. 1212. morte, misit ad dominum papam nuntios speciales, promittendo ipsum[1] esse subjectum Deo et Sanctæ Ecclesiæ, et omnibus domini papæ præceptis et quæcumque[2] ordinaverit pro salute animæ suæ in omnibus obedire.

A.D. 1213. Pandulph sent to England. Audiente papa regis nuntios iterum Pandulfum misit in Angliam ad voluntatem regis indomiti audiendam; expectaverat enim rex legatum in Cantuaria per quindenam.

Cap. CXIX.

The king is reconciled to the church. 13 May. Maii die xiii. rex juravit Pandulfo et cautionem juramenti illo[3] contradidit, quod sustineret monita ecclesiastica et obediret Deo et Sanctæ Ecclesiæ Romanæ et domino papæ Innocentio III. in omnibus quæ pro salute animæ suæ Pandulfus legatus sibi notificaret. Primus articulus fuit, quod erat inobediens Deo et Sanctæ Ecclesiæ, pro qua re excommunicatus fuit. Secundus, quod noluit permittere ministros ecclesiæ[4] in monasteriis suis ministrare, et quod electum capituli Cantuariæ et a domino papa acceptum noluit acceptare. Tertius, quod contra Dei voluntatem et contra omnia jura priorem Cantuariæ cum monachis suis exulavit, et omnia bona domus mobilia et immobilia infiscavit. Quartus, quod bona iiii. episcoporum prænominatorum[5] spoliavit, nemora combussit, agriculturam devastavit. Quintus, quod abbatias Cisterciensis ordinis omnino detrusit, ita quod monachi patrias transmarinas petierunt. Unde dicunt legati quod pro istis et pro[6] innumerabilibus aliis separatur a consortio Divino, et Diabolo ejusque Angelis in corpore et anima nisi resipiscat liberatus est. Rex ista audiens

[1] *ipsum*] se. B. seipsum. D.
[2] *quæcumque*] quibuscumque. B. D.
[3] *illo*] illi. B.D.
[4] *ecclesiæ*] Sanctæ. præm. B.D.
[5] *prænominatorum*] supradictorum. B.
[6] *pro*] om. B.D.

et in fletum rumpens coram legato et regni proceres[1] promisit se satisfacere in omnibus secundum eorum dispositionem et in omnibus obedire. A.D. 1213.

Magnates regni jurati sunt coram legato quod ipsi regem compellerent ad juramentum suum observandum. Statim flexis genibus et omnibus audientibus regnum et coronam domino papæ obtulit in his verbis: He surrenders his kingdom to the pope, 15 May.

Cap. CXX.

Ego,[2] Johannes, resigno regnum meum et coronam regni Angliæ in manus domini papæ Innocentii III. in præsentia Pandulfi legati et cardinalis presbyteri, ita quod de cætero ego et hæredes mei et successores de domino papa teneant regnum Angliæ in perpetuum. Reddendo annuatim ad cameram domini papæ pro regno Angliæ tributum M. marcarum[3] pro omni actione et demanda. Oath of fealty.

Pandulfus nomine papæ coronam in sua potestate suscepit, et per V. dies nomine[4] seysinæ secum detinuit. Omnia prædicta et ordinata Johannes rex carta sua confirmavit et corroboravit in his verbis:

Cap. CXXI.

Omnibus[5] Christi fidelibus tam remotis quam propinquis, universitati vestræ notifico quod cum ego Johannes, Dei gratia Angliæ rex, excommunicatus[6] a Curia Romana proper meam maximam inobedientiam erga Deum et Sanctam Matrem Ecclesiam Romanam, unde propter prædictam offensam[7] emendandam nihil His charter of submission.

[1] *proceres*] proceribus. B.D.
[2] Resignatio regni. in marg. A.D.
[3] *marcarum*] marcas. B.D.
[4] The first word of f. 72. A. headed: De Rege Johanne.
[5] Carta regis. in marg. A.D.
[6] *excommunicatus*] fui. add. B.D.
[7] *offensam*] defensionem. B. offensionem. D.

A.D. 1213. His charter of submission.

habemus pretiosius quam regnum nostrum Angliæ Walliæ, Hyberniæ, et corpus nostrum, licet vilissimum, humiliare nos volimus[1] et domino papæ obedire et Illi qui usque ad mortem factus est obediens, per consilium et consensum[2] nostrorum procerum, archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, abbatum, priorum, comitum, baronum, militum, liberorum, et omnium fidelium nostrorum concedimus Deo et Sanctæ Mariæ et Apostolis ejus Petro et Paulo et etiam Sanctæ Matri Ecclesiæ Romanæ et Sancto patri nostro papæ Innocentio III., et suis successoribus, totum jus hæreditarium, dominium, patronagium, quod habuimus vel habere poterimus in regno nostro Angliæ, Walliæ, Hiberniæ, pro salute animæ nostræ et antecessorum nostrorum et omnium defunctorum fidelium, ita quod nos Johannes et hæredes nostri, et successores nostri recipiemus, tenebimus et pro posse sustinebimus nostrum regnum prænotatum de Deo et Matre ejus et de[3] Sancta Ecclesia Romana tanquam ad firmam de domino papa Innocentio III., faciendo eidem fidelitatem in forma prædicta. In præsentia discreti viri Pandulfi domini papæ legati, et illam eandem formam papæ faceremus si in ejus præsentia fuissemus.

Cap. CXXII.

Obligamus etiam nos et hæredes nostros et successores ad illud homagium [et] fidelitatem domino papæ et suis successoribus sine aliqua dilatione temeria[4] faciendum. Et volumus etiam quod de cætero non vendicemus aliqua jura vel beneficia in ecclesiis vacantibus. Et ad majorem rei securitatem et ad istam

[1] *volimus*] volumus. B.D.

[2] *consensum*] The *con* interlined in A. assensum. B.D.

[3] *de*] om. B.

[4] *temeria*] temeraria. B.D.

obligationem roborandam de nostris redditibus speciali- A.D. 1213.
bus ad coronam regni tangentibus, salvo denario His charter of sub-
Sancti Petri Sanctæ[1] Romanæ Ecclesiæ debito,[2] ad mission.
cameram domini papæ per annum M. marcas argenti concedimus et ordinamus ad duos anni terminos reddituros;[3] ad festum Paschæ D. marcas, et ad festum Sancti Michaelis D. marcas, pro omnibus rebus coronam et regnum tangentibus; et ad hoc roborandum nos et successores nostros inperpetuum obligamus sub hac forma quod si nos vel hæredes nostri vel nostri successores præsumptuose vel temerarie seu malitiose contra prædictam cartam surreximus[4] nisi incontinenti emendaverimus, regnum, coronam et omne jus regium[5] inperpetuum perdamus; et hæc nostra carta obligatoria, firma sit, et stabilis, sicut[6] Deus me adjuvet, et sua Sancta Evangelia.

Cap. CXXIII.

Carta ista confirmata et cum obligatione roborata John sends letters of recall to the archbishop of Canterbury, etc. 24 May.
Johannes recepit coronam de manibus Pandulfi et statum post archiepiscopum literas misit speciales. Insuper misit post omnes exulatos[7] quod in pace redirent ad omnia bona sua suscipienda et de bonis eorum injuriose allatis[8] plenam promittens[9] restitutionem faciendam.

---

[1] *Sanctæ*] om. B.D.

[2] *debito*] An *et* erased follows in A.

[3] *reddituros*] reddend'. B.D.

[4] *surreximus*] insurrexerimus. B. surrexerimus. D.

[5] *regium*] regni. D.

[6] *sicut*] sic. B.D.

[7] *exulatos*] The first word of f. 72 v. A. headed: De Rege Johanne.

[8] *allatis*] ablatis. B.D.

[9] *promittens*] promisit. B.D.

Cap. CXXIV.

A.D, 1213. Reception of Stephen Langton by the king. 20 July.

Eventione archiepiscopi cognita in Angliam rex et Pandulfus, comites et[1] barones, milites et libere tenentes Wintoniæ archiepiscopo in obviam adierunt.[2] Rex visa facie episcopi pronus in terram cecidit, adorans et dicens: Pater reverende,[3] veniam peto de malis erga te commissis, et in terra nostra benevenemini in pace satisfactionem promittendo.

Archiepiscopus regem sumens in brachia lachrymosis amplexibus ipsum[4] deosculans et usque ad ostium ecclesiæ deducens, et[5] eum ibi a vinculo excommunicationis absolvens.[6] Acta sunt hæc in die Sanctæ Margaretæ Virginis, anno Domini MCCXV.

Eodem die archiepiscopus missam celebravit, et rex unam marcam auri obtulit. Missa dicta, exulati sunt reconciliati in terris suis sine aliqua retentione cujuscumque rei. Hoc[7] tamen quod papæ promissum fuerat nullo modo laxari deberet priusquam de bonis raptis a clericis et laicis plenam faceret restitutionem; et dum ipse fecisset homagium domino papæ per unum certum legatum quem papæ missurus erat[8] in Angliam ad homagium de rege capiendum.

Legatus igitur Pandulfus a rege et archiepiscopo Romam adeundi licentiam accepit. Ipso egresso archiepiscopus magnum celebravit concilium in quo ordinatum fuit quantum quisque peteret pro damnis a rege sibi impositis.

Archiepiscopus enim petiit a rege III.M. marcarum; prior Cantuariæ mille marcas. Omnibus aliis clericis et laicis pro omnimodis damnis suis XV.M. marcarum

---

[1] *et*] om B.
[2] *adierunt*] venerunt. D.
[3] *reverende*] venerande. D.
[4] *ipsum*] eum. B.
[5] *et*] om. B.D.
[6] *absolvens*] absolvit. B.D.
[7] Nota. in marg. A.D.
[8] *erat*] esset. D.

ad dividendum inter eos per visum archiepiscopi et aliorum proborum et legalium virorum. A.D. 1213.

John does homage to the pope for his dominions.

Eodem anno Nicholaus presbyter cardinalis, Sancti Martini titulus, v. kalendas Octobris venit ad homagium de rege Johanne capiendum in his verbis:

Ego[1] Johannes rex Angliæ, Walliæ, Hiberniæ, facio fidelitatem et homagium[2] Deo et Sanctæ Ecclesiæ Romanæ et domino Innocentio papæ III., per manus Nicholai cardinalis et ejusdem [papæ][3] pœnitentiarii, ad tenendum regnum Angliæ de eo sine detractione aliqua inperpetuum. Reddendo domino [papæ][3] Innocentio Tertio annuatim mille marcas argenti sibi et suis successoribus canonice intrantibus. Teste meipso, apud domum Militiæ Templi juxta Douoriam, anno regni nostri XIIII. Duravit tamen interdictum, clero illud relaxari nolente quousque de ablatis satisfactum esset ad plenum.[4] Acta sunt hæc anno[5] MCCXIII. et regni sui ut prius.

Cap. CXXV.

A.D. 1214. A parliament.

Anno[6] MCCXIIII. convocatum est parliamentum Londoniis præsidente archiepiscopo cum toto clero et tota secta laicali. Per domini papæ preceptum illa obligatio præfata quam rex domino papæ fecerat cum fidelitate[7] et homagio relaxatur omnino VII. die Julii. Et in crastino pulsatæ sunt campanæ per totam civitatem Londoniarum et infra III. dies sequentes per totam Angliam missæ celebrantur. Duravit autem inter-

Relaxation of the Interdict. [7 July.]

[1] Homagium regis domino [papæ]. •in marg. A. the last word having been erased. In marg. D. uninjured.

[2] *et homagium*] om. B.

[3] *papæ*] Erased in A.

[4] *ad plenum*] om. B.D.

[5] *anno*] Domini. add. B.D.

[6] The first word of f. 73. A. headed: De Rege Johanne. See Cottoni Posthuma. Lond. 1651, p. 209.

[7] Relaxatio interdicti. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1214. dictum annos VI. et ab Annuntiatione Dominica usque ad septimum diem mensis Julii.

A.D. 1215. Grant of the castle of Malmesbury to Walter Loryng, abbot.

Anno sequenti, hoc est, Incarnationis MCCXV. et regni sui ultimo Johannes rex concessit castrum Malmesburiæ[1] ad dirimendum cuidam abbati ejusdem loci, nomine Walterus Loryng.[2]

The barons demand a redress of grievances from the king. 6 Jan.

Eodem anno comes Cestriæ Randulfus regem increpavit quod violaverat tot filias et uxores nobilium et[3] procerum regni sui et maxime quia leges et statuta quas[4] Sanctus Edwardus ordinaverat omnino dirimebat; pro qua re regem a regno privare cogitassent. Quia omnes regni proceres coram legato Pandulfo jurati fuerunt ad regi obsistendum[5] nisi jura et statuta confirmaret et sustineret.

Magna Carta conceded. 15 June.

Tandem, Deo volente, juxta unam villam quæ vocatur Stanes, in uno prato quod appellatur Rowmed,[6] concordati sunt, non duravit concordia per aliquot tempus.

A.D. 1216. The barons send to Louis, son of the king of France, who lands at Sandwich. 21 May.

Pace confracta et prostrata, guerra redacta et exaltata, communitas Angliæ in Franciam miserunt post Lodowicum regis Philippi filium, qui manu armata Angliam veniens honorifice ab eis susceptus est. Rex Johannes talia nova audiens Normanniam misit, unde talis exercitus sibi[7] missus est quod vix Anglia homines regis et Lodowici posset sustinere. Unus autem Normannus fuit pessimus tyrannus, cui nomen Falco de Breut; hic cum exercitu suo ecclesias, monasteria, abbatias, omnino devastavit, ita quod ex utraque parte patria fere fuerat adnihilata. Rex autem multa de-

The ravages of Fulk de Breaute.

---

[1] *Malmesburiæ*] MMb[2]. A. MM. B.D. Walterus Loryng. in marg. A.D. with a rude drawing of a castle in rubric. in marg. A.

[2] *Walterus Loryng*] Waltero Loryng[o]. B.D.

[3] *et*] om. B.D.

[4] *quas*] quæ. D.

[5] *obsistendum*] resistendum. D.

[6] *appellatur Rowmed*] vocatur Rowmede. B.D.

[7] *sibi*] illi. D.

derat castella alienigenis ob auxilium ab eis flagi- A.D. 1216.
tandum.

Lodowicus[1] Roffensem veniens die Lunæ post Pente- Louis takes Rochester, 1 June;
costen castrum obsedit et infra triduum lucratus est; is received
qui omnes extraneos inventos suspendi fecit; proximo in London, 2 June.
die Jovis Londoniis[2] veniens cum honore susceptus He takes Winchester, 25 June.
est et per VIII. dies moratus.[3] Die Martis proxima
cepit castra Raygate, Guldeford, Farnham, et civitatem
Wyntoniæ in crastino Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Re-
vertendo autem cepit castrum de Odiam. Gwalo[4]
legatus a domino papa missus in auxilium regis Jo-
hannis contra Lodowicum plurimum conabatur obsis-
tere excommunicando[5] et interdicendo, sed parum
profuit,[6] populo fere toto in odium regis sui provocato. Feeling of the people.
Tanta enim erat hominum multitudo baronum et
Lodowici quod rex nesciret qua parte diverti.[7]

Disposuerat autem se rex[8] versus Lincolniam et John arrives at Swinesvenit per quendam[9] abbatiam Cisterciensis ordinis head.
nomine Swinesheued,[10] et ibi per dies duos moratus 12 Oct. The story of his death by poison.
est.[11] Postera autem[12] die sedit ad mensam et pane
sibi apposita[13] petiit a monacho sibi ministranti[14] cujus
ponderis fuerat panis et quanti valoris. Respondit
monachus: Pondus trium librarum, valor unius oboli.
Respondit rex cum juramento et dixit si viveret per
dimidium annum quælibet libra panis valeret libram
argenti. Rex suspirans et ingemiscens de bono foro
panis propter multitudinem extraneorum contra ipsum
venientium cum Lodowico, monachus vehementer ad-
mirans super verbo regis diligenter eum intuetur; vi-

---

[1] Lodowicus. in marg. A.
[2] *Londoniis*] Londoniam. B.D.
[3] *moratus*] ibi moratus est. D.
[4] Gwalo. in marg. A.D.
[5] The first word of f. 73 v. A. headed: De Rege Johanne.
[6] *profuit*] profecit. B.D.
[7] *diverti*] diverteret. B.D.
[8] *rex*] om. B.
[9] *quendam*] quandam. B.D.
[10] *Swinesheued*] Swynesheued. B. Swyneshed. D.
[11] Nota. in marg. A.D.
[12] *autem*] om. D.
[13] *apposita*] apposito. B.D.
[14] *ministranti*] ministrante. B.D.

A.D. 1216. dens rex vultum monachi mutatum eum sic affatur: O monache, quid me intueris; propter verba quæ olim vobis dixi? Habeas pro certo quod illa verissima erunt verba durante vita mea et sanitate. Monachus suspirando cogitabat: Fiant dies tui pauci et sanitas tua in mortem redundat. Et continuo discessit ab eo cogitans quomodo propositum regis impediret.

Monachus gardinum adiens unum invenit bufonem [1] teterrimum, qui eum capiens et [2] in pelvim ponens [3] atque cum cultello suo stimulans [4] donec suum venenum evomebat, qui illud diligenter colligens et [5] in ciphum regis apposuit. Monachus [6] cum abbate de proposito suo consulens et confitens omnia abbati narravit a principio et voluntarium assumpsit [7] martyrium et prophetiam quam Cayphas contra Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum in Passione [8] sua prophetavit libenter sustinuit, hoc est: Melius est quod [9] moriatur unus quam tota gens pereat; [10] abbas Deum laudans [11] cum lachrymis præ gaudio et constantia monachi.

Monachus autem ab abbate suo absolutus intrepidus calicem cum veneno regi præsentavit, ipsumque more Saxonico salutavit, et ait: Wassayl, et subjunxit, quod tota Anglia gauderet de illo Wassayl. Rex dedit responsum: Drinkhayl, et monachus læto vultu ciphum hausit; quo hausto regi obtulit,[12] qui libenter potavit et statim toxicatus est. Monachus infirmariæ adiens continuo crepuit medio, et diffusa sunt omnia viscera ejus; qui tempore perpetuo tres habet monachos pro eo celebrantes ex consensu capituli generalis.

A mass always said for the monk.

---

[1] *bufonem*] bubonem. B.D.
[2] *et*] om. B.D.
[3] *ponens*] posuit. B. imposuit. D.
[4] *stimulans*] stimulavit. B.D.
[5] *et*] om. B.D.
[6] *Monachus*] autem. add. B. D.
[7] *assumpsit*] sumpsit. B.D.
[8] *Passione*] possioe. A.
[9] *quod*] ut. B.
[10] *pereat*] p. A.
[11] *laudans*] laudavit. B.D.
[12] De morte regis Johannis. in marg. A.D.

Rex aliquantulum in visceribus aggravatus jussit venire monachum qui sibi potum dederat, dixeruntque: Mortuus est. Rex[1] autem sentiens mortem imminere dixit: Vere nunc cognosco prophetiam illius monachi dicentis quod tota Anglia gauderet de illo Wassail. Jussit ergo rex[2] movere et hernesia[3] sua trussare, et venit ad castellum de Newerk, et ibi infra triduum in festo Sanctæ Luciæ obiit, cum regnasset annis XVII., mensibus V., diebus X. Sepultusque[4] est Wigorniæ inter sacrosancta corpora Oswaldi et Wlstani beatorum pontificum coram altari summo in medio. A.D. 1216. He dies at Newark. 19 Oct.

Hic rex abbatiam Cisterciensis ordinis Wyntoniensi dicœcesi quæ vocatur Bellus Locus fundavit, et abbatiam virginum monalium de Godestow fundavit in Lincolniensi dicœcesi pro anima Rosmundæ quæ aliquando[5] patris sui fuerat[6] concubina; propter quod putant nonnulli ad illum referri Fatum Merlini, ubi dicit: Virginea[7] munera virginibus donabit, promerebitur inde favorem tonantis et inter beatos collocabitur. The abbey of Beaulieu founded by John.

Hoc anno confirmatur ordo Prædicatorum a papa Honorio successore Innocentii. Hoc anno data est Fratribus Prædicatoribus in Tolosa[8] ecclesia Sancti Romani,[9] ubi[10] et prima ordinis domus est fundata.

Iste Johannes rex Isabellam filiam comitis Engolismi duxit in uxorem et cum illa comitatum suum suscepit, genuitque ex ea filium Henricum, qui, natus Wyntoniæ die Sancti Remigii anno Domini MCCVII., postea regnavit: genuitque ex eadem Isabella alium filium, nomine Ricardum, comitem Cornubiæ, qui

---

[1] The first word of f. 74. A. headed: De Re. Jo.

[2] *rex*] A caret faintly traced follows in A. In the margin opposite is traced by another (?) hand the word '*mens.*' i.e. mensam. mensam. add. B.D.

[3] *hernesia*] harnesia. B.

[4] *que*] om. B.

[5] *aliquando*] om. B.

[6] *fuerat*] fuit. B.D.

[7] Fatum Merlini. in marg. A. D.

[8] *Tolosa*] Toloso. B.

[9] *Romani*] Roni. A.B.

[10] *ubi*] v. A. underlined in rubric as if it were a numeral. Confirmatio Fratrum Prædicatorum. in marg. A.D.

postea fuit rex Alemanniæ, necnon et filias quamplures. Hic in anno Domini MCCII. apud Castrum Burabel cepit Arturum nepotem suum filium Gaufridum comitis Britanniæ Minoris, cui hæreditas Angliæ competebat, in festo Advincula Sancti Petri, et cum eo multos inimicos Pictavienses qui ibi erant, eosque arctæ custodiæ mancipavit. Arturum vero occidit, et sororem suam Alienoram in castro Bristolli pepetuo carceri mancipavit. Divulgata postmodum morte Arturi Philippus rex Franciæ, anno Domini MCCIIII., totam Normanniam et comitatum Britanniæ una cum comitatibus Andegaviæ, Pictaviæ, et Cenomanniæ, suæ ditioni subjecit.

Anno Domini MCCXIIII. orta est dissensio inter ipsum regem et suos barones, unde multi nobilium Angliæ quibus præfuerunt Galfridus de Maundevile, Robertus filius Walteri, Willielmus Marescallus junior, indignati quod rex injuriose eos opprimeret et libertates suas violenter auferret, invicem confœderati insurgere cœperunt contra regem, et civitatem London de consensu civium fere per triennium contra eum tenuerunt.

Iste Johannes rex Angliæ homo crudelis et immisericors fuit.

The visions of Peter of Pomfret (or Wakefield).

Tempore istius Johannis floruit Petrus de Ponte-Fracto[1] cui vero (?) apud Eborum, et etiam ad Pontem-Fractum apparuit Christus ad missam in manibus sacerdotis in forma pueri speciosissimi, respexitque in eum et insuffavit et ait; Pax, Pax, Pax, multaque quæ ventura erant prædixit ei, dixitque: Dic summis pontificibus et omnibus ad quos venire poteris ut se cautius custodiant, et solicitius instruant populum vitare peccata et agere bona opera, alioquin in proximo veniet Divina ultio super eos, quia in multis milibus hominum non inveniuntur tres Christianam professionem dignis operibus imitantes. Item vox cœlestis facta est ad prædictum Petrum et in multis instruxit eum. Item raptus est corpore permanente tribus diebus et tribus noctibus, quo tempore ostensa sunt ei in cœlestibus et in infernalibus gaudia beatorum et tormenta malorum; ibi plenius instructus est quid docere et facere debuisset et jussus non omittere. Increpatus[2] est etiam quod aliquantulum tardasset, unde et pœnitentia injuncta est ei XXXIII. annis abstinere a carnibus et vinis, quam districte tenuit; quoad vixit Verbum Dei indesinenter importuneque prædicavit quibuscumque potuit cum summa auctoritate et prædicare jubebat. Item Johanni regi Angliæ XII. annis ante passionem suam dicebat quod ei Divina dignatio ad regendum regnum Angliæ XIIII. annos concessit; sed quia idem rex tribus annis plus regnavit adversus virum Sanctum iratus quasi falsum dixisset, et quod falsum prophetavit et quam-

His prophecy with reference to the length of John's reign.

[1] Petrus de Ponte-Fracto. in marg. B. α.

[2] De prædicatione Verbi Dei. in marg. B. α.

vis multa vera prædiceret antea, primo tamen fecit eum trahi, demum laqueo suspendi, non advertens quod XIIII. annis regnasset liber et III. annis servus, id est, tributarius Romanæ Ecclesiæ; sic enim prædicta prophetia vera esse comprobatur. Istius Johannis devenit homo legius Willielmus rex Scociæ apud Lincolniam super montem arduum in conspectu omnis populi, et juravit ei fidelitatem super crucem Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi de vita et de membris et terreno honore suo. Et quia filiam suam comiti Bononiæ præter ipsius assensum desponderat, venit Jonannes rex Berwicum et construxit contra eum castrum Berwici et devastavit patriam, deditque Willielmus rex Johanni regi duas filias, scilicet, obsides, et juravit ei fidelitatem, sicque recesserunt. (B. α.)

A.D. 1213. His execution.

CAP. CXXVI.

HENRICUS filius Johannis regis ex Isabella filia comitis Engolinensis annum ætatis agens fere decimum, post patrem defunctum, anno Domini MCCXVI. sublimatur in regem,[1] præsentibus Gwalone legato cum episcopis Jocelino Bathoniæ, Willielmo Couentreiæ, aliis prælatisque pluribus, regina Isabella cum comitibus, Willielmo Marescalli, Willielmo de Ferariis, magnaque aliorum nobilium multitudinem,[2] per Petrum Wyntoniensem episcopum, quinto kalendas Novembris, in die Apostolorum Symonis et Judæ, in ecclesia Beati Petri Glocestriæ[3] inter monachos inunctus solemniter coronatur.

A.D. 1216. Coronation of Henry III. 28 Oct.

Secundo mense coronationis suæ Gwalo legatus Bristolliæ magnum convocavit concilium et ibi fecit omnes majores Angliæ regi novo fidelitatem et homagium jurare et ipsum tanquam regem honorare. Ibi enim interfuerunt de Anglia episcopi IX. et multi alii prælati et de[4] regni proceribus[5] congregatio maxima.

The Council of Bristol. 12 Nov

[1] Henricus IIII. in marg. A.
[2] *multitudinem*] multitudine. B.D.
[3] *Glocestriæ*] Gloucestriæ. B.D.
[4] *de*] om. B.D.
[5] *proceribus*] proceres. B.D.

A.D. 1216. The legate excommunicates the Welsh Louis retires to London. He takes the castles of Hertford, and Berkhampstead.

Walenses vero regi noluerunt obedire, unde Gwalo indixit eis sententiam excommunicationis.

Lodowicus, regis Francorum filius, cum jam castrum Douoriæ obsedisset diebus XV. nihil[1] proficiens Londoniis[2] revertitur. In die Sancti Leonardi redditur ei Turris; ille progrediens cepit castrum de Hertford[3] in[4] die Sancti Andreæ Apostoli, et castrum de Berkhamsted in die Sanctæ Luciæ. Exinde acceptæ sunt treugæ inter regem Henricum et Lodowicum usque ad festum Fabiani et Sebastiani martyrum. Durante treuga concordati sunt in[5] hac forma: quod Lodowicus pro omnibus damnis suis M. marcas argenti acciperet, et sic de Anglia recederet, quod et factum est. Ante vero captionem treugarum commissum est prœlium magnum juxta Lincolniam, ubi rex Henricus triumphavit et Lodowicus fugatus est, et quadringenti milites sunt de suis occisi cum multitudine peditum copiosa, anno[6] MCCXVII, et regni regis II.

A.D. 1217. Defeat of the French at Lincoln. 20 May.

A.D. 1218. Translation of S. Wulstan.

Circa annos[7] Domini MCCXVIII. corpus Beati Wlstani in capsam transfertur argenteam, in festo Beati Clementis martyris, et Pandulfus venit in Angliam et Gwalo revocatur ad curiam anno regis III.

A.D. 1219. Jerusalem taken.

Anno Domini MCCXIX. urbs Ierosolomitana, licet inexpugnabilis videretur, capta est a Coradino filio Safadini qui et Turci; credunt namque Dominum Jesum magnum fuisse prophetam et de virgine natum ingentia[8] miracula que[9] fecisse, prout in eorum legitur Alcorano. Eodem anno nonis Novembris[10] capta est Damiata civitas a domino Pelagio Albanensi episcopo solerter agente; est autem illa civitas Ægypti

Capture of Damietta.

---

[1] *nihil*] et. præm. B.

[2] *Londoniis*] Londois. A.

[3] *Hertford*] Herford. B. Herforde. D.

[4] The first word of f. 74 v. A. headed: De Rege Henr. IIII.

[5] *in*] sub. D.

[6] *anno*] Domini. add. D.

[7] *annos*] annum. B.D.

[8] *ingentia*] que. add. B.D.

[9] *que*] om. B.D.

[10] Nota. in marg. A.D.

maritima in terra Gessen[1] inter Ramesse et Campo- A.D. 1219.
thaneos sita ante murale totius Ægypti, Eliopoleos olim dicta. Acta sunt hæc anno regis Henrici filii Johannis IIII.

Cap. CXXVII.

Non tamen prætereundum est parliamentum Lon- A.D. 1217.
doniis tentum secundo regis anno, in quo confirmata est carta patris sui quam comitibus et baronibus et toti communitati Angliæ concesserat in le Roumede[2] juxta Stanes; pro qua confirmatione concessum est[3] regi de toto populo Anglicano de qualibet carucata terræ II. solidos in subsidium regis novi. In illo parliamento Hubertus de Burgo[4] factus est regis custos specialis et justitiarius Angliæ.

A parliament at London; Magna Carta confirmed.

Ordinatum est etiam quod omnes alieni de Anglia forent expulsi, et quod rex caperet in manu sua omnes terras et tenementa, prata, pascua, boscagia, castella, oppida, et omnia quæcumque pater suus dederat alienis. Audiens autem istud[5] statutum ille nefandus, sacrilegus, malignus Normannus Fulco[6] de Breut castellum de Bedeford fortiter munivit cum hominibus et victualibus contra regem Henricum. Quod cum rex obsedisset et in Assumptione cepisset, A.D. 1224.
omnes infra concaptos suspendi fecit. Falco vero in latibulis habitabat, jam actus in exilium tenuem in Gallicis[7] queritando victum etiam capitis reclinatorium [15 Aug.] 14 Aug.

Surrender of Bedford castle.

---

[1] *Gessen*] Gesen̄. B. Gesen. D.

[2] *Roumede*] Rowmede. B.

[3] *concessum est*] concessi sunt. B.D.

[4] *Hubertus de Burgo*] Written in B. over *Hubertus Burgo*, which is erased, in a larger hand than that of text.

[5] *istud*] illud. B.

[6] *Fulco*] Falco. A. the cross-stroke having been erased.

[7] *Gallicis*] The *c* interlined in D.

A.D. 1225. Fulk de Breaute banished.

non habebat,[1] tandem Coventrensi in una ecclesia inventus[2] qui continuo captus, Angliam tempore perpetuo abjuravit MXXIIII.[3]

[A.D.] 1230. S. Paul's Cathedral struck by lightning.

Hoc anno[4] episcopus Londoniæ missam celebravit in ecclesia Sancti Pauli; quo etiam tempore dies obnubilatur, sol obtenebratur, coruscationes et tonitrua et magnus fœtor ita illam ecclesiam infestavit, quod homines ab ecclesia fugerunt[5] et episcopum solum cum ministris suis reliquerunt.[6]

A.D. 1220. Translation of S. Thomas of Canterbury. 7 July.

Anno[7] MCCXX. inchoatum est novum opus Westmonasterio, cujus in propria persona rex primum posuit lapidem. Nonis Julii corpus Beati Thomæ martyris Cantuariæ archiepiscopi,[8] præsentibus Henrico rege et Pandulfo legato cum multitudine prælatorum et procerum, translatum est.

The see of Old Sarum translated to Salisbury.

Hoc anno clerici qui infra castrum Sarum manebant una cum sede episcopali ad villam episcopi quæ Nova Sarum[9] dicitur et, procurante negotium episcopo, et privilegio civitatis a rege donata est[10] Henrico, transferuntur, eodem vero rege annuente.

A.D. 1224.

Anno[7] MCCXXIIII. confirmat[us][11] est Ordo Fratrum Minorum.

A.D. 1227.

Anno[7] MCCXXVI.[12] discordia facta[13] est inter regem

---

[1] *habebat*] habuit. B.

[2] *inventus*] est. præm. B.D.

[3] *MXXIIII*] anno Domini 1224. B.D. The *cc.* is faintly traced in marg. A.

[4] *Hoc anno*] Anno 1230. B. Anno Domini 1230. D.

[5] *fugerunt*] fugerent. D.

[6] *Hoc anno . . . . reliquerunt*] This passage, including the marginal date, is added in the author's hand in A. as a foot note to the page ending with the words: *Angliam tempore perpetuo abjuravit.* MXXIIII. There is no mark of reference to the text. It is placed in B.D. between the entry for A.D. 1227, and that for A.D. 1232.

[7] *Anno*] Anno Domini. D. The first word of f. 75. A. headed: De Rege Henr. IIII.

[8] Translatio Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi. in marg. A.D.

[9] Mutatio Veteris Sarum in Novum Sarum. in marg. A.D.

[10] *donata est*] donato. B.D.

[11] *confirmat*] confirmatū. A. the *ū* having been erased. confirmatus. B.

[12] *MCCXXVI*] MCCXXVII. A. the first I being subpuncted. Incidentia. in marg. A. 1227. B.D.

[13] *facta*] orta. B.D.

et barones propter Hubertum de Burgo quem barones invito rege vellent ab officio suo suspendere. Anno sequenti[1] Ela comitissa Sarum, relicta Willielmi de Longa Spata, monachos Cartusienses fundatos per maritum suum apud Heythorp[2] transtulit usque Henton[3] Batoniensis diœcesis. A.D. 1227. Dispute with the barons. Ela, Countess of Salisbury, removes the Carthusians of Heythorp to Henton.

Anno[4] MCCXXXII. clarebat in Anglia magister Edmundus de Abyndona, cancellarius Sarum, qui per[5] tempus aliquot factus est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. Eodem anno Ela comitissa Sarum fundavit abbatiam de Lakok Sarum diœcesis.[6] A D. 1232. Ela, Countess of Salisbury, founds Laycock abbey.

Anno[4] MCCXXXIIII. Edmundus consecratus est archiepiscopus, et Hugo episcopus[7] Lincolniæ obiit. A.D. 1234.

CAP. CXXVIII.

HENRICUS rex Anglorum anno MCCXXXV., ministrante Edmundo archiepiscopo apud Cantu[a]riam,[8] Alianoram[9] filiam secundam comitis[10] Prouinciæ desponsavit. Anno sequenti Ela comitissa facta est monacha apud Lakok,[11] quæ post pauca facta est abbatissa et finem fecit saluberrimum. A.D. 1236. Henry III. marries Eleanor, daughter of the Count of Provence. 14 Jan.

---

[1] *sequenti*] sequente. B.

[2] *Heythorp*] Heytrop. B.D.

[3] *Henton*] Hentoñ. B.D.

[4] *Anno*] Anno Domini. D.

[5] *per*] post. D. Sanctus Edmundus. in marg. D. Iste Sanctus Edmundus nomen Jesu in fronte sua et circa cor quotidie digito suo scripsit; unde contigit hoc miraculum, quod sociis suis ludentibus hic solus ambulabat per amœna loca quid salubre meditando vel orando; cui puer miræ pulchritudinis subito apparuit ludensque præibat, cujus decorem et venustatem admirans interrogavit eum dicens: Fili, quisnam es? At ille: Ego sum ille cujus nomen imposuisti hodie in fronte tua, statimque disparuit. These words are in a foot note in B. just below this entry. in the hand (α). The addition in that hand for A.D. 1235 comes just below it.

[6] Lakok. in marg. A. Abbathia de Lakok. in marg. D.

[7] *episcopus*] om. D.

[8] *Canturiam*] Cantuariam. B.D.

[9] *Alianoram*] Alienoram. B.D. passim.

[10] *comitis*] comitissæ. B.

[11] *Lakok*] Lacok. D.

A D. 1238. Death of John Scot earl of Chester. The legate Otho compelled to take refuge in Oseney bell-tower by the students of Oxford. Cause of the riot. He excommunicates the students, and breaks up the schools.

Anno MCCXXXVII. Johannes Scottus comes Cestriæ ultimus moritur sine hærede, unde comitatus in potestatem regiam de cætero est devolutus.

Anno MCCXXXVIII. Otho legatus apostolicus in Anglia ventus[1] cum in abbatiam de Osenaya[2] juxta Oxoniam esset receptus, a scholaribus inde obsessus ad campanile ecclesiæ aufugit. Rege tunc apud Abindon[3] existente misit legato homines armatos qui ipsum ad regem usque perduxerunt.[4] Causa contumeliæ fuit hæc: Scholares ad legatum videndum venientes ab hominibus legati in porticu aulæ hospitum abbatiæ verberati fuerunt et vulnerati. Legatus vero Londoniis sententiam excommunicationis in scholares fulminavit, studiumque dispersit; unde factum est quidam villam de Northamptoun,[5] quidam Novam Villam Sarum elegerunt ad studendum.

A..D. 1240. Death of S. Edmund of Canterbury.

Beatus Edmundus anno MCCXL. in partibus transmarinis apud [abbatiam[6]] quæ Beysi dicitur ægrotans debitum solvit; Fratres Prædicatores multum in comitiva habebat. Cum die quadam hospites magni ad mensam archiepiscopi invitati fuissent et ipse ad[7] prandium ultra quam solebat tardavit, quidam magister Ricardus ejus cancellarius qui familiarior ei erat inter cæteros ad capellam in qua orare solebat ut eum vocaret accessit, apertoque aliquantulum ostio introspiciens[8] vidit per magnum spatium episcopum a terra levatum corpusque curvatum genibus protensis manibus complosis orantem. Mox vero ad terram dimissus et ad cancellarium versus suspirando planxit

---

[1] *in Anglia ventus*] om. B.

[2] *Osenaya*] Osneia. B.

[3] *Abindon*] Abindoñ. B. Abyndoñ. D.

[4] *perduxerunt*] perdux[t]. A.

[5] *Northamptoun*] Northamptoñ. B.D. Dispersio studii Oxoniæ. in marg. B.

[6] *abbatiam*] Faintly traced in marg. A. villam. B.D.

[7] The first word of f. 75 v. A. headed: De Re. Henr. IIII.

[8] *introspiciens*] et. præm; D.

quod eum a deliciis maximis impedisset. Adjecitque[1] quod in illa contemplatione suavissima animas regis Ricardi et Stephani archiepiscopi Cantuariæ vidit a purgatorio liberatas. A.D. 1240.

Eodem anno moritur Leulinus princeps Walliæ. Death of Llewelyn P. of Wales. 11 April. A.D. 1236.

Anno MCCXXXV. in octavis Sancti Hillarii regina Alianora apud Westmonasterium coronata est, præsentibus archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus, et[2] clericis, et laicis, multitudo copiosa.[3] Coronation of Queen Eleanor, 20 Jan.

Orta est inter eos proles generosa,[4] scilicet, Edwardus qui post patrem regnum tenuit, flos totius militiæ temporibus suis: Children of Henry III. and Eleanor.

Edmundus frater ejus flos largitatis; hic pater fuit Sancti Thomæ comitis Lancastriæ qui decapitatus fuit apud Pontem-fractum:

Margareta quæ fuit regina Scociæ:

Beatris[5] quæ fuit comitissa[6] Britanniæ, quæ marito mortuo intravit in[7] religionem et Deo servivit per longa tempora. Natus[8] est autem Edwardus regis primogenitus, Othone legato eum baptizante; ob honorem Sancti regis Edwardi ita nominatus est, anno Domini MCCXXXIX. Eodem anno corona Domini spinea in Franciam allata est. A.D. 1239. Birth of Prince Edward 16 June.

CAP. CXXIX.

ANNO Domini MCCLIII. Henricus rex Angliæ ad instantiam prælatorum, comitum, et baronum cartas A.D. 1253. Confirmation of

---

[1] *adjecit*] De animabus regis Ricardi et Stephani archiepiscopi. in marg. A.D.

[2] *et*] om. B.D.

[3] *multitudo copiosa*] multitudine copiosa. B.D.

[4] *generosa*] gloriosa. B.

[5] *Beatris*] Beatrix. B.D.

[6] *comitissa*] comitassa. A.

[7] *in*] om. B.D.

[8] Nota. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1253. Magna Carta and the Carta de Foresta.

duas[1] eis concessit, unam de Libertatibus quæ Magna Carta dicitur, et aliam quæ dicitur De Foresta; pro qua concessione communitas Angliæ concessit[2] regi[3] quindecimam partem omnium bonorum suorum mobilium et immobilium per totam Angliam. Hæc autem concessio et donatio confirmata est in parliamento regis apud Oxenforde.

Conduct of Prince Edward.

Edwardus autem filius ejus qui vocatus est comes Cornubiæ illis ordinationibus, legibus, constitutionibus omnino resistebat, et dicebat parliamentum cedens in regis detrimentum male esse celebratum, ob quam causam patrem suum consuluit ut a domino papa absolutionem sui juramenti imploraret, qui a domino papa petiit et obtinuit.

A.D. 1254. Great scarcity.

Anno[4] sequenti tanta evenit[5] karistia in Anglia quod summa[6] frumenti tendebat ad duas marcas, et communitas populi comedebat urticas, cardones, et alias herbas non edibiles ob defectum victualium.

Massacre of the Jews.

Eodem anno mota est guerra inter regem et barones, quia rex cassavit[7] cartas prius concessas. Eodem[8] anno in Quadragesima Judæi capti sunt in Northamptoun[9] et combusti, quia ordinaverunt inter se ignem Græcum ad comb[u]rendum[10] civitatem Londoniarum. Hic incipit conflictio inter regem et barones apud Lewes.[11]

---

[1] Carta de libertatibus et de Foresta. in marg. A.D.

[2] *concessit*] Added in B. in marg. in paler ink.

[3] *regi*] om. B.

[4] Karistia. in marg. A.D.

[5] *evenit*] venit. B.

[6] *summa*] sm̃na. A.

[7] *cassavit*] quassavit. B.

[8] The first word of f. 76. A. headed: De Re. Henr. IIII.

[9] *Northamptoun*] The *r* is interlined in A. Northamptoñ. B. D.

[10] *combrendum*] comburendum. B.D.

[11] *Lewes*] Lews. B. Nota. bellum de Lewes. in marg. A.

Cap. CXXX.

A.D. 1263

De Montfort attacks the foreign favourites of the king.

Capture of Peter Aigueblanche, bishop of Hereford. Gloucester and Worcester besieged and taken.

Symon de Monteforti[1] Laicestriæ comes, capitaneus baronum et ductor, prædari cœpit bona regi adhærentium[2] et præcipue eorum qui reginæ attinebant qui per eam fuerant[3] in Angliam introducti, quos alienigenas appellabant. Ceperunt enim[4] episcopum Herfordiæ in ecclesia sua cathedrali, Petrum nomine, natione Burgundum; ipsum detinebant in castello de Edresley. Deinde Symon comes cum exercitu suo progreditur Gloucestriæ,[5] villam cepit, castrum obsedit et vi et armis cepit. Custos castri per regem intromissus, miles fidelis Matthæus de Besiles[6] nominatus, vel vivus vel mortuus ignoratur. Deinde comes Wigorniam attendens[7] villam sine aliqua resistentia cepit; deinde comes procedit in partibus Angliæ Australibus. Rex autem et regina Londoniis in Turri morabantur. Regina[8] vero volens se transferre ad castrum de Wyndelesor[9] per fluvium in scapha, multitudo civitatis plebeia ad pontem sub quo transitura erat congregata convitia[10] eam maledicebat voce clamosa, et jactu luti et lapidum ad Turrim coegit reverti.

The queen attempts to leave the Tower but is driven back by the mob. 13 July.

Conditions of the reconciliation between the barons and the king.

Igitur inter regem et comitem pax conditionalis formata[11] est. In primis ut Henricus regis Alemanniæ filius qui captus contra regem comiti adhærebat et in custodia regis detentus fuerat liberaretur. Deinde ut castra regis per totam Angliam baronum custodiæ

---

[1] *Symon de Monteforti*] Simon de Monte forte. B.D.

[2] *regi adhærentium*] regis ad Henricum. B.D.

[3] *fuerant*] fuerunt. B.D.

[4] *enim*] etiam. B.D.

[5] *Gloucestriæ*] Gloucestriam. B. D. et. add. B.D.

[6] *Besiles*] Bysilis. B. Bysiles. D.

[7] *attendens*] accedens. B.D.

[8] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[9] *Wyndelesor*] Wyndelsore. B. Wyndesore. D.

[10] *convitia*] convitiis. D.

[11] *formata*] reformata. D.

A.D. 1263. traderentur Item ut Provisiones Oxoniæ inviolabiliter observarentur. Et quod omnes alienigenæ infra certum tempus regnum Angliæ evacuarent, exceptis his quorum moram fideles de regno assensu unanimi accepta essent,[1] sed his non obstantibus, pars regia castrum de Wyndelesor[2] victualibus et armis fortiter munivit.

Edwardus regis filius ad castrum Bristolliæ[3] venit, ubi inter villanos et milites suos suborta[4] discordia, avertitur ab eo villa jam parans obsidionem ponere circa castrum; qui[5] late[n]ter[6] de castro aufugit usque Wyndelesor.[2]

Post hæc parliamentum Londoniis convocatur, in quo multi qui hactenus comiti adhæserant regi adhærebant. Inter quos præcipuus erat Henricus de Almannia,[7] Ricardi regis Romanorum filius et hæres; deinceps[8] potestas regia cœpit respirare.

A.D. 1264. S. Louis mediates between the barons and the king. 23 Jan. Sanctus Lodouuicus Francorum rex regni Angliæ desolationem compatiens pacem inter partes[9] procuravit sed nihil profuit.

Anno MCCLXIIII. Londinenses[10] justi[ti]arios[11] regis ac[12] barones de scaccario capientes[13] carceri manciparunt.[14]

---

[1] *accepta essent*] acceptassent. B.D.

[2] *Wyndelesor*] Wyndelesore. B.

[3] *Bristolliæ*] Bristolli. B.

[4] *suborta*] est. add. B.

[5] *qui*] om. D.

[6] *latenter*] latẽter. A. the circumflex having been erased. latenter. B.D.

[7] *Almannia*] Alemannia. B. Alimannia. D.

[8] *deinceps*] deinde. B.

[9] *partes*] proceres. B.

[10] *Londinenses*] Londonienses. B. D.

[11] *justiarios*] justitiarios. B.D.

[12] *ac*] atque. B.

[13] The first word of f. 76 v. A. headed: De Re. Henr. IIII.

[14] *manciparunt*] mancipaverunt. D.

Cap. CXXXI.

Rex vero Henricus IIII. secum illustres habens[1] principes, Ricardum germanum suum regem Alemanniæ, ac filium suum Edwardum, Willielmum de Valenciis fratrem uterinum, clarissimosque milites, Johannem Comyn[2] de Scocia cum multitudine Scottorum, Johannem de Balliolo dominum Galwadiæ, Robertum de Bruys dominum de Vallis Anandiæ, Rogerum de Clifforde,[3] Philippum Basset,[4] Rogerum de Mortuo Mari, cum exercitu progrediens villam de Northampton[5] obsedit, quam Dominica in Passione effracto[6] muro intravit. Cepitque ibi milites vexilliferos quindecim, videlicet: Symonem juniorem, Willielmum de Ferariis,[7] Petrum de Monteforti, Baldewinum[8] Wake, Adam de Novo Mercato, Rogerum Bertrandi Symonem filium Symonis, qui primo vexillum erexit contra regem Henricum, Berengarium de Wateuyle, Hugonem Gubioun,[9] Thomas Maunsel, Rogerum Botevileyn,[10] Nicholaum Wake, Robertum de Neuwyntoun,[11] Philippum de Dribi,[12] Grimbaldum Paunesfot.[13] De quibus Symonem juniorem ad castrum de Wyndelesore transmisit, cæteros ad alia tutamenta. A.D. 1264

The king takes Northampton. 6 April.

Capti sunt et alii milites minoris gradus[14] circiter quadraginta, scutiferi non pauci. Perrexit rex versus Notyngham maneria baronum cæde vastans et incen- He proceeds to Nottingham.

[1] *habens*] habuit. B.D.
[2] *Comyn*] Comyñ. B.
[3] *de Clifforde*] Clyfforde. B. Clifford. D.
[4] *Basset*] de Basset. B.
[5] *Northampton*] Northamptoñ. B.
[6] *effracto*] fracto. B.
[7] *Ferariis*] Ferrariis. B.D.
[8] *Baldewinum*] Baldewynum. B.D.
[9] *Gubioun*] Gubyoñ. B. Gubioñ. D.
[10] *Botevileyn*] Boteuyleyñ. B.D.
[11] *Neuwyntoun*] Venwyntoñ. B. Newyntoñ. D.
[12] *Dribi*] Driby. B. Drybi. D.
[13] *Grimbaldum Paunesfot*] Grymbaldum Paunesfote. B.
[14] *minoris gradus*] minores. B.

A.D. 1264. 12 April.

diis, ubique collegit magnates et suorum auxit numerum vehementer.

De Montfort besieges Rochester. 17 April.

Comes Symon[1] Londoniis adiit et urbem Rofensem decrevit expugnare, quam comes Johannes de Warenna tunc tenuit. Symoni vero comiti nuntiatum est regem venire Londoniis, quam ob causam obsidionem recusavit et in occursum regis acceleravit.

Hemarches against the king. 26 April.

Rex de Londoniis declinans cepit castrum de Kyngestoun,[2] quod erat comitis Glouerniæ; deinde perrexit Wynchelseiam, ubi Portuenses recepit ad pacem; profectus ultra pervenit ad Lewes;[3] receptus[4] est in prioratu et filius ejus in castro, ubi dum esset scripserunt ei barones literas hujus tenoris:[5]

The king takes Kingston castle. 26–7 April; reaches Lewes. 11 May.

Cap. CXXXII.

Letter of the Barons. 12 May.

Excellentissimo[6] domino suo Henrico regi illustri Dei gratia Angliæ, domino Hyberniæ, duci Aquitaniæ, barones et alii fideles sui sacramentum et fidelitatem Deo et sibi observare volentes salutem et debitum cum honore famulatum. Cum per plura experimenta liqueat quod quidam vobis assistentes multa de nobis mendacia dominationi vestræ ingesserint, mala quantum possunt non solum nobis sed etiam vobis et toti regno vestro intentantes: Noverit excellentia vestra quod salutem et sanitatem corporis vestri totis viribus et fidelitatem vobis debitam[7] volumus observare, inimicos non solum vestros[8] sed etiam nostros[9] et

---

[1] *Symon*] Symoñ. B.
[2] *Kyngestoun*] Kyngestoñ. B.D.
[3] *Lewes*] Lews. B.
[4] *receptus*] et. præm. B.D.
[5] Anno Domini. 1264. add. B. *a*.
[6] Litera comitis missa regi. in marg. A.D.
[7] The first word of f. 77. A. headed: De Re. Henr. IIII.
[8] *vestros*] nostros. D.
[9] *nostros*] vestros. D.

totius regni vestri[1] juxta posse gravare proponentes;[2] A.D. 1264.
illis si placet supradictis non credatis. Nos enim fideles vestri semper inveniemur. Et nos comes Leycestriæ et Gilbertus de Clare ad petitionem aliorum pro nobis et ipsis signa nostra apposuimus.

Rescripsit autem rex eis literas hanc formam continentes anno MCCLXIIII.:

Cap. CXXXIII.

Henricus, Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dominus Hi- The king's answer. 12 May.
berniæ et dux Aquitaniæ[3] Simoni de Monteforti,[4] Gilberto de Clare, et eorum complicibus. Cum per guerram et turbationem[5] generalem in regno nostro jam per vos subortas, necnon incendia[6] et damna enormia alia appareat[7] manifeste quod fidelitatem vestram nobis[8] non servatis[9] nec de securitate corporis nostri in aliquo non[10] curatis eo quod magnates et alios fideles nostros nostræ fidei constanter adhærentes enormiter gravastis sicut per literas vestras nobis significastis: Nos ipsorum gravamen æque nostrum proprium reputantes, cum tantum fideles nostri pro fidelitate sua observanda contra infidelitatem vestram viriliter et fideliter assistant, de vestra ideo[11] fidelitate vel[12] amore non curamus sed vos tanquam nostros et eorum inimicos diffidamus. Teste me[13] apud Lewes.[14]

---

[1] *vestri*] nostri. B.

[2] *proponentes*] cupientes. D.

[3] *rex Angliæ, dominus Hiberniæ et dux Aquitaniæ*] rex ã. do. hi. et dux aq. A.

[4] *Simoni de Monteforti*] Symoni de Monte forti. B.D.

[5] *turbationem*] perturbationem. B.D.

[6] Litera regis missa comitibus. in marg. A.D.

[7] *appareat*] apparet. D.

[8] *nobis*] om. B.D.

[9] *servatis*] servastis. B.

[10] *non*] om. D.

[11] *ideo*] igitur. B.

[12] *vel*] et. B.

[13] *me*] meipso. D.

[14] *Lewes*] Lews. B.

A.D. 1264. Rex etiam Alemanniæ et Edwardus filius regis Henrici IIII. nomine suo et aliorum regi adhærentium[1] prædictis comitibus et eorum complicibus in hac forma scripserunt:

Cap. CXXXIV.

Letter of Richard, king of the Romans, and Prince Edward, to the barons. 12 May.

Ricardus[2] Dei gratia rex Romanorum semper Augustus et Edwardus illustris regis Angliæ primogenitus, cæterique barones et omnes[3] regni proceres prædicto regi constanter et fideliter adhærentes Symoni de Monteforti, Gilberto de Clare, ac cæteris omnibus et singulis perfidiæ suæ complicibus: Ex literis vestris quas domino illustri regi Angliæ transmisistis accepimus nos esse diffidatos a vobis, quamvis hujusmodi[4] verbalis diffidatio satis fuerit in nos realiter ante vestra hostili in rerum nostrarum incendiis et bonorum nostrorum depopulationibus persecutione probata:[5] Nos igitur scire vos volimus [vos] a nobis universis et singulis tanquam hostes publicos ab hostibus diffidatos, qui deinceps personarum et rerum vestrarum dispendiis ubicunque nobis facultas ad hoc fuerit totis viribus et nisibus insistemus. De hoc quod falsa nobis proponitis quod non bonum consilium ipso[6] nostro domino regi damus nequaquam verum dicitis. Et si vos, domine Symon de Monteforti, Gilberte[7] de Clare, hoc idem in curia regis volueritis asserere, parati sumus vobis securum conductum procurare ad veniendum et redeundum et veritatem nostræ innocentiæ fideliter[8] approbare et

---

[1] *adhærentium*] The last three syllables on an erasure in B.

[2] Litera regis Ricardi et Edward filii regis Henrici et aliorum. in marg. A.D.

[3] *omnes*] om. B.

[4] *hujusmodi*] hujus. A.B.C.D.

[5] *probata*] prolata. B.D.

[6] *ipso*] ipsi. D. The first word of f. 77 v. A. headed: De Re. Hen. IIII.

[7] *Gilberte*] Gilb'. A. Gilbertus. B.D.

[8] *fideliter*] om. B.D.

utriusque vestrum sicut perfidi proditoris mendacium declarare per aliquem nobilitate et genere vobis parem. Omnes nos contenti sumus prædictorum dominorum sigillis, scilicet, domini regis Romanorum et domini Edwardi. A.D. 1264.

Appropinquantes ad villam de Lewes[1] comites prædicti in manu armata regios satellites qui pro quæritando equorum pabula egressi fuerant invadentes plurimos peremerunt. Præmunitus rex subito de adventu comitum et baronum[2] obviam pergit cum exercitu in tres partes diviso; quarum primæ præerat Edwardus regis primogenitus cum Willielmo de Valenciis et Pembroke,[3] et Johanne de Warenna, Sutherey[4] et Suthsex[5] comitibus; secundæ rex Alemanniæ cum filio suo Henrico; tertiæ, rex ipse Henricus. The battle of Lewes. 14 May. Division of the king's army.

Baronum vero exercitus in IIII. partes divisus erat; quarum primæ Henricus de Monteforti cum comite Herfordiæ; secundæ Gilbertus de Clare; tertiæ[6] Johannes filius Johannis, Willielmus de Monte Camisii; quartæ ipse comes Symon[7] cum Thoma de Peluestoun.[8] Division of the barons' army.

Edwardus[9] igitur tanto impetu in hostes irruit ut eos retrocedere cogeret; quorum multi fugientes submersi sunt. Londonienses vero fugientes, quos dum insequitur[10] Edwardus ad IIII. miliarium spatium gravissimam cædem inferendo[11] a[12] reliquo separatus exercitu diminuit robur ejus. Prince Edward separated from the main body.

---

[1] *Lewes*] Lews. B.

[2] *comitum et baronum*] eorum. D.

[3] *Pembroke*] Penbrok. B.D.

[4] *Sutherey*] Southrai. B.

[5] *Suthsex*] Southsex. B.

[6] *tertiæ*] Added beyond the commencement of the line in A. *prima manu.*

[7] *Symon*] Symoñ. B.

[8] *Peluestoun*] Peluestoñ. A.D. Peluystoñ. B.

[9] Bellum de Lewes. in marg. A.D.

[10] *insequitur*] insequens. D.

[11] *inferendo*] inferebat. D.

[12] *a*] et. præm. D.

A.D. 1264. Eo instanti multi de regis acie occisi;[1] captique rex Alemanniæ, Robertus de Bruys,[2] Johannes Comyn[3] qui Scottos duxit.[4] Rex autem Henricus dextrario occiso captus et in prioratu apposita custodia est reclusus.

Capture of the king.

Flight of the king's adherents.

Edwardus rediens gravi prœlio excipitur; fugeruntque comes Warenniæ, Willielmus[5] de Valenciis, Guido[6] de Lisimiaco, fratres regis uterini, Hugo Bigod[7] cum militia quæ ad quadringentos loricatos ascendit, omnes ad castrum de Peuesey tendentes. Cum autem hinc et inde multi corruissent Edwardus villam circuiens patre non invento maxime condoluit; qui in crastino in prioratu eum invenit.

The barons attack the castle of Pevensey.

Barones igitur castrum insultantes, cum inclusi viriliter se defendissent recessit insultus. Edwardus animatus de militia in castro iterum voluit prœliari; quo cognito, miserunt barones mediatores pro pace in crastino tractanda cum effectu, In crastino igitur Fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus inter eos discurrentibus sic[8] actum est ut feria sexta sequente Edwardus et Henricus pro patribus suis regibus Angliæ, Alemanniæ,[9] se comiti Symoni redderent sub spe quietis et pacis, ita ut quæ provisionum et statutorum essent pro utilitate regni[10] tenenda et quæ delenda cum deliberatione tractaretur, et quod interim captivi[11] hinc et inde absque ullo pretio redderentur.

Prince Edward and Prince Henry given as hostages to the barons. 16 May.

Liberation of prisoners on each side.

Sabbato sequenti rex omnes suos licentiavit ad propria, scripsitque[12] de voluntate Symonis his qui erant in munitione castri de Tonebrige[13] quod redeuntibus

[1] *occisi*] sunt. præm. D.
[2] *Bruys*] Bruse. B.
[3] *Comyn*] Comyñ. B.
[4] *duxit*] duxerat. D.
[5] *Willielmus*] et. præm. B.
[6] *Guido*] Gwydo. B.D.
[7] *Bigod*] Bygot. B. Bygod. D.
[8] The first word of f. 78. A. headed: De re. Hen. IIII.
[9] *Alemanniæ*] et. præm. B.D.
[10] *regni*] om. B.D.
[11] *captivi*] Interlined in B. *prima manu.*
[12] *que*] autem. B.
[13] *Tonebrige*] Tonebrygge. B. Tonebryge. D.

ad sua baronibus non nocerent. At illi hoc non obstante armati incedentes cum audissent qui de bello fugerant apud Croydoune[1] receptos, illuc properantes plurimis eorum peremptis spolia abstulerunt. A.D. 1264.

Comes vero Simon[2] regem Angliæ, filium[3] ejus Edwardum secum circumduxit quousque omnia regis castra occupasset et tunc difficiliorem de pace tractanda se exhibuit eo quod regem et totum regnum in sua habuit potestate.

Imprisonment of Richard king of the Romans, and of P. Edward and Henry.

Denique regem Romanorum Ricardum in Turri Londinensi, Edwardum et Henricum regum filios in castro Douoriæ sub custodia posuit, regem Angliæ Henricum continue secum circumduxit.

Mortimer and others renew the war.

Milites interim inclyti in[4] armis peritissimi, scilicet, Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, Jacobus de Audeliaco, Rogerus de Leybourne,[5] Rogerus de Clifforde,[6] Haymo extraneus, Hugo de Turbeluyle, cum aliis pluribus indigne ferentes regem regiamque sobolem sic tractari unanimi contra comitem Leycestriæ insurgunt consensu.

De Montfort defeats them.

Comes vero Symon ad compescendam audaciam prædictorum nobilium castra eorum cepit et devastavit, scilicet Herforde, et Hay et Lodelowe[7] et alia. Tandem pacificati cum comite cessavit cædes. Symon ad partes Australes revertitur ut occurret militiæ quæ de partibus Gallicanis in regis subsidium dicebatur venire.

Clarebant[8] his temporibus doctores eximii, frater Thomas de Aquino[9] inter Prædicatores,[10] Bonauin-

---

[1] *Croydoune*] Croydone. A. Croydoñ. B.D.

[2] *Simon*] Symon. B.D.

[3] *filium*] et. præm. D.

[4] *in*] om. B.D.

[5] *Leybourne*] Leybourn. A. Leyborñ. B.D.

[6] *Clifforde*] Clyfford'. B.

[7] *Lodelowe*] Ludlow. B.

[8] Incidentia. Thomas Aquinas. in marg. A.D.

[9] *Aquino*] Alquino. A. the *l* having been erased. Alaquino. B. Aiquino. D. the first *i* having been altered from *l*.

[10] *Prædicatores*] doctores. præm. B.

A.D. 1264. turus[1] inter Minores. Acta sunt hæc anno Domini MCCLXIIII.

Cap. CXXXV.

A.D. 1265. The earl of Gloucester quarrels with De Montfort,

Discordia igitur suborta inter comites Leicestriæ et Glouerniæ (nam Symon non est contentus regem Angliæ in custodia detinere, etiam castra regia in ditionem propriam accepit, disponens pro voluntate sua regnum totum et, quod omnes offendebat, proventus regni, redemptiones captivorum, emolumenta alia quæ æqua sorte inter eos comites duos dividi debebant[2]) Gilbertus comes requisivit a Symone regem Alemanniæ aliosque captivos nobiles per ipsum et suos in bello captos redderet.[3] Cui leviter et derisione responsum est a Symone; unde discordia inter eos radicitus est firmata.

and separates from him.

Discedens cum indignatione Gilbertus a Symone milites nobiles de[4] marchio prænominatos, quos jam Symon edicto publico regnum evacuare jusserat, accersitos fœdere sibi jungit [et] auxerunt eorum societatem. Comes Symon Herfordiæ adiens, Gilbertum comitem cum omnes sibi adhærentes[5] omnino destruere disponens.[6]

Prince Edward escapes from custody at Hereford. 28 May.

Medio tempore Edwardus regis filius de Douoria ductus est Herfordiæ, ubi sub custodia detentus a custodibus gratia spatiandi permissus est dextrarios singulos equitare. Qui tentatis et pluribus fatigatis unum quem electum sciebat ascendens calcaribus

---

[1] *Bonauinturus*] Bonauenturus. B. Bonauent[urus]. in marg. A. Alquinas, Bonaventurus. in marg. D. The bracketed part having been taken up in binding.

[2] *debebant*] solebant. B.D.

[3] *redderet*] sibi reddi. D.

[4] The first word of f. 78 v. A. headed: De Rege Henr. III.

[5] *omnes . . . . . adhærentes*] omnibus . . . . . adhærentibus. B.D.

[6] *disponens*] disposuit. D.

urgebat et custodibus valedixit. Transitoque flumine quod Wey dicitur cum duobus militibus, et IIII. scutiferis propositi sui consciis, versus castrum de Wygemore iter suum dirigit. Custodes eum insequentes cum vidissent vexilla duo in subsidium Edwardi occurrentia delusi Herfordiam revertuntur. Factumque est hoc in hebdomada Pentecostes consilio et industria militum prædictorum, anno [1] MCCLXV. A.D. 1265.

Cap. CXXXVI.

Edwardus igitur a custodia liberatus coadunato exercitu magno multis ad eum confluentibus comitatus Herfordensem, Wygorniensem, Salopiensem, Cestrensem suæ parti confœderat, cum pagis, villis, civitatibus, castellis; villam etiam Glouerniæ, quam Symon nuper optime munierat, expugnavit et cepit, fugientibus ad castrum custodibus, qui post dies XV. expugnato et reddito sibi castro et juramento præstito quod contra eum de cætero arma non portarent liberi dimittuntur. Comes igitur Symon adjuncto sibi Lewlino Walliæ principe terras comitis Glouerniæ, castella in Wallia, in Anglia, humo prostravit. He takes Gloucester, 29 June.

Audiente Edwardo quod multa [2] ex parte Simonis ad castrum de Kenelworth tendebant, citatoque gradu subito [3] cepit comitem Oxoniæ cum militibus vexilliferis circiter tresdecim antequam castrum ingressi fuissent in quo jam se receperat Symon Simonis [4] comitis filius.

Simon [5] comes regem semper habens in comitiva [6] de Australi Wallia reversus, in festo Sancti Petri ad

---

[1] *anno*] Domini. add. D.
[2] *multa*] multi. B.D.
[3] *gradu subito*] gressu. D.
[4] *Simonis*] Symonis. B.D.
[5] *Simon*] Symon. B.D.
[6] *comitiva*] comitatu. D.

A.D. 1265. Vincula venit ad manerium[1] Wygorniensis episcopi quod Kemesey[2] dicitur et ibi in crastino morabatur.

Edwardus de Kenelworth rediit Wygorniam quæ a prædicto manerio distat miliaribus tribus. Cujus adventu cognito, Symon comes cum rege in ipso crepusculo noctis discedens in oppido quod dicitur Ewesham[3] fato substitit infelici. In crastino etiam, qui erat[4] dies Inventionis Sancti Stephani, Edwardus veniens de Wigornia viam comitis ad filium suum in castro de Kenelworthe tendentis interclusit. In[5] crastino vero appropinquavit oppido de Evesham; veneruntque ex una parte. Ex duabus aliis partibus comes Glouerniæ cum acie sua, et Rogerus de Mortuo Mari cum sua turma. Ita ut comes Leycestriæ undique circumclusus vel se spontanee dedere oportet vel cum illis in prœlio decertare.

The battle of Evesham. 4 Aug.

Feria[6] igitur sexta quæ nonis Augusti contigit occurrunt sibi ambo exercitus in campo extra oppidum spatioso; ubi gravissimo commisso prœlio pars comitis cœpit succumbere, qui aggravato super eum pondere ibidem cecidit interfectus. Actum est hoc anno Domini MCCLXV. mense Augusti. Ceciderunt ibi milites vexilliferi XII., scilicet: Henricus filius comitis, Petrus de Monteforti,[7] Hugo de Dispensariis justitiarius Angliæ, Willielmus de Mandewyl,[8] Radulphus Basset, Walterus de Crepynges,[9] Willielmus de Eboraco, Robertus Tregor, Thomas de Hostel, Johannes de Bello Campo, Gwydo de Balliolo, Rogerus de Soules, alii quoque minoris gradus in multitudine copiosa, scutiferorum, peditum, et maxime Gallencium numero excessivo.

Death of De Montfort.

---

[1] *manerium*] A *de* erased follows in A.

[2] *Kemesey*] Kemesei. B.

[3] *Ewesham*] Euesham. B.D.

[4] *erat*] om. B. est. D.

[5] The first word of f. 79. A. headed: De Rege Henr. IIII.

[6] Bellum de Euesham. in marg. A.D.

[7] *Monteforte*] Monte forte. B. Monte forti. D.

[8] *Mandewyl*] Maundeuyle. B. Mandevyse. D.

[9] *de Crepynges*] Crepyngys. B.

Edwardus victoria potitus monachis illius loci post prœlium mandavit ut corpora defunctorum et præcipue[1] majorum decenter humare curarent. Interfuit etiam personaliter exequiis Henrici filii comitis quem rex de sacro fonte levaverat, et ipse cum Edwardo nutritus a pueritia,[2] et familiariter inter se dilexerant; cujus funeri dicitur Edwardum lachrymasse. A.D. 1265.

Cap. CXXXVII.

Denique triumphatis hostibus rex potestati regiæ[3] restitutus Wyntoniam de consilio filii sui victoris parliamentum convocat in Nativitate Beatæ Virginis Mariæ, ubi inito consilio civitatem Londoniarum ob suam rebellionem privavit omnibus privilegiis et libertatibus antiquis. Capitaneos factionis contra regem in festo Sancti Edwardi Regis omnes qui cum Symone comite contra dominum suum regem legitimum edicto publico exhæredantur. Quorum mox terras rex illis qui sibi fideliter adhæserant contulit, pensatis meritis singulorum. A Parliament at Winchester. [8 Sept.]

Exulati exercitum congregaverunt copiosum qui multa mala inimicis suis intulerunt,[4] domos et maneria combusserunt, homines in regia via occiderunt; multo enim tempore in exilio steterunt ita quod tota Anglia tribulata est[5] de malitia exulatorum.

Miles quidam in partibus Wyntoniæ[6] Adam dictus, cognomento Gurdoun,[7] exhæredatus cum cæteris ad pacem regis renuens[8] venire, juxta viam inter Aultoun[9] et castrum de Farnham, quam tunc in valle pro- Combat of P. Edward with Adam Gordon.

[1] *præcipue*] maxime. B.D.
[2] *pueritia*] erat. add. D.
[3] *regiæ*] om. B.D.
[4] *intulerunt*] fecerunt. B.D.
[5] *tribulata est*] turbata erat. D.
[6] *Wyntoniæ*] Wyntº. A.B. Wyntoñ. D.
[7] *Gurdoun*] Gurdoñ. B.D.
[8] *renuens*] renuit. B.D.
[9] *Aultoun*] Aultoñ. B.D.

A.D. 1265. munctoria nemorosa reddebant tortuosam ac per hoc prædonibus opportunam cum suis resedit,[1] patriam rapinis infestinans et præcipue his qui regi adhærebant. Cujus vires et probitatem ex fama cognitas cupiens Edwardus experiri cum[2] in[3] manu forti supervenisset eidem se ad pugnam paranti præcepit suis ne quis eos impediret vel attingeret singulare certamen. Congressus[4] itaque mutuos ictus congeminant pari sorte, neutro cedente alteri. Delectatus tandem Edwardus militis virtute[5] et animo interpugnandum[6] consuluit ei ut se redderet, vitam pollicens et fortunam. Cui miles acquiescens, abjectis armis illico se reddidit; quem eadem nocte Guldefordiam transmisit reginæ matri suæ cum recommendatione supplici præsentandum[7] quem postea hæreditati restitutum Edwardus semper carum habuit et fidum.

The deprived nobles fortify Kenilworth castle. A.D. 1266. The king besieges the castle. 25 June.

Eodem anno de exhæredatis castrum de Kenelworth ingressi victualibus munierunt et armis, disponentes illud contra regem defendere. Rex autem illuc properans in crastino Sancti Johannis Baptistæ circa castrum posuit obsidionem, qua durante rex XII. personas eligi fecit, quibus commisit ut providendo paci regis atque regni latam in exhæredatis sententiam innodarent, jurejurando[8] spondens se eorum ordinationem per omnia servaturum.

The Dictum de Kenilworth. 31 Oct.

Convenientes igitur personæ electæ apud Couentreiam unanimi decreverunt assensu ut exhæredati pœna pecuniaria suas hæreditates redimerent ab his qui eas dono regis occupaverant. Ita tamen quod hæc proventus hæreditatum septennium non excederet nec

[1] *resedit*] recedit. B.
[2] *cum*] ẽ. B.
[3] The first word of f. 79 v A. headed: De Re. Hen. IIII.
[4] *Congressus*] Congressis. D.
[5] *virtute*] virtutis. D.
[6] *interpugnandum*] interpugnando. D.
[7] *præsentandum*] præsuptandum. B.
[8] *jurejurando*] juirejurado. A.

unius anni proventibus minor esset ; sed inter hos ter- A.D. 1266.
minos taxetur [1] secundum quantitatem delicti. Ab hoc tamen redemptione filii comitis Simonis [2] et Robertus Derebeiæ, quorum exhæredationem censuerunt [3] fore [4] perpetuam, excluduntur.

Castrum de Kenelworth regi redditum est ante Natale Domini die Sancti Thomæ Apostoli sub tali forma: Quod custos [5] castelli, Henricus de Hasting,[6] cum omnibus castellanis IIII. dies ex gratia regis haberent ad castrum deliberandum de bonis suis omnibus, et liberi irent per totam Angliam licet exhæredati. Per V. septimanas ante castellum reddi- A.D. 1265.
tum Symon filius Symonis occisi et hæres et mater ejus comitissa evaserunt in partibus transmarinis tempore perpetuo exulati. Revocantur tamen exulati per ordinationem XII. apud Couentriam prænotatam [7] et per consilium Ottoboni legati domini papæ et tituli Sancti Adriani diaconus [8] cardinalis.

Surrender of the castle. [21 Dec.]

Flight of the Countess of Leicester.

A.D. 1266. Escape of Simon de Montfort, jun.

Cap. CXXXVIII.

Anno Domini MCCLXVIII. corpus Beati Edwardi regis et Confessoris, instante rege Angliæ Henrico, in feretrum aureum quod ei ipse rex paraverat [9] est translatum. Johannes de Warenna comes Suthreiæ et Suthseax [10] Alanum de la Souche [11] regis justitiarium

A.D. 1268. Translation of S. Edward the Confessor.

John de Warenna kills Alan de la Zouche.

[1] *taxetur*] taxaretur. D.

[2] *Simonis*] Symonis. B.D.

[3] *censuerunt*] censuerẽt. A.

[4] *fore*] esse. D.

[5] *custos*] custodes. B.

[6] *Hasting*] Hastyng. B. Hastynge. D.

[7] *prænotatam*] prænotat⁹. A.B. prænotatorum. D.

[8] *diaconus*] diaconi. B. corrected from *diaconus*. diaconi. D.

[9] The first word of f. 80. A. headed : De Re. Hen. IIII.

[10] *Suthreiæ et Suthseax*] de Southrey et Southsex. B. de Suthreye et Suthseax. D.

[11] *la Souche*] Couch. B. la Couche. D.

A.D. 1268. in aula Westmonasterii subortis inter eos verbis manu propria interfecit.

A.D. 1269. Prince Edward joins the Crusade.

Eodem anno, hoc est, regis LV., Edwardus filius regis, Johannes de Britannia comes de Richemound, Johannes de Vesci, Thomas de Clare, Rogerius[1] de Clifford, Otho de Gransoun,[2] Robertus Bruys,[3] Johannes de Verdoun,[4] et multi alii de tota Christianitate cruce-signati versus Terram Sanctam iter arripiunt, et ibi morati sunt usque ad obitum regis Henrici.

A.D. 1272. Attempt to murder Prince Edward at Acre.

Anno MCCLXXI. Edwardo filio regis in Accon[5] commorante, hassacinus quidem Saracenus, qui sæpe ad eum nuntius admiralii Joppensis venire consueverat, fingens se[6] velle ei quædam secreta referre, omnibus a camera exclusis ipsum ad fenestram aliquam appodiantem ex improviso eum cultello vulnerat[7] venenato, quem Edwardus pede percussum et ad[8] terram prostratum extorto de manibus ejus cultello occidit; in extractione vero cultelli violenta seipsum in manu vulnerat[7] et in frontem. Vulneribus ejus veneno crassantibus multis et variis adhibitis remediis vix curantur; vulnus autem primum in tergo missum nunquam curatur.

Cap. CXXXIX.

A.D. 1271. Gregory X. elected Pope. 1 Sept.

Anno MCCLXXII. Theobaldus Placentinus Lodiensis archidiaconus,[9] hic devotionis causa cum Edwardo transierat in Accon,[5] in papam eligitur, et Gregorius Decimus appellatur.

---

[1] *Rogerius*] Rogerus. B.
[2] *Gransoun*] Gransoñ. B.
[3] *Bruys*] de. præm. D.
[4] *Verdoun*] Verdoñ. B.
[5] *Accon*] Actoñ. B. Acton. D.
[6] De venenato vulnere. in marg. A.
[7] *vulnerat*] vulneraverat. D.
[8] *ad*] in. B.D.
[9] *archidiaconus*] archidiaconus. A. episcopus. præm. A. subpuncted.

Eo[1] anno frater Robertus de Kylwardbi[2] archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ a domino papa suscepit. A.D. 1271. Robert de Kylwardby archbishop of Canterbury.

Eodem anno per cives[3] Norwici monasterium in villa constructum malitiose combustum est; unde rex mittens justitiarios suos ibidem plures fecit distrahi et suspendi. A.D. 1272. Mense Novembri Henricus Anglorum rex infirmitate correptus[4] in die Sancti Edmundi episcopi et Confessoris in Domino obdormivit. Death of Henry III. 16 Nov. In die vero Sancti Edmundi regis et Martyris apud Westmonasterium traditur sepulturæ: anno ætatis suæ LXV. et regni sui LVI. His funeral. 20 Nov. Erat enim iste rex in sæculi actibus minus prudens, tanto autem apud Deum pollebat majori devotione. His character. Singulis namque[5] diebus tres missas cum nota audire solebat, et plures audire cupiens privatim celebrantibus assidue assistebat. His devoutness. Contigit aliquando Sanctum[6] Lodowicum Francorum regem cum eo super hoc conferentem dicere quod non semper missis sed sermonibus audiendis esse vacandum. Cui faceta urbanitate respondens ait se malle amicum suum sæpius videre quam de eo loquentem, licet bona dicentem, pluries audire. Erat[7] autem staturæ mediocris, compacti corporis, alterius oculi palpebra demissiore,[8] ita ut partem nigredinis pupillæ celaret, robustus viribus sed princeps infectus. His personal appearance. In quibus tamen quia fortunatos et felices exitus habuerit putant eum multi Merlini Fatidicum per lincem designatum omnia penetrantem.

Iste Henricus Quartus anno Domini MCCXX. coronatus fuit die Pentecostes XVI. kalendas Julii ab archiepiscopo Stephano de

---

[1] *Eo*] Eodem. D.

[2] *Kylwardbi*] Kylwarddi. A. the second *d* altered to a *b* Kylwardi. B.D.

[3] *per cives*] The *e* in *cives* corrected from an *i* in A. Parcivis. B.D.

[4] De morte regis Henrici IIII. in marg. A.D.

[5] *namque*] enim. B.D. Nota. de missis regis Henrici. in marg. A.D.

[6] *Sanctum*] om. B.

[7] The first word of f. 80 v. A. headed: De Re. Edw. a Conq. I.

[8] *demissiore*] demissior. B. dimissior. D.

Langedoun apud Westmonasterium Londoniæ, præsente Pandulpho legato. Hic etiam Henricus anno Domini MCCXLIX. accepit Crucem a Bonefacio archiepiscopo Cantuariensi apud Westmonasterium pridie Non. Martii.

Isti Henrico[1] fecit homagium Alexander rex Scociæ in die Sancti Stephani, et desponsavit filiam dicti regis Henrici apud Eborum, Margaretam nomine.

Iste Henricus[2] fundavit monasterium de Haylys anno Domini MCCXLVII. et monasterium sanctimonialium de Burnham anno Domini MCC.

Anno Domini MCCXXII. homo quidam crucifixus erat Abberburiæ qui fecit se Jesum in concilio Oxoniensi.

Anno Domini MCCXXVIII. novæ decretales compilatæ sunt per fratrem Reymundum de Ordine Prædicatorum, jubente papa Gregorio IX.

Anno Domini MCCLVII. magna fames apud Anglos prævaluit.

Anno Domini MCCXLV. dominus papa Innocentius IIII. anathematizavit Fredericum imperatorem in concilio Lugdunensi et eundem ibi deposuit; qui sic obiit excommunicatus anno Domini MCCLI.

Anno Domini MCCXLVII. terræ motus factus est X. kalendas Martii. Item alius anno Domini MCCXLVIII. et tertius anno Domini MCCLXXV. tertio idus Septembris circa horam primam.

Anno Domini MCCXLVIII. facta fuit solennis et generalis processio contra sanguinem Domini missum a venerabili patre tunc patriarcha Ierosolymitano Henrico IIII. regi Angliæ apud Londoniam, pluribus episcopis atque abbatibus ibi citatis, tertio idus Octobris.

Anno Domini[3] MCCXLIX. excambium monetæ factum fuit per totam Angliam.

Anno Domini MCCLIII. Sanctus Ricardus episcopus Cicestrensis obiit, qui Romæ canonizatus fuit anno Domini MCCLXII.; cujus corpus fuit translatum anno Domini MCCLXXVI. . . . . .

Anno Domini MCCXXXV. Magister Robertus Grosset-testē[4] consecratus est episcopus a Sancto Edmundo archiepiscopo apud Redynges, obiit anno Domini MCCLIII.; vir in sermone verax, in mundo justus, in philosophia et sacra doctrina, id est, theologia, doctor præcipuus.

Anno Domini MCCXXXIX. eclipsis solis factus est.

Anno Domini MCCLIX. Henricus Quartus rex Angliæ transfretavit, et tunc formata est pax inter ipsum et regem Franciæ,

---

[1] De Scottis. in marg. B. α.

[2] Fundatio monasteriorum de Haylys et de Burnham. in marg. B. α.

[3] Excambium monetæ. in marg. B. α.

[4] Grostede. in marg. B. α.

Normannia in usus regis Franciæ deinceps cedente et quibusdam aliis terris Gwasconiæ conjunctis regi Angliæ appropriatis. A.D. 1275.

Anno Domini MCCLXV. Ottobonus, Sancti Adriani diaconus cardinalis et Apostolicæ Sedis legatus, venit Londonias, qui ibidem Londonienses et Portuenses in pleno concilio excommunicatos a domino Clemente papa Quarto denuntiavit, et interdictum Christianitatis eis imposuit; et eodem anno episcopos Londonienses et Cicestrenses ab officio et beneficio suspendit quousque a prædicto domino papa relaxaretur. Iste Ottobonus[1] celebravit concilium Londoniæ anno Domini MCCLXVIII. in quo fecit statuta quasi impor. . . . . Iste Ottobonus accepit decimam reddituum prælatorum per triennium. Iste Ottobonus postea in summum Pontificem promotus est. [B. *a*.]

CAP. CXL.

EDWARDUS filius regis Henrici Quarti[2] ex Alianora[3] filia comitis Prouinciæ primogenitus ætatis suæ XXXIII. annos et V. menses impleverat die quo patri[4] suo defuncto in regno fuerat[5] successurus. Fuit autem vir expertæ prudentiæ in negotiis gerendis, ab adolescentia armorum exercitio deditus, elegantis erat formæ, procerus staturæ, qua ab humeris et supra communi populo præiminebat. Cæsaries in adolescentia a colore pæne argentea in flavum vergens, in juventute, a flavo declinans in nigredinem, senectutem[6] in cygneam versa canitiem, venustabat. Frons lata, cætera facies pariliter disposita, eo excepto quod sinistri oculi palpebra[7] dimissior erat, paterni aspectus similitudinem exprimebat. Lingua blæsa, efficax facundia, brachiorum ad proportionem corporis flexibilis productio, ad usum aptiora gladii, pectus[8] ventri præminebat, tibiarum longa divisio. Inerat enim animus magnificus omni virtute decoratus. A.D. 1272. Edward I. His character, and personal appearance.

---

[1] Ottobonus. in marg. B. *a*.

[2] *Quarti*] Tertii. on an erasure in D.

[3] *Alianora*] Alienora. B.D.

[4] *patri*] patre. D.

[5] *fuerat*] erat. D.

[6] *senectutem*] senectute. B.D.

[7] *palpebra*] palpabra. A.

[8] *pectus*] pentus. B. penitus. D.

A.D. 1272. He is proclaimed king. 20 Nov.

Hic tempore quo pater defunctus est in Terra Sancta commorans obsequio Crucis insistebat, absensque[1] regni administrationem exequi[2] non valebat; propter quod die proximo post patris ejus sepulturam frater Robertus Cantuariæ archiepiscopus et Gilbertus Glouernensis comes cum aliis prælatis apud Novum Templum Londoniis convenientes Edwardum absentem dominum suum ligeum[3] recognoverunt[4] paternique honoris successorem. Ordinaveruntque de assensu reginæ matris custodes regni ministros fideles qui regio fisco præessent, et proventus regni ad opus regis novi ex integro reservarent, cujus pacem jam ubique fecerunt proclamari per Angliam.[5] Eodem anno Edmundus comes Lancastriæ, filius regis Henrici, de Terra Sancta venit in Angliam.

Cap. CXLI.

Edward arrives in Sicily. A.D. 1273. He goes to Rome.

Edwardus[6] in Accon[7] auxilio diutius frustra expectato relictis ad terræ defensionem stipendiariis nonnullis naves repatriaturus ingrediens cursu velivolo Sciciliam usque pervenit, ubi a rege Karolo suscipitur cum honore; qui per aliquot dies cum eo perhendinavit, postea Romæ a papa honorifice suscipitur. Discedens ergo a curia per Italiæ partes progreditur, ubique a civibus cum gaudio receptus[8] est.

He passes into France.

Post hæc venit Franciam ubi regi Franciæ[9] fecit homagium pro Wasconia; ibi enim habuit plura adversa cum uno comite illius patriæ, quibus pacificatis

---

[1] *absensque*] ablensque. A. the *l* converted into an *s* by the addition of a curve at the top.

[2] *exequi*] assequi. B.D.

[3] *ligeum*] ligium. A. legitimum. B.D.

[4] *recognoverunt*] cognoverunt. B. D.

[5] *Angliam*] totam. præm. D.

[6] The first word of f. 81. A. headed: De Re. Ed. fi. Hē. IIII.

[7] *Accon*] Actoñ. B. passim. Acton. D. passim.

[8] *receptus*] susceptus. B.D.

[9] *Franciæ*] Partly written upon an erasure in A.

Angliam adiit. Acta sunt hæc anno MCCLXXIII. Edwardi Quarti primo, post Conquæstum Primus.[1] A.D. 1273

Kalendas Maias[2] apud Lugdunum, anno Domini MCCLXXIIII., sub papa Gregorio X., generale celebratur concilium, ad quod Græci et Tartari solemnes nuntios transmiserunt. In illo concilio prohibitum est bigamis[3] primam tonsuram deferre. A.D. 1274. The Council of Lyons.

In via versus istud concilium venerabilis doctor frater Thomas de Acquino, de Ordine Fratrum Prædicatorum,[4] in quadam abbatia Cisterciensis Ordinis quæ dicitur Fossa Nova diem clausit extremum. Death of S. Thomas Aquinas.

Eo[5] anno Henricus rex Nauarriæ moritur, unica filia relicta hærede, cujus uxor regina postea nupsit Edmundo regis Angliæ germano, qui de regina tres filios procreavit:[6] primogenitum Thomam Lancastriæ comitem, qui post decapitatus fuit apud Pontem-Fractum; Henricum de Lancastria dominum de Monemutha; tertium, Johannem qui cum sorore in Galliis morabatur.

Edwardus vero rebus dispositis et pacificatis in Wasconia versus Angliam se dirigit, ubi a clero et populo cum gaudio receptus[7] et maximo honore. Edward lands at Dover. 2 Aug.

Dominica infra Octabas Assumptionis Virginis Mariæ in ecclesia Westmonasteriensi una cum Alianora consorte sua a fratre Roberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo inungitur in regem et solemniter coronatur. Ea[8] solemnitati interfuerunt regina mater, Alexander rex Scottorum,[9] duxque Britanniæ, ambo[10] regis sorores, cum prælatorum, comitum, et[11] baronum et cæterorum His coronation. 19 Aug.

---

[1] *Quarti . . . . Primus*] Quarti crossed out in B. Primi post Conquæstum primo. D.

[2] *Kalendas Maias*] Kalendis Maii. D.

[3] Nota de bigamis. in marg. A.D.

[4] Thomas de Acquino. in marg. A.D.

[5] *Eo*] Eodem. B.D.

[6] De tribus filiis Edmundi comitis Lancastriæ. in marg. A.D.

[7] *receptus*] est. præm. B.D.

[8] *Ea*] Eæ. B.D.

[9] Coronatio regis Edwardi post Conquæstum Primi. in marg. A.D.

[10] *ambo*] ambæ. B.D.

[11] *et*] om. B.D.

A.D. 1274. multitudo[1] copiosa. Ætatis suæ tunc XXXVI. ann ; qui[2] in crastino coronationis suæ recepto a rege Scottorum homagio ipsum dimisit ad propria plurimum honoratum.

Cap. CXLII.

A.D. 1275. A Parliament at London. 16 Feb. An earthquake. 8–15 Sept A pestilence. A fifteenth granted. 13 Oct.

Anno Domini MCCLXXV., et regni sui secundo, rex Edwardus parliamentum Londoniis celebravit ubi statuta sunt edita quæ vocantur Westmonasterii prima.

Eodem anno in partibus Angliæ Australibus et Occidentalibus terræ motus horribilis contigit infra Octabas Nativitatis Virginis Gloriosæ. Inde sèquitur pestilentia et ægritudo. Scabies ovium tunc incepit in Anglia. Solvit hoc anno populus regi quindecimam partem bonorum suorum quæ patri suo dicebatur concessa.

Cap. CXLIII.

A.D. 1276. Anno MCCLXXVI. comitissa Leycestriæ, quæ marito occiso cum suis in Galliam fugerat, et in domo sororum Ordinis Prædicatorum apud Mountargis a sorore viri sua fundata morabatur, filiam suam misit in Walliam principi Lewlino,[3] sicut patre puellæ vivente sub certis pactis conventum fuerat[4] maritandam. Ducem vero itineris ac procuratorum negotii Aymerum filium suum germanum puellæ[5] constituit, assignata eisdem comitiva honesta. Qui suspectum habentes iter per Angliam a litore Gallico navigantes emenso

---

[1] *multitudo*] multitudine. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 81 v. A. headed: De Re. Edw. a conq̄. primo.

[3] *Lewlino*] Leulino. B. passim.

[4] *fuerat*] fuit. B.

[5] *puellæ*] filium. præm. B.

multo maris spatio ad Insulas Siluias quæ terminos[1] Cornubiæ e vicino respiciunt devehuntur,[2] ubi a IIII. navibus Bristolliensibus ex insperato supervenientibus comprehensi ad præsentiam regis Angliæ deducuntur, qui retenta puella honorifice in comitiva reginæ Aymerum fratrem suum primo in castro de Corf, post in castro de Schirbourne[3] sub custodia libera et secura detinuit. A.D. 1276. Eleanor de Montfort taken on her way to Llewelyn.

Hoc anno XVI. kalendas Julii venerabile corpus Beati Ricardi Cistrensis[4] episcopi translatum est, et in capsa argentea ac deaurata honorifice collocatum.

Eodem anno ostensæ sunt concordantiæ magnæ, quæ Anglicanæ vocantur, editæ per fratrem Johannem de Dernyntoun[5] prædicatorem et nuper confessorem regis Henrici IIII.

Cap. CXLIV.

Anno Domini MCCLXXVII. Lewlinus post multas cædes regi Angliæ illatas fugatus ad castellum de Snoudoun[6] latenter accurrit. Ibique a rege obsessus tandem ad pacem regis se reddidit et provolutus ad pedes regis longo spatio veniam petit.[7] Tandem sub hac forma sibi[8] condonatum[9] est: Quod regi redderet pro delicto commisso[10] L. milia[11] marcarum. Et sic redditæ[12] sunt omnes concapti ad Leulinum. Obligatur Leulinus quod bis quolibet anno veniret ad regis parliamentum, ubicumque fuerit in Anglia. A.D. 1277. Llewelyn retires to Snowdon, and submits to the king. The conditions of his pardon.

[1] *terminos*] t⁹inos. A.
[2] *devehuntur*] evehuntur. D.
[3] *Schirebourne*] Shirborn̄. B. Shyrborn̄. D.
[4] *Cistrensis*] Cestrensis. B.
[5] *Dernyntoun*] Dernyntoñ. B.D.
[6] *Snoudoun*] Snoudoñ. B. Snowdoñ. D.
[7] *petit*] petiit. B.D.
[8] *sibi*] ei. B.D.
[9] *condonatum*] condonata. B.D.
[10] The first word of f. 82. A. headed: Edw. I. a conq̃.
[11] L. *milia*] 5000. B.
[12] *redditæ*] redditi. B.D.

A.D. 1277. Præter hæc princeps fratres suos quos læserat placabit.[1] Habuit enim tres fratres quorum Owenum et Rodericum incarceravit, Dauid autem[2] cum rege Angliæ multos annos steterat; a quo contra morem gentis suæ miles factus est; ob probitatem et fidelitatem suam plurimum erat regi acceptus,[3] unde eidem[4] in Wallia castrum de Tynebie[5] contulit cum terris adjacentibus ad valorem mille librarum[6] annui[7] redditus. Insuper et uxorem ei contulit filiam comitis Derebiæ nuper a marito suo viduata.[8] Owenus favore regis liberatur[9] a carcere, quem paulo ante Rodericus infregerat, et fratrem ejus fugiens in Angliam[10] morabatur.

Cap. CXLV.

A.D. 1278. Marriage of Eleanor de Montfort and Llewelyn. 13 Oct.

Anno Domini mcclxxviii. rex Angliæ filium comitis Leycestriæ apud Insulam Silueas captam principi Walliæ dedit in uxorem. Nuptiarum solemnitatem impensis propriis agens suaque ac reginæ præsentia illos honorans.

Jews hanged for clipping. 12 Nov.

Hoc[11] anno Judæi pro tonsura monetæ in magna multitudine ubique per Angliam suspenduntur.

Cap. CXLVI.

A.D. 1279. John de Peckham

Anno mcclxxix. frater Johannes de[12] Pecham Cicestrensis diœcesis de Ordine Minorum[13] venit in

---

[1] *placabit*] placabat. B.D.
[2] *autem*] enim. B.
[3] *acceptus*] est. add. D.
[4] *eidem*] ei. D.
[5] *Tynebie*] Tyneby. B. Tynbi. D.
[6] *librarum*] marcarum. D.
[7] *annui*] anni. B.
[8] *viduata*] viduatam. B.D.
[9] *liberatur*] liberatus est. B.D.
[10] *Angliam*] Anglia. B.D.
[11] Nota. in marg. A.D.
[12] *de*] om. B.D.
[13] *Minorum*] Fratrum. præm. B.D.

Anglia a domino papa in Cantuariensem archiepiscopum consecratus. Moneta Angliæ per tonsuram nimis deteriorata ex mandato regis renovatur. Obolus qui prius formam semicirculi habebat [1] tanquam denarium [2] rotundus fit, juxta Vaticinium Merlini, dicentis: Findetur forma commercii, dimidium rotundum erit. A.D. 1279. consec. archbp. of Canterbury. 6 March. A.D. 1280. A new coinage.

Anno Domini MCCLXXX. Edwardus rex de partibus Gallicanis in Anglia reversus;[3] hic de lapidibus iaspidum quos secum attulerat paternum fecit reparari sepulchrum.

Cap. CXLVII.

Anno Domini MCCLXXXI. Dauid principis [4] Walliæ germanus, immemor beneficii regis Angliæ qui eum promoverat et contra prosequentem se protexerat, ad insurgendum contra regem Walliam concitavit;[5] ipse quoque primus facinus aggreditur, exemplum dando cæteris Gwalensium [6] nobilibus. Cepitque proditiose Rogerum de Clifford in castro suo de Haywardyn nihil mali suspicantem. A.D. 1282. The Welsh take Hawarden. 22 March.

Rex tandem commotus super rumoribus auditis congregavit exercitum et principem et fratrem suum debellavit. Hoc anno translatum est in locum eminentiorem sanctum corpus Beati Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi. Comes [7] Glouerniæ Gilbertus plures Wallensium occidit juxta Lantilawhir'.[8] Discendente comite Edward marches against them.

---

[1] *habebat*] hẽabat. A. obolus fit. in marg. A.D. with a ⊕ in rubric. in A.

[2] *denarium*] denarius. B.D.

[3] *Anglia reversus*] Angliam reversus est. B.D.

[4] *principis*] principis. A., the second *i* interlined. princeps. D.

[5] *concitavit*] excitavit. D.

[6] *Gwalensium*] Wallensium. B. D.

[7] The first word of f. 82 v. A. headed: Edw. I. a conq̃.

[8] *Lantilawhir'*] Lantylawhyr'. B.

A.D. 1282. princeps[1] Walliæ terram de Cardigan et Stradewi[2] devastavit. Inde princeps versus terram de Buelth[3] se destinavit cum paucis. Cui cum sua militia supervenientes nobiles viri, Johannes Giffardi, Edmundus de Mortuo Mari, de Walensibus nihil suspicantes, congressi sunt cum eis. Ibi enim occisus est Lewlinus cum omnibus suis, nec unus evasit; factumque est hoc feria sexta ante festum Luciæ anno MCCLXXXII. Capite[4] Lewlini agnito inter decapitatos mittitur ad regem. Rex eadem hora illud misit Londoniis ad Turrim et ibi super palum ponitur.

Llewelyn is killed. 11 Dec.

Death of Thomas bp. of Hereford. 25 Aug.

Hoc anno Beatus[5] Thomas Herfordensis episcopus in via versus curiam morbo fatigatus migravit ad Dominum.

Cap. CXLVIII.

A.D. 1283. A Parliament at Acton Burnel. 30 Sept.

Anno MCCLXXXIII. rex tenuit parliamentum apud Actoun Burnel ibique edidit statuta a loco cognominata. Eodem anno ossa Beati Willielmi Eboracensis archiepiscopi in altiorem locum cum solemnitate[6] maxima transferuntur.

Anthony de Bek elected bp. of Durham. 9 July.

Antonio de Beke,[7] defuncto Roberto de Insula Dunelmensi episcopo, in successorem ejus electus[8] ab Eboracensi archiepiscopo consecratur.

---

[1] *princeps*] The second *p* interlined in A.

[2] *Stradewi*] Stradewy. B.

[3] *Buelth*] Spelt with Anglo-Saxon *th* hard in A. Buely. B.

[4] *anno* MCCLXXXII. *Capite*] Anno 1282 capite. B. Anno Domini 1282 capite. D.

[5] *Beatus*] Bẽs. A. om. D.

[6] *solemnitate*] honore. D.

[7] *Beke*] Bek. B.

[8] *electus*] electo. B.D.

Cap. CXLIX.

Anno mcclxxxiiii. apud castrum de Karnarvan,[1] quod nuper rex fortissimum fecerat, natus est regi[2] filius ex nomine patris vocatus Edwardus.[3] Rex de Snowdoun[4] per Walliam progrediens Occidentalem intravit Glammorgan.[5] A.D. 1284. Birth of Edward of Caernarvan. 25 April.

Hoc anno Aldefonsus filius regis optimæ indolis licet juvenis et Deo devotus obiit apud Wyndelesore[6] et sepelitur Westmonasterio, regina matre ordinante sepulturam. Death of Prince Alphonso. 19 Aug.

Maria filia regis Angliæ sanctimonialis efficitur, assentientibus parentibus, licet non matre regis. The Princess Mary takes the veil.

Anno[7] mcclxxxv. rex de Bristollia Cantuariam profectus disposuit in Gallias transfretare, sed audito rumore de infirmitate matris revertitur Ambresburiam, et misit qui se excusarent[8] apud regem Franciæ.

Anno[9] mcclxxxvi. rex Angliæ in Gallias, occurrente sibi rege Francorum Ambianis, ibi dicitur ipsum fecisse homagium propter terras quas de eo tenet[10] in regno Franciæ. Hoc anno post Pentecosten Alianora, mater regis Angliæ, spreto sæculo, apud Ambrosburiam[11] habitum induit monacharum. A.D. 1286. Edward goes to Gascony. Eleanor, the Queen-mother, takes the veil.

Anno[9] mcclxxxvii. die quadam cum rex et regina in quadam camera convenientes[12] super lectum quendam confabularentur, ictus fulminis per fenestram quæ eis erat[13] a dorso ingressus et inter eos transiens, A.D. 1287. A narrow escape.

---

[1] *Karnarvan*] Kanariuañ. B. Karnaryvan. D.

[2] *regi*] regis. B.

[3] Edwardus de Karnarvan natus est. in marg. A. Edwardus de Karnaryvan. in marg. D.

[4] *Snowdoun*] Snoudoñ. B. Snowdoñ. D.

[5] *Glammorgan*] Glammorgañ. B.

[6] *Wyndelesore*] Wyndesore. D.

[7] *Anno*] Domini. add. B.D.

[8] *excusarent*] excusaret. B.D.

[9] *Anno*] Domini. add. D.

[10] *tenet*] tenꝫ. A. tenuit. B.D.

[11] *Ambrosburiam*] Ambrysb.' B. Ambresb'. D.

[12] The first word of f. 83. A. headed: Ed. I. a conq̃.

[13] *erat*] aderat. B.D.

A.D. 1287. ipsis penitus illæsis, duos domicellos qui[1] eis assistebant interfecit.

A.D. 1288. Fire at Boston. Anno MCCLXXXVIII.[2] armiger quidam, nomine Robertus Camerarius, cum complicibus suis tentoria mercatorum apud Sanctum Botulphum incendens,[3] quód magnam partem villæ et ecclesiam Fratrum Prædicatorum combussit.

Cheapness of wheat. Fuit[4] autem hoc anno in Anglia tanta frugum abundantia ut quarterium frumenti pro XX., alicubi pro XVI., alicubi pro XII. denariis venderetur.

Cap. CL.

A.D. 1296. Expulsion of the Jews. Anno Domini[5] MCCLXXXIX. rex omnes Judæos de Anglia expellens,[6] datis eis expensis in Gallias, cætera bona[7] eorum confiscavit; pro qua expulsione concessum[8] est sibi quindecima pars bonorum tempore Quadragesimali hujus anni.

A.D. 1286. Death of Alexander III. of Scotland. 19 March. Eodem anno Alexander rex Scociæ cum uxorem suam, comitis Flandriæ filiam,[9] et post Margaretam regis Angliæ filiam duxerat, nocte[10] quadam admodum obscura eam visitare voluisset, equo cespitante et[11] rex lapsus et collisus rupto collo expiravit. Hic de uxore prima prolem geminam educavit, de secunda vero nullam; nomina geminum: Alexander et Margareta. Alexander filius regis absque prole inmatura morte

---

[1] *domicellos qui*] damicellas quæ. B.D.

[2] *MCCLXXXVIII*] 1288. B. the last 8 on an erasure.

[3] *incendens*] incendit. B.D.

[4] De prctio frumen[ti]. in marg. A.D.

[5] *Domini*] om. B.D.

[6] Expulsio Judæorum. in marg. A. Outside the rubric surrounding this note is a small erasure in A. Expulsio Judæorum de Anglia. in marg. D.

[7] *bona*] bonorum. B.D.

[8] *concessum*] concessa. B.D.

[9] De morte Alexandri regis Scociæ. in marg. A.D.

[10] *nocte*] cum. præm. B.D.

[11] *et*] om. B D.

prævenit. Filia Margareta regi Norwegiæ desponsata filiam unicam peperit nomine Margaretam quæ matrem supervixit. Hanc consulto rege Angliæ magnates Scociæ regni illius recognoverunt hæredem, quæ accersita per regem Angliæ nuntios[1] cum per navigium tenderet in Scociam infirmata in mari apud Orkades[2] mortua est. A.D. 1283. A.D. 1290. Death of the Maid of Norway.

Anno MCCXC.[3] omnes in dubium versi Scotti[4] quis hujus patriæ foret justus hæres. Eodem anno regina Angliæ mortua est; cujus corpus in Westmonasterio[5] sepelitur. Death of Queen Eleanor. 28 Nov.

CAP. CLI.

ANNO MCCXCI., rex Angliæ Scociæ appropinquans parliamentum tenuit apud Norham, ubi coram populo utriusque regni, clericis et laicis, jus suum in superius dominium regni[6] Scociæ fideliter declaravit, petivitque ut Scotti hoc recognoscerent, protestando jus coronæ suæ usque ad effusionem sanguinis defensurum, Ab omnibus qui jus in regnum[7] Scociæ sibi vendicabant recogniturus[8] est superior dominus Scociæ per literas inde confectas eorum sigillis munitas, tenorem subscriptum in Gallico continentes. Hic primo vobis ostendam[9] qualiter dominium Scociæ regi Angliæ[10] devolutum est.[11] Regnum Scociæ omnino sine principe desolatum velut pupillus vel orphanus dimissum;[12] illius patriæ magnates inter se dimicantes, ac etiam A.D. 1291. A parliament at Norham. 10 May. Edward I. declares his claim to be considered lord paramount of Scotland.

[1] *nuntios*] per. præm. B.D.
[2] *Orkades*] Orcades. B.
[3] *MCCXC*] 1289. B.D.
[4] *Scotti*] sunt. add. D.
[5] *in Westmonasterio*] apud Westmonasterium. B.D.
[6] *regni*] Written upon an erasure in A.
[7] *regnum*] regno. B.D.
[8] *recogniturus*] recognitus. B.D.
[9] *ostendam*] omnimodam. B.D. subpuncted in B.
[10] The first word of f. 83 v. A headed : De Rege Edw.
[11] *est*] ostendam. add. B.D.
[12] *dimissum*] divisum. B.D

A.D. 1291. contendentes quis eorum dominaretur, tandem nutu proprio rege Angliæ inconsulto pepigerunt intra se ad principem totius mundi validiorem literas suas signis suis munitas transmittere, ut quemcumque ipse vel concilium suum[1] coram ipso de Scottorum natione in regem eligeret, quod ipsi Scotti ipsum a rege Angliæ[2] et concilio suo electum in regem Scotiæ haberent, sibi et hæredibus suis ab[3] ipso linealiter descendentibus. Rex Angliæ ista perpendens super istis literis tribus diebus consuluit, unde sibi revelatum est[4] de sanguine Scoticana sit[5] sub hac forma.

Fuit[6] quidam magnas de Anglia, comes Huntingdoniæ, Dauid nomine. Hic fuit germanus Alexandri regis Scociæ. Hic Dauid ex nepote regis Angliæ tres generavit filias, quas tribus Scociæ magnatibus maritavit, unam Edwardo de Balliolo patri Johannis, secundam Eustacio Comyn patri Johannis, tertiam Edwardo de Bruys patri Roberti. Isti tres filii patribus mortuis totam Scociam deduxere.[7]

Dauid vero mortuo cui regnum Scociæ devolutum fuerat,[8] fratre Alexandro mortuo, litigarunt inter[9] se isti tres, scilicet, Johannes de Balliolo, Johannes Comyn, Robertus le Bruys. Tandem pacificati ut prius unanimo[10] consensu regi Angliæ miserunt tenorem sequentem:[11]

---

[1] *suum*] Interlined in A.

[2] *Angliæ*] Angliæ. add. A. subpuncted.

[3] *ab*] de. B.

[4] *est*] Interlined in A. *pr. man.*

[5] *sit*] Interlined in A. *pr. man.*

[6] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[7] *deduxere*] deduxerunt. B.

[8] *fuerat*] erat. D.

[9] *litigarunt inter*] litigaverunt intra. B.D.

[10] *unanimo*] unanimi. B., corrected.

[11] Blanks were originally left in A. for the following document, and for those at pp. 152, 156, which are all written in the author's hand, but in blacker ink, and a wider character than the passages immediately preceding and succeeding each of them. They are all omitted in H.

Cap. CLII.

A.D. 1291. Submission of the competitors for the crown of Scotland.

A TOUZ ki ceste lettre[1] verrunt ou orrunt: Florenz[2] count de Hoiland, Johan de[3] Baillole seygnour de Gawway, Robert de Bruys seignour de Wale Danand'[4], Jon[5] de Hasting seignour de Bergeueni,[6] Jon Comyn seignour de Badenaugh,[7] Patrik de Dunbar cont[8] de la Marche, Jon de Vesci pur soun pier,[9] Nichol de Soules, Willam de Rose, saluz en Dieu. Cum nous entendoum auere dreiz en reaum descoce,[10] e cel droit mustrer,[11] chalanger, averrer, devaunt[12] celuy ke plus de poier, iurisdictioun e resoun[13] eust de nostre dreit[14] trier: E le noble prince sir[15] Edward' par le[16] grace de Dieu Rey dengleter[17] nous est enformez per bones et suffisance[18] resouns que a loy[19] apent e auer deit le souereyn seyngourie[20] de dist realme descoce:[21] E le conisance[22] de oier,[23] trier et terminer le nostre droit: Nous de nostre propre uolunte[24] voloms, otreioms, e grauntoms[25] sanz nule[26] maner de force ou de[27] estresce de receyuer dreit de vaunt loy[28] cum souerein seigour'[29]

---

[1] *lettre*] lettere. B.D.
[2] *Florenz*] Florence. B. passim.
[3] *de*] le. B.
[4] *Danand'*] Denand'. D.
[5] *Jon*] Joħn. B. passim.
[6] *Bergeueni*] Bergeueny. B.
[7] *Badenaugh*] Badenauħ. B.
[8] *cont*] count. B.
[9] *Vesci pur soun pier*] Vescy pur soū de Pier. B.
[10] *descoce*] de Scoce. B.D.
[11] *mustrer*] mostrer. D.
[12] *devaunt*] de vaunt. B.D. passim.
[13] *resoun*] reisoū. D.
[14] *dreit*] dreyt. B.
[15] *sir*] sire. D.
[16] *le*] la. B.
[17] *dengleter*] dengleterre. B.
[18] *suffisance*] suffisaunce. B.
[19] *a loy*] aloy. D.
[20] *souereyn seyngourie*] souerayn seygnoury. B. sovereyn seygnorie. D.
[21] The first word of f. 84. A. headed: post Conquæst. I.
[22] *conisance*] conisaunce. B.
[23] *oier*] dier. B.
[24] *uolunte*] voluntę. B.D.
[25] *grauntoms*] grantoms. B. Litera Scottorum missa regi Angliæ. in marg. A.D.
[26] *nule*] nulle. B.
[27] *ou de*] oude. B.D.
[28] *loy*] loi. B.
[29] *souereyn seigour'*] souerayn seygnour. B.D. passim.

A.D. 1291. de la tere: E voloms ialemayns[1] e promettoms, que nous aueroms e tendromes ferm e estable[2] son fet: E ke celoy enportera le coroune[3] du reaume descoce aki[4] dreit le durra devaunt loy. En tesmoygne de cest chose nous auoms mys nos seals a cest escrit, fete e done[5] a Norham, le mardi prochey[n] [a]pres[6] le Ascensioun[7] lan de grace MCC. nonaunt primereyn.

Dated Tuesday 5 June.

Facta itaque recognitione superioris dominii et submissione recipiendi quod coram rege Angliæ jure fuerit diffinitum, rex castra Scociæ petivit et terram totam sibi ut per seysinam pacificam jus[8] superioris dominii quod jam per suas literas recognoverant claresceret universis. Annuerunt Scotti petitionem regiam confectis super hoc literis et ab eisdem signatis hunc tenorem continentes:[9]

CAP. CLIII.

Seizin of the land granted to him.

A TOUZ iceus[10] que[11] cest[12] lettre presente verrount ou orrount[13] Florenz etc. Com[14] nous[15] eoms otrie e graunte[16] de nostre bone uolunte[17] et commune assent al[18] noble prince sire[19] Edward', par la[20] grace de Dieu Rey dengletere, sanz nule[21] destrece, ke ile auxi cum souereyn[22] seygour' de le tere descoce puyse oier,[23]

---

[1] *ialemayns*] ia lemās. B.

[2] *tendromes ferm e estable*] tendroms ferm e stable. B.D.

[3] *celoy enportera le coroune*] celoi en portera le coroun. B.

[4] *aki*] a ky. B.D.

[5] *escrit fete e done*] escript fere a doñ. B.D.

[6] *procheyn apres*] prochein a pres. B. The MS. A. is smeared here, so that the bracketed letters are not entirely visible.

[7] *Ascenscioun*] Ascencoñ. B.

[8] *jus*] istius. B.

[9] *continentes*] continentibus. B.D.

[10] *iceus*] iceux. B.

[11] *que*] q̃. A.B. qui. D.

[12] *cest*] ceste. B.

[13] *presente verrount ou orrount*] present verrunt ou orrunt. B.

[14] *Com*] Cū. B.

[15] *nous*] no^{s}. A.B. passim.

[16] *graunte*] graunt. B.

[17] *uolunte*] volunt. B.

[18] *al*] a le. B.

[19] *sire*] sir. B. Syre. D.

[20] *la*] le. B.

[21] *nule*] nulle. B.

[22] *souereyn*] So in B.

[23] *oier*] dier. B.

trier, e terminer, nos[1] chalanges e nos[1] demandes A.D. 1291.
que[2] nous entendomes[3] demostrer' e auerrer[4] pur nostre dreit[5] en reaume descoce e dreit[5] receyure de vant luy com[6] souereyn seygour' de le tere[7] promettanz que son fete aueroms e tendroms[8] ferm e estable:[9] E que celoy enportera le coroun del[10] realme a ki[11] dreyt en durra deuaunt loi:[12] Mes pur ceo que le auandist Rei[13] ne poet tiel maner[14] de conisance faire ne acomplir saunz[15] iugement ne iugement deit estre[16] sanz execucione ne execucione ne poet ile[17] faire duement sanz la possessioun e seysyne de meisme[18] le tere e de chasteaux: Nous voloms, otreioms, e grauntomes[19] que ile come souerayne seygour' a parfaire les choses auandites[20] eit la seisyne des teres[21] e des chasteaus[22] descoce tanke dreyt soit fait[23] e perforni au demandaunz en tiel[24] manere que auaunt[25] ceo que ile eit le seisyne[26] auandist face bone seurte[27] e sofisande[28] a demandanz[29] e as gardeyns e a la commune

---

[1] *nos*] no°. A.B.D. passim.
[2] *que*] qui. D. passim.
[3] *entendomes*] entendoms. B.
[4] *demostrer' e auerrer*] demonstrer e auerrer'. B.
[5] *dreit*] dreyt. B.D.
[6] *com*] cum. D.
[7] *le tere*] leter'. B.
[8] *e tendroms*] intendroms. B.
[9] *estable*] stable. B.
[10] *del*] de. B.
[11] *ki*] ky. B.
[12] *loi*] loy. B.
[13] *auandist Rei*] auendist Rey. B. avauntdist Rey. D.
[14] *tiel maner*] tyl manere. B. tyel manere. D.
[15] *conisance faire ne acomplir saunz*] conisaunce fair ne a complir sanz. B.
[16] *deit estre*] deyt. B.
[17] *execucione ne excucione ne poet ile*] execucoñ ne execucoñ poet il. B. execucione ne execucioñ poit ile. D.
[18] *possessioun e seysyne de meisme*] possessione seysine de meysme. B.D.
[19] *grauntomes*] grauntoms. B.
[20] *auandites*] de auenditz. B.
[21] *seisyne des teres*] seysine des terres. B.
[22] *chasteaus*] chasteaunce. B.
[23] *dreyt . . . fait*] dreit . . . fayt. D.
[24] *perforni au demandaunz en tiel*] performe au demaundanx a tyel. B.
[25] *auaunt*] a vaunt. B.
[26] *seisyne*] seysine. B. seysyne. D.
[27] *seurte*] suerte. B.
[28] *sofisande*] suffisande. B.
[29] *demandanz*] demandanx. B.

A.D. 1291. du realme descoce[1] a fere le reuersione[2] de meisme le reaume, chasteaux, oue[3] tute le realte, dignite, seigourie, franchise,[4] custumes, dreiturs, leis, usages,[5] e possessions, oue tute maners des aportenance[6] en meisme lestate kile[7] estoient quant le seysine loi fust baile ou deliuere[8] a celoi que le dreit en partera[9] per iugement de le realte saue al roi[10] dengleter le homage de celoi[11] que serra Rei[12] descoce. Issynt[13] que la reuersion[14] soit fait deynz[15] le deus mois apres le iour que le droit seit trie e aferme[16] e que les issues[17] de meimes le tere[18] en meen tens receiues[19] seynt sauuement mys en depose et bien gardez[20] par le maine le chambrelayne[21] descoce que ore est et de celoi que serra[22] assigne aloi[23] de par[24] le rei[25] dengletere e de souz lour' seals saue resonable sustenaunce[26] de la tere et des chasteause[27] et de ministres du[28] reaume. En temoyng' de cest chose auantdistes nous auoms[29] mys nos seals a cest escrit.[30]

Dated Wednesday 6 June. Fete e done[31] a Norham le Mekerdi apres lassen-

---

[1] The first word of f. 84 v. A headed : De Rege Edwardo.

[2] *reuersione*] reuersyon. B.

[3] *oue*] ou. B.

[4] *seigourie, franchise*] seignourie, fraunchise. B.

[5] *dreiturs . . . usages*] dretturs . . . vsages. B.

[6] *aportenance*] portenaunce. B.

[7] *lestate kile*] le state kyle. B.

[8] *loi fust baile ou deliuere*] loy fust bayle ou delyuere. B.

[9] *partera*] portera. B. pertera. D.

[10] *roi*] roy. B.

[11] *celoi*] celoy. B.

[12] *Rei*] Rey. B.

[13] *Issynt*] Issint. B.

[14] *reuersion*] reuersyoñ. B.

[15] *deynz*] deynx. B.

[16] *aferme*] a ferme. B.

[17] *issues*] yssues. B.D.

[18] Relaxatio Scociæ in manus regis Angliæ. in marg. A.

[19] *receiues*] receyues. B.D.

[20] *gardez*] gardes. B.

[21] *chambrelayne*] chambirlayn. B.

[22] *serra*] cerra. B.

[23] *a loi*] corrected into *a lor* in B. aloy. D.

[24] *par*] p. B. per. D.

[25] *rei*] roy. D.

[26] *sustenance*] sustinaunce. B.

[27] *chasteause*] chasteaux. B.

[28] *du*] deu. B.

[29] *auoms*] a voms. B.

[30] *escrit*] escript. B.

[31] *done*] doñ. B.

cioun[1] nostre Seigour'. Lane[2] de grace MCC. nonaunt primereyn.[3] A.D. 1291.

Has literas prænotatas rex Edwardus misit diversis abbatiis in Anglia inter quos misit tenorem sequentem :

Vobis omnibus[4] mandamus quod has literas in cronicis vestris ad perpetuam rei gestæ memoriam faciatis annotari. Teste magistro Willielmo[5] de la Marche thesaurario nostro apud Westmonasterium. Nono die Julii, anno regni nostri XIX.

A.D. 1292. The Auditors appointed to determine upon the claims of the competitors, report in favour of John Balliol. 17 Nov.

Anno Domini MCCXCII. rex Angliæ post festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ in Scociam veniens, receptis eorum allegationibus qui regnum Scociæ sibi vendicabant pro jure suo, eligi fecit XL. personas, videlicet XX. de Anglia et XX. de Scocia, qui istas allegationes deliberata diligentia discuterent sententiam finalem, usque in festo[6] Sancti Michaelis proximo veniente[7] differens proferendam. Adveniente autem prædicto festo post diligentem negotii discussionem de assensu omnium XL. Johanni de Balliolo, qui de filia Dauid regis descenderat seniore, regnum Scociæ ex integro adjudicatur ; exclusis cæteris qui duabus[8] aliis sororibus descenderant.

Coronation of John Balliol. 30 Nov.

Johannes[9] vero in festo[10] Sancti Andreæ sequenti in Scocia in abbatia de la Skoune[11] canonicorum regularium[12] super lapidem regalem collocatus de assensu et voluntate regis et aliorum procerum solemniter[13] coronatur. Post vero coronationem accedens ad regem

---

[1] *lassencioun*] lasencoñ. B. lassencioñ. D.

[2] *Lane*] Lan. B.

[3] *nonaunt primereyn*] honant primereyñ. B.

[4] *omnibus*] oñ. B.

[5] *Willielmo*] om. D.

[6] *festo*] festum. D.

[7] *veniente*] sequente. B. sequens. D

[8] *duabus*] ex. præm. B.D.

[9] Coronatio Johannis le Bailole. in marg. A.D.

[10] *festo*] festivitate. B.D.

[11] *Skoune*] Scone. B.

[12] *regularium*] regalium. B.

[13] The first word of f. 85. A. headed : A Conquæstu I.

A.D. 1292. He does homage at Newcastle.

Angliæ qui festum Nativitatis Dominicæ apud Novum Castrum super Tynam tenuit, eidem fecit homagium in his verbis in Gallico :

Ceo [1] oiez vous mon sire [2] Edward Rei [3] dengleter et souereyn seigour' descoce et del realm ke ieo Jon de Bailol Rei descoce oue les aportenance [4] e oue kant que apurtenent le qel [5] ieo tenk e dei de dreit [6] e cleym pur mey [7] et pur mes heires Reis descoce : De vous et de uos [8] heires reis [9] dengleter heritablement tenir et fei et lealte [10] vous porterai pur mei [11] et pur mes heires Reis descoce a vous [12] et a vos [13] heires Reis dengleter' de vie et de menbre [14] et de terren honur en contre touce que purrount viure et morir si [15] Deus me eyd et les saynz.[16] Deinde facit homagium suum in eodem loco in his verbis :

Ceo [17] oiez vous mon sire [18] Edward,' etc. ke ieo Jon de Baillole [19] Rei [20] descoce vous serrai [21] feal et leal et feute et leute [22] vous porterai de vie et de menbre et me reconisce voster home lige [23] et vous cleym pur seyour' lige [24] de ters et de tenemens que ieo tenk en [25]

---

[1] *Ceo*] Eeo. B.

[2] *mon sire*] moun sire. B.

[3] Rex Scociæ fecit [fe^{t}] [hon. add. A. subpuncted] fidelitatem regi Angliæ. in marg. A.D.

[4] *aportenance*] aportenaunce. B.

[5] *que apurtenent le qel*] Ke aportenent le quel. B.

[6] *dreit*] creit. B.

[7] *mey*] moi. B.D.

[8] *uos*] vo^{9}. B.

[9] *heires reis*] heyres roys. D.

[10] *lealte*] corrected into *loyalte* by a later hand in B. le alte. D.

[11] *mei*] moi. B. moy. D.

[12] *vous*] vo^{9}. A.B.D.

[13] *vos*] vo^{9}. A.B.D.

[14] *menbre*] membre. B. passim.

[15] *si*] sy. D.

[16] *saynz*] sanz. B.

[17] *Ceo*] Eeo. B.

[18] *mon sire*] moñ syr^{9}. B. mon syre. D.

[19] *Baillole*] Balloil. B.

[20] *rei*] rey. D.

[21] *serrai*] serray. B.D.

[22] *feal . . . leal . . . leute*] corrected into *foyal . . . loyal . . . loyalte.* in B. by a later hand.

[23] *reconisce voster home lige*] recognisce vostre homelige. B.D. Homagium regis Scociæ. in marg. A.D.

[24] *lige*] A cross follows this word in A. but it is not repeated in any part of the margin, nor is any note or erasure visible. liege. B.

[25] *en*] in. B.

tere descoce ou cleym tenire de vous et des[1] vos heires Reis dengleter[2] de vie et de menbre et de terren honur[3] en contre touce que purrount[4] viure et morire si Dieus etc.[5] Et rex recepit homagium in forma prædicta suo et alterius jure salvo. Rex autem Angliæ Johanni regi Scociæ regnum Scottorum cum pertinentiis eidem indilate restituit. Actumque est hoc VII. kalendas Januarii videlicet die Sancti Stephani Protomartyris, anno Domini MCCXCII.[6] A.D. 1292. 26 Dec.

CAP. CLIV.

ANNO Domini MCCXCIII. facta est magna discussio[7] in mari inter Anglos et Normannos, sed Normanni triumphabant; post vero III. menses iterum congressi sunt cum majori navium multitudine, sed tunc Angli victoria sunt potiti. Pro qua re[8] rex Franciæ in aula sua Parisius personaliter sedens pro tribunali regem Angliæ pro homagio suo faciendo fecit appellare,[9] qui die præfixo nec[10] comparent nec assoinatus ab ore regis amerciatus est. Qui statim constabularium Franciæ misit Wasconiam in manu armata et ipsum nomine regis Franciæ occupare.[11] A.D. 1292-3. Disputes between the mariners of Normandy and the Cinque Ports. A.D. 1293. Philip IV. summons Edward to answer for his subjects.

Rex Angliæ ista audiens misit regi Franciæ personas idoneas pro pace tractanda, modicum tamen profuit. Rex enim Franciæ indignatus non adquievit. Discussio vero inter naves in mari facta est die Sancti Georgii Martyris, ubi Angli triumphabant. Victory of the English. 23 April. (15 May ?)

---

[1] *des*] de B.D.

[2] *heires Reis dengleter*] heires Rei dengletr[9]. B. heyres reys dengleter. D.

[3] *honur*] honour. B., and above.

[4] *purrount*] purrunt. B.

[5] *morire si Dieus*] morir si Deus. B.

[6] *Actumque . . . . MCCXCII.*] written in A. more closely and in slightly paler ink than the context.

[7] *discussio*] discutio. D.

[8] *re*] om. B.

[9] *appellare*] appellari. B.D.

[10] *nec*] non. B.D.

[11] *et ipsum . . . occupare*] ut ipsam . . . . occuparet. D.

Cap. CLV.

A.D. 1294. Edward sends an army to recover Gascony. 10 Oct.

Rex[1] igitur Angliæ indigne ferens a rege Franciæ ita frustatum[2] magnum adunavit exercitum pro terra sua Wasconiæ defendenda; qui plures nobiles Wasconiam mittens,[3] videlicet, Johannem de Britannia nepotem suum et comitem de Richemonde,[4] Johannem de Sancto Johanne, Robertum Typtot, Radulfum Tane, Hugonem Bardulf,[5] Adam Cretyng, barones, milites, et pedites,[6] populus numerosus;[7] per unum tamen germanum regis Franciæ nomine Karolum post eventum in Wasconiam duorum[8] mensium omnes fere fuerunt capti et Parisius etiam in carectis deducti.[8]

Insurrection of the Welsh under Madoc and Morgan.

Eodem autem[9] anno Wallenses regem Angliæ debellatum audientes in parte Aquilonari Walliæ contra regem insurrexerunt, duce eorum quidam[10] nomine Madoco,[11] magnam cædem in partibus illis Anglis inferentes.[12] In parte Walliæ Occidentali præfecerunt eis alium ducem, nomine Morgannum, qui quilibet eorum ex sua parte magnam Anglis molestiam ingerebant; post aliquot vero tempus ambo capti et Londoniis adducti, et inibi decollati.[13]

Cap. CLVI.

Rex autem Scociæ Johannes de rege Angliæ tales rumores audiens, homagium quod regi Angliæ fecerat infregit et curiæ Romanæ falsam suggestionem faciens

---

[1] The first word of f. 85 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.
[2] *frustatum*] se. præm. D.
[3] *mittens*] misit. D.
[4] *Richemonde*] Rychemound'. B.
[5] *Bardulf*] Bardolf. B.D.
[6] *milites et pedites*] militum et peditum. D. fuit. add. B.D.
[7] *numerosus*] innumerosus. B.D.
[8] *deducti*] ducti. B.D.
[9] *autem*] om. B.D.
[10] *quidam*] quodam. B.D.
[11] *Madoco*] Madoko. B. et add D.
[12] *inferentes*] inferebant. B.D.
[13] *decollati*] sunt. præm. B.D.

a domino papa[1] juramenti absolutionem petiit et impetravit.[2] Fecerant enim intra se XII. pares ad terram Scociæ judicandum, videlicet IIII. episcopos,[3] IIII. comites, et IIII. barones qui totam terram Scoticanam cum rege eorum regerent et gubernarent. Hoc anno tanta karistia fuit in Anglia quod pauperes passim afflicti inedia moriebantur; anno MCCXCIIII.; sed[4] in anno præcedenti rex milites suos misit in Wasconiam. A.D. 1294. A scarcity in England.

Anno MCCXCIIII. multitudo Normannorum in Angliam apud Douoriam applicuerunt, ibique occiderunt quos reppererunt; neutro sexui pepercerunt, igne et gladio omnia vastaverunt. Castri Douoriæ constabularius cum castellanis et villanis, monachi de cella Douoriæ, unusquisque in gradu suo viriliter resistentes Normannos cum magno pudore et divitiarum et hominum perditione fortiter de Anglia expulerunt. Dicitur tamen quod unus monachus de Douoria XXVII. Normannos manu propria interfecit. Quidam dicunt quod ista conflictio fuit in anno MCCXCV. Anno vero præcedenti a papa Cœlestino Robertus de Wynchelse in archiepiscopum Cantuariæ consecratur.[5] A.D. 1295. The French land at Dover. 1 Aug. They are driven off. Prowess of a monk of Dover. A.D. 1294. Robt. of Winchelsea cons. archbp. of Canterbury. 12 Sept.

[1] *papa*] om. D.

[2] *impetravit*] obtinuit. B.D.

[3] *episcopos*] Written upon an erasure in A. in paler ink than that of the context. The words *comites* and *barones* following are written in the same ink upon erasures, the last syllable of the former having been originally *nes* (in the ink of the context) and having been changed into *tes* by the erasure of the second stroke of the *n* and the addition, in the paler ink, of a cross stroke which unites the top of the first stroke to the *e* of the *nes*. The contrast between the colour of the two inks is marked. The character of the corrections is the same as the original hand.

[4] *sed*] sꝫ. A. s. B., the usual contraction for *scilicet*.

[5] Willielmus Coller⁹. obiit. in marg. A. traced perhaps by the author's hand. Colern was abbot of Malmesbury.

Cap. CLVII.

A.D. 1295. A treaty concluded between Balliol and Philip IV. 23 Oct.

Anno[1] Domini MCCXCV. Johannes rex Scociæ homagii et fidelitatis suæ immemor, destinatis ad regem Franciæ nuntiis, Willielmo de Sancto Andrea et Willielmo de Dunkeldyn episcopis, Ingramo de Umfraywyl[2] comite, Johanne de Soules barone, clam contra regem Angliæ fœdus iniit, petens in affirmationem negotii matrimonium contrahi inter filium suum Edwardum et nobilem puellam Johannam, Caroli[3] quondam regis filiam, regis Francorum germani, spondens se velle regem[4] Angliæ totis viribus impugnare et a guerra cum rege Franciæ impedire, sicut in scriptis inter utrosque confectis[5] continetur.

A.D. 1296. Edward arrives at Newcastle. 1 March.

Rex autem Angliæ proditionem regis Scottorum comperiens, magno coadunato exercitu ad Novum Castrum super Tynam veniens Johannem regem Scociæ edicto publico fecit proclamare ut de obiciendis responderet, quo ad diem præfixum nec se excusantem nec comparentem[6] rex de consilio suorum decrevit ulterius procedendum. Mox Scotti Angliam devastantes incendio et gladio.[7]

The Scots ravage England.

Edward takes Berwick. 30 March.

Balliol renounces his allegiance. 5 April.

Rex vero Angliæ fluvium de Twede transiens villam Berwici obsedit; post tertium diem, salvis omnibus suis vita et membris, villa sibi reddita est. Statim rex Scociæ literas minatorias regi Angliæ transmisit, ipsum regem Angliæ ab omni servitio, fidelitate, et homagio diffidendo. Deinde Scotti Angliam ex omni parte intrantes cæde et incendio penitus devastabant.

---

[1] The first word of f. 86. A. headed : A Conquæstu primo.

[2] *Umfraywyl*] Vmfraiwil. B. Vmfravyl. D.

[3] *Caroli*] Carali. A.; the cross stroke of the second *a* is erased. Karoli. B.D.

[4] *regem*] regi. B.

[5] *confectis*] om. B.D.

[6] *excusantem nec comparentem*] excusante nec comparente. B.D.

[7] *gladio*] destruxerunt. add. B. D.

Rex Angliæ ulterius progrediens cepit castrum de Dunbar, in quo cepit comites tres: de Atheles, Menetehg, Ros; barones VI.: Johannem Comyn juniorem, Willielmum de Sancto Claro, Ricardum de Sywardbi[1] senior,[2] Johannem de Huncimartino,[3] Alexandrum de Murref,[4] Edmundum Comyn de Kilbrid,[5] cum aliis militibus XXIX., clericis[6] duobus, scutiferis[7] LXXXIII., quos Angliæ transmisit ad custodiendum.[8] Post rex Angliæ[9] cepit castra de Rokesburgh, Edenburgh, Striuelyn,[10] Gedeworth,[11] et per totam Scociamdebacchavit. A.D. 1296. Edward takes the castle of Dunbar, 28 April; proceeds to Roxburgh, 7 May; Edinburgh, 15 June; Stirling, 14 June?; Jedworth, 24 May.

Johannes rex Scociæ videns se contra regem Angliæ non posse resistere misit regi Angliæ literas deprecatorias[12] pro pace tractanda, qui ei benigne annuit et remandavit ut ad villam de Brithin cum magnatibus terræ suæ veniret. Misitque rex Angliæ episcopum Dunelmiæ Antonium de Beek cum plena potestate regia tractanda.[13] Balliol sends to Edward (at Perth) to treat for peace.

T[r]actatum est[14] ita[15] quod Scotti omnes nude et pure se regiæ voluntati[16] submitterent; pro qua submissione Johannes rex[17] filium suum dedit obsidem literasque fecit in Gallico hunc tenorem continentes: Submission of Balliol.

Johannes[18] Dei gratia rex Scociæ, omnibus[19] præ- Patent delivering

---

[1] *Sywardbi*] Sywardeby. B. Sywardby. D.

[2] *senior*] seniorem. B.D.

[3] *Huncimartino*] Huncy martino. B.

[4] *Murref*] Murryf. B.

[5] *Kilbrid*] Kylbrid. B. Kylbro. D.

[6] *clericis*] et. præm. B.D.

[7] *scutiferis*] scutiferos. B.D.

[8] *custodiendum*] custodiendos. B. D.

[9] *Angliæ*] om. D.

[10] *Striuelyn*] Streyuelyn. D.

[11] *Rokesburgh, Edenburgh, Striuelyn, Gedeworth*] Rokesburgh̃, Edenburgh̃, Stryuelyn, Gedeworth̃. B.

[12] *deprecatorias*] The *to* interlined in A.

[13] *tractanda*] de pace. præm. D.

[14] *Tactatum*] The *r* is omitted in A. a cross in rubric is in the margin. Tractatum. B.D.

[15] *ita*] itaque. B.D.

[16] *voluntati*] A letter is erased at the end of this word in A.

[17] *rex*] om. D.

[18] The first word of f. 86. v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo. Carta regis Scociæ. in marg. A.D.

[19] *omnibus*] omnes.

A.D. 1296. the kingdom of Scotland to Edward.

sentes literas visuris vel audituris, salutem. Quia nos per falsum consilium simplicitatem nostram graviter offendidimus[1] et provocavimus dominum nostrum Edwardum, Dei gratia regem Angliæ, etc. in multis, videlicet in eo[2] quod existentes et manentes in fide sua et homagio suo alligavimus nos regi Franciæ, qui tunc hostis erat domini nostri regis Angliæ et adhuc est, matrimonium fieri procurantes cum filia domini Karoli fratris ejus, et ut dominum nostrum gravaremus, regemque Franciæ juvaremus cum omni potestate nostra per guerram aliisque modis omnibus: Deinde per nostrum malum consilium antedictum diffidavimus dominum nostrum regem Angliæ et misimus gentes nostras in terram suam Angliæ, eam cæde et incendio devastando, et terram suam Scociæ, quæ est de feodo suo, contra eum armis, victualibus, et hominibus muniendo, et ad deforciandum eum de feodo suo; pro quibus transgressionibus prædictus dominus noster rex Angliæ Edwardus terram Scociæ in fortitudine sua conquisivit et cepit, non obstante quod contra eum facere potuimus: Nos igitur sibi existentes adhuc in plena potestate nostra et libera voluntate reddidimus[3] ei terram Scociæ cum tota gente et homagiis. In cujus rei testimonium fecimus fieri has literas patentes. Data apud Brithyn X. die Julii, anno regni nostri IIII. Consignata litera fractoque sigillo communi Scociæ processit rex ut montana videret, videnque omnia pacifica revertitur[4] usque abbatiam de la Scone canonicorum regularium, ubi sublato lapide quo reges Scociæ tempore coronationis solebant insedere[5] pro throno, usque Westmonasterium transtulit, jubens illud[6] in summo altari sacerdotum ibidem celebrantium cathedram fieri.

Dated at Brechin. 10 July.

Edward removes the stone of Scone to Westminster.

---

[1] *offendidimus*] offendimus. B.D.
[2] *eo*] om. B.
[3] *reddidimus*] reddimus. B.D.
[4] Nota. de lapide regia. in marg. A. Nota de lapide regio Scociæ in marg. D.
[5] *insedere*] sedere. B.
[6] *illud*] illū. B.

Cap. CLVIII.

Rex igitur apud Berwyk convocato parliamento omnium Scociæ magnatum fidelitates singulariter recepit et homagia; ad perpetuam rei gestæ memoriam literas patentes suis signis munitas confecerunt. Acta sunt hæc apud Berwyk anno regni domini nostri Edwardi regis Angliæ XXIIII., et Incarnationis Dominicæ anno Domini MCCXCVI. A.D. 1296. A Parliament at Berwick. 28 Aug. The Scots do fealty.

Ordinavit etiam rex custodem Scociæ Johannem de Warenna comitem de Suthrey et Susseax,[1] thesaurarium[2] Hugonem de Cressingham, justitiarium Willielmum de Ormesbi.[3] Johannem regem Scociæ misit Londoniis[4] ad Turrim, assignata ei decenti familia, liberumque concessit exitum ad XX. miliaria circa urbem; Johannem[5] Comyn, et alium comitem de Badenauth,[6] et alium de Bohane cæterisque[7] terræ illius magnates transtulit in Angliam ad diversa loca ultra Trentam sub pœna capitis redditum in Scociam.[8] Appointment of a Warden, Treasurer, and Justiciary of Scotland. John Balliol sent to the Tower of London.

Eodem anno quidam miles factiosus, nomine Thomas Turberwile, Gwasco,[9] promisit regi Franciæ quod totam Walliam faceret insurgere contra regem Angliæ et etiam Hyberniam, rex vero Franciæ multa sibi donaria promittens, et sic[10] Angliæ ingreditur. Traditor vero curiæ regis[11] appropinquans, regi Angliæ nuntians[12] se de carcere regis Franciæ fuisse elapsum, et A.D. 1295. Treachery of Sir Thomas Turbervile.

---

[1] *Susseax*] Suthsex. B. Suthseax. D.

[2] *thesaurarium*] The *ra* interlined in A.

[3] *Cressingham . . . . Ormesbi*] Cressyngham . . . Ormesby. B.D.

[4] *Londoniis*] Londonias. B.D.

[5] The first word of f. 87. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

[6] *Badenauth*] Banenauth. D.

[7] *cæterisque*] cæterosque. B.D.

[8] *Scociam*] prohibens. add. D.

[9] *Turberwile, Gwasco*] Turbyuyle, Guasco. B. Turberluyle, Gwasco. D.

[10] *promittens, et sic*] promisit sicque. B.D

[11] *regis*] om. D.

[12] *nuntians*] nuntiavit. B.D.

A.D. 1295. quod ob amorem illius fuerat incarceratus et mortem adusque mancipatus.[1] Rex ista a milite audiens nullam[2] proditionis suspicationem[3] habens amplis eum muneribus honoravit, terris prædiisque ditavit. Miles vero totam Angliam circuiens et explorans[4] et consilium in quantum potuit investigans;[5] quibus scitis omnia regi Franciæ et suo concilio nuntiavit. Nutu vero Divino quidam clericus natione Anglicus, nomine Robertus, in curia regis Franciæ commorans, sciens traditiones, imaginationes vulpeculas militis proditoris, cuidam secreto suo in curia regis Angliæ commorante omnia[6] intimavit, qui omnia nuntiata regi revelavit. Rex igitur per quindenam ipsum explorans omnia sibi revelata et in centuplo plura vera invenit. Miles igitur captus et Londoniis[7] adductus mercedem suæ factionis, ut decet traditoribus,[8] accepit.

His execution, 8 Oct.

Cap. CLIX.

A.D. 1297. Anno Domini mccxcvii. ante Natale, cogitante rege quid de concaptis[9] ordinaret, jussit illos vocari ante[10] se et imposuit rationem eis dicens: Nolo terras vestras destruere et tenementa et oppida comburere, sed volo ut recompe[n]satis[11] mihi pro meis damnis et guerra. Respondent omnes tam rex quam[12] cæteri dicentes[13] se penitus nihil habere, sed totum in manu regis vita et mors. Rex Angliæ super illa responsi-

---

[1] *et . . . . mancipatus*] et usque ad mortem mancipatus. D.
[2] *nullam*] et. præm. D.
[3] *suspicationem*] suspicionem. B.
[4] *circuiens et explorans*] circuivit et exploravit. B.D.
[5] *investigans*] investigavit. B.D.
[6] *commorante omnia*] commoranti. B.D.
[7] *Londoniis*] Londonias. B.D.
[8] *traditoribus*] proditores. B. traditores. D.
[9] *concaptis*] captis. B.D.
[10] *ante*] coram. B.D.
[11] *recompesatis*] recompensetis. B.D.
[12] *quam*] Interlined in A.
[13] *dicentes*] om. .D.

one misertus vitam eis promisit conditionalem, quod omnes sibi fidelitatem jurarent iterum et homagium facerent, et quod viso vexillo suo omnes ei adhærent,[1] et quod nec contra eum nec aliquem de sanguine suo de cætero arma portent; qui omnes omnia prædicta concedentes[2] et ulterius si eos onerare vellet. Omnes vero Londoniis in Westmonasterio in summo altari super Corpus Domini juramentum præstiterunt. Nomina juratorum sunt[3] hæc: Johannes rex Scociæ, Johannes Comyn, comes de Strathern,[4] Robertus Bruys comes de Karrik, Patricius comes, Rogerius comes de Meneteth,[5] Andreas comes de Angous, Dunkan[6] comes de Fyfe, Douenaldus comes de Marre, puer VIII. annorum; hic fuit dimissus in Anglia in curia regis, finem vero fecit post plures annos in bello de Gledmore. Barones IX. jurati sunt, episcopi IIII. pro toto clero ita quod rex Angliæ dimisit illos in partibus suis et eos in magnis muneribus ampliavit et honoravit. Ipsi de Anglia revertentes Scociam læti ingressi sunt cogitantes et machinantes contra regem Edwardum qualiter eum possent opprimere et regnum suum adnihilare.

A.D. 1297. Oath of aliegiance of Balliol, Comyn, and others to Edward III., at Westminster.

Eo enim tempore miserunt Scotti ad regem Franciæ pro auxilio habendo, qui misit eis naves onustas cum hominibus bene armatis ad Berwik[7] contra regem Angliæ.

The Scots send for aid to the king of France.

[1] *adhærent*] adhærerent. B.D.

[2] *concedentes*] concesserunt. B. D.

[3] The first word of f. 87 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[4] *Strathern*] The *th* is the Anglo-Saxon "hard" in A.D.

[5] *Meneteth*] Menetheth. B.D.

[6] *Dunkan*] Dymkam. B.

[7] *Berwik*] Berwyk. B D.

Cap. CLX.

A.D. 1297. Rex de nobilibus suis in Wasconia concaptis[1] et Parisius incarceratis multum condoluit et de eorum liberatione excogitavit. Magnam autem summam pecuniæ regi reddidit Franciæ pro concaptis deliberandis; dato pretio remearunt ad propria.

Edward sails for Flanders. 22 Aug. Cogitante[2] rege qualiter illud pretium pro incarceratis datum posset recuperare[3] Flandriam adiit, ubi a comite honorifice susceptus est offerens[4] regi Angliæ corpus suum et thesaurum et omnia quæ habebat sano corde et animo integro ad regis voluntatem possidendam.

The king of France sues for a truce for two years. Rex Franciæ Philippus ista nova audiens vehementer contremuit, concilium convocat, et regi Angliæ pro treugis duorum annorum nuntios transmittit,[5] qui ei sub hac forma annuit: ut inter duo regna naves, mercatores, vendentes, ementes,[6] ex utroque regno sine damno vel gravamine licite possent commisceri; et sic inter duo regna ad rogatum regis Franciæ et duo[7] cardinalium pax biennalis reformata est.

Wallace invades England. Medio tempore unus vispilio Scottus, de rusticitate extractus, copiosum exercitum collegit, Angliam adiit, ipsamque cæde et incendio devastat,[8] quoscumque invenit trucidat, de quibus viros religiosos ligatis ad dorsum manibus in flumine[9] saltare coegit, eorum submersionem in ludibrium convertendo.

A Parliament at London. 1 Aug. Rex Angliæ in festo Sancti Petri Ad Vincula Londoniis parliamentum tenens primo archiepiscopo præcipiens[10] deinde omnibus qui inibi fuerant, scilicet,

[1] *concaptis*] captis. D.
[2] *Cogitante*] Eogitante. B.
[3] *recuperare*] recuperari. D.
[4] *offerens*] offerente. B.D.
[5] *transmittit*] transmisit. B.
[6] *ementes*] et. præm. D.
[7] *duo*] duorum. B.D.
[8] *devastat*] devastavit. D.
[9] *flumine*] flumen. B.D.
[10] *præcipiens*] præcepit. B.D.

episcopos, comites, barones, milites, et omnes libere tenentes[1] quod fidelitatem filio suo facerent ipsumque verum hæredem et dominum futurum recognoscerent. A.D. 1297.

Rex[2] vero in Flandriam adiens quosdam de magnatibus Angliæ secum convocavit, scilicet, comitem Herfordiæ, comitem Marescalli et alios, qui omnino renuerunt; unde rex erga eos multum indignatus est. Reliquit Angliæ custodem Edwardum filium;[3] quia[4] minoris erat[5] ætatis, pater rectores consiliariosque[6] constituit[7] episcopum Londoniensem, Willielmum comitem Warwici,[8] necnon milites Reginaldum Grey, Johannem Giffarde,[9] Alanum Plokenet, viros emeritæ militiæ, providos, et discretos. Prince Edward regent.

Rex Angliæ aliquantulum timens regis Franciæ infidelitatem et astutiam misit filio suo in Angliam potestatem suam plenam ad parliamentum convocandum, in quo petiit a populo aliquod subsidium pro guerra sua sustenenda. Mandato principi evento parliamentum[10] edidit, ad quod principaliter fuerunt vocati comes Herfordiæ et Marescalli et tota alia communitas, clerus et laicus, unde populus nullum tributum concedere voluit nisi sub hac forma: Primo quod rex Cartam Magnam cum cæteris articulis adjectis et Cartam de Foresta annuat et confirmet, et quod nullum auxilium vel vexationem exigat a clero vel populo imposterum, et quod omnem offensam comitibus et eorum confœderatis dimittat; adjecti articuli plenius in carta continentur. Et si contra illas vel quemcumque alium articulum in præsenti carta contentum statuta fuerint edita per nos vel antecessores nostros

The king empowers the Prince to call a Parliament, and demand a subsidy. The Parliament assembles. 6 Oct.

Subsidy refused until Magna Carta and the Carta de Foresta are confirmed.

[1] *episcopos, etc.*] episcopis, etc. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 88. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

[3] *filium*] suum. add. B.D.

[4] *quia*] et. præm. D.

[5] *erat*] om. B.

[6] *rectores consiliariosque*] rectoresque consiliarios. B.

[7] *constituit*] Written upon an erasure in A.

[8] *Warwici*] Warwyci. B.

[9] *Giffarde*] Gyffarde. B. Giffard. D.

[10] Confirmatio Magnæ Cartæ. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1297. vel consuetudines introductæ, volumus et concedimus quod hujusmodi statuta nulla sint et vacua imperpetuum:

Pardon to the earls of Hereford and Norfolk.

Remisimus etiam Humfrido de Boun comiti Herfordiæ et Essex constabulario nostro[1] Angliæ, Rogero Bigot comiti Northfolchiæ[2] marescallo Angliæ, et aliis comitibus, baronibus, militibus, armigeris ac omnibus aliis de eorum societate, confœderatione, concordia existentibus in regno nostro qui ad transfretandum nobiscum in Flandriam tertio die notato vocati fuerunt et non venerunt, rancorem nostrum et malam voluntatem quam ex causis prædictis erga eos habuimus, transgressiones si quas nobis vel nostris fecerunt[3] usque ad præsentem cartæ confectionem; et ad majorem hujus rei securitatem volumus et concedimus quod omnes archiepiscopi, episcopi, et sui subditi omnes aliquem articulum cartæ infringentes excommunicent.

Edward confirms Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta at Ghent. 5 Nov.

Missis[4] igitur in Flandriam cartis ad regem tanquam in arcto positum annuit petitionem ipsorum;[5] pro confirmatione harum rerum dederunt regi populus nonum denarium, clerus Cantuariensis decimam,[6] clerus Eboracensis quintam[7] quia proprior damno erant.[8]

A subsidy granted.

Cap. CLXI.

A.D. 1298. Edward returns to England. 14 March.

Anno Domini mccxcviii. rex Angliæ de Flandria veniens in Angliam, omnibus negotiis bene expeditis, apud Eboracum parliamentum convocat, vocatisque majoribus Scottorum, cum non venirent suis indixit ut cum equis et armis parati essent apud[9] Rokes-

A parliament at York. 25 May.

The Scotch nobles summoned.

---

[1] *nostro*] vestro. B.D.

[2] *Northfolchiæ*] Northfulchiæ. B. Nortfolchiæ. D.

[3] *fecerunt*] fecerint. B.D.

[4] The first word of f. 88. v. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[5] *petitionem ipsorum*] petitioni corum. D.

[6] *decimam*] 10. B. decimum. D.

[7] *quintam*] 5. B. quintum. D.

[8] *erant*] erat. D.

[9] *apud*] Interlined in A.

burgh in festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ; quibus omnibus ventis rex apud quamdam villulam[1] quæ Temple Histone[2] vocitatur aliquandiu commorans cum exercitu juxta flumen de Twede[3] expectando adventum navium quæ apud Berwicum oneratæ victualibus fuerant;[4] contigit ut ipsis vento contrario impeditis per mensem, exercitus affligi incepit[5] inedia atque fame, quo cognito Scotti magnum adunant exercitum, sperantes Anglicos jam fame deficientes opprimere. Et ecce triduo antequam venirent Scotti naves applicant[6] cum victualibus, quibus distributis reficiuntur singuli juxta votum suum. Audito[7] deinde de Scottis rex obviam progreditur et nocte superveniente in quadam campi planitie cum exercitu armato resedit. In aurora quidam clamor terribilis insonuit, unde excitati Angli celeriter parantur ad pugnam. A.D. 1298. The English army assembles at Roxburgh. 24 June.

Dextrarius vero regis territus tumultuoso clamore regem eum ascendentem recalcitrando dejecit, laterique ejus posteriores[8] allidens duas ei costas confregit, qui nihilominus equum alium ascendens progredientem ad prœlium comitari exercitum non omisit. Itaque juxta locum qui Faukirk[9] dicitur in die Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ congrediuntur ambo exercitus. Fugientibusque statim Scottorum equitibus Anglici insequuntur cædentes et stragem magnam ingerentes; creditur numerus mortuorum XX.M. excessisse. In hoc[10] autem prœlio occisus[11] est præceptor militiæ Templi Angliæ Brianus Iay nominatus, miles strenuus. The king meets with an accident. 21–2 July. He defeats the Scots at Falkirk. 22 July.

[1] *villulam*] villam. B.
[2] *Temple Histone*] Templystoñ. B.
[3] *de Twede*] Added in marg. A. *prima manu*, and referred to its place by a caret.
[4] *fuerant*] fuerunt. B.
[5] *incepit*] cœpit. B.D.
[6] *applicant*] applicabant. B.D.
[7] De bello de le Faukirk. in marg. A. Bellum de le Faukyrk. in marg. D.
[8] *posteriores*] posteriora. B.D.
[9] *Faukirk*] Faukyrk. B.D.
[10] *hoc*] om. D.
[11] *occisus*] occisor. D.

Cap. CLXII.

A.D. 1299. Anno Domini mccxc.[1] rex Angliæ confirmavit cartam quam prius concesserat in partibus transmarinis; perambulatio forestæ concessa est a rege eodem anno.

Arrival of the Legates requesting the liberation of Balliol to the pope. 7 July. Assent to their petition. 14 July.

In[2] Translatione Beati Thomæ Martyris Cantuariam venerunt nuntii papæ regem rogantes ut Johannem quondam regem Scociæ suæ liberarent[3] custodiæ, spondentes quod regem et regnum ab omni quod posset per hanc liberationem contingere periculo reservarent; quorum petitioni rex condescendens nuntiis papæ eum liberavit, quem translatum in terra Ballioli quam habuit in regno[4] Franciæ reliquerunt sub certorum prælatorum custodia.

Edward marries Margaret sister of Philip IV. of France. 10 Sept.

Eo anno rex Angliæ in Nativitate Beatæ Mariæ Virginis apud Cantuariam Margaretam sororem regis Franciæ desponsavit. In festo Sancti Martini parliamento Londoniis habito apud Berwicum[5] se disposuit.

Hoc anno Fratres Minores obtulerunt domino papæ Bonefacio cccc.m.[6] florenorum auri pro possessionibus habendis.[7] Eodem anno circa Natale Domini sequente die Martis combustio cœnobii Westmonasteriensis per cameram regis venientem.[8]

[1] *mccxc*] 1299. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 89. A. headed: A conquæstu primo.

[3] *liberarent*] liberaret. B.D.

[4] *regno*] terra. D.

[5] *Berwicum*] Berwycum. B.D.

[6] *cccc.m*] 400,000. B. the 4 erased and another written over the first zero. 400^{m}. D. Fratres Minores petunt habere possessiones. in marg. D.

[7] Quibus papa, Ubi, inquit, est illa pecunia vestra? Dixerunt: In manibus mercatorum. Et papa absolutis mercatoribus a depositi custodia præcepit sub interminatione anathematis pecuniam ipsam ejus necessitatibus custodiri. Respondensque fratribus regulam Sancti Francisci canonizatam se nolle aliquo censu violare nec fratres ab ea alioquin declinare. Et sic quæ injuste male acquisierant æquissime perdiderunt. add. B. *prima manu*, in a foot note referred to the text by a mark.

[8] *venientem*] venit. B.D.

Cap. CLXIII.

Anno Domini mccc. natus est regi Angliæ[1] filius quem vocavit Thomas juxta Eboracum apud Brother-toun.[2] Rex inde progrediens versus Scociam omnia devastans fame et inedia, ita quod comedebant carnes in tota Scocia feria sexta per unum fere annum. A.D. 1300. Thomas of Brotherton born, 1 June. Edward ravages Scotland.

Anno mcccci. natus est regi filius quem vocavit Edmundum ex Margareta regina apud Wdestoke.[3] Eodem anno rex iterum Scociam repedans montes, valles, villas, castellos,[4] omnia destruens et prosternens præter unum castrum,[5] quod Striuelyn[6] nominatur, quod de victualibus ita fuit stuffatum ut bene crederent illud per septennium viriliter defendisse. Rex cum exercitu suo castellum obsidens dicen[s][7] propinquis suis quod destructo illo castello tota Scocia in pace remanebit. A.D. 1301. Edmund of Woodstock born, 5 Aug. Edward besieges Stirling Castle.

Rex igitur in castellum duriter expugnans, cœtus interior viriliter resistens, ex utraque parte fit fortis colluctatio. Rex vero castrum videns bene munitum et de[8] hominibus armatis plenum, excogitavit intra se durum fore longa obsidio et minime valere, quamdam prudentiam simulavit; tres furcas altissimas in majori conspectu castri erexit, asserens juramento quod nisi citius castrum redderent omnes inclusos in illis furcis suspenderet; videntes obsessi furcas in sublimi erectas valde territi sunt, regis austeritatem metuentes. Etiam regis prudentiam, sapientiam, fortitudinem, et gratiam, et mortem imminentem excogitantes, castellum, corpora, catalla,[9] et omnia quæ intra erant in regis gratiam offerebant. Continuo rex cum suis ingredientes[10] obsessi The Castle is surrendered.

---

[1] *Angliæ*] om. B.

[2] *Brothertoun*] The *th* is the Anglo-Saxon "hard" in A.D. Brother-toñ. B.D.

[3] *Wdestoke*] Wodestoke. B. Wodestok'. D.

[4] *castellos*] castella. B.D.

[5] *castrum*] castellum. D.

[6] *Striuelyn*] Stryuelyn. D.

[7] *dicen*] dixit. B.D.

[8] *de*] om. B.D.

[9] *catalla*] castella. D.

[10] *ingredientes*] Corrected into *ingrediens* in B.

A.D. 1301. vero egredientes, isti[1] gaudentes, illi ejulantes sed aliquantulum lætantes quia ex regis gratia vitam sperantes; nec minus sicut[2] prius concapti et jurati idem juramentum et illi jurati sunt, et ad regis pacem omnino sunt admissi.

Cap. CLXIV.

A.D. 1300. Edward receives the bull of Boniface VIII. claiming the kingdom of Scotland as a fief of the Apostolic See. 27 Aug.

Anno Domini mccci. papa Bonefacius per Scottos informatus regi Angliæ literas suas direxit, asserens regnum Scottorum ad jus Romanæ ecclesiæ pertinere, regemque Angliæ subjectionem ejus contra Deum et justitiam et in præjudicium Sedis Apostolicæ vendicare, rationes allegans subscriptas: Primo, quia Henricus rex pater istius regis auxilium rogavit a Scottis contra Symonem de Monteforti[3] in guerra sua, Alexandro tunc rege Scociæ. Ne hoc auxilium jure subjectionis cujuslibet aut debiti petitum aut præstitum putaretur, idem Henricus per literas suas patentes recognovit non ex debito recepisse sed ex gratia speciali: Item ad coronationem hujus regis vocatus per suas literas patentes ut ei præsentiam suam amicabilem in tantis solemniis tanquam amicus exhiberet, non venit ex debito sed ex gratia speciali.

Item pro terra de Tyndale et Penreth in regno Angliæ positis, cum rex Scociæ ad præsentiam regis Angliæ se personaliter contulisset, eidem[4] fidelitatem inpensurus pro eisdem terris tantum in Anglia sitis, non ut rex Scociæ nec pro regno Scociæ fidelitatem eandem exhibuit, quia palam coram omni populo protestatum erat quod pro regno Scociæ fidelitatem aliquam regi Angliæ facere non debebat.[5]

---

[1] The first word of f. 89 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.
[2] *sicut*] ut. D.
[3] *Monteforti*] Monte forti. B.D.
[4] *eidem*] ei. B.D.
[5] *debebat*] debeat. B.

Item quod prædictus rex Alexander reliquit puellam hæredem, nomine Margaretam, neptem regis Angliæ tunc minoris ætatis, cujus custodia non ad regem Angliæ sed ad certos ejusdem regni proceres ad hoc electos. Redarguit etiam dominus papa regem eo quod post mortem dicti Alexandri tanquam azephalos et ducis suffragium non habentes ipsos per vim sibi subjugavit, in præjudicium non modicum et gravamen Romanæ Ecclesiæ. Adjiciens quod cum dominus papa officium allegationis alicui committit exequendum[1] in regno Angliæ, causa solutionis decimæ vel etiam pro quavis alia causa rationabili, et hujusmodi legatio literis et privilegio speciali Sedis Apostolicæ ad dictum regnum Scociæ se non extendat, resistendum est et obstandum hujusmodi legationi, prout tempore felicis recordationis Adriani contigit evidenter. Nam legatus ipse ad præfatum regnum Scociæ aliquatenus admissus non extitit, donec per literas Apostolicas speciales sibi legationis officium fuit[2] in eodem commissum. A.D. 1300.

Item addidit quod idem regnum per[3] Beati Petri Apostoli venerandas reliquias non sine Superni dono muneris conversum extitit ad fidei Catholicæ unitatem. Et qualiter antiquis temporibus Eboraci archiepiscopus qui tunc erat, mota per eum super jure metropolitano adversus prælatos Scociæ quæstione,[4] pro se nequierit sententiam obtinere.

His[5] propositis monuit regem dominus papa per literas suas quod episcopos, abbates, electos, et omnes alios regni[6] Scociæ quos detinebat captivos in carcere libere abire permitteret. Et quod officiales suos in regno Scociæ memorato constitutos revocaret[7] quos

---

[1] *exequendum*] Interlined in B. in a later hand.

[2] *fuit*] fuerit. B.D.

[3] The first word of f. 90. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

[4] *quæstione*] qõne. A.

[5] Nota valde. in marg. A.D.

[6] *regni*] om. B.

[7] *revocaret*] Added beyond the end of a line in B.

A.D. 1300. in præjudicium, injuriam,[1] et grave scandalum fidelium populorum, et oppressionem justorum in dicto regno statuerat et ordinaverat, ita quod, acceptior et gratiosior fieret Deo et favorem Apostolicæ Sedis in hoc sibi plenius adquireret. Et si in eodem regno Scociæ vel aliqua ejus parte jus aliquod se habere assereret per procuratores et nuntios suos ad hoc specialiter constitutos cum omnibus juribus et munimentis hoc negotium tangentibus ad Sedem Apostolicam destinaret, super præmissis plenæ[2] complementum justitiæ recepturus.

Cap. CLXV.

A.D. 1301. A Parliament assembled at Lincoln to consider the claim. 20 Jan. Reply of the king to the Pope's demand. 7 May.

Rex[3] Apostolicis literis ex deliberato apud Lincolniam convocato concilio pro jure suo declarando literam[4] hujus tenoris rescripsit: Altissimus inspector nostræ scrinio memoriæ indelibili[5] stylo novit inscribi quod antecessores et progenitores nostri reges Angliæ superioris et directi dominii ab antiquissimis et retro temporibus regno Scociæ et omnibus ipsius regibus et temporalibus et annexis eisdem præfuerunt, et ab eisdem pro regno Scociæ et ejusdem proceribus a quibus volebant legalia homagia receperunt, et fidelitatis debita juramenta. Nos igitur juris nostri et dominii possessionem continuantes pro tempore nostro tam[6] eadem a rege Scociæ recepimus[7] quam a proceribus ipsius[8] regni. Quinimmo tanto juris et dominii prærogativa super regnum Scociæ et ejusdem proceribus[9] et regem gaudebant, quod regnum ipsum fidelibus suis conferebant. Reges etiam ex

---

[1] *injuriam*] in. præm. B.D.
[2] *plenæ*] om. D.
[3] Litera regis ad papam. in marg. A.D.
[4] *literam*] literas. D
[5] *indelibili*] in debili. D.
[6] *tam*] Interlined in A.
[7] *recepimus*] accepimus. B.D.
[8] *ipsius*] ejusdem. B.D.
[9] *proceribus*] proceres. B.D.

justis causis ammovebant et constituerunt sub se loco ipsorum alios regnaturos, quæ proculdubio notoria[1] fuisse et esse creduntur apud omnes, licet forsitan paternis vestris auribus per pacis æmulos et rebellionis filios fuerit falsa insinuatione suggestum. A quorum machinosis et imaginariis figmentis ut Vestræ Sanctitatis oculus avertatur suppliciter quæsumus, et paternam clementiam et excellentiam devotis affectibus exoramus ut brevitatis causa gestis anteriorum temporum salvis quædam exempli causa tangamus. A.D. 1301.

Cap. CLXVI.

Edwardus Senior dictus filius Chiffodi regis Angliæ, Scottorum, Cumbrorum, et Stregewallorum reges tanquam superiori dominio subjectos habuit et submissos.[2]

Athelstanus rex Angliæ Constantinum regem Scottorum sub rege regnaturum constituit, dicens: Gloriosius est regem facere quam regem esse; et est[3] in memoria quod idem Athelstanus intercedente Sancto Johanne de Beuerlaco archiepiscopo quondam Eboracensi Scottos ei rebellantes devicit. Qui gratias agens Deo devote Deum exoravit petens ut interveniente Beato Johanne ei aliquod signum evidens ostenderetur quod tam succedentes quam præcedentes cognoscere possent Scottos jure subjugari regno Angliæ, et videns quosdam scopulos juxta quemdam locum de Dunbar in Scociam præminere, extractoque gladio de vagina percussit in silicem,[4] qui lapis ad ictum gladii nutu Divino ita cavatur ut mensura possit longitu-

---

[1] *notoria*] notaria. D.

[2] The first word of f. 90 v. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[3] Mirabile. in marg. A.D.

[4] *silicem*] cilicem. B.D. corrected from *scilicem* in B.

A.D. 1301. dini coaptari. Et hujus rei hactenus apparet evidens signum, et in ecclesia Beuerlacensi in Legenda Beati Johannis quasi singulis[1] septimanis per annum ad laudem et honorem Beati viri pro miraculo recitatur, et de hoc celebris memoria extat tam in Anglia quam in Scocia usque in præsentem diem.

Constantinus rex Scottorum et Eugenius rex Cumbrorum ad prædictum regem Athelstanum, post aliquam dissensionem inter eos habitam, cum reginis suis venientes eidem Athelstano dedidere,[2] cujus facti gratia filium Constantini ipse Athelstanus de sacro fonte suscepit.

Edredo regi Angliæ Scotti sine bello se dedidерunt et subdiderunt.

Cum autem Edgarus rex Angliæ regem Scottorum Kynadium et Malcolinum regem Cumbrorum, alios quoque v. regulos subjugasset, et remigando per fluvium de Heder in quadam navi prope proram sedisset, fertur ipsum dixisse successores suos posse gloriari se reges Anglorum esse, cum tanta honoris prærogativa fruerentur quod subjectam habebant[3] tot regum potentiam.

Post Edgarum successive regnaverunt reges Angliæ, Secundus Edwardus Martyr, Etheldredus frater ejus, Edmundus dictus Irenside[4] filius Etheldredi,[5] et Hiricius qui eorum temporibus regnum Scociæ in sua subjectione pacifice tenuerunt; hoc autem excepto quod anno XV. Hiricii,[6] idem Hiricius[7] Scociam rebellantem expeditione illuc ducta et regem Scociæ parvo subegit negotio, subditusque eidem[8] est prædictus[9] Malcolinus. Quibus Haraldus filius Knuti et Hardknutus

---

[1] *singulis*] om. D.
[2] *dedidere*] dedere. B. se dedere. D.
[3] *subjectam habebant*] subjectum habeant. B. subjectam habeant. D.
[4] *Irenside*] Yrenside. B.D.
[5] *Etheldredi*] Ethelredi. B.
[6] *Hiricii*] Hericii. D.
[7] *Hiricius*] Hericius. B.
[8] *eidem*] idem. D.
[9] *prædictus*] om. B.D.

frater ejus unus post alium reges Angliæ successerunt, A.D. 1301.
qui sibi sic regnantibus subjectionem regni Scociæ pacificam habuerunt.

Sanctus Edwardus rex Angliæ regnum Scociæ Malcolino filio regis Cumbrorum de se dedit tenendum.

Wilelmus Bastard rex Angliæ a Malcolino rege Scociæ tanquam a suo homine homagium recepit.

Item Willielmo Rufo regi Angliæ Malcolinus rex[1] Scottorum juramento fidelitatis subjectus fuit.

Prædictus Willielmus Donenaldum[2] regem Scociæ ex justis causis deposuit, et Duncanum filium Malcolini regem statuit, qui servitium regi Angliæ debitum perfecit. Donenaldus perempto Duncano[3] dolose iterum regnum invaserat, qui a Willielmo Rufo depositus, et Edgarus filius Malcolini rex constitutus est, qui fecit servitium debitum. Cui successit Alexander filius Edgari, consensu regis Angliæ Henrici Primi fratris dicti Willielmi.

Matildæ[4] imperatrici Dauid rex Scociæ fecit debitum servitium. Willielmus etiam rex Scottorum et Dauid filius ejus, comitès et barones regni Scociæ devenerunt homines Henrici regis Angliæ Tertii, vivente patre suo, in crastino coronationis prædicti Henrici, et debitum servitium juraverunt, salva fidelitate debita patri suo vivente.[5] Henricus Secundus resumpta[6] corona anno XX. regni sui Willielmus rex Scottorum veniens in Northumbriam rebellando cum exercitu magno stragem maximam in populo faciendo.[7] Cui occurrentes milites comitatus Northumbriæ et Eboraci apud Alnewyk ipsum ceperunt et Henrico

---

[1] The first word of f. 91. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

[2] *Donenaldum*] The *on* is written upon an erasure in A.

[3] *Duncano*] Dunkano. B.

[4] *Matildæ*] Matildi. D.

[5] *vivente*] viventi. B.D.

[6] *resumpta*] The *re* is added in A. in the margin beyond the commencement of the line.

[7] *faciendo*] faciebat. B.D.

A.D. 1301. regi reddiderunt. Anno sequenti XV. kalendas Maii libere permissus est abire. Apud Eboracum eodem anno VII. kalendas Septembris[1] tale fecerunt juramentum rex Scociæ Willielmus cum comitibus et baronibus suis: Episcopis, abbatibus et[2] prioribus debitum servitium et consuetum regi Angliæ et suis successoribus regibus inperpetuum faciemus. Et si contingat regem Scociæ fronte indomita contra regem Angliæ insurgere, quod absit, nos episcopi, abbates, priores, comites et barones contra regem Scociæ insurgemus, quicunque fuerit, et cum domino nostro ligio rege Angliæ tenebimus et ipsum defendemus.

Et papa Clemens scribens regi Angliæ pro Johanne episcopo Sancti Andreæ, ab episcopatu suo per Willielmum regem Scociæ expulso, rogavit ut regem Scociæ moneret ne ulterius ipsum inquietaret et quod in episcopatu suo pacifice sineret ministrare.

Conventione vero facta in ecclesia Beati Petri Apostoli in monasterio Eborum[3] coram prædictis regibus et tota[4] communitate utrorumque tam cleri quam laici convenerunt iterum ad parliamentum apud Norhamptoun[5] ubi iterum jurati sunt; qui ad mandatum regis Henrici magnum exercitum Scottorum miserunt in Normanniam cum rege Henrico in subsidium suum.[6]

Idem rex Willielmus, mortuo Henrico,[7] venit Cantuariam in[8] præsentia Theobaldi archiepiscopi fecit fidelitatem et homagium regi Ricardo; quo mortuo, præfatus Willielmus Johanni regi Angliæ, fratri et hæredi prædicti Ricardi, extra civitatem Lincolniæ in

[1] *Septembris*] Decembris. B.
[2] *et*] om. B.D.
[3] *Eborum*] Eborac'. D.
[4] *tota*] om. D.
[5] *Norhamptoun*] Northamtoñ. B.
[6] *suum*] sui. B.D.
[7] *magnum exercitum . . . . mortuo Henrico*] om. B. supplied in a foot note *prima manu*.
[8] *in*] et. præm. D.

conspectu totius populi fecit debitum servitium et consuetum, in præsentia Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et eidem Johanni domino suo concessit[1] per[2] cartam suam quod Alexandrum filium suum sicut hominem ligium suum[3] maritaret semper de regibus Angliæ tenendo. A.D. 1301.

Item Alexander rex Scociæ sororius noster regi Angliæ Henrico patri nostro et nobis pro[4] regno Scociæ homagium fecit, et postea regno vacante Scociæ per[5] mortem Alexandri regis illius, et subsequenter per mortem Margaretæ ejusdem Scociæ reginæ et dominæ proneptis nostræ, episcopi, abbates, priores, comites, barones et proceres[6] cæteri nobiles[7] et comitates totius regni Scociæ ad nos tanquam ad defensorem, ducem, capitaneum, et dominum capitalem ejusdem regni sic vacantis gratis et voluntate spontanea accedentes, prout tenebantur de jure, jus nostrum progenitorum nostrorum et antecessorum ac possessionem[8] et superioris in regno eodem et ipsius regni subjectionem ex certa scientia pure, simpliciter, et absolute recognoverunt, et præstitis ab eis nobis tanquam superiori domino et directo Scociæ debitis et consuetis fidelitatis[9] juramentis ac civitatibus, burgis, villis, castris, et cæteris mansionibus ejusdem regni in manu nostra traditis ad custodiam ejusdem regni certos jure nostro officiales et ministros deputamus. Quibus ipsi tempore vacationis hujusmodi concorditer fuerant obedientes et intendentes regiis nostris præceptis et mandatis.

---

[1] *concessit*] Written upon an erasure in A. and beyond the end of a line.

[2] The first word of f. 91 v. A. headed : De Rege Edwardo.

[3] *suum*] Interlined in A.

[4] *pro*] The *p* was apparently originally a long *s* in A. the lower end of the shaft being on a level with the line, and the loop for *ro* being clumsily written.

[5] *per*] post. B.D.

[6] *proceres*] om. B.

[7] *nobiles*] regni. præm. B.

[8] *possessionem*] possessionum. D.

[9] *fidelitatis*] fidelitatibus. B.D.

A.D. 1301. Postmodum autem diversæ personæ super succes-sio[ne][1] in dictum regnum Scociæ jure hæreditario inter se contendentes ad nos tanquam ad superiorem dominum regni Scociæ accesserunt, petentes super successione regni prædicti, volentes[2] sibi per nos exhiberi justitiæ complementum. Volentes etiam et expresse consentientes coram nobis tanquam superiori et directo domino in omnibus ordinandis stare et obtemperare ac demum judicialiter propositis et sufficienter auditis, rimatis, et examinatis, et diligenter intellectis partium juribus finaliter in præsentia omnium prælatorum et nobilium totius regni Scociæ, et de voluntate et assensu expresso eorumdem, præcedentes[3] Johannem de Balliolo debite præfecimus regem Scottorum, quem tunc in successione ejusdem regni hæredis jura invenimus habere potiora. Qui quidem prælati, comites, et barones, comitates, ac cæteri incolæ regni proceres ipsius sententiam nostram acceptaverunt et approbaverunt, et ipsum Johannem de mandato nostro virtute hujus judicii in regem suum admiserunt. Ac idem Johannes rex pro regno suo prædicto nobis homagium et fidelitatem et juramentum voluntarie fecit et non coactus. Extunc in parliamentis nostris et conciliis tanquam subditus noster sicut alii de regno nostro interfuit et nostris tanquam domini sui superioris mandatis obediens et intendens, quousque idem Johannes rex Scociæ et prælati, comites, et barones, et cæteri nobiles ejusdem[4] regni majores ex præconcepta malitia et prælocuta ac præordinata proditione communicato consilio cum tunc inimicis nostris capitalibus notoriis amicitias copularunt ac pactiones [et] conspirationes in exhæredationem nostram et hæredum nostrorum ac regni nostri contra

---

[1] *successio*] successione. B.
[2] *volentes*] nolentes. B.
[3] *præcedentes*] procedentes. B.
[4] The first word of f. 92. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

debitum homagium in crimen læsæ majestatis nequiter incidendo fidelitatis juramentum cum eisdem[1] inierunt; verum cum præmissa relatione et fama publica ad aures nostras devenissent, volentes de futuris præcavere periculis quæ ex his et aliis possent nobis regno nostro et regni nostri[2] incolis verisimiliter provenire, pro assecuritate regni nostri accessimus ad confinium regni utriusque, pluries mandantes eidem Johanni jam[3] regi Scociæ ut ad certa loca in confinio prædicto ad nos accederet super præmissis et aliis assecurationis statum, tranquillitatem, et pacem regni utriusque contigentibus tractaturus. Qui spretis mandatis nostris in sua persistens perfidia ad bellicos apparatus cum episcopis, prælatis, comitibus, baronibus regni Scociæ ac aliis ex certis conductitiis contra nos, regnum[4] nostrum et regni nostri incolas hostiliter se convertens accinxit, et ad hostiles incursus[5] procedens regnum nostrum invasit et quasdam[6] regni nostri villas per se et suos deprædatus est, easque incendio vastavit, homines nostros interfecit, verba offensionum per literas regis Scociæ exprimentes et inter alia verba diffidationis[7] continentes. Comitatus nostros[8] Northumbriæ, Cumbriæ, Westmerlandiæ regni nostri Angliæ, congregato exercitu ingenti, hostiliter per se et suos invasit, stragem innumeram et hominum nostrorum, incendia monasteriorum, ecclesiarum, et villarum inhumane perpetrando et patriam undique depopulando, infantes[9] in cunis, mulieres in puerperio decubantes gladiis confodiendo. Et quod auditu horrendum est a mulieribus nonnullis mammillas abscidendo. Parvos etiam clericulos[10] primam tonsuram habentes

A.D. 1301.

[1] *eisdem*] eis. B.
[2] *nostri*] nostris. B.
[3] *jam*] om. B.D.
[4] *regnum*] et. præm. B.D.
[5] *incursus*] cursus. B.D.
[6] *quasdam*] per. præm. B.D.
[7] *diffidationis*] diffidentiæ. B.D.
[8] *nostros*] nostræ. B.D.
[9] Nota. miserabile. in marg. A.
[10] *clericulos*] clericos. D.

A.D. 1301. et grammaticam addiscentes, ad numerum circiter ducentorum in scholis existentes obstructis ostiis scholarum igne supposito cremaverunt.

Nos igitur cernentes tot damna, opprobria, facinora, et injurias in exhæredationem nostram et destructionem populi nostri proditionaliter irrogari, nec valentes, ratione juramenti quod ad conservationem jurium coronæ regni nostri sumus astricti, præmissa facinora ulterius concelare nec jura nostra relinquere indefensa, cum per leges ipsum Johannem tunc regem Scociæ quod a longissimis temporibus, sicut superius exprimitur, nobis et progenitoribus nostris feodale extitit, in causis prædictis contra dictum Johannem et gentem Scottorum vires potentiæ nostræ extendimus, prout de jure nobis licuit et [1] processimus contra eos tanquam hostes nostros et proditores.

Subjecto itaque regno Scociæ et jure hæreditatis et proprietatis nostræ ditioni [2] subacto præfatus Johannes quondam rex Scociæ regnum quatenus de facto tenuit, sponte, pure, et absolute reddidit in manum nostram, proditiones et scelera memorata coram [3] nobis et proceribus nostris publice recognoscens.[4] Quo peracto præfati Scociæ magnates quos ad pacem nostram regiam suscepimus, subsequenter homagia et fidelitates nobis tanquam immediato domino et proprio ejusdem regni Scociæ nobis fecerunt ac præstiterunt. Et etiam redditis nobis ejusdem [5] regni civitatibus, villis, castris, munitionibus, ac cæteris locis omnibus ad dictum regnum spectantibus, officiales nostros et ministros ad ejusdem regni Scociæ regimen [6] jure nostro præfecimus. Quia vero jure pleni dominii in posses-

---

[1] The first word of f. 92 v. A. headed : De Rege Edwardo.

[2] *ditioni*] The *ni* added by a later hand in B. diœcesi. D.

[3] *coram*] om. B.D.

[4] *recognoscens*] recognoscentes. B.D.

[5] *ejusdem*] om. B.D.

[6] *regimen*] munimen. D.

sione ejusdem regni existere dinoscamur[1] non possumus nec debemus quin insolentiam subditorum nostrorum rebellium si quos invenerimus præiminentia[2] regia potestate prout expedire viderimus reprimamus.[3] Quia autem[4] ex præmissis et aliis constat evidenter et notorium extitit[5] quod prælibatum regnum Scociæ tam ratione possessionis quam proprietatis ad nos pleno jure pertinet, nec quicquam fecerimus vel canerimus scripto vel facto sicuti nec possemus per quæ juri aut possessioni prædictis debeat aliquid derogari: Sanctitati ideo vestræ humiliter supplicamus quatenus præmissæ[6] provida meditatione pensantes ex illis motum animi dignemini informare, suggestionibus contrariis æmulorum in hac parte fidem nequaquam adhibendo, quinimmo statum nostrum et jura nostra regia supradicta habere velitis si placet promptis affectibus commendata. A.D. 1301.

Quantum vero ad hoc quod petivit papa quod si rex Angliæ jus haberet in regno Scociæ vel in aliqua ejus parte procuratores instructos mitteret Curiæ Romanæ et fieret ei justitiæ complementum. Rex per se noluit respondere sed hoc commisit omnibus proceribus Angliæ, qui super hoc dicto papæ literas hanc[7] tenorem continentes rescripserunt:

Cap. CLXVII.

Sancta[8] Romana Ecclesia Mater per cujus ministerium Fides Catholica in suis actibus cum ea ut firmiter credimus maturitate procedit quod nulli præjudicare Letter of the Barons. 12 Feb.

---

[1] *dinoscamur*] dinoscamus. B. corrected into *dinoscamur*.
[2] *præiminentia*] præminentia. D.
[3] *reprimamus*] exprimamus. B.
[4] *autem*] om. B.D.
[5] *extitit*] existit. B.
[6] *præmissæ*] præmissa. B. corrected from *præmissæ*. præmissa. D.
[7] *hanc*] hunc. B.D.
[8] Litera totius Angliæ missa ad papam. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1301. sed singulorum jura conservari velit illæsa: Sane convocato nuper per serenissimum dominum nostrum Edwardum Dei gratia regem Angliæ illustrem parliamento apud Lincolniam generali: Idem Dominus noster quasdam literas Apostolicas quas super certis negotiis status regni [1] ex nostra parte receperat in medio exhiberi seriose nobis fecit exponi: Quibus auditis et intellectis tam sensibus nostris admiranda quam hactenus inaudita in eis audivimus [2] contineri: Scimus enim, Pater Sanctissime, et notorium in partibus nostris ac [3] nonnullis aliis non ignotum existit quod a prima institutione regni Angliæ reges ejusdem regni tam Britonum quam Anglorum superius et directum dominium regni Scociæ habuerunt in possessione, capitanei superioritatis et recti [4] dominii ipsius Scociæ successivis temporibus hactenus extiterunt, nec ullis temporibus ipsum regnum in temporalibus pertinuit, vel quovis jure pertinet,[5] ad ecclesiam supradictam. Quinimmo idem regnum Scociæ progenitoribus dicti regis nostri Angliæ atque sibi feodale extitit ab antiquo. Nec etiam vel [6] subjici consueverunt neque reges Angliæ super juribus suis in regno prædicto aut aliis temporalibus suis coram aliquo judice ecclesiastico vel sæculari ex præiminentiæ [7] regiæ dignitatis et consuetudinis cunctis temporibus irrefragabiliter observare responderunt aut respondere debebant; unde habito tractatu de deliberatione diligenti super contentis in literis memoratis communis, concors, et unanimis omnium nostrum et singulorum [8] consensus fuit, est, et erit inconcusse, Deo propitio in futurum, quod præfatus dominus noster rex

---

[1] *regni*] nostri. add. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 93. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

[3] *ac*] in. add. D.

[4] *recti*] regni. D.

[5] *vel quovis jure pertinet*] om. B.D.

[6] *vel*] om. D.

[7] *præiminentiæ*] The *tiæ* interlined in A. præminentia. D.

[8] *singulorum*] om. B.D.

Angliæ super juribus regni Scociæ aut aliis suis tem- A.D. 1301.
poralibus nullatenus coram vobis[1] judicialiter respondeat nec judicium subeat quoquomodo aut jura sua prædicta in dubium quæstionis deducat nec ad præsentiam vestram procuratores aut nuntios ad hoc mittat, præcipue cum præmissa cederent manifeste in exhæredationem juris[2] coronæ regni Angliæ et regiæ dignitatis ac subversionem regni ejusdem notoriam, necnon in præjudicium libertatis, consuetudinum, et legum paternarum, ad quarum observationem et defensionem ex debito præstiti juramenti astringimur, et quæ manutenebimus toto posse, totisque viribus cum Dei auxilio defendemus. Nec etiam permittimus aut aliqualiter permittemus sicut nec possumus nec debemus præmissa[3] jam insolita, indebita, præjudicialia, et alia inaudita prælibatum dominum nostrum regem etiam si vellet facere seu modo quolibet attemptare. Quocirca Sanctitati vestræ reverenter et humiliter supplicamus quatenus eundem dominum nostrum regem qui inter alios principes orbes terræ Catholicum se exhibet et Romanæ Ecclesiæ devotum jura sua et libertates, consuetudines, et leges prædictas, absque diminutione et inquietudine pacifice possidere ac illibata persistere benignius[4] permittatis.

Rex circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, finitis Edward invades Scotland. 24 June.
treugis, in Scociam proficiscitur, ubi proceres Angliæ propter defectum foragii multos[5] dextrarios hyeme superveniente perdiderunt.

---

[1] *vobis*] nobis. B.D.

[2] *juris*] jures. B.

[3] *præmissa*] postmissa. B.

[4] *benignius*] benign^{o}. A. benigne. B. corrected into *benignius* by a later hand.

[5] *multos*] Interlined in B.

Cap. CLXVIII.

A.D. 1302. A truce concluded with the Scots. 26 Jan.

Anno Domini mcccii. ad instantiam regis Francorum, cujus nuper sororem duxerat, treugas Scottis [1] usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum concessit.[2] Ordinatisque rebus Scociæ reversus est in Angliam et circa mediam Quadragesimam parliamentum Londoniis convocavit.

Cap. CLXIX.

A.D. 1303. Rebellion of the Scots.

Anno [3] Domini mcccciii. Scotti cœperunt contra regem Angliæ rebellare, Willielmo quodam cognomento Walays [4] qui eos ad seditionem commoverat capitaneo constituto.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ milites quidam papæ Bonefacio in præsentia cleri et populi Parisius congregati multa imposuerunt enormia, puta hæresim, symoniam, et homicidia; propter quæ appellatum [5] est contra eum ad illum [6] cujus interest, donec convocato concilio se a criminibus purgaret objectis.

Defeat of the English. 24 Feb.

Hoc anno Johanne de Segraue custode Scociæ juxta Castrum Puellarum equitante fugatur a Scottis, ubi multi de suis vulnerati sunt et pauci occisi.

Edward ravages Scotland as far as Caithness.

Eodem anno rex audiens Scottorum rebellionem totam Scociam parvis dietis usque Katenesiam [7] equitavit, terram depopulando et vastando;[8] Scotti vero videntes se non posse resistere, humiliter a rege

---

[1] *Scottis*] om. B.D.

[2] *concessit*] concesserat. D.

[3] The first word of f. 93 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[4] *Walays*] Wallays. B.

[5] [A]pellatio ad Concilium. in marg. B.

[6] *ad illum*] om. D.

[7] *Katenesiam*] Catenesiam. B.

[8] *vastando*] devastando. B.D.

petiverunt[1] se ad pacem suam recipi. Ipse vero apud Dunfermlyn[2] hyemavit. A.D. 1304.

Rex[3] iterum obsedit castrum de Striuelyn,[4] capitaneo viriliter eum defendente nomine Willielmus[5] Olifardi, vir[6] robustus et in armis strenuus; tandem castellum[7] sibi redditum est cum omnibus inclusis ad regis voluntatem se offerentes.[8] Hoc anno ordinati sunt justitiarii super malefactoribus quod[9] vocatur[10] trailbastoun.[11] Anno 1304. A. He opens the siege of Stirling Castle, 22 April. Justices of Trailbâton appointed. 30 July. A.D. 1305. 6 April.

Cap. CLXX.

Anno Domini mcccv. rex Angliæ iterum revertitur Angliam[12] relinquendo Johannem de Segraue custodem Scociæ. A.D. 1304. The king returns to England.

Hoc anno omnia in pace constituta[13] in Scocia, in Hybernia, in Wallia, in Anglia, præter quod unus ribaldus nomine Willielmus Walays regem aliquantulum fatigavit. Tandem autem seductus[14] per unum de armigeris suis juxta villam Sancti Dominici ad ingressum unius forestæ, anno regni regis Edwardi xxxiii., et statim ductus est Londoniis ad custodiendum. Rex ipsum nolens videre, talem sententiam[15] contra ipsum diffinivit; primo quia fur deberet sus- A.D. 1305. William Wallace removed to London. 4 Aug.

---

[1] *petiverunt*] petierunt. B.D.
[2] *Dunfermlyn*] Dumfermelyñ. B.
[3] *Rex*] Anno Domini 1304. præm. B.D.
[4] *Striuelyn*] Stryuelyñ. B.
[5] *Willielmus*] Willielmo. B.D.
[6] *vir*] qui fuit. præm. B.D.
[7] *castellum*] The *s* interlined in A.
[8] *offerentes*] offerentibus. B.D.
[9] *quod*] q^{l}. B.D.
[10] *vocatur*] vocantur. B.D.
[11] *trailbastoun*] traylbastoñ. B. trailbastoñ. D. The whole of this paragraph from *Rex iterum obsedit* to this word is omitted from the text of B. and supplied in a foot note *prima manu*.
[12] *Angliam*] in. præm. D.
[13] *constituta*] sunt. præm. B.D.
[14] *seductus*] est. add. B.D.
[15] Willielmus Waleis. in marg. A. Willielmus Walays in marg. D.

A.D. 1305. pendi, quia spoliator et raptor decollari, quia traditor equis trahi et membratim in quatuor partibus dividi, qui[1] partes ita missæ sunt: caput Londoniis, brachium dextrum Novo Castro super Tynam, brachium sinistrum Berwico, ad Saynt Ionestoun unam tibiam,[2] ad Dunfrees aliam,[3] in exemplum ut cæteri traditores metum habeant. Acta sunt hæc in Vigilia Sancti Bartholomæi.[4]

He is executed. 23 Aug.

Hoc anno misit rex Franciæ regi Angliæ rogans eum ut Flandrenses ab Anglia expelleret, sicut ipse expellebat Scottos de Francia paulo ante ad rogatum suum. Rex Angliæ precibus ejus adquiescens omnes Flandrenses de Anglia exbannivit. Ad festum Sancti Michaelis sequens proximum rex Angliæ omnes regni sui nobiles ad parliamentum convocavit. Scotti vero illuc venientes in pleno parliamento regi Angliæ et suis hæredibus regibus tertio jurati sunt.

A parliament. 29 Sept. Fealty sworn by the Scots.

Cap. CLXXI.

A.D. 1306. Anno Domini mcccvi. quarto kalendas Februarii Robertus de Bruys ad regnum Scociæ aspirans nobilem virum Johannem le Comyn[5] quia suæ proditiosæ factioni noluit assentire[6] apud villam de Dunfermlyne,[7] in cujus castro justitiarii regis Angliæ tunc sedebant, in ecclesia Fratrum Minorum sacrilegus interfecit. In Festo vero Annuntiationis Beatæ Mariæ Virginis in abbatia canonicorum regularium de Scone solemniter se fecit in regem[8] coronari. Uxor comitis

Robert Bruce murders John Comyn. 29 Jan.

He is crowned at Scone. 25 March.

---

[1] *qui*] quæ. B.D.

[2] *unam tibiam*] una tibia. B.D.

[3] *aliam*] alia. B.D.

[4] *Bartholomæi*] The *r* interlined in A.

[5] *le Comyn*] le Comyñ. B. de Comyn. D.

[6] *assentire*] consentire. B.D.

[7] *Dunfermlyne*] Dunfermlyñ. B. Dũfermlyn. D.

[8] *regem*] regẽ. A. the last *e* being written in rubric.

de Bothwan[1] a marito suo furtive discessit, omnes equos magnos secum adducens[2] et properans usque ad Scone ut diadema capiti novi regis imponeret. Frater enim ejus comes de Fyf, ad quem jure hæreditario hoc officium spectabat, tunc absens in Anglia morabatur. Hanc autem[3] comitissam eodem anno ab Anglis captam cum quidam eam perimere voluissent non permisit rex, sed in domuncula quadam super murum Berwici lignea eam[4] inclusit,[5] ut possint[6] eam transeuntes conspicere.[7] A.D. 1306. Capture and imprisonment of the countess of Buchan.

Edwardus filius regis Angliæ cum numerosa nobilium juvenum societate militaribus armis cinctus[8] in festo Pentecostes continuatis diebus Scociam conscendit; præcesserat enim eum Aymerus de Valenciis, Robertus de Clifford,[9] Henricus de Perci,[10] missi a rege cum manu armata ad novis motibus resistendum. Rex vero lento gressu secutus est. Aymerus cum suis armatis apud[11] villam Sancti Johannis Roberto de Bruys et suis obviavit, ubi Robertus plura de suis amisit; ad[12] insulam de Kentyre fugere conatus est. Aymerus castrum obsidens quia Robertum in eo inclusum crediderat, fugerat enim ad regionis illius extremas partes. Inventus[13] est enim uxor Roberti et Nigellus frater ejus cum aliis qui omnes ad Berwicum[14] ducti sunt. Circa festum Sancti Michaelis reversus est Robertus usque Kentyre et Henrico de Perci in propinquo[15] existenti superveniens quosdam de familia Roberti occidit, equos et dextrarios Henrici An English army sent against Bruce. 22 May. Bruce is defeated. 26 June. He escapes to the Isle of Cantyre. He returns to Cantyre besieges Henry Percy,

[1] *Bothwan*] Boywañ. B. the *th* is the Anglo-Saxon "hard" in A.
[2] *adducens*] abducens. B.D.
[3] Nota. in marg. A.D.
[4] *eam*] eum. D.
[5] *inclusit*] inclausit. B.
[6] *possint*] possent. B.D.
[7] *conspicere*] aspicere. B.D.
[8] *cinctus*] accinctus. D.
[9] *Clifford*] Clyfford. B. Clyffordus. D.
[10] *Perci*] Percy. B.D.
[11] *apud*] ad. B.
[12] *ad*] et. præm. B.D.
[13] *Inventus*] Inventa. B.D.
[14] *Berwicum*] Berwycum. B.
[15] *propinquo*] proximo. B.D.

A.D. 1306. but is compelled to desist.

Robertus accepit et usque castrum prædictum Henricum fugientem obsedit, quousque robore exercitus a rege transmisso obsidionem dimittere cogeretur.

Nigel Bruce hanged.

Rex apud Lanercost commorans misit justitiarios apud Berwicum[1] quorum judicio Nigellus[2] de Bruys et qui cum eo capti fuerant tracti sunt et suspensi, et ultimo decollati: uxorem Roberti de Bruys misit in Angliam jubens eam juxta statum suum decenter tractari.

The wife of Robert Bruce sent to England. Capture and execution of the adherents of Bruce.

Post hæc captum est castrum de Lothendorm[3] in quo inventus est Christoforus de Setoun[4] sororius Roberti Bruys quem cum non Scottus sed Anglicus esset jussit rex ipsum deduci usque Dunfrees[5] ubi quendam militem regiam[6] occiderat; ibi judicium subegit, tractus, suspensus,[7] et decollatus; uxorem ejus et filiam Roberti de[8] Bruys in diversis monialium monasteriis collocavit. Episcopos Sancti Andreæ et de Glascow captos et abbatem de Scon bene armatos ad[9] custodiendum in Angliam armatos transmisit, quousque[10] cum papa[11] super prælatis armatis consuluisset.

A.D. 1307. Banishment of Peter de Gaverston. 26 Jan.

Rex Angliæ Petrum de Gauerstoun[12] apud se de diversis accusatum regnum Angliæ abjurare coegit.[13] Rex vero Scociam intrans die Veneris proxima ante Assumptionem et juxta Saynt Ionestoun[14] cum Scottis

A.D. 1306. congressus est, in quo loco multi eorum ceciderunt et inter alios unus miles Scottus nobilis et generosus Symon Frisel[15] nominatus, quem occidit unus archi-

---

[1] *Berwicum*] Berwycum. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 94 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[3] *Lothendorm*] The *th* is the Anglo Saxon "hard" in A.D.

[4] *Setoun*] Setoñ. B.D.

[5] *Dunfrees*] Dūfrees. D.

[6] *regiam*] regina. B.D.

[7] *suspensus*] Perhaps written upon an erasure in A.

[8] *de*] om. B.D.

[9] *ad*] in. D.

[10] *quousque*] cousque. A.

[11] *cum papa*] papam. B. papa. D.

[12] *Gauerstoun*] Gauerstoñ. B.D.

[13] *coegit*] fecit. B.D.

[14] *Ionestoun*] Ionestoñ. B.D.

[15] *Symon Frisel*] Symoñ Frysel. B. Symon Frysel. D.

tenens Anglicus,[1] nomine Theobaldus de Penreth, qui caput militis regi præsentavit. Dictum fuit quod de[2] regis Angliæ parentela fuerat a longinquo. Rex vero renuebat et dixit se nullos habere traditores[3] in tota[4] sua progenie. Sic enim dictum est de Johanne de Atheles comite quod[5] fuerat regis consanguineus. Rex autem omnino renuebat; captus autem fuit paulo ante in quadam ecclesia ubi credebat habuisse libertatem ecclesiasticam, minime vero sibi profuit, quia per III. menses ante suum ingressum illa ecclesia fuerat interdicta per occisionem unius hominis. Rex enim[6] ei capitalem sententiam indixit, et totum residuum illi[7] condonavit quia[8] sanguinem regiam[9] vendicavit. Prostrati sunt autem omnes Scotti et per undi[que] sparsi[10] ac desolati, decollati, incarcerati, suspensi, distracti, destructi, membratim separati, nisi ille solus fugitivus Robertus le Bruys, qui in latibulis circumvagat,[11] sicut latro vel vispilio.[12] Rex vero de eo nihil curans ipsum permittit errare ubicumque melius vitam suam possit[13] salvare, quia cauda sua penitus amputatur. A.D. 1306.

Cap. CLXXII.

Anno[14] Domini MCCCVII. in Octabis Sancti Hillarii rex tenuit parliamentum Karlioli, ubi edita sunt statuta quædam tangentia religiosos qui domos suas A.D. 1307. A parliament at Carlisle. 20 Jan.

[1] *Anglicus*] om. B.D.
[2] *de*] a. B.D.
[3] *traditores*] proditores. B.D.
[4] *tota*] om. B.
[5] *quod*] qui. D.
[6] *enim*] autem. D.
[7] *illi*] ei. D.
[8] *quia*] et. B.
[9] *regiam*] regium. D.
[10] *per undique sparsi*] pundi sparsi. A. piui dispersi. B. partim dispersi. D.
[11] *circumvagat*] circumvagabatur. B. circumvagabat. D.
[12] *vispilio*] vespilio. D.
[13] *possit*] posset. B.D.
[14] The first word of f. 95. A. headed: A Conquæstu primo.

A.D. 1307. A papal legate visits England to negotiate peace.

principales in alio regno habebant. Venitque[1] illuc[2] quidam cardinalis Hispannicus pro matrimonio contrahendo inter filium regis Angliæ et hæredem et filiam regis Franciæ Isabellam, secundum quod a papa Bonefacio tanquam mediatore pacis ordinatum fuerat consummando. Cui per regem responsum est se esse paratum ad omnia bene ordinata implenda,[3] dummodo rex Francorum velit ex parte sua quæ ad ipsum pertinent adimplere. Dederat enim rex Francorum dummodo Wasconiam tenuerat castrum quod Malileonis[4] dicitur cuidam militi, qui illud adhuc detinebat, nec ad mandatum regis Francorum illud voluit restituere. Ob quam causam fertur illud matrimonium[5] hactenus fuisse dilatum.[6] Rediitque cardinalis Londoniis ut super his certitudinem expectaret.

Bruce defeats Aymer de Valence. May.

Post Pascha Robertus de[7] Bruys aucto jam exercito suo congressus cum Aymero de Valenciis ipsum compulit in fugam, paucis de his qui cum ipso[8] erant peremptis. Infra triduum etiam sequens fugavit[9] comitem Glouerniæ, multisque hinc et inde occisis, ipsumque[10] fugavit ad castrum de Are, et ibi eum obsedit, quousque per exercitum a rege missum fuerat obsidio dissoluta. Extunc autem insequentibus eum Anglicis fugit ad loca palustralia[11] et nemorosa, in quibus latibula quæritantem comprehendere minime potuerunt. Rex autem præcepit sub gravi pœna ut omnes qui ei servitium debeant[12] parati essent apud Karliolum in tertia septimana post festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Filium suum remisit in Angliam ut secundum ea quæ de rege Franciæ audiret pro-

He besieges the earl of Gloucester in Ayr Castle. The English raise the siege and Bruce escapes to the marshes. Edward summons his army

---

[1] *venitque*] venitq̃. A.
[2] *illuc*] illic. D.
[3] *implenda*] complenda. B.
[4] *Mali-leonis*] Mableonis. B.
[5] *matrimonium*] ma^{m}. A.
[6] *dilatum*] delatum. B.D.
[7] *de*] le. D.
[8] *ipso*] eo. B.D.
[9] *fugavit*] fugit. B.
[10] *ipsumque*] ipsum. B.D.
[11] *palustralia*] palustria. B.D.
[12] *debeant*] debebant, B.D.

ficisceretur ad connubium cum filia ejusdem contrahendum. A.D. 1307. to assemble at Carlisle.

Post cujus discessum cœpit vexari dysinteria. Movit[1] tamen[2] nihilominus quinto nonas Julii parvis dietis versus Scociam proficiscens. Pridie nonas Julii venit usque Burgh-bi-the-Sandes[3] ubi invalescente infirmitate die crastina, scilicet, feria sexta, hoc [est] die Translationis Sancti Thomæ Martyris præsenti vitæ valefaciens dies suos in bono et annos suos in gloria consummavit. Regnavit autem annis XXXIIII., mensibus VII., diebus XXI. Complevitque ætatis suæ annos LXVIII. et XX. dies, regni vero ejus a morte patris sui XXXIIII. ut supra, sed a coronatione sua XXXIII; sepultusque est Westmonasterio[4] more regio ut tali principi decuit. Cujus animæ propitietur Deus. Amen.

He falls ill. Sets out from Carlisle. 3 July. Arrives at Burgh-on-the-Sands. 6 July. His death. 7 July.

He is buried at Westminster. 27 Oct.

Eodem[5] anno, scilicet, Incarnationis MCCCVII. Petrus de Gauerstoun[6] in partibus transmarinis exulans per regem[7] Edwardum II. a Conquæstu in Anglia[8] revocatur et factus est[9] comes Cornubiæ, et filiam comitis Gloucestriæ duxit in uxorem.

Peter de Gaverston recalled. Created Earl of Cornwall. 6 Aug.

Eodem anno[10] in die Sancti Mathiæ Apostoli Edwardus II. a Conquæstu VI. kalendas Martii ab archiepiscopis Cantuariæ et Eboraci[11] coronatus est in regem, scilicet, anno MCCCVIII.[12] Eodem anno Robertus le Bruys iterum se fecit coronari.

A.D. 1308. Coronation of Edward II. 25 Feb.

---

[1] De morte regis illustri. in marg. A.D.

[2] *tamen*] On an erasure in B. om. D.

[3] *bi-the-Sandes*] be ye sandys. B. the *th* is the Anglo-Saxon "hard" in A.D.

[4] *Westmonasterio*] A blank of half a line follows in A.

[5] The first word of f. 95 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[6] *Gauerstoun*] Gauerstoñ. B.D.

[7] principem] in marg. A.

[8] *Anglia*] Angliam. B.D.

[9] *et factus est*] Written upon an erasure in A.

[10] *Eodem anno*] Anno Domini 1308. D.

[11] *Eboraci*] Eboracensi. D.

[12] *scilicet . . . . MCCCVIII.*] om. D.

Cap. CLXXIII.

A.D. 1308. Edward II. marries Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. 28 Jan.

Anno Domini MCCCIX. rex Edwardus prædictus Isabellam filiam regis Franciæ v. die Januarii matrimonio sibi copulavit, qui v. idus Februarii in Angliam revertentes vicesimo die mensis ejusdem Londoniis in Westmonasterio ambo coronati sunt.

A.D. 1311. Proceedings against the Templars.

Anno[1] Domini MCCCX., die Jovis proxima post Epiphaniam, Templarii in Anglia et in Scocia una hora diei, scilicet, nona, capti sunt et custodia mancipati.

A.D. 1312. Capture of Gaverston. 19 May.

Anno[2] Domini MCCCXI. Petrus de Gauirstoun[3] apud Dadintoun[4] captus per Gwydonem comitem Warwici in præsentia comitum Thomæ Lancastriæ, Aymeri de Walenciis,[5] comitum[6] Pembroke, Warwici, Herfordiæ, juxta le Blaklaw in regio vico qui vocatur Gauersiche[7] die Sancto[rum][8] Gervasii et Prothasii, a quodam Wallense decollatus est, et paulo post apud Langleyam[9] præsente domino rege cum magno honore sepelitur.

He is executed. 19 June.

Birth of Edward III. 13 Nov.

Anno[10] MCCCXII. natus est Edwardus rex III. a Conquæstu, die Sancti Bricii, apud Wyndesore. Eodem anno Robertus de[11] Wynchelse archiepiscopus Cantuariæ migravit ad Dominum.

A.D. 1314. Battle of Bannockburn. 24 June.

Anno MCCCXIII. Edwardus le Bruys, frater Roberti, in Hibernia occisus est in bello. Eodem anno commissum est bellum apud Bannokbourn[12] juxta Striuelyn,[13] in die Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, inter Anglos et

---

[1] Templarii capti sunt. in marg. A.D.

[2] Petrus de Gauerstoun. in marg. A.D.

[3] *Gauirstoun*] Gauerstoñ. B.D.

[4] *Dadintoun*] Dadyngtoñ. B.D.

[5] *Walenciis*] Valenciis. B.D.

[6] *comitum*] co. A.B. comitis. D.

[7] *Gauersiche*] Gauersych'. B.

[8] *Sancto*] Sancti. B. Sanctorum. D.

[9] *Langleyam*] Langleiam. B.

[10] *Anno*] Domini. add. B.D. Edwardus tertius natus est. in marg. A.D.

[11] *de*] om. B.

[12] *Bannokbourn*] Bannokborñ. B. Bannokburgh. D.

[13] *Striuelyn*] Stryuelyn. B. Stryuelin. D.

Scottos, sed victoria remisit Scottis. Ibi ceciderunt proceres Angliæ, Gilbertus comes Gloucestriæ, Edmundus Manley, Robertus Clifford,[1] Paganus Tipetoft,[2] Ægydius Argentyn[3] et multi alii nobiles interfecti fuerunt. Umfridus[4] de Bowne[5] comes Herfordiæ, Johannes de Segraue, Johannes de Claueryng, Willielmus Latimer,[6] et fere CCC. barones et milites cum magna multitudine peditum qui restiterant erant capti et incarcerati, donec per gravem redemptionem fuerant liberati, domino nostro rege cum Hugone Dispensatore et parvo exercitu fugæ præsidium arripiente. A.D. 1314. Loss on the English side. Flight of Edward II.

Anno MCCCXV. parliamentum tentum fuit Londoniis, ubi jurati sunt[7] tota communitas Angliæ, tam cleri quam laici, super certis[8] articulis coronam et regnum tangentibus, quod juratum est ab omnibus conservari firmam[9] et stabilem[10] ne fiat occasio ab alienigenis læsionis regiæ majestatis; quod juramentum non duravit per annum integrum. A.D. 1315. A parliament at London. 20 Jan.

Anno[11] Domini MCCCXIX. et anno sequenti per totam Angliam facta est magna fames,[12] quia annonæ omnino deficiebant in Anglia et in Francia, nam summa frumenti vendebatur[13] pro XL. solidis. A.D. 1319. A famine.

Anno[14] Domini MCCCXXI. mortalitas hominum facta est talis qualis ante nusquam visa est; certum est illam fuisse in regionibus propinquis ad Angliam in omni parte, creditur tamen fuisse per totum mundum et maxime propter defectum victualium. A.D. 1321. Great mortality.

---

[1] *Clifford*] Clyfforde. B.
[2] *Tipetoft*] Typtoft. B.D.
[3] *Argentyn*] Argentyñ. B.
[4] *Umfridus*] Wynfridus. B.D.
[5] *Bowne*] Bowñ. B.
[6] *Latimer*] de Latymer. B. Latymer. D.
[7] *jurati sunt*] jurata est. B.D.
[8] The first word of f. 96. A. headed: A Conquæstu II.
[9] *firmam*] firmum. B.D.
[10] *stabilem*] The *bilem* written upon an erasure in A. stabile. B.
[11] Fames. in marg. A.D.
[12] *fames*] per totam Angliam. add. B.
[13] *vendebatur*] The contraction for *us* has been written instead of the contraction for *ur* in A. and altered into something resembling the latter.
[14] Mortalitas. in marg. A.D.

A.D. 1322. Capture of the earl of Lancaster. 16 March.

Eodem anno in prima hebdomada[1] Quadragesimæ, die Lunæ, litera Dominicalis A.,[2] captus est Thomas de Lancastria[3] comes apud Burbrige[4] per Andream de Herkley, die Martis proxi[ma] post festum Sancti Greg[orii,] litera Dominicalis A.,[5] quem ipse Thomas prius[6] armis militaribus propriis manibus cinxerat et juxta Pontem-Fractum pro jure ecclesiæ et regni decollatus est. Dominus Humfridus de Bouwon[7] comes Herfordiæ, dominus Willielmus de Sullee,[8] dominus Rogerus de Bromfeld (isti fuerunt judices comitis Lancastriæ, scilicet, Edmundus comes de Arundel, Hugo Dispensator senior, Robertus de Baldok sacerdos) eodem die suspensi et tracti sunt.[9] Dominus Warinus del Yle,[10] dominus Willielmus Tochet, dominus Thomas Mauduyt, dominus Henricus Bradebourn,[11] dominus Willielmus filius Willielmi junior, dominus Willielmus Cheni,[12] apud Pontem-Fractum erant tracti et suspensi.

He is executed. 22 March.

Executions of some of his adherents at Pomfret. 3 April; at York;

Dominus Johannes Molbrai,[13] dominus Rogerus de

---

[1] *ebdomada*] Dominica. B.

[2] *A.*] Originally a C in A. corrected into an A.

[3] *de Lancastria*] Lancastriæ. B.

[4] *Burbrige*] Burbg.ⁱ A.

[5] *die Martis . . . . Dominicalis A.*] Added in marg. A. in the author's hand in blacker ink than that of the text, and referred to its place by a caret. The preceding date ought to have been erased, for this cannot apply to the execution. The bracketed parts of this addition have been cropped off in binding. It is in the text of B.C.D. om. H.

[6] *prius*] Interlined in A. in rubric.

[7] *Bouwon*] Bouwon̄. B.

[8] *Sullee*] The last *e* written on an erasure in A.

[9] *Isti fuerunt . . . . tracti sunt*] A space of two lines and a half appears to have been left blank in A. for this paragraph, which is written in the author's hand but in blacker ink than that of the context, and with less care, the letters being more widely separated and shorter; they resemble exactly the characters in which the last sentences of the proem. are written. In A. B .C. D.E.H. the words *isti* and *eodem* commence with small capitals. I have added parentheses in order to make the passage more intelligible.

[10] *del Yle*] de Lyle. B.D.

[11] *Bradebourn*] Bradeborn̄. B.

[12] *Cheni*] Cheny. B.D.

[13] *Molbrai*] Molbray. B.D.

Clifford,[1] Thomas Gocelinus Deyvyle,[2] apud Eboracum tracti fuerunt et suspensi. A.D. 1322.

Dominus Bartholomæus Badesmer[3] apud Cantuariam tractus est et suspensus. at Canterbury, 14 April;

Dominus Henricus de Monte Forti, dominus Henricus de Wilyntoun[4] apud Bristollum[5] tracti sunt et suspensi. at Bristol;

Dominus Johannes Giffard,[6] dominus Rogerus de Elynbrige[7] apud Gloucestriam tracti sunt et suspensi. at Gloucester;

Willielmus Flemynng miles apud Kaerdife[8] captus, tractus,[9] et suspensus. at Cardiff;

Dominus Henricus Tyes Londoniis tractus est et suspensus. at London;

Dominus Franciscus de Aldhame apud Windeshore,[10] at Windsor;

dominus Thomas Colepeper apud Winchelse,[11] tracti sunt et suspensi. at Winchelsea.

Domini[12] Rogerus de Mortuo Mari senior et junior, (Rogerus de Mortuo M[ari] missus fuit Londonias in Avincula Sancti P[etri et] de Turri evasit) dominus Thomas de Berkley et pater ejus Mauricius miles, Johannes de Cherltoun[13] miles, dominus Robertus de Howlond,[14] reddiderunt se voluntati domini regis, qui in locis diversis erant incarcerati. Dominus Mauricius de Berkley senior obiit in castello de Walingford[15] incarceratus. Surrender of others.

---

[1] *Clifford*] Clyfford. B.

[2] *Deyvyle*] Deyuyle. B.D.

[3] *Badesmer*] Badesmer⁹. B.

[4] *Wilyntoun*] Willyngtoñ. B. Wylyngtoñ. D.

[5] *Bristollum*] Bristolliam. B.D.

[6] *Giffard*] Gyffard. B.

[7] *Elynbrige*] Elyngbrigge. B.

[8] *Kaerdife*] Kaerdif. B.D.

[9] *tractus*] est. add. B.D.

[10] *Windeshore*] Wyndesor. B. Wyndesore. D.

[11] *Winchelse*] Wynchelse. B.D.

[12] *Domini*] Dominus. D. In the loop of the D in A. is a mark of reference to a marginal note, mutilated in binding. It appears to have been written by the author about the same time as the portions of A. continguous to it, and consists of the passage between parentheses in the text. It is placed in the text of B.D. immediately after the last paragraph; in that of E. the word *junior* is immediately followed by *missus fuit;* while C. & H. omit the whole passage. The bracketed portions have been supplied from B.D.E.

[13] *Cherltoun*] Cherltoñ. B.D.

[14] *Howlond*] Houlond. B.

[15] *Walingford*] Walyngford. B.D.

A.D. 1322. Escape of others.

Domini[1] Johannes Botourt,[2] Johannes de Kyngestoun,[3] Nicholaus de Perci,[4] Johannes Mautrauers junior, et Willielmus Trussel, transierunt mare[5] et ibi per aliquot tempus habitabant.

Imprisonment of others.

Domini Hugo de Audeley, Johannes de Wylingtoun,[6] Gilbertus Talbot, Johannes Mauduyt, Edmundus Hacluyt, Johannes de Sapi,[7] Robertus Watevyle, Philippus de la Beche,[8] Johannes de la Beche,[8] Henricus de Laibourn,[9] isti decem cum LXII. militibus in diversis locis carceri mancipati sunt.

A.D. 1325. Queen Isabella is sent to France, to treat for peace.

Anno Domini MCCCXXIIII. domina Isabella regina Angliæ cum domino Edwardo filio suo pro pace inter dominum Edwardum maritum suum et regem Franciæ reformanda in Franciam transfretavit.

A.D. 1326. She lands in England. 24 Sept.

Anno MCCCXXV. cum dominis Johanne de Hunaldo, Rogero de Mortuo Mari, et cum magna multitudine Anglorum et Hunaldorum in Angliam[10] apud Ripeswiche[11] applicuit.

Hugh le Despenser, sen., executed. 27 Oct. Hugh le Despenser, jun., executed. 24 Nov.

Anno MCCCXXVI. Hugo le Spenser pater tractus est et suspensus apud Bristolliam et in quatuor partibus divisus in vigilia Apostolorum Symonis et Judæ.[12] Hugo filius tractus est et suspensus et membratim divisus apud Herfordiam cum Symone de Radynge in die Sanctæ Katerinæ Virginis.[13] Dominus Edmundus comes de Arundel apud Salopiam erat captus et

---

[1] *Domini*] Dominus. D.

[2] *Botourt*] Botort. B.

[3] *Kyngestoun*] Kyngestoñ. B.D.

[4] *Perci*] Percy. B.D.

[5] The first word of f. 96 v. A headed : De Rege Edwardo.

[6] *Wylingtoun*] Wylyngtoñ. B.D.

[7] *Sapi*] Sapy. B.D.

[8] *Beche*] Becħ B.

[9] *Laibourn*] Layboṛñ. B.

[10] *Angliam*] Anglia. B.D.

[11] *Ripeswiche*] Rypeswycħ. B. Rypeswyche. D.

[12] *in vigilia . . . . et Judæ*] Added in marg. A. by the author and referred to its place in the text by a mark. It is in the text of B.D.E.H.

[13] *in die . . . . Virginis*] Added in marg. A. by the same hand and about the same time as the last addition, and referred to its place in the text by a mark. It is in the text of B.D.E.H.

Herfordiæ est decollatus. Rex vero missus fuit ad castrum de Kenelworth.[1] A.D. 1326. Edward II. is sent to Kenilworth. Dec.

Cap. CLXXIV.

Edwardus rex a Conquæstu II. coronam regni Angliæ Edwardo filio suo primogenito, a Conquæstu Tertio, ætate circiter xv. annorum, resignavit et eodem anno, die xx. Septembris, apud Berkeley in fata discessit et apud Gloucestriam in ecclesia conventuali Sancti Petri, xxi. die Decembris, honorifice traditur sepulturæ. A.D. 1327. Edward II. resigns his crown to his son; is murdered at Berkeley castle. 21 Sept.

Eodem vero anno Edwardus III.[2] a Conquæstu tertio[3] die Februarii in regem coronatur Londoniis ab archiepiscopis Cantuariæ et Eboraci. Omnia ista prænotata peracta[4] sunt sub numero proximo prænotato. Coronation of Edward III. [3 Feb.] 1 Feb.?

Anno[5] Domini mcccxxix. dominus Edmundus de Wodestok comes Canciæ apud Wyntoniam fuit decollatus. A.D. 1330. Edmund, earl of Kent, beheaded. 19 March.

Anno mcccxxviii.[6] Hunaldi apud Eboracum combusserunt de suburbio civitatis fere unam parochiam quæ vocatur Sancti Nicholai in Ousgate, propter contumeliam motam inter burgenses et illos, quia ceperunt uxores burgensium et filias et ancillas per vim in suburbio civitatis;[7] burgenses vero suburbii indignati de tali facinore congressi sunt cum Hunaldis modo[8] bellico, et ex utraque parte bene armati una die A.D. 1327. Conflict at York between the towns people and the Hainaulters. 17 May.

[1] *Rex vero . . . . Kenelworth*] Added in A. in a hand very similar to that of the two last marginal additions in the space between two chapters. It is in the text of B.D. E.H.

[2] *Edwardus III.*] Edwardus. D.

[3] *tertio*] tertius primo. B.D.

[4] *peracta*] acta. D.

[5] b. in marg. A. marking the transposition of the years 1328 and 1329.

[6] a. in marg. A. The paragraphs are transposed in B.

[7] *civitatis*] civitates. A. the loop of the *e* partly erased.

[8] *modo*] more. D.

A.D. 1330. Martis in Septembri ante solus[1] ortum in Walingate dormiente tota civitate summo mane. Ibi ceciderunt in congressu de Hunaldis ad numerum quingentorum XXVII. præter eos qui lethaliter sunt [vulnerati][2] et obierunt in tertia die et in quarta sequenti. De Anglis ceciderunt CCXLI.: submersi sunt[3] in Ouse fluvio de Hunaldis inventis[4] CXXXVI.

CAP. CLXXV.

Birth of Edward the Black Prince. 15 June.

ANNO[5] Domini MCCCXXIX. natus est Edwardus IIII. de Philippa regina apud Wodestok,[6] qui factus est dux Cornubiæ primus.

A.D. 1332. Edward Balliol and the English defeat the Scotch at Gladsmuir. [10 Aug.] 11 Aug.

Anno[7] Domini MCCCXXX. nata est domina Isabella apud Wodstok.[8] Eodem anno dominus[9] Gilbertus Talbote,[10] Henricus de Bello Monte, barones, et baro de Stafford ad rogatum Edwardi de Balliolo qui regnum Scociæ[11] vendicabat, et comitis de Atheles, apud Gledmore, die Sancti Laurentii, magnam stragem super Scottos fecerunt; ubi ceciderunt de Scottis plusquam LX. milia[12] per auxilium Dei et XV. milium Anglorum; interfuit bellator principalis illius cœti Fulco Filius Waryni[13] miles validus et in armis strenuus.

---

[1] *solus*] solis. B.D.

[2] *vulnerati*] Added interlineally in marg. A. in a hand partially resembling that of the author, but containing a contraction not elsewhere written by him in a similar connection. The *w* and *a* are different. It is nearly contemporary.

[3] *sunt*] om. B.D.

[4] *inventis*] inventi sunt. B.D.

[5] The first word of f. 97. A. headed: A Conquæstu III. Edwardus IIII. in marg. A. Edwardus est natus. in marg. D.

[6] *Wodestok*] Wodestoke. B.

[7] Isabella filia regis. in marg. A.D.

[8] *apud Wodstok*] Interlined in A. in the author's smaller hand.

[9] *dominus*] om. D.

[10] *Talbote*] Talbot. B.D.

[11] Gledmore] in marg. A.D.

[12] *LX. milia*] 40,000. B.D.

[13] *Waryni*] Warini. B.D.

Anno MCCCXXXII. apud Notyngham captus est Rogerus de Mortuo Mari in camera reginæ in nocte Sanctæ [1] Lucæ Evangelistæ et in vigilia Sancti Andreæ est Londoniis tractus, suspensus, et in quatuor partibus divisus. Eundem [2] judicium subiit Symon [3] de Berforde. Eodem anno in æstate sequenti rex versus Scociam iter suum dirigens in episcopatu Dunelmiæ in quodam loco qui dicitur Stanoppark [4] Scottis in æstate obviavit. Rex vero in eodem parko Scottos [5] ita stricte [6] obsidens [7] præ defectu victualium omnes in vigilia Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ carnes comedebant. Tandem de parco per traditionem Henrici de Bello Monte evaserunt, ut vulgariter dictum fuit in patria.

A.D. 1330. Roger Mortimer taken. 19 Oct. He is executed. 29 Nov.

A.D. 1327. The king besieges the Scots in Stanhope park. [Aug. 14].

Eodem anno de parco rex ivit apud [8] Haydenbrig, deinde ad Berwik in auxilium Edwardi de Balliolo et villam obsedit IIII. idus Julii.

A.D. 1333. Edward III. besieges Berwick. 18 May.

Anno [9] Domini MCCCXXXII.[10] commissum est grave prœlium in die Sanctæ Margaretæ [11] Virginis [12] juxta Berwik [13] in loco qui dicitur Halidounhille, [14] ubi cecidit magna pars militiæ Scottorum cum numerosa multitudine peditum, et eodem die capta erat villa cum castello per regem Edwardum antedictum.

Battle of Halidonhill. [20 July]. 19 July. Surrender of Berwick. 20 July.

Anno Domini MCCCXXXIIII. Edwardus le Bailolo [15]

A.D. 1334. Balliol does

---

[1] *Sanctæ*] Sancti. B.D. Rogerus de Mortuo Mari. in marg. A.D.

[2] *Eundem*] Et idem. B. Idem. D.

[3] *Symon*] Symoñ. B.

[4] Stanop. in marg. A.D.

[5] *Scottos*] om. B.D.

[6] *stricte*] obstricte. B D.

[7] *obsidens*] obsidebat quod. B.D.

[8] *apud*] ad. B.D.

[9] Halidonhille. in marg. A. Halydoñhille. in marg. D.

[10] *MCCCXXXII.*] Apparently originally MCCCXXXIII. in A., but the second *r.* being produced below the line, and the third, though also so produced, being clearly erased, I have allowed the date in the text to stand.

[11] *Margaretæ*] The *garetæ* written upon an erasure in A. in paler ink than the context.

[12] *Virginis*] om. B.

[13] *Berwik*] Berwyk. B.D.

[14] *Halidounhille*] Halydoñhille. B.D.

[15] *Bailolo*] Bailliole. B.D.

A.D. 1333. homage to Edward III. 19 June.

fecit homagium regi Angliæ pro Scocia in die Sanctorum Gervasii et Prothasii in Novo Castro super Tynam.

A.D. 1334. Death of Pope John XXII.

Anno Domini MCCCXXXV. in Adventu Domini Johannes papa XXII. obiit Auinoniæ; cui successit[1] . . . .

A.D. 1337. A Parliament at London; 25 Feb. Prince Edward created earl of Cornwall. 16 March.

Anno MCCCXXXVII. rex[2] Edwardus III. tenuit parliamentum Londoniis XII.[3] die Martii; in quo fecit Edwardum filium suum ducem Cornubiæ et V. comites, scilicet, dominos Henricum de Lancastre comitem[4] Derebiæ, Willielmum de Bown[5] comitem Norhamptoun,[6] Willielmum de Monte Acuto comitem Sarum, Hugonem de Audeley comitem Gloucestriæ, et Willielmum de Clinton[7] comitem[8] Huntyngdoniæ.

A mild winter.

Eo[9] anno in multis locis Angliæ salices in mense Januarii flores protulerunt, rosis in quantitate et colore persimiles. Sambuci vero arbores fructus lapillis similissimos produxerunt.

Cap. CLXXVI.

A.D. 1338. Disputes with France.

Anno Domini MCCCXXXVIII. orta est grandis discordia inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, ex[10] eo quod rex Franciæ[11] multas terras et oppida in Wasconia[12] et

---

[1] *successit*] Followed in A. by a blank, the syllable *cat* being written above the line and near the end of the blank in the same hand as the word *vulnerati* near the end of the last chapter. There is no blank in B. In D. the word concludes a paragraph, and there is no discernible trace of anything following.

[2] *rex*] om. D.

[3] *XII.*] 14. B.D.

[4] *comitem*] A caret follows in A. and in the margin opposite is written, not in the author's hand, but probably in the same character as the word *vulnerati* near the end of Cap. CLXXIII. and the *cat* noticed in the note,[1] above the word *de*.

[5] *Bown*] Bouñ. B. Boun. D.

[6] *Norhamptoun*] de Norhamptoñ. B.D. The first word of f. 97 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[7] *Clinton*] Clintoñ. B. Clyntoñ D.

[8] *comitem*] comiten. A.

[9] *Eo*] Eodem. B.D. Nota. in marg. A.D.

[10] *ex*] om. D.

[11] *Franciæ*] On an erasure in B.

[12] *Wasconia*] The *W* corrected into a *V* by erasure in B.

alibi in partibus transmarinis improbe usurpaverat et injuste tenuerat; qua de causa rex oblationes supplices regi Franciæ fecerat si terras suas recuperare posset. Sed cum nihil proficeret, rex Angliæ collectis undique auxiliis cum militia copiosa, idus Julii apud Orwelle mare prospere transiit et apud Andwarp in Brabannia[1] diu perhendinavit. Deinde versus Coloniam iter arripiens Lodowicum de Bauario[2] imperatorem Almanniæ[3] contra regem Franciæ sibi confœderavit.

A.D. 1338. Edward III. embarks from Orwell for Flanders. [15 July]. 16 July. Treaty with the emperor.

Rex Angliæ iterum Brabanniam[4] intrans[5] literas suas patentes Flandrensibus direxit, inter cætera jus suum in regnum Franciæ declarans, quorum consilio mutato sigillo proprio utriusque regni Angliæ et Franciæ arma sibi appropriavit. Non multo post cum duce Brabanniæ[6] et cum comitibus de Gerle et de Gilers[7] ac multis aliis nobilibus mense Octobri cum exercitu magno regnum Franciæ intravit et ferme mille villas combussit atque damna innumera pagis Cameracensi et Wermundinensi[8] intulit; quo audito, rex Franciæ collecto exercitu innumerabili paratum se cum rege Franciæ in bellum congrediendum cum rege Angliæ, sed nescio cum quo casu vel infortunio terrore[9] perculsus Parisius remeavit.

A.D. 1340. He quarters the French arms. 8 Feb. A.D. 1339. The allies invade France. [Oct.] 20 Sept. They waste Cambresis and Vermandois. The French challenge them, but retire on Paris.

---

[1] *Brabannia*] Bᵃbãnia. A.

[2] *Bauario*] Corrected into *Bavaria* in B.

[3] *Almanniæ*] Alemannia. B.D.

[4] *Brabanniam*] Corrected into *Brabanciam* in B. Appropriatio armorum Angliæ et Franciæ. in marg. B.

[5] Mutatio sigilli regis. in marg. A.D.

[6] *Brabanniæ*] The second *n* erased in B.

[7] *Gerle et de Gilers*] Erased in B. and *Gueldriæ atque Jalvers* written upon it in a later hand.

[8] *Wermundinensi*] Wernnēdinensi. B.

[9] *terrore*] terr'o. B.

Cap. CLXXVII.

A.D. 1340. A Parliament at London. 29 March.

Anno Domini mcccxxxix. factum est parliamentum Londoniis in quo ad regis expeditionem promovendam[1] concessum est sibi nonum vellus, nonus agnus et nona garba per biennium in tota Anglia percipienda.[2] Pro hac autem concessione remisit dominus rex et condonavit omnia catalla felonum et fugitivorum, evasiones incarceratorum, fines et forisfactiones, et amerciamenta murdredorum,[3] delicta de viridi et venatione, relevia quoque et sectagia, usque ad xvi. diem mensis Julii anno regni sui xii., quo die passagium suum apud Brabanniam arripuit. Remisit etiam auxilia ad filium suum militem faciendum et filiam suam maritandam pro toto tempore suo ac omnia debita et arreragia firmariorum, et[4] compotum tam de temporibus progenitorum suorum quam de tempore suo usque ad annum regni sui decimum confirmavit, et Magnam Cartam de libertatibus Angliæ et Cartam de Foresta. Ista et multa alia concessit dominus rex communitati Angliæ. Omnia prædicta confirmata sunt in anno mcccxxxix.[5] in parliamento Londoniis.

An aid granted of a ninth fleece, lamb, and garb for two years; Monday, 3 April.

Confirmation of Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta.

Cap. CLXXVIII.

Death of an abbot of Malmesbury. 25 March.

Anno mcccxl. in Annuntiatione Sanctæ Mariæ obiit Adam de la Hoke abbas[6] Malmesburiæ.[7]

Anno Domini mcccxl. in vigilia Sancti Johannis

---

[1] *promovendam*] promovendum. B.

[2] *percipienda*] percipiendam. B.

[3] *murdredorum*] hundredorum. B.D.

[4] The first word of f. 98, A. headed: A conquæstu III.

[5] *mcccxxxix.*] The ix is written upon an erasure in A.

[6] *Hoke abbas*] Hook apud. B.

[7] *Malmesburiæ*] MM. A.B. This entry is added in marg. A. in the author's hand. It is in the margin of C. *prima manu.* It is in the text of B.D. but *Adam . . . . Malmesburiæ* is erased in the latter.

Baptistæ rex Angliæ cum ducentis ferme navibus mare ingressus est versus Flandriam, juxta le Scluys classem[1] Franciæ copiosam obviam habuit, quapropter per totum illum diem cum suis quid foret faciendum habuit diligentem deliberationem. In[2] crastino enim venit in ejus[3] auxilium miles ille validus Robertus de Morleya[4] cum Boreali classe Angliæ, et commissum est navale bellum fortissimum, ubi favente Deo Franci et Normanni ceciderunt, partim cæsi, partim gratis submersi, partim capti. Navibusque eorum exceptis paucis quæ[5] affugerant[6] totaliter ab Anglis occupatis. Duravit autem conflictus ille fortissimus qualis circa Angliæ oras nunquam est ante audita,[7] ab hora diei nona usque ad ortum solis diei sequentis. A.D. 1340. Edward III. defeats the French at Sluys. 24 June. Duration of the engagement.

Rex inde adunato exercitu copioso Borealem partem Franciæ devastavit, urbemque munitissimam Torneie[8] obsedit; quo audito, rex Franciæ collecto exercitu magno juxta Tornatum castrametatus est, sed mediante nobili comitissa Hunaldiæ usque festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ initæ sunt treugæ, atque ob hanc causam et aliam tactam rex Angliæ obsidionem amovit. He besieges Tournay. A truce concluded. 25 Sept.

Cap. CLXXIX.

Anno Domini MCCCXLI. rex Edwardus cum navigio Britanniam Minorem adiit, ubi per cibos inconvenientes et potus plures de suis amisit. A.D. 1342. The king invades Brittany.

---

[1] *classem*] classam. A.B.

[2] De bello de Scluys. in marg. A. Bellum de Scluys. in marg. D.

[3] *ejus*] om. D.

[4] *Morleya*] Morleia. B.

[5] *quæ*] qꝫ. A. corrected into q̃.

[6] *exceptis*] . . . . . *affugerant*] crossed out in B. videlicet, nonaginta in marg. B. in a late hand.

[7] *audita*] auditus. B.D.

[8] Torney. in marg. A. Torneye in marg. D.

A.D. 1343. A truce with France. 19 Jan.

Missi tamen sunt ad regem Angliæ a domino papa duo cardinales qui treugas triennales inter reges[1] Angliæ et Franciæ indixerunt, in quo spatio jus quod rex[2] Angliæ in regnum[3] Franciæ vendicaverat ad plenum posset discuti. In redeundo versus Angliam rex multa incommoda per magnam maris tempestatem perpessus est, quæ per nigromanticos et maleficos dicebatur contingere.

Cap. CLXXX.

A.D. 1342. Death of Benedict XII. 25 April.

Anno[4] Domini MCCCXLII. obiit papa Benedictus XII., monachus prius et abbas Cisterciencis Ordinis, deinde in propria diœcesi episcopus et cardinalis, ac demum vir Apostolicus, qui mox ad diversos ordines statuta edidit, regulas eorum conservantes;[5] cui successit[6] Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Clemens VI.[7] vocitatus, vir bonus, affabilis, jocundus, facetus, morigeratus, sine pari literatus; x. annos sedit.[8]

Cap. CLXXXI.

A.D. 1346. The king embarks at Portsmouth. [7 July].

Anno[9] Domini MCCCXLVI. in festo Translationis Beati[10] Thomæ Martyris dominus Edwardus rex Angliæ apud Portesmouthe[11] ingressus est mare cum mille et quingentis[12] navibus bene apparatis ducatu cujusdam militis nuper de Francia relegati cognomento

---

[1] *reges*] regē. B.D.
[2] *rex*] regi. B.
[3] *regnum*] regno. B.D.
[4] Benedictus XII. in marg. A.D.
[5] *conservantes*] conservantia. B.D.
[6] *successit*] om. D.
[7] Clemens VI. in marg. A.D.
[8] *x. annos sedit*] Added below the line in A. by the author in much blacker ink than the text.
[9] The first word of f. 98 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.
[10] *Beati*] Sancti. B.D.
[11] *Portesmouthe*] Portesmouth̄. A. B.
[12] *mille et quingentis*] 1050. B.

Harecourt, omnibus suis quorsum tenderet penitus ignorantibus, atque in Australi parte Normanniæ apud Hogges juxta Sequanam[1] flumen prospere applicuit, ubi Edwardum filium suum, filium domini Willielmi de Monte Acuto, filium domini Rogeri de Mortuo Mari, ac multos alios de Anglis nobiles insigniis[2] militaribus decoravit atque ad pugnandum pro statu et jure regni animavit et confortavit. Inde versus Cadamum tendens villam et castrum de Valoys[3] igne combussit et funditus destruxit et villam de Carentan cum castro cepit et deprædavit, reparato prius ponte de Ew, et tunc per Normannos fracto non minimum gravamen regi intulit.

A.D. 1346. He lands at La Hogue. 12 July.

He burns Valognes. 18 July; takes Charentan, repairs the bridge of Ew.

Cum autem rex venisset ad Cadomum, illam in manu forti cepit et devastavit. Comitem de Ew constabilarium[4] Franciæ, de Tankervyle[5] marescallum multosque alios barones ac milites, majorem civitatis cum populo multo cepit, quorum centum et XL. in custodia[6] comitis Huntyngdoniæ commisit, maximam enim multitudinem interfecit.

He takes Caen and captures the constable and marshal of France. 26 July.

De Cadomo autem rex recedens paucis admodum ibi relictis circumquaque transeundo versus Normanniam iter dirigit illam deprædando, versus Briayne[7] divertens, nec hominem nec feminam inveniebat.[8] Cum autem venisset ad civitatem Luxoniensem[9] per suos captam et spoliatam duos cardinales domini papæ nuntios per Wallenses[10] de XX. equis magnis spoliatos obviam habuit. Ibique ob devotionem diei Dominicæ et ad reverentiam cardinalium tota die perhendinavit,

Arrives at Lisieux.

Two cardinals plead for

---

[1] *Sequanam*] Sequanum. B.D.
[2] *insigniis*] insignis. B.D.
[3] *Valoys*] Valois. B.
[4] *constabilarium*] constabularium. B.D.
[5] *Tankervyle*] Tankervile. B.
[6] *custodia*] custodiam. B.D.
[7] *Briayne*] Briayñ. B. iter deprædando. add. B.
[8] *inveniebat*] invenit. B.D.
[9] *Luxoniensem*] corrected into *Lexoniensem* in B.
[10] *Wallenses*] Walenses. B.

A.D. 1346. peace ; audiens illos de pace et concordia prædicantes, qui etiam ei obtulerunt pro bono pacis Wasconiam et Pountyf[1] tenendas de rege Franciæ sicut pater ejus tenuerat. Rex autem illam missionem frivolam reputans pro[2] nullo, cardinales cum securo conductu restitutis equis per[3] Walenses raptis ad Curiam Romanam remisit. Pons autem Sequanæ fluminis dirutus a Normannis, nihilominus Walenses ultra aquam natantes et multos de Normannia occidentes absque damno[4] redierunt, quasdam naviculas secum adducentes, in quibus quidam de Anglis armati aquam transierunt et bene centum et quinque Normannos qui posteriora sua Anglis sæpe ostenderant occiderunt.

but in vain. He sends them back to Rome.

A French peculiarity.

Rege autem Angliæ per unum sinum Sequanæ fluminis transeunte[5] cum toto cœtu suo ubi prius nusquam hominibus iter visus[6] est. Exercitus autem Angliæ fortem dederunt insultum ad unum castellum super aquam, et ibi fuerunt vulnerati domini Ricardus Talbote[7] et Thomas de Holonde.[8] Alium autem dederunt insultum ad castrum Rothegium ;[9] ibique villa fuit capta et turris, unus de fortioribus totius Franciæ. Fuit autem ibi occisus unus nobilis miles de novo factus nomine Edwardus de Boys ; de una petra jactata de castello mortem sustinuit. De illo vero castello antiquum dicebatur proverbium in tota Francia, quod est illud :[10] "Quant le chastel de

The castle of Roche-Guyon assaulted and taken.

---

[1] *Pountyf*] Poñtyf. A.B. Pontyf. D.

[2] *pro*] et. præm. B.D.

[3] The first word of f. 99. A. headed: A Conquæstu III.

[4] *damno*] added in marg. A. perhaps by the author, in blacker ink than the context, and referred to its place by a caret.

[5] *Rege . . . transeunte*] Rege . . . transiente. B. Rex . . . transiens. D.

[6] *visus*] visum. B.D.

[7] *domini Ricardus Talbote*] dominus Robertus Talbot. B.

[8] *Holonde*] Holand. D.

[9] *Rothegium*] Rothe Gyon. B. *Gyon* on an erasure in a later hand.

[10] *quod est illud*] om. B.D. Notate proverbium. in marg. A.D.

Gyoune[1] en[2] est prys, donkes[3] fleystra le[4] flour de lice."[5] A.D. 1346.

Rex autem Angliæ hospitavit se apud Poysi[6] et morabatur ibi die Lunæ et in crastino Assumptionis reparavit pontem per Francos et Normannos dirutum, et ibi ceperunt xxx. charíettos de Amyas vel de Ambianis, quod idem est, venientes onustos de tentis et aliis victualibus cum ccc. hominibus armatis quos omnes interfecerunt,[7] et charíettos igne combusserunt.[8] He arrives at Poissy, 14 Aug.

Rex autem Franciæ literas tales regi transmisit Angliæ tenorem sequentem continentes:[9] Letter of the king of France. 14 Aug.

Cap. CLXXXII.

Deinde[10] rex veniens apud Poys[11] villam cum castello cepit et aliquos ibi occidit et villam combussit. Villa autem de Areyns talia vidente[12] infortunia reddidit se in regis gratiam; quæ non erat ideo combusta. Et quia pons de Louc[13] rumpebatur rex transivit aquam per unum vadum inter villas Sancti Walerici et Crotey, ibique die Sancti Bartholomæi[14] cum toto exercitu suo in parvo spatio diei Deo juvante prospere terram accepit. Invenitque in alia parte aquæ unum magnum cuneum armatorum qui Progress of Edward. 24 Aug.

[1] *Chastel de Gyoune*] Chastell de Gyoñ. B.
[2] *en*] Rubbed out in B. om. D.
[3] *donkes*] donk. D.
[4] *le*] la. B.
[5] *lice*] Corrected in a late hand into *lis* in B.
[6] *Poysi*] Poysy. B.D.
[7] *interfecerunt*] occiderunt. B.
[8] The MS. C. terminates here in the middle of a page.
[9] *Rex autem . . . . . continentes*] om. B.D.E. This sentence, except the initial *R.*, had been rendered so faint in A. as to be almost illegible, until developed by a chemical application. It occurs within eight lines from the end of a page, the remainder of which is blank, as well as the whole of the following page. No blanks are left in any of the MSS. B.D. or E.
[10] The first word of f. 100. A. headed: A Conquæstu III.
[11] *Poys*] Poysy. B.
[12] *vidente*] videns. B.D.
[13] *Louc*] Louk. B.
[14] *Bartholomæi*] Wartholomæi. B?

A.D. 1346. ad primum conflictum terga verterunt; et interfecti sunt ibi plus quam mille, nullo de Anglia amisso.

He comes in sight of the French army.

Egresso autem rege cum suis de aqua vidit regem Franciæ cum toto exercitu suo in alia parte aquæ cariagium regis occupasse si potuisset desiderantem, sed aqua crescente omnes Angli transiebant.[1] Rex autem Angliæ in conspectu[2] inimicorum suorum[3] castrametatus est et ad pugnam se præparavit. Unus autem miles de nostris Coluyle nomine ad excitationem cujusdem militis alterius partis aquam transivit et absque læsione utriusque tribus vicibus concurrebant, simul bibebant, et uterque prospere ad suos rediebant.

A gallant feat.

The battle of Cressy. 26 Aug.

Die[4] proximo ante festum Sancti Augustini Magni Doctoris rex Angliæ[5] cum exercitu suo venit desuper Cressy et vidit aperte exercitum Franciæ circa meridiem gentem innumerabilem in octo aciebus distinctam; quibus visis, et exercitibus adinvicem appropinquantibus insimul congressi sunt et, gratia Dei auxiliante, rex Angliæ triumphavit et regem Franciæ cum exercitu suo viriliter devicit.

Duo vero reges, scilicet Boemiæ et Maioricarum; duos[6] duces, scilicet, Lorengiæ et Bourboniæ; VI. comites, scilicet, de Harecort,[7] de Bloys, et frater regis, de Flandres,[8] de Aumarle, de Ermoniake,[9] dominum de Matfelone;[10] archiepiscopum de Saway, episcopum de Reyns, et unum abbatem, pluresque alios nobiles, duo milia militum, ac vulgus innumerabile peditum ibidem superavit et occidit.

The king of France twice unhorsed.

Rex autem Franciæ bis decaballatus et in femore et in gutture vulneratus, portans in maxilla sua unam

---

[1] *transiebant*] transibant. D.
[2] *conspectu*] omnium. add. D.
[3] *suorum*] nostrorum. B.
[4] Bellum de Cressy. in marg. A.D.
[5] *Angliæ*] om. B.
[6] *duos*] duo. B.D.
[7] *de Harecort*] Harecourt. B.D.
[8] *Flandres*] Flaundres. B. Fladres. D.
[9] *Ermoniake*] Ermoniak. B.D.
[10] *Matfelone*] Mat'elon̄. A.B.D.

sagittam, sic vix evasit. Corpus quoque regis Boemiæ inventum rex Angliæ ad filium regis Boemiæ ad Ambianas transmisit ad sepeliendum, ubi post fugam latitabat. Visi etiam [1] quoque fuerunt super exercitum Franciæ ante congressionem belli plusquam mille corvi volitantes, qui visi fuerunt tam a Francis quam ab Anglis. Videbatur regi etiam Franciæ et pluribus aliis suorum ante [2] congressionem belli quod tanta fuit multitudo Anglorum quod totus mundus eis non resisteret, et ideo territi fugerunt et contriti, relictis in uno cumulo mille dextrariis et eo amplius cum assessoribus suis sagittis occisis et vulneratis.

A.D. 1346 and thrice wounded.

An omen.

Panic of the French.

Rex vero duos barones ibidem fecit, scilicet, dominos [3] Alanum de le Suche, et Johannem del Yle [4] et L. milites. Apparuit etiam [5] unus magnus exercitus Francorum armatorum et aliqui de Anglis equis acceptis aciem contra eos direxerunt, et ad primum congressum Franci terga verterunt; et fuerunt ibidem occisi duo milia Francorum et plures peditum, unus tantum Anglicus qui impetuose se in aciem transmisit, Eymerus [6] de Rokesley novus miles. Et quia rex cum turma sua multum erant fatigati eo quod non manducassent neque bibissent per totum diem Sabbati et noctem, ac sagittarii pro magna parte suas sagittas [7] expendissent, rex ob populi sui recreationem versus urbem Kalesiæ ab olim omnibus Angligenis infestum [8] iter arripuit. Ibique in obsidionem illius per annum et eo [9] amplius demoratus est.

Two barons, Alan de la Zouche and John de Lisle created on the field by Edw. III.

The king repairs to Calais.

Eodem anno in crastino Sancti Michaelis in Monte Tumba commissum est bellum lethale in episcopatu

The battle of Nevile's-cross. [17 Oct.]

---

[1] *etiam*] om. B.D.

[2] The first word of f. 100 v. A. headed: De Rege Edwardo.

[3] *dominos*] dominum. D.

[4] *del Yle*] de Lyle. B.D.

[5] *etiam*] autem. D.

[6] *Eymerus*] An erased G. precedes in A.

[7] Obsidio Kalesiæ. in marg. A.D.

[8] *infestum*] infestam. B.D.

[9] *eo*] om. D.

A.D. 1346. Dunelmiæ ad unam leucam de civitate in loco qui [1] dicitur Neuiles Croys [2] inter Anglos et Scottos, sed Dei auxilio Angli triumphabant. Duce Anglorum archiepiscopo Eboraci,[3] Willielmo de la Soche [4] et plures alii nobiles tam cleri quam laici [5] de Norhumbria, de Dunelmiæ episcopatu, de Eboraci archiepiscopatu,[6] qui per instigationem regis Franciæ Angliam intraverunt, spoliando, occidendo, depopulando per Tyndale et Redisdale usque Dunelmiam processerunt. Ibi enim obviati sunt [7] per dominum Willielmum de la Soche archiepiscopum prædictum, ubi captus fuit Dauid de Bruys rex Scociæ et comites et barones et milites et multi alii de Scocia capti[8] et occisi,[8] fugati [8] et dispersi.[8]

David II. taken prisoner.

Cap. CLXXXIII.

A.D. 1347. Surrender of Calais. 4 Aug. Circa festum Sancti Bartholomæi Philippus rex Franciæ qui ad obsidionem Kalesiæ dissolvendum propius accesserat diluculo et clam nocturnando aufugit, derelictis tentoriis cum victuabilibus plurimis, quo viso Kalesienses urbem regi Angliæ cum summa humilitate reddiderunt. Quam rex per mensem disponens circa festum Sancti Michaelis in Angliam rediit, concessis etiam [9] treugis novem mensium ad

The king returns to England. 12 Oct.

---

[1] *qui*] q̃. A. De Nevyles Croys conflictio in marg. A.

[2] *Neuiles Croys*] Neuyles Crosse. B. Nevyles Croys. D. Nevyles Croys. in marg. D.

[3] *Eboraci*] Eboracensi. D.

[4] *Willielmo de la Soche*] Interlined in A. in the author's smaller hand. There is no caret. Willielmo de la Souche. B. Willielmo de la Suche. D.

[5] *plures alii nobiles tam clerici quam laici*] pluribus aliis nobilibus, tam clericis quam laicis. B.D.

[6] *archiepiscopatu*] episcopatu. B. D.

[7] *obviati sunt*] eis obviabatur. B.D.

[8] *capti*] sunt. add. B. D. In each of the words marked ([8]) in the text, a terminal *s* has been erased in A.

[9] The first word of f. 101. A. headed: A Conquæstu III.

domini papæ instantiam, sed in redeundo sicut alias de Britannia maximam in mari tempestatem perpessus est, quamplures enim validos homines amisit. Unde ipse rex in talem admirantiam [1] et querimoniam prolapsus est dicens; O domina [2] mea Maria, quid protendit quod tendendo versus Franciam aura grata potior, mare arridet, et cuncta mihi eveniunt prospere, sed in redeundo versus Angliam infortunia nimis adversa perpetor? [3] A.D. 1347.

Cap. CLXXXIV.

Anno Domini mcccxlvii.[i.] circa festum Translationis Sancti Thomæ Martyris crudelis pestilentia cunctis futuris sæculis detestanda de partibus transmarinis in Australem sinum Angliæ ad portum quæ [4] dicitur [5] Melcumbe in Dorsetia applicuit, quæ Australem plagam circumquaque perlustrans in partibus Dorsetiæ, Deuoniæ, et [6] Somersetiæ, innumerabilem populum miserabiliter occidit. Creditur tamen fuisse adeo crudelis inter Paganos sicut inter Christianos. Deinde Bristolliam veniens, paucis admodum relictis, versus partes Aquilonares transiens nec civitatem nec villam nec capham nec etiam nisi raro domum relinquens quin majorem partem vel totum interfecit, ita quod quinta pars hominum et mulierum ac infantum [7] in tota Anglia sepulturæ traditur.[8] Unde tanta fuit hominum penuria quod vix vivi sufficiebant ad infirmos custodiendos et mortuos sepeliendos. Mulieres quidem quæ superfuerunt pro majori parte per plures [9]

A.D. 1348. The First Great Pestilence commences in Melcombe (co. Dorset); [7 July] rages in Devon and Somerset; reaches Bristol. Its extreme severity. One-fifth of the population of England swept off.

---

[1] *admirantiam*] admirationem. B. D.

[2] Nota. in marg. A.D.

[3] *perpetor*] The *etor* is written upon an erasure in A. perpetror. D.

[4] *quæ*] qui. B.D.

[5] Pestilentia in marg. A.D.

[6] *et*] Interlined in A.

[7] *infantum*] infantium. A.

[8] *traditur*] traderetur. B.D.

[9] *plures*] pluros. B.

A.D. 1349. annos steriles remanserunt; si quæ earum conceperint,[1] partum edendo fere cum fœtu interierunt. In quibusdam locis ob defectum cœmeteriorum episcopi nova loca dedicaverunt. Illo enim in[2] tempore vendebatur quarterium frumenti pro XII. denariis, quarterium ordei pro IX. denariis, quarterium fabarum pro VIII. denariis, quarterium avenarum pro VI. denariis, unus magnus bos pro XL. denariis, bonus equus pro VI. solidis, qui quandoque valuit XL. solidos,[3] bona vacca pro II. solidis, et pro XVIII. denariis,[4] et in toto isto pretio non sunt emptores nisi raro inventi. Et regnavit ista pestilentia in Anglia per binos annos et ultra antequam mundata est.

Barrenness of the female population.

Consecration of new cemeteries.

Cheapness of provisions.

Duration of the pestilence.

Cessante[5] pestilentia nutu Divino tanta facta est[6] paucitas servientium quod non sunt inventi ad agriculturam faciendam,[7] pro quorum defectu mulieres et parvuli[8] invise missi sunt ad carucas et ad plaustra fuganda.

Scarcity of servants.

[A.D.] 1350. A.D. John Tintern abbot of Malm. ob.[9] A.D. 1349. 8 Aug.

Hoc anno obiit Johannes Tyntern abbas Malmesburiæ VI. idus Augusti; cujus animæ propitietur Deus.[9]

Hoc anno Edwardus Quartus a Conquæstu, tunc[10]

---

[1] *conceperint*] conceperĩt. A.; originally *conceperũt*, the *t* having been erased and the last stroke of the *u* converted into a *t* by the addition in blacker ink of a cross-stroke near the top and a curve at the foot. Conceperunt. D.

[2] *in*] Interlined in A. om. B.

[3] *solidos*] s̃. interlined in A.

[4] *et pro XVIII. denariis*] 8. d. B.D.

[5] *Cessante*] The large *C.* is omitted in A., a space being left for it and a small *c* written therein. Commencing with this sentence the character of A., though still clearly by the same hand as the preceding portion of the MS., shows a marked alteration. It is larger, though not uniformly; the letters are more widely separated and more carelessly formed, and altogether the MS. displays less *neatness* of execution in every particular than the preceding portions.

[6] *est*] Interlined in A.

[7] *faciendam*] faciendum. D.

[8] *parvuli*] parvulæ. B.

[9] *Deus*] Amen. add. B.

[10] *Quartus . . . . tunc*] Totally erased in D.

princeps Walliæ, naves ascendit apud Plommothe[1] et transfretavit[2] apud Burdegalem;[3] in die [Nativitatis][4] Beatæ Mariæ cepit iter suum de Anglia cum parva manu Anglorum secum transeuntium. Unde quiescentibus hominibus suis a labore marino fatigatis partem terræ Franciæ equitavit, combussit, et devastavit. Dietas et equitationes modo et ordine quo equitavit[5] plenius imposterum explicemus.[6]

[A.D.] 1354. A.D. Edward the Black Prince embarks at Plymouth. A.D. 1355. 8 Sept.

CAP. CLXXXV.

Itinerarium Edwardi Quarti.[7]

MOVENTE se domino principe versus terram Galliarum de Brigerake[8] die Jovis, hoc est, quarto die mensis Augusti, super terram Franciæ equitando Sabbato sequenti venit ad terram de Peragor. Ibi dominus Bartholomeus de Borowasch cum suis[9] duas magnas villas muratas conquisivit, quas dominus de Marsan ad usum domini principis custodivit; qui quidem villas prædictas ad magnum damnum inimicorum viriliter et robuste usque ad adventum principis custodivit.[10]

A.D. 1356. His Itinerary. Enters Bergerac, Thursday, 4 Aug., enters Perigort, Saturday, 6 Aug.

[1] *Plommothe*] Plommouth. B.

[2] *transfretavit*] The first two syllables are apparently written upon an erasure in A.

[3] *Burdegalem*] Burdigalem. B. D.

[4] *Nativitatis*] The word *Assumptionis*, of which only the first *s* and a part of the last are now visible, but the whole of which may be inferred from the form of the erasure, has been erased in the text of A. the word *Nativitatis* being traced in another hand in the margin.

[5] *quo equitavit*] om. B.

[6] *explicemus*] explicabimus. B.D.

[7] *Itinerarium Edwardi Quarti*] In rubric in A.D. In the latter '*Quarti*' is erased.

[8] *Brigerake*] Brygerake. B.

[9] *cum suis*] Interlined in A.

[10] *qui quidem . . . . . custodivit*] om. B. added in a foot-note *prima manu*. om. D.

A.D. 1356. Sunday, 7 Aug. Dominica sequenti, scilicet die septimo mensis Augusti, dominus princeps movit exercitum ad quamdam villam quæ fuit episcopi de Peragor, unde quia sedes fuit ibi[1] cathedralis, sententia promulgata est in omnibus raptoribus ibidem sævientibus contra voluntatem episcopi, sed communicato concilio principis et episcopi, minime valuit illa sententia. Factum fuit 8 Aug. illud colloquium die Lunæ sequenti itinerando per viam, et moratus est dominus princeps tota illa nocte juxta unum castrum fortissimum quod vocatur Rammesforde.

9 Aug., arrives at Brantôme; Die Martis sequenti dominus princeps cum suo cuneo transivit ad quamdam villam quæ vocatur Bremptoun[2] et ibi pernoctavit.

10 Aug., at Quisser; Die Mercurii, hoc est, in die Sancti Laurentii, transivit princeps per unum magnum vadum juxta unum molendinum ubi supra fuit unum castellum fortissimum et una villa quæ nominatur[3] Quisser ubi per totam noctem moratus est.

11 Aug., at Marton (?); Die Jovis sequenti venit princeps ad unam villam quæ vocatur Merdan;[4] ibi enim invenit piscium multitudinem ad vendendum et emendum, et ideo per totam noctem ibi pacifice morabatur.

12 Aug., at Rochechauart; Die Veneris venit ad villam de Rochewar.

13 Aug. Die Sabbati venit per abbatiam de Peruche,[5] ubi hospitati sunt nobiles et magnati[6] super ripam de Wigan, sub qua fluit aqua sic vocitata.

14 Aug., at Lesterp; Die Dominica, hoc est, XIIII. die Augusti princeps transivit prædictam aquam et continuo displicavit vexilla sua et venit ad quamdam villam Litherp vocatam; ibi enim erat quædam abbatia fortissima, quæ longo spatio diei resistebat contra principem; tandem se red-

---

[1] *ibi*] Interlined in A.

[2] *Bremptoun*] Bremptoñ. B. Brēptoñ. D.

[3] *nominatur*] vocatur. B.

[4] *Merdan*] Merdañ. B.

[5] *Peruche*] Peruch. B.

[6] *magnati*] magnates. B.D.

didit voluntati principis, salvis hominibus et ecclesiam[1] et ad ea spectantibus, et ibi moratus est per diem Lunæ quod[2] tunc fuit dies Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ. A.D. 1356. Monday, 15 Aug.

Die Martis sequenti venit princeps ad villam de[3] Belelak' quæ fuit comitissæ de Penbroke, pro cujus amore villa fuit salvata ab incendio. 16 Aug., reaches Belac;

Die Mercurii venit princeps ad quamdam villam cum castro fortissimo et ambæ[4] fuerunt[5] domino Jacobo de Burboun, ubi uxor sua morabatur. Ecclesia enim illius villæ longo diei spatio contra principem debellavit, tandem voluntati principis se submisit. Eodem die prima warda cepit duo castella fortissima per insultum, ubi princeps pernoctavit per[6] diem Jovis sequentem. 17 Aug. 18 Aug.

Die Veneris venit princeps ad villam quæ vocatur Luchank' ubi invenit magnam copiam piscis et ibi pernoctavit et in crastino villam combussit. 19 Aug., Lusac;

Die Sabbati itineravit versus villam Sancti Benedicti de Saut,[7] quæ villa fuit pulcherrima, in qua fuit una[8] abbatia ubi duo nepoti[9] domini de la Brette[10] habebant magnam summam auri ad numerum XIIII.M. florenorum scutaneorum. 20 Aug., S. Benoît-du-Sault;

Die Dominica, scilicet, XXI. die mensis Augusti, venit princeps[11] ad villam quæ vocatur Argentoun,[12] ubi castellum forte fuit sub villa; ibi die Lunæ moratus est. Eodem die itinerando captum est unum castrum[13] fortissimum per aliquos de cuneo illo. 21 Aug., Argenton; 22 Aug.

---

[1] *ecclesiam*] ecclesia. B.
[2] *quod*] qui. B. quæ. D.
[3] *villam de*] om. B.
[4] *ambæ*] ambo. B.D.
[5] *fuerunt*] constabant. D.
[6] *per*] et. præm. D.
[7] *Saut*] Sawzt. B.
[8] *una*] om. B.
[9] *nepoti*] corrected into *nepotes* in B. nepotes. D.
[10] *Brette*] Brett. B.
[11] *princeps*] pn. A.
[12] *Argentoun*] Argentoñ. B.D.
[13] *unum castrum*] castellum. D.

A.D. 1356. Tuesday, 23 Aug., reaches Chateauroux, S. Amand(?), and Bourgdieu; Die Martis venit princeps ad quamdam villam vocatam[1] sermone Gallico Citerauf,[2] quæ fuit villa pulcherrima. Eodem die venit ad aliam quæ vocatur Seynt Yman ubi ultima warda jacebat tota illa nocte. Post venit ad aliam[3] villam fossatam ubi fuit una abbatia nobilis et fortis quæ vocatur Burgo Dei. Ibi enim est magna peregrinatio ad Sanctorum corpora Cosini et Damiani quæ ibi jacent in magna veneratione. Ibi moratus[4] est prima warda tota die Mercurii quia eo die fuit festum Sancti Bartholomæi.

24 Aug.

25 Aug., reaches Issoudun; Die Jovis venit princeps[5] ad unum castellum magnum regis Franciæ quod vocatur Isoldoun;[6] et ibi moratus est die Veneris et Sabbati.

28 Aug., reaches La Ferté; Die Dominica, scilicet, XXVIII. die mensis Augusti, venit princeps[5] ad unum castrum forte quod vocatur le Feerte,[7] quod fuit vicecomitis de Todard', ubi domini de Berkeley et de la Ware steterunt quousque[8] cariagium præcedebat eas.[9] Postea venit

reaches Lury; per unam antiquam villam et[10] muratam tamen fractam, quod[11] vocatur Lury; ibi enim finis esse solebat ducatus de Gyen in illa parte. Postea transivit unam aquam quæ dividit ducatum et regnum

crosses the Cher; Franciæ, et vocatur Cheri,[12] et pernoctavit in villa de

sleeps at Vierzon; Virizon. Tertia die præcedenti capitaneus de la Buche

an abbey burned; totam illam patriam spoliavit. Ibi fuit una abbatia nobilis valde combusta. Eodem die dominus Johannes

Aubigny burned; Chaundos et dominus Jacobus de Audele dederunt insultum ad villam de Daubene et vi et armis eam ceperunt et igne et flamma eam vastaverunt. Eodem

---

[1] *vocatam*] quæ vocatur. B.
[2] *Citerauf*] Cyteraus. B.
[3] *aliam*] unam. B. om. D.
[4] *moratus*] morata. B.D.
[5] *venit princeps*] ue. pn. A.
Isoldoun] Isoldon. B. Ysoldoñ. D.
[6] *Isoldoun*] Isoldon. B. Ysoldoñ. D.
[7] *Feerte*] Feert. B.
[8] *quousque*] cousqꝫ. A.
[9] *eas*] eos. D.
[10] *et*] om. B.
[11] *quod*] quæ. B.D.
[12] *Cheri*] Chery. B.

die prædicti duo milites fecerunt equitatum cum ducentis hominibus et obviaverunt uno Franco nomine Gris Motoun[1] qui secum habuit IIII. XX. lanceas, qui omnes fugarunt[2] et occisi fuerunt; capti tamen fuerunt[3] XVIII. milites et armigeri. Angli enim habebant X. lanceas tantum; le Gris Motoun[1] primus fuit qui fugam fecit. A.D. 1356. Defeat of Gris Mouton and his men, by Sir John Chandos and Sir James de Audley.

Die Lunæ quæ[4] fuit Decollatio Sancti Johannis[5] venit princeps ad unam villam quæ vocatur Frank', sita super amnem quæ dividit regnum Franciæ et ducatum. Eodem die gentes domini de Camont ceperunt VIII. milites et armigeros domini de Cron et de Bursigaud'. Eodem die nova venerunt principi quod rex Franciæ voluit congredi cum eo, unde multum lætatus est. Quando autem equitaverat leucas XVI. de civitate Aureliani audivit quod dominus de Croon[6] et dominus Bursigaud[7] venerant contra eum cum LX.[8] lanceis et cum multitudine copiosa. Princeps vero populum suum erga eos viriliter conduxit usque dum venerat ad quamdam villam muratam quæ vocatur Romorantyn ubi fuerant inclusi inimici prænotati; tentoria fixit et per tres dies perhendinavit super unum vadum juxta villam, quæ aqua vocatur Soudre, et hoc fuit die Jovis. [? Martis.] Monday, 29 Aug. The lords of Craon and Bourcicault pursue the prince, who proceeds to Romorentin; 30 Aug.

Die Mercurii sequenti princeps præcepit[9] fieri insultum ad villam, et ita factum est valde forte; unde inclusi viriliter resistebant, quia plures fuerunt homines armati in castro. Fuit enim ibi aliud castrum juxta illud fortissimum valde quantum ad jactus[10] sagittæ quod vocabatur[11] le Doungoun;[12] illud autem magnum 31 Aug., which he takes by assault;

---

[1] *Gris Motoun*] Grys Motoñ. B. D.
[2] *fugarunt*] fugati. B.D.
[3] *fuerunt*] capti. præm. B.
[4] *quæ*] qui. B.
[5] *Johannis*] Baptistæ. add. B.D.
[6] *Croon*] Cron. B.
[7] *Bursigaud*] de. præm. B.
[8] LX.] 40. B.D.
[9] *præcepit*] fecit. B.
[10] *jactus*] jactum. B.D.
[11] *vocabatur*] vocatur. B.D.
[12] *Doungoun*] Doungoñ. B.D.

A.D. 1356. and lays siege to the castle.

damnum ingessit hominibus principis. Tandem capta villa, le Dongoun[1] viriliter resistebat; fuit enim facta ad modum turris. Ibi[2] fuit occisus unus nobilis miles licet juvenis,[3] cognomento de la Brette, et unus armiger generosus qui fuit cum capitaneo de la Buche.

Thursday, 1 Sept.

Die Jovis sequenti fecerunt hurdesia tria ad turrim dirimendum; unde comes de Southfolke fecit unum, et Bartholomæus Borouwasch' unum[4] aliud, et unus magnus de Wasconia tertium.

2 Sept. 3 Sept. The castle is fired and the garrison surrenders.

Die Veneris et die Sabbati submiserunt ignem ad turrim, ita quod inclusi non possent bene ignem extingue[re] cum vino et aqua, quod[5] in parva quantitate habebant intra[6] se. Tunc cœperunt tractare de pace et de redditu turris per totum illum diem, et tandem se submiserunt omnino in gratia principis et turris reddita est.

4 Sept. The prince rests there;

Dominica sequenti qui fuit quartus dies Septembris princeps[7] quievit et homines hernesia[8] sua parare jussit.

5 Sept.

Die Lunæ sequenti venit princeps ad terram quæ fuit de dominio comitis de Bisser et Burgilloun.[9]

6 Sept.

Die Martis venit princeps[10] ad unum castrum de comitatu de Bloys, quod est situm super amnem de Cher'.

7 Sept.

Die Mercurii venit princeps ad[11] Aumounk' super Leir[12] juxta Tours in Turonia, nobilis civitas et perpulchra;[13] ibi[14] moratus est per dies[15] Jovis, Veneris, et

---

[1] *Dongoun*] Doungoñ. B.D.
[2] *Ibi*] enim. add. D.
[3] *licet juvenis*] om. B.D.
[4] *unum*] óm. B.D.
[5] *quod*] quæ. B.D.
[6] *intra*] erga. B.
[7] *princeps*] princesps. A.
[8] *hernesia*] harnesia. B.
[9] *Burgilloun*] Brugilloñ. B.
[10] *ad terram . . . . Bourgilloun. Die Martis . . . . princeps*] om. D.
[11] *ad*] de. B.
[12] *Leir*] Leyr. B.D.
[13] *nobilis civitas et perpulchra*] nobilem civitatem et perpulchram. B.D.
[14] *ibi*] et. præm. D.
[15] *dies*] diem. B.D.

Sabbati; in quibus fecerunt homines principis pulchras dietas. A.D. 1356.

Die Dominica, qui fuit XI. dies mensis Septembris, princeps movit exercitum suum et bene[1] mane transivit unam aquam periculosam valde, quæ aqua vocatur Yndre; et progrediens venit ad villam de Mountbason[2] et ibi pernoctavit juxta unum castrum forte. Sunday, 11 Sept., crosses the Indre, and sleeps at Monabzon.

Die Lunæ sequenti cardinalis[3] Peragor cum uno archiepiscopo et pluribus episcopis et cæteris magnatibus venerunt ad principem prædicando de pietate et misericordia. Eo tempore dictum fuit quod Delfinus fuit apud Tours in Turonia cum mille hominibus armatis, exceptis servientibus et garcionibus. Et dictum fuit quod rex Franciæ cum suo cuneo exiret ad congrediendum cum principe die Mercurii sequenti. 12 Sept. The cardinal of Perigort, and others plead for peace.

Die Martis sequenti princeps transivit per villam Sancti Omeri, ubi dominatur dominus de Croon;[4] et pernoctavit ea die[5] ad unam villam quæ vocatur le Haye, quæ sita est super ripam de Croesce,[6] ad quam villam nova venerunt principi quod rex Franciæ vellet præcedere nos,[7] nam multum dubitavit si forte princeps fugeret viso exercitu Francorum. 13 Sept. The prince passes Ste. Maure and sleeps at La Haye on the Creuse;

Die Mercurii sequente venit ad castrum quod dicitur Chastel Heraud, quæ est villa pulchra et grandis et est sita super fluvium de Vienne; et ibi moratus est per dies Jovis et Veneris. Et ibi audivit nova quod rex Franciæ hospitatus fuit nocte Sabbati super eundem fluvium ad quandam villulam quæ vocatur Chanigny; unde princeps fecit proclamare quod omnia summagia, cariagia, et portantes victualia deberent eadem nocte pontem transire ne forte in crastino im- 14 Sept., reaches Chastelleraud, and stays there during the two following days.

---

[1] *bene*] buene. B. the *u* subpuncted.

[2] *Mountbason*] Mount basoñ. B. Moũt Bason. D.

[3] *cardinalis*] cardinales. D.

[4] *Croon*] Croñ. B.

[5] *ea die*] illa nocte. B. ea nocte. D.

[6] *Croesce*] Croesse. B.

[7] *nos*] eos. B.D.

A.D. 1356. pediretur exercitus per [eos] pontem transeundo et versus inimicos suos festinando; quod et ita factum est.

Saturday, 17 Sept. Die Sabbati festinavit summo mane erga Francos veloci cursu et transivit aquam quæ tendit[1] ad Poyters, et ibi audivit princeps quod cuneus Francorum tendebat versus Poyters et quod magna multitudo Francorum ibi præteribat. Princeps vero ultra modum equitabat relinquendo viam quæ ducit de Chanigne[2] ad Poyters sed ultra campos ad inimicos suos festinando nec

A skirmish with the French rear-guard; which is defeated, but not pursued; habendo[3] respectum ad cariagium suum. Et cum iter faceret, exploratores principis bene ad ducentos homines armatos ad exitum unius magni bosci ceciderunt in ultima warda regis Franciæ, qui viriliter pugnantes[4] miserunt Francos in fugam, per[5] boscagia[6] huc et illuc discurrentes et[7] turpiter devicti. At Angli illos non insequentes ne[8] forte prima warda Francorum vel media

the prince passes the night in the wood. fugitivis præberet succursum. Princeps vero videns Francos nolle pugnare, hospitare[9] se fecit in illa silva ubi facta fuit discussio, ubi hac[10] nocte exercitus ejus

Sufferings of the army for want of water; magnam passus est penuriam ob aquæ defectum. In illa discussione fuerunt capti comites duo, scilicet, Danser et unus alius. Milites mortui sunt multi et homines armati in magna multitudine.

18 Sept. The prince advances on Poitiers; and meets the cardinal of Perigort, Die Dominica, hoc est XVIII. die mensis Septembris, summo mane princeps iter suum direxit ad Poyters ad II. miliaria illius terræ. Ibi enim audivit nova quod rex Franciæ ipsum expectabat in plano campo cum cuneis suis dispositis more bellicoso. Principe se movente cursu veloci versus inimicos suos obviavit cuidam cardinali dicto Peragor, qui manus et brachia extendens in sublimi lachrymando rogans[11] principem ut modicum

---

[1] *tendit*] transit. B.
[2] *Chaninge*] Chanynge. B.
[3] *nec habendo*] non habuit. D.
[4] *pugnantes*] expugnantes. B.
[5] *per*] et. præm. B.D.
[6] *boscagia*] bosca. D.
[7] *et*] sunt. B.D.
[8] *ne*] nec. D.
[9] *hospitare*] hospitari. B.D.
[10] *hac*] illa. B.D.
[11] *rogans*] rogavit. B.D.

sisteret donec voluntatem suam enarraverat.[1] At princeps: Dic propositum tuum velociter, quia jam non vacat tempus prædicandi sed potius pugnandi: Cui cardinalis: O princeps invictissime, miserere humano generi, et ne effundas sanguinem Christianorum sed potius Paganorum. Tanta fuerunt inter eos colloquia quod princeps favebat precibus et promissis cardinalis et ita concordati sunt quod XI. ex parte Anglorum et totidem ex parte Francorum cardinale mediante ex utraque parte tractarent de pace reformanda inter principem et regem. Tota illa die tractabant de petitione principis et de[2] pace firmanda, sed parum profuit. Nam Franci in quantum poterant distulerunt ut et cuneus illorum augmentaretur. Eodem enim[3] die quo tractabant de pace venerunt in subsidium regis Franciæ mille[4] homines armati et quingenti,[5] et[6] pedites ad magnum numerum. De cætero Franci de pace tepide tractabant et ficte, quia videbant exercitum illorum semper augmentare.[7] Princeps hoc percipiens cessare præcepit[8] de consilio illo et quievit illa nocte.

A.D. 1356. who pleads for peace,

in order to gain time for the arrival of French reinforcements.

Die Lunæ, hoc est XIX. die mensis Septembris, in Aurora venit cardinalis ut prius de pace tractanda, sed minime profuit. Princeps vero videns partem adversam indies roborari, potius elegit congredi quam ita in damnum suum prolongari. Nam sæpe videbat nunc ducentos, nunc CCC., nunc quingentos catervatim ruere ad cuneum Francorum, quod maxime ipsum aggravabat; unde cardinali simpliciter respondebat se non ulterius verbis suis parere fabulosis, sciens ipsum amabiliorem regi Franciæ quam sibi, et sic data principi benedictione remeavit unde prius evenerat.

Monday, 19 Sept. The cardinal comes again to treat for peace, but in vain.

---

[1] *enarraverit*] enarraverat. B. enarraret. D.
[2] *de*] om. B.D.
[3] *enim*] om. B.D.
[4] *mille*] 1500. D.
[5] *quingenti*] 5000. B. om. D.
[6] *et*] om. B.
[7] *augmentare*] augmentari. B.D.
[8] *præcepit*] cœpit. B.D.

Cap. CLXXXVI.

A.D. 1356. Monday, 19 Sept.

Princeps[1] autem cum suis tractavit quam viam erga adversarios suos susciperet. Erat enim inter eos nemus densum per undique fossatum et super foveam una haia alta spineta, ubi nullus parebat aditus, sed[2] in uno loco tantum; dictum fuit quod cuneus Francorum fuit in illo bosco. Fuit[3] ibi una porta quæ vocatur in lingua[4] Anglicana lipȝet,[5] ubi quinque homines armati possent introire fronte erecta et non plures. Princeps dextrarium suum calcaribus urgens saltari fecit ultra foveam et haiam; dominus Robertus de Bradestoun[6] ut dicebatur[7] fuit occisus in illo ingressu, nam primus omnium intravit portam. Et dominus[8] Mauricius de Berkley[9] filius domini T. de B.[10] primus post ipsum intravit, ubi dire vulneratus fuit.

A skirmish.

Facto itaque congressu victoria nutu Divino remisit Anglis de illo conflictu facto in illo boscagio. Ipsis devictis, occisis, captis, et fugatis, apparuerunt principi et suis exercitus magnus Francorum in tribus magnis aciebus divisis, quælibet[11] acies habens alas suas; quibus visis multi de nostris territi sunt, nec mirum.

The prince comes in sight of the main body of the French army.

Princeps videns turmas illorum[12] prægrandes animavit homines suos verbis audacibus, dicens fortitudinem belli non esse tantum in hominibus et armis[13] sed etiam in solo Deo spem habentibus; et ipse de dextrario suo descendit et post[14] omnes alii: omnes

---

[1] Bellum de Poyters. in marg. D.
[2] *sed*] nisi. B.D.
[3] *Fuit*] enim. add. B.
[4] *in lingua*] lingua lingua. B.
[5] *lipȝet*] lypȝete. B. lypzet. D.
[6] *Bradestoun*] Bradestoñ. B.D.
[7] *dicebatur*] dicitur. D.
[8] *dominus*] ipse. præm. B.
[9] *Berkley*] Berkeley. D.
[10] *T. de B.*] Thomas de Berkeley. B. Thomæ de Berkley. D.
[11] *divisis, quælibet*] divisus, et quilibet. B.D.
[12] *illorum*] eorum. D.
[13] *et armis*] armatis. D.
[14] *post*] eum. add. B.D.

enim Franci equos suos miserunt post se ut citius facerent fugam post Anglos. Tunc ex utraque per[1] insimul irruentes fit magna cædes et fortis, ita quod inauditum est[2] quod aliqua conflictio per tantum tempus instaret. In antiquo tempore ad tertium vel quartum vel ultimo ad sextum tractum unius sagittæ homines scirent continuo quæ pars triumpharet, sed ibi unus sagittarius c. emisit cum providentia et adhuc neutra pars[3] cessit alteri; non est auditum in bellis nec in gestis quod aliqua pugna tam diu perseverabat. Dictum fuit, sed non assero pro vero, quod Franci videbant militem armatum equum insedentem in aera[4] volutantem[5] et contra illos dimicantem. Ex voluntate tandem[6] Divina victoria remisit Anglis.

A.D. 1356. Monday, 19 Sept. The Battle of Poitiers.

Obstinacy of the struggle.

Legend.

Captus ibi fuit rex Franciæ Johannes et filius ejus Philippus juvenis infans tamen armatus; capti fuerunt XIIII. comites, barones et banerettes[7] XXI. Et fuerunt occisi qui fuerunt ad vexillum XXII. Et fugerunt tres filii regis et frater regis[8] et episcopus de Lengres et quinquaginta septem qui fuerunt ad vexillum. Capti sunt etiam milites M. et CCCC.;[9] capti sunt in toto tria milia hominum[10] armatorum. Mortui sunt de hominibus armatis II.M. et quingenti.[11] Pedites mortui non numerantur. Et sic[12] finit bellum de Poyters.

King John and his son taken prisoners.

Loss of both sides.

Die Martis sequens quæ[13] fuit XX. dies mensis[14] Septembris hora diei media transivit princeps[15] ad unam villam vocatam le Roche et ibi stetit per diem Mercurii.

20 Sept. The Black Prince arrives at La Roche.

---

[1] *per*] p. A., a mistake for ꝑte. parte. B.D.
[2] *est*] esset. B.D.
[3] *pars*] om. B.
[4] *aera*] aere. D.
[5] *volutantem*] volitantem. B.D.
[6] *tandem*] tamen. B.
[7] *banerettes*] baronettes. B.D.
[8] *et frater regis*] om. B.D.
[9] *et cccc.*] om. D.
[10] *hominum*] om. B.D.
[11] *II.M. et quingenti*] 1500. B. 2500. D.
[12] *sic*] Interlined in A.
[13] *sequens quæ*] sequenti qui. B.D.
[14] *mensis*] om. D.
[15] *princeps*] Added in marg. A. and referred to its place by a caret.

A.D. 1356. Die Jovis venit ad Couwyk.

at Couté. Die Veneris venit ad unam villulam vocatam

23 Sept. at Roffec; Roffie.

24 Sept. at Vertueil(?); Mouton. Die Sabbati transivit aquam de Charente[1] et venit ad villam de Bertile,[2] sed jacuit ad villam de Mortoun.[3]

25 Sept. at Rochefoucault; Die Dominica jacuit ad villam de Roche[4] Fouchaut ubi dominatur dominus Aimerus[5] de la[6] Roche.

26 Sept. at Ville-Bois; Die Lunæ jacuit princeps[7] ad[8] unam villam vocatam Boy.

27 Sept. Die Martis jacuit[9] ad Sanctum Claye.

28 Sept. crosses the Dronne; Die Mercurii transivit aquam[10] de Dronn[11] et ea nocte jacuit ad Sanctum Antonium super fluvium de le Ile.[12]

29 Sept. crosses the Lisle; Die Jovis transivit prædictum[13] fluvium et ibi prope jacuit.

30 Sept. reaches St. Emilion; Die Veneris transivit per Seynt Milion[14] et nocte jacuit super fluvium de Dordoun.[15]

1 Oct. crosses the Dordonne; Die Sabbati transivit aquam prædictam.

2 Oct. reaches Bordeaux, and stays at Libourne, Die Dominica venit ad Burdegalem; sed princeps moratus est[16] extra Burdegalem apud Leybourn[17] quousque providentia et hospitia fuerant parata pro ipso et pro rege Franciæ; infra quindenam venit ad Burdegalem.

[A.D.] 1356. A. The Black Hoc anno circa[18] venit Edwardus Quartus a Conquæstu[19] tunc princeps Walliæ de Bur-

---

[1] *Charente*] Charent. B.
[2] *Bertile*] Bertyle. B.
[3] *Mortoun*] Mortoñ. D.
[4] *Roche*] Rocℏ. B.
[5] *Aimerus*] Aymerus. B.D.
[6] *la*] om. D.
[7] *princeps*] om. D.
[8] *ad*] apud. B.
[9] *jacuit*] princeps. add. B.
[10] *aquam*] ad. præm. B.
[11] *Dronn*] Derouñ. B Droun. D.
[12] *Ile*] Yle. B.D.
[13] *prædictum*] dictum. B.
[14] *Milion*] Milioñ. B. Mylyon. D.
[15] *Dordoun*] Dordoñ. B.D.
[16] *moratus est*] morabatur. D.
[17] *Leybourne*] Leyborñ. B.
[18] A blank space follows in A. B.D.
[19] *Quartus a Conquæstu*] Erased in D.

degale[1] in Angliam cum rege Franciæ et cæteris captivis et Londoniis sunt omnes adducti. Eodem anno venerunt tres cardinales, scilicet, Urgel,[2] Peragor, et tertius qui quondam fuit cancellarius regis Franciæ sive secretarius, qui ad rogatum regium factus est cardinalis. Hi tres pro pace formanda inter regna Londoniis venerunt: postquam ibi longa[3] tempora morati sunt; sine effectu remearunt. A.D. 1357. Prince lands at Plymouth 5 May, and enters London 14 May.

Hoc anno cum multis captivis rex Angliæ et regina festum Natalis Domini apud Marleberge[4] solemnizaverunt. Et in Circumcisione Domini versus Bristolliam diriguntur, et ibi facta sunt hastiludia nocturna, qualia non sunt ante visa præ nimio honore et magnificentia. Eodem anno parliamentum tentum est Londoniis nonas Februarii valde magnum cum multis extraneis de Francia et de Scocia, quale non fuit ad annos ducentos. [A.D.] 1357. A. The king and queen at Marlborough. 25-7 Dec. A.D. 1358. A Parliament at London. 5 Feb.

Hoc anno facta sunt hastiludia invisa a tempore regis Arthuri, in festo Sancti Georgii, ubi equitarunt Angli, Scotti, et captivi Franci; ibi autem læsus fuit dux Lancastriæ in crure. Eodem anno per totam æstatem morati sunt rex et regina apud Marleberge[4] et Cosham, ubi spatula reginæ divulsa est a junctura[5] in equitando venatum. [A.D.] 1358. A.D. Hastilude at Windsor. 23 April. Accident to the Queen in hunting.

Eodem anno die Sanctorum Timothei et Simphoriani Isabella regina, mater regis Edwardi Tertii a Conquæstu, juxta Londoniam apud Risinges[6] obiit. Dicunt quidam quod accepta purgatione a medico quam ipsa cupierat et non valens sufferre, unius diei languore obiit. Eodem anno sepulta est Londoniis ad Fratres Minores, XXVII. die mensis Novembris, in præsentia regis, archiepiscopo Symone eam sepeliente. Death of Isabella the Queen-Mother. 22 Aug. Her funeral. 27 Nov.

---

[1] *Burdegale*] Burged. B. Burdigal'. D.
[2] *Urgel*] Vrgel. B.D.
[3] *longa*] per. præm. B.D.
[4] *Marleberge*] Marleburgh. B.D.
[5] *junctura*] sua. add. B.D.
[6] *apud Risinges*] Rysynges. B. Rysinges. D.

[A.D.] 1359. A.D. Mission of the Duke of Lancaster to France. Michaelmas.

Hoc anno dux Lancastriæ Henricus iter assumpsit marinum versus regnum Franciæ,[1] unde naves ascendit ad Sandewicum[2] et applicuit apud Kalaies[3] et ibi moratus est per tres dies.

The king embarks at Sandwich [27 Oct.] and lands at Calais 28 Oct.

Hoc[4] eodem anno rex naves ascendit[5] apud Sanwicum[6] XXVII. die mensis Octobris, litera Dominicalis[7] F., in[8] mari in navibus cœnavit, hoc est die Dominica quod tunc[9] fuit vigilia Apostolorum Symonis et Judæ, et die Lunæ sequenti venit Kalesiam, et ibi moratus est per dies Martis, Mercurii, Jovis, Veneris. Et die Sabbati, hoc est in Commemoratione Animarum, vexilla displicuit[10] super Franciam equitando. Ante

He commences the invasion of France. [1 Nov.]

per quindenam dux obsidebat civitatem fortissimam nomine Mount Eider,[11] ubi fuit occisus dominus Thomas de Donnedale[12] miles fortis et XII. de familia domus[13] ducis. Maximam penuriam passa est illa comitiva eo tempore victualium. Rex vero iter suum versus Franciam dirigens eam depopulando,[14] destruendo, castella subvertendo, munitiones, civitates incinerando[15] et usque muros Parisii Francos velut lepores fugando. Unde quidam metrice de rege Edwardo sic prorupit:

Sufferings of his army.

A.D. 1360. He reaches Paris. 12 April.

M. simplex, C. ter, X. triplex, V. semel, I. ter.
Belligerans[16] Ed.[17] Ter. trans mare carpit iter.[18]

In illo enim itinere multos de suis amisit per nivem,

---

[1] *regnum Franciæ*] Franciam. D.
[2] *ad Sandewicum*] apud Sandycum. D.
[3] *Kalaies*] Kaleys. B. Kalays. D.
[4] *Hoc*] om. B.D.
[5] *ascendit*] Interlined in A.
[6] *apud Sanwicum*] ad Sandwycum. B. apud Sandwicum. D.
[7] *Dominicalis*] The *s* erased in B.
[8] *in*] et. præm. A.D., erased in A.
[9] *quod tunc*] quæ. D.
[10] *displicuit*] displicavit. B.D.
[11] *Mount Eider*] Eyder. D.
[12] *Donnedale*] Doundale. B.D.
[13] *domus*] An erasure follows in A.
[14] *depopulando*] depopulavit. B.D.
[15] *incinerando*] interminando. B. D.
[16] *Belligerans*] Belligerus. B.
[17] *Ed.*] co. B.
[18] *Unde quidam . . . carpit iter*] Added in a foot-note in A. and referred to its place in the text by a mark. Versus. in marg. D.

grandinem et pluviam. Rex vero revertitur in Angliam exultantibus Francis de reversione. A.D. 1360.

Hoc[1] anno XXV. die mensis Februarii hora noctis media ex aeris rarefactione apparuit quædam nebula lucida quasi ignea, ex cujus claritate videbant homines sub pedibus suis lapillos et arenas, et filum in acum[2] miserunt præ fulgore tanquam si foret hora meridiana; quæ nebula magnum incussit timorem intuentibus. [A.D.] 1361. A.D. Aurora Borealis? 25 Feb. A.D. 1362.

Hoc anno XV. die mensis Januarii, litera Dominicalis B., hora vespertina, prorupit ventus inauditus ab[3] Meridie et Occidente proveniens, qui homines suffocavit, arbores eradicavit,[4] domos, turres, monasteria, campanilia, pinnacula, pomeria, et silvas prostravit, et multa alia mala humani[5] creaturæ ingessit, unde creditur a nonnullis diram Dei fuisse flagellationem. [A.D.] 1361. A.D. A violent wind. 15 Jan. A.D. 1362.

Hoc anno juxta Montem Pessolanum in principio Quadragesimæ[6] commissum est bellum ingens inter Francos et gentes[7] sine capite, (ita[8] vocati sunt); ubi ceciderunt Franci plusquam XL.M., quorum numerus excedebat numerum adversariorum in triplo; occubuerunt ibi Franci qui perprius in Anglia fuerant incarcerati. [A.D.] 1362. A.D. The battle of Brignai. 6 April.

Eodem anno papa muravit palatium suum Auinionæ[9] et eam fortis[10] munitionibus et victualibus ditissime instauravit, propter metum gentis sine capite circa Quadragesimam.[11] Et nisi morbo hydropisi fatigaretur non ibi moraretur, sed quia debilior factus est audacior. The Pope fortifies his palace at Avignon, in fear of the Companies. His death from Dropsy. 12 Sept.

Eodem anno in Vigilia Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, Death of

---

[1] Nota in marg. D.
[2] *acum*] acu. B.
[3] *ab*] a. B.D.
[4] *arbores eradicavit*] om. B. arbores suffodit. D. Ventus. in marg. A. Ventus magnus. in marg. D.
[5] *humani*] humanæ. B.D.
[6] *Quadragesimæ*] xlẽ. A. xl^me^ D.
[7] *gentes*] gentem. B.D. Gens sine capite. in marg. D.
[8] *ita*] enim. add. B.D.
[9] *Auinionæ*] Auinioniæ. B.D.
[10] *fortis*] fortibus. B.
[11] *Quadragesimam*] xl'am. A.

A.D. 1362. Joan, Queen of Scotland. 24 March. A parliament at London. 13 Oct.

litera Dominicalis B., obiit Johanna regina Scociæ Londoniis soror regis Edwardi Tertii.

Eodem anno factum est magnum parliamentum Londoniis, in quo ordinatum fuit, ad rogatum populi, ut omnes provisores regis tam equestres quam pedites [1] ab officiis suis cessarent; illi vero vocati fuerunt *purueiours*.[2] Item ordinatum fuit quod tam clerici quam laici in foro litigantes regali causam propriam in lingua Anglicana ostenderent.

Rage for dress in England.

Eodem anno et in anno præcedenti tota communitas Anglicana versa est in tantam rabiem et elationem in ornamentis corporeis sæviendo: primo in

Upper tunics more fit for women than men,

supertunicis largis et curtis usque lumbare; quædam sunt longa usque ad talum, non in parte anteriori, ut decet viris,[3] aperta, sed modo mulierum usque brachia in costis distenta, qui tergis aversis potius mulieres quam mares judicantur. Vestis illa nomen sibi habet aptatum [4] de jure et lingua materna vocatur "Goun," et bene, quia "Goun" dicitur a

called gouns, very appropriately.

"Gounyg" quod proprie sonare dicitur "Wounyg" [5] quasi "aperta derisio." Habent etiam capucia parva sub mento stricta modo mulierum botonata, insuper, in circuitu filacteriis aureis, argenteis, et lapidibus pretiosis insuta, liripipia usque talum longa modo fatuorum dilacerata.

The paltok; never worn by king Solomon.

Habent etiam [6] aliud indumentum sericum quod vulgo dicitur "paltok," et si bene disponeretur potius ad cultum ecclesiasticum cederet [7] quam ad terrenum; unde dicitur in Libris [8] Regum quod Salomon in tota vita sua talibus non est usus.

---

[1] *pedites*] pedestres. B.

[2] *purueiours*] purueyours. B. Pueyours. D. The remainder of this sentence, and the whole of the next entry, are written in much blacker ink and in a coarser hand in A. than the preceding entries.

[3] *viris*] viros. D.

[4] *aptatum*] aptum. B.D.

[5] *Wounyg*] Wonyg. B.D.

[6] *etiam*] et. B.D.

[7] *cederet*] cederetur. D.

[8] *Libris*] libro. D.

Habent etiam caligas bipartitas et stragulatas quas cum corrigiis ligant ad suos "paltokkos,"[1] quæ vocantur "harlottes,"[2] et sic unus "harlot" servit alteri, sine lumbare[3] semper incedentes. Habent cingulas[4] aureas,[5] argenteas,[6] magno pretio stipatas;[7] divites ad valorem XX. marcarum, mediocres ut armigeri et cæteri liberi ad pretium C. solidorum vel V. marcarum vel XX. solidorum, cum tamen non habent in ærario XX. denarios. A.D. 1362. Harlots.

Habent etiam[8] sotulares rostratas in unius digiti longitudine[9] quæ[10] "crakowes" vocantur; potius judicantur ungula[11] dæmonum quam ornamenta hominum; unde potius judicantur citherones et nebulones[12] quam barones, histriones quam milites, mimi quam armigeri. In aula sunt leones, in campis lepores; in muneribus dandis timidi, in accipiendis prompti; illusionibus parati, orationibus fatigati; unde creditur quod propter nimium Dei donum populus lasciviat in sævitiam, superbiam, luxuriam, et gulam, et in cæteris vitiis capitalibus; quare timendum est ne subsequatur dira Domini flagellatio. Unde pro transactis rogamus[13] Dei misericordiam et veniam, et de[14] futuris ne incidamus sed ut resistamus gratiam.[15] Crakows. Character of the wearers of these articles. A judgment of God to be feared.

Hoc anno, litera Dominicalis A., nono die mensis Junii movit se princeps versus Wasconiam et die tertio venit Burdegalem et a tota patria lætanter acceptus est.[16] [A.D.] 1363. A.D.

---

[1] *paltokkos*] paltokkes. B. paltokes. D.

[2] *harlottes*] harlotes. D.

[3] *lumbare*] lumbari. B.

[4] *cingulas*] singula. B. the terminal *s* having been erased.

[5] *aureas*] The *s* erased in B.

[6] *argenteas*] The *s* erased in B. et. præm. D.

[7] *stipatas*] The terminal *s* erased in B.

[8] *etiam*] enim. D.

[9] *longitudine*] longitudinem. B.D.

[10] *quæ*] qui. D.

[11] *ungula*] ungulæ. B.D.

[12] *citherones et nebulones*] cithaones. B. cytharones. D.

[13] *rogamus*] rogemus. B.D.

[14] *de*] in. D.

[15] *gratiam*] habeamus. add. B.

[16] The character at the commencement of this entry in A. is slightly different from that of the preceding entry.

A.D. 1363. Death of Ralph de Salopia, bishop of Bath. John Barnet bishop of Worcester succeeds.

Eodem anno mense Septembri obiit episcopus Bathoniæ nomine Radulphus de Salopia; cui successit Johannes Barnet tunc episcopus Wigorniæ. Eo enim tempore multæ sunt factæ mutationes episcopatuum in Anglia, nam vix ullus de suo beneficio placatus,[1] et sic quasi more mercimonii dignitates[2] obtinent, et sic domino papæ facti sunt tributarii, dicentes illud cedere in papæ eleemosinam cum tamen symoniam colunt, quia nec prece nec pretio debet beneficium ecclesiasticum redimi, sed sola gratia Spiritus Sancti.[3]

A Parliament at Westminster. 6 Oct.

Eodem anno factum est parliamentum Londoniis IX. die mensis Octobris a quo nullus magnas potuit se excusare, in quo damnatur omne ornamentum argenteum, scilicet, in cultellis, in cingulis, in annulis, in monilibus, in[4] cæteris ornamentis corporalibus, nisi fuerit talis qui XL. libras argenti per annum poterat expendere.

King John returns to London. [6 Nov.]

Eodem anno VI. die mensis Novembris stante parliamento[5] venit rex Franciæ Johannes Londoniis portans secum milionem argenti quam regi Angliæ debuerat[6] pro incarceratione sua, et benigne a rege Angliæ acceptus[7] est. Multa enim Johannes petiit a rege, ut dicebatur, sed pauca obtinuit.

A.D. 1364. 25 Feb.

A severe frost.

Eodem[8] anno incepit[9] gelare VII. idus Decembris et duravit usque V. idus Martii; dicebatur in populo quod hoc fuit invisum ad centum annos elapsos.

A.D. 1364. An eclipse of the sun. 4 March.

Eodem[10] anno quarto die mensis Martii, litera Dominicalis F., factus est eclipsis solis hora diei nona per horam integram currente per XVI. prima.[11]

---

[1] *placatus*] est. præm. B.D.

[2] *dignitates*] The two last syllables are written upon an erasure in A.

[3] *Eo enim . . . Spiritus Sancti.*] a slight variation is visible in the character at the commencement of this sentence in A.

[4] *in*] et. præm. B.D.

[5] *vi. die mensis . . . parliamento*] Written upon an erasure in A.

[6] *debuerat*] debebat. B.D.

[7] *acceptus*] susceptus. B.D.

[8] Gelu. in marg. A.D.

[9] *incepit*] cœpit. B.D.

[10] Eclipsis solis. in marg. A., and below it an erased marginal note; in marg. D. without any note erased.

[11] *prima*] om. B.

Eodem anno VI. die mensis Novembris venit rex Cipriæ Londoniis conducens secum unum regem Paganum de Lecto dictum prisonarium. Et unum alium magnatem, non[1] prisonarium sed Paganum[2] vocatum "Dominus[3] de Ierusalem," qui conversus est ad fidem Christianam, quem rex Angliæ de sacro fonte levavit et ipsum Edwardum nominavit. Die Lunæ proxima post eventum regis Cipriæ venit rex Scociæ Londoniis ad tractandum cum rege Angliæ ob[4] certis causis ipsum tangentibus, ita quod ante finem parliamenti V. reges interfuerunt Londoniis, sed non omnes vocati erant ad parliamentum. Hoc[5] autem fuit invisum a tempore regis Arthuri, quia in convivio suo apud Kairlegion[6] VI. reges interfuerunt et ipse septimus, et omnes sibi fuerunt tributarii.

A.D. 1363. The king of Cyprus arrives in London. 6 Nov.

The king of Scotland arrives in London. 13 Nov.

Five kings at once in London.

Hoc anno obiit Johannes rex Franciæ Londoniis, sexto die mensis Aprilis; cujus exequiæ per regis edictum a toto clero ut regi[7] decuit honorifice celebrantur. Cujus cadaver ad duas leucas extra Londoniam[8] conductum[9] est per regem Angliæ ob honorem defuncti.

[A.D.] 1364. A.D. Death of John of France. [6 April.] 8 April.

Eodem anno facta est congressio maxima inter regnum Franciæ et regnum Nauariæ sextodecimo die mensis Maii[10] quod[11] fuit dies Jovis in hebdomada Pentecostes, ubi occubuerunt Nauarii et maxima[12]

The battle of Cocherel 16 May.

---

[1] *quarto die mensis Martii . . . . alium magnatem non*] These paragraphs are written upon erasures in A. and in much paler ink than the five preceding entries; a passage of at least three lines in length seems to have been erased.

[2] *Paganum*] magnatem. præm. B.

[3] *Dominus*] Dominum. B.D.

[4] *ob*] de. D.

[5] V. reges in Anglia simul et emel. in marg. A.D.

[6] *Kairlegion*] Caerleyion̄. B. Kaerlegion. D.

[7] *regi*] regem. B.D.

[8] *Londoniam*] Londonias. B.D.

[9] *conductum*] conditum. D.

[10] *Maii*] May. B. The two preceding paragraphs and the passage ending at *Maii* appear to have been written upon an erasure in A. Many fragments of the letters are still visible.

[11] *quod*] qui. B.D.

[12] *maxima*] om. B.

A.D. 1364. multitudo gentis sine capite quos Nauarii sibi allocaverant. Cecidit etiam tota[1] flos militiæ Franciæ in illo congressu, bellum dici non potest secundum leges armatorum quia in neutra parte fuit aliquis rex præsens et ideo dicitur conflictio, congressus, vel discussio. Litera Dominicalis F.

Works at Windsor and Sheppey.

Eodem[2] anno rex curiosus factus est circa castellum de Wyndelesore[3] reparandum, ita ut cæmentarii a parte Angliæ Meridiana usque ad Trentam fluvium servitio regio sunt mancipati tum propter illud tum propter aliud castellum quod de novo ædificat[4] quod dicitur Schephey.[5] Distat modicum a Londonia[6] super aquam Tamisæ.[7]

The latter is being built.

Accusation of the Lombard merchants.

Eodem anno[8] accusati sunt Lombardi[9] mercatores a consociis suis de infidelitate magna ad regem[10] in mercimoniis faciendis, pro qua re major pars illorum hospitati sunt in Turri Londoniarum per aliquot tempus quousque finem fecerant regi de infidelitate illorum secundum regis voluntatem. Dictum erat in populo quod defraudabant regem de tribus milibus librarum argenti quolibet anno.[11]

A.D. 1365. A Parliament at London. 20 Jan.

Eodem[12] anno convocatum est parliamentum Londoniis per regem XX. die mensis Januarii, hoc est die Sanctorum Fabiani et Sebastiani, a quo nullus magnatum nec prece nec pretio potuit se excusare; multa ibi ordinata fuerunt. Inter cætera rex petiit

---

[1] *tota*] totus. B.

[2] *Eodem*] A blank is left in A. for the capital E. in which is written a small e. The ink in which this and the following paragraph are written is of a very different hue to that in which the entries immediately preceding and following them are written.

[3] *Wyndelesore*] Wyndesore. B.D.

[4] *ædificat*] ædificabat. B.D.

[5] *Schephey*] Shepheye. D.

[6] *Londonia*] Londoniis. B.

[7] *Tamisæ*] Tamisiæ. D.

[8] *anno*] Interlined in A.

[9] *Lombardi*] Lumbardi. B.D.

[10] *ad regem*] Added in marg. A. and referred to the text by a caret.

[11] *Dictum erat . . . anno*] Added subsequently to the preceding part of the entry in A.

[12] *Eodem*] The capital E omitted and a space left in which a small *e* is written in A.

a[1] toto populo tolnetum de lana vendita extra regionem, quod fuit sibi concessum per tres annos; unde pro[2] quolibet sacco quinquaginta solidi;[3] obtinuerat enim illud tolnetum prius[4] per plures annos et dimisit; sed, ut scribitur, quanto homo plus bibit tanto magis sitit, quanto[5] plus habet tanto plus auget, quanto ditior tanto[6] cupidior. A.D. 1365. An aid granted. 18 Feb.

Eodem[7] anno quidam magnates Angliæ in partibus transmarinis navigarunt pro matrimonio faciendo inter regis Angliæ filium Edmundum de Langley[8] et filiam comitis[9] Flandriæ et hæredem quæ fuit ducissa Burgundiæ, circa Advinculam[10] Sancti Petri; partes consensum præbuerunt, papa vero restitit,[11] et ideo creditur connubium cassari. Ea de causa tradunt homines parliamentum mense Januario convocari.[12] A.D. 1364. Embassy touching marriage of Prince Edmund 19 July–13 Sept.

Eodem[7] anno in Britannia Minori qui[13] et[14] Armorica in die Sancti Michaelis congressi sunt dux Britanniæ et hæres dictus N.[15] Mountfort, et Karolus de[16] Bloys, qui vendicabat illam terram jure hæreditario, sed victoria Dei[17] gratia remisit duci et suis, Defeat of Charles of Blois at Auray. 29 Sept.

---

[1] *a*] de. B.

[2] *pro*] de. B.D.

[3] *solidi*] š. A., written upon an erasure.

[4] *prius*] om. B.

[5] *quanto*] et. præm. B.

[6] *tanto*] et. præm. B.

[7] *Eodem*] The capital *E* omitted, and a space left in which a small *e* is written in A.

[8] *Langley*] Langlegh̄. B.D.

[9] *comitis*] Written in marg. A. by the author, and referred to its place by a caret. regis. add. A. crossed out.

[10] *Advinculam*] adv̄iclāz. A. Advincula. D.

[11] *resistit*] An erasure precedes this word in A., and the *e* has been formed by the addition of a loop in paler ink to a minim. The *r* has been similarly altered. resistit. B.

[12] The ink in which this paragraph and the next following are written in A. is slightly different in colour from that in which the entry immediately preceding them is written, and more decidedly contrasted with that in which the following paragraph is written.

[13] *qui*] quæ. B.D.

[14] *et*] dicitur. D.

[15] *N*] Nichūs. D.

[16] *de*] om. B.

[17] *Dei*] The *ei* written on an erasure in paler ink in A.

A.D. 1364. mediante Dei auxilio et domini Johannis de Chaundos, et præcipue domini Roberti Knollis.[1] Dicebatur[2] quod dominus Eustachius nepos reginæ Philippæ ibi interfuit et in prisonariis multum thesaurum et in militia maximum honorem conquisivit.

[A.D.] 1364. A.D. Birth of Edward, son of the Black Prince. A.D. 1365. 27 Jan.

Hoc[3] anno Edwardo principi[4] Aquitaniæ[5] natus est filius qui vocatus est Edwardus. Hic[6] a Conquæstu jure hæreditario[7] dicitur[8] Quintus. Natus est enim infans in Wasconia in castello Angolismo et in civitate Castelli ab archiepiscopis et episcopis nonnullis baptizatus est, comitibus et baronibus, militibus[9] cum magna procerum multitudine circumastantibus. Natus est etiam in Januario, XXVII. die mensis, prima die hebdomadæ.[10]

[A.D.] 1365. A.D. Marriage of the Princess Isabel to Ingelram de Courcy. 27 July.

Hoc[11] anno XXVII. die mensis Julii, hoc est die Sanctorum Septem Dormientium, litera Dominicalis E., desponsata fuit[12] Isabella filia regis Edwardi a Conquæstu Tertii cuidam magnati de partibus transmarinis dictus dominus[13] de Cursi; in vulgo nomen aliud ignotum est.

---

[1] *Knollis*] Knollys. B.

[2] *Dicebatur*] The contraction for *ur* in A. has been formed by the addition of a loop in paler ink to the contraction for *us*.

[3] *Hoc*] The capital H omitted in A., and a space left in which a small *h* is written. The ink in which this paragraph is written differs in colour from that of the preceding and succeeding paragraphs.

[4] *principi*] The second *p* written on an erasure in A.

[5] *Aquitaniæ*] om. D.

[6] *Hic*] A short erasure precedes in A.

[7] *hæreditario*] Something has been erased in A. between the *a* and the *r*.

[8] *dicitur*] dictus est. D.

[9] *militibus*] et. præm. B.

[10] In marg. A. is a cross with a double upright, which is repeated opposite the last entry in 1364.

[11] The ink in which this entry is written in A. differs considerably in colour from that in which the entries immediately preceding and succeeding it are written. The character also shows differences more readily appreciable by the eye than capable of distinct description.

[12] *fuit*] est. B.

[13] *dictus dominus*] dicto domino, B.D.

A.D. 1366. Mission to Flanders on the marriage of Prince Edmund. Jan & Feb.

Eodem[1] anno post Natale Domini missi fuerunt in Flandriam Edmundus de Langley[2] filius regis, episcopus de Ely, et plures alii nobiles[3] ut viderent filiam comitis Flandriæ si placeret Edmundo copulari cum ea et mulieri commisceri cum illo; nullum tamen inter se habuerunt colloquium nec in privato nec publico[4] unde fervor amoris plus inter eos incaluit.

[A.D.] 1364. A.D. An earthquake in Rhodes, 30 April.

Hoc[5] anno factus est terræ motus in insula de Rodis[6] in Vigilia Apostolorum Philippi et Jacobi ab hora meridiana diei[7] Vigiliæ usque in horam meridianam diei subsequentis,[8] ita quod corruit totum monasterium de Rodis[6] et multæ castellulæ usque humum[9] prostratæ, testante milite generoso, nomine Ricardus[10] Chastellayn, nomine[11] famoso, ætate L. annorum et amplius, qui eo tempore tunc[12] interfuit et[13]—

---

[1] The ink in which this entry is written in A. differs in hue from that in which the entry next succeeding it is written.

[2] *Langley*] Langlegh. B. Langelegh. D.

[3] *nobiles*] comites. B.

[4] *publico*] in. præm. D.

[5] *Hoc*]. A small *h* in A. In marg. A. is a single cross not repeated elsewhere, and a large erasure just below. The entry is written in darker ink than the preceding and succeeding entries, and appears to have been partly written on an erasure, and to have been gone over after it was completed. The character is more irregular than that of the neighbouring paragraphs. The marginal numeral closely resembles in ink and style that succeeding it. The character and ink of the sequel are the same as those of this commencement, and prove the whole to have been inserted at one time. Terræ motus. in marg. D.

[6] *Rodis*] Rodys. B.

[7] *diei*] om. B.D.

[8] *subsequentis*] sequentis. B.D.

[9] *usque humum*] humi sunt. B.D.

[10] *Ricardus*] Ricardo. B.D.

[11] *nomine*] homine. B.D.

[12] *tunc*] ibi. D.

[13] *et*] This is the last word of a line in the middle of f. 108 v. of A.; close to it in marg. A. is a mark, consisting of three small *o*'s joined together in a horizontal line, which is repeated at the top of the next page in the left hand or inner margin. The narrative is broken off at the first mark and continued from the second. The remainder of f. 108 v. is occupied by the entry which extends on the next page from l. 1 to the middle of l. 17 It has been thought preferable in this instance to adhere exactly to the order in which the parts of the MS. A. actually succeed one another; the inconvenience resulting from this course being slight, both absolutely and compared to the advan-

[A.D.] 1364. A. Battle at Adrianople.

1 Nov.

Hoc[1] anno commissum est [bellum][2] lethale inter Christianos et Paganos in die Omnium Sanctorum, unde principes Christianorum fuerunt: Johannes rex Hungariæ qui parem in toto mundo bonitatis non habet,[3] Siwardus rex Gorgoniæ, Magister hospitalis insulæ de Rodis[4] cum multitudine copiosa Christianorum, ubi occubuerunt Pagani XL.M. numerati et multo plures non numerati; de Christianis V.M.II.C.X. et XV. peregrini capti[5] et IX. milites et armigeri capti et incarcerati in castello de Chaundelour. Bellum fuit commissum in planis Turkiæ,[6] unde isti fuerunt principes Paganorum: Soldanus Babiloniæ, rex Turkiæ,[6] rex Baldak, rex Belmarinus, rex Tartarorum, rex de Lecco; tres reges Paganorum ibi occubuerunt per relatum eorum qui interfuerunt[7] in illo bello, sed post[8] III. menses Lumbardi peregrini emerunt de incarceratis XVIII., reliqui martyrizati fuerunt.— uni de commonachis[9] Malmesburiæ oretenus retulit, quod tempestate ingruente nullus hominum ibi existentium potuit super terram firmiter quiescere neque locum requiei aliquem invenire. Miles autem cum suis de seipso et de suis desperans navim quæ vocatur "galeya" adiit, quam sibi perprius allocaverat ad ripam Massiliæ; ipso vero evento ad dictam galeyam sperans sibi[10] requiem habituram[11] in quadruplo in mari plus exagitatur[12] quam

Continuation of the account of the earthquake; related by an eye-witness to a fellow monk of Malmesbury.

---

tage which arises from the exhibition to the eye of the reader of the striking and significant irregularities of an autograph. The continuity of the text of B. and D. is unbroken; the account of the earthquake preceding that of the entry for A.D. 1364.

[1] In marg. A. is the double-shafted cross mentioned in page 621 ([13].). The ink and character of this entry resemble very closely those of the last but one, and differ from that of the last and the following continuation very obviously.

[2] *bellum*] om. A. B. D. E. H.

[3] *habet*] hꝫ. A.E.H. habuit. B.

[4] *Rodis*] Rodys. B.

[5] *x. et xv. . . . . capti*] Written on an erasure in A.

[6] *Turkiæ*] Turkyæ. B.

[7] *interfuerunt*] ibi. præm. B.

[8] *post*] per. D.

[9] *commonachis*] So A.E.H. monachis. B.D

[10] *sibi*] se. B.D.

[11] *habituram*] Corrected into *habiturum* in B. in a modern hand. habiturum. D.

[12] *exagitatur*] agitatur. B.D.

perprius fuerat in terra. Ille vero nullam sibi requiem neque in mari neque in terra inveniens cum contritione magna soli Deo se totum[1] commisit, et sic in orationibus[2] perseverans[3] usque dum cessavit[4] illa tempestas soli Deo se totum contribuens. A.D. 1364.

Hoc[5] anno convocatum est[6] parliamentum Londoniis a quo nullus citatus potuit se excusare nec pretio nec prece; est[7] enim inceptum[8] in crastino Inventionis Sanctæ Crucis qui fuit dies quartus mensis Maii, litera Dominicalis D., ubi multa et magna ordinata sunt, et inter cætera papa petiit a rege annuum tributum quod rex Johannes sibi promiserat tempore Interdicti, scilicet, M. marcas quolibet anno, quod quidem tributum fuit relaxatum per dominum papam Innocentium III. per manus Nicholai cardinalis et ejusdem papæ pœnitentiarii septimo die mensis Julii; et responsum[9] domino papæ per commune consilium parliamenti quod de petitione sua omnino nihil[10] haberet. Unde scribibitur: Multa petenti pauca debentur. [A.D.] 1366. A.D. The tribute claimed by Urban V. refused by Parliament. 4 May.

Hoc anno obiit Simon[11] de Islep[12] archiepiscopus Cantuariæ vicesimo sexto die mensis Aprilis qui fuit proximus dies post festum Sancti Marci, litera Dominicalis D., et sepultus fuit Cantuariæ in proximo die Veneris sequenti cum parva solemnitate per præceptum proprium, circa cadaver tantum habens sex cereos accensos. [A.D.] 1366. A.D. Death of Simon de Islip, archbishop of Canterbury. 26 April.

---

[1] *totum*] om. D.

[2] *orationibus*] oratione. B.D.

[3] *perseverans*] perseveravit. B.D.

[4] *cessavit*] cessaret. D.

[5] *Hoc*] The capital *H* is omitted in A. and a small *h* written in the space left for it. The character at the commencement of this sentence is different from that of the preceding entry.

[6] *est*] om. B.

[7] *est*] fuit. B.D.

[8] *inceptum*] celebratum. præm. A. subpuncted.

[9] *responsum*] est. add. B.D.

[10] *manus Nicholai . . . omnino nihil*] Written on an erasure in A.

[11] *Simon*] Symon. B.D.

[12] *Islep*] Yslep. D.

A.D. 1366. Death of William de Edington, bishop of Winchester. 7 Oct. His successor not appointed. [A.D.] 1366. A. A lunar phenomenon. 22 Oct.

Eodem [1] anno obiit episcopus Wintoniæ [2] Willielmus de Edyndoun, septimo die mensis Octobris, stante litera Dominicali, qui fere omne thesaurum suum ipso [3] vivente dispersit indigentibus; et ad [4] Edindon [5] est sepultus in loco quem ipse a fundamentis ædificaverat [6] sumptibus [7] propriis et viris religiosis repleverat, qui lingua Romanica [8] vocantur *bone* [9] *gent.* Cui successit [10]

Hoc [11] anno, vicesimo secundo die mensis Octobris, apparente Aurora diei et luna lucente quasi in plenilunio, visæ sunt in firmamento faces igneæ, potius sanguineum colorem prætendentes quam ignitum, a globo lunari descendentes, in Occidente se ostendentes ubi luna tempore hiemali de jure residet in plenilunio, faculas ignitas emittentes huc atque illuc a (?) contrario transcurrentes, versus Aquilonem et Septentrionem ignita jacula transmittentes. Visæ sunt etiam e cœlo stellæ cadere plusquam centenæ cum tamen nulla stella in cœlo perprius apparuit. Visa sunt illa in Oxenfordschire, in Gloucestreschire, in Wilteschire plusquam de trecentis hominibus.[12]

Simon Langham translated.

Eodem [13] anno consecratus [14] archiepiscopus Cantuariæ qui prius fuit episcopus de Ely, primo monachus West-

---

[1] *Eodem*] The capital *E* omitted in A. and a space left in which a small *e* is written. The ink in which this entry is written is of a very different hue to that in which the preceding paragraph is written, the character also is slightly different. The obliteration of the following entry renders it impossible to say if this was originally written contemporaneously with it.

[2] *Wintoniæ*] Wyntoniæ. B. Wynton. D.

[3] *ipso*] seipso. B.D.

[4] *ad*] apud. B.D.

[5] *Edindon*] Edyngdoñ. D.

[6] *ædificaverat*] fundaverat. B.

[7] *sumptibus*] sumptis. B.D.

[8] *Romanica*] Romana. D.

[9] *bone*] bon. B.

[10] *Cui successit*] The word *successit* commences a line in A. the rest of which is blank. om. B. Willielmus Wykham. add. D.

[11] *Hoc*] The capital omitted, etc. as above in A.

[12] *Hoc anno . . . hominibus*] This paragraph had been partially deleted in A. by an application which had produced a discolouration of the ink; but the solution of galls so far restored it as to permit of its transcription. It is omitted in B.D.E.H.

[13] *Eodem*] The capital omitted etc. as above.

[14] *consecratus*] est. add. B.

monasterii, post ejusdem loci abbas, tertio episcopus de Ely, quarto Cantuariæ metropolis, et omnia ista beneficia per regem Edwardum Tertium adeptus[1] est. A.D. 1366. to Canterbury. 5 Nov.

Eodem[2] anno dux Lancastriæ Johannes de Gaunt, filius regis Edwardi Tertii, proposuit transfretasse ad[3] fratrem suum Edwardum principem post festum Sancti Michaelis, sed revocatus est per patrem suum.

Eodem[2] anno dux Clarenciæ Leonellus venit de Hibernia mense Novembri dicens se nunquam voluntarie illuc rediturum. Dimisit tamen ibi militem strenuum, bellicosum, in congressu gratiosum, Willielmum de Wyndesor[4] nominatum.

Eodem[2] anno octavo die mensis Octobris, illucente[6] Aurora, feria quinta, litera Dominicalis D., visæ sunt[7] faculæ ignitæ in firmamento convolare, huc et illuc discurrere, a globo lunari usque terram protendere, quidam[8] ad grossitiem[9] femoris humani et ad trium cubitorum longitudinem, quidam[8] ad sex, quidam[8] ad duodecim, in superficie peracutæ ut cuspis protensæ[10] usque basim accrescendo, ad modum cerei luminaris fabricatæ, sed in centuplo grossiores, longitudinem prætensam ostendentes. Duravit enim ista visio per duas horas integras, ut ostensum est nobis per duos fratres nostros monachos eo tempore itinerantes, nec dici potest lunæ eclipsis ut dicunt astronomici, quia a nullo elemento cruciabatur nec lumen ejus obfuscabatur, sed ipsa clare lucente stellæ visæ sunt cadere, cum tamen perprius in toto firmamento nulla stella apparuit; visum tamen fuit a multis illud luminare

A lunar phenomenon. 8 Oct.

Described to the author by his fellow-monks

---

[1] *adeptus*] consecutus. D.

[2] *Eodem*] The capital omitted, etc., as above.

[3] *proposuit transfretasse ad*] Written upon an erasure in A. This sentence and the preceding are in the same character in A.

[4] *Wyndesor*] Wyndesore. B.D.

[5] Nota de cometa. in marg. A.D.

[6] *illucente*] illucescente. B.D.

[7] *sunt*] Interlined in A.

[8] *quidam*] quædam. D.

[9] *grossitiem*] grossionem. D.

[10] *protensæ*] Written upon an erasure in A.

A.D. 1366 infra firmamentum concavatum tanquam si quis inspiceret[1] ardentem lucernam infra domum vel locum concavatum per fenestras aut[2] rimas patentes, ita deintus apparuit tanquam trabes[3] ignescens in superficie peracuta, in fine multo protensior, paulatim decrescendo usque ad consumptionem ab Austro et Occidente usque Septentrionem et Orientem lento gradu[4] transiens.[5]

William of Wykeham el. bp. of Winchester. Oct.

In[6] fine ejusdem anni Willielmus de Wikham[7] factus est episcopus Wintoniæ;[8] quomodo consecratus[9] inposterum plenius explicetur.

John Barnet to be translated to Ely.

Dictum[10] fuit in vulgo quod episcopus Bathoniæ[11] Johannes Barnet deberet transferri ad episcopatum Eliensem.[12]

---

[1] *inspiceret*] aspiceret, B.D.

[2] *aut*] vel. B.D.

[3] *tanquam trabes*] Written on an erasure in A.

[4] *lento gradu*] om. B.D.

[5] *transiens*] The *iens* written upon an erasure in A.

[6] This sentence has been written subsequently to the two preceding in A. Wikham. in marg. A.D.

[7] *Wikham*] Wykham. B.

[8] *Wintoniæ*] Wyntoniæ. B.D.

[9] *consecratus*] est. add. B.

[10] Barnet. in marg. A.D.

[11] *Bathoniæ*] Batoniæ. B.D.

[12] The MS. A. terminates here in the middle of a line and page. Thirteen blank lines follow. Hucusque codex archiepiscopi Ardmachani. in marg. B. in a late hand. The continuation of B. commences in the next line. Explicit Eulogium. add. D.

CHRONICON BREVIUS

AB INCARNATIONE USQUE AD ANNUM DOMINI

M.CCC.LXIV.

CHRONICON BREVIUS
AB INCARNATIONE USQUE AD ANNUM DOMINI M.CCC.LXIV.

Cap. I.

Plan of the present chornicle.

Diuturnitas[1] legendi inducit lassitudinem, lassitudo sensus hebetatem, hebetas pigritiam ; propterea pro talibus vitiis superfluis evitandis istam cronicam juxta numerum annorum ab Incarnatione Domini usque[2] ad ejus Passionem et ab ejus Passione usque ad annos millenos trescentos,[3] [quinquagenos[4] . . . .] pro nimia[5] prolixitate abbreviavi. Scire autem volentibus plenam aliquantulum annorum historiam scrutentur diversas hujus libri[6] partes et invenire poterunt aliqua paucula de diversis auctoribus tractata ad legentium consolationem et audientium ædificationem.

"Cronica" Græce Latine "temporum series" appellatur, qualem apud Græcos Eusebius Cæsariensis episcopus edidit, et Hieronymus presbyter in Latinam linguam convertit ; "cronos" enim Græce Latine "tempus" intrepatur.[7]

---

[1] Above this in A. are the words : "Liber cronicarum" in a late hand ; over these words the title : "Cronicon Diomedis" in a still more modern character.

[2] *usque*] et. præm. B.

[3] *trescentos*] trecentenos. B.

[4] *quinquagenos . . .]* Erased in A. ; the dotted portion illegible ; om. B.

[5] *nimia*] minima. B.

[6] *plenam . . . libri*] om. B.

[7] *intrepatur*] interpretatur. B.

The three ages :— of the Natural Law ; of the Written Law ; of the Law of Grace.

Tria autem sunt tempora per quæ præsentis sæculi spatium decurrit: Primum est tempus Naturalis Legis, et est ab Adam usque ad Moysen ; secundum, tempus Scriptæ Legis, et est a Moyse usque ad Christum ; tertium est tempus Gratiæ, et est a Christo usque ad finem sæculi.

Cap. II.

Sapientum Hebræorum hæc sunt verba authentica.[1]

Chronology of the Hebrews.

Factum est autem omne tempus quo vixit Adam nongenti[2] xxx anni. Ab Adam [usque][3] Noe mille dclvi. A Diluvio usque ad[4] ortum Habrahæ cc nonaginta duo. Ab ortu Abrahæ usque ad exitum filiorum Israel de Ægypto[5] per Moisen sunt anni quingenti quinque. Ab exitu filiorum Israel usque ad Christi Passionem sunt anni m. quingenti xx. et ix. secundum Hebraicam veritatem.[6]

Chronology of Orosius.

Orosius dicit ab orbe condito usque Roma condita[7] iiii. m. cccclxxx. octo. Ab urbe condita usque ad Adventum Christi anni dc. et unus. Ergo ab origine mundi usque[8] Adventum Christi v. m. lxxxix.

Chronology of Isidorus.

Isydorus Yspanensis archiepiscopus dicit per libros cronicos ab initio mundi usque ad Christum v. m. cliiii.[9]

---

[1] *Sapientum . . . authêntica*] In rubric in A. in the space between two chapters. om. B.

[2] *nongenti*] Above this in A. is written dcccc.

[3] *usque*] There is a hole in A. here.

[4] *ad*] om. B.

[5] *de Ægypto*] om. B.

[6] Isodorus add. A. in rubric.

[7] *Roma condita*] Romam conditam. B.

[8] *usque*] ad. add. B.

[9] Isod. Yspan. eps. add. A. in rubric.

Cap. III.

Anni Domini nostri Jesu Christi. Primo anno natus est anno Cæsaris Augusti xlii. Birth of Christ.

Secundo anno Herodes occidit innocentes.

Tertius.[1] Johannes Ewangelista natus est. Herodes tetrarcha Yturiæ[2] occidit seipsum.

iiii.[3]

v. In Annuntiatione Dominica per antiqua temporum curricula multa dicuntur per Deum fuisse facta, non dico isto anni tempore sed in diversis; propter quod dicit egregius versificator: Nota A.

Salve, festa dies, quæ vulnera nostra coerces,
Angelus est missus, est passus in cruce Christus;
Est Adam factus et eodem tempore lapsus:
Ob meritum decimæ[4] cadit Abel fratris ab ense:
Offert Melchisedech: Ysaac supponitur aris;
Est decollatus Christi Baptista beatus,
Petrus ereptus, Jacobus sub Herode peremptus,

[1] *Tertius*] tertio. B.

[2] *Yturiæ*] om. B.

[3] This entry concludes the first page of the MS. The character in which it is written coincides exactly with that of the Eulogium. That of the entries in the succeeding pages of the Kalendar is smaller, but obviously by the same hand. It is almost impossible by any reasonable amount of mere description, unaided by the evidence of a *fac simile*, to make clear to a reader the differences between the shades of the ink and the minute variations of character in which the interpolations in this Kalendar have been made by the author, though they would appear to the least practised eye to have been entered at many different times in different batches. No more, therefore, has been done in the foot notes than to distinguish the first entries of the Kalendar from the subsequent additions; all attempt at classifying with any precision in contemporaneous masses the interpolations which were made from time to time by the author, having been laid aside, as of necessity leading to a prolixity of description not at all commensurate with the result attained.

[4] *decimæ*] Obliterated by fire in B.

Corpora Sanctorum cum Christo multa resurgunt
Latro dulce tamen per Christum suscipit amen.[1]

VI.	
VII.	Christus ab Ægypto reducitur.[2]
VIII.	
IX.	
X.	
XI.	
XII.	Remansit puer Jesus in Ierusalem inter doctores Judæorum disputando cum eis.
XIII.	
XIV.	
XV.	Obiit Octavianus Cæsar cui successit Claudius Tyberius Liviæ senatoris filius.
XVI.	
XVII.	
XVIII.	
XIX.	
XX.	
XXI.	
XXII.	
XXIII.	
XXIIII.	
[X]XV.	
XXVI.	

[1] *In Annuntiatione . . . . Amen*] In the author's hand in A. but in a character and ink differing slightly from the original entries of the Kalendar. The initials are not illuminated as is the case with all the original entries.

[2] *Christus . . . reducitur*] Added in A. subsequently to the context in the author's hand in a much larger character than the neighbouring entries. The initial is not illuminated. It is referred by a mark to A.D. 7, but written opposite A.D. 13. In B. it is written opposite A.D. 6, and referred to A.D. 7. The years A.D. 7–A.D. 11 are written in A. at the side of the verses.

XXVII.	Pilatus procurator super Judæos factus est.
XXVIII.	
XXIX.	Johannes Baptista[1] prædicavit in deserto baptismum pœnitentiæ.
XXX.	Christus a Johanne baptizatus est.
XXXI.	
XXXII.	Johannes Baptista decollatur. Sol in totum[2] obscuratur.[3]
XXXIII.	Christus crucifigitur secundum Dyonisium.
XXXIIII.	Paulus conversus est.[4]
XXXV.	Puellam quæ saltaverat in decollationem Johannis Baptistæ vivam terra deglutivit.
XXXVI.	
XXXVII.	
XXXVIII.	Tiberio successit Gayus. Jacobus filius Zebedæi decollatur ab Herode Tetrarcha.[5]
XXXIX.	Mathæus Evangelista scribit in Judæa Evangelia.
XL.	Herodes tetrarcha Traconitidis Romam venit accusatus ab Agrippa; tetrarchiam perdidit, fugiens Hispaniam cum Herodiade uxore[6] sua.
XLI.	
XLII.	Pilatus infestante se Gayo propria manu se peremit.
XLIII.	

[1] *Baptista*] baps. A.

[2] *totum*] toto. B.

[3] A rude figure of a brown sun surrounded by a red annulus is annexed and referred to this entry by a line.

[4] Added in A. in same hand and ink as the entry opposite A.D. 13. The initial is not illuminated.

[5] *Jacobus . . . Tetrarcha*] Added in A. in nearly the same hand and ink as the entry for A.D. 34.

[6] *uxore*] Obliterated by fire in B.

XLIIII.	Petrus pergit Romam ad expugnandum Symonem Magum.
XLV.	Hic cathedram suscepit in Roma.
XLVI.	Hoc anno fames valida facta est quem Lucas refert.[1]
XLVII.[2]	
XLVIII.	Hoc anno Herodes Agrippa occidit Jacobum fratrem Johannis gladio.
XLIX.	
L.	Assumpta est Sancta[3] Maria mater Dei in cœlum, anno ætatis suæ LXII. mense quarto tres dies minus.[4]
LI.	
LII.	Claudius Judæos a Roma expulit.
LIII.	
LIIII.	Mortuo Claudio successit Nero, sub quo prima persecutio Christianis accidit, ipso in principio regni sui mitius agente. Philippus Apostolus in civitate Hierapoli anno ætatis suæ LXXVIII. crucifigitur.[5]
LV.	
LVI.	longinus miles obiit episcopus.[6]
LVII.	Sanctus Thimotheus discipulus Sancti Pauli Apostoli decollatus est. Eo[7]

[1] *quem Lucas refert*] In a different hand in B.

[2] *XLVII.*] om. B.

[3] *Sancta*] om. B.

[4] *anno . . . minus*] Added by the author in A. in a larger character and differently coloured ink from the preceding part of the entry, very closely resembling the entry for A.D. 34.

[5] *Philippus . . . . . crucifigitur*] Added by the author in A. in a different character and ink from the rest of the entry.

[6] *longinus . . . . episcopus*] Inserted in A. in a character distinguished from the author's general hand by the shape of the *l* and the extension of the *s* of *longinus* below the line. The ink is very much blacker than that of the original entries of the Kalendar.

[7] *Eo*] Eodem. B.

anno Nazarius et Celsus puer[1] ejus in civitate Mediolana sub templorum pontificibus martyrizati sunt: unde Hieronymus.

LVIII. Paulus Romam venit. Festus procurator Judææ factus est, a quo Paulus vinctus Romam mittitur.

LIX.

LX.

LXI.

LXII.

LXIII. Jacobus frater Domini a Judæis lapidatus est.

LXIIII.

LXV. Julianus Cenomanniæ episcopus, qui dicitur fuisse Symon leprosus qui Dominum invitavit ad convivium.[2]

LXVI.

LXVII.

LXVIII. Marcus moritur et Alexandriæ sepelitur.[3]

LXIX. Vespasianus a Cæsare mittitur ad Judæos expugnandos.

LXX. Petrus crucifigitur, Paulus decollatur sub Nerone. [M]aria Magdalene migravit ad Dominum XI. Kalendas Augusti.[4]

---

[1] *Sancthus Thimotheus . . . . . Celsus puer*] This part of the entry for the year LVII., all of which is written in A. in the author's hand but in a slightly different ink and style from the original entries of the Kalendar, occupies one line. The remainder which occupies the latter part of the line immediately above (the former part being filled by the entry of Longinus's death) is joined with the word *Eo* by a line which is attached to *ejus*. The initial *S* is not illuminated.

[2] *Julianus . . . convivium*] Added by the author in A. in a character and ink differing from those in which the original entries are written. The initial is not illuminated.

[3] *Marcus . . . sepelitur*] Added by the author in A in a hand and ink differing from those of the original entries and of the additions hitherto noted. The initial is indicated by a small *m*.

[4] *Maria . . . . . Augusti*] Added in A. by the author in a lighter hand than the original entries. The initial omitted.

LXXI.	Apolinaris post plura tormenta decollatur.[1]
LXXII.	Linus papa.[2] Hic ex præcepto Petri Apostoli constituit ut mulier velato capite ecclesiam intraret.
LXXIII.	
LXXIIII.	
LXXV.	
LXXVI.	Hierosolymorum subversio per Vespasianum et Titum filium suum.
LXXVII.	
LXXVIII.	
LXXIX.	
LXXX.	
LXXXI.	Obiit Vespasianus: successit Titus.
LXXXII.	
LXXXIII.	
LXXXIIII.	Johannes Apostolus in Pathmos insula relegatur.
LXXXV.	Cletus papa I.[3] Hic ex præcepto Beati Petri XXV. presbyteros in civitate Romana ordinavit.
LXXXVI.	
LXXXVII.	Passio Sanctorum Viti et Modesti pædagogi sui.[4]
LXXXVIII.	
LXXXIX.	
XC.	
XCI.	
XCII.	Trajanus imperator obiit.[5]

[1] *Apolinaris . . . . . decollatur*] Added by the author in A. The initial not illuminated.

[2] *papa*] Erased in A.

[3] *I*] om. B.

[4] This entry has been added by the author in A. subsequently to the context. The initial is not illuminated.

[5] Added by the author in A. perhaps contemporaneously with the entry in A.D. 68. The character and ink of both are strongly distinguished from those of the original entries and the large majority of the other additions, and bear a striking resemblance.

XCIII.
XCIIII. Clemens papa[1] sanctissimus.
XCV.
XCVI.
XCVII. Passio Sancti Dionisii cum sociis suis.
XCVIII.
XCIX. Johannes Apostolus ab exilio Ephesum rediit et ibi Evangelium scripsit.
C.
CI. Simon Hierosolymorum episcopus crucifigitur.
CII. Johannes Evangelista obiit.
CIII. Anacletus papa[1] I. Hic constituit ut clericus comam non nutriat.
CIIII.
CV.
CVI. Plinius Secundus historicus claruit.
CVII.
CVIII.
CIX.
CX. Sancta Felicitas passa est cum VII. filiis sub Antonio Imperatore.[2]
CXI. Ignatius Antiochiæ episcopus Romæ bestiis traditur et devoratur.
CXII.
CXIII.
CXIIII. Ab Urbe Condita anni DCCCL.
CXV. Evaristus papa primus.
CXVI.
CXVII.
CXVIII.
CXIX. Ælius Adrianus imperator. Hic Ierosolymam murorum extractione[3] reparavit et eam Ælyam vocari nomine

[1] *papa*] Scraped out in A.
[2] Added in A. by the author. The initial not illuminated.
[3] *extractione*] constructione. B.

suo jussit. Idem Judæos secundo rebelles perdomuit ultima cæde, ablata licentia Hierosolymam[1] introeundi.

CXX.

CXXI.

CXXII. Eustachius cum sociis[2] baptizatus est XII. Kalendas Octobris.[3]

CXXIII.

CXXIIII. Alexander papa[4] primus. Hic Passionem Domini miscuit in prece sacerdotum quando missæ celebrantur. Et constituit aquam sparsionis cum sale benedici et in habitaculis hominum spargi.

CXXV.

CXXVI.[5]

CXXVII.

CXXVIII.

CXXIX. Eustachius cum sociis[6] passus est XII. Kalendas Octobris.[7]

CXXX.

CXXXI.

CXXXII.

CXXXIII.

CXXXIIII. Sixtus papa[8] primus. Hic constituit ut mysteria sacra non tangantur nisi a ministris et hoc in missarum celebratione. "Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus" decantare constituit.

CXXXV.

---

[1] *Hierosolymam*] Ierusalem. B.

[2] *sociis*] Written upon an erasure in A. suis. add. B.

[3] Added in A. by the author. The initial not illuminated.

[4] *papa*] Scraped out in A.

[5] Twice in B.

[6] *sociis*] suis. add. B.

[7] Added in A. by the author, apparently about the same time as the last addition. The initial not illuminated.

[8] *papa*] Scraped out in A.

CXXXVI.
CXXXVII.
CXXXVIII.
CXXXIX.
CXL.
CXLI. Adriano imperatori successit Antonius Pius, qui et Titus Fulvius; natura benignus. Iste ob sui bonitatem tale cognomentum accepit: In omni curia Romana cautionibus receptis et debitis relaxatis pater pauperum ubique appellatus est.
CXLII.
CXLIII.
CXLIIII. Thelesphorus papa primus. Hic constituit nocte Natalis Domini III. missas cum Gloria in Excelsis decantari. Et ut VI. hebdomadæ plenæ ante Pascham jejunium celebretur. Et quod omnis clerus VII. ante Pascha hebdomadas a carnibus abstineat.[1]
CXLV.
CXLVI.
CXLVII.
CXLVIII.
CXLIX.
CL.
CLI.
CLII.
CLIII.
CLIIII.
CLV. Yginius papa[2] I. Hic gradus cleri instituit.
CLVI.
CLVII.

[1] This entry is much mutilated in B.

[2] *papa*] Scraped out in A.

CLVIII.

CLIX. Pius papa[1] I. Hic constituit ut Sanctum Pascha die Dominica celebraretur.

CLX. Sancta Praxedis migravit ad Dominum.[2]

CLXI.

CLXII.

CLXIII.

CLXIIII.

CLXV. Cathafrigarum hæresis exorta est.

CLXVI.

CLXVII. Policarpus[3] Romam adveniens multos ab hæresi liberavit.

CLXVIII.

CLXIX.

CLXX. Anicetus papa[1] primus. Hic constituit ut non consecretur[4] episcopus ad minus nisi a tribus quia hoc ritum servabant Apostoli.

CLXXI.

CLXXII.

CLXXIII.

CLXXIIII. Antonius Pius tunc Romæ imperator, tantæ pietatis et mansuetudinis fuit quod maluit potius[5] unum de suis hominibus vivum servare quam mille hostes occidere ; xxii. annos regnavit, omnibus profuit, nulli nocuit licet Paganus fuit.[6]

CLXXV.

CLXXVI.

CLXXVII.

CLXXVIII.

[1] *papa*] Scraped out in A.

[2] Added in A. by the author. The initial not filled in.

[3] *Policarpus*] Rolicarpus. B.

[4] *consecretur*] consecraretur. B.

[5] *potius*] om. B.

[6] *Antonius . . . . fuit*] Perhaps added by the author in A. after the original entries, the initial being plain.

CLXXIX.

CLXXX.

CLXXXI.[1] Sother papa[2] I. Hic constituit ut nulla monacha pallam altaris contingeret nec in Sancta Ecclesia incensum poneret.

CLXXXII.

CLXXXIII.

CLXXXIIII. [L]ucius rex Britonum regnare cœpit.[3]

CLXXXV.

CLXXXVI.

CLXXXVII.

CLXXXVIII.

CLXXXIX.

Eleutherius papa primus.[4]

CXC. A quo Lucius Britannorum rex per epistolam suam Eleutherio papæ missam Christianum se fieri impetravit, mox effectum piæ petitionis consecutus est. Susceptamque fidem Britanni usque ad tempora Diocliciani imperatoris inviolatam integram[5] quieta pace servaverunt. Hoc ante Augustinum per longa tempora.

His etiam diebus magna hæsitatio est ostensa de Die Paschæ. Apud Cæsaream celebratum fuit concilium pro eo terminando ubi datum fuit decretum quod Die Dominico scilicet XIIII.lunæ mensis Martii celebraretur.[6]

---

[1] *CLXXVII . . . . CLXXXI.*] These numerals have been destroyed in B. by fire.

[2] *papa*] Scraped out in A. This is the case so frequently with the same word wherever it occurs in the Kalendar that I have not thought it worth while to notice the succeeding erasures.

[3] Nota. in marg. A.

[4] *Eleutherius papa primus*] A line connects the initial of this entry and that of the next in A.

[5] *integram*] que. add. B.

[6] *His etiam . . . . celebraretur*] Placed in A. opposite A.D. 194, but the initial being indented it is most probably intended to form part of the entry for A.D. 190. It is written in B. with the last entry under

CXCI.
CXCII.
CXCIII.
CXCIV.
CXCV.
CXCVI.
CXCVII.
CXCVIII.
CXCIX.
CC.
CCI.
CCII.
CCIII.
CCIIII.

CCV. Victor[1] papa primus. Hic constituit ut si necesse fuerit aut mortis periculum ingrueret, Gentiles ad fidem venientes quocunque loco vel momento ubicumque evenerint sive in flumine sive in mari sive in fontibus tantum Christianæ credulitatis confessione clarificata baptizentur.[2]

CCVI.
CCVII.
CCVIII.
CCIX.
CCX.
CCXI.
CCXII.
CCXIII.
CCXIIII.

CCXV. Zepherinus papa primus. Hic constituit ut præsentibus omnibus clericis et laicis fidelibus diaconus sive presbyter astantibus sacerdotibus missæ celebrentur.

A.D. 190. The years A.D. 191, &c., are placed after its termination.

[1] *Victor*] Sictor. B.
[2] *baptizentur*] baptizarentur. B.

CCXVI.
CCXVII.
CCXVIII.
CCXIX.
CCXX.
CCXXI.

CCXXII. Calixtus papa primus. Hic constituit jejunium quatuor temporum fieri in anno ut melius abundaret frumentum, vinum, et oleum.[1] Emaus castellum in quo discipuli cognoverunt Jesum reædificatur. Mammæa mater Alexandri Imperatoris Origenem presbyterum ab Antiochia evocatum audire curavit. Sancta Cecilia passa est sub Alexandro imperatore in civitate Romana.

CCXXIII.
CCXXIIII.
CCXXV.
CCXXVI.
CCXXVII.

CCXXVIII. Urbanus papa primus. Hic constituit ut fidelium oblationes non in alios usus quam ecclesiasticos et Christianorum fratrum vel indigentium convertantur quia pia vota fidelium sunt et pretia.[2] Quiritus et Julicta martyrizantur.[3]

CCXXIX.
CCXXX.

CCXXXI. Origenes Alexandriæ claruit.

CCXXXII. Pontianus papa primus.

---

[1] *frumentum, vinum, et oleum*] vinum et oleum et frumentum. B.

[2] *quia pia . . . et pretia*] om. B

[3] *Quiritus . . . . martyrizantur.*] Added by the author in A.

CCXXXIII.	
CCXXXIIII.	
CCXXXV.	
CCXXXVI.	
CCXXXVII.	
CCXXXVIII.	Undecim mille virgines in Colonia passæ sunt.
CCXXXIX.	
CCXL.	
CCXLI.	Anteros papa primus. Hic decrevit episcopos communi utilitate atque necessitate sed non libito cujusquam aut dominatione de civitate qua ordinantur in aliam civitatem posse transferri. Hic VII. diaconos ordinavit qui VII. gesta martyrum in integro colligerent et notariis innotescerent.[1]
CCXLII.	
CCXLIII.	Fabianus papa.[2]
CCXLIIII.	
CCXLV.	
CCXLVI.	
CCXLVII.	
CCXLVIII.	Philippus qui et Marcus Julius dictus est. Hic Philippum filium suum fecit consortem imperii sui et primus Christianus imperator fuit.[3]
CCXLIX.	
CCL.	
CCLI.	
CCLII.	
CCLIII.	

[1] *Hic VII. diaconos . . . . notariis innotescerent*] This follows *Fabianus papa* in B.

[2] *Fabianus papa*] Fabi. papa. A. written in at the side of the last entry, opposite A.D. 243.

[3] *Philippus . . . imperator fuit*] om. B.

CCLIIII.

CCLV. Cornelius papa primus. Hic constituit sacramentum[1] a summis sacerdotibus vel reliquis nisi pro fide recta non exigatur, et ut nullus sacerdotum causam suam alieno committat judicio nisi ad sedem Apostolicam fuerit appellatum. Hic de catecumbas levavit per noctem[2] corpora apostolorum Petri et Pauli. Pauli quidem posuit Via Ostiensi ubi decollatus est. Petri vero juxta locum ubi crucifixus est. Decius Romanum invasit imperium.

CCLVI. Lucius papa primus. Hic præcepit ut duo presbyteri et III. diaconi in omni loco episcopum non deserant. Prothus et Jacinctus occisi sunt.[3]

CCLVII.

CCLVIII.

CCLIX.

CCLX. Stephanus papa primus. Hic constituit ut vestimenta ecclesiastica quibus[4] Deo ministratur sacra debere esse et honesta quibus in aliis usibus nemo debet perfrui quam ecclesiasticis. Sanctus Sixtus Sanctus Laurentius passi sunt.

CCLXI.

CCLXII.

CCLXIII. Abden et Sennes reguli de Persida Romam adducti martyrizantur.[5]

---

[1] *sacramentum*] ut. præm. B.

[2] *Hic constituit . . . noc*] Written in A. above *Cornelius papa primus*, commencing on a level with CCLII. The last syllable of *noctem* is in the same line as the entry, between it and *primus* is a mark in rubric, repeated before *Hic*.

[3] *Prothus . . . . sunt*] Added in A. by the author. The initial plain.

[4] *quibus*] in. præm. B.

[5] *Abdon . . . martyrizantur*] Added in A. by the author and referred to A.D. 257 by a line. The initial is plain. It is placed opposite that year in B.

CCLXIIII.	Cornelius et Ciprianus passi sunt sententiam capitalem.[1]
CCLXV.	
CCLXVI.	
CCLXVII.	
CCLXVIII.	Sixtus papa secundus. Cui Sanctus Laurentius fuit archidiaconus.
CCLXIX.	
CCLXX.	Dionisius papa primus. Hic constituit ecclesias presbyteris et parochias diocesis.
CCLXXI.	Sanctus Symphorianus occisus est.[2]
CCLXXII.	Septem dormientes evigilati sunt. Origenes floruit.[3]
CCLXXIII.	
CCLXXIIII.	
CCLXXV.	
CCLXXVI.	Felix papa primus. Hic primus constituit memorias martyrum celebrari et fruges super altare[4] benedici tantum fabæ et uvæ. Et ut nullus martyrem sine dalmatica aut collobio purpurato ulla ratione sepeliret.[5]
CCLXXVII.	
CCLXXVIII.	
CCLXXIX.	Euticianus papa primus.[6]
CCLXXX.	Gayus papa primus. Hic constituit ut siquis episcopus fieri mereretur[7] quod omnes gradus ecclesiasticos ascendat.

[1] *Cornelius . . . capitalem*] Referred in A. by a line to A.D. 256, under which it is placed in B.

[2] *Sanctus, &c.*] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain. The date CCLXXI. is here repeated twice in A. and both times erased.

[3] *Origenes floruit*] Added in A. in the same hand and ink as the entry for A.D. 56.

[4] *altare*] altari. B.

[5] This entry is placed under A.D. 277 in B.

[6] This entry is placed under A.D. 280 in B.

[7] *fieri mereretur*] constitui meretur. B.

Sancta Anastasia martyrizatur. Nerreus et Achillæus martyrizantur; hos Beatus Petrus baptizavit.

CCLXXXI.

CCLXXXII.

CCLXXXIII. Sanctus Valentinus martyrizatur. Sanctus Adrianus cum sociis suis martyrizantur et Natalia uxor sua et virgo secum obiit in civitate Nichomedia. In eadem civitate Sanctus Gorgonius decollatur eo tempore. Sancta Eufemia virgo occisa est. Sanctus Mauritius cum tota legione sua extinctus est sub Diocletiano et Max.[1] Civitate Placentiæ[2] Ciprianus et Justina virgo martyrizantur et Placentiæ requiescunt.

CCLXXXIIII.

CCLXXXV.

CCLXXXVI.

CCLXXXVII. Diocletianus et Maximianus unus in Oriente alter in Occidente imperant. Paulus primus eremita. Sanctus Blasius martyrizatur in civitate Sebasti. Georgius miles decollatur sub Daciano præside. Sancta Christina post multa tormenta jaculis percussa expiravit in Italia civitate Tyro. S.[3]

CCLXXXVIII.

CCLXXXIX.

CCXC.

CCXCI. Marcellinus papa primus. Vincentius occisus est. Felix presbyter et frater

[1] *In eadem civitate . . . . sub Diocletiano et Maximiano*] Sanctus Mauricius cum tota legione sua extinctus est sub Diocletiano et Maximiano. In civitate Nichomedia Sanctus Gorgonius decollatus est eo tempore. Sancta Euphemia virgo occisa est. B.

[2] *Placentiæ*] Placentia. B.

[3] *S.*] An erasure follows in A. om. B.

ejus decollati sunt. Passi sunt Cosmas et Damianus in civitate Ægea.

CCXCII.

CCXCIII. Simplicius et Faustinus submersi sunt in Tyberim. Beatrix soror illorum horum corpora sepelivit; quod audiens Lucretius præfectus virginem decollavit et ipso convivante in domo beatæ virginis Beatricis per infantem sex mensium lactantem in vulgo convivii loquentem nuntiatum est sibi suum interitum[1] in his verbis: Vicisti, Lucreti, et invasisti. Et sic a dæmonibus in convivio arreptus interiit.[2] Eodem anno IX. Kalendas Augusti sancta Christina martyrizata est.[3]

CCXCIIII.

CCXCV.

CCXCVI.

CCXCVII. Sancta Pelagia meretrix mortua est in Domino VIII. Kalendas Octobris, pœnitendo in Græcia, civitate Nichomedia.[4]

CCXCVIII.

CCXCIX.

CCC. Cessat papatus[5] annos VI.

CCCI.

CCCII.

CCCIII.

CCCIIII. [S]anctus Albanus occiditur in vertice

---

[1] *nuntiatum . . . suum interitum*] nuntiatus . . . suus interitus. B.

[2] *Simplicius . . . . interiit*] Added in A. by the author and referred to A.D. 287 by a line under which it is placed in B. The initial S. not coloured.

[3] *Eodem . . . . est*] Added in A. by the author; the initial blank. The ink of the first six words is rather darker than that of the last. It is placed under A.D. 287 in B.

[4] *pœnitendo . . . Nichomedia*] In rubric in A.

[5] *papatus*] Partly scraped out in A. This entry is omitted in B.

Montis Verolamii. Hic spiculatorem convertit.[1]

CCCV.

CCCVI. Marcellus papa primus. Hic constituit ut laici aut suspecti episcopos non debeant accusare, neque accusantibus de inimici domo prodeuntibus credendum sit.

CCCVII.[2]

CCCVIII.

CCCIX. Constantinus Magnus regnat[3] imperator. Sanctus Nicholaus obiit.[4]

CCCX. Sancta Lucia obiit in martyrio in civitate Syracusana.[5]

CCCXI. Eusebius papa primus. Hic constitui ut baptizati et de aqua levati chrismate sint liniti propter occasionem mortis, et ut nullus laicus crimen clerico audeat[6] inferre. Et ut sacrificium non in serico neque in panno tincto celebretur sed tantum in lino de terra procreato.

CCCXII.

CCCXIII.

CCCXIIII.

CCCXV. Sancta Katerina passa est in civitate Alexandrina sub Olibrio[7] imperatore.

CCCXVI.

CCCXVII. Hoc anno inventa est Crux Domini, ut in Gestis Pontificum Romanorum le-

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial left blank.

[2] *cccvii.*] om. B.

[3] *regnat*] regnavit. B.

[4] *Sanctus Nicholaus obiit*] Added in A. in blacker ink; perhaps by the author. Initial plain.

[5] Added in A. by the author. Initial coloured. It is placed under A.D. 309 in B., to which it perhaps belongs in A.

[6] *audeat*] auderat. B.

[7] *Olibrio*] Crossed out in A; *Maxentio* being written over it in the author's hand, but in very black ink. The entry in A. is referred to A.D. 310 by a line. Maxentio. B. It is placed under A.D. 310 in B.

gitur, v. Nonas Maias. Melchiades papa primus. Hic decrevit ut nullus fidelis die Dominico nec quinta feria jejunet quia hos Pagani quasi sacrum jejunium colunt.

CCCXVIII.

CCCXIX.

CCCXX.

CCCXXI.

CCCXXII. Silvester papa primus. Hic multa decrevit prout vita sua declarat.

CCCXXIII.

CCCXXIIII.

CCCXXV.

CCCXXVI.

CCCXXVII.

CCCXXVIII.

CCCXXIX.

CCCXXX.

CCCXXXI.

CCCXXXII.

CCCXXXIII.

CCCXXXIIII.

CCCXXXV.

CCCXXXVI.

CCCXXXVII.

CCCXXXVIII.

CCCXXXIX.

CCCXL. Abbas Antonius obiit. Sanctus Hyllarius Pictaniæ episcopus obiit.[1]

CCCXLI.

CCCXLII.

CCCXLIII. Sanctus . . . . . [2]

[1] *Sanctus Hyllarius . . . obiit*] Added in A. by the author subsequently to the former part of the entry.

[2] *Sanctus*] om. B. The remainder of the entry has been erased in A.

CCCXLIIII.

CCCXLV. Marcus papa primus.

CCCXLVI.

CCCXLVII. Julianus[1] papa primus. Hic jussu Angelico Chersonam perrexit et corpus Sancti Clementis transtulit. Item ossa Sancti Andreæ Apostoli et Sancti Lucæ Evangelistæ et Sancti Timothei Constantinopolim recondivit.

CCCXLVIII.

CCCXLIX.

CCCL. Eusebius Martyr episcopus ecclesiæ Vercellanæ lapidatus obiit.[2]

CCCLI.

CCCLII.

CCCLIII.

CCCLIIII.

CCCLV.

CCCLVI.

CCCLVII. Julianus Apostata. Hic ex Christiano efficitur Paganus et ob odium Christi Templum Hierosolymis per Judæos reparavit ; nocte subito terræ motu omnia Templi fundamenta de novo reparata corruerunt, saxa longe lateque divisim sparsa,[3] igneus globus ab interiori[4] æde Templi plurimos eorum incendio prostravit ; quo terrore reliqui pavefacti ad Christum conversi sunt. E[o]dem tempore apud Sebasten ossa Sancti Johannis Baptistæ a Paganis concremata sunt.[5]

---

[1] *Julianus*] The *an* interlined in A.

[2] This entry is placed under A.D. 347 in B.

[3] *divisim sparsa*] divisa dispersa sunt. B.

[4] *interiori*] interiore. B.

[5] An erasure of one line follows in A.

CCCLVIII.	
CCCLIX.	
CCCLX.	
CCCLXI.	
CCCLXII.	Tiberius papa primus.[1]
CCCLXIII.	
CCCLXIIII.	Johannes et Paulus et Sanctus Gallicanus sub Juliano Apostata martyrizati sunt.[2]
CCCLXV.	Gordianus vicarius Juliani imperatoris cum socio suo Ephymaco martyrium passi sunt.[3]
CCCLXVI.	
CCCLXVII.	
CCCLXVIII.	Felix papa secundus.
CCCLXIX.	Damasus papa primus. Hic constituit quod nocte et die psalmi canerentur per omnes ecclesias. His diebus passi sunt Romæ Johannes et Paulus.
CCCLXX.	
CCCLXXI.	Basilius episcopus obiit.
CCCLXXII.	
CCCLXXIII.	Hoc tempore Sanctus Ambrosius Mediolano constituitur episcopus.
CCCLXXIIII.	
CCCLXXV.	Circa hoc tempus obiit Athanasius Alexandrinus episcopus.
CCCLXXVI.	
CCCLXXVII.	Circa hoc tempus Josaphat filius regis Indiæ et Barlaam eremita claruerunt.[4]

[1] This entry is referred in A. to A.D. 358 by a mark. It is in one line in that MS. with the words "ossa Sancti Johannis . . . . con- "cremata sunt." It is placed under A.D. 362 in B.

[2] *Johannes . . . . sunt*] Written upon an erased line in A.

[3] *Gordianus . . . . . passi sunt*] Added in A. by the author; the initial is not coloured.

[4] *Circa hoc . . claruerunt*] Added in A. by the author. The initial is not coloured.

CCCLXXVIII.	
CCCLXXIX.	
CCCLXXX.	
CCCLXXXI.	
CCCLXXXII.	
CCCLXXXIII.	Martinus Turonensis episcopus miraculis coruscat. Ambrosius in doctrina Catholica claret.
CCCLXXXIIII.	
CCCLXXXV.	Priscillianus poeta agnoscitur.
CCCLXXXVI.	
CCCLXXXVII.	Ciricius papa primus.
CCCLXXXVIII.	
CCCLXXXIX	
CCCXC.	
CCCXCI.	
CCCXCII.	
CCCXCIII.	Hieronymus Bedlehem prædicatur.
CCCXCIIII.	
CCCXCV.	
CCCXCVI.	Sanctus Martinus obiit.[1]
CCCXCVII.	
CCCXCVIII.	Sanctus Alexius vir mirandæ virtutis obiit.[2]
CCCXCIX.	Sanctus Hieronymus obiit.[3]
CCCC.	
CCCCI.	
CCCCII.	
CCCCIII.	Anastasius papa primus. Hic constituit ut quandocunque Sacra Evangelia recitantur omnes Christiani stent qui eum audiunt, et presbyteri qui eum legunt curvi stent.

[1] *Sanctus Martinus obiit*] Added in A. by the author. The initial not coloured.

[2] *Sanctus Alexius . . . . . obiit*] Added in A. by the author. The initial plain.

[3] *Sanctus Hieronymus obiit*] Added in A. by the author. The initial plain.

CCCCIIII.[1]	
CCCCV.	
CCCCVI.	Innocentius papa primus. Hic constituit pacem dari in ecclesia post consecrationem sacramentorum. Johannes Chrysostomus et[2] Augustinus episcopus claruerunt.
CCCCVII.	
CCCCVIII.	
CCCCIX.	
CCCCX.	
CCCCXI.	
CCCCXII.	
CCCCXIII.	
CCCCXIIII.	
CCCCXV.	
CCCCXVI.	
CCCCXVII.	
CCCCXVIII.	
CCCCXIX.	Eo tempore[3] Luciano presbytero relevatum est corpus Beati Stephani Protomartyris[4] et per plures ecclesias Occidentis sunt ejus sanctæ reliquiæ.[5]
CCCCXX.	
CCCCXXI.	Zozimus papa primus. Hic decrevit cereum benedici in vigilia Paschæ a levita.
CCCCXXII.	Bonefacius papa primus. Hic decrevit servum clericum non fieri, nec obnoxium curiæ[6] vel cujuslibet rei.

[1] The numerals from CCCC. to CCCCIIII., both included, have been written in A. as CCCXCX, CCCXCXI, &c. to CCCXCXIIII. and corrected by the author.

[2] *et*] With a coloured initial in A.

[3] *tempore*] tempore. præm. A. subpuncted.

[4] *Protomartyris*] Prothorris. A.

[5] An erasure : "Sanctus . . . . . "tuanus episcopus obiit" follows in A.

[6] *curiæ*] nec. præm. A., subpuncted. Nota. in marg. A.

CCCCXXIII.

CCCCXXIIII.

CCCCXXV. Cœlestinus papa primus. Ad Scottis prædicandum Palladius eorum primus episcopus ab isto transmissus est. Et Sanctus Patricius ad Hiberniam. Hic constituit ut psalmi antiphonantium decantarentur a choro in chorum. Nam antea epistola et Evangelium Sanctum recitabantur.

CCCCXXVI.

CCCCXXVII.

CCCCXXVIII.

CCCCXXIX.

OCCCXXX.

CCCCXXXI. Hoc tempore celebratum est Ephesina synodus CC. episcoporum, ubi præfuit Alexandrinus præsul adversus Nestorium[1] Constantinopolitanum episcopum.

CCCCXXXII.

CCCCXXXIII.

CCCCXXXIIII. Sanctus Augustinus migravit ad Dominum anno ætatis suæ LXXVI.

CCCCXXXV. Sixtus papa primus. Hic fecit basilicam Sanctæ Mariæ matris Domini.

CCCCXXXVI.

CCCCXXXVII.

CCCCXXXVIII.

CCCCXXXIX.

CCCCXL.

CCCCXLI.

CCCCXLII.

CCCCXLIII. Leo papa primus. Hic constituit in actione missæ dicere "Sanctum Sacrificium et Immaculatam Hostiam." Et monacham non accipere velamen

[1] *Nestorium*] c̄ntoriū. A.; the superior *c* being probably a symbol for *s* as in *xpc, epc*, for *Christus, episcopus*.

capitis benedictum ab episcopo nisi prius probata fuit illius virginitas.

CCCCXLIIII.

CCCCXLV.

CCCCXLVI.

CCCCXLVII.

CCCCXLVIII.

CCCCXLIX. Sanctus Germanus cum Beato Lupo venit in Angliam contra Pelagianam hæresim. Tunc primo venerunt Angli in Angliam. Floruit Sanctus Maifitus apud Viennam Galliæ urbem. Hic III. dies Rogationum constituit ante Ascensionem Domini. Obiit Sanctus Germanus.

CCCCL.

CCCCLI.

CCCCLII.

CCCCLIII.

CCCCLIIII.

CCCCLV.

CCCCLVI.

CCCCLVII.

CCCCLVIII. Sancta Barbara martyrizatur sub Marciano præside. Nam Dioscorus pater ejus manibus propriis filiam suam decollavit.

CCCCLIX.

CCCCLX.

CCCCLXI.

CCCCLXII.

CCCCLXIII.

CCCCLXIIII. Hyllarius papa primus. Hic constituit ut pœnitentes vel inscii literarum vel aliqua damna membrorum perpessi ad sacros ordines aspirare non audeant.

CCCCLXV.

CCCCLXVI.

CCCCLXVII.

CCCCLXVIII.
CCCCLXIX.
CCCCLXX.
CCCCLXXI. Simplicius papa primus.
CCCCLXXII.
CCCCLXXIII.
CCCCLXXIIII.
CCCCLXXV. Hoc tempore claruerunt Sanctus Remigius Remensis et frater ejus Beatus Vedastus. Et alii duo fratres Beati Medardus et Gildardus.
CCCCLXXVI.
CCCCLXXVII.
CCCCLXXVIII.
CCCCLXXIX.
CCCCLXXX.
CCCCLXXXI.
CCCCLXXXII.
CCCCLXXXIII. Hoc anno[1] . . . . . .
CCCCLXXXIIII
CCCCLXXXV.
CCCCLXXXVI. Felix papa III.
CCCCLXXXVII.
CCCCLXXXVIII.
CCCCLXXXIX.
CCCCXC.
CCCCXCI. Sanctus Patricius obiit.[2]
CCCCXCII.
CCCCXCIII.
CCCCXCIIII. Gelasius papa primus. Hic fecit tractus et hymnos sicut Beatus Ambrosius.
CCCCXCV. Fulgentius episcopus prædicatur.
CCCCXCVI.
CCCCXCVII.

[1] *Hoc anno*] Written in a larger hand in A. than the generality of the entries. An erasure of a line and half follows. Initial plain.

[2] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

CCCCXCVIII.	Anastasius papa II.
CCCCXCIX.	
D.	Symmachus papa primus. Hic constituit ut omni die Dominico et natalitiis Sanctorum "Gloria in Excelsis" canere-tur. Hic plurimas ecclesias de novo construxit et plura vetera reparavit.
DI.	
DII.	
DIII.	Hoc tempore floruit Sanctus Leonardus in Francia natus; quem Beatus Remigius Remensis archiepiscopus de sacro fonte levavit.
DIIII.	
DV.	
DVI.	
DVII.	
DVIII.	
DIX.	
DX.	
DXI.	
DXII.	
DXIII.	
DXIIII.	Hormisda papa primus. Hic multa bona opera clero ordinavit.
DXV.	
DXVI.	
DXVII.	
DXVIII.	Sanctus Benedictus abbas monachorum floruit.
DXIX.	
DXX.	
DXXI.	
DXXII.	
DXXIII.	
DXXIIII.	Johannes papa primus. Hic Constantino-polim veniens in conspectu populi cæcum illuminavit.

DXXV.	
DXXVI.	
DXXVII.	
DXXVIII.	Felix papa IIII.
DXXIX.	
DXXX.	
DXXXI.	
DXXXII.	Bonefacius papa II.
DXXXIII.	
DXXXIIII.	Johannes papa II.
DXXXV.	
DXXXVI.	Agapitus papa I.
DXXXVII.	
DXXXVIII.	Eclipsis solis XIIII. Kalendas Martii ab hora prima usque ad tertiam.[1]
DXXXIX.	
DXL.	Eclipsis solis XII. Kalendas Julii et stellæ apparuerunt circa horam meridiem.
DXLI.	
DXLII.	[Arthurus rex Britonum obiit.][2]
DXLIII.	
DXLIIII.	
DXLV.	Arthurus rex Britonum obiit Glastoniæ.[3]
DXLVI.	
DXLVII.	Silverius papa primus.
DXLVIII.	Virgilius librum suum edidit.
DXLIX.	
DL.	Sanctus David archiepiscopus Urbis Legionum moritur in civitate Meneviæ in diœcesi suo, quia multum ibi dilexit quia ibi ortus est.[3]
DLI.	
DLII.	

[1] A rude figure of a green sun, partially eclipsed and surrounded by a red annulus is annexed to each of these entries.

[2] Erased in A.

[3] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

DLIII.	
DLIIII.	
DLV.	
DLVI.	
DLVII.	
DLVIII.	
DLIX.	
DLX.	
DLXI.	
DLXII.	
DLXIII.	
DLXIIII.	
DLXV.	Hoc anno venit Columba presbyter de Scocia ad prædicandum fidem Christi Anglis.[1]
DLXVI.	Pelagius papa. Hic ecclesiam Apostolorum Philippi et Jacobi in Roma construxit.
DLXVII.	
DLXVIII.	
DLXIX.	
DLXX.	Johannes papa III.
DLXXI.	Armeni fidem Christi suscipiunt.
DLXXII.	
DLXXIII.	
DLXXIIII.	
DLXXV.	
DLXXVI.	
DLXXVII.	
DLXXVIII.	
DLXXIX.	
DLXXX.	
DLXXXI.	
DLXXXII.	Longobardi Italiam capiunt.

[1] Added in A. by the author. initials plain. It is commenced opposite A.D. 563, and referred to A.D, 565 by a line.

DLXXXIII. Benedictus papa primus.

DLXXXIIII.

DLXXXV.

DLXXXVI.

DLXXXVII. Pelagius papa II. Hujus tempore factum est diluvium magnum in Roma ita ut flumen Tyberis super muros urbis influeret, et multa corpora cadaverum repantium mortua sunt in flumine; unde aer inficitur et sequitur mortalitas magna. Circa hoc tempus mulier peperit monstrum in Italia, puerum non habentem oculos neque palpebra, manus nec pedes; a lumbis erat ei ut cauda piscis.

DLXXXVIII.

DLXXXIX.

DXC.

DXCI.

DXCII.

DXCIII.

DXCIIII.

DXCV.

DXCVI.

DXCVII. Gregorius Magnus papa. Hic adjecit in canone missæ "Diesque nostros in tua pace disponas," usque ad "numerari." Et constituit ut supra corpus Beati Petri missæ celebrarentur.

DCXXVIII.

DXCIX. Hoc anno obiit Sanctus Columba presbyter, primus doctor in transmontanis, qui a nonnullis dictus est Kolumkillus.[1]

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain. It is commenced opposite A.D. 602, and referred to A.D. 599 by a line.

DC.	
DCI.	Sanctus Vedastus obiit.[1]
DCII.	
DCIII.	
DCIIII.	
DCV.	Johannes Eleemosinarius claruit.
DCVI.	Ordinatio Festi Omnium Sanctorum.
DCVII.	
DCVIII.	
DCIX.	Clotarius rex Brunchildam reginam equo indomito uno pede una manu alligata cum coma capitis, judicantibus Francis, pro diversis pravitatibus disrumpi præcepit. Eodem tempore Saxones in Britannia fidem Christi suscipiunt per Sanctum Augustinum.[2]
DCX.	Obiit Sanctus Gregorius.[3]
DCXI.	
DCXII.	
DCXIII.	
DCXIIII.	
DCXV.	
DCXVI.	
DCXVII.	Savinianus papa I.
DCXVIII.	Bonefacius papa III. Hic petiit a Foca imperatore Romam habere principatum omnium ecclesiarum cum ante fuit Constantinopolim.
DCXIX.	
DCXX.	Bonefacius papa IIII. de Panteon fecit ecclesiam Omnium Sanctorum.[4]

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

[2] *per Sanctum Augustinum*] Added in A. by the author.

[3] Commenced in A. on account of the length of the preceding entry opposite A.D. 616, and referred to A.D. 610 by a line.

[4] Referred in A. to A.D. 614 by a mark, probably by mistake, as Boniface III. is left opposite A.D. 618.

DCXXI.	Judæi in Hyspannia baptizati sunt. Sanctus Amandus dormivit in Domino.
DCXXII.	Deusdedit papa I.
DCXXIII.	
DCXXIIII.	Bonefacius papa V. Hic excommunicavit omnes extrahentes ad ecclesiam fugientes.
DCXXV.	
DCXXVI.	
DCXXVII.	
DCXXVIII.	
DCXXIX.	
DCXXX.	Honorius papa II.
DCXXXI.	
DCXXXII.	
DCXXXIII.	Sanctus Birinus ab Honorio papa missus in Angliam venit.
DCXXXIIII.	
DCXXXV.	Sanctus Audoenus ordinatur episcopus.
DCXXXVI.	
DCXXXVII.	Machometus pseudo-propheta obiit.[1] Eodem anno fundatio monasterii Malmesburiæ.[1]
DCXXXVIII.	
DCXXXIX.	
DCXL.	
DCXLI.	
DCXLII.	Sanctus Oswaldus rex martyrizatur.
DCXLIII.	Obiit Honorius et cessat episcopatus anno I.
DCXLIIII.	
DCXLV.	Severus papa I.
DCXLVI.	

[1] Added by the author in A. Initials plain.

DCXLVII	Johannes papa IIII.
DCXLVIII.	Theodorus papa I.
DCXLIX.	
DCL.	
DCLI.	Eodem anno Benedictus Biscop fecit II. monasteria super vadum Wiri fluminis, cujus alumnus fuit Beda presbyter.[1]
DCLII.	
DCLIII.	
DCLIIII.	Martinus papa I.
DCLV.	
DCLVI.	
DCLVII.	
DCLVIII.	
DCLIX.	
DCLX.	Eugenius papa I.
DCLXI.	
DCLXII.	Vitalianus papa I.
DCLXIII.	
DCLXIIII.	
DCLXV.	Obiit Sanctus Wandragesilus abbas. Sanctus Leodegarius occiditur sub Ebronio proconsule. Constantinus imperator occiditur a suis in balneo apud Siciliam.[2]
DCLXVI.	Sanctus Aldelmus ordinatur abbas Malmesburiæ et stetit XXXIX. annos in abbatem et IIII. et semis in præsulatum.[2]
DCLXVII.	
DCLXVIII.	
DCLXIX.	
DCLXX.	

[1] Added by the author in A. Initial plain.

[2] Added in A. by the author. Initials plain. The second is commenced on account of the length of the preceding entry opposite A.D. 668, and referred to A.D. 666 by a line. Nota. in marg. A.

DCLXXI.	
DCLXXII.	
DCLXXIII.	
DCLXXIIII.	Translatio corporis Sancti Benedicti in Galliam.
DCLXXV.	
DCLXXVI.	Deodatus papa I.
DCLXXVII.	Sanctus Audoenus migravit ad Dominum.
DCLXXVIII.	
DCLXXIX.	
DCLXXX.	Donus papa I. Sancta Hilda abbatissa obiit; Glastoniæ quiescit.[1]
DCLXXXI.	Agato papa I.
DCLXXXII.	Sanctus . . . . . [2]
DCLXXXIII.	
DCLXXXIIII.	Leo papa II.
DCLXXXV.	Benedictus papa II.
DCLXXXVI.	Johannes papa V.
DCLXXXVII.	Beda presbyter claret in Anglia.[3]
DCLXXXVIII.	Cono papa I.
DCLXXXIX.	Sergius papa I. Hic constituit ut in fractione Dominici Corporis "Agnus Dei" cantaretur.
DCXC.	
DCXCI.	Sanctus Lambertus martyrizatur Vercellensis episcopus per ministros Pippini regis Franciæ quia regem de fornicatione increpaverat.
DCXCII.	
DCXCIII.	
DCXCIIII.	
DCXCV.	

[1] *Sancta Hilda . . . . . quiescit*] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

[2] *Sanctus*] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain. An erasure of a line follows.

[3] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain. Sanctus Beda. in marg. A.

DCXCVI.	
DCXCVII.	
DCXCVIII.	
DCXCIX.	
DCC.	[S]anctus Ægidius claruit.[1]
DCCI.	
DCCII.	Johannes papa VI.
DCCIII.	
DCCIIII.	
DCCV.	Johannes papa VII.
DCCVI.	
DCCVII.	Sisinnius papa I.
DCCVIII.	Constantinus papa I.
DCCIX.	Obiit Sanctus Aldhelmus.[2]
DCCX.	Sanctus Guthlacus anachorita apud Crolond obiit.[3]
DCCXI.	
DCCXII.	
DCCXIII.	
DCCXIIII.	
DCCXV.	
DCCXVI.	Sanctus Egwinus obiit.[3]
DCCXVII.	
DCCXVIII.	
DCCXIX.	
DCCXX.	
DCCXXI.	
DCCXXII.	
DCCXXIII.	
DCCXXIIII.	
DCCXXV.	
DCCXXVI.	
DCCXXVII.	

[1] Added in A by the author. Initial plain.

[2] A pastoral staff in rubric is drawn opposite this entry in A. Nota. in marg. A.

[3] Added in A. by the author. The initials plain.

DCCXXVIII.	
DCCXXXIX.[1]	
DCCXXX.	
DCCXXXI.	Gregorius papa III. Hic constituit in missa "Quorum solemnitas hodie" usque "largitor amitte." Item Beda presbyter et monachus Dunelmiæ Anglorum obiit VII. Kalendas Ju . . . . ætatis suæ LIX.[2]
DCCXXXII.	
DCCXXXIII.	
DCCXXXIIII.	
DCCXXXV.	
DCCXXXVI.	
DCCXXXVII.	Sancta Frideswida obiit, cujus pater Did. . . . . [3]
DCCXXXVIII.	Rex Kenulfus fundavit monasterium Winchelcumbiæ.[4]
DCCXXXIX.	
DCCXL.	
DCCXLI.	Zakarias papa I. Karolus Martellus obiit, quem Beatus Eucherius vidit in Inferno anima et corpore positum, eo quod ecclesias Francorum exhæredavit, quas antecessores ejus honoraverant.
DCCXLII.	
DCCXLIII.	
DCCXLIIII.	
DCCXLV.	Terræ motus factus est in Italia quo urbes aliæ sunt subversæ, aliæ a montanis ad loca campestria cum muris et habitatoribus suis integre subvecta ad VI. miliaria.

[1] *DCCXXXIX*] So in A.

[2] *ætatis suæ LIX.*] Added in A. by he author. Beda obiit in marg. A.

[3] Added in A. by the author. The initials plain. The end of the entry is taken up in binding.

[4] Added in A. by the author. The initial plain.

DCCXLVI.	
DCCXLVII.	
DCCXLVIII.	
DCCXLIX.	
DCCL.	
DCCLI.	Steffanus papa II.
DCCLII.	Pippinus rex efficitur.
DCCLIII.	
DCCLIIII.	
DCCLV.	
DCCLVI.	Paulus papa I.
DCCLVII.	Organum primo venit in Francia missum a Constantino rege Græcorum regi Pippino Francorum. Sanctus Gengulfus occiditur in Burgundia.[1]
DCCLVIII.	
DCCLIX.	
DCCLX.	
DCCLXI.	
DCCLXII.	
DCCLXIII.	
DCCLXIIII.	
DCCLXV.	
DCCLXVI.	Steffanus papa III.
DCCLXVII.	
DCCLXVIII.	
DCCLXIX.	Adrianus papa I. obiit Pippinus, successit Karolus.
DCCLXX.	
DCCLXXI.	
DCCLXXII.	
DCCLXXIII.	
DCCLXXIIII.	
DCCLXXV.	
DCCLXXVI.	
DCCLXXVII.	

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

DCCLXXVIII.

DCCLXXIX. Conanius cum Hyrena.

DCCLXXX.

DCCLXXXI. Karolus Romam vadit. Inde reversus Papiam cepit et regem Desiderium cum suis omnibus.

DCCLXXXII.

DCCLXXXIII.

DCCLXXXIIII.

DCCLXXXV.

DCCLXXXVI.

DCCLXXXVII.

DCCLXXXVIII.

DCCLXXXIX. Circa hoc tempus delata sunt ossa Beati Cipriani a Carthagine ad ecclesiam Beati Johannis Baptistæ in Lugduno.

DCCXC.

DCCXCI.

DCCXCII. Leo papa IIII.

DCCXCIII.

DCCXCIIII.

DCCXCV.

DCCXCVI. Hoc anno II. Nonas Junii, lunæ XIIII., signum crucis in luna apparuit, feria V., prima Aurora incipiente, quasi hoc modo Eodem anno III. Kalendas Septembris, luna XII., die Dominica, hora IIII., corona mirabilis in circuitu solis apparuit ad hoc signum

DCCXCVII.

DCCXCVIII.

DCCXCIX.

DCCC. Hoc anno XVII. Kalendas Augusti feria II., incipiente hora, die V., eclipsis solis apparuit luna XXIX.[1]

[1] A figure is annexed in A.

DCCCI.	
DCCCII.	
DCCCIII.	
DCCCIIII.	
DCCCV.	
DCCCVI.	
DCCCVII.	
DCCCVIII.	
DCCCIX.	
DCCCX.	
DCCCXI.	
DCCCXII.	Stefanus papa IIII.
DCCCXIII.	
DCCCXIIII.	Karolus Magnus obiit. Lodowicus filius ejus regnare cœpit.
DCCCXV.	
DCCCXVI.	
DCCCXVII.	
DCCCXVIII.	
DCCCXIX.	Paschalis papa I. Rabanus abbas in Germania doctor eximius, cujus discipulus fuit Strabus poeta famosus. Fames valida per totum mundum.[1]
DCCCXX.	
DCCCXXI.	
DCCCXXII.	
DCCCXXIII.	
DCCCXXIIII.	
DCCCXXV.	
DCCCXXVI.	Factum est bellum apud Ellendoun.
DCCCXXVII.	Eugenius papa II. Eo tempore delata sunt ossa Sanctorum Martyrum Tyburtii, Ypoliti a Roma usque ad Sanctum Dyonisium juxta Parisium urbem.
DCCCXXVIII.	

[1] *Rabanus . . . mundum*] Added in A. by the author.

DCCCXXIX.
DCCCXXX. Valentinianus papa I.
DCCCXXXI. Gregorius papa IIII.
DCCCXXXII.
DCCCXXXIII.
DCCCXXXIIII.
DCCCXXXV.
DCCCXXXVI.
DCCCXXXVII. Ethulfus rex regnat.
DCCCXXXVIII.
DCCCXXXIX. Obiit Lodowicus rex Francorum. Hoc anno eclipsis solis facta est IIII. feria ante Ascensionem Domini, hora diei nona, ad hoc signum .
DCCCXL.
DCCCXLI.
DCCCXLII.
DCCCXLIII.
DCCCXLIIII.
DCCCXLV.
DCCCXLVI.
DCCCXLVII. Sergius papa II.
DCCCXLVIII.
DCCCXLIX.
DCCCL. Leo papa V. Hic Alfredum Apulfi regis Westsaxonum filium Romæ unxit in regem.
DCCCLI.
DCCCLII.
DCCCLIII.
DCCCLIIII.
DCCCLV.
DCCCLVI. Johannes qui fuit femina sedit annos II., menses V., natione Maguncius et magnus doctor. Tandem imprægnata fuit.[1]

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

DCCCLVII.	
DCC[C]LVIII.	
DCC[C]LIX.	Benedictus papa III. In isto anno cœpit gelare II. Kalendas Decembris et finivit Nonas Aprilis.
DCCCLX.	
DCCCLXI.	Paulus papa.
DCCCLXII.	Sanctus Swithinus obiit.
DCCCLXIII.	
DCCCLXIIII.	
DCCCLXV.	
DCCCLXVI.	Pestis animalium.
DCCCLXVII.	
DCCCLXVIII.	
DCCCLXIX.	Fames et mortalitas hominum.
DCCCLXX.	Sanctus Edmundus rex martyrizatur.
DCCCLXXI.	Stephanus papa V.
DCCCLXXII.	
DCCCLXXIII.	
DCCCLXXIIII.	Nicholaus papa I.
DCCCLXXV.	
DCCCLXXVI.	
DCCCLXXVII.	
DCCCLXXVIII.	
DCCCLXXIX.	
DCCCLXXX.	
DCCCLXXXI.	Obiit Nicholaus papa et cessavit episcopatus per annos VIII.
DCCCLXXXII.	
DCCCLXXXIII	
DCCCLXXXIIII.	
DCCCLXXXV.	
DCCCLXXXVI.	
DCCCLXXXVII.	
DCCCLXXXVIII.	
DCCCLXXXIX.	Adrianus papa II.
DCCCXC.	
DCCCXCI.	

DCCCXCII.	Johannes papa VIII.
DCCCXCIII.	
DCCCXCIIII.	
DCCCXCV.	
DCCCXCVI.	
DCCCXCVII.	
DCCCXCVIII.	
DCCCXCIX.	
DCCCC.	
DCCCCI.	Edwardus filius Eluredi regnare cœpit.
DCCCCII.	Martinus papa II.
DCCCCIII.	Adrianus papa III.
DCCCCIIII.	Stephanus papa VI.
DCCCCV.	
DCCCCVI.	Hoc anno vermes bidentati ceciderunt de aere qui totam annonam Hiberniæ comederunt; unde fames sequebatur.[1]
DCCCCVII.	Formosus papa I.
DCCCCVIII.	
DCCCCIX.	
DCCCCX.	
DCCCCXI.	Stephanus papa VI. Bonefacius VI.
DCCCCXII.	Romanus I.; Theodorus I.; Johanna.
DCCCCXIII.	
DCCCCXIIII.	Benedictus papa IIII.
DCCCCXV.	Leo VI.; Christoforus I.; Sergius IIII.
DCCCCXVI.	Hoc anno obiit Willielmus dux Aquitannorum qui Clunaticum construxit monasterium in honore Apostolorum Petri et Pauli.
DCCCCXVII.	
DCCCCXVIII.	
DCCCCXIX.	
DCCCCXX.	
DCCCCXXI.	

[1] Added in A. by the author Initial plain. It is commenced opposite A.D. 905, and referred to A.D. 906 by a line.

DCCCCXXII.	
DCCCCXXIII.	
DCCCCXXIIII.	Athelstanus rex regnare cœpit.
DCCCCXXV.	Anastasius papa III.
DCCCCXXVI.	
DCCCCXXVII.	
DCCCCXXVIII.	Lando papa I. Johannes papa X.
DCCCCXXIX.	
DCCCCXXX.	
DCCCCXXXI.	
DCCCCXXXII.	
DCCCCXXXIII.	
DCCCCXXXIIII.	
DCCCCXXXV.	
DCCCCXXXVI.	
DCCCCXXXVII.	
DCCCCXXXVIII.	
DCCCCXXXIX.	
DCCCCXL.	Edmundus frater Athelstani regnare cœpit.
DCCCCXLI.	
DCCCCXLII.	Leo papa VII.
DCCCCXLIII.	
DCCCCXLIIII.	
DCCCCXLV.	
DCCCCXLVI.	
DCCCCXLVII.	
DCCCCXLVIII.	
DCCCCXLIX.	Stephanus papa VII.[1]
DCCCCL.	
DCCCCLI.	Johannes papa XI.
DCCCCLII.	Monstrum in Wasconia natum, mulier duo habens capita, duo pectora, ab umbilico in sursum divisa.[2]

[1] *vii.*] The second *i* added by the author in A.

[2] Added in A. by the author Initial plain.

DCCCCLIII.	
DCCCCLIIII.	
DCCCCLV.	Leo papa VIII. Edwius filius Edmundi regnare cœpit.
DCCCCLVI.	
DCCCCLVII.	
DCCCCLVIII.	Stephanus papa VIII.[1]
DCCCCLIX.	Edgarus regnare cœpit.
DCCCCLX.	
DCCCCLXI.	Martinus papa II.
DCCCCLXII.	
DCCCCLXIII.	
DCCCCLXIIII.	Agapitus papa II.
DCCCCLXV.	
DCCCCLXVI.	
DCCCCLXVII.	
DCCCCLXVIII.	
DCCCCLXIX.	
DCCCCLXX.	
DCCCCLXXI.	
DCCCCLXXII.	
DCCCCLXXIII.	Johannes papa XII.
DCCCCLXXIIII.	
DCCCCLXXV.	Sanctus Edwardus regnare cœpit.
DCCCCLXXVI.	
DCCCCLXXVII.	
DCCCCLXXVIII.	
DCCCCLXXIX.	Sanctus Edwardus martyrizatur; successit Ethelredus frater ejus et apud Warham sepelitur.
DCCCCLXXX.	
DCCCCLXXXI.	Leo papa IX.
DCCCCLXXXII.	Benedictus papa VI.
DCCCCLXXXIII.	Johannes papa XIII.
DCCCCLXXXIIII.	Obiit Sanctus Ethelwoldus.

[1] *VIII.*] The last *I* added by the author in A.

DCCCCLXXXV.	Civitas Londoniæ fere cremata est.[1]
DCCCCLXXXVII.	
DCCCCLXXXVIII.	
DCCCCLXXXIX.	Obiit Sanctus Dunstanus.
DCCCCXC.	Benedictus VI. Donus papa II.
DCCCCXCI.	Bonefacius VII. Benedictus papa VII.
DCCCCXCII.	
DCCCCXCIII.	
DCCCXCIIII.	
DCCCCXCV.	Corpus Sancti Cutberti venit Dunelmiæ
DCCCCXCVI.	èt sedes episcopalis translata est de Lindifarm ad Dunelmiam.[1]
DCCCCXCVII.	
DCCCCXCVIII.	
DCCCCXCIX.	
MILLE.	Johannes XIIII.; Johannes XV.; Johannes XVI.
MI.	
MII.	
MIII.	
MIIII.	
MV.	In Saxonia Majori mirabile inauditum de ducentibus choream nocte Natalis Domini.[2]
MVI.	
MVII.	
MVIII.	
MIX.	Gregorius papa V.
MX.	
MXI.	Johannes papa XVII. Silvester papa III. Iste Silvester prius vocabatur

[1] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

[2] Added in A. by the author. Initials plain.

Cœlestinus. Hic fecit homagium Diabolo; de quo dictum est:

Tartare, pande sinum, tibi mitto[1] nunc resupinum
Hunc Cœlestinum. Tartare, pande sinum.[2]

MXII.

MXIIII. Johannes papa XVIII.; Johannes papa XIX.

MXV.

MXVI.

MXVII.

MXVIII.

MXIX. Sergius papa IIII.

MXX.

MXXI. Benedictus papa VIII.

MXXII.

MXXIII.

MXXIIII.

MXXV.

MXXVI.

MXXVII.

MXXVIII.

MXXIX.

MXXX.

MXXXI.

MXXXII. Johannes papa XX.

MXXXIII.

MXXXIIII. Obiit Robertus dux Normanniæ; successit Willielmus filius ejus puer, qui dictus est Conquæstor Angliæ.

MXXXV. Obiit Knut rex Angliæ, cui successit Haraldus qui putabatur filius ejus, sed falso, ut vulgariter dicebant omnes.

---

[1] *tibi mitto*] tmitto. A.

[2] *Tartare . . . . sinum*] Written as a foot note in A. by the author and referred to its place in the text by a mark.

MXXXVI.
MXXXVII.
MXXXVIII.
MXXXIX. Benedictus X.[1]
MXL.
MXLI.
MXLII. Obiit Hardeknut; successit Edwardus frater ejus. Mortalitas hominum.
MXLIII.
MXLIIII.
MXLV.
MXLVI.
MLXLVII. Mortalitas in Anglia et ignis aereus, quæ dicitur wildfire, blada combussit in pago Derebiæ.[2]
MXLVIII.
MXLIX.
ML.
MLI. Silvester IIII.; Gregorius VI. Iste emit papatum a prædicto Benedicto duo milia librarum, unde ab Henrico im-
MLII. peratore filio Conradi de papatu ejectus est.[3]
MLIII. Clemens II.; Damasus II.; Leo X.
MLIIII.
MLV.
MLVI. Hermannus capellanus regis Edwardi post episcopus Wiltoniæ campanile Malmesburiæ suis sumptibus construxit; qui petiit a rege sedem episcopalem ibidem statuere; rex non concessit.[4]

[1] *x.*] Written *ix.* in A., the *i* erased.

[2] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

[3] *unde . . . ejectus est*] Written in A. opposite A.D. 1055 and 1056 and joined by a line in rubric to the former part of the entry.

[4] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain. It is written opposite A.D. 1057, but is referred to A.D. 1056 by a line.

MLVII.	
MLVIII.	Victor papa II.
MLIX.	
MLX.	Stephanus papa; Benedictus X., obiit Henricus rex Francorum, successit Philippus filius ejus.[1]
MLXI.	Nicholaus papa II.
MLXII.	
MLXIII.	Alexander papa II.
MLXIIII.	
MLXV.	
MLXVI.	Obiit Edwardus rex. Eodem anno capta est Anglia a Willielmo Bastard dictus Conquæstor.
MLXVII.[2]	
MLXVIII.	
MLXIX.	
MLXX.	
MLXXI.	
MLXXII.	
MLXXIII.	
MLXXIIII.	Gregorius papa VII.
MLXXV.	
MLXXVI.	
MLXXVII.	
MLXXVIII.	
MLXXIX.	
MLXXX.	
MLXXXI.	
MLXXXII.	Conflictio inter abbatem Thurstanum Glastoniæ et Conventum.[3]
MLXXXIII.	
MLXXXIIII.	Obiit Matildis Anglorum regina IIII. nonas Novembris.

[1] *obiit . . . . filius ejus*] Written in A. opposite A.D. 1064 and 1065 and referred to A.D. 1060 by a mark.

[2] Nota. in marg. A.

[3] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

MLXXXV.	
MLXXXVI.	Obiit Gregorius papa.
MLXXXVII.	Obiit Willielmus Conquæstor; successit Willielmus filius.
MLXXXVIII.	Victor papa II.; successit Urbanus.
MLXXXIX.	Obiit Lanfrancus archiepiscopus.
MXC.	Osmundus episcopus misit canonicos sæculares in ecclesia Sarum.
MXCI.	
MXCII.	Dedicatio ecclesiæ Sarum.
MXCIII.	Anselmus est consecratus archiepiscopus.
MXCIIII.	
MXCV.	Hoc anno visa est multitudo stellarum cadere; inde sequitur mortalitas hominum.
MXCVI.	
MXCVII.	
MXCVIII.	Capta est Antiochia a Saracenis.
MXCIX.	Capta est Ierusalem a Christianis. Osmundus episcopus Sarum obiit. Obiit Urbanus papa; successit Paschalis papa II.
MC.	
MCI.	
MCII.	
MCIII.	
MCIIII.	Hoc anno apparuerunt IIII. circuli circa solem de diversis coloribus quasi picti et mirabiliter implicati et ostensi, ad hoc signum[1]
MCV.	
MCVI.	
MCVII.	
MCVIII.	Obiit Philippus rex Francorum; successit Lodowicus filius ejus.
MCIX.	Anselmus archiepiscopus obiit.

[1] The annuli in the diagram are alternately red and blue, the central disc being red.

MCX.	Cometa apparuit in Junio mense.[1]
MCXI.	Parka de Wodestoke primo facta est de terris hominum prope habitantium per regem Henricum Seniorem, prosequente cum filio suo.[2]
MCXII.	
MCXIII.	
MCXIIII.	Hoc anno ita sicca est Tamisia quod tota aqua transivit inter duas columnas pontis Londoniæ et pueris permeabilis erat.
MCXV.	
MCXVI.	
MCXVII.	
MCXVIII.	Gelasius papa II. Obiit Matildis Secunda regina.
MCXIX.	Calixtus papa II.
MCXX.	Villielmus filius regis Henrici mersi sunt in mari cum multitudine magna procerum.
MCXXI.	
MCXXII.	
MCXXIII.	
MCXXIIII.	Honorius papa II.
MCXXV.	In Anglia apud villam Gellich fons ebullivit sanguinem a secunda feria usque ad horam IX. sabbati.
MCXXVI.	
MCXXVII.	Episcopi et barones juraverunt fidelitatem filiæ regis Angliæ. Et comes Flandriæ a suis occiditur.
MCXXVIII.	
MCXXIX.	Innocentius papa II.
MCXXX.	

[1] A figure is annexed in A.

[2] Added in A. by the author, and referred to the preceding year by a mark. Initial plain.

MCXXXI.	
MCXXXII.	
MCXXXIII.	Hoc anno fuit eclipsis solis IIII. nonas Augusti.[1]
MCXXXIIII.	
MCXXXV.	Obiit Henricus rex Anglorum; successit Stephanus nepos ejus.
MCXXXVI.	
MCXXXVII.	
MCXXXVIII.	
MCXXXIX.	Rogerus episcopus Sarum obiit.
MCXL.	
MCXLI.	Hoc anno captus est Stephanus rex Anglorum IIII. nonas Februarii in bello apud Lincolniam.
MCXLII.	
MCXLIII.	[C]œlestinus papa II.
MCXLIIII.	Lucius papa II.
MCXLV.	Eugenius papa III., qui et Bernardus.
MCXLVI.	Tempore Lucii papæ fuit aer corruptus, et in Anglia fames et mortalitas.
MCXLVII.	Eclipsis solis VI. kalendas Novembris.[1]
MCXLVIII.	
MCXLIX.	
MCL.	
MCLI.	Pax Angliæ facta est per copulationem regis Stephani et filiam imperatoris Henrici.
MCLII.	
MCLIII.	Anastasius papa IIII.
MCLIIII.	Adrianus papa IIII. Obiit Stephanus; successit Henricus dux Normanniæ. Terræ motus factus est per totam Burgundiam XV. kalendas Februarii.
MCLV.	

[1] Figures are annexed in A. The second entry is written in that MS. opposite A.D. 1148, and referred to A.D. 1147 by a line.

MCLVI.
MCLVII.
MCLVIII.
MCLIX. Obiit Adrianus papa. Orto schismate in ecclesia duo papæ consecratæ sunt, unus Victor antedictus Octovianus, alter Alexander, ante Rolandus.
MCLX.
MCLXI.
MCLXII. Alexander papa III. in Turonis concilium celebravit.
MCLXIII.
MCLXIIII. Rex Henricus fecit dedicari ecclesiam de Radyng per T. archiepiscopum. Eodem anno exivit de Anglia T. archiepiscopus.
MCLXV.
MCLXVI.
MCLXVII. Henricus II. dedit duci Saxoniæ filiam suam Matildam.
MCLXVIII.
MCLXIX.
MCLXX. Henricus II. fecit coronari Henricum III. filium suum in die Sancti Blasii.
MCLXXI. Hoc anno Sanctus Thomas Cantuariæ exulatur.[1]
MCLXXII.
MCLXXIII. Multitudo Francorum venit in Angliam.
MCLXXIIII. Hoc anno facta est dissensiò inter reges Henricum patrem et filium, et junior fuit rex.
MCLXXV.
MCLXXVI.
MCLXXVII. Ricardus Strangboghe obiit in Hybernia.
MCLXXVIII. Eclipsis solis idus Septembris ab hora tertia usque ad horam sextam.[2]

[1] *exulatur*] A slip of the pen for *martyrizatur*.

[2] A figure is annexed in A.

MCXXLIX.

MCLXXX. Hoc anno mutatur moneta per regem Henricum.

MCLXXXI. Lucius papa III. Obiit Lodowicus rex Franciæ.

MCLXXXII.

MCLXXXIII. Obiit Henricus rex filius regis Henrici.

MCLXXXIIII. Obiit Jocelinus episcopus.

MCLXXXV. Urbanus papa III. Eclipsis solis circa horam nonam.[1]

MCLXXXVI.

MCLXXXVII. Lignum Sanctæ Crucis a Paganis capitur.[2]

MCLXXXVIII. Reges Angliæ et Franciæ crucem ceperunt ad Terram Sanctam.

MCLXXXIX. Obiit Henricus. Regnat Ricardus filius ejus. Fames et mortalitas. Obiit Baldwinus archiepiscopus in terra Ierusalem.

MCXC.

MCXCI. Eclipsis solis IX. kalendas Julii hora VI., luna XXVII.[1]

MCXCII. Ricardus rex captus est in Almannia.

MCXCIII. Redemptus est rex Ricardus et ab Almannia liberatus.

MCXCIIII.

MCXCV.

MCXCVI.

MCXCVII. Ualterus Mape præcentor Lincolniæ factus est archidiaconus monasterii ejusdem.[3]

MCXCVIII.

MCXCIX. Obiit rex Ricardus ; cui successit Johannes frater ejus. Ricardus enim IX. annos regnavit. Johannes die Ascensionis, scilicet, VI. kalendas Junii, apud Westmonasterium coronatur.

[1] Figures annexed in A.

[2] A cross in rubric is annexed in A.

[3] Added in A. by the author in much blacker ink than the neighbouring entries. Initial illuminated.

MCC.	
MCCI.	
MCCII.	
MCCIII.	
MCCIIII.	Normannia amissa est.
MCCV.	Obiit Robertus Abbas Malmesburiæ.
MCCVI.	Henricus filius Johannis natus est kalendas Octobris. Eodem anno Stephanus consecratus est archiepiscopus.
MCCVII.	
MCCVIII.	Interdictum Angliæ in Vigilia Annuntiationis; quod tunc fuit feria II. in Passione Domini; quod duravit annos VI., menses III., dies XVII.[1]
MCCIX.	
MCCX.	
MCCXI.	
MCCXII.	Anselmus archiepiscopus obiit. Hic multa scripsit.[2]
MCCXIII.	
MCCXIIII.	Relaxatum est Interdictum VI. nonas Julii.
MCCXV.	Barones ceperunt Londoniam. Johannes rex concessit castrum Malmesburiæ ad dirimendum cuidam abbati nomine Waltero Loryng.[3]
MCCXVI.	Obiit Johannes rex die Sanctæ Lucæ Evangelistæ.
MCCXVII.	
MCCXVIII.	
MCCXIX.	
MCCXX.	Translatio Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi. Et Henricus filius Johannis portavit coronam Londoniis.

[1] *quod duravit . . . . dies XVII.*] Added in A. by the author in blacker ink.

[2] Added in A. in the same hand and ink as the entry for A.D. 56.

[3] *Johannes . . . Loryng*] Written in A. opposite A.D. 1217–1219, and referred to A.D. 1215 by a line. A rude figure of a castle is annexed in rubric.

MCCXXI.	
MCCXXII.	Cometa magnos habens radios, et ventus validus trina vice, quilibet fortior alio, et quartus die Sancti Marcelli aliis incomparabilis.[1]
MCCXXIII.	
MCCXXIIII.	
MCCXXV.	
MCCXXVI.	
MCCXXVII.	Obiit Honorius III. Successit Gregorius IX.
MCCXXVIII.	
MCCXXIX.	
MCCXXX.	Edmundus consecratus est archiepiscopus.
MCCXXXI.	
MCCXXXII.	
MCCXXXIII.	
MCCXXXIIII.	
MCCXXXV.	
MCCXXXVI.	
MCCXXXVII.	
MCCXXXVIII.	
MCCXXXIX.	Eclipsis solis a quarta usque decimam.[2] Item natus est Edwardus filius Henrici.
MCCXL.	
MCCXLI.	Obiit Sanctus Edmundus archiepiscopus XII. kalendas Decembris. Eclipsis solis VIII. idus Martii. Item sol denigratur.[3]
MCCXLII.	
MCCXLIII.	

[1] A figure of a comet is annexed in A.

[2] A figure is annexed in A.

[3] Two figures, one of a partially eclipsed, the other of a totally obfuscated, sun are annexed in A.

MCCXLIIII.

MCCXLV. Frēdericus privatur ab imperatorio.

MCCXLVI. Terræ motus horribilis in v. regionibus.

MCCXLVII.

MCCXLVIII. Pridie ante Vigiliam Natalis Domini terræ motus accidit. Hoc anno captus est rex Franciæ et Willielmus Longespei occisus in terra Ægypti.

MCCXLIX.

MCCL.

MCCLI. Obiit Fredericus quondam imperator.

MCCLII. Magna siccitas per totum mundum.

MCCLIII. Obiit Robertus Lincolniensis episcopus.

MCCLIIII. Alexander papa IIII. Edwardus filius Henrici duxit uxorem in Hyṣpannia.

MCCLV.

MCCLVI. Eclipsis solis III. kalendas Jaṅuarii a tertia usque nonam.[1]

Ricardus comes Cornubiæ factus est imperator Almanniæ. Eo anno Dominica proxima ante Purificationem ante auroram fuit terræ motus, ventus magnus, pluvia per totam hyemem a festo Omnium Sanctorum usque ad Pentecostem.

MCCLVII. Guerra mota est inter regem Henricum et Leulinum filium Griffini.

MCCLVIII. Hoc anno apparuit luna sanguineo rubore perfusa nocte Sancti Dunstani per dimidiam horam de hujusmodi crepusculo denigrata per horam integram.[2]

MCCLIX. Item dedicatur ecclesia Sarum per archiepiscopum Bonefacium die Sancti Mi-

[1] A figure is annexed in A.

[2] Two figures, one of a red moon, one of a moon annularly eclipsed (a physical impossibility), are annexed in A.

chaelis in præsentia regis et reginæ. Petrus de Ordine Prædicatorum martyrizatur.

MCCLX. Omne genus arborum circa Purificationem fronduerunt et circa Pascha fructus dederunt.

MCCLXI.

MCCLXII.

MCCLXIII.

MCCLXIIII. Factum est bellum de Lews II. idus Maii, ubi Henricus rex captus est et Edwardus filius ejus. Rex ivit quo voluit, filius ejus missus est ad castrum Herfordiæ per Symonem de Monte Forti comitem.

MCCLXV. Edwardus filius Henrici evasit de custodia Simonis de Monte Forti ad castrum de Wigmor.

MCCLXVI. Bellum apud Chesterfeld. Et obsidio castri de Kenelworth. Urbanus papa IIII. moritur Auinoinæ.[1]

MCCLXVII.

MCCLXVIII.

MCCLXIX. Terræ motus factus est in crastino Sanctæ Luciæ.

MCCLXX.

MCCLXXI.

MCCLXXII. Obiit rex Henricus, qui regnaverat annos LVI. et XX. dies. Clemens papa IIII. obiit apud Viterbiam. Obiit Ricardus rex Romanorum fundator domus de Haylos et ibidem sepultus IIII. nonas Aprilis. Gregorius papa X. consecratur.[2]

---

[1] *Urbanus . . . Auinoinæ*] Added in A. by the author in fainter ink.

[2] *obiit Ricardus . . . consecratur*] Added in A. by the author. Initial rudely illuminated.

MCCLXXIII.	
MCCLXXIIII.	
MCCLXXV.	
MCCLXXVI.	Gregorius obiit apud Arestum; successit Innocentius V.; hic sedit menses v., dies II., et mortuus est Romæ. Cui successit Adrianus V. Eo defuncto successit Johannes XX., omnes in uno anno.
MCCLXXVII.	Nicholaus III. consecratur in papam.[1]
MCCLXXVIII.	
MCCLXXIX.	[R]ex Edwardus fecit monetam novam, denarium, obolum, et quadrantem.
MCCLXXX.	Martinus papa consecratur.[2]
MCCLXXXI.	
MCCLXXXII.	Obiit Thomas episcopus Herfordiæ et Lewlinus occisus est.
MCCLXXXIII.	Edwardus de Karnaruan natus est. Sanctus Willielmus Eboracensis translatus est.[3]
MCCLXXXIIII.	
MCCLXXXV.	Martinus moritur, et Honorius IIII. papa efficitur.[4]
MCCLXXXVI.	Moritur Honorius, et Nicholaus IIII. papa consecratur.[4]
MCCLXXXVII.	Eclipsis lunæ idus Augusti.[5]
MCCLXXXVIII.	Frumentum venditur quarterium pro XII. denariis.
MCCLXXXIX.	
MCCXC.	Exulati sunt Judæi ab Anglia.

[1] *Greyorius . . . papam*] Added in A. by the author in darker ink.

[2] *Martinus . . . . consecratur*] Added in A. by the author in darker ink.

[3] *Sanctus . . . . . translatus est*] Written in A. by the author about the same time as the last three additions. The initial *S* appears to have been placed upon a letter now effaced.

[4] Written in A. by the author about the same time as the last addition.

[5] A figure is annexed in A.

MCCXCI.	
MCCXCII.	Nicholaus papa moritur.[1]
MCCXCIII.	
MCCXCIIII.	Cœlestinus V. fit papa. Cœlestinus obiit, et Bonefacius VIII. consecratur.[1]
MCCXCV.	Thomas Turbeluyl suspensus est Londoniis. Willielmus de Colern abbas Malmesburiæ obiit.[2]
MCCXCVI.	Frumenti summa pro XX. solidis; vinum et cera defecit, quod fere non potuit missis deservire.
MCCXCVII.	Ordinatio regis in parliamento quod religiosi non emerent neque venderent sine regis licentia speciali. Bellum apud Faukyrk.[2]
MCCXCVIII.	
MCCXCIX.	
MCCC.	Thomas de Broþerton natus est comes Marescall'.
MCCCI.	Edmundus de Wodestok natus est comes de Kent.
MCCCII.	
MCCCIII.	Obiit Bonefacius VIII.; successit Benedictus XI.[3]
MCCCIIII.	Obsidio castelli de Striuelyn et eodem anno regi redditum est. Benedictus papa obiit.[4]
MCCCV.	Brailbaston[5] factum est per Angliam. Et Willielmus Walais distractus et suspensus.
MCCCVI.	

[1] Written in A. by the author about the same time as the last addition.

[2] Nota. in marg. A.

[3] Added in A. by the author.

[4] *Benedictus . . . . obiit*] Added in A. by the author in very black ink and a very careless hand.

[5] *Brailbaston*] corr. Trailbaston.

MCCCVII. Obiit rex Edwardus filius regis Henrici; in crastino Translationis Sancti Thomæ Martyris. Eodem anno in die Sancti Mathiæ coronatus est Edwardus II. a Conquæstu, et eodem anno desponsavit Isabellam filiam regis Franciæ XXV. die Januarii, et XX. die Februarii. Londoniis ambo coronati sunt. Edwardus II.

MCCCVIII.

MCCCIX.

MCCCX.

MCCCXI.

MCCCXII. Petrus de Gauerston decollatus est juxta Warwyk. Eodem anno Eedwardus III. natus est apud Wyndesor die Sancti Bricii. Edwardus III.

MCCCXIII.

MCCCXIIII. Bellum apud Bannokbourn ubi ceciderunt Angli. Bannokbourn.

MCCCXV.

MCCCXVI.

MCCCXVII.

MCCCXVIII.

MCCCXIX.

MCCCXX. Magna fames in universo mundo, sed in Anglia per II. annos et summa frumenti pro XL. solidis. Fames.

MCCCXXI.

MCCCXXII. Decollatus est Thomas comes Lancastriæ in Quadragesima, prima hebdomada, die Lunæ, litera Dominicalis, C.

MCCCXXIII.

MCCCXXIIII.

MCCCXXV.

MCCCXXVI. Edwardus III. a Conquæstu coronatus est, ætate circiter XV. annorum, vivente patre suo. Eodem anno venit

pater ejus ad castrum de Berkley et hoc anno ibi mortuus est.

MCCCXXVII.

MCCCXXVIII.

MCCCXXIX. Edmundus de Wodestok decollatus est apud Wyntoniam. Hoc anno obsessi sunt Scotti in episcopatu Dunelmiæ apud Stanhoppark.[1]

MCCCXXX.

MCCCXXXI.

MCCCXXXII. . . . . Bellum de Gledemore.

MCCCXXXIII. Captus est Rogerus de Mortuomari apud Notingham.

MCCCXXXII[II] Bellum apud Halidounhille, ubi ceciderunt Scotti. Edwardus le Bailol fecit homagium regi Angliæ in Novo Castro super Tynam die Sanctorum Gervasii et Prothasii.[2]

MCCCXXXV. Johannes papa XXII. obiit. In Adventu.[3]

MCCCXXXVI

MCCCXXXVII.

MCCCXXXVIII.

MCCCXXXIX. Obsidio villæ de Torney.

MCCCXL.

MCCCXLI.

MCCCXLII. [H]oc anno papa Benedictus XII. obiit in Decembri; cui successit Clemens VI., hic sedit annos X., menses III., dies XX.[4]

MCCCXLIII.

MCCCXLIIII.

MCCCXLV.

[1] *Hoc anno . . . , Stanhoppark*] Added in A. by the author.

[2] *Edwardus . . . . . Prothasii*] Added in A. by the author.

[3] *In Adventu*] Added in A. by the author.

[4] Added in A. by the author. Initial blank. The words *Benedictus XII.*, *Clemens*, and *x.* are on erasures in A.

MCCCXLVI. Hoc anno VII. kalendas Septembris fuit bellum apud Cressi. Eodem anno captus est David le Bruys rex Scociæ apud Dunelmiam die Sanctæ Lucæ Evangelistæ.

MCCCXLVII.

MCCCXLVIII.

MCCCXLIX. Symon de Aumeney factus est abbas Malmesburiæ die [ ][1]

MCCCL. t[homa]s [de] br[omh]am factus est monachus die Sanctorum [et] litera Dominicalis B. Annus gratiæ.

MCCCLI.

MCCCLII. Hoc anno obiit Clemens VI.; cui successit Innocentius.[2]

MCCCLIII.

MCCCLIIII. Hoc anno Edwardus IIII. a Conquæstu, tunc Princeps Angliæ, naves ascendit apud Plomoþ et transfretavit apud Bordewes in die Assumptioni[s] Beatæ Mariæ cum parva manu Anglicorum secum transeuntium, et partem terræ Franciæ equitavit, combussit, et devastavit.[3]

MCCCLV. Hoc anno XIX. die Septembris Edwardus princeps Angliæ a Conquæstu IIII., nondum rex, juxta villam de Peiters in bello mortali cepit Johannem dictum regem Franciæ cum filio suo Philippo, et plures magnates, comites, et barones incarceravit, et plures occidit, et Johannem regem usque Burdews

---

[1] The date is left blank in A.

[2] Added in A. by the author. Initial plain.

[3] Referred to A.D. 1354 in A. by a line.

conduxit et ipsum ibi per aliquot tempus in custodia detinuit.

Eodem anno circa Adventum papa misit literas suas Edwardo principi pro pace inter regna facienda.

Eodem anno XXVI. die mensis Aprilis celebratum est parliamentum Londoniis.[1]

MCCCLVI. Hoc anno Edwardus IIII. a Conquæstu tunc princeps Angliæ de Burdews venit in Angliam cum Johanne rege Franciæ et Philippo filio suo et multis aliis captis, inter quos unus miles famosus adductus est nomine Bursigaude, et Londoniis omnes adducti sunt.

Hoc anno venerunt tres cardinales Londoniis pro pace tractanda inter regna, quorum nomina sunt hæc: Cardinalis dictus Vrgel, alius cardinalis dictus Peragor, et III. primo fuit cancellarius regis Franciæ, post ad rogatum regis factus est cardinalis.

MCCCLVII. Hoc anno rex et regina cum multis de Francia tenuerunt Natale Domini apud castellum de Marleber'. Et in Circumcisione Domini versi sunt ad Bristolliam et ibi facta sunt hastiludia qualia non sunt ante visa.[2]

---

[1] This entry and that for the preceding year are written in A. in the same character and ink by the author. Five erasures of annual numerals follow the numeral MCCCLV. in A. at the side of the entry and just below it; on the last of these the numeral MCCCLVI. is written.

[2] The entries for A.D. 1356, and A.D. 1357 are written in A. in different ink from the two last entries by the author. The latter is in continuation of the former but is referred to A.D. 1357 by a line. The character of the first paragraph of the former is slightly different from that of the second paragraph and of the latter, and both are clearly distinguished from that of the entries for A.D. 1354, and A.D. 1355.

Eodem anno parliamentum factum est Londoniis nonas Februarii cum multis extraneis quale non est ante visum ad centum annos.

MCCCLVIII. Hoc anno facta sunt hastiludia apud Wyndelesor, ubi interfuerunt Franci cum Anglis in ludendo; et ibi læsus est dux Lancastriæ in crure.

Eodem anno morati sunt rex et regina per totam fere æstatem apud Marleberg' et Cosham, ubi spatula reginæ divulsa est a junctura equitando venatum et de equo suo cadendo; pro quo longo tempore infirmabatur. Eodem anno XI. kalendas Septembris, hoc est die Sanctorum Thimothei et Simphoriani, Isabella regina, mater regis Edwardi Tertii a Conquæstu, obiit. Dicunt quidam quod, accepta purgatione a medico quam ipsa cupierat et morbo invalescente, per unum diem languente mortua est.[1]

Eodem anno sepulta est Londoniis ad Fratres Minores XXVII. die mensis Novembris honorifice, in præsentia regis et cæterorum procerum regni, tam clericorum quam laicorum; archiepiscopo Cantuariæ eam sepeliente.[2]

Eodem anno in octonis Nati[vi]tatis Beatæ Mariæ ingressi sunt viri religiosi monasterium suum apud Hedendoun in

[1] The portion of the entry for A.D. 1358 which ends here is written in A. in the same ink and character as the entry for the preceding year.

[2] This middle portion of the entry for A.D. 1358 is written in A. in a character and ink clearly distinguishable both from those of the previous and those of the concluding portion.

episcopatu Sarum,[1] qui juxta vocabulum "boni homines" dicti sunt.

MCCCLIX. Hoc anno dominus Henricus dux Lancastriæ marinum iter apud Sandwicum versus Franciam assumpsit cum trescentis XXVII. navibus vicesimo septimo die mensis Septembris, hoc est, Sanctorum Cosmi et Damiani. Eodem anno obsedit villam muratam civitatem fortissimam nominatam Mount Eider.

Eodem anno rex Edwardus III. a Conquæstu transfretavit et venit Kalesiam cum exercitu suo XXI.[2] die mensis Octobris cum VII. militibus secrete. Et in nocte sequenti rediit in Angliam.

MCCCLX. Hoc anno rex transfretavit in Franciam XXVII. die mensis Octobris, litera Dominicalis F. cum magno exercitu et in die Commemorationis Animarum vexilla displicuit super Franciam; quo anno in Francia obiit comes Marchiæ et ibidem est sepultus.

MCCCLXI. Hoc anno obiit nobilis dux Lancastriæ Henricus filius Henrici comitis Lancastriæ in Quadragesima et ad Leicestriam est sepultus.

Eodem anno in Quadragesima obiit Johannes de Bewchamp miles generosus; hic fuit frater comitis de Warwynk.[3]

---

[1] *apud . . . . Sarum*] Added in marg. A. and referred to its place in the text by a caret.

[2] *XXI*] On an erasure in A.

[3] The character in which the entries for A.D. 1359, 1360, and 1361, are written is the same and different from that of the concluding portion of the entry for A.D. 1358. The ink exhibits considerable variations, but they are not conterminous with the sentences of the entries.

MCCCLXII. Hoc anno obiit Johanna regina Scociæ, soror regis Edwardi a Conquæstu Tertii, in Septembri.

Eodem anno XI. die mensis Septembris, hoc est die Sanctorum Prothi et Jacincti, obiit Innocentius VI., a Petro CXCI. Cui successit Urbanus V., electus in vigilia Omnium Sanctorum. Innocentius obiit. Urbanus consecratur.

Obiit Symon abbas Malmesburiæ et Walterus de Cam factus est abbas die Sancti Quintini, litera Dominicalis C.[1]

MCCCLXIII. Hoc anno obiit episcopus Bathoniæ, Radulphus de Schrobesbur' dictus, mense Septembri; cui successit Johannes Barnet tunc episcopus Wigorniæ.

[E]odem anno factum est parliamentum magnum Londoniis.

Eodem anno venit rex Franciæ Londoniis stante parliamento.

Eodem anno factum est magnum gelu in hyeme, durante per XII. septimanas.[2]

MCCCLXIIII. Hoc anno obiit Johannes rex Franciæ Londoniis.[3]

---

[1] The entry of the death of Queen Joan in this year is written in a character and ink different from those of the preceding year and of the remainder of the present year.

[2] The ink and character in which the events of this year are written are different from those of the preceding entry and the same for the whole year except but one sentence which is written in blacker ink.

[3] This entry is written in much paler ink than the preceding entries.

INDEX AUCTORIS.

l. 1.	Alfraganus de stellis	d. 1.
l. 1.	Alfraganus de luna	d. 1.
l. 2.	Alphæi filius Jacobus	d. 2.
l. 2.	Anastasia martyrizatur	b. 8.
l. 1.	De animantibus	b. 2.
l. 1.	De arboribus	b. 2.
l. 1.	Adam formatus est	d. 4.
l. 1.	Adam cognovit uxorem	b. 5.
l. 1.	De annis Matussale	b. 6.
l. 1.	Archa Noe facta est	b. 7.
l. 1.	De annulo primo	b. 10.
l. 1.	Abraham mortuus est	c. 10.
l. 1.	Aiiram genuit Moysen	a. 11.
l. 1.	Aaron obiit	d. 11.
l. 1.	Ad judices corrigendos versus metricus	b. 18.
l. 1.	Archa Testamenti absconsa est	c. 18.
l. 1.	Aristoteles audivit Platonem	a. 19.
l. 1.	Alexander Magnus nascitur	b. 19.
l. 2.	Antonius abbas obiit	b. 9.
l. 1.	Anna nupsit Joachim	b. 20.
l. 1.	Augustus imperator regnavit	d. 20.
l. 1.	Agnus locutus est lingua humana	c. 21.
l.[1]	. . . . .	
l.[1]	. . . . .	

[1] The remainder of these entries is erased in A.

l. 2. Athanasius abbas et multi alii a. 10.
l. 2. Antiphonæ primo cantantur a. 11.
l. 2. Arnianus fecit sequentias et antiphonas a. 13.
l. 2. Arthurus rex obiit a. 14.
l. 2. Aldelmo datur situm monasterii Malmesburiæ b. 18.
l. 2. Adrianus papa natus de Anglia b. 33.
l. 2. Agnus Dei ordinatur cantari d. 18.
l. 2. Aldelmus moritur d. 19.
l. 2. Audoenus moritur b. 20.
l. 2. Athelstanus regnavit b. 26.
l. 3. Alanus de prole Japhet c. 2.
l. 3. Atta Laurencia uxor Pastoris a. 4.
l. 3. Acquila primus interpres Legis Moisi a. 9.
l. 3. Ambrosius hymnos fecit d. 14.
l. 3. Augustinus convertitur ad fidem rectam d. 14.
l. 4. Asia c. 4.
l. 4. Arabia d. 7.
l. 4. Albania b. 10.
l. 4. Amazonia b. 11.
l. 4. Africa b. 12.
l. 4. Alemannia d. 16.
l. 4. Apulia d. 27.
l, 4. Arragonia a. 31.
l. 5. Agamemnon occiditur a. 2.
l. 5. Arviragus occidit Hamonem c. 16.
l. 5. Albanus occiditur a Paganis d. 19.
l. 5. Arthurus rex occidit imperatorem a. 40.
l. 5. Arthurus occidit gigantem d. 34.
. 2. Anglia interdicta est a. 35.

l. 2. Bonefacius Quartus obtinuit Pantheon a Phoca[1] c. 16.
l. 4. Britones quanto tempore regnavere in Anglia d. 46.
l. 3. Bragmanni ad Alexandrum regem[2] a. 42.
l. 5. Brutus fugatur ab Italia c. 2.
l. 5. Idem congreditur cum Pandraso rege a. 3.
l. 2. Barnabas Christum prædicat d. 3.
l. 2. Basilius episcopus obiit c. 9.
l. 3. Babilonia primatum tenuit c. 1.
l. 2. Bellum de Chesterfeld d. 35.
l. 2. Brandanus mare navigat b. 15.
l. 3. Brigida obiit in Scocia d. 16.
l. 3. Beda claret in Anglia d. 19.
l. 4. Boemia regio d. 22.
l. 4. Brabanciæ provincia d. 27.
l. 4. Burgundia d. 27.
l. 5. Brutus congreditur cum Goffar c. 4.
l. 5. Brutus obiit b. 6.
l. 5. Belinus et Brennius regnaverunt c. 10.
l. 5. Belinus fugavit Brennium b. 11.
l. 2. Bernardus de Beata Virgine b. 1.
l. 5. Britones credunt iterum dominari a. 46.
l. 4. Birstanus episcopus Wiltoniæ obiit a. 40.

l. 3. Capitolium construitur a. 35.
l. 4. Civitates antiquæ in Anglia a. 46.

---

[1] *Pantheon a Phoca*] On an erasure in A.

[2] The first three entries under the letter B. have been added in fainter ink by the author in MS. A.

l. 4.	Comitatus in Anglia	a. 47.
l. 5.	Cadwaladrus plangit miseriam Britonum[1]	b. 45.
l. 5.	Cadwaladrus Romam adiit	a. 46.
l. 1.	Carmentis Latinas invenit	d. 13.
l. 1.	Cambises docuit judicem juste judicare	b. 18.
l. 1.	Cambises regnat	a. 18.
l. 2.	Cecilia passa est	d. 6.
l. 2.	Cereus Paschæ primo fit	d. 17.
l. 2.	Campanile Malmesburiæ fit	b. 30.
l. 2.	Clara minorissa obiit	b. 35.
l. 2.	Ciprianus et Justina martyrizantur	a. 9.
l. 2.	Castellum Malmesburiæ fit	c. 20.
l. 3.	Columbanus prædicat in Hibernia	c. 19.
l. 4.	Cedar regio	a. 9.
l. 4.	Cappadocia	d. 10.
l. 4.	Ciprus insula	b. 25.
l. 4.	Campania	b. 28.
l. 3.	Crux Sancta capitur in Jerusalem	a. 27.
l. 5.	Corinæus luctatur cum gigante	c. 5.
l. 5.	Corinæus obiit	d. 6.
l. 5.	Castrum Puellarum fit in Albania	c. 7.
l. 5.	Cordilla filia regis loquitur patri	b. 8.
l. 5.	Cassibalan vincitur ab imperatore	d. 15.
l. 5.	Colchestre conditur a rege Coil	c. 18.
l. 1.	Cato Polistor qui et Grammaticus	c. 20.
l. 2.	Cartusiæ ordo incepit	c. 31.
l. 2.	Capa Domini inconsutilis invenitur.	a. 33.
l. 2.	Chronica Glastoniæ	a. 2.
l. 3.	Clunacense monasterium construitur	a. 40.[2]
l. 1.	Crucis Christi oppinio antiquorum	c. 28.[3]

[1] The first four entries under the letter C. are written in four different forms of the author's hand in A., not coinciding with the character of the other entries under the same letter.

[2] Added in A. in blacker ink than the preceding entries.

[3] Added in A. in much paler ink than the preceding entries.

l. 1.	Dies primus sæculi	c. 1.
l. 1.	De annis Matussale	b. 6.
l. 1.	Dominus descendit ut videret turrim	c. 8.
l. 1.	Davit rex moritur	d. 14.
l. 1.	Daniel propheta claret	c. 17.
l. 1.	Dialectica invenitur	d. 18.
l. 2.	Dominus jacet in sepulchro	c. 3.
l. 2.	Dies sequitur noctem quem prius antecedebat	b. 3.
l. 2.	Dedicatur ecclesia Sarum	b. 35.
l. 2.	Dyonisius cum apostolis fuit in obitu Matris Domini	a. 5.
l. 2.	David archiepiscopus Meneviæ moritur	a. 14.
l. 2.	Dunelmiæ monasterium conditur	a. 14.
l. 3.	Dormientes septem obierunt	d. 15.
l. 5.	Dianæ Brutus orat	d. 3.
l. 5.	Diana Bruto respondit	a. 4.
l. 5.	Dunwallo Molmuncius regnat	b. 10.
l. 2.	Denarium Sancti Petri primo datur	a. 24.
l. 2.	Dunstanus archiepiscopus obiit	b. 27.
l. 3.	Democritus philosophus obiit	c. 40.
l. 3.	Decreta compilantur a Gratiano monacho	d. 26.[1]
l. 3.	Donatus claret in Roma	c. 13.[2]
l. 4.	Episcoporum sedes in Anglia	b. 51.[2]
l. 2.	Elphes poetissa composuit hymnum: Felix per omnes	d. 13.
l. 5.	Æneas a Troja exulatur	a. 2.
l. 2.	Egwinus episcopus obiit	a. 21.

[1] Added in A. in paler ink and a thicker character than the preceding entries.

[2] Added in A. in darker ink than the preceding entries.

l. 2.	Edgarus rex regnat	d. 26.
l. 2.	Edwardus rex regnat	a. 27.
l. 2.	Edwardus ille martyrizatur	a. 27.
l. 2.	Eleemosina domini papæ	a. 31.
l. 3.	Ægidius abbas floret	b. 22.
l. 5.	Edmundus rex occiditur	c. 47.
l. 1.	Empedocles poeta claruit	d. 18.
l. 5.	Edwardus III. a Conquæstu nascitur	a. 105.
l. 5.	Edwardus II. a Conquæstu coronatus est	b. 105.
l. 5.	Edwardus ille dimisit coronam	a. 105.
l. 5.	Edwardus IIII. natus est	c. 105.
l. 4.	Emma regina purgata est	c. 52.[1]
l. 4.	Fluviorum nomina	b. 3.
l. 5.	Fames in Anglia per II. annos	c. 105.
l. 5.	Frollo pugnavit cum Arthuro	d. 29.
l. 5.	Festum regis Arthuri	b. 30.
l. 5.	Filiæ quinque fuerunt Willielmo Bastard	d. 54.
l. 3.	Fulbertus fecit sequentias	d. 24.
l. 2.	Fons sanguinem ebullivit	b. 32.
l. 4.	Francia quare ita vocatur	a 38.

l. 2.	Gregorius ordinavit letanias	a. 16.[2]
l. 4.	Gallia nomen amisit et Francia vocatur	a. 38.[3]
l. 3.	Glastoniæ conflictio	a. 38.
l. 5.	Gledmore bellum	c. 106.
l. 3.	Gelu magnum factum est	d. 22.
l. 5.	Godricus Danus Angliam debellat	a. 47.
l. 3.	Galienus medicus Romæ claret	c. 9.
l. 3.	Georgius martyrizatur	d. 12.
l. 3.	"Gloria,[4] laus" primo canitur	c. 13.

[1] Added in A. in darker ink than the preceding entries.

[2] Added in A. in fainter ink than the preceding entries.

[3] Added in A. in much blacker ink than the preceding entries; the 8 in 38 has been corrected from a 4.

[4] *Gloria*] A brief erasure follows in A.

l. 5. Gwanus rex Danus cum Britonibus congreditur juxta Calne b. 20.
l. 3. Grando invisa cecidit a. 40.

l. 1. Herodes tres fuerunt b. 25.[1]
l. 4. Hiberniæ ritus et hominum mores b. 40.
l. 4. Hyberniæ mirabilia c. 40.
l. 3. Haraldus rex Danorum baptizatur c. 22.
l. 3. Historia Scholastica compilatur b. 27.
l. 5. Helena nupta est imperatori Romano c. 18.
l. 5. Hengistus et Hors primo venerunt in Britanniam a. 21.
l. 5. Hauelok venit in Angliam c. 44.
l. 5. Haraldus occiditur a Willielmo Bastarde d. 53.
l. 1. Helena rapta est a Trojanis d. 13.
l. 1. Hely judicabat Israel b. 14.
l. 2. Hermannus capellanus Sancti Edwardi Confessoris[2] post episcopus factus de Sonnyaggel fecit campanile Malmesburiæ. b. 30.
l. 5. Halidounhylle bellum d. 105
l. 5. Hunaldi occisi apud Eboracum b. 105.
l. 1. Johannis Baptista Vigilia a. 25.[3]
l. 3. Jejunium quatuor temporum a. 44.[3]
l. 4. Insulæ magnæ c. 35.[3]
l. 1. Joseph ab Arimathea muratur in fine primi libri.[4]
l. 3. Imperium[5] imperatorum Romanorum b. 37.

[1] Added in A. in fainter ink and a finer character than the preceding entries.

[2] *Confessoris*] 9f. A.

[3] Added in A. by the author in different hands and inks from the remaining entries.

[4] The words *Joseph . . . muratur* are written in A. in very black ink, the remainder of the entry, except *libri*, in very faint ink and on an erasure.

[5] *Imperium*] Inppm̃. A.

l. 3. Illusio dæmonis c. 15.
l. 3. Johannes Scottus monachus venit in Franciam a. 23.
l. 1. Initio tu, Domine, terram fundasti c. 1.
l. 1. In tribus assimilantur mundus et homo[1] c. 3.
l. 1. Joseph a fratribus venditur in Ægyptum d. 10.
l. 1. Jacobus dictus est Frater Domini d. 25.
l. 2. Josephat et Barlaham d. 10.
l. 2. Italia primo ad Christum convertitur d. 10.
l. 2. Johannes V. papa qui fuit femina c. 24.
l. 3. Janus primus dominus in Italia d. 2.
l. 5. Johannes rex coronatus est b. 68.
l. 5. Johannes rex moritur b. 73.
l. 2. Innocentius de Contemptu Mundi c. 3.[2]
l. 2. Johannes Baptista concipitur a. 3.[2]
l. 3. Italiæ exordium b. 2.[3]

l. 1. Kymbelinus rex Britonum moritur b. 24.
l. 2. Kalixtus constituit jejunium quatuor temporum d. 6.
l. 3. Katerina passa est d. 12.
l. 3. Karolus Magnus inperavit c. 21.
l. 5. Kayus miles Arthuri apud Cadomum obiit a. 40.

l. 4. Legifer primus in Anglia c. 46.[4]
l. 4. Leges Sancti Edwardi c. 46.[4]
l. 3. Laurentius martyrizatur c. 11.

[1] This and the four preceding entries are written in the same hand and ink in A. by the author. The remaining entries under the letter *I*, except the last three, are in a different hand, which is still no doubt the author's.

[2] Added in A. by the author in the same hand and ink, differing from those of the remaining entries.

[3] Added in A. by the author in a different hand and ink from the remaining entries.

[4] Added in A. by the author in the same hand and ink, differing from those of the remaining entries.

l. 1.	Legis latores ante Incarnationem	d.	18.
l. 2.	Lucia Virgo passa est	b.	9.
l. 2.	Leo II. constituit pacem dari in ecclesia	c.	18.
l. 3.	Lotharius rex Franciæ factus est monachus	d.	22.
l. 5.	Lucius rex Britonum petiit Christianitatem	a.	18.
l. 5.	Lucius imperator misit literas Arthuro	a.	32.
l. 1.	Lyra primo inventa est	c.	13.
l. 2.	Lewes bellum factus est	d.	35.
l. 2.	[Laurentius et Stephanus simul] sepeliuntur	a.	15.[1]
l. 1.	Marcus Curtius interimitur	b.	19.[2]
l. 4.	Montes ardentes nocte et die	c.	17.[2]
l. 1.	Monstruosi nati sunt	a.	4.
l. 1.	Magnitudo mensæ Salomonis	d.	14.
l. 1.	Mirabile in Roma	b.	19.
l. 2.	Maria Mater Domini obiit	b.	1.
l. 1.	Melchisedech putatur filius Noe	c.	9.
l. 2.	Morales Gregorii compilantur	d.	15.
l. 2.	Malmesburia primo fundatur	a.	19.
l. 2.	Matutinæ de Domina privatæ ordinantur	d.	31.
l. 3.	Mirabile	b.	14.
l. 3.	Machometus floret	c.	18.
l. 5.	Merlinus dicit vaticinia	c.	22.
l. 5.	Monasterium Couentreye construitur	b.	52.
l. 5.	Miraculum de Beata Maria Matre Domini	a.	64.
l. 2.	Monstrum in Vasconia	d.	26.
l. 3.	Mirabilia inaudita	c.	5.
l. 3.	Mirabile c. 25 et	a.	40.
l. 5.	Mirabile	a.	100.
l. 5.	Miserabile	d.	101.
l. 2.	Mansio Malmesburiæ datur Sancto Aldhelmo	b.	18.

[1] This entry is added in A. by the author in blacker ink than that of the context; the bracketed part has been erased.

[2] Added in A. by the author in paler ink than that of the context; the initials not coloured.

l. 5. Monasterium Malmesburiæ subvertitur per CC. annos a. 50.
l. 4. Monachus Cestriæ reprobat doctores et auctores c.d. 41.[2]
l. 4. Martilogium compilatur a Beda a.b. 53.[2]
l. 2. Matilda Regina nobilis obiit c. 31.[3]
l. 3. Miraculum Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi et martyris a. 34.[4]
l. 4. Nationes Britanniæ c. 51.
l. 1. Noe archam ingreditur b. 7.
l. 1. Ninus rex primus inventor idolorum d. 8.
l. 5. Normanni regem Haraldum occiderunt d. 53.
l. 2. Nox præcedit diem b. 3.[5]

l. 3. Octovianus Julii Cæsaris nepos et primus imperator b. 6.[6]
l. 1. Oratius poeta claret c. 20.
l. 1. Obstetrices Jesu Christi c. 22.
l. 2. Oswaldus rex occiditur c. 16.
l. 2. Oswinus rex occiditur c. 16.
l. 3. Origenes presbyter claret c. 10.
l. 3. Officiales Romani imperii c. 24.
l. 5. Obolus primo fit d. 81.
l. 3. Parcus de Wodestok includitur c. 3.[7]
l. 1. Pilati nefandi vita c. 26.[7]
l. 3. Platonis gesta d. 40.[8]

[1] Added in A. by the author in a finer hand than that of the context.

[2] Added in A. by the author in the same hand and ink, differing from those of the neighbouring entries.

[3] Added in A. in a paler ink than that of the context by the author,

[4] Added in A. in a darker ink than that of the context by the author.

[5] Added in A. by the author in a character and ink identical with those of the last entry under the letter I; initial not coloured.

[6] Added in A. by the author in fainter ink than the context.

[7] Added in A. by the author in a character different from that of the neighbouring entries, and in darker ink.

[8] Added in A. by the author in a character different from that of the context, and in paler ink.

l. 3.	Pyramis juxta ecclesiam Petri in Roma	b. 36.[1]
l. 1.	Piscibus benedixit Dominus	a. 2.
l. 1.	Pharao regnat	a. 11
l. 1.	Plato philosophus moritur	b. 19.
l. 1.	Philippus Macedo pater Alexandri Magni obiit.	c. 19.
l. 2.	Petrus Apostolus constituit jejunium Quadragesimæ	a. 4.
l. 2.	Paulus primus eremita	b. 9.
l. 2.	Papæ tres simul et semel in Roma	b. 29.[2]
l. 2.	Papæ duo in Roma	c. 33.
l. 3.	Pestilentia	c. 45.[3]
l. 5.	Petrus Comestor	c. 66.
l. 5.	Petrus de Gauerstoun occiditur	a. 105.
l. 5.	Pestilentia	c. 110.[4]
l. 5.	Poyters bellum	a. 111.
l. 2.	Papa qui fuit femina	c. 24.
l. 2.	Patricius archiepiscopus obiit in Hibernia	b. 13.
l. 2.	Pestis Romana	b. 16.
l. 3.	Quatuor temporum ordinatio	a. 44.[5]
l. 2.	Quiricus et Julitta obierunt	a. 7.
l. 2.	Quomodo uniuntur corpora Laurentii et "Stephani"	a. 15.
l. 2.	"Quicumque vult" fit	c. 10.
l. 4.	Ritus gentis Hiberniæ	a. 40.
l. 4.	Ritus gentis Walliæ	a. 42.
l. 4.	Ritus gentis Angliæ	b. 48.
l. 5.	Rex Scociæ fecit homagium regi Angliæ	c. 84.
l. 3.	Rex per pediculos consumptus est	b. 23.
l. 2.	Reges facti sunt monachi	d. 21.

---

[1] Added in A. by the author in a character and ink different from that of the context.

[2] *b.* 29.] On an erasure in A.

[3] 45] The 4 added in A. in pale ink.

[4] 110] The second figure on an erasure in A.

[5] Added in A. by the author in a much blacker ink than that of the context.

l. 2.	Ridiculum vel burda	b. 22.
l. 2.	Rabanus abbas claret	c. 23.
l. 2.	Radynge ecclesia primo dedicatur	d. 33.
l. 2.	Raymundi liber compilatur	d. 34.
l. 3.	Rogationum jejunia ordinantur	a. 16.
l. 3.	Ritus Lombardorum	b. 17.
l. 3.	Rex factus est monachus	b. 20.
l. 5.	Rosmunda obiit	a. 67.
l. 5.	Relaxatio interdicti Angliæ	c. 72.
l. 5.	Rogerus de Mortuo Mari capitur	c. 106.
l. 3.	Romæ exordium	c. 1.
l. 3.	Roma facta est de pluribus civitatibus	b. 35.
l. 3.	Regulæ claustralium conditæ sunt a pluribus.	d. 44.[1]
l. 4.	Rollo primus dux Normanniæ	a. 54.[1]
l. 3.	Sybillæ fuerunt	d. 39.
l. 1.	Sexto die Deus ornavit terram	a. 2.
l. 1.	Sodomiticum peccatum regnavit	c. 6.
l. 2.	"Salve Regina" fit	a. 13.
l. 2.	Stationes Romæ ordinantur	a. 16.
l. 5.	Samuel prophetabat	a. 7.
l. 5.	Sepulchrum Arthuri invenitur	d. 67.
l. 5.	Sanguis pluit	b. 62.
l. 5.	Stanhope parke obsidio	c. 106.
l. 5.	Scluys bellum	c. 107.
l. 4.	Sedes episcoporum in Anglia	a. 49.[2]
l. 1.	Titus et Vespacianus in fine primi[3] libri	
l. 2.	Tiberis fluvius inundavit	d. 15.[4]
l. 5.	Thomas Cantuariensis factus est archiepiscopus	b. 62.

[1] Added in A. by the author in blacker ink than the context.

[2] Added in A. by the author in a different hand from the context and in paler ink.

[3] Written on an erasure in A.

[4] This and the preceding entry are written in a finer hand than the context by the author in A.

l. 5.	Thomas martyrizatur	c. 67.
l. 2.	Tamisia fere exsiccatur	b. 32.
l. 3.	Thebæa legio occubuit	b. 12.
l. 3.	Templariorum Ordo incepit	c. 26.
l. 1.	Turris Babel incepta est	b. 8.
l. 1.	Tyrus rex genuit Pilatum	a. 23.
l. 2.	Timotheus discipulus Pauli occiditur	a. 2.
l. 2.	Tonsura sacerdotum confirmatur	c. 3.
l. 2.	Terræ motus in Britannia Majori	c. 6.
l. 5.	Thomas archiepiscopus translatus est	c. 74.
l. 5.	Templarii capti sunt	a. [1]
l. 5.	Torneye obsidio	d. 107.
l. 2.	Theophilus Petrum incarceravit	d. 3.
l. 5.	Trojæ excidium	d. 1.

l. 2.	Vitus et Modestus obierunt	c. 4.[2]
l. 2.	Valentinus martyrizatur	b. 8.
l. 2.	Vicentius fit martyr	d. 8.
l. 2.	Wlfridus archiepiscopus obiit	a. 20.
l. 3.	Vindicta Dei	b. 5.
l. 3.	Virgilius moritur	c. 6.
l. 5.	Walbroke nominatur	b. 18.
l. 5.	Wodenesdai titulatur	c. 21.
l. 5.	Wassayl, drinkhail	d. 21.
l. 5.	Willielmus Bastard coronatur	d. 53.
l. 4.	Wallia et de ritu ejus	a. 42.
l. 3.	Vaticinium de rege Edwardo a Conquæstu Quarto	c. 38.
l. 4.	Willielmus Conquæstor vendicat Angliam	a. 52.[3]
l. 4.	Vaticinium fratris Johannis	c. 53.[3]

[1] The numeral is erased in A.

[2] The numeral is smeared out in A.

[3] Added by the author in A. subsequently to the remaining entries.

TEMPORA FUNDATIONUM QUORUMDAM MONASTERIORUM.

Foundation of the Monasteries of:—

Glastonbury; Anno Domini LXIII. prima ædificatio monasterii Glastoniæ ex permissione regis Arviragi qui fuit Paganus. Secundo constructa est per Sanctum Aldelmum qui monachos ibidem induxit circa annum Domini sexcentesimum sexagesimum tertium.

Peterborough; Anno Domini DLV. fuit prima constructio monasterii de Burgo.

Malmesbury; Anno Domini DCXXXV. prima ædificatio monasterii Malmesburiæ.

Abingdon; Anno Domini DCLXXXV. constructum est monasterium Abendoniæ.

S. Alban's; Anno Domini DCCXCIII. inceptio monasterii Sancti Albani.

Westminster; Anno Domini DCXII. constructum est Westmonasterium Londoniis.

Hulme; Anno Domini DCXXXIII. ædificatio monasterii de Hulmo.

Christ Church and S. Augustine's, Canterbury; Anno Domini DXCVIII. facta sunt monasteria Christi et Sancti Augustini in Cantuaria sub rege[1]

Winchelcumb; Anno Domini DCCLXXXXVIII. monasterium de Winchelcumbe factum est.

Tewkesbury; Anno Domini DCCLXXXII. monasterium de Teukesburia factum est.

[1] The words "Canciæ Saberto" are here faintly traced in A. by another hand.

Anno Domini DCCXIIII. monasterium de Euesham factum est. EVESHAM;

Anno Domini DCCXXXVII. monasterium Rofense factum est. ROCHESTER;

Anno Domini DCCCCLXXIII. monasterium de þornhei factum est. THORNEY;

Anno Domini MLXVII. constructio abbatiæ de Bello. BATTLE;

Anno Domini MXX. constructum est monasterium Sancti Edmundi. S. EDMUND'S;

Anno Domini MXCII. constructio monasterii de Colcestria. COLCHESTER;

Anno Domini MXCVI. fundatio monasterii Norwici. NORWICH;

Anno Domini MLIX. ecclesia de Snap fundata est. SNAPE;

Anno Domini MCXLVII. monasterium de Fauersham factum est. FAVERSHAM;

Anno Domini MLXIIII. monasterium de Lewes factum est. LEWES;

Anno Domini MCCLXXXV. monasterium de Pershore factum est. PERSHORE;

Anno Domini MCLXXXI. monasterium Glouerniæ factum est. GLOUCESTER.

GENEALOGIA REGUM ANGLIÆ.

Rollo Paganus de Dacia natus lo[n]go tempore debellavit regem Franciæ Karolum Grossum[1] nomine; qui post conversus ad Christi fidem baptizatus est, et filiam regis desponsavit, et sic pace confirmata rex dedit ei quoddam vastum in parte Aquilonari Franciæ et illam Normanniam nominavit et ipsum ducem præfecit; qui post baptismum Robertus nominatus est, qui in Paganismo Rollo dicebatur.

A quo processit { Willielmus Longspey—a quo (a)
Garlok ducissa Aquitanniæ.

(a) {
- Ricardus dux—a quo— { Ricardus dux—a quo (b)
  Robertus dux—a quo (c)
  Willielmus monachus
  Alicia comitissa Burgundiæ
  Secunda comitissa Flandriæ
  Tertia obiit virgo.
- Robertus archiepiscopus Rotomagensis
- Maugerius comes Curbiliensis
- Willielmus comes de Angy
- Emma regina Angliæ uxor regis Ethelredi —de quibus— { Maugerius archiepiscopus Rothomagensis
  Willielmus comes de Archis
  Alredus proditus per Godwinum
  Sanctus Edwardus Confessor et rex
- Hauwisia comitissa Britanniæ—a qua Alanus et Eudo duces
- Matildis ducissa Cartag'.

(b) Nicholas abbas Sancti Audoeni.

(c) Willielmus Bastard Conquæstor et rex Angliæ—a quo (d)

[1] *Grossum*] Added in marg. A. and referred to its place by a caret.

(d)
- Robertus Curthuse qui obiit sine liberis
- Willielmus Rufus sine liberis
- Henricus Primus et rex —a quo ——
  - Willielmus, Ricardus; hi duo submersi fuerunt in mari.
  - Matildis imperatrix nupta comiti Andegauiæ, a quibus (e)
- Cecilia abbatissa de Kaam
- Constancia comitissa Britanniæ
- Auda comitissa Blesensis—a qua ——
  - Theobaldus
  - Stephanus rex Angliæ
  - Henricus episcopus Wintoniæ.
- Quartam et quintam virgines obierunt.

(e)
- Henricus II. rex Angliæ—a quo (f)
- Galfridus et Willielmus sine liberis.

(f)
- Willielmus mortuus juvenis et ad Radinge sepultus
- Henricus juvenis rex de quo Otho imperator
- Ricardus rex dictus Cor Leonis
- Galfridus comes Britanniæ, de quo Arthurus
- Elianora regina Castelliæ
- Johanna regina Ciciliæ
- Tertia regina Apuliæ
- Johannes rex prius dictus Sine Terra—de quo—(g)

(g)
- Henricus III. et rex—a quo ——
  - Edwardus I. post Conquæstum rex—a quo (h)
  - Margareta regina Scociæ
  - Beatrix ducissa Britanniæ
  - Edmundus comes Lancastriæ—a quo (i)
- Ricardus comes Cornubiæ et rex Alemanniæ
- Isabella imperatrix Alemanniæ
- Elianora comitissa Penbrochie post nupta Symoni de Monte Forti
- Isabella princessa Walliæ.

(i)
- Thomas comes et martyr
- Johannes
- Henricus comes Lancastriæ.

(h)
- Elianora comitissa de Bare
- Johannes et Henricus qui juvenes obierunt
- Johanna comitissa Glouerniæ
- Margareta ducissa Brabanniæ
- Maria monialis Ambresburiæ
- Alfunsus qui obiit duodennis
- Elizabet comitissa Herforde
- Edwardus II. post Conquæstum rex—a quo (k)
- Thomas comes Mareschiæ } Ex alia regina geniti.
- Edmundus comes Canciæ }

(k)
- Edwardus III. a Conquæstu et rex—a quo (l)
- Johannes comes Cornubiæ
- Johanna regina Scociæ
- Elianora comitissa de Gerle.

(l)
- Edwardus princeps Walliæ
- Isabella
- Johanna nupta filio regis Hispanniæ
- Willielmus qui obiit juvenis
- Leonellus
- Johannes
- Edmundus
- Blancia quæ juvenis obiit
- Maria
- Margareta
- Willielmus: obiit juvenis
- Thomas.[1]

[1] The remainder of the page is blank in A.

CONTINUATIO EULOGII.

Fol. 190, col. 1.

Rex[1] Cipri anno Domini 1364 venit in Franciam et in Angliam petens auxilium contra Sarasenos. Reges dabant sibi aurum et homines ipsum sequi volentes, quorum auxilio postea Alexandria Ægipti capta est. Rex abundans auro cœpit ædificare castrum insigne in insula Shipey. A.D. 1361. Sheppey Castle commenced.

Princeps transiit in Aquitanniam ad eam custodiendam. A.D. 1363.

Anno Domini 1365, Rex Hispaniæ Petrus homo crudelissimus quandam Judæam desponsavit ut dicebatur. Papa auditis querelis omnes a fidelitate sua absolvit et ipsum a regno deposuit et bastardum fratrem suum regem fecit; qui bastardus misit in Franciam ad Bertrandum Kleykyn militem probum rogans ut veniret et Petrum fratrem suum ejicere juvaret, qui subdole cum magna comitiva Anglicorum venit et Petrus ejectus est. A.D. 1366. Coronation of Henry the Bastard.

Anno 1366, Petrus ille depositus venit in Vasconiam ad principem Edwardum rogans ut auxilio suo restitueretur ad regnum, spondens aurum; et duas filias suas posuit obsides. Peter the Cruel seeks the aid of the Black Prince.

Dux Clarenciæ dominus Leonellus filius regis secundus desponsata filia sua comiti Marchiæ cum comitiva decora transivit ut filiam ducis Mediolani desponsaret, et cito ibidem moriebatur. A.D. 1368. Death of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, 17th Oct.

Anno 1367, Princeps quæsivit assensum patris, et missi sunt ad eum dominus Johannes de Gant tertius filius regis qui jure filiæ Henrici nuper ducis Lancastriæ quam duxerat dux Lancastriæ factus fuit, et dominus Edmundus quartus filius regis comes Cantibrugiæ; cum exercitu copioso adjuncta magna comitiva pertransivit A.D. 1367. The Black Prince defeats the Bastard at Najara, 3 April.

[1] Hucusque codex Archiepiscopi Ardmachani. in marg. B. in a hand probably of the sixteenth century.

A.D. 1367. montana Hispaniæ et commisso gravi prœlio bastardum fugavit et populum multum interfecit, et Petrum ad tempus potenter restituit; et recepit in auro et jocalibus XL.M. librarum, inter quæ recepit pretiosum gladium Hispaniæ auro et lapidibus pretiosis ornatum. Dux Lancastriæ duxit primogenitam dicti Petri et Edmundus frater ejus secundam. Fol. 190, col. 2.

A.D. 1369. Murder of Peter the Cruel.

Petrus postea ab Hispanis captus est et frater suus bastardus guttur ejus novacula secari fecit.

The French enter Ponthieu and take Abbeville, 29 April.

Anno 1368, Rex Franciæ seisivit in manum suam comitatum Pontivii et Abvile hæreditatem Regis Angliæ et omnes Anglicos de ea ejici fecit, fractionem pacis regi Angliæ imponens.

Dominus Willielmus Scharshille, capitalis justitiarius regis, factus est Frater Minor Oxoniæ, et coram conventu in præsentia notariorum juravit quod ordinem nunquam exiret, et ante professionem moriebatur.

A.D. 1368. The nobles of Gascony appeal to the King of France against the Black Prince.

Anno 1369, Princeps magna tallagia et servitia exigens civitates et magnates Aquitanniæ offendebat. Et ipse cœpit dysenteria graviter vexari. Magnates appellabant ad curiam regis Franciæ ab ejus gravaminibus secundum consuetudinem terræ, et civitates se claudebant.

Bertrand Klaykyn remanentes Anglicos de magna comitiva prudenter et astute ejecit et civitates ac castra in Aquitannia cepit.

Dominus de Clisson et alii contra Johannem ducem Britanniæ rebellabant.

Simon Langham elected Cardinal, 22 Sept.

Symon Langham archiepiscopus Cantuariæ factus est cardinalis et transiens per Parisius versus Auinionam frustra nititur regem Angliæ excusare.

A.D. 1367. Urban V. returns to Rome, 16 Oct.

Eodem anno Romani miserunt ad Urbanum papam rogantes ut veniret ad ecclesiam suam, dicentes quod a tempore Benedicti XI. nullus papa ipsam visitavit, et ideo Roma periit, ecclesiæ et tituli cardinalium ceciderunt. Et ipse ascendit ad Romam et post ad Auinionam rediit.

17 April.

Anno 1370 Princeps erigens se ut potuit civitatem Lemovicensem cepit et in Angliam rediit. Dux[1] Britanniæ similiter rediit. Et eodem anno Rex Angliæ se regem Franciæ scripsit.[2] A.D. 1370. The Black Prince takes Limoges.

Urbanus papa moritur. Cardinales venerunt ad morientem et ipsum rogabant concedere eis plenam remissionem omnium peccatorum secundum morem prædecessorum suorum in eorum transitu observatum. Ipse autem respondebat: "Nos ipsi primum peccatis nostris "utinam absoluti essemus; portetis igitur vos peccata "vestra, nos portabimus nostra." Cui successit Gregorius XI.; inter quem et Florentinos orta est dissensio; Florentini volebant sibi tributum solvere sed nolebant per ipsum regi. Papa vero misit bullas per mundum mandans regnis et civitatibus quod post publicationem earum ubicumque essent Florentini diriperent omnia eorum bona et debita eis non solverent et a finibus suis arcerent sub pœna Interdicti post mensem. Episcopus autem Londoniensis W[illielmus] Curtenay publicavit bullam istam in Cruce Sancti Pauli. Maior civitatis statim sigillavit ostia Florentinorum et duxit eos ad Regem. Quibus ait Rex: "Estis vos homines "nostri?" Qui responderunt: "Etiam sumus vestri." "Et nos," inquit Rex, "protegemus vos." Episcopus Exoniensis cancellarius Angliæ vocavit episcopum Londoniensem coram se in cancellaria quærens ab eo qua temeritate ipse publicavit bullam antedictam inconsulto Rege et suo concilio contra statuta regni. Alius respondebat: "Quia papa mandavit." Cui cancellarius: "Eligatis igitur vel perdere temporalia vestra vel verba "vestra proprio ore revocare." Qui vix obtinuit ut per alium possit revocare. Et unus ascendit Crucem et dixit: "Dominus meus de Interdicto hic nihil locutus "est. Mirum est quod nescitis intelligere loquentes

Fol. 190, v. col. 1.

Death of Urban V., 19 Dec.

Election of Gregory XI., 30 Dec.

A.D. 1376. Publication of his bull against the Florentines at Paul's Cross, by Courtenay, bishop of London.

The bishop summoned before the Chancellor, and obliged to revoke the publication, by proxy.

[1] The *x* is written on an erasure.

[2] Nota quomodo Rex Angliæ scri-[psit] se regem Franciæ, in marg. B.

A.D. 1376. " qui tot sermones hic auditis." Et tunc Rex statuit in parliamento quod papa non daret ecclesias pertinentes ad laicorum patronatum.

A.D. 1373. Anno Domini 1371, dux Lancastriæ et dux Britanniæ cum exercitu magno transierunt in Franciam, et villas invenientes muratas sine bello, sine lucro redierunt.

A.D. 1372. Defeat of the Flemings by the Earl of Hertford. Eodem anno Flandrenses et Gallici transierunt pro sale ad Le Bay. Rex misit comitem Herfordiæ ad mare, qui eos occidit et naves eorum sale oneratas duxit Hamptoniam.

[A.D. 1372.] Anno Domini 1372, dux Lancastriæ transivit ad Bruges ad tractandum de pace cum duce de Berry et ibi mansit per totam æstatem in gravibus expensis regni nihil aliud referens in reventu nisi quod Gallici pacem habere nolunt nisi habeant omnia quæ habuerunt ante vendicationem hæreditatis factam per Regem Angliæ. Quo concesso placeret eis solvere residuum redemptionis Johannis Regis Franciæ; et nullas gratias reportavit.

A.D. 1373. The Duke of Lancaster enters France near Calais, 20 July. Anno Domini 1373, dux Lancastriæ cum exercitu transiturus in Franciam venit ad Calkewelhulle juxta Kalesiam; contra quem ibidem venit exercitus magnus Gallicorum. Gallici rogabant eum tractare de pace. Et fuerunt ibidem tractantes quousque tota messis Franciæ erat in castris et civitatibus ac villis muratis congregata. Comes Warr' existens in Anglia admirans quid facerent, de assensu Regis cum comitiva quadam transivit ad ducem, et reprehendens eum et alios qui cum illo ibidem erant cucurrit ad Gallicos, qui videntes eum fugierunt. Dux rediit et multi de exercitu dysenteria perierunt. Comes Warr' ut quidam dixerunt veneno Calesiæ periit. Et quod comes Herfordiæ propter hoc nocte suspensus fuit jussu Regis. Et certum est quod ultra non comparuit. Hoc anno horilogia distinguentia 24 horas primo inventa sunt.

Fol. 190, v. col. 2.

The Earl of Warwick sent to aid him.

A.D. 1369. Death of the Earl of Warwick (his father) at Calais, 13 Nov.

A.D. 1374. Anno Domini M°CCC. septuagesimo quarto Symon Langham cardinalis venit nuncius papæ in Angliam et cito post papa et cardinales per literas suas ipsum

graviter reprehendebant pro eo quod ipse derogando præeminentiæ suæ et Curiæ Romanæ suum deposuit capicium Regi Angliæ. Qui non potuit excusari quousque rediret, et testimonio sufficienti ostenderet quod non nisi medietatem capicii deponebat. In redeundo autem ad Curiam singulis monachis Cantuariæ dabat aurum. A.D. 1374.

A great council at Westminster.

Post Pentecosten Rex congregavit magnum concilium prælatorum et dominorum apud Westmonasterium, et quendam magistrum in theologia Fratrem Minorem Johannem Mardisle qui coram eo prædicaverat in die Pentecostes rogavit interesse. Sedebant enim in medio sacrarii (?) princeps Edwardus, et archiepiscopus Cantuariæ Willielmus Witlesey in theologia magister. A latere archiepiscopi prælati omnes et a latere principis omnes domini temporales sedebant. Et coram principe et archiepiscopo iiij^{or}. magistri in theologia in una forma sedebant, scilicet, Provincialis Fratrum Prædicatorum, Johannes Owtred monachus de Durham qui ibidem esse in concilio procuravit, frater Johannes Mardisle, frater Thomas Asshburne Augustinensis ; decretistæ vero et legistæ super tapetia in area sedebant.

The cause of the convocation of the council.

Tunc cancellarius dixit causam convocationis esse istam: "Papa misit domino Regi bullam in qua scribit " quod cum ipse sit dominus generalis omnium tempo- " ralium ex Christi vicariatu ac dominus spiritualis et " capitalis regni Angliæ ex dono olim Johannis Regis " mandat quod Rex levari faciat tallagium in subsidium " contra sibi rebelles Florentinos et alios et illud sibi
Fol. 191, col. 1. " mittere non postponat. Et ideo, vos prælati, dicatis " jam an ipse sit dominus noster ex vicariatu Christi. Et " cras, vos domini temporales, dicetis et respondebitis ad " cartam Regis Johannis. Vos, domine archiepiscope, " quid dicitis ?" Qui respondebat : " Ipse est omnium do- " minus; non possumus hoc negare." Quod omnes prælati seriatim dixerunt. Provincialis Fratrum Prædicatorum rogabat se excusari de tam ardua quæstione et consuluit quod secundum morem ordinis sui in arduis negotiis cantaretur hymnus, Veni Creator Spiritus, vel Missa

A.D. 1374. de Spiritu Sancto, ut ille Spiritus eos doceat veritatem. Monachus de Durham respondebat per modum collationis, accipiendo pro exordio: "Ecce duo gladii "hic;" volens per hoc ostendere Petrum habuisse temporalium et spiritualium potestates. Mardesley assumpsit statim illud: "Mitte gladium tuum in vagi- "nam," ostendens quod illi gladii tales potestates non significabant. Et quod Christus temporale dominium non habebat, nec Apostolis tradidit sed relinquere docuit. Quod probavit per Scripturas et Evangelia, per doctorum originalia et exemplo religiosorum qui sua relinquunt, per decreta et[1] ostendebat quod papa se fatetur generale dominium non habere. Et narravit quomodo Bonifacius VIII. statuit se dominum omnium regnorum et quomodo fuit repulsus in Francia et Anglia. Et quod Christus tradidit Petro vicariatum spiritualis regiminis non terrenæ dominationis. Nam dixit quod in dominatione terrena papa non succedit Petro sed Constantino secundum Beatum Thomam; Augustinensis dicebat quod Petrus in ecclesia cognoscitur per claves, Paulus per gladium. Papa est Petrus portans claves ecclesiæ in foro confessionis. "Vos, "domine princeps, solebatis esse Paulus portantes gla- "dium. Sed quia jam dimisistis gladium Domini "Petrus non cognoscet Paulum. Erigatis igitur gladium "et Petrus cognoscet Paulum." Et soluta est communicatio illo die.

Archiepiscopus dixit: "Bona consilia fuerunt in Anglia "sine Fratribus." Et dixit ei princeps: "Propter tuam "fatuitatem oportuit[2] nos convocare illos; per tuum con- "silium perdidissemus regnum." Et in crastino archiepiscopus dixit se nescire respondere. Cui dixit princeps: "Asine, responde; tu deberes nos omnes informare." Fol. 191, col. 2.
Cui archiepiscopus dixit: "Placet mihi quod non sit "hic dominus." Et hoc consequenter omnes prælati dixerunt. Monachus vero dixit quod non erat do-

[1] *et*] ℣. B. corr. etiam. | [2] *oportuit*] orportuit. B.

minus. "Ubi sunt ergo duo gladii?" dixit dominus princeps. "Domine," dixit ipse, "jam sum melius pro- "visus quam fui." A.D. 1374.

Tunc domini temporales respondebant dicentes quod Johannes Rex dedit regnum Curiæ Romanæ sine consensu regni et baronum, quod legitime facere non potuit; quare dixerunt quod illa carta sive donatio non valuit. Missi sunt ergo nuntii ad papam qui hanc responsionem eidem referrent. Response of the temporal lords. Message to the pope. A.D. 1372.

Comes Penbrochiæ mittitur cum navibus et pulchra comitiva custos Vasconiæ, et Hispani eum ceperunt cum navibus suis. The earl of Pembroke taken by the Spanish, 23 June.

Rex audiens Rupellam obsessam a Gallicis paravit se cum principe et exercitu ad succursum, et jacens in navibus apud Sandwicum usque post Festum Sancti Michaelis ventum habere non potuit. Et interim Gallici ceperunt Rupellam, nobilem portum Aquitaniæ vinis bonis abundantem ad magnum damnum regni Angliæ. The king lies off Sandwich until after Michaelmas. The French take Rochelle, 15 Aug.

Dux Lancastriæ transivit cum illo exercitu ad capiendum villam Sancti Malori in Normannia, sed repulsus rediit. Hoc anno fuit magna pestilentia quam gentes vocabant tertiam.[1]

Anno Domini 1375, archiepiscopus Cantuariæ moritur. Et monachi Cantuariæ postulabant cardinalem. Cui Rex noluit assentire, sed offensus priorem et monachos graviter vexavit laboribus et expensis. Cardinalis non valens archiepiscopatum cum bona gratia regis habere resignavit juri suo. Et papa dedit eum Symoni Sudbury advocato Curiæ. A.D. 1374. Death of the archbishop of Canterbury, 5 June. A.D. 1375. Simon Sudbury trans., 4 May.

Robertus Knollis miles famosus missus fuit cum exercitu in Franciam, sed expulsus nihil ibi profecit, sed in Angliam rediit. Eodem anno Fratres Prædicatores[2] petierunt et habuerunt dispensationem a papa comedendi carnes ne sæcularibus ut dixerunt essent onerosi.

---

[1] Tertia pestilentia. In marg. B.

[2] Fratres Prædicatores comedunt carnes. In marg. B.

A.D. 1376. Death of the Black Prince, 8 June.

Anno Domini 1376, princeps Edwardus moritur et Cantuariæ sepelitur. Rex per comitem Sarum vocavit Regem Navarriæ ad Clarendonam, quem recipiendo salutavit humaniter ad ostium aulæ ibidem, et postea tractavit cum eo pro certis terris inter eosdem commutandis; sed Rex Navarriæ respondebat se consilium ibidem non habere sicut ipse habuit, et reversus est.

[A.D.] 1377. Death of Edw. III. 21 June.

Anno Domini 1377. Rex Edwardus moritur; quinquaginta et uno annis regnavit in Anglia, post cujus mortem regnavit Ricardus Secundus. Fol. 191, v. col. 1.

Coronation of Rich. II., 16 July.

Rex Ricardus Secundus filius Edwardi principis Walliæ filii Regis Edwardi Tertii, avo suo mortuo, cœpit regnare anno Domini 1377°, puer xi. annorum coronatus apud Westmonasterium, cujus tutor factus est Johannes dux Lancastriæ.

A.D. 1376. Gregory XI. goes to Rome, 13 Sept.

Eodem anno Romani miserunt ad papam Gregorium dicentes quod nisi veniat et visitet ecclesiam suam nihil habebit de Roma; qui statim Romam ascendit.

A.D. 1377. The French attack the Isle of Wight, &c., 21 August.

Eodem anno frater Regis Hispanniæ et Johannes de Vienna Gallicus venerunt cum Hispannis et Gallicis in galeis et Insulam de Wight, Rotyndene, Winchelse, Rye, Stonore, Grauysende cum manerio Regis ibidem combusserunt.

A tenth and fifteenth exacted, 13 Oct.

Decima et quintadecima in parliamento Londoniæ tento exactæ fuerunt. Et rex circuivit regnum, multaque donaria a civitatibus, prælatis, et diversis dominis ei data fuerunt.

Eodem anno fratres Augustinenses[1] obtinuerunt licentiam et dispensationem comedendi carnes. Et sub conditione quod observarent jejunium Fratrum Minorum ante Natale Domini.

[A.D.] 1378. Death of Gregory XI., 27 March.

Anno Domini 1378°, papa Gregorius moritur Romæ. Romani circumdabant cardinales in conclavi ad eligendum novum papam congregatos, mortem eisdem comminantes nisi Romanum vel Ytalicum eligerent, quia, ut dicebant, Roma periit sub incuria Gallicorum.

[1] Fratres Augustinenses comedunt carnes sub conditione. In marg. B.

Ipsi vero elegerunt episcopum Barensem auditorem causarum et obtulerunt eidem electionem quam ipse acceptavit, et coronaverunt eum intimantes regibus, ducibus, et comitibus ipsos jubar ecclesiæ elegisse ; petieruntque ab eo multa beneficia et obtinuerunt pro se et amicis suis, vocantes ipsum Urbanum. Qui post paululum ad reprimendum, ut dixit, symoniam cardinalium statuit quod quiscunque vellet habere aliquam gratiam veniret ad ipsum ; sed cardinales indignantes et offensi dixerunt ei quod papa non erat, quia non libere electus. Et quod elegerunt eum sperantes quod talem electionem, habita opportunitate, cassarent. Qui omnino de eis non curavit. Cardinales spoliabant curiam de magnis thesauris una cum registro curiæ et fugierunt ad civitatem Fundensem ubi scripserunt per mundum Urbanum non esse papam sed electum in timore qui potuit cadere inconstanter,[1] et si alicubi acceptus esset pro papa quod episcopi per ipsum ordinati episcopi non essent reputandi, nec ordines celebrare possent, et sic perirent ibi omnia sacramenta ecclesiastica. Elegerunt unum ex seipsis quem Clementem vocaverunt, miseruntque Regi Franciæ magnam summam auri et transierunt ad Avinionam. Tunc Rex Franciæ et omnia regna sibi alligata, videlicet omnes reges Hispanniæ, præter regem Portugaliæ, acceptaverunt Clementem, sicque fecit Scociæ ; dixerunt autem sapientes quod licet episcopi supradicti sic suspensi in ordine suo adinstantes et alii presbyteri vere ordinati bene et rite celebrantes consecraverint, nec propter talem suspensionem perierunt sacramenta. Dixerunt insuper quod non oportet in omni casu electionem omnino esse liberam, loquendo de libertate canonica. Et quod Romani bene potuerunt arctare cardinales in tali casu justa causa subsistente. Sicut omnis communitas potest arctare superiorem suum

A.D. 1378. Election of the Archbishop of Bari, 9 April. His coronation, 18 April.

Dissension between and the cardinals,

Fol. 191, v. col. 2.

who elect Clement VII., 21 Sept.;

he is acknowledged by France, Spain, and Scotland.

[1] *inconstanter*] in cōstātē. B.

A.D. 1378. propter bonum commune et utilitatem publicam et post acceptationem electionis a tota Christianitate, quamvis aliquid defuisset de forma electionis non licuit tamen propter hoc cardinalibus dissolvere ecclesiasticam libertatem.

John Hawle and Richard Shakyll sent to the Tower,

Eodem anno Hispanni miserunt ad Regem Angliæ pro liberatione comitis de Dene de Hispannia quem Johannes Hawle et Ricardus Shakyll ceperunt antea in bello Hispanniæ; sed ipsi timentes perdere redemptionem sui prisonarii noluerunt ipsum producere ad domini Regis mandatum. Rex per concilium suum objecit eis quod ipsi fecerunt carcerem in domibus suis infra regnum suum contra suum mandatum et voluntatem. Et misit eos ad turrim Londoniæ. Ipsi vero prostrato eorum custode fugierunt ad Westmonasterium. Constabularius turris venit ut eos reduceret et Johannes Haule resistens interfectus fuit ad illud verbum quod legebatur per diaconum in alta missa: "Si sciret pater-familias qua hora fur veniret, &c.," tamen Ricardus Shakille ibat cum eo. Statim monachi cessaverunt a divinis et per multas Dominicas sequentes excommunicatos denuntiari fecerunt per archiepiscopum Cantuariæ suæ ecclesiæ et suorum privilegiorum violatores. Et ecclesiam reconciliare nolebant. Rex autem sæpe mandavit abbati per brevia sua quod ad eum veniret et a dicta denunciatione cessaret ac suam ecclesiam reconciliari faceret et juxta fundationis suæ debitum in ea Deo serviret, promittens quod negotium erit bene reformatum. Sed abbas nec adquiescere nec comparere volebat, asserens ecclesiam suam dedicatam fore per Beatum Petrum miraculose et alterius dedicatione non indigere, ostendens[1] chronicam dedicationis ut sequitur:

They escape and take sanctuary in Westminster Abbey. Hawle is killed there, 11 Aug.. The archbishop of Canterbury denounces the desecrators of the church, and the abbot, though summoned before the king, refuses to appear.

Fol. 192, col. 1.

Tempore quo rex Ethelbertus qui regnavit in Cancia[2]

[1] *ostendens*] ostendas. B. ostendans. Da. | [2] *Cancia*] Cantia. Da.

prædicante Beato Augustino fidei sacramenta susceperat, nepos quoque ejus Sebertus qui Orientalibus Anglis præfuit fidem, eodem episcopo evangelisante, suscepit. Hic Londoniæ, quæ regni sui metropolis habebatur, intra muros ecclesiam in honorem Pauli Beatissimi construens episcopali eam sede voluit esse sublimem. Cui Sanctus Mellitus, quem Beatus papa Gregorius cum pluribus aliis in adjutorium miserat Augustino merito simul et honore pontificali primus[1] omnium præfuit. Volens autem rex utrique Apostolo se gratum præstare in Occidentali parte ejusdem civitatis extra muros in honore Beati Petri monasterium insigne fundavit multis illud donariis ornans et ditans possessionibus. Venerat autem tempus quo ecclesia fuerat in eo dedicanda; paratisque omnibus pro loco et tempore pro monasterii dignitate agente episcopo ea nocte in tentoriis dies crastina præstolabatur. Magna plebis expectatio quæ adhuc rudis in fide his solemniis interesse non solum pro devotione sed etiam pro adjutorio[2] gaudebat. Eadem nocte piscatori cuidam in Thamasis fluvii qui eidem monasterio subterfluit[3] ulteriori ripa in habitu peregrini Beatus Petrus apparens promissa mercede transponi se ab eodem et petiit et promeruit.[4] Egressus autem a navicula ecclesiam piscatore cernente ingreditur; et ecce subito lux cœlestis emicuit miroque splendore collustrans omnia noctem convertit in diem. Affuit enim cum Apostolo multitudo civium supernorum egredientium et ingredientium et choris hymnidicis præeuntibus melodia cœlestis insonuit. Omnia plena lumine, omnia referta dulcedine. Aures vocis angelicæ mulcebat jocunditas. Nares indicibilis odoris fragrantia perfundebat. Oculos lux ætherea

A.D. 1378. Legend of the dedication of Westminster Abbey.

Fol. 192, col. 2.

[1] *primus*] ꝑmº. B. prius. Da.

[2] *adjutorio*] adiutº. B. admiratione. Da.

[3] *subterfluit*] subtfluit. B. subfluit. Da.

[4] *promeruit*] ꝓmºuit. B. præmeruit. Da.

A.D. 1378. Legend of the dedication of Westminster Abbey.

illustrabat. Videbantur quasi mixta terrena cœlestibus, humana conjuncta divinis, et quasi in scala Jacob angeli descendentes et ascendentes in illis sacris solemniis visebantur.[1] Peractisque[2] omnibus quæ ad ecclesiæ dedicationem spectant solemniis redit ad piscium piscatorem piscator egregius hominum, quem cum divini luminis fulgore perterritum alienatum pæne sensibus reperisset blanda consolatione reddidit hominem propriæ rationi. Ingredientes ambo cymbam simul uterque piscator inter loquendum Apostolus hominem iisdem quibus se quondam magister suus conveniens verbis, "Numquid, ait, pulmentarium non habes?" Et ille: "Tum, inquit, inconsuetæ lucis perfusione stupidus tum "expectatione tui detentus nihil cepi. Sed promissam a te "mercedem securus expectavi." Ad hæc Apostolus "Laxa "nunc," inquit, "retia in capturam." Paruit imperanti piscator et mox implevit rete piscium maxima multitudo; quibus ad ripam extractis, "Hunc," inquit Apostolus, "qui cæteris magnitudine et pretio præcellit Mellito "episcopo mea ex parte piscem defer. Pro nautica vero "mercede cætera tibi tolle. Ego sum Petrus qui tecum "loquor, qui cum meis concivibus constructam in meo "nomine basilicam dedicavi episcopalemque benedic-"tionem meæ sanctificationis auctoritate præveni. Dic "ergo pontifici quæ tu vidisti et audisti, tuo quoque "sermoni signa parietibus impressa testimonium perhibe- Fol. 192, v. col. 1.
"bunt. Supersedeat igitur dedicationi. Suppleat quod "omisimus Dominici scilicet[3] corporis et sanguinis "sacrosancta mysteria, populumque erudiens sermone et "benedictione confirmans, notificet omnibus hunc me "locum crebro visitaturum, hic me fidelium votis et "precibus affuturum." Et his dictis clavicularius cœlestis disparuit. Et jam nocturnis tenebris finem dedit Aurora. Cum Beato Mellito ad futuræ dedicationis celebranda

---

[1] *visebantur*] visebāt^{r}. B. videbantur. Da.

[2] *Peractis*] Pact. B. Paratis. Da.

[3] *scilicet*] s. B. videlicet. Da.

mysteria processuro cum pisce piscator occurrit. Quem cum episcopo tradidisset omnia ei quæ ab Apostolo fuerant mandata prosequitur. Stupet pontifex reserratisque basilicæ sacræ valvis vidit pavimentum utriusque alphabeti inscriptione signatum, parietem bis senis in locis sanctificationis oleo linitum, tot cereorum reliquias duodenis crucibus inhærere. Et quasi recenti aspersione adhuc cuncta madescere. Refert hæc episcopus populo. Et mox una vox omnium pulsat cœlos laudantium et Deum benedicentium toto corde. A.D. 1378. Legend of the dedication of Westminster Abbey.

Eodem anno, videlicet 1378, Johannes Wicclif magister in theologia dictus flos Oxoniæ determinando disputavit contra possessiones immobiles ecclesiæ, religionem Fratrum Minorum multum commendans, dicens eos esse Deo carissimos. Et quod Johannes papa fuit grossus legista, nesciens quid diceret in theologia. Item quod domini temporales et monasteriorum fundatores auferre possunt bona temporalia ab ecclesiasticis delinquentibus. A.D. 1377. Heresies of Wickliffe.

Eodem anno parliamentum statuitur Glouerniæ[1] in quo Rex grave tallagium a populo extorquebat, dicens quod si non haberet, traylbastonem haberet; dictumque fuit ibidem quod pecunia regni fuerat in manibus opificum et laborantium. Concessumque fuit quod quilibet maritus solveret grossum et quælibet uxor similiter grossum, et quod divites in hac solutione pauperes juvarent. Westmonasterium propter contemptum Regis in non veniendo alias ad citationes suas privabatur temporalibus ita vix ut sex solidos et octo denarios haberet pro esculentis et poculentis. Declaratumque fuit ibidem quod Rex potest concedere libertatem ad tempus illis qui ceciderunt a casu in impotentiam solvendi utpote per rapinam, combustionem, vel submersionem usque ad tempus potentiæ solvendi. Sed Rex non potest concedere raptori vel fraudulento detentori rei alienæ ut gau- A.D. 1378. A Parliament at Gloucester, 20 Oct. Fol. 192, v. col. 2. Discussion on the privileges claimed by the abbey of Westminster touching fugitives.

[1] Parliamentum Glouerniæ, in marg. B.

A.D. 1378. Parliament at Gloucester, 20 Oct.

deat tali libertate quod cogi non possit ad solvendum et parciatur inde cum abbate pro domus locatione. Hoc non privilegium sed pravilegium dici debet. Quia Rex non potest dispensare cum minima concupiscentia rei alienæ contra mandatum Dei, videlicet: "Non con- " cupisces rem proximi tui," igitur nec cum violenta detentione. Ostendebatur etiam ibidem quod pro debito non est homo liber ibidem ex privilegio sed ex consuetudine per reges tolerata. Et quod privilegium loci quod continet hanc formam:—"Concedimus " quod quiscunque homo veniens ad locum sive eques- " tris sive pedestris pro quocunque delicto etiam si " in personam nostram deliquerit gaudeat ibidem " omnimoda libertate" in diversis casibus qui possunt contingere periculosum esset observare. Et quod Rex privilegium prædecessoris sui possit suspendere et revocare cum non habeat imperium par in parem. Et quod ecclesia illa non magis modo polluta fuit quam quando monachus olim monachum juxta summum altare interfecit et tum statim reconciliata fuit. Tangebatur insuper ibidem quod in morte casuali propter consanguineos ordinatæ fuerunt olim civitates refugii. Sed siquis de industria occiderit hominem etiam de altari meo evellas eum ut moriatur. Petebaturque ibidem quod abbas teneatur detinere ibi debitores ne effugiant sub pœna solutionis debitorum si privilegio illo gaudere voluerit. Dictumque fuit quod privilegium lucrosum sanctum est et inviolabile, non lucrosum nullum est. Statutumque fuit ibidem quod privilegium ecclesiæ a Deo concessum et mandatum de nundinis ab ecclesiis et cœmeteriis amovendis observaretur et domus Dei sit domus orationis et non negationis. Et nundinæ Cantuarienses in vico principali statuebantur, sed statim archiepiscopus rogabat Regem ut intra prioratum revocarentur.

The fair at Canterbury appointed to be in the principal street.

Fol 193, col. 1.

Both Popes send nuntios to the Parliament.

Ad hoc parliamentum venerunt nuntii cum bulla utriusque papæ rogantium Regem ut assisteret ecclesiæ. Rex vero præcepit archiepiscopo Cantuariensi ut audiret

eos et decerneret cum quo tenendum esset et quod acciperet clericorum consilium et tempus sufficiens. Archiepiscopus, auditis partibus, venit in parliamentum et dixit: "Sicut respondere volo coram Deo, recipiatis "Urbanum." Et ibi statutum fuit quod omnes Anglici reciperent Urbanum. Urbanus papa expulit Regem Cisiliæ et Neapolis de genere Anglicorum dicens eum schismaticum et Gallicis alligatum et talis non debet regnare in spirituali patrocinio Beati Petri. Et Karolum de Pace cognatum suum cum assistentia regni regem fecit. A.D. 1378. Urban VI. acknowledged by England. A.D. 1381. Charles of Durazzo, king of Naples, 2 June.

Hoc anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Symon Sudbury cœpit ædificare ecclesiam suam cathedralem et muros civitatis Cantuariæ et proposuit ibi ædificasse pulcherrimam et fortissimam civitatem.

Anno Domini 1379° monachi de Bury elegerunt abbatem contra quem venit alius monachus ejusdem domus magister de Roma factus abbas a papa, et cum sibi adhærentibus missam in pontificalibus celebravit. Sed a cancellario Angliæ vocatus didicit prohibitum esse per statutum regni ne quis abbatiam capiat de provisione papæ sub pœna carceris. Et post incarcerationem gratiam habuit transfretandi. [A.D.] 1379. Intrusion of Bromfield into the abbey of Bury.

Johannes de Arundell filius Ricardi comitis de Arundell cum exercitu missus fuit senescallus in Vasconiam. Et luxuria ac rapina exigentibus suscitavit Dominus spiritum de inferioribus abyssi postquam egressi sunt de portu Hamptoun qui eos compulit ad scopulos Hiberniæ et naves fregit ac eos submersit; sic omnia quæ ibidem habebant perierunt. John de Arundell sent with an army to Gascony. The fleet wrecked, Dec.

Eodem anno papa misit ad Oxoniam quibusdam hoc procurantibus bullam suam in qua mandavit sub pœna amissionis omnium privilegiorum quod magistrum Johannem Wikcliff incarcerarent et ipsum ibidem detinerent usque ad examinationem archiepiscopi Cantuariensis et episcopi Londoniensis. Et reprehendit eos de hoc quod conclusiones tales quæ in bulla A.D. 1377. Bull of Gregory XI. commanding the imprisonment of Wickliffe. 31 May.

Fol. 193, col. 2.

A.D. 1377. Proceedings at Oxford thereupon.

scriptæ erant docere permitterent. Amici vero præfati magistri Johannis Wiccliff et ipse Johannes consuluerunt in congregatione regentium et non regentium quod non incarcerarent hominem Regis Angliæ ad mandatum papæ ne videantur dare papæ dominationem et potestatem Regalem in Anglia. Et quia oportuit aliquid facere ad mandatum papæ ut videbatur consilio Universitatis, monachus quidam vicecancellarius rogavit dictum Wikcliff et præcepit quod ipse teneret se in aula nigra et de ea non exiret quia nullum alium eum habere volebat. Et quia juratus erat Universitati hoc pro conservatione privilegiorum Universitatis decuit ipsum pati. Et conclusiones in bulla assignatæ fuerunt singulis magistris in theologia regentibus ibidem liberatæ. Et omnes tradiderunt cancellario determinationes suas. Qui vice omnium et assensu determinavit publice in scholis eas veras esse sed male sonare in auribus auditorum. Et dictus Wikclif respondebat dicens quod veritas Catholica non debet damnari propter sonum quem facere posset in auribus quorumdam quamvis aliquando debeat taceri quia per istam opinionem Christi: "Bonus odor sumus in Domino" possit concipi quod essemus accidens non substantia. Et dictus W. probavit coram archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et episcopo Londoniensi conclusiones illas veras esse. Qui ipsum rogabant quod de materia ipsarum amplius non loqueretur.

A.D. 1378. Wickliffe appears before the archbishop of Canterbury, and the bishop of London.

Eodem anno miles quidam de familia Regis venit de Wodstoke ad Oxoniam. Scholares quidam nocte venerunt et stabant coram hospitio suo facientes de eo quendam cantum rythmice in Anglico continentem certa verba contra honorem Regis. Et miserunt sagittas ad fenestram hospitii. Miles mane surgens conquestus est Regi. Statim cancellarius et suus vicecancellarius vocati sunt Londonias et statuuntur coram cancellario regni et concilio Regis. Et quærebatur a cancellario Universitatis quare non punivit derisores

One of the household insulted at Oxford by the scholars. Lent.

The chancellor and vice-chancellor are summoned before the Council, 22 March.

Fol. 193, v. col. 1.

Regis. Respondebat cancellarius quia timuit irregularitatem. Cui cancellarius Regni: "Tu probare vis quod "Oxonia non potest regi per clericum. Rex non potest "contemni Oxoniæ sicut nec alibi. Et si vos de Oxonia "non potestis corrigere et castigare Regis contemptores "propter irregularitatem, ut dicit cancellarius, sequitur "quod Oxonia non potest regi per clericos sed oportet "regem subtrahere privilegia. Tu deberes maxime "privilegia Universitatis defendere et propter officium "tuum et etiam propter juramentum tuum et contra "ipsa privilegia tu loqueris. Nos te deponimus ab "officio tuo." Respondebat Universitatis cancellarius: "Officium meum habeo a papa et a Rege; quod a "Rege habeo Rex potest auferre, sed non illud quod "a papa habeo." Cui cancellarius Angliæ: "Et nos "privamus te parte Regia et tunc videas si poteris "gaudere parte papæ, te ad dictum officium inhabili-"tantes. Rex potest ab Oxonia amovere Universitatem "et te."[1] Vicecancellarius monachus adjudicatus fuit carceribus quia ad mandatum papæ incarceraverat, ut superius dictum est, Johannem Wiccliff qui postea ad rogatum amicorum liberatus est. Cancellarius depositus pallians depositionem suam resignavit sponte in convocatione ut dixit non coactus.

A.D. 1378.

The vice-chancellor is imprisoned, and the chancellor resigns.

Hoc anno factum est parliamentum Londoniis, in quo decima et quintadecima exactæ sunt, dicente communitate quod Rex abundavit de bonis avi sui, patris sui, ac donariis multis. Statuitur etiam quod statutum Edwardi Primi de beneficiis extraneorum firmiter observetur.[2]

A.D. 1380. A Parliament at Westminster, 17 Jan.

Hoc anno frater Regis Hispanniæ fuit Frater Minor et ipse asserebat quod papa erit Frater Minor qui terminabit schisma ecclesiæ; qui transivit ad Romam cum c. equis, sed non revenit.

Anno Domini 1380, factum est parliamentum apud Clarendoñ ubi quidam frater Carmelita bacalaureus in

[A.D.] 1380. A Parliament at Clarendon

[1] Nota, in marg. B.

[2] Nota, in marg. B.

A.D. 1380. (Northampton), 5 Nov. A poll-tax granted.

theologia accusavit ducem Lancastriæ de proditione Regis, sed in probatione deficiens tractus in habitu suo et suspensus est Sarum et sepultus in cœmeterio Sancti Martini ibidem. In hoc parliamento exactum fuit tale tallagium quod quilibet maritus solveret Regi xij. d. et quælibet uxor, xij. d.[1]

Eodem anno venerunt nuntii de Britannia ad ducem Johannem de Monte Forti rogantes ut ad eos rediret deprecantesque amicitiam regni Angliæ, hoc decere dicentes quia patres eorum nati fuerunt in Anglia et tam regnum quam ducatus uno nomine Britannia appellantur. Ordinatumque fuit quod quartus filius Regis Edwardi, Thomas comes de Bokyngham dictus de Wodstok, equitaret in Franciam cum exercitu usque in Britanniam, et inde ipse simul et dux intrarent Franciam.

The earl of Buckingham sent to aid the duke of Brittany, June.

Fol. 193, v. col. 2.

Simon Sudbury made chancellor, 17 Jan.

Eodem anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis factus est cancellarius regni volens de officio cancellarii domum suam tenere et proventus archiepiscopatus in ædificatione Cantuariæ[2] expendere, sed non perfecit opus suum.

A.D. 1381. Wickliffe denies transubstantiation.

Johannes Wiccliff determinavit Oxoniæ sacramentum eucharistiæ esse panem, ut dicit Apostolus: "Panis quem frangimus," et Confessio Berengarii in Decretis, et illum panem esse corpus Christi sicut petra erat Christus. Aliter tamen est ibi corpus quam ubi in signo quia est ibi per gratiam sanctificantem digne sumentes nec accidens ibi esse sine subjecto. Et quia Hugo de Sancto Victore fuit primus qui illum terminum "transubstantiatio" invenit. Et quod accidens non est[3] sacramentum altaris sed substantia, quia tunc panis ratonum præstantior esset sacramento altaris, eo quod omnis substantia est præstantior quocumque accidente; et breviter oppositum non invenitur, ut fundari potest in Scriptura. Et quod omnes doctores primi millenarii post Christum in quo ut dicitur in Apoca-

[1] Tallagium xij. d. in marg. B.
[2] *Cantuariæ*] cant^{a}. B. ? tantum.
[3] Non est. bis. B.

lypsi ligatus fuit Sathanas sic sensierunt de sacra- A.D. 1381.
mento, et jam solutus Sathanas decepit gentes in fide sacramenti. Et quod ille panis sanctus non debet aspici ut panis sed ut corpus Christi in memoriam Dominicæ Passionis. Discipuli ejus hanc doctrinam prædicabant et divulgabant per totam Angliam multos laicos seducentes etiam nobiles et magnos dominos qui defendebant tales falsos prædicatores. Magistri tamen omnes in theologia regentes Oxoniæ determinabant contra hanc doctrinam, et præcipue regens Fratrum Minorum hanc doctrinam redarguit potenter et ipsos Lollardos esse probavit; cujus determinatio adhuc in archivis Universitatis conservatur. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis tamen non satis de hoc curare videbatur.

His doctrines condemned at Oxford.

Hoc anno magna glacies percussit pontem ligneum Rofæ et fregit illum ita ut scapha ibidem diu haberetur. In parliamento London' tento fuit prohibitum quod A.D. 1380.
Fol. 194. col. 1. nullus portet aurum, argentum, nec monetam extra regnum per campsores vel alio modo sine licentia Regis.

[A.D.] 1381°. Treaty between Charles VI. and the duke of Brittany, 15 Jan.

Anno Domini 1381° Thomas comes Bokyngham equitando per Franciam nihil magni fecit, et veniens in Britanniam invenit ducem Gallicis fœderatum et rediit in Angliam.

Commencement of the rebellion under Wat the Tyler.

Hoc anno duo armigeri sedentes in taberna quadam London' dixerunt quod summa collectæ solidorum hujus anni non pervenit ad summam grossorum anni præcedentis, transieruntque ad cancellarium Angliæ petentes justitiarios in Canciam et in Estsexiam ad inquirendum de collectione dictæ summæ et offerebant Regi summam auri pro residuo colligendo. In Cancia autem responsum fuit quod post solutionem grossorum multi utriusque sexus mortui sunt. In Estsex vero sedebat judex cum aliis et vocabat quendam pistorem illius loci collectorem. Pistor dixit sociis suis, Non sufficit istis quod collectum est, sed modo veniunt ad novum tallagium colligendum, si haberem assistentiam ego resisterem illis. Et statim omnes, captis instru-

A.D. 1381. mentis quæ habebant, ad pugnam venerunt ad locum; statim justitiarius cum suis fugiit. "Ecce," dixit Pistor, "patet quod pro novo tallagio venerunt." Tunc illa villa transivit ad aliam proximam et ipsam fecit insurgere, et illæ duæ tertiam et sic ultra totum comitatum et comitatum Hertfordiæ et postea per Erhethe transierunt in Canciam ad Maydston, et Waldam et inde Cantuariam totam patriam elevantes et sequi cogentes, domos penetrantes, omnia victualia consumentes, homines occidentes et spoliantes ac domos destruentes. Et cum quæreretur ab eis quis esset capitaneus eorum, quia nullum habebant derisorie respondebant.

Rising in Hertfordshire and Kent.

Jak Straw[1] et Thomas Melro redeuntes ad campum qui dicitur Blacheth vocaverunt ad se episcopum Rofensem. Et cum quæreret episcopus quis esset principalis qui sibi loqueretur processit unus tegulator de Estsex qui valde eloquens fuerat, exprimebat episcopo multa gravamina virorum simplicium per tallagia et oppressiones maiorum, rogans ut hæc narraret Regi, et cogitabant ut dixit repatriare si debita correctio habita sit.

The popular grievences explained to the bishop of Rochester by Wat the Tyler at Blackheath.

Rex et archiepiscopus venerunt per aquam et visis illis archiepiscopus non sinebat Regem ascendere vel loqui cum illis. "Quia," inquit, "circumducent vos "et per vos facient omnia eis placentia." Maior et burgenses London' quærebant a civitate si velint claudere civitatem. Et responderunt quod non contra vicinos et amicos suos. Burgenses London' miserunt quosdam de civitate ad comitivam ut eos prohiberent ex parte civitatis ne regem in sua camera inquietarent et dicerent civitatem contra eos esse armatam. Fol. 194. col. 2.

Ipsi vero nuntii dixerunt, "Venite ad nos, pro vobis missi sumus." Et antequam pervenirent London' ipsi de London' combusserunt Savoye, manerium ducis Lancastriæ, et jocalia sua ibidem inventa projecerunt in Thamisiam, dicentes: "Nolumus esse fures."

The Savoy burned.

[1] Jack Straw, in marg. B.

Quidam bonus vir haraldus armorum dixit se vidisse c.m. hominum et inter eos plures dæmones; qui cœpit infirmari et in brevi postea mortuus est. Venerunt tunc ad civitatem multitudo terribilis, senes decrepiti, juvenes cum securibus et sagittis rubiginosis cum arcubus et baculis, in festo Corporis Christi, et occiderunt illos armigeros qui justiciarios procurabant, quorum unum a feretro Sancti Edwardi extraxerunt, quosdam etiam alios et Flamyngos circa cccc. perimerunt. Aperiebant carceres, vinctos dimittentes, vincula ferrea de Nova Porta obtulerunt in ecclesiam Fratrum Minorum et Marchalciam fregerunt; domos civitatis penetraverunt comedentes et bibentes ac rapientes sine prohibitione. Rex et probissimi milites et burgenses civitatis ita territi erant ut nec ipsis resistere nec ipsam Turrim defendere audebant. In crastino iverunt ad Turrim et dixerunt Regi se velle proditores et malos consiliarios suos occidere, et eductum archiepiscopum Angliæ cancellarium decollabant, ad quemlibet ictum dicentes[1]: "Hæc est manus Domini." Similiter Magistrum Hospitalariorum Thesaurarium Angliæ et alios plures decollabant. Exigebantque a Rege ut omnes suos regni faceret liberos; et Rex tradidit eis literas suas patentes libertatis generales. Sed Rex graviter ista ferens et burgenses timentes ne spoliarent civitatem consulebant cum Roberto Knollis milite quo modo possent eos ejicere. Et Sabbato juxta consilium suum proclamatum fuit in quatuor partibus civitatis quod dux Lancastriæ veniret contra regem et comitivam cum xx. milibus Scotorum; et ideo comitiva convenire deberet in Smythfeld, et ibi Rex ad eos veniret. Ipsi festinabant in Smythfeld et maior civitatis jussit ut civitas armaretur et sequatur Robertum Knollis militem. Rex autem venit in Smythfeld et Walterus tegulator capiciatus accessit ad regem, dicens se velle emendare cartam libertatis quam rex sibi alias

A.D. 1381.

The city attacked.

13 June.

The prisons opened.

Alarm of the king.

The mob proceeds to the Tower;

beheads the archbishop of Canterbury and the Master of the Hospitallers, 14 June.

Sir Robert Knowles sent for.

Fol. 194. v. col. 1.

Interview at Smithfield between Wat the Tyler and the king.

[1] *dicentes*] dicētē. B.

A.D. 1381. tradidit. Cui maior Londoniæ dixit: "Quomodo lo-
"queris tu Regi? Supplica sibi et depone capicium
"tuum." "Tu es proditor," dixit alter. Et statim unus
armiger Regis perfodit eum pugione, deinde maior et
alius burgensis, et mortuus est Walterus tegulator.[1]

Death of Wat the Tyler. Clamabat autem comitiva: "Quid facit Rex cum nostro
"prolocutore?" Dixerunt alii: "Facit eum militem."
Et clamaverunt omnes: "Transite in campum Sancti Jo-
"hannis et veniet ad vos novus miles." Traxeruntque
ipsum miserum in quandam domum, et statim venit
civitas splendide armata et circumdederunt omnes in
campo prædicto, qui sic obsessi perdiderunt corda
nescientes quid agerent. Et Rex interrogabat Robertum Knollis: "Nonne occidentur isti?" Et respondit:
"Non, domine, multi miseri sunt hic inviti." Quibus
dixit Robertus: "Cadite, vos miseri, scindite cordas
"arcuum et recedite. Nullus remaneat hac nocte in
"civitate nec in regione ista sub pœna capitis." Et
statim omnes fugierunt. Et illi qui redierunt Can-

The rebels disperse. tuariam fecerunt proclamationes ordinationum suarum,
et quendam burgensem ibidem reclamantem occide-
runt. Cartas, munimenta, et scripturas in domo judicii
combusserunt. In Southfolk insurrectores priorem de
Bury justiciarium regis decollabant. In Northfolk,
Southsex, et diœcesi Wintoniensi homicidia multa
facta sunt.

Rex transivit in Estsex et Hertfordshyram, comes

Proceedings against them. Canciæ in Canciam, et alii in alias partes regni, et
malefactores trahi fecerunt, suspendi, et decollari,
quosdam in quartas dividentes.

[A.D.] 1382°. Wickliffe attacks religious Orders. Anno Domini 1382°, Johannes Wiccliff Oxoniæ de-
terminavit de religione dicens quod sola religio meritoria
est religio communis Christiana de qua dicit Aposto- Fol. 194, v. col. 1.
lus: "Religio munda et immaculata hæc est," etc.; et
quod omnes aliæ religiones privatæ sunt superstitiosæ,
impertinentes ad salutem, ab hominibus statutæ et ad-

[1] Jak Straw moritur, in marg. B.

inventæ, traditiones, ritus, et doctrinas, ac mandata hominum continentes. Et quod institutores earum ut Benedictus Franciscus et alii albam parietem religionis Christianæ luto suarum traditionum maculaverunt, et animabus Christianorum onus Judaicum imposuerunt. A.D. 1382.

Et quod in statuendo suas religiones peccaverunt. Nec sancti sunt nisi forte quod in morte pœnituerunt. Item quod mendicatio Fratrum validorum est illicita, et quod laborare deberent ad victum acquirendum, secundum Apostolum et Augustinum de operibus monachorum et regulis eorumdem. Discipuli præfati Johannis studuerunt in compilationibus sermonum et sermones fratrum congregaverunt, euntes per totam Angliam doctrinam hujus sui magistri prædicabant, corruperuntque fidem sacramenti Eucharistiæ et devotionem erga Ecclesiam et religionem, non solum in multis popularibus et laicis, sed etiam in nobilibus et literatis. His disciples preach throughout England.

Hoc anno fratrum eleemosinæ subtrahuntur, mendicantes laborare jubentur, prædicare non sinuntur, denariorum prædicatores et domorum penetratores vocantur. Scripserunt insuper libellos famosos in Anglico contra fratres, suos etiam errores in Anglico scripserunt.

Hoc anno Rex Annam sororem imperatoris, Regis scilicet Bohemiæ, solutis pro ea 22. M. marcis sine consensu regni desponsavit. Oblata sibi fuit filia[1] comitis Flandriæ, quam si habuisset jure suo postea Flandriam habuisset. Dux autem Burgundiæ ipsam duxit qui nunc comitatum habet. Richard II. marries Anne of Bohemia. Philip the Hardy alive (ob. 1404.)

Hoc anno orta est dissensio in Flandria quia civitates vel bonæ villæ Flandriæ procurarunt subtractionem privilegiorum Gandavensium; qui rebellantes Anglicorum auxilium petierunt. The Flemings appeal to the English.

[1] *fuit filia*] filia fuit. Da.

A.D. 1382. A tenth and fifteenth granted by parliament, 9 Oct.

Eodem anno factum est parliamentum London' in quo pax cum insurgentibus facta est, et decima ecclesiasticorum et quintadecima laicorum conceduntur.

A great earthquake in England, 21 May. Another.

Hoc autem anno fuit magnus terræ motus per totam Angliam et Flandriam, arbores, domos, ecclesias, campanilia, castra elevans et inclinans, subito post prandium XII. kal. Junii. Et in eadem hebdomada fuit alius terræ motus magnus. Fuit tunc etiam

Fol. 195. col. 1.

An eclipse of the moon.

eclipsis lunæ magna, sanguinea apparens. Statutumque fuit in eodem parliamento quod statuta contra beneficiatos extraneos in Anglia edita perantea et contra ipsorum procuratores firmiter observentur.

[A.D.] 1383. A.D. 1382. The bishop of Norwich obtains authority from the pope to preach a crusade against the anti-pope.

Anno Domini 1383° episcopus Northwicensis magis militari levitate dissolutus quam pontificali maturitate solidus procuravit a papa auctoritatem prædicandi Crucem Christi et debellandi antipapam ac ejus fautores. Papa concessit sibi potestatem illam et indulgentiam concessam euntibus in Terram Sanctam omnibus qui Crucis assumpto caractere[1] cum eo ire vellent vel de bonis suis ei aliquid conferrent. Deditque ei[2] potestatem assumendi secum quoscunque religiosos invitis suis prælatis.

A.D. 1383. An army is proposed to be sent into France by Parliament, Feb.

Hoc anno domini in parliamento proposuerunt mittere exercitum in Franciam. Episcopus ostendebat bullam papæ et petiit licentiam exequendi. Rex laborare noluit. Communitas voluit quod episcopus transiret. Episcopus manucepit bellum ecclesiæ et Franciæ in necessitate. Domini obtulerunt sibi quod transiret sub vexillo alterius domini quem Rex missurus esset. Sed dixit episcopus quod vexillum ecclesiæ foret principale. Item domini dixerunt quod non erat licitum episcopo pugnare. Respondebat quod in causa Domini et papæ bene potuit. Prædicabat autem ipse et sui et promittebant indulgentiam vivis

---

[1] *caractere*] carecte. B. | [2] *ei*] Interlined in B.

et stabant supra sepulchra mortuorum et eos absolvebant, præcipientes Angelo Michaeli ut animas eorum in cœlum deducerent; sicque magnam summam pecuniæ collegerunt. Homines Cruce se signabant, et insolentes omnem quasi domum religiosorum perturbabant et in quibusdam locis silentium et a cultu Divino recesserunt sub colore, ut dixerunt, expugnandi antipapam, qui de facto castitatem expugnabant. Transivit igitur episcopus cum pecunia congregata et stipendio accepto a rege cum armatis sacerdotibus et falsis religiosis; veniensque in Flandriam textores quosdam de Dunkirc sibi obvios occidit et "Conquæstorem Westflandriæ" se vocavit. Scripsitque Regi Franciæ vocans eum schismaticum et regni Franciæ injustum occupatorem, mandavitque sibi schismaticum papam dimittere. Et villam Iprensem obsedit; villani viriliter se defendebant et plures interficiebant; percussitque eos Deus in posteriora et sanguinis fluxu moriebantur.

A.D. 1383.

Progress of the enterprise.

Fol. 195. col. 2.

Battle near Dunkirk, 13 May.

The bishop besieges Ypres.

Sickness of his troops.

Post parvum tempus venit Rex Franciæ cum magno exercitu, et qui venerant ad prædandum sacerdotesque et apostatæ ad mare currebant. Episcopus et milites in villis se clauserunt et intercedente pro eis duce Britanniæ Johanne, de indulgentia Regis Franciæ vix redierunt sanguine fluentes et patriam inficientes. Benedictus Deus qui confundit insolentes!

Advance of the French and flight of the English.

Rex præcepit episcopo dicere psalterium pro hiis quos occidit, et privavit eum temporalibus suis donec persolvisset sibi stipendium quod ab ipso recepit.

The bishop is deprived of his temporalities, 24 Nov.

Eodem anno Rex Armeniæ venit in Franciam et Angliam petens auxilium, et ipsum bene ditatum Rex Angliæ dimisit. In parliamento tunc tento London' statuitur quod raptor mulieris et mulier assentiens raptori ipso facto erunt inhabiles ad hæreditatem et dotem et tam hæreditas quam dos ad proximos revertentur.

A.D. 1385–6.

The King of Armenia visits England.

[A.D.] 1384°. Anno Domini 1384° Gallici cum Scotis fœdati tres exercitus in Angliam ordinarunt: unum qui cum Scotis duce Johanne de Vienna, probatissimo milite Franciæ, et alios duos exercitus[1] qui in Oriente et Occidente Angliam simul intrarent. Rex tunc accepto prudentium et veteranorum militum consilio exercitum non dimisit, sed cum toto exercitu suo C.M. armatorum continente in Scociam perrexit. Et sic Scoti nec Gallici cum Rege pugnare audebant, sed de fenestris castrorum Anglicos aspiciebant. Alii autem duo exercitus non venerunt. Et Rex combusta villa de Edinburgh' rediit in Angliam et avunculum suum Edmundum ducem Eborum et alium avunculum suum Thomam ducem Gloverniæ vocari præcepit.

A.D. 1385. The king invades Scotland; and burns Edinburgh.

Fol. 195. v. col. 1.

A.D. 1386. Expedition of the duke of Lancaster into Spain. Anno Domini 1385°, dux Lancastriæ, qui quondam filiam Petri Regis Hispaniæ duxerat in uxorem, collecta etiam magna pecunia per indulgentiam papalem, cum juventute regni transf[r]etavit in Hispaniam jure uxoris ibi regnare disponens. Rex autem Hispaniæ dixit se nolle pugnare cum eis, sed solus pro eo pugnabit; collegit omnia victualia præter novellos fructus in vineis et arboribus intra castra et villas muratas. Et Rex Franciæ propter ligam cum rege Hispaniæ et armorum suorum vendicationem collegit classem magnam in portu de Sclusa, fecitque sibi navem rubiam in signum sanguinis effundendi, ibidem diu jacens et expectans ventum voluit, ut dixit, in Angliam transfretare. Nihil tamen contra eum ordinatum fuit, nisi quod domini circa London' morarentur et feretrum Sancti Thomæ[2] Cantuariensis Symoni de Burley constabulario Doveriæ tradebatur custodiendum in castro Doveriæ, et ordinatum fuit quod omnes homines recederent cum bonis suis ab Insula Thaneti et eam vacuam dimitterent; sed hoc monachi Cantuarienses et insulani non patiebantur. Et tum sapientes de

The king of France assembles a large fleet at Sluys.

The shrine of S. Thomas of Canterbury delivered to the constable of Dover Castle.

The isle of Thanet ordered to be evacuated.

[1] *exercitus*] Interlined in B. | [2] Feretrum Sancti Thomæ, in marg. B.

impedimento Regis Franciæ satis prudenter consulebant. Rex tunc in absentia ducis Lancastriæ consiliis comitis Oxoniæ, juvenis quem ducem Hiberniæ vocari præceperat, Michaelis de la Pole, cancellarii Symonis prædicti, et aliorum adulatorum consiliis adhæsit. A.D. 1386.

Cum autem Rex Franciæ ventum habere non posset et equi ejus in mari mortui essent reversus est, Deo regnum Angliæ protegente, non homine. The king of France leaves Sluys.

Eodem anno, ut supradictum est, dominus Johannes de Gaunt dux Lancastriæ profectus est in Hispanniam cum magna juventute militari ad vendicandum jus suum in regno Hispanniæ contingens eum ex parte uxoris suæ, ducens secum ducissam uxorem suam et tres filias suas. Et post aliquantulam ibidem moram postque habito tractatu inter Regem Hispanniæ prætensum et dictum ducem conventum est quod præfatus Rex seniorem filiam ducis quæ erat hæres et proxima regno Hispanniæ desponsaret solvendo duci magnam auri et argenti summam in manibus et postmodum omni anno durante vita ducis Rex solveret aut solvi faceret eidem duci decem milia librarum quæ ad onus et expensas Regis Hispanniæ adduci et deferri deberent ad Bayonam per sufficientem securitatem inde dicto duci et assignatis suis factam. Quo etiam tempore dux ille maritavit alteram filiarum suarum Regi Portugaliæ. Progress of the Spanish expedition of the duke of Lancaster. A.D. 1388. Marriage of Catherine, daughter of the duke, and the king of Castile. A.D. 1387. The duke marries his daughter (Philippa) to the king ofPortugal.

Fol. 195. v. col. 2.

Anno Domini 1386° post festum Sancti Michaelis factum est parliamentum Londoniis in quo cum propositum fuit ex parte Regis quæ fuit causa convocationis parliamenti, videlicet ut ordinetur remedium contra Regem Franciæ et inimicos exteriores, et dux Gloucestriæ et comites Arundell' ac Warwici et eis assistentes responderunt quod prius oporteret ordinare contra inimicos intraneos, videlicet, Michaelem de la Pole cancellarium et alios multos, Rex de consilio Michaelis parliamentum dissolvit et omnes abire præcepit. Qui jam congregati pro salute regni in periculo existentis tractare se velle dicebant. Rex ad parliamentum venire noluit. Illi autem miserunt pro statuto [A.D. 1386.] A Parliament at Westminster, 1 Oct. The impeachment of the chancellor, &c. resolved on. Parliament dissolved; but continues sitting. The king refuses

A.D. 1386. to appear, but is compelled. pro quo medius Edwardus fuit adjudicatus, et sub pœna illius statuti Regem venire compellebant, et Michaelem, objectis criminibus diversis et præcipue

Charges against the chancellor. quod colligi fecisset collectam Sancti Antonii Viennæ in regno prohibitam, quam collectam sumpsisset in usus suos, item quod cartas albas sigillasset et contra Regem Franciæ nihil ordinasset et quod officio suo ad

He is condemned to perpetual imprisonment. detrimentum regni usus fuisset, de officio cancellariæ et honore comitis deponebant et perpetuo carceri in castro de Corf adjudicabant et loco ejus Thomam de Arundell' episcopum Eliensem statuerunt cancellarium.

Thomas Arundel. Bishop of Ely, app. chancellor. Rex autem misit Michaelem ad castrum de Windelsore; deinde quia in anterioribus parliamentis dictum est quod proventus coronæ non sufficiebant congruo honori domus regiæ et sub isto colore semper tallagia exacta fuerunt, exigebant a Rege quod concederet episcopis Cantuariæ, Eborum, Wintoniæ, Eliensis, ducibus Eborum et Gloucestriæ, comitibus Arundell' et Warwici, abbati de Waltham et Johanni de Cobham baroni, et commissionem eis faceret usque ad Natale Domini, nisi parliamentum interveniret, recipiendi omnes coronæ proventus, disponendique de[1] eis, castra et maneria ejus intrandi, officiales amovendi, et novos instituendi, domumque regiam et regni negotia ordinandi. Concessitque eis parliamentum quod si necesse viderent tallagium levarent. Huic commissioni oportuit Regem consentire, præcepitque Thomæ cancellario prædictam commissionem sigillare, quod et factum est ad mandatum suum sub suo signeto.

Fol. 196. col. 1.

A commission to receive the crown revenues, &c. required by the Parliament;

and conceded by the king.

The king restores the ex-chancellor to liberty. Comes de Arundell' factus est custos maris. Et soluto parliamento Rex Michaelem de la Pole London' per[2] præconem comitem Suffolchiæ vocari fecit atque eum libertati restituit.[3]

A.D. 1385. A parliament at Westminster, 20 Oct. Anno autem nono hujus Regis Ricardi Rex tenuit magnum parliamentum apud Westmonasterium in quo

[1] *de*] Interlined in B.
[2] *per*] Interlined in B.
[3] *restituit*] restit^{t}. B.

Edmundum de Langley avunculum suum tunc comitem Cornubiæ fecit ducem Eborum, Thomam de Wodstok alterum avunculum suum tunc comitem Bokyngham fecit ducem Gloucestriæ, Robertum Veer comitem Oxoniæ fecit marchionem Dublenensem ; Henricum de Bolynbrok filium ducis Lancastriæ fecit comitem Derebeie, Edwardum filium ducis Eborum fecit comitem Ruthlandiæ, Johannem Holand fratrem comitis Kanciæ fecit comitem Hontingdoniæ, Thomam Mowbray comitem Notingham fecit marescallum Angliæ, et Michaelem de la Pole militem fecit comitem Suffolchiæ. A.D. 1385. Edmund de Langley, earl of Cornwall (Cambridge), made duke of York; Thomas of Woodstock, earl of Buckingham, made duke of Gloucester, &c.

In eodem etiam parliamento in communi audientia omnium dominorum et communitatis Rex comitem Marchiæ hæredem fore proximum ad coronam Angliæ post ipsum publice fecerat proclamari. Qui quidem comes modicò tempore post in Hibernia interemptus fuit. Comes Arundell' omnes naves Regis Franciæ alias præparatas in Angliam de Rupella revertentes bonis vinis oneratas cepit et hominibus occisis duxit in Angliam ad portum de Winchelse. The earl of March proclaimed heir to the crown.

Fol. 196. col. 2.

Anno Domini 1387° Rex in castro de Notingham[1] 25° die mensis Augusti convocatis capitalibus justiciariis suis[2] et uno serviente ad legem proposuit has quæstiones quæ sequuntur, præcipiens eis firmiter in fide et ligeantia sua quod fideliter secundùm leges Angliæ ad eas responderent. [A.D.] 1387°. A council at Nottingham, 25 Aug.

In primis quærebatur[3] ab eis an illa novum statutum et ordinatio atque commissio facta in ultimo parliamento derogent regaliæ et prærogativæ Regis. Qui unanimiter respondebant dicentes quod derogant eo quod fuerant edita contra voluntatem Regis.

Item quærebatur qualiter illi essent puniendi qui Regem excitaverunt ad consentiendum commissioni. Responderunt quod pœna capitali sunt merito puniendi.

---

[1] *Notingham*] Notinghm[a]. B. Nottinghamia. Da.

[2] *suis*] om. Da.

[3] Mirabiles quæstiones, in marg. B.

A.D. 1387. A council at Nottingham, 25 Aug.

Item quærebatur qualiter illi qui commissionem prædictam fieri procurarunt sunt puniendi. Responderunt quod pœna capitis si Rex eis gratiose non indulgeat.

Item quærebatur ab eis qualem pœnam merentur illi qui compulerunt regem ad consentiendum commissioni. Responderunt quod sunt ut proditores merito puniendi.

Item quærebatur ab eis quomodo etiam sunt illi puniendi qui impediverunt Regem quominus exercere potuit quæ ad regaliam suam pertinent. Responderunt quod sunt ut proditores puniendi.

Item quæsitum fuit ab eis an postquam parliamento congregato negotia regni et causa congregationis parliamenti de mandato regis fuerint exposita et declarata, ac certi articuli limitati per Regem, super quibusdam et cæteri communes regni in eodem parliamento procedere debeant, si domini et communitas super aliis articulis voluerint omnino (?) procedere et nullatenus super articulis per Regem ministratis donec super articulis per eosdem expressatis fuerit per ipsum Regem primo responsum, non obstante quod fuerat eis injunctum per Regem in contrarium, numquid Rex debeat habere in ea parte regimen parliamenti, et de facto regere ad effectum quod super articulis limitatis per Regem primo debeant procedere, vel quod domini et communes primo debeant habere responsum a Rege super articulis per ipsos ministratis antequam ulterius procedatur. Responderunt unanimiter quod Rex in ea parte haberet regimen et sic seriatim in omnibus aliis articulis tangentibus parliamentum usque ad finem ejusdem parliamenti. Et siquis contra hujusmodi regimen Regis faceret tanquam proditor est puniendus. Fol. 196. v col. 1.

Item quærebatur ab eis numquid Rex quandocumque sibi placuerit poterit dissolvere parliamentum et suis dominis ac communibus præcipere quod recedant an non. Responderunt quod potest, et siquis extunc contra voluntatem Regis procedat ut in parliamento tanquam proditor est puniendus.

Item quærebatur ex quo Rex potest quandocumque sibi placuerit removere quoscumque officiarios et justiciarios eos ac ipsos pro delictis eorum punire, numquid domini et communes possunt a[b]sque voluntate Regis officiarios ipsos impetere super delictis eorum in parliamento an non. Responderunt quod non possunt et siquis contrarium fecerit est ut proditor puniendus. A.D. 1387. A council at Nottingham, 25 Aug.

Item quærebatur qualiter ille est puniendus qui movebat in parliamento quod mitteretur pro statuto pro quo Rex Edwardus secundus erat alias adjudicatus in parliamento, per cujus statuti impositionem novum statutum et ordinatio ac commissio prædicta fuerunt in parliamento concepta. Responderunt quod tam ille qui sic movebat in parliamento quam ille alius qui prætextu hujus motionis statutum illud portavit ad parliamentum sunt ut proditores puniendi.

Item quærebatur an judicium in ultimo parliamento redditum contra comitem Suffolchiæ fuerit erroneum [1] et revocabile an non. Responderunt quod si esset reddendum ipsi non redderent quia videbatur [2] eis quod esset judicium revocabile tanquam erroneum in sua parte.

In quorum omnium testimonium justiciarii et serviens prædicti sigilla sua responsionibus suis apposuerunt coram [3] testibus ad præmissa vocatis reverendis patribus dominis Alexandro archiepiscopo Eborum, Roberto archiepiscopo Dubliniæ, Johanne episcopo Dunolmensi, Thoma Cicestriæ episcopo, Johanne Bangorensi episcopo, Roberto duce Hiberniæ, et Michaele comite Fol. 196. v. col. 2. Suffolchiæ, Johanne Rypon clerico, ac Johanne Blake scutifero.

Isti autem justiciarii fuerunt de consilio dominorum in parliamento præteriti,[4] et unus eorum postquam

---

[1] *erroneum*] herroneum. B.
[2] *videbatur*] v̄r. B.
[3] *coram*] Interlined in B.
[4] *præteriti*] p̄ce^{ti}. B. præterito. Da. Perhaps a mistake for *præcepti*.

A.D. 1387. recesserat de castro dixit: "Jam meruimus cordas quibus
"suspendamur quia timore mortis hæc dicta fuerunt
"et non de veritate." Rex misit pro duce Gloucestriæ,
The king sends for the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick. comitibus Arundell et Warwici, ponens insidias in viis ad capiendum eos. Ipsi vero, his per amicos auditis, cum forti comitiva in silva de Haryngay juxta London' convenerunt. Rex de consilio unius burgensis London'[1] venit ad Westmonasterium, sperans auxilio London'[1] ipsos debellare. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis supplicabat Regi quod placeret sibi admittere eos[2] ad præsentiam suam sine nocumento et cum eis de pace tractare. Et accepto juramento a rege ivit et adduxit eos coram rege sedente in magna aula. Exercitus eorum foris erat. Et, ait Rex, "Qua temeritate audetis vos
"insurgere et contra pacem regni mei vos armare?"
Respondit dux Gloucestriæ: "Nos non insurgimus
"neque nos armamus nos contra pacem regni sed ad
"tuitionem vitæ contra inimicos nostros et regni, in
"quo casu quilibet homo potest arma portare. Peti-
"musque et vos requirimus quod fiat parliamentum
"statim post Purificationem Beatæ Virginis. Et in
"judicio parliamenti nos ponemus nos; et custodiatis
"inimicos nostros, vestros adulatores, faciatisque ibi-
"dem esse præsentes." Et ait Rex: "Parliamentum
"habebis et eis non nocebis, et te faciam ita[3] infi-
"mum sicut minimum garcionem coquinæ tuæ." Cui dux: "Non me inferiorem facietis quam filium Regis;" et genuflectens se dixit: "Filius sum Regis." Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis supplicavit[4] Regi quod admitteret eos in crastino in eodem loco et reformationi
He goes to the Tower. consentiret, concessitque Rex. Sed in crastino mutans propositum transivit ad Turrim. In crastino vero domini venerunt cum exercitu suo in campum Sancti

He goes to Westminster, 10 Nov.

---

[1] *London'*] Londoniensium. Da.
[2] *admittere eos*] eos admittere. Da.
[3] *ita*] Interlined in B.
[4] *supplicavit*] supplica[t]. B. supplicabat. Da.

fol. 197. col. 1.

Johannis et miserunt pro majore London' qui duxit eos in[1] aulam communem civitatis et amicitiam civitatis susceperunt. Rex vero misit pro eis ut loquerentur cum eo in Turri. Qui respondentes dixerunt locum non esse tutum, sed extra Turrim cum eo loqui parati fuerunt. Rex jussit maiorem venire, cui mandavit armare civitatem. "Absit, domine," dixit maior, "ligei "et fideles vestri sunt et amici regni." Rex eum ejecit et misit ducem Hiberniæ cum literis suis patentibus et vexillo suo ut Cestrenses et cæteros Occidentales adduceret. Et domini, adjunctis sibi comite de Derby filio ducis Lancastriæ, comite de Notyngham marescallo, et adaucto exercitu, transeundo obviaverunt duci venienti cum vexillo regis expanso prope Oxoniam. Quidam miles prudens exivit[2] de exercitu ducis Hiberniæ ut videret qui essent, et reversus dixit duci: "Hic "sunt constabularius et marescallus Angliæ et præci- "pui domini regni; quomodo habuistis literas ves- "tras?"[3] Cui ait dux: "Nonne vultis pugnare "contra eos?" Respondit miles: "Absit." Et dux urgebat equum ultra Thamisiam cum suo confessore de ordine Minorum magistro in theologia, et fugiit. Cestrenses, scissis cordis arcuum et cum arcubus suis verberati, turpiter redierunt. Militemque principalem ducis Hiberniæ consiliarium decollabant, et tulerunt ab eis vexillum Regis et ipsum volventes plicabant. Dux autem Hiberniæ festinavit in insulam de Shipeye[4] et inde in[5] Alemaniam fugit. Et Michael[6] de la Pole similiter evasit. Item Alexander Nevyle archiepiscopus Eborum ad partes ivit transmarinas, et nunquam reversi sunt.

A.D. 1387.

The duke and earls refuse to enter it, 26 Dec.

The king commands the mayor to arm the city.

The duke of Ireland sent to assemble the men of Chester and the West; meets the lords near Oxford, 20 Dec.

Escape of the duke of Ireland into Germany; of Michael de la Pole, and the archbishop of York.

Et prædicti quinque domini, videlicet, dux Gloucestriæ, Ricardus comes Arundell', Ricardus comes War-

---

[1] *in*] D. B. ad. Da.
[2] *exivit*] exiu^{t}. B. exiit. Da.
[3] *vestras*] vr̃as. B. veras. Da.
[4] *Shipeye*] Shipaye. Da.
[5] *in*] ī. B. ad. Da.
[6] *Michael*] Michaelis. Da.

A.D. 1387. wici, Henricus Bolyngbrok comes Derbeie, et Thomas Mowbray comes Notyngham[1] in destructionem prædictorum rebellium et aliorum cum eis venientium apud Rotcotbrigge[2] ceperunt et interfecerunt multos, et quasi omnes, exceptis fugientibus.

A.D. 1388. A parliament at Westminster. 3 Feb. Et tunc prædicti qui[n]que domini statuerunt parliamentum apud Westmonasterium, ubi Robertus Tresylian justitiarius, Nicholas Brembre miles, civis London, et alii plures morti adjudicantur et ob proditionem[3] eis impositam tracti et suspensi sunt. Et in eodem parliamento Symon de Berle valens miles de jartero[4] et Johannes Beauchamp miles senescallus hospitii Regis, Jacobus Berniers miles et alii capti fuerunt et apud Turrim London, decollati. Deinde dicti quinque domini coram justiciariis se statuerunt et in omnibus eis impositis justificantur. Et ne aliqui eorum adversarii se excusare possent per hoc quod nihil fecissent dignum mortis secundum legem Angliæ vel per mandatum Regis statuerunt legem de assensu parliamenti pro tempore ejusdem parliamenti tantummodo valituram; videlicet si parliamentum aliquem appellaret de crimine quia cum parliamento pugnare non posset sine ratione damnaretur. Et fecerunt parliamentum appellare quosdam de certis criminibus ut de tractatibus habitis cum Rege Franciæ de terris ultramarinis reddendis et aliis de quibus rei non fuerunt. Et ducem Hiberniæ, Michaelem, et Alexandrum archiepiscopum Eborum perpetuo damnabant exilio; Johannem Blake trahi et suspendi fecerunt. Episcopus insuper Cicestrensis frater Prædicator et alii justitiarii cum serviente ad legem exilio in Hiberniam relegantur. Et duravit hoc parliamentum a festo Purificationis usque ad festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, contendente cum eis Rege et dicente quod

Fol. 197. col. 2.

The five lords exhibit articles against the duke of Ireland, Michael de la Pole, the archbishop of York, &c.;

who are sentenced.

[1] *Notingham*] Notinghm. B. Nottinghamiæ. Da.

[2] *Rotcotbrigge*] Radcolbrigge. Da.

[3] *proditionem*] ꝑdicõem. B. prædicationem. Da.

[4] *jartero*] garterio. Da.

feloniam non commiserunt et appellationem interposi- A.D. 1388.
tam fuisse, sed non potuit quemquam salvare. Statuta
hujus parliamenti observare omnes jurare fecerunt et
burgenses civitatum, et quod nullus illis statutis con-
traveniat vel ad revocationis alicujus intercedat. Tan- The king compelled to renew his coronation oath, 3 June.
dem Regem jurare fecerunt noviter quod leges Regni
observaret et quod non adulatorum sed parliamenti et
dominorum consiliis adhæreret. Nec alicui eorum pro
his ita gestis malum inferret. In cujus rei testimo-
nium patentes literas plenæ indulgentiæ Rex fieri fecit.
Qui tamen ista graviter semper ferebat et domini dixe-
runt inter se nunquam omnes tres simul in præsentia
sua convenire.

Fol. 197. v. col. 1. Hoc anno magister Johannes Wikklif moritur; cujus A.D. 1384. Death of Wickliffe. 31 Dec.
corpus apud Lutterworth sepelitur. Sed postea per
sententiam universalem Ecclesiæ fuit exhumatum et
ossa sua fuerunt combusta.

Eodem anno archiepiscopus Cantuariæ in convoca-
tione cleri London' statuit nullos sacerdotes debere
prædicare nisi fuerint per diocesanos admissi.

Anno Domini 1388. Robertus Knoll' ædificavit et [A.D.] 1388°. Rochester bridge rebuilt. Mortality in the army of the duke of Lancaster in Spain. A.D. 1389. He returns to England.
construi fecit Pontem Rofensem. Hoc anno juventus
et hæredes nobilium Angliæ perierunt in Hispannia, et
rex Hispanniæ statuit cum duce præliari; dux autem
transivit in Portugaliam et tradidit filiam suam in
matrimonio regi Portugaliæ, divulgavitque per Hispan-
niam quod ipse misisset in Angliam pro alio exercitu.
Rex Hispanniæ hoc credens quibusdam intervenientibus
pro certa summa pecuniæ composuit cum duce, qui
statim post rediit in Angliam.

Anno Domini 1389, in parliamento tento London' [A.D.] 1389° A.D. 1390. A parliament. A.D. 1392. The king asks money of the Londoners.
Rex retraxit quædam privilegia Londoniensium et ut
mercatores extrinseci possent dividere merces suas et
per partes vendere in civitate concessit. Post hoc Rex
misit Londoniensibus ut aurum sibi accommodarent; et
ipsi se excusabant, dicentes se non esse aliis mercato-
ribus potentiores. Tunc Rex vocavit ad Woodstok

A.D. 1392. He summons the mayor and sheriffs, &c., to Woodstock.

majorem London', vicecomites et alios civitatis rectores qui coram justiciariis statuti sunt. Quibus sic ait: "In civitate London' pistores in x. quarteriis frumenti vj. ß. viij. đ. excessive lucrantur. Similiter brasiatores in x. quarteriis ordei vj. ß. viij. đ. excessive lucrantur. Et sic carnifices in x. bobus." Si major et vicecomites ista negassent, duodena miserorum ipsa affirmassent, ideo secundum consilium eis datum posuerunt se in gratia Regis. Et justiciarius dixit: "Juxta statuta regni non solum in civitate vestra sed in aliis Rex aufert a vobis regimen civitatis pro vestro malo regimine." Posuitque tunc rex in civitate novos officiarios suos. Postea Londonienses magnam summam auri collegerunt ita quod quidam propter illam collectam fugerunt de civitate. Et regem venientem cum maxima solempnitate tanquam Angelum Dei susceperunt, tradideruntque sibi claves civitatis et in auro XL. M^l. li. ei obtulerunt. Et sic regimen civitatis receperunt.

A.D. 1393. The king visits the city, 21 Aug.

A.D. 1389. Death of Urban VI. 18 Oct.

Hoc anno Urbanus papa moritur. Et Bonifacius eligitur.

[A.D.] 1390. The archbishop of York elected cardinal.

Anno Domini 1390°. Bonifacius vocavit archiepiscopum Eborum ad cardinalatum, et omnes ditiores episcopos Angliæ transferre nitebatur ut primos fructus suarum ecclesiarum perciperet. Summæ sacerdotum Romam peregrinantium pro beneficiis adquirendis in portu Doueriæ et summa[1] pecuniæ traditæ per escambium mercatorum ad parliamentum Wintoniæ deferuntur. Et ibi statutum fuit firmiter tenendum quod papa non sinatur transferre episcopos nec extra regnum nec infra sine assensu regis. Et quod nullus amodo capiat beneficium a papa; sed ecclesiastici patroni conferant sua beneficia juxta intentionem laicorum qui jus patronatus eis contulerunt. Et super hoc omnes promiserunt Regi assistentiam sicut pro corona.

Fol. 197. b. col. 2.

A.D. 1393. A parliament at Winchester, 20 Jan.

---

[1] *summa*] sm. B. summæ. Da.

Hoc anno fuit in Anglia magna pestilentia quam "Quintam Pestilentiam" vocabant. A.D. 1390.

Anno Domini 1391° nihil hic scribitur, quia regnum Angliæ fuit in malo statu. A.D. 1391.

Anno Domini M°CCC°. nonagesimo secundo Rex splendide pavit[1] capitulum Fratrum Minorum apud Sarum, et comedit cum eis ibidem in refectorio, habens secum Reginam Annam, episcopos et alios dominos in festo Assumptionis Beatæ Mariæ et ibidem utebatur regalibus et corona. A.D. 1392. 15 Aug.

Quid autem actum est in regno annis Domini 1393° et 1394° hic non scribitur propter varietatem regni Angliæ. A.D. 1393. A.D. 1394.

Anno Domini 1395°, dux Lancastriæ de mandato Regis transivit[2] in Franciam et tractavit de pace cum Rege Franciæ Ambianis; et rex fecit omnes expensas et dedit sibi et cuilibet de sua familia magna donaria. A.D. 1392. The duke of Lancaster sent to France to treat of peace at Amiens.

Anno Domini 1396°, factum est parliamentum Londoniis, ad quod rediens dux Lancastriæ formam pacis in tractatu habitam expressit; videlicet, quod Rex Ricardus Angliæ arma Franciæ, Calesiam et omnia conquæsta per Edwardum dimitteret, et omnia quæ Edwardi erant ante vendicationem[3] regni Franciæ cum residuo redemptionis Johannis Regis Franciæ possideret. Et dixit quod arma Franciæ portare non prodest et Calesia plus nocet regno Angliæ in expensis quam prodest; sed dux Gloucestriæ, comites Arundell' et Warwici omnino[4] contradixerunt. A.D. 1393. He returns to England. A.D. 1394. A parliament at Westminster, 27 Jan. The duke of Gloucester, &c. oppose the peace with France.

In hoc parliamento dux Lancastriæ petiit quod filius suus Henricus judicaretur hæres regni Angliæ; cui contradixit comes Marchiæ asserens se descendisse a domino Leonello, secundo filio Edwardi Regis. Econtrario dux dicebat quod Rex Henricus Tertius habuit duos [filios], Edmundum seniorem et primogenitum, et Edwardum. fol. 198. col. 1.

---

[1] *pavit*] pauit. B. paravit. Da.

[2] *transivit*] transiuᵗ. B. transiit. Da.

[3] *vendicationem*] vendicac̃oeꝫ. B. vendicationes. Da.

[4] *omnino*] oĩo. B. omnia. Da.

A.D. 1394. Qui tamen Edmundus dorsum habuit fractum, et propter hoc judicavit seipsum indignum esse ad coronam; quare pater eorum eos sic componere fecit, quod Edwardus regnaret, et post eum hæredes Edmundi, et dedit Edmundo comitatum Lancastriæ; et ab eo descendit Henricus filius ejus jure matris, quæ fuit filia dicti Edmundi. Cui respondit comes, dicens, hoc non esse verum, "sed "Edwardus fuit primogenitus, et Edmundus vir ele- "gantissimus[1] et nobilis miles, prout in chronicis patenter "continetur." Rex autem imposuit eis silentium.

A.D. 1390. The duke of Lancaster created duke of Aquitaine, 2 March. Item, in hoc parliamento dux Lancastriæ petiit Regem dare sibi ducatam Aquitanniæ, sub certa annua pensione, et ipse pro posse totum acquireret, sicut et[2] rex Franciæ dedit illum cuidam militi, sub eadem conditione. Sed dux Gloucestriæ, comites Arundell' et Warwic', omnino contradixerunt, dicentes, pertinentia ad coronam esse satis pauca. Rex tamen concessit.

A.D. 1394. Hoc anno, Hibernici veri Anglici auxilium contra puros Hibernicos petierunt. Quibus Rex dixit se velle Hiberniam adire, et ideo exegit decimam cleri et quintamdecimam laicorum ut in parliamento solebat, statuens quod omnes nativi de Hibernia in Hiberniam remearent,[3] dicens paucos Hibernicos esse ibidem, quare dicti puri Hibernici prævalent ibidem. Dotati vero Hibernici in Anglia et ecclesiastici promoti dato auro ab hoc statuto sunt exempti. Et rex cum exercitu transivit in Hiberniam, ubi, agente quodam fratre de Ordine Prædicatorum, fuit ipse in periculo adversariorum. Sed frater captus, missus est ad Turrim London'; qui postea ad preces provincialis carceri sui ordinis est liberatus.

The king crosses over to Ireland.

The duke of Lancaster goes to Aquitain. Hoc autem anno dux Lancastriæ transivit in Aquitanniam, ut ducatum sibi adquireret; sed Burdegalia et aliæ civitates, ipsum excluserunt, dicentes, quod a

---

[1] *elegantissimus*] erat. add. Da.

[2] *et*] om. Da.

[3] *remearent*] The *earent* is on an erasure in B.

tempore Secundi Henrici, qui jure suæ uxoris illum ducatum possedit, semper iste ducatus tenuit[1] de Rege Angliæ, "et si Rex Angliæ nos noluerit habere, tene- A.D. 1394.
fol. 198. col. 2. "bimus de nobismet[2] ipsis."

Hoc anno Makamor et quidam alii principales pu-rorum Hibernicorum capti fuerunt, quos Rex duxit in Angliam et honorifice satis tractavit. Dux vero Lan- A.D. 1395.
castriæ, spe frustratus, rediit.

Hoc etiam anno moritur domina Anna Regina[3] Angliæ, in manerio de Shene, et apud Westmonaste- A.D. 1394. Death of Queen Anne at Sheen, 7 June.
rium sepelitur; quod factum fuit anno xviij° Regni regis Ricardi; qua quidem Regina mortua Rex ob- 3 Aug.
tulit Regi Franciæ treugas triginta annorum, petens filiam suam in uxorem.

Hoc anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis moritur, et A.D. 1396. The archbishop of Canterbury ob., 31 July.
Thomas de Arundell' a monachis Cantuariæ postulatur. Et Rex, vocato duce Lancastriæ et multis comitibus et nobilibus, installationi suæ solemniter affuit, æstimans quod frater suus venisset ad solemnitatem; quem de facto ibidem cepisset si venisset.

Anno Domini 1397°, et anno regni regis Ricardi vi- [A.D.] 1397°.
cesimo, Rex transivit ad Calesiam et cum Rege Franciæ A.D. 1396.
extra Calesiam loquebatur et desponsavit filiam suam[4] The king marries
in Calesia, cum magna gloria et pompa, in ecclesia Sancti Isabella of France.
Nicholai ibidem, Isabellam nomine, tunc novem an-norum existentem; quam solemniter et in magnis expensis duxit in Angliam; quæ fuit cito post coronata apud Westmonasterium.

Et post adventum suum in Angliam, vocavit archi- A.D. 1397. Her coronation, 7 Jan.
episcopum Cantuariensem, rogans eum ut adduceret ad se comitem Arundell', fratrem suum. Cui archiepiscopus dixit: "Facietis sibi malum si venerit." Cui Rex, The king asks the archbishop of Canterbury to bring the earl of Arundel before him;
hoc negans, assecuravit eum, jurando sibi super Corpus

[1] Titulus Regis ad Aquitanniam. in marg. B.

[2] *nobismet*] nosmet. Da.

[3] Anna Regina moritur. in marg. B. in rubric.

[4] nova regina, in marg. B. in rubric.

A.D. 1397. Christi statim post missam archiepiscopi. Archiepiscopus autem, cum magna instantia, fratrem suum timentem[1] duxit ad præsentiam Regis apud Westmonasterium.

whom he delivers to the earl of Nottingham,

Quo viso dixit Rex comiti de Notyngham:[2] "Curam "habeas de comite isto Arundell';" et statim transivit in cameram. Comes vero de Notyngham[2] duxit comitem Arundell' in aliam cameram, et clausit ostium. Archiepiscopus autem expectavit usque ad vesperam, et tristis rediit ad domum suam apud Lambhith.[3]

and next day sends to Carisbrook castle.

In crastino rex tradidit comitem cuidam inimico suo, ut in castro de Wight ipsum custodiret, et statim omnia[4] bona sua confiscavit.[5]

Arrest of the earl of Warwick.

Comitem vero Warwici cepit in in curia sua, quem misit in Turrim. Et statim, cum turba magna, transivit[6] ad mansionem ducis Gloucestriæ in Exsex',[7] vocatam Plasshe; quo capto, dixit sibi rex:

The king goes to the manor of Pleshy and arrests the earl of Gloucester,

"Tu non vis ad me venire, pro aliquo nuntio; ego "igitur ad te venio, et te aresto." Cui ait dux: "Gra- "tiose agatis mecum salvando vitam meam." Cui fol. 198. v. col. 1. Rex: "Illam gratiam habebis quam præstitisti Symoni "de Burley, cum Regina pro eo coram te genuflecteret; "legas ista," tradens sibi cedulam[8] accusationis suæ. Et cum dux legisset: "Ad ista respondebimus." Et

whom he sends to Calais.

Rex commisit eum comiti de Notingham capitaneo Calesiæ ut in castro ibidem ipsum custodiret. Et postea transivit[6] in partes Occidentales Angliæ, et collegit exercitum vocavitque Gallos in auxilium. Qui cum lanceis elevatis venerunt per medium regni. Misitque ad singulos episcopos, abbates, et generosos atque mercatores, et sub colore mutui aurum[9] ipsorum nunquam persolvendum[10] extorsit in tanta quantitate quod unus simplex generosus solvit XL.li.

---

[1] *timentem*] timētē. B. timenter. Da.

[2] *Notyngham*] Notynghm. B. Notynghamiæ. Da.

[3] *Lambhith*] Lambhithe. Da.

[4] *omnia*] om. Da.

[5] *confiscavit*] confiscantur. Da.

[6] *transivit*] tnsiu. B. transiit. Da.

[7] *Exsex*] Essex. Da.

[8] *cedulam*] schedulam. Da.

[9] *aurum*] auz. B. auri. Da.

[10] *persolvendum*] psoluēd. B. persolvendi. Da.

Ibi autem præcesserunt[1] comites Rutlandiæ, Cantiæ, Huntingdoniæ, Sarum, Notingham,[2] marchio Dubluniæ et alii appellantes ducem Gloucestriæ, comites Arundell' et Warwici de criminibus læsæ majestatis perpetratis anno regni regis X° et XI°. A.D. 1397.

Et rex misit unum justitiarum ad ducem Gloucestriæ ut ab eo quæreret quomodo ad appellationes responderet. Et dux manu propria scribendo in Anglico respondebat, literam sigillabat, et regi mittebat. Justitiarius prudenter ita literam regi tradidit quod habuit penes se copiam sigillo Regis consignatam. Cumque responsio ducis regi non placeret mandavit sub pœna mortis comiti de Notyngham[3] quod ipsum occideret. Et ipse transiit ad Calesiam et ibidem famuli comitis cum lecto[4] plumali super ducem posito ipsum viliter suffocabant occulte, divulgantes ipsum morte naturali obiisse. William Rickhill sent to the duke of Gloucester, (17 Aug.) 5 Sept.; who returns his answer, 8 Sept. Murder of the duke at Calais, Sept.

Deinde post Exaltationem Sanctæ Crucis venit ad parliamentum Rex equitans terribiliter per medium London', cum c.mł.[5] armatorum quorum tamen multi ficti erant. Et tenuit parliamentum cum confœderatis suis in magno tentorio quod in pavimento Westmonasterii statuerat. Et ne episcopi, abbates, vel[6] clerici intromitterent[7] se in parliamento, fecit eos et clerum compromittere vices suas in dominum Thomam Percy, militem senescallum sui hospitii. Et in hoc parliamento non secundum legem Angliæ sed secundum jura civilia processerunt. Nec legis periti Angliæ se ibi intromittebant. Et primo Rex, ad supplicationem et petitionem sui parliamenti, revocavit commissionem aliam[8] A parliament at Westminster, 17 Sept. Sir Thos. Percy procurator of the clergy, 18 Sept. The commission 18 Nov. 10 Ric. II. revoked, 18 Sept.

---

[1] *præcesserunt*] p̄cesserūt. B. processerunt. Da.

[2] *Notingham*] Notinghm̄. B. Notinghamiæ. Da.

[3] *Notyngham*] Notinghamiâ. Da.

[4] *lecto*] lecti. B.

[5] *c. mł.*] mł. Da.

[6] *vel*] vł. B. et. Da.

[7] *intromitterent*] intmitterēt. B. intermitterent. Da.

[8] *aliam*] ał. B. ab [eo] Da.

A.D. 1397. factam anno X°. et statuit quod siquis talem commissionem procuraverit sit ut proditor puniendus.

Revocation of the charter of pardon to the earl of Arundel. (30 Ap. 17 Ric. II.) 18 Sept.

Revocavitque omnia statuta in parliamentis anno X°. et XI°. edita. Et similiter indulgentias extortas, et etiam cartam indulgentiæ quam sponte comiti obtulerat Arundell', quia illa carta, ut dicebat, fuit concessa in præjudicium regis, et quia Rex tunc ignorabat quod materiæ fuerant ita odiosæ et coronæ suæ prejudiciales. Item statuit ad petitionem parliamenti quod magnum parliamentum vocabatur quod siquis procuraverit mortem Regis alicujus de cætero vel depositionem[1] vel sursum reddere homagia sive de hujusmodi locutus fuerit vel populum suscitaverit vel contra regem equitaverit adjudicabitur ut proditor regis et exhæredabitur pro se et hæredibus in perpetuum. Et quod filii jam nati adjudicatorum in hoc parliamento, nec eorum filii venient de cætero ad parliamentum cum nec (?)[2] sint de concilio Regis. Item ad supplicationem parliamenti indulsit comitibus Derbiæ et Notingham equitationem cum duce Gloucestriæ contra ducem [Hiberniæ],[3] qui duo humiliter se posuerant in Regis gratiam. Et similiter indulsit illis qui positi fuerunt in commissione, et eam non fuerunt executi. fol. 198. v. col. 2.

Pardon to the earls of Derby and Nottingham. 29 Sept.

The earl of Arundel brought before the parliament, 21 Sept.

Deinde adduxerunt comitem Arundell', et dux Lancastriæ fuit justitiarius ibidem qui sibi exposuit appellationem dominorum et accusationem parliamenti, et jussit respondere. Qui dixit quod[4] respondere non expedit, "quia scio quod ordinastis mortem meam "propter bona mea." Et notificaverunt sibi pœnam tacentis; et dixit dux: "Quia parliamentum te accu- "cusavit, meruisti damnari[5] sine responsione secun- "dum legem tuam." Cui comes respondens, dixit: "Ista feci propter circumstantias quæ tunc erant; et

The appeal and accusation read.

He pleads a general pardon.

[1] *depositionem*] deponē. B.

[2] *nec*] u. B.

[3] *Hiberniæ*] Interlined in B. in a different hand from that of the text.

[4] *quod*] om. Da.

[5] *damnari*] dāpnari. B. decapitari. Da.

" si errores fuerunt habeo indulgentiam Regis." " Illa in- A.D. 1397.
" dulgentia," dixit dux, " revocata est per parliamentum, which is declared to
" quia extorta eo tempore quo tu fuisti rex." " Adhuc have been
" habeo indulgentiam quam mihi Rex sponte ob- repealed.
" tulit," dixit comes, " et mihi misit non rogatus quin-
" que annis elapsis." " Et similiter illa est revocata,"
dixit dux, " ex statuto parliamenti." Et comes dixit,
" Maxima prærogativa Regis est quod ipse potest con-
" cedere indulgentiam cujuscunque delicti, et si vos
" statuistis quod ipse non potest vel non debet con-
" cedere indulgentiam, plus fecistis contra prærога-
" tivam suam quam ego. Et si tu, Johannes, bene
" esses examinatus, plura fecisti tu contra Regem quam
" ego." Dux et alii consulebant quod poneret se in
gratia Regis. Et dixit comes: " Pono me in gratia
fol. 199. col. 1. " Summi Regis; pro legibus, et utilitate regni mori
" non recuso." Et dux tulit sententiam: " Rex tibi His sen-
" condonat tractionem et suspensionem, sed decolla- tence; drawing,
" beris in Monte Turris ubi Symon de Burley fuit hanging,
" decollatus, et filii tui exhæredabuntur, et eorum filii (and quar-
" excludentur a parliamento nec erunt de concilio tering) pardoned
" Regis in perpetuum." Et in festo Sancti Mathæi to him.
Apostoli et Evangelistæ morti adjudicatus in dicto His exe-
monte decollatus est. cution. 21 Sept.

Et in crastino comes Warwici in parliamento ductus The earl of
simili morti adjudicatur, qui secundum consilium sibi Warwick brought
datum confessus est se omnia fecisse confidens in sa- before the
pientia ducis et comitis ac in sanctitate abbatis Sancti parliament. 28 Sept.
Albani et reclusi in Westmonasterio, qui dixerunt illa
sibi licere. Et dixit: " Verumtamen si judicaveritis He throws
" me errasse, pono me in gratia Regis." Tunc adju- himself on the king's
dicatus fuit perpetuo carceri in Insula Manniæ, prece grace;
et intercessione dominorum, quia longævus fuit. Simi- and is con-
demned to
liter dux Gloucestriæ adjudicatus fuit exhæredationi perpetual
consimili et post mortem, quia, ut dixerunt, facta ejus imprison-
ment in the
ita notoria fuerant, et vivens[1] responderat per scrip- Isle of Man.

[1] *vivens*] viuēs. B. veniens. Da.

A.D. 1397. turam. Cernens etiam[1] Rex quod ipsi ejecerunt archiepiscopum Eborum, et quod pacem non haberet cum archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, fecit parliamentum accusare Cantuariensem archiepiscopum. Et cum incepisset prolocutor proponere contra archiepiscopum, dixit Rex: "Non proponas contra cognatum meum. Recede, "pater,[2] securus." Qui, cum recessisset, habuit post se nuntium qui prohibuit ne amplius intraret parliamentum. Et adjudicatus est perpetuo exilio et privationi omnium bonorum suorum, quia procuraverat se poni in commissione, et eam executus fuerat et eam sigillaverat[3] quando erat cancellarius.

Accusation of the archbishop of Canterbury, 20 Sept.

He is banished and deprived, 25 Sept.

A.D. 1398. John Cobham sentenced to perpetual imprisonment (in Jersey), 28 Jan.

Item in die Lunæ proximo sequenti, Johannes Cobham et Johannes Cheyny, milites, perpetuis carceribus adjudicantur.

A.D. 1397. Adnullation of annuities, &c., granted by, and advowsons collated to by the condemned, 21 Sept.

Item Rex et parliamentum statuerunt quod omnes annuæ pensiones, privilegia, ac dona concessa quibuscunque ab adjudicatis in hoc parliamento a die proditionis perpetratæ adnullentur. Et similiter idem fiat de beneficiis per eos collatis. Et quod præsentationes et collationes sint in manu Regis. Item statuerunt quod quiscunque procuraverit et consuluerit ad cassandum statuta hujus parliamenti proditor sit censendus; quod quidem parliamentum inceptum fuit die Lunæ xvij. die Septembris.

The archbishop refuses to go; the king persuades him to do so. He preaches against the luxury of the court; and departs, 28 Sept.

Archiepiscopus dixit se recedere nolle, hic se fuisse natum, et hic se velle mori. Rex cum duce Lancastriæ intravit ad eum in cameram cum aliis comitibus, in qua tristis[4] sedebat. Et dixit sibi Rex: "Ne tristeris, nec "recedere recuses, quia te assecuro quod post breve "tempus revocaberis, et nullus erit archiepiscopus Can- "tuariensis nisi tu quamdiu nos duo vixerimus." Cui dixit archiepiscopus: "Ante recessum meum aliqua "vobis dicam;" et protraxit sermonem de luxuria quæ

fol. 199. col. 2.

[1] *etiam*] ẽ. B. et. Da.
[2] *pater*] paṭ. B. frater. Da.
[3] *sigillaverat*] sigillau. B.
[4] *tristis*] ṭstꝯ. B. testis. Da.

regnabat[1] in personis eorum, et in curiis avaritia atque superbia, quibus inficiunt totum regnum; et in die sibi assignata in Vigilia Sancti Michaelis in portu Doveriæ recessit. A.D. 1397.

Statuunt insuper quod super feretrum Sancti Edwardi omnes domini jurarent se totis viribus statuta hujus parliamenti observare, ad majorem securitatem; et quod omnes hæredes et successores dominorum tam spiritualium quam temporalium præstabunt idem juramentum omnibus futuris temporibus quando eis liberabuntur hæreditates et possessiones in faciendo homagia et fidelitates suas. Et, ad requisitionem parliamenti, omnes episcopi excommunicaverunt in Cruce Sancti Pauli omnes facientes contra statuta et ordinationes hujus parliamenti. Oath prescribed by statute to the lords of this parliament, and their heirs and successors, 21 Sept.

Post hoc comites appellantes Rex ordinavit duces, videlicet: Henricum de Bolyngbrok, comitem Derbeiæ, fecit ducem Herfordiæ, comitem Rutlandiæ fecit ducem Albemarliæ, comitem Cantiæ fecit ducem Surreiæ, comitem Hontingdoniæ fecit ducem Excestriæ, et comitem Notyngham fecit ducem Northfolchiæ, ac comitem Somersetiæ fecit marchionem Dorsetiæ. Insuper dominum Le Spensier fecit comitem Gloucestriæ, dominum de Nevile de Raby fecit comitem Westmerlandiæ, dominum Thomam Percy fecit comitem Wigorniæ, dominum Willielmum Scrope, tunc thesaurarium Angliæ, fecit comitem Wiltš, et dominum Johannem Montageu fecit comitem Sarum. Rex itaque dedit comitatum Arundell' comiti Notingham quando ipsum in ducem ordinavit. Creation of the dukes of Hereford, Albemarle, Surrey, Exeter, and Norfolk, and of the marquis of Dorset, 29 Sept. Of the earls of Gloucester, Westmoreland, Worcester, Wilts, and Sarum, 29 Sept.

Eodem anno Rex scripsit a[d] papam ut quemdam laicum literatum Rogerum Walden' in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem promoveret, asserens, ut quidam dicebant, Thomam esse mortuum; fecitque parliamentum hoc compromittere in xij. personas, quæ continuando parliamentum ubicunque et quandocunque[2] regi place- A.D. 1398. A committee appointed, who continue the business of the parliament, 31 Jan.

[1] *regnabat*] regnabatur. Da.

[2] *quandocunque*] qñcũque. B. quocunque. Da.

A.D. 1398. ret statuta sibi placita secum ordinarent. Quibus omnibus peractis in partes Occidentales est reversus.

The king returns to the West.

Nuntius festinanter rediens de Curia Romana portavit bullas, et rex fecit Rogerum consecrari; et cito post idem Rogerus celebravit ingressum suum Cantuariæ sumptuose. Et post hoc rex in diebus solennibus in quibus utebatur de more regalibus jussit sibi in camera parari thronum, in quo post prandium se ostentans sedere solebat usque ad vesperas nulli loquens sed singulos aspiciens. Et cum aliquem respiceret, cujuscumque gradus fuerit, oportuit ipsum genuflectere.

Roger Walden consecrated archbishop of Canterbury.

fol. 199. v. col. 1.

Rex autem apud Notyngham convocatis archiepiscopo et episcopis ac consiliariis suis, dixit se non posse secure equitare per regnum propter odium Londoniensium et septemdecim comitatuum adjacentium, et ideo voluit eos collecto exercitu exstirpare nisi signum securitatis sibi præstarent.[1] Ordinaverunt igitur quod civitas et quilibet comitatus illorum magnam summam auri colligeret et in signum pacis sibi offeret. Quod et factum est. Ordinavit etiam Rex, cum compromisso[2] parliamento et reliquo concilio suo, universos et singulos in civitatibus et vicis sigilla sua cartis apponere albis, in quibus postea protestabantur se statuta hujus parliamenti inperpetuum observare, et contrarios, si qui fuerint, statim Regi vel suo concilio intimare. Hoc idem omnes episcopi juraverunt, et singulos de clero jurare compulerunt. Ordinaverunt insuper quod archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, domini, communes in civitatibus et villis singuli cartis albis[3] sigilla sua apponerent; quod et fecerunt, per episcopos maxime arctati. In quibus postea hujusmodi sententiam Rex, ut dicitur, scribere intendebat: "Quia majestatem vestram retro- "actis temporibus graviter offendimus, nos et omnia "bona nostra vobis damus ad libitum vestræ volun-

[1] Rex vult habere securitatem pacis. in marg. B.

[2] *compromisso*] compromisso. B.

[3] Albæ cartæ. in marg. B.

" tatis." Familias dominorum ducis Gloucestriæ, et comitum et omnium cum eis equitantium, pecuniis denudavit. A.D. 1398.

Anno Domini 1398°, et anno regni Regis Ricardi xxj°, dux Northfolchiæ, prius comes de Notingham, secrete dixit sub sigillo confessionis Henrico filio ducis Lancastriæ, tunc duci Herfordiæ: "Rex ordinavit te et " me interficere pro equitatione cum duce Gloucestriæ; " et ideo dispone quid acturus sis, et ego me disponam." Et alius dixit: "Rex hoc indulsit nobis." Cui dux Norfolchiæ dixit: "Rex non est fidelis, sicut patet " in duce Gloucestriæ et comitibus." Dux autem Herfordiæ retulit ista dicta suo patri et pater Regi. Requisitus dux Norfolchiæ negavit; dux Herfordiæ ipsum de dictis illis et de occisione ducis Gloucestriæ appellavit; quare chirothecas projecerunt, et erat eis dies pugnæ apud Couentriam assignatus, ubi cum ad duellum forent parati, Rex tunc præsens ipsorum causam in manus suas assumpsit. Et ducem Herfordiæ ad terminum x. annorum, ducem vero Norfolchiæ et Thomam Arundell' archiepiscopum Cantuariensem perpetuo relegavit. Dux vero Northfolchiæ apud Venetias diem suum clausit extremum. Concessitque rex duci Herfordiæ certam summam annuatim percipiendam de regno Angliæ; sed prohibuit quod non loqueretur cum Thoma de Arundell', ad quod juramento astrictus est: Rex prudentiam ejus atque consilium timebat. Rex itaque dedit comitatum Arundell' Johanni Holand comiti Hontingdoniæ. Thomas de Arundell' transivit ad papam, et procurante rege cum magno periculo vitæ suæ vix evasit malendrinos per viam latitantes. Papa non audebat consolari eum timore regis.

[A.D.] 1398°. The duke of Hereford accuses the duke of Norfolk of slandering the king.

A duel appointed between the dukes at Coventry on 16 Sept.; when the king banishes the duke of Hereford for ten years, and the duke of Norfolk and Thomas Arundel for life.

fol. 199. v. col. 2.

Hoc insuper anno comes Marchiæ occiditur in Hibernia.

Death of the earl of March, 20 July.

Anno Domini 1399°, et anno regni Regis Ricardi xxij°, Rex, convocato concilio suo, dixit quod volebat transfretare in Hiberniam, sed desiderabat prius visitare

[A.D.] 1399°. The king visits the

A.D. 1399. shrine of S. Thomas of Canterbury with a strong guard.

Sanctum Thomam, sed non bene confidebat in civitate London' nec in comitatu Canciæ. Archiepiscopus autem assecuravit eum, et duxit eum ad Cantuariam stipatum magna multitudine Cestrensium, qui nocte ac die vigilabant super eum; et singulis diebus vj. d. civilibus dabat. Hos pascebat archiepiscopus apud Cantuariam sumptuose, et reduxit regem ad London'. Rex intravit Turrim, et omnia jocalia pretiosa a prædecessoribus suis ibidem reposita tulit secum, ubi et invenit aquilam[1] auream et ampullam lapideam in ea clausam, cum quadam scriptura dicente quod Beata Virgo tradidit illam Sancto Thomæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo tunc exulanti, dicens quod "de oleo hujus ampullæ boni "Reges futuri Anglorum ungerentur, et unus eorum "terram a parentibus amissam sine vi recuperabit, et "erit magnus inter reges et ædificabit multas ecclesias "in Terra Sancta et fugabit omnes Paganos a Babylonia, ubi plures ecclesias ædificabit. Et quotiens "portabit aquilam in pectore suo victoriam habebit de "inimicis suis, et regnum ejus semper augmentabitur. "Et invenietur in tempore opportuno. Et unctio "Regum Anglorum in caput Paganorum erit causa "inventionis hujus aquilæ." Istam aquilam portabat Rex semper in collo suspensam. Quidam eremita de partibus Borealibus sacerdos venit ad archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et dixit: "Deus misit me ad vos ut "dicerem vobis quod accedere debeatis ad Regem et "sibi dicere quod restituat hæreditates exhæredatis, "alioquin utrique vestrum evenient magna mala in "brevi." Cui archiepiscopus dixit: "Tu ipse dices "ista Regi." "Libenter," dixit ipse. Et archiepiscopus misit ipsum ad Regem. Rex de consilio astantium misit ipsum ad Turrim. Deinde Rex fecit testimonium suum regno valde præjudiciale, ut dixerunt qui vide-

He returns to London and takes all the jewels out of the Tower; with the golden eagle and the stone bottle given by the Virgin to S. Thomas of Canterbury.

A northern hermit advises the king to restore the possessions of the disinherited lords.

fol. 200. col. 1.

He is sent to the Tower.

[1] Aquila. in marg. B.

runt. Et ducem Eborum fecit custodem regni, et transfretavit cum magno exercitu in Hiberniam. A.D. 1399.

Eodem anno factus fuit terræ motus magnus sub ecclesia Sancti Pauli London', et postea dux Lancastriæ[1] de gravi languore moritur et in ea sepelitur. Quod audiens filius ejus exul applicuit in littore Boreali Angliæ una cum Thoma Arundell' et filio comitis de Arundell' qui fugerat de regno; ad quos venit comes Northumbriæ, dominus de Percy, cum tota potentia Boreali, nec aliquis voluit contra eos sequi ducem Eborum aut consiliarios regis, quamvis Willielmus le Scrope, thesaurarius Angliæ, abundantissime aurum offerret. Henricus scripsit civitati London', vocans se ducem Lancastriæ et regni senescallum, dicens se velle regnum ad debitum regimen et pristinam reducere libertatem. Consenseruntque Londonienses, et omnia castra regis duci tradita sunt. Thesaurarius regis et duo regis consiliarii maximi in parliamento milites versus Hiberniam fugientes in castro Bristolliæ se clauserunt, sed dux venit et castrum expugnavit et eos decollari fecit. Rex hoc audiens cepit consilium. Et unus dixit melius esse ibi expectare quousque communitas attædiaretur de eorum pervagatione per regnum. Alius autem dixit quod principio obstandum esset, quodque sibi melius esse. Credens applicuit in Wallia Boreali, sed exercitus ejus ad diversos portus divertens ipsum sequi nolebat. Thomas Percy, senescallus domus suæ in castro de Conwey, fregit virgam in aula, dicens: "Dominus Rex non tenet domum "amplius," et omnes domestici deseruerunt regem. Ipse autem exprobrabat infidelitatem Angliæ.

Dux scripsit senescallo archiepiscopi Cantuariensi quod omnia servaret Thomæ de Arundell' sub pœna capitis. Roggerus Walden' omnia jocalia sua amovit de

The king makes his will, appoints the duke of York guardian, and sails to Ireland, May.

An earthquake under S. Paul's church.

Death of the duke of Lancaster. 3 Feb.

The young duke lands on the northern coast (at Ravenspur), 4 July.

The king lands in North Wales, 25 July. His troops and domestics desert him.

Sir Thos. Percy breaks his wand of office at Conway Castle.

[1] Dux Lancastriæ moritur. in margin. B. in rubric.

A.D. 1399. palatio Cantuariæ, et omnia capta sunt apud Rofam et posita in castro. Dux et Thomas de Arundell' venerunt ad Regem in castrum de Conwaye dicentes sibi post pauca quod ulterius non regnaret. Thomas de Arundell' dixit sibi: "Pulcher homo es, sed falsissimus "inter omnes; tu promisisti mihi jurando super Corpus "Christi quod non noceres fratri meo. Et cum dux- "issem ad præsentiam tuam non vidi eum amplius. "Promisisti mihi fallaciter quod me ab exilio revocares, "et alium archiepiscopum ordinasti, et mortem meam "procurasti. Regnum non rexisti sed spoliasti, theo- "lanea notabiliter elevando, tallagia annuatim extor- "quendo, non ad utilitatem regni, quam nunquam "procurasti, sed ad avaritiam tuam satiandam et "superbiam ostendendam. Adulatorum tuorum infi- "morum tua semper donaria postulantium consiliis "adhæsisti, et eos promovisti. Sanum consilium, dominos "præcipuos, consanguineos tuos, quia volebant tuam "proterviam compescere, sicut per statuta regni po- "tuerunt et in periculo regni debuerunt, injuste occi- "disti, et posteritatem eorum tyrannice extinguere "quoque (?) [1] statuisti; sed statuta tua non stabunt. "Incontinenter vixisti, et fœdo exemplo tuo curiam "tuam et regnum maculasti." Cum talia multiplicaret, dux dixit: "Sufficit." Et Rex non habens quomodo se defenderet, duci se reddidit et renuntiare promisit. Et ipsi duxerunt illum ad Turrim London'; custodes et vigiles circa eum posuerunt. Postea in Vigilia Sancti Michaelis missi sunt ad eum episcopi, comites, barones, notarii, et milites, ut quærerent ab eo si renuntiare vellet ut promiserat; primo negavit, sed post ostenderunt sibi quod oportebat eum renuntiare, et hoc absolute et sine conditione; tradideruntque sibi cedulam quam legebat, præsente duce et magna multitudine procerum et magnatum [2]: "Ego Ricardus, Rex Angliæ,

Walden removes his jewels from the palace at Canterbury.

The duke (of Lancaster) and Thos. de Arundel go to the king at Conway Castle.

The king promises to renounce the crown.

He is brought to the Tower of London.

He reads the deed of renunciation. 29 Sept.

fol. 200. col. 2.

[1] *quoque*] qq^{d}. B.

[2] Renunciatio Regni per Ricardum Regem facta. in marg. B.

" renuntio omni juri quod habeo in corona Angliæ A.D. 1399.
" cum pertinentiis, id est, in regnis Angliæ et Franciæ,
" Hiberniæ, et Scotiæ, et in ducatibus Aquitanniæ
" et Normanniæ, et in comitatu de Pontif, ac in villa
" Calesiæ, et in omnibus aliis castris et fortalitiis quæ
" in præsenti habeo aut habere debeo de jure ultra
" mare et citra ac in quacumque parte eorumdem pro
" me [et] hæredibus meis, inperpetuum." Et testes requisierunt notarios facere super ista renuntiatione instrumenta publica. Et confessus est se multum deliquisse contra Deum et regnum, et se non esse dignum regnare, quia bene sciebat, ut dixit, quod populus ipsum nunquam dilexit, nec ipse populum. Posthæc venit dux Lancastriæ ad Westmonasterium, et solemni processione episcoporum ac monachorum susceptus est. Et celebrata solenni Missa de Spiritu Sancto venit in aulam. Et ante eum portabatur principalis gladius regius auro et lapidibus pretiosis ornatus; et ponebat se in sede patris sui, id est, juxta episcopum Carleoli. Et sedebant ibi omnes episcopi et omnes comites, etiam qui dominos antea appellabant, ac cæteri domini de regno et populus multus. Inter quos lecta fuit renunciatio Regis et ab omnibus erat acceptata. Postea legebantur plures excessus quos Ricardus fecerat contra statum, suum juramentum, ac leges regni, et mortes dominorum parium regni et exilia, ac testimonium suum, pro quibus ipsum ibidem deponebant. Et vice omnium de regno procuratores assignati reddiderunt sursum homagia sua. Et Thomas de Arundell' de assensu omnium damnavit eum perpetuo carceri. Tunc surrexit dux Lancastriæ; signo Crucis se signans legebat quamdam cedulam in qua ostendebat quod ipse descendebat de Rege Henrico filio Johannis, et proximus masculus erat[1] de sanguine suo; et istis

The duke of Lancaster proceeds to Westminster, 30 Sept.

fol. 200. v. col. 1.

The king's renunciation read and accepted. Articles against him are read, and he is deposed.

The duke reads his claim to the crown;

[1] *erat*] ℈. B.

A.D. 1399. which is assented to by all present. He is led to the throne by the archbishops of Canterbury and York. The former preaches a good sermon.

de causis regnum vendicabat; ad quod omnes domini singulatim assenserunt, et communitas communiter hoc clamabat. Tunc surrexerunt archiepiscopi Cantuariæ Thomas et Eborum, et osculabant manus ejus et duxerunt eum ad sedem regiam sumptuose ornatam. Ac archiepiscopus Thomas Arundell' fecit collationem bonam de themate, "Vir fortis dominabitur populo." Et postea cancellarius sigillum et alii officiarii sua officia sibi reddebant. Et rex eis iterum ea tradebat. Et archiepiscopus Cantuariæ Thomas pronuntiabat quod Rex coronaretur in festo Sancti Edwardi apud Westmonasterium, mandans omnibus quod convenirent ad parliamentum die Lunæ sequenti.

Character of Richard II.

Rex Ricardus in divitiis omnes[1] prædecessores suos studuit excedere, et ad Salomonis[2] gloriam pervenire; cœpitque plus illis infra regnum post annum ejus[3] xj^{m} formidari quamvis[4] prole careret et animo bellicoso. In thesauris et jocalibus, in vestibus et ornamentis regalibus, in quibus vehementer excessit, in splendore mensæ, in palatiis quæ ædificavit, nullus in regibus eo gloriosior diebus suis. Et in maxima altitudine suæ gloriæ subito appensus et inventus minus habens deponitur potens de sede, et statua percussa miserabiliter est contrita, arborque procera in medio terræ omnibus opulentiis privata, Vigili jubente Cœlesti, succiditur, et in carcere perpetuo,[5] videlicet, Castro Pontis Fracti, fit habitatio ejus.

Coronation of Henry IV. 13 Oct.

Rex Henricus Quartus coronatur[6] a Thoma de Arundell', unctus cum oleo aquilæ innotatæ.[7] Et erat primus qui cum oleo illo ungebatur. Continuavit parliamentum in quo assistentes Regi Ricardo examinavit si de pernicioso consilio nullus tunc convinci potuit. Prohibuitque

fol. 200. v. col. 2.

---

[1] *omnes*] oms. B. suis. Da.
[2] *Salomonis*] Solomonis. Da.
[3] *ejus*] om. Da.
[4] *quamvis*] q$^{a}_{b}$uis. B. quodvis. Da.
[5] *perpetuo*] ppe^{o}. B. proprio. Da.
[6] Coronatio Regis Henrici 4^{ti}. in marg. B.
[7] *innotatæ*] īnõte. B.

Rex cum parliamento imperpetuum ne sine responsione aliquis damnaretur; parliamentum ultimum Ricardi, judicia sua, et ordinationes factas ibidem irritavit, et juramenta atque excommunicationes non observantium evanuerunt. Filium comitis Arundell' comitem Arundell' fecit. Comitem Warwici de carcere et Johannem de Cobham de exilio revocavit. Cartas omnes quas a regno sigillari exegerat Londoniis patenter comburi fecit. Primogenitum suum Henricum principem Walliæ fecit, et omnes duces ordinatos a rege Ricardo in ultimo parliamento deordinavit. Rogerum Walden' omnia quæ receperat de episcopatu Cantuariensi Thomæ de Arundell' restituere fecit; et ad preces ejusdem Thomæ vitam sibi concessit. A.D. 1399. The proceedings of the parl. 21. Richard II repealed. 14 Oct.

Bonifacius papa judicium Ricardi contra Thomam Arundell' cassum fuisse declaravit per bullam, et quod ecclesia Cantuariensis non vacavit nec pastore destituta fuit.

Rex tenuit Natale Domini apud Windesore, et quidam armiger de Circestr' in armis multum exercitatus secundum consuetudinem suam misit unum de sua familia ad curiam Regis ut sibi referret gesta fortia[1] hastiludiensium. The king keeps Christmas at Windsor.

Archiepiscopus autem Cantuariensis post Circumcisionem Domini movit a Cantuaria versus[2] Windesor' ut esset cum rege in die Epiphaniæ. Quidam de familia Regis interim jacebat una nocte cum una meretrice London', quæ mane dixit sibi: "Vale, amice, quia amplius te non videbo." Et ille quæsivit quare. Quæ et dixit: "Comites Huntyngdoniæ et Canciæ ac Sarum "et multi alii milites jacent in insidiis in partibus de "Kyngeston', ut regem, archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, "et omnes vos venientes de Wyndesor' occidant, et "regem Ricardum restituant." Et ille quæsivit: "Unde "hoc nosti?" Et illa respondens dixit: "Unus de A.D. 1400. Discovery of the plot of the earls of Huntingdon, Kent, and Salisbury against the king.

[1] *fortia*] forciâ. Da.

[2] *versus*] usque. Da.

A.D. 1400. " familia [1] eorum dormivit mecum altera nocte qui, hæc " dixit mihi." Festinavit ergo ipse ad regem narrans sibi sermonem hunc. Et statim cessabant ludere. Et qui venerat de Circestr' hæc audiens narravit magistro suo. Rex vero præmunivit archiepiscopum per nuntium, et ipse reversus est ad Reygate. Rex etiam divertens per aliam viam nocte festinavit ad London' mandans omnibus de comitatibus ad se festinanter convenire. Quidam vir de familia [1] archiepiscopi transivit per Kyngeston', et comes Canciæ videns eum de fenestra hospitii jussit eum adduci ad se, et interrogavit eum dicens: " Ubi est magister tuus? " Qui respondit: " In " castro de Reygate." At ille: " Ubi est Rex? " Qui respondit: " Londoniæ." Et dixit comes: " Verum " dicis. Ipsi fugerunt timore nostro. Si obviassem " domino tuo, rasissem sibi coronam." Et jussit famulis suis spoliari eum equo et pecunia sua. At ipse et comes Sarum cum familia sua equitabant ad Circestr' per viam proclamantes quod Rex Ricardus transiret. Cum autem venissent in hospitia sero apud Circestr', quos cum dictæ villæ communitas arestasse voluisset, restiterunt fortiter dimicantes; quibus tamen debellatis et captis ipsi duo cum multis aliis decapitati sunt et vinculis mancipantur; quia quidam de eorum familia miserunt ignem in tecta diversarum domorum ibidem, et multos in cippis et compedibus servaverunt, quos postea regi Oxoniæ præsentarunt, ubi multi tracti, suspensi, et decapitati sunt. Postmodum apud Prytwell in Excexc' in quodam molendino Johannes Holand dux Exoniæ, frater Regis Ricardi ex parte matris se transformans in simplicem per patriæ illius communitatem captus et usque Plasshe adductus decollatur. Interea apud Bristolliam dux Gloucestriæ capitur et in foro ibidem a populo decapitatus est dolens et malam vitam suam deplorans. Capita autem comitum super Pontem London' posita sunt.

fol. 201, col. 1.

The earls of Kent and Salisbury enter Cirencester.

They are taken and beheaded.

The duke of Exeter is taken in disguise at Prittlewell (Ess.) and beheaded at Pleshy,

The duke of Gloucester is beheaded at Bristol.

[1] *familia*] famulia. B.

Alii insurrectores clerici et laici, inter quos Rogerus Walden et episcopus Carleoli, London' inventi coram justitiariis statuuntur. Et solus Rogerus Walden excusatur; laici trahuntur et suspenduntur; clerici trahuntur et decollantur. Episcopus Merk' incarceratur et episcopatu privatur; postea tamen Rex gratiose egit cum eo, visa conversatione ejus. Ricardus olim rex in carcere hoc [1] audiens cœpit omnino de auxilio desperare, et confessus est eos de consilio suo dato in castro de Conway ista fecisse. Et, ut dicebatur, præ [2] tristitia comedere nolens moriebatur. Corpus [3] ejus delatum est ad Sanctum Paulum London' et facies sua ostensa est populo. Et celebratis ibidem exequiis ejus per Regem, apud Langley sepultus est.

A.D. 1400. Walden, Merks, and and others are taken and tried.

King Richard said to have starved himself to death.

His body exposed at S. Paul's.

Isabella,[5] secunda uxor Regis Ricardi, dote sua nudata, multis tamen [6] muneribus dotata, ab Anglia in Franciam pulsa est. Qua repatriante, Gallici treugas prius initas solvunt.[7] Tunc Rex misit Londoniensibus ut aurum sibi mutuarent. Ipsi autem ad eum accesserunt quærentes an ipsa missio de voluntate sua processit, referentes quomodo ipse promisit se ab hujusmodi mutuis et tallagiis abstinere; qui eis respondens dixit se omnino egere et pecuniam ab eis tunc habere oportere. Hæc omnia facta sunt anno primo Regis hujus et anno xxij°. Ricardi, et anno Domini 1399°.

A.D. 1401. Queen Isabella sent to France.

fol. 201. col. 2.

A.D. 1400. The king borrows money of the Londoners.

Anno Domini 1400, et regni Henrici iiij^ti. 2°, Rex, congregato exercitu, transivit in Scociam; sed illis non comparentibus, victualibusque deficientibus, in Angliam est reversus. Tunc comes de Dunbar effectus est Anglicus et datus est sibi comitatus Richmundiæ.

[A.D.] 1400. The king invades Scotland, Aug.

Hoc anno, factum est parliamentum Londoniis, in quo decimam cleri et xv^am. laicorum Rex exegit. In

A.D. 1401. A parliament. 20 Jan.

---

[1] *hoc*] h°. B. hæc. Da.
[2] *præ*] pro. Da.
[3] *corpus*] que. add. Da.
[4] *ad*] om. Da.
[5] Isabella regina. in marg. B.
[6] *tamen*] cum. Da.
[7] *solvunt*] solverunt. Da.

A.D. 1401. A subsidy. 22 Jan. Sentence on Wm. Sautre. 26 Feb.

hoc parliamento archiepiscopus Cantuariensis quendam hæreticum, dicentem accidens non esse sine subjecto in Sacramento Altaris et panem manere, degradavit; qui Smythfeld combustus est. Hoc exemplo terribili[1] alii complices sui hæreses suas in Cruce Sancti Pauli personaliter revocabant.

Complaint of Owen Glyndwr against lord Grey de Ruthyn.

Ad hoc parliamentum venit Audoenus de Glendour Wallicus qui fuerat armiger comitis Arundell', conquerens quod dominus de Gray Ruthyn quasdam terras suas in Wallia usurpavit, sed contra dominum de Gray nihil profecit. Episcopus de Sancto Assaf consuluit in parliamento quod non omnino contemnerent præfatum Audoenum ne forte Wallici insurgerent. Et illi de parliamento dixerunt se de[2] scurris nudipedibus non curare.

A.D. 1400. The emperor Manuel II. visits England to procure aid against the Turks.

Hoc anno, Imperator Constantinopolitanus venit in Angliam, ostendens indulgentiam papæ omnibus sibi de bonis suis conferentibus, et petiit auxilium a Rege contra Turcos et infideles. Qui habebat quotidie missam per notam[3] in camera sua ab episcopis suis ritu Græcorum; et quotidie Imperator et omnes sui communicabant. Quem Rex honorifice recepit et omnes expensas suas in Anglia persolvit. Et collectis in Anglia 4.m^{l}.li. per indulgentiam, Rex addidit alia 4.m^{l}., et ipsum dimisit.

A.D. 1401. Rebellion of the Welsh. The king invades N. Wales. June.

Anno Domini 1401, Wallici contra regem Henricum Quartum rebellant et bona Anglicorum undique diripiunt. Rex autem transivit[4] in Walliam Borealem et Insulam de Anglesey, ubi Fratres Minores de conventu Lamasiæ et Wallici cum aliis Regi resistebant, et ideo exercitus regis fratres occidebant et captivabant ac conventum spoliabant. Et, Audoeno non comparente, revertitur Rex. Et dominus le Gray manucepit tuitionem patriæ. Rex vero tradidit ministerio

---

[1] *terribili*] ? territi.
[2] *de*] interlined in B.
[3] *per notam*] corr. privatam.
[4] *transivit*] transiit. Da.

Ordinis fratres captivatos, et jussit omnia restitui conventui, et voluit quod conventus ille inhabitaretur ab Anglicis fratribus. A.D. 1401.

Hoc anno quidam Frater Minor de Northfolch' in suo sermone recommendavit Regem Ricardum, dicens quod viveret, et ille de carcere Regis traditur ministerio[1] Ordinis corrigendus.

Audoenus de Glendour dominum le Gray in bello cepit. Et eodem anno capitulum generale Fratrum Minorum celebratur Leycestriæ in festo Assumptionis, in quo prohibitum est sub pœna perpetui carceris ne aliquis fratrum loquatur verbum quod possit sonare in præjudicium Regis. Et quod quilibet præsidens haberet potestatem talem[2] incarcerandi qui ausus esset in hoc culpari. A.D. 1402. Lord Grey de Ruthyn taken prisoner by Owen Glendour. April.

Hoc insuper anno post Natale Domini apparuit quædam stella comata aspectu terribilis in Occidente, cujus flamma magna sursum ascendebat. A comet.

Hoc anno Rogerus Claryndon' miles et prior de Lande ac octo fratres Ordinis Sancti Francisci suspensi sunt. Item mulier quædam accusabat Fratrem Minorem de conventu Cantibrugiæ senem de certis verbis dictis contra Regem; qui statuitur coram justitiario. Qui dedit sententiam quod pugnaret cum muliere una manu post dorsum ligata. Sed ad suggestionem amicorum mulier pacificata ab accusatione cessavit. Et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis amicus fratris Regem pacificavit. Execution of Roger Clarendon, Walter de Baldocke, prior of Laund, and eight Franciscans.

Anno Domini 1402°, et anno hujus Regis 3°, populus cœpit Regem graviter ferre et Regem Ricardum desiderare, quia dicebant quod ipse cepit bona eorum et non solvebat. Literæ insuper venerunt ad amicos Regis Ricardi tanquam ab eodem missæ quibus scribebatur quod ipse viveret, et hoc divulgatum fuit per Angliam. Quod multi audientes gavisi sunt et ipsum [A.D.] 1402. Discontent of the people. Report that king Richard is alive.

[1] *ministerio*] mīst°. B. magistro. Da.

[2] *talem*] tlem. B. totalem. Da. Stella comata in marg. B.

A.D. 1402. restitui desiderabant. Quidam Frater Minor laicus de conventu de Aylesbury, venit ad Regem, accusans fratrem ejusdem conventus sacerdotem, dicens quod ipse de vita Ricardi Regis valde exultavit. Qui etiam adductus est[1] coram Rege. Cui Rex sic ait: "Tu audisti Regem Ricardum vivere, et cor tuum ex- "ultavit?" Frater respondit: "Ita, domine, exultavi "sicut homo exultat de vita amici sui; teneor sibi et "tota parentela mea quia ipse promovit illam." Et dixit Rex: "Tu divulgasti quod ipse viveret, et sic "excitasti populum contra me?" Frater respondit: "Non certe, domine." Et Rex ait: "Dic mihi in veri- "tate, sicut est in corde tuo, si videres ipsum et me "in campo pugnantes cum quo teneres?" Frater respondit: "Certe ego tenerem cum eo, quia sibi plus "teneor." Et Rex ait: "Pugnares tu pro eo?" Respondit frater: "Ita vere." Et Rex: "Cum quo?" Respondit frater: "Cum eo quod haberem; forte cum "baculo." Et Rex conclusit: "Ergo tu velles quod "ego essem[2] mortuus et omnes domini de regno mei "complices?"[3] Respondit frater: "Non." Et Rex: "Quid faceres mecum si super me haberes victoriam?" Cui frater: "Facerem vos ducem Lancastriæ." Tunc Rex ait: "Tu non es amicus meus; per hoc caput "meum tu perdes caput tuum." Et statutus est frater coram justitiario apud Westmonasterium cum quodam sæculari sacerdote[4] conspiratore apud quem literæ conspiratoriæ inventæ sunt. Et justitiarius dixit fratri: "Tu exultasti[5] quia audivisti Regem Ricardum vivere "et divulgasti hoc in populo." Frater respondit: "Non divulgavi verbum." Et justitiarius audita duodena tulit sententiam, dicens: "Tu traheris per medium "Londoniæ super claiam usque ad Tyburn', et ibidem

Accusation against a Friar Minor of Aylesbury of treasonable words.

fol. 201. v. col. 2.

He is executed at Tyburn with a secular priest.

[1] *est*] Interlined in B.
[2] *essem*] essē. B. esse. Da.
[3] *mei complices*] meo complures. Da.
[4] *sacerdote*] sacerdoti. Da.
[5] *exultasti*] exaltasti. B.

" suspenderis, ibique decollerabis, et caput tuum ponetur A.D. 1402.
" super Pontem London'." Quod et de utroque factum est, atque per viam præco clamabat causas[1] eorum.

Accusation of conspiracy against a FriarMinor of Leicester and others.

Posthæc autem venit alius Frater Minor, per socium suum ad iram concitatus, ad Regem, petens misericordiam et gratiam, dicens quod quingenti homines sæculares, ecclesiastici, et religiosi, parant se ut conveniant super planitiem Oxoniæ in vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ut inde procedant ad quærendum Regem Ricardum. " At ego et decem socii mei in conventu Leicestriæ " paravimus nos ad conveniendum cum illis. Et est " in illo conventu unus Magister in Theologia senex " qui male loquitur de vobis, et dixit quod Ricardus " bellabit contra vos, et dicit quod hoc est prophetatum." Octo ergo fratres et magister ducti sunt ad London' ligati; duo alii accusati non sunt inventi. Accusavit autem frater ille plures alios fratres de aliis conventibus, sed fugierunt. Rex vero vocavit archiepiscopum et alios dominos, et fratres istos adduci jussit. Et quidam eorum, juvenes et senes, fuerunt parum literati. Stabatque accusator eorum et constanter singulos accusabat. Ipsi vero incaute respondebant. Magister confessus est se exposuisse prophetiam quæ dicitur cujusdam canonici de Bridlington, juxta imaginationem suam. Et dixit Rex magistro: " Isti sunt fatui et idiotæ, nec legere " sciunt nec intelligunt. Tu deberes sapiens esse, dicis " tu quod Rex Ricardus vivit?" Magister respondit: " Non dico quod vivit,[2] sed dico si vivit[2] ipse est verus " Rex Angliæ." Et Rex opposuit, dicens: " Ipse re- " signavit." Et dixit magister: " Resignavit sed " invitus et coactus in carcere, quæ resignatio nulla " est de jure." Cui Rex: " Ipse resignavit cum " bona voluntate." Et magister: " Non resignasset si
fol. 202. col. 1. " fuisset liber. Et resignatio facta in carcere non est

---

[1] *causas*] cas̃. B. casum. Da. | [2] *vivit*] viu^{t}. B.

A.D. 1402. " libera." " Adhuc," dixit Rex, " ipse fuit depositus." Et magister, per modum conquestus, dixit: " Dumesset " rex vi armorum captus fuit, incarceratus, et regno " spoliatus,[1] et vos invasistis coronam." Cui Rex: " Non invasi coronam, sed fui rite electus." Magister dixit: " Electio nulla est, vivente possessore legitimo. " Et si mortuus est, per vos mortuus est. Et si per " vos mortuus est, perdidistis titulum, et omne jus " quod habere potestis ad regnum." Cui Rex dixit: " Per caput istud, tu perdes caput tuum." Magister dixit: " Nunquam dilexistis ecclesiam, sed multum " illi detraxastis antequam fuistis Rex, et nunc illam " destruetis." " Mentiris," dixit Rex; " recede." Et reducti sunt omnes ad Turrim.

Rex cepit consilium, et unus qui nunquam dilexit ecclesiam, miles ejus, dixit: " Nunquam extinguemus " clamorem istum de vita Ricardi nisi fratres extin- " guantur." Minister fratrum accessit ad Regem, dicens se inhibuisse fratribus omnibus ne aliquid facerent vel loquerentur in præjudicium aut offensam Regis, et gratiam pro eis petiit. Rex respondit: " Ipsi nolunt per " te castigari, oportet igitur ut per me castigentur." Tunc ducti sunt ad Westmonasterium, compedibus colligati, et coram justitiariis statuuntur, unacum fratre Regis Ricardi milite ex concubina genito, et uno de familia ejus, ac priore de Launde, canonico Magistro in Theologia, qui literas de vita Ricardi fatebantur se recepisse. Et justitiarius dixit fratribus: " Indictati estis " quod vos in hypocrisi et adulatione et falsa vita " prædicastis falsos sermones in quibus false dixistis " quod Rex Ricardus vivit, et excitastis populum ad " quærendum eum in Scotia. Similiter vos in hypo- " crisi, adulatione, et falsa vita audivistis falsas con- " fessiones, in quibus injunxistis[2] populo pro pœni-

They are tried at Westminster with the prior of Launde and others;

[1] *spoliatus*] spo^{ti}. B. | [2] *injunxistis*] iniuxistis. B.

" tentia ut quærerent Regem Ricardum in Wallia. Vos A.D. 1402.
" etiam in hypocrisi, adulatione, et falsa vita collegistis
" magnam summam pecuniæ mendicando, et misistis ad
" Audoenum Glendour proditorem, ut veniat et de-
" struat totam linguam Anglicanam. Vos etiam mi-
" sistis in Scotiam pro quingentis hominibus, ut sint
" parati super planitiem Oxoniæ in Vigilia[1] Sancti
" Johannis ad quærendum Regem Ricardum. Quo-
" modo excusabitis vos? Consulo vobis quod ponatis
" vos in gratia domini Regis." Fratres vero respon-
derunt: "Ponimus nos in testimonio patriæ." Nec
fol. 202. col. 2. Londonienses nec illi de Holbourn volu[e]runt testes
esse. Et ideo fecerunt venire duodenam de Hysildon' found
et Heygate, qui dixerunt fratres reos esse. Et justitia- guilty by a jury of the
rius dixit: "Vos debetis trahi a Turri London' usque men of
" ad Tyburn', et ibi suspendi per diem naturalem, et Islington and High-
" postea decollari, et capita vestra super Pontem poni;" gate;
quod et factum est, videntibus et sequentibus multis
millibus hominum. Et Magister apud Tyburn' devotum and hanged
sermonem prædicavit de themate: "In manus tuas, at Tyburn.
" Domine," juravitque per salutem animæ suæ quod
contra Regem Henricum non deliquit. Et devote re-
commendavit omnes qui causa mortis suæ erant. Et
alius frater moriturus dixit: "Non fuit intentionis
" nostræ, ut dicunt inimici nostri, occidere Regem et
" filios ejus, sed ut faceremus eum ducem Lancastriæ
ut esse deberet."

In crastino, hora vesperarum, venit quidam ad gar-
dianum Fratrum Minorum dicens quod posset tollere
corpora. Et ipsi venientes invenerunt corpora jacentia
in sepibus et fossis, capitibus abscissis, quæ detulerunt
ad conventum cum mœrore. Viri de Hisildon' et Hey- The jury
gate venerunt flentes ad fratres, precantes veniam, et excuse themselves
dicentes quod nisi dixissent ipsos reos esse ipsimet[2] to the friars.

---

[1] *Vigilia*] vi[a]. B. | [2] *ipsimet*] ipsimeth. B.

A.D. 1402. occisi fuissent. In quodam conventu custodiæ Bristolliæ Frater Minor Magister in Theologia et quidam naturaliter fatuus simul infirmabantur et simul moriebantur. Et cum fatuus moreretur, dixit: "Magister "et ego moriemur; sapiens et magnus clericus fuit "ille, et ego fatuus. Nunc videamus quis cœlum citius "possidebit."

The friar and the fool at Bristol.

Hoc autem anno, duo alii fratres de conventu Leycestriæ capti fuerunt in partibus Lichfeld' per familiam principis, et ibidem tracti et suspensi sunt et decollati. Caput Magistri delatum est Oxoniæ in Vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, et coram processione Universitatis[1] clamabat præco: "Iste Magister Frater Minor de con-"ventu Leicestriæ in hypocrisi et adulatione et falsa "vita prædicavit multotiens, dicens quod Rex Ri-"cardus vivit; et excitavit populum ut quærerent "eum in Scocia." Et caput ejus ibi super palum positum est.

Two friars of Leicester captured and executed at Lichfield. 23 June.

Hoc anno, Rex Scociæ misit literas Regi Franciæ, dicens quod quidam venit in Scociam, et duo Jacobitæ dixerunt ipsum fuisse Regem Ricardum; sed rumor ille magis augebatur, sicque dicebatur quod fuisset[2] in Scocia.

Hoc insuper anno, Audoenus de Glendour[3] cepit Edmundum de Mortuo Mari, multis Anglicis de marchia Walliæ interfectis. Et Rex congregato exercitu transivit in Walliam, ubi, prohibentibus maximis tempestatibus in Septembri tonitruorum, imbrium, et grandinis, equitare non potuerunt, et multi de exercitu frigore mortui sunt.

Owen Glyndwr captures Edmund Mortimer. 22 June. The king invades Wales.

Ibi frater iste, qui fratres suos Regi accusavit, captus est a Wallico, et quia fatebatur se esse de familia Regis qui accusabat fratres, a Wallico occisus est.

An informer slain by the Welsh.

---

[1] *Universitatis*] vniu^{o}t'. B. venientis. Da.

[2] *fuisset*] fuisse. Da.

[3] *Glendour*] Glendo^{r}. B. Glendor. Da.

fol. 202. v. col. 1.

Hoc autem anno, Rege existente in Wallia, Scoti irruperunt in Angliam; sed comes Northumbriæ, et filius ejus Henricus Percy, valens miles, pugnabant cum eis, et ceperunt comites eorum et x.m[l]. interfecerunt de Scotis. A.D. 1402. The Scots are defeated at Humbledown Hill. 14 Sept.

Item hoc anno, Rex deponsavit relictam Johannis de Monte Forti, ducissam Britanniæ, filiam Regis Navarriæ,[1] et eam coronari fecit.

Hoc anno dominus le Gray gravi redemptione soluta liberatus est. Lord Grey of Ruthyn ransomed.

Post Festum Sancti Michaelis, factum est parliamentum London', ubi[2] decima cleri et quintadecima populi exactæ sunt, dicente Rege se nihil habere. Communitas quæsivit ubi fuit thesaurus Ricardi Regis. Tandem responsum fuit quod comes Northumbriæ qui Regem introduxit et alii illum habuerunt. Rogavit etiam[3] communitas Regem quod, quia multa sibi tribuunt et ipse nihil habet, sinat officiales suos super hoc examinari; sed Rex non assentiit.[4] A parliament. 30 Sept. A subsidy granted. 24 Nov.

Hoc anno, dux Aurelianensis, vir valde superbus et malus, misit Regi Angliæ literas, provocans ipsum ad duellum. Rex respondit quod non pugnaret cum minore se, nec cum consanguineo pugnare licet. Dux dixit: "Dignitatem quam injuste invasisti in te non veneror; "et ita decenter mecum pugnare potes, sicut occidisti[5] "Regem cognatum tuum;" et multa alia convitia scripsit Regi. The duke of Orleans challenges Henry IV. to a duel. [7 Aug.]

Anno Domini 1403°, et anno Henrici 3°, Britones subito venerunt ad Plymmoth, ipsumque spoliant et comburunt. Sed dominus de Berkley, custos maris, reddidit talionem. Comes Northumbriæ rogavit Regem ut solveret sibi aurum debitum pro custodia marchiæ [A.D.] 1403°. Plymouth burned. Claim of the earl of Northumberland.

---

[1] *Navarriæ*] Navarræ. Da.
[2] *ubi*] v[i]. B. et. Da.
[3] *etiam*] et. Da.
[4] *assentiit*] assensit. Da.
[5] *occidisti*] occidistis. Da.

A.D. 1403. Scociæ, sicut in carta sua continetur : "Egomet[1] et filius "meus expendimus nostra in custodia illa." Rex respondit : "Aurum non habeo, aurum non habebis." Comes dixit : "Quando regnum intrastis promisistis "regere per consilium nostrum ; jam multa a regno "annuatim accipitis et nihil habetis, nihil solvitis, et "sic communitatem vestram irritatis. Deus det vobis "bonum consilium." Venit similiter filius ejus Henricus Percy qui sororem Edmundi captivi in Wallia habebat uxorem, rogans Regem ut permitteret Edmundum redimi de proprio. Rex dixit quod cum pecunia regni non fortificaret inimicos suos contra se. Henricus dixit : "Debet homo sic exponere se periculo pro vobis "et regno vestro, et non succurretis sibi in periculo "suo?" Et iratus dixit sibi Rex : "Tu es proditor. Vis "ut succurram inimicis meis et regni?" Cui Henricus dixit : "Proditor non sum sed fidelis, et ut fidelis "loquor." Rex traxit contra eum pugionem. "Non fol. 202. v. col. 2. "hic," dixit Henricus, "sed in campo." Et recessit.

Henry Percy and Thomas, earl of Worcester, collect an army.

Henricus Percy, et avunculus ejus Thomas Percy, quem Rex Ricardus fecerat comitem Wigorniæ et domus suæ senescallum, collegerunt exercitum in marchia Scociæ, dicentes quod contra Scotos bellare oporteret ; et venerunt ad comitatum Cestriæ et Cestrenses secum assumpserunt. Miseruntque ad Audoenum ut veniret. Sed Audoenus, cognoscens quod callidi erant, non confidebat in illis. Wallicos tamen multos assumpserunt, et venerunt omnes in Lichfeld' insignati signis Regis Ricardi, videlicet, cervis. Et fecit ibi Henricus proclamari, dicens quod ipse fuit unus de illis qui maxime agebat ad expulsionem Regis Ricardi et introductionem Henrici, credens se bene fecisse. Et quia nunc cognovit quod pejus regit Henricus quam Ricardus ideo intendit corrigere errorem suum. Rex collegit similiter exercitum, et obviavit illi ext[r]a Salopiam, ubi Rex

They seek the alliance of Glyndwr.

The king defeats them near Shrewsbury.

[1] *egomet*] egom9t. B.

tractavit cum eo quærens causam suam. Cui Henricus dixit: "Nos te introduximus contra Regem Ricardum, "et pejus regis tu quam ipse. Tu regnum spolias "annuatim, et semper dicis te nihil habere. Thesau- "rarius tuus nihil habet. Solutiones nullas facis, "domum non tenes, hæres regni non es; ideo sicut "damnificavi regno, ita paratus sum damnum refor- "mare." Rex respondit se tallagia recipere pro ne- gotiis regni, et se Regem electum esse per regnum. "Consulo tibi ut ponas te in gratia mea, et habebis." Cui Henricus dixit: "In gratia tua non confido." "Precor dominum,"[1] dixit Rex, "quod tu habeas respon- "dere pro sanguine hic hodie effundendo, et non ego. "Procede, signifer;" quod est dictu: "anauant baner." Et commissum est durum prælium; et ceciderunt ex utraque parte multi. Quod cernens Henricus Percy, in spiritu fervoris assumptis secum triginta hominibus irrupit in exercitum Regis, et fecit deambulatorium in medio exercitus usque ad fortissimos Regis custodes, in- terficiens comitem Staffordiæ et alios multos in forti- tudine exercitus Regis. Et ipse in fine quasi solus stans et conclusus trucidatur. Ac exercitus ejus, hoc viso, fugiit. Baro de Podynton' in parte Henrici occiditur in bello; Thomas Percy capitur et decollatur; Henricus mortuus decollatur, ne sui dicerent eum vivere, et caput ejus super portam Eborum ponitur.

A.D. 1403.

Death of Henry Percy.

fol. 203. col. 1.

Execution of the earl of Worces- ter.

Luna eclipsata apparuit sanguinea.[2]

An eclipse of the moon.

Eremita ille qui prædixit infortunium Regi Ricardo venit ad Regem et dixit sibi secreta multa quæ igno- rantur. Quem rex jussit decollari. Quod et factum est. Istud factum est in nocte Sanctæ Mariæ Mag- dalanæ.[3] Et ceciderunt, ut dictum est, mille et VI. C. viri, et rex fuit in magno periculo; et princeps Walliæ

The north- ern hermit is executed.

22 July

The Prince of Wales wounded in the face.

[1] *dominum*] dm̄. B.

[2] Luna. in marg. B.

[3] *Magdalanæ*] Sic in B.

A.D. 1403. vulneratus in facie cum sagitta. De quo quidem conflictu quidam metrice sic scripsit:

Anno milleno quater et centesimo bino.
Bellum Salopiæ fuit in Mag. nocte Mariæ.

Legend. Super caput Henrici Percy apparuit stella comata, malum significans eventum.

Boreales milites et armigeri qui fuerunt in bello Henrici Percy redierunt in Northumbriam, claudentes se in castris ibidem, non confidentes in gratia Regis.

The king marches into Wales. September. Hoc anno Rex transiit in Walliam, et quia terra est inequitabilis cito revertitur.

Comites Scociæ quos Henricus Percy tenuit captivos misit London'; qui dixerunt Regem Ricardum in Scocia vivere. Rex Angliæ dixit quod non erat ipse, sed quidam simulator similis sibi.

Edmund Mortimer marries the daughter of Glyndwr. Legend of his nativity. Edmundus de Mortuo Mari in Wallia, non valens se redimere, dixit se nunquam velle subesse sub Henrico rege, sed filiam Audoeni cum magna solemnitate duxit in uxorem. In nativitate autem hujus Edmundi mirabile accidit portentum. In area stabuli sui patris sanguis manabat ita alte ut pedes equorum co-operiret. Vaginæ omnes gladiorum et pugionum sanguine plenæ erant. Secures sanguine rubuerunt. Princeps[1] jacens in cunis dormire non poterat nec a vagitu cessare nisi gladius sibi ostenderetur. Et in sinu nutricis positus non poterat quietari nisi aliquod[2] instrumentum bellicum sibi traderetur.

The earl of Northumberland is summoned before the the king. Rex vero misit in Northumbriam pro comite Northumbriæ, patre Henrici Percy. Ille autem respondit se paratum venire si Rex præstaret juramentum quod sibi non noceret quousque excusasset se in parliamento. Et ita venit ad Regem dicens quod filius suus hæc et multa alia fecit sine suo consilio.

The duke of Orleans and the Count de S. Pol cut off supplies from Bordeaux. Dux Aurelianensis, post festum Sancti Michaelis, jacuit prope Burdegaliam cum exercitu, arcens portantes

[1] *Princeps*] pn^s. B. | [2] *aliquod*] a^qd. B.

fol. 203. col. 2.

victualia per terram ad civitatem. Comes Sancti Pauli jacuit in mari impediens victualia per mare et naves Anglicanas cum vino ne redirent. Tandem naves Anglicanæ oneratæ hominibus comitem fugere faciunt, et dux Aurelianensis non habens victualia recedit. Et rediens comes irrupit in insulam de Wight et . . . . .[1] victualia scripsit Regi literas inimicitiæ et in Franciam recessit infra Octabas Natalis Domini. Tunc naves Anglicanæ oneratæ vino venerunt, ducentes secum proditores[2] civitatis Burdegaliæ, qui postea London' tractus et suspensus est. A.D. 1403. The count makes a descent on the Isle of Wight.

Hoc anno clerus Angliæ concessit Regi petenti medietatem unius decimæ. Post festum Sancti Hillarii inceptum est parliamentum, et duravit usque ad Pascha, quia Rex exigebat magnum tallagium, dicens se habere bellum cum Wallicis, Scotis, Hibernicis, et Gallicis in Vasconia ; insuper custodia Calesiæ magna fuit et Maris Anglicani. Communitas respondit dicens quod " isti[3] " non inquietant Angliam multum. Et si inquietarent, " adhuc Rex habet omnes proventus coronæ, ducatus " Lancastriæ, ac[4] theolonia notabiliter excessive elevata " per regem Ricardum,[5] ita ut proventus theoloniorum " lanarum, et aliarum mercium excedant proventus " coronæ. Habet[6] similiter wardas quasi omnium comi- " tum, baronum, et nobilium Angliæ. Quæ theolonia et " wardæ olim erant concessæ Regi in subsidium commu- " nitatis pro guerris, ut a tallagiis exoneretur regnum." Rex autem[7] dixit se nolle perdere terras patrum suorum in diebus suis, et ideo omnino tallagium habere oportuit. Tunc communitas petiit a Rege ut, " si tallagium habere " omnino velit, quod theolonia minueret."[8] Rex respondit quod theolonia habere vellet, sicut habuerunt sui A.D. 1404. A parliament. 14 Jan.

[1] A word which I am unable to read occurs here. It is very like " emens."

[2] Sic in B.

[3] *isti*] ista. Da.

[4] *ac*] et. Da.

[5] *per Regem Ricardum*] pro Rege Richardo. Da.

[6] *Habet*] Habuit. Da.

[7] Nota responsum. in marg. B.

[8] *minueret*] minuerentur. Da.

A.D. 1404. prædecessores. Et cum mansissent Londoniis in gravibus expensis usque ad Pascha taliter disputando, tandem exegit ab eis quod pro omni parte terræ in Anglia valente annuatim xx. s. solverentur xii. d., exceptis terris quas ecclesiastici habuerunt ante annum octavum Edwardi Primi, filii Henrici, in quo ordinatum fuit quod ecclesiastici in possessionibus non crescerent. Ipsi tandem attædiati de mora hoc concesserunt sub hac tamen conditione, quod eligerent certas personas qui tallagium reciperent et pro guerris tantum[1] expenderent, et inde compotum parliamento darent, et Rex auctoritatem recipiendi et expendendi per cartam suam eis daret. Rex videbatur assentire, ac electæ sunt personæ, et carta scripta sed non sigillata, et solutum est parliamentum. fol. 203. v. col. 1.

The earl of Northumberland swears fealty. 7 Feb.

In hoc autem parliamento comes Northumbriæ excusatur a bello filii sui, et juravit super crucem Sancti Thomæ coram parliamento quod fidelis semper foret Regi Henrico.

Removal of aliens from the household. 21 Feb.

In hoc insuper parliamento ejiciuntur a regno duæ filiæ reginæ, et omnes alienigenæ qui venerant cum ea, quia domum regiam onerabant.

Hoc parliamentum valde reprehendit regios milites et alios ejus officiales, probans quod ipsi Regem et regnum spoliant per hoc quod ditissimus ipsorum in adventu Regis vix expendere potuit C. marcas, et jam quidam ipsorum expendere possunt V. C. marcas, quidam M. marcas, et quidam plus, et cum sint armigeri et bachalarii baronibus in divitiis æquipollent. Et Rex dixit se nihil habere et alii crescunt annuatim.

A forged letter from Richard II.

Ad hoc parliamentum venerunt literæ quasi a Rege Ricardo missæ ita evidenter apparentes quod totum parliamentum et Rex obstupuerunt, et vocaverunt custodem illius in carcere, et quæsierunt quomodo ad literas responderet. Ipse dixit se velle pugnare in duello cum quocumque dicente Regem Ricardum vivere. Dum

[1] *tantum*] t̃m. B. tum. Da.

hoc parliamentum teneretur Wallici combusserunt magnam partem comitatus Salopiæ. A.D. 1403. [A.D.] 1404°.

Anno Domini 1404, et anno 4 Regis,[1] Audoenus Glendor partes Australes Walliæ incendit et villam de Kaierdief et castrum obsedit. Qui vero intus erant miserunt ad regem petentes auxilium, sed ipse nec venit neque succursum misit. Audoenus villam cepit, et incendit præter unum vicum in quo Fratres Minores habitabant, quem amore fratrum cum conventu stare permisit. Cepit insuper castrum et destruxit, multasque divitias ibi repositas abstulit. Et cum Fratres Minores peterent ab eo libros suos et calices quos in castro deposuerant, respondit: "Quare posuistis bona vestra "in castro? Si ea retinuissetis apud vos salva vobis "fuissent." A.D. 1403. Glyndwr besieges Cardiff. Dec. He burns the town; and destroys the castle.

Hoc anno comes Sancti Pauli venit subito cum exercitu et obsedit castrum de Marc juxta Calesiam, et fecit fossam circa illud. Sed cum vidit Calesianos venire, turpiter fugiit, omnibus rebus suis et tunica armorum suorum præ festinantia ibi dimissis. Calesiani plures occiderunt et captivabant multos. Flandrenses dixerunt se injuriatos a nautis Anglicis, et ideo pacem cum Anglicis habere noluerunt, sed quos poterant captivabant. Tunc Thomas filius regis factus est custos maris, qui incendit quasdam villulas juxta portum de Sclusa in insula de Cagent. Qui etiam cepit tres caracas de Janua, quia noluerunt sua vela deponere sed pugnare, et in Angliam reversus est. A.D. 1405. The count de S. Pol besieges the castle of Marc near Calais. May. Thomas of Lancaster made keeper of the sea. 20 Feb.

fol. 203. v. col. 2.

Adhuc rumor de vita Regis Ricardi invaluit in Anglia, et quod ipse moraretur in Scocia in castro ducis Roseye quod Albion dicitur. Quidam vir venit ad comitissam Oxoniæ et affirmavit regem Ricardum vivere, quæ ex hoc gaudens arestata fuit et posita in Turri Londoniæ; quæ insuper post gravem[2] redemptionem liberata est. A.D. 1404. The countess of Oxford imprisoned for treasonable words.

---

[1] *et . . . Regis*] Interlined in B.

[2] *gravem*] grandem. Da.

A.D. 1404. Similiter abbates Sanctæ Osithæ et Colcestriæ accusati, pro pecuniis gratiam regis Henrici habere meruerunt.

Boniface IX. ob. 1 Oct. Hoc anno Bonifacius papa moritur, et eligitur Innocentius jurans quod laboraret ad unionem ecclesiæ.

A parliament at Coventry. 6 Oct. Quo insuper anno statuitur[1] parliamentum apud Coventriam statim post festum Sancti Michaelis. Et Rex mandavit quod nullus juris peritus ad illud veniret, et notificavit vicecomitibus quos milites et comitatum[2] procuratores voluit illuc mitti.

A subsidy. 8 Oct. Et ibi exegit duas decimas cleri et duas quintasdecimas laicorum.

A.D. 1405. Abduction of the sons of the earl of March. Hoc anno filius Audoeni ab Anglicis capitur, et in Turri Londoniæ captivatur. Tunc hæredes comitis Marchiæ duo filii existentes in warda Regis, quos quidam dixerunt veros esse hæredes regni de proxima linea de stirpe domini Leonelli, abducti fuerunt a curia Regis per quandam damicellam de camera reginæ, et ipsa accusavit de hoc ducem Eborum. Et dux in castro de Pevenesey aliquandiu detentus est. Dux tamen excusavit se, dicens quod ipse scivit quod allicerentur et præmunivit de hoc regem.

The duke of York imprisoned on suspicion in Pevensey castle.

A.D. 1404. Capture of John (William) Serle in Scotland. He is drawn, hanged, and cut down alive in many places in England, and beheaded in London. His confession. Hoc anno quidam Johannes Cerle, qui ducem Gloverniæ occiderat priviter, captus fuit ab Anglicis in Scocia, et in multis locis Angliæ tractus, suspensus, et vivus depositus, et tandem ductus Londoniæ tractus ibidem et suspensus demum decollatus est atque in quartas divisus. Iste confessus est quod quando Rex Ricardus tradidit se duci Lancastriæ in Wallia, ipse furatus fuit signetum Regis Ricardi. Et cum Rex Henricus inquireret de occisoribus ducis Gloucestriæ, ipse fugiit in Scociam, et inde misit literas dicto signeto signatas ad amicos Regis Ricardi, dicens quod ipse viveret, et sic fuit causa mortis multorum. Dixit etiam quod est unus in Scocia similis regi Ricardo, sed non est ipse

[1] *statuitur*] statutum. Da. | [2] *comitatum*] communitatum. Da.

Ricardus ; tamen adhuc non quievit rumor ille de vita A.D. 1404.
fol. 204. col. 1. ejus. Semper Scoti illum rumorem auxerunt.

Hoc anno venit Imperator Constantinopolitanus, ut A.D. 1400.
supra dictum est.

Et domina Johanna ducissa Britanniæ venit in A.D. 1403.
Angliam, quam Rex Henricus apud Wintoniam in ab- Marriage of Henry IV. at Winchester. 7 Feb.
batia Sancti Suthinii solemniter desponsavit, vivente adhuc Willielmo Wikham Wintoniensi episcopo apud Waltham. Et Henricus Beauford, tunc episcopus Lincolniensis, dictum matrimonium solemnisavit.

A.D. 1402.
Quo insuper anno domina Blancha, senior filia regis Marriage of the Princess Blanche to Louis, duke of Bavaria, at Cologne. 6 July.
Henrici, nupsit filio ducis Bavariæ apud Coloniam, quorum nuptias Ricardus Clifford episcopus Wigorniensis tunc celebravit, præsente comite Somersetiæ, qui post nuptiarum solemnisationem in Angliam sunt reversi.

Eodem anno in Somersetia visi sunt corvi multi venire A.D. 1404.
de partibus transmarinis, et sturni veniebant contra eos Fight of crows and starlings.
et eos occidebant.

Postea venerunt Britones illuc ad prædandum, et pau- The Bretons repulsed.
peres plebei occiderunt illos, ubi unus auriga verberavit militem armatum, quod multotiens ibi visum est.

Hoc anno magnum schisma valde scandalosum fuit Dispute in the order of Friars Minors.
in Ordine Fratrum Minorum in Anglia. Nam minister Ordinis, turbulentorum fratrum consilio instigatus, et promotorum suorum imperitorum numero roboratus, plures conventus et principales, plures etiam fratres et eorum amicos, graviter offendebat per subtractionem privilegiorum et antiquarum consuetudinum, omnia intendens ad libitum suum nova ordinare, et præcipue privilegia conventus London' auctoritate potestatis generalis revocavit, assignans eis gardianum ac lectorem, et fratres a conventu qui privilegium defenderent removere nitebatur. Conventus autem appellavit ab eo ad papam, dicens quod privilegium loci concessum est non auctoritate generali sed a cardinali vicario Ordinis auctoritate papali. Et cum nollet eis gardianum electum ab eis confirmare, invocabant contra eum auxilium majoris

The minister of the Order revokes the privileges of the convent of London.

The convent appeals to the pope; and the mayor of London.

A.D. 1404. Londoniæ. Major præcipit sibi quod non turbaret pacem civitatis; videbat quosdam de civitate insurgere volentes contra eum amore fratrum. Minister condescendit illis tunc, et transiit in partes Aquilonares ad visitandum.

His opponents send to the General of the Order.

Interim congregaverunt se adversarii sui mittentes nuntium cum literis contra eum ad Generalem; feceruntque sibi amicos in curia Regis, qui ita informaverunt Regem, quod Rex etiam tradidit nuntio literas suas ad generalem. Nuntius transfretavit, et fuit ipse frater

The minister appeals to the king.

callidus bacularius Cantibrugiæ. Minister venit ad Regem, et Rex dixit quod ipse turbavit regnum. Minister ostendebat sibi literas provincialis Ordinis testimoniales de pacifico regimine. Sed dixit fratres Londonienses sunt vitiosi, et vellet eorum vitia corrigere, et ideo insurgunt contra eum. Et Rex concessit sibi literas

fol. 204. col. 2.

Testimony to the good behaviour of the friars of the convent of London.

revocatorias præmissarum. Conventus accepit testimonium coram Rege a burgensibus civitatis, quod nunquam scandalum accidit in civitate per aliquem fratrem in conventu manentem, sed omnia scandala venerunt per adventitios forenses et illis similes, qui fuerunt ibi suspensi, et minister vellet fratres nativos ibidem amovere et tales adventitios ibidem ordinare.

Commissioners appointed by the papal commissary.

Nuntius missus inveniens Generalem mortuum, transivit ad curiam, et celeriter rediens portavit literas justitiæ directas duobus Magistris in Theologia a quodam cardinali qui asseruit quod papa fecit ipsum commissarium in hac causa viva voce. Et dedit cardinalis eis potestatem visitandi provinciam, et absolvendi ministrum si excessus ejus reperirent, et statuendi capitulum,[1] ac procedendi ad electionem alterius, et vices agendi veri ministri donec minister in provincia haberetur; et sub pœna excommunicationis prohibuit ne quis resisteret illis. Qua quidem commissione recepta, commissarii visitabant quosdam conventus, et notificaverunt Regi

[1] *capitulum*] ca^m. B.

commissionem suam et quod excessus quosdam reperierunt, et obtinuerunt a Rege prohibitionem ne transfretaret, citantes eum quod compareret coram eis in castro Colchestriæ. Ipse autem noluit parere, sed transfretavit. Ipse vero absolvebant eum, et absolutum denuntiabant, statuentes capitulum[1] Oxoniæ in Inventione Sanctæ Crucis. Ac fratres informaverunt archiepiscopum Cantuariensem contra ministrum graviter, et similiter Regem, qui crediderunt eis. Vicarius autem ministri inhibuit omnibus fratribus quod ad capitulum[1] Oxoniæ non accederent. Et commissarii supplicabant Regi quod præciperet fratribus, pro reformatione religionis ad capitulum[1] Oxoniæ convenirent, inhibens ne quis capitulum[1] impediret; et de his brevia regia habuerunt.

A.D. 1404. The minister cited before them. He escapes. 3 May.

Anno Domini 1405, et Regis anno quinto, dominus Ricardus Scrop', archiepiscopus[2] Eborum, et dominus de Mowbray, qui etiam Comes Marescallus vocabatur, apud Eborum decollantur. Deus enim omnipotens per ipsum archiepiscopum usque hodie mirabiliter operatur. Et, ut quidam dicunt, Rex in hora mortis dicti præsulis lepra percussus erat, quam nemo medicorum curare potuit, sed ex eadem postea mortuus est infirmitate.

[A.D.] 1405. Execution of Scrope, archbishop of York, and Mowbray, earl of Nottingham.

Quod sic contigit: Hæres comitis de Notyngham, dominus de Mowbray, conqueritur archiepiscopo Eborum quod cum patres sui solebant esse marescalli Angliæ, et terras pro illo officio assignatas possidere, Rex officium et terras dedit comiti Westmerlandiæ. Archiepiscopus, communicato cum prudentibus, prædicavit in ecclesia cathedrali Eborum, hortans populum ut assisteret ad correctionem mali regiminis regni, ut scilicet depauperatio mercatorum, in quibus esse deberent substantiales[3] divitiæ regni, per excessivas elevationes theoloneorum et custumarum, ac confiscationes pecuniarum suarum sub colore mutui. Et quod pro victualibus et artificiis debitæ solutiones fiant. Et quod relevetur clerus et

Account of their conspiracy.

fol. 204. v. col. 1.

The archbishop preaches against the king in York-Minster.

[1] *capitulum*] ca^{m}. B.
[2] *archiepiscopus*] archl^{p}. B.
[3] *substantiales*] subãles. B.

A.D. 1405. populus ab illo assueto onere importabilium tallagiorum. Et quod hæredibus nobilium restituantur hæreditates integræ et honores secundum conditionem natalium suorum.

Item [1] quod consiliarii avari et cupidi circa regem sugentes ab eo bona ad commune subsidium ordinata, semetipsos ditantes, amoveantur. Item quod juris periti ad parliamentum veniant, et sua sapientia consulant, quod milites comitatuum et burgenses civitatum mittendi ad parliamentum per comitatus et civitates eligantur, et non per Regem assignentur. Et quod parliamentum statuatur Londoniis, qui locus est magis publicus,[2] et ubi hæc melius corrigi possunt. Quæ si correcta sint, habemus firmam spem quod Wallia erit subjecta Angliæ, sicut fuit temporibus Edwardi et Ricardi.

He publishes a manifesto against him, and collects an army.

Hæc in Anglico scripta appendi fecit in portis civitatis, et curatis similiter in villis circumjacentibus misit prædicanda. Et collecto exercitu de burgensibus, villanis, presbyteris, et religiosis, armavit se et cum domino de Moubray processit versus comitem Westmerland'. Et comes Westmerland' cum exercitu venit contra eum. Qui cum appropinquarent, comes Westmerland' rogavit archiepiscopum et dominum de Moubray ut convenirent coram eo in medio exercituum et tractarent de pace.

The earl of Westmoreland captures the archbishop and the earl of Nottingham by a stratagem.

Archiepiscopus vero et dominus de Moubray ac unus miles de eorum consilio principalis exivit ad eum. Comes Westmerland' habebat ibi flascones cum vino, et dabat eis bibere. Et dum fraudulenter simularet se tractare, quidam miles suus transivit ad exercitum archiepiscopi, et dixit: "Domini sunt concordati, et "simul biberunt. Dominus archiepiscopus præcipit "omnibus vobis redire, quia ipse cœnabit cum comite "hac nocte." Et omnes erant timidi, quia erat terræ mirabilis tumor, propter quem tractantes ab eis videri non poterant. Et nimis creduli cito recesserunt. fol. 204. v. col. 2.

---

[1] Articuli contra regem. in marg. B. | [2] *publicus*] pub^co. B. purus. Da.

Quibus recedentibus et dispersis, rediit miles ille ad suos et facto signo ceperunt archiepiscopum, dominum de Moubray et militem ; et exercitus comitis persequebatur exercitum archiepiscopi fugientem et dispersum, quosque spoliabant et graviter verberabant quos capere potuerunt. Fratres vero quatuor Ordinum comprehensos, inter quos erant circiter octodecim Fratres Minores, nudabant omnes vestes suas, et femoralia detrahebant, et currere dimiserunt. Præsentaveruntque domino Regi archiepiscopum et dominum de Moubray, qui tunc fuit in castro Pontis Fracti ordinans se contra illos qui castra sua in Northumbria detinebant. Rex venit Eboracum, et exierunt ad eum burgenses discalceati, discincti, et simplicibus induti, cordas in collis gerentes ; et prostrati coram Rege misericordiam et gratiam ejus implorantes. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, his auditis, venit cum festinatione ad Regem, et quidam miles aulicus Regis videns eum dixit Regi : " Si iste archiepiscopus Eborum vivet,[1] omnes " nos a vobis recedemus." Et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis,[2] in præsentia cujusdam notarii, dixit Regi : " Domine, " ego sum pater vester spiritualis et secunda persona " post vos in regno, et nullius consilium plus acceptaretis " quam meum si bonum sit. Consulo[3] vobis quod si " archiepiscopus tantum deliquerit,[4] sicut vobis sug- " gestum est, reservetur judicio domini papæ, qui talem " satisfactionem vobis ordinabit quod eam judicabitis " sufficientem. At si hoc non vultis, consulo ut re- " servetur judicio parliamenti. Absit quod judicio ves- " tro manus vestræ ejus sanguine polluantur." Rex respondit : " Non possum, propter astantes."[5] Et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis requisivit notarium super hac responsione publicum conficere instrumentum papæ si oporteat præsentandum. Rex vero intravit aulam ar-

A.D. 1405.

The king comes to York.

The advice of the archbishop of Canterbury.

The king declines to follow it.

[1] *vivet*] veniet. Da.
[2] *Cantuariensis*] om. Da.
[3] Consilium archiepiscopi Cantuariensis. in marg. B.
[4] *deliquerit*] deliqit. B.
[5] *astantes*] Interlined in B.

A.D. 1405. chiepiscopi ad prandendum, et habuit secum archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et totam familiam suam. Et dum pranderent adjudicati sunt archiepiscopus Eborum, dominus de Moubray, et quidam miles prædictus, et extra
8 June. civitatem decollantur in festo Sancti Willielmi. Et archiepiscopus decollandus dixit :[1] "En morior pro legi-
" bus et bono regimine regni Angliæ." Et aliis dixit secum decollandis : "Hanc pœnam patienter sustineamus,
The king struck with leprosy. " et hac nocte in Paradiso erimus." Et Rex incontinenti quasi leprosus apparere cepit; qui statim bona civium civitatis Eborum confiscavit, deinde transivit ad Aquilonem contra eos qui castra sua ibidem tenebant. Comes Northumbriæ et dominus Bardolf de castro Berwici recesserunt in Scociam. Rex autem venit ad Berwicum, et expugnando castrum multos lapides jactari fecit cum bombardis ad muros castri ; sed frangebantur lapides per murorum duritiam. Tandem accidit quod lapis quidam percussit[2] ferramentum cancellatum cujusdam fenestræ in quodam tenui muro, et hominem ibidem ascendentem[3] occidit. Et extunc omnes inclusi amiserunt corda, et vecordes effecti exierunt, gratiam Regis implorantes ; quos Rex jussit decollari.

fol. 205. col. 1.

The earl of Northumberland and lord Bardolf escape to Scotland.

Siege of Berwick Castle.

Henry marches into Wales. August.

Et reversus transiit in Walliam Australem, et castrum de Coyfy, diu a Wallicis obsessum, liberavit. Et in redeundo cariagium suum et jocalia sua Wallenses spoliabant.

The pope excommunicates the murderers of the archbishop.

Papa autem, audita morte archiepiscopi, excommunicavit omnes occisores archiepiscopi Eborum et consilium ad hoc dantes, mandans archiepiscopo Cantuariensi quod denuntiaret eos excommunicatos. Sed archiepiscopus nolebat hoc facere solus. Tunc Rex misit ad papam dicens quod timor seditionis in populo non sinebat eum
Message of the king to the pope. vivere, mittens papæ loricam episcopi dicens : "Pater, vide si tunica hæc filii tui sit, an non." Et quievit materia.

---

[1] Moritur archiepiscopus Eborum. in marg. B.

[2] *percussit*] percussus sit. Da.

[3] *hominem . . . ascendentem*] homines . . . ascendentes. Da.

Hoc anno factum est parliamentum post Dominicam primam Quadragesimæ, et duravit usque ad Nativitatem[1] Domini. Clerus autem in convocatione concessit Regi unam decimam[2] et vj. s. viij. d a quolibet annuario sacerdote. Sed laici nihil solvere volebant[3] nisi[4] eis daretur compotus de receptis, sicut prius ordinatum fuit et per Regem promissum. Rex breviter respondebat quod Reges non solebant compotum dare. Officiales dixerunt quod nullus eorum scivit compotum reddere. Ordinati ad recipiendum collectam anni præcedentis dixerunt se auctoritatem recipiendi non habere, nec aliquid acceperunt, et sic negotium remansit imperfectum hoc anno.

A.D. 1406. A parliament at Westminster, 1 Mar.—22 Dec. A clerical subsidy. The lay subsidy refused.

Anno Domini 1406°, et anno regni Regis Henrici Quarti sexto, Innocentius papa moritur, et cardinales convenientes ad electionem juraverunt singillatim quod quiscunque eorum foret electus cederet quando a cardinalibus foret requisitus pro unione pacis ecclesiæ; et elegerunt ex se unum quem vocabant Gregorium, in theologia doctorem, senem, qui etiam post coronationem idem præstitit juramentum in præsentia plurium notariorum. Cujus etiam temporibus ordinatum est quod nullus minister provincialis Fratrum Minorum stabit in illo statu ultra septennium; super qua ordinatione bullam suam tradidit Generali.

[A.D.] 1406. Innocent VII. ob. 6 Nov. Gregory XII. elected. 30 Nov.

fol. 205. col. 2.

Hoc anno Rex dedit filiam suam Regi Daciæ. Et communitas Angliæ dedit Regi unam quintamdecimam.

A.D. 1405. Marriage of the Princess Philippa.

Hoc insuper anno duo papæ componunt et assentiunt convenire in Sapona et resignare, et papa misit Generalem Fratrum Minorum ad Regem Angliæ et per totam Almanniam, et alios episcopos et nobiles cum literis credentiæ, ut intimaret eis propositum suum de cessione facienda.

A.D. 1406. The two popes agree to resign.

---

[1] *Nativitatem*] Natale. Da.
[2] *decimam*] xxam. Da.
[3] *volebant*] volebantur (sic). Da.
[4] *nisi*] nec (sic). Da.

[A.D.] 1407. Murder of the duke of Orleans. 23 Nov.

Anno Domini 1407, et anno regis Henrici 4ti 7°, dux Aurelianensis, multum odiosus in Francia, propter turbam cum qua semper[1] equitabat interfici non potuit, ideo in civitate Parisius,[2] ubi cum paucis ambulabat tanquam securus, occiditur hoc modo: Unus inimicus suus sero[3] incendit quandam domum, et socii sui occiderunt ducem et abierunt festinanter clamantes: "Ad ignem ite, ad "ignem." Familia autem ducis clamabat: "Proditio, "proditio." Sed populus transivit[4] ad ignem. Rex autem Franciæ turbatus est, et omne concilium suum cum illo, inquirentes quis hoc fecit. Dux Burgundiæ dixit: "Juretis mihi quod tenebitis consilium per tres "dies, et dicam vobis quis hoc fecit." Et juraverunt. Et ipse confessus est de scientia sua hoc factum fuisse. Tunc excluserunt eum a concilio. Ipse vero transivit[4] in Flandriam et Alemanniam, colligens exercitum copiosum. Invocavitque auxilium Regis Angliæ. Rex autem pro illo murdro contempsit eum. Rex vero Franciæ misit pro duce; dux respondit quod non veniret nisi[5] approbaret mortem hominis morte dignissimi,[6] quia fuit homo luxuriosissimus, jactans se violasse uxores multorum dominorum et nobilium Franciæ, [et] reginam; et totam prolem regiam suam esse affirmavit. Et minabatur consiliariis regis, si contrarium consulerent, quod morerentur.

The duke of Burgundy asks the aid of Henry IV.

A pestilence in England.

Hoc anno fuit magna pestilentia in Anglia, maxime in partibus Occiduis.

Papa Gregorius propter clamorem cardinalium fingens se transiturum ad resignandum, promisit regi Neapolitano quod faceret ipsum imperatorem si ipse interim Romam custodiret ad papatum suum contra alium eligendum. fol. 205. v. col. 1.

Marriage of the earl of Kent.

Hoc etiam anno domina Lucia, soror ducis Mediolani, venit in Angliam, et domino Edmundo Holand comiti Canciæ matrimonialiter copulatur.

---

[1] *semper*] sæpe. Da.
[2] *Parisius*] Paris. Da.
[3] *sero*] cero. B.; ceres. Da.
[4] *transivit*] transiit. Da.
[5] *nisi*] nec. Da.
[6] *dignissimi*] dignissimam. Da.

Hoc insuper anno obiit nobilis ille miles Robertus Knollys, qui Londonias apud Carmelitas Fratres honorifice sepelitur. A.D. 1407. Death of Sir Robert Knowles.

Rex itaque per magnum tempus non solverat soldariis custodibus Calesiæ sua vadia, quare ipsi detinuerunt lanas mercatorum quæ fuerunt ibidem; unde[1] mercatores conquesti sunt Regi, et Rex petiit ut mutuarent sibi pecunias; mercatores autem se excusabant. "Vos habetis "aurum," dixit Rex, "et egò volo habere aurum; ubi est?" Tandem post longam moram mercatores concesserunt sibi aurum, ea conditione, quod cancellarius, archiepiscopus, Cantuariensis et dux Eboracensis manucaperent pro resolutione; quod et factum est. The English soldiers of Calais seize the wools of the merchants there.

Tunc proceres Scotorum deduxerunt comitem Northumbriæ et dominum Bardolf ac[2] abbatem de Hayles usque ad aquam Twede, dicentes eis: "Jam procedatis; "vos habetis Angliam vobiscum." Qui venerunt cum parva comitiva usque ad Tadcastre. Et vicecomes Eborum venit cum exercitu et trucidavit eos; capita eorum posita super pontem Londoniensem. 1408. A.D. 1408. Death of the earl of Northumberland and lord Bardolf at Bramham Moor. 18 Feb.

Anno Domini 1408°, et anno regis Henrici 4^ti^ 8°, Gregorius papa descendebat de partibus Romanis cum cardinalibus, ut de unione ecclesiæ tractaret et resignaret. Interim Rex Neapolitanus venit cum exercitu ad Romam, et partem ejus cepit, et spoliavit. Quod audiens Gregorius, cum venisset ad civitatem Lucanam, nec procedere voluit ad locum assignatum nec resignare, dicens tempus non esse congruum nec locum esse tutum; sed redire intendebat. Undecim igitur cardinales dicebant eum perjurum, et recesserunt ab eo in civitatem Pisanam. Ipse autem excommunicavit eos, ac omni dignitate, officio, et beneficio privavit, aliosque cardinales creavit. Ipsi vero appellabant a papa Gregorio male informato ad eundem melius informandum; appellabant etiam ad Concilium Generale. Appellabant insuper ad Summum [A.D.] 1408. Gregory XII. promises to resign. The king of Naples besieges Rome. The pope refuses to move beyond Lucca. His cardinals desert him.

[1] *unde*] veruntamen. Da. | [2] *ac*] et. Da.

A.D. 1408 Judicem Christum Jesum. Et custodire fecerunt vias ne se posset a civitate Lucana movere nec alicubi literas mittere. Alter vero papa, expulsus de dominio Franciæ, transiit ad Arrogoniam patriam suam, et novem cardinales sui transierunt ad Pisam et ju[n]xerunt se ibi cardinalibus Romanis. Alii vero undecim cardinales prædicti scripserunt regibus et pontificibus ac ecclesiæ prælatis petentes ipsorum [1] et auxilium contra Gregorium perjurum.

Benedict XIII. escapes from France.

fol. 205. v. col. 2.

[A.D. 1409.] The Council of Oxford. (? London) 14 Jan.

Archiepiscopus vero Cantuariensis convocavit clerum exemptum et non exemptum, exceptis Mendicantibus, ad Oxoniam. In qua convocatione fuit Rex; ubi clauserunt manus suas, videlicet papales, ut non posset aliquod beneficium dare in Anglia nec aliquid ab Anglia recipere; ordinantes insuper quod omnia quæ sunt debita cameræ papæ servabuntur in Anglia quousque fuerit unum tantummodo caput in ecclesia Domini.

A.D. 1408. The archbishop of Bordeaux comes to England.

Post paucos vero dies cardinalis (?) venit in Angliam, Franciscus archiepiscopus Burdigalensis, pro pace tracturus.

[A.D. 1409.] Regulations touching preachers at the Council of Oxford.

Clerus hoc anno ibidem statuit quod nullus curatus admitteret aliquem sæcularem sacerdotem vel religiosum ad prædicandum in ecclesia sua sub pœna excommunicationis et privationis, nisi ostenderet literas licentiales episcopi ejusdem diœceseos aut archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, quas literas siquis habere vellet præsentaret se episcopo illius diœceseos ubi prædicare intendebat, et licentiam peteret, et sine pecunia reciperet. Hoc autem statutum erat ordinatum contra Lollardos et limitatores illiteratos ac fratres vitiosos.

A.D. 1408. The archbishop is received by the king at Westminster.

Sedente [2] vero Rege in throno suo coronatus apud Westmonasterium, intravit cardinalis supradictus Burdigalensis, qui in introitu deposuit capellum suum, et procedens ad medium aulæ deposuit capicium suum. [3]

[1] Sic in B.

[2] Nota. in marg. B.

[3] *suum*] sue. B.

Et appropinquans Regi deposuit medietatem capicii sui se inclinans. Rex autem surrexit et cepit manum ejus et osculatus est eum. A.D. 1408.

Post paucos vero dies convocavit concilium episcoporum Angliæ, Scotiæ, et Hyberniæ, et clerum; in præsentia Regis faciens collationem accepit pro themate: "Verbum ad te, o princeps;" et notabiliter causam ecclesiæ peroravit. Cui conclusionaliter responsum est quod Anglici promiserunt suam assistentiam ecclesiæ Romanæ ad ejus unionem, et tam ire quam mittere ad Concilium Generale. He calls the Council of London. 23 July.

Verumtamen post paucos dies papa evasit de civitate Lucana, scribens regi Angliæ, archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, et duci Eborum quod verbis illius qui venerat tanquam cardinalis fidem non darent; et de calumnia sibi imposita prout potuit se excusare nitebatur. Et venit ad Cenas faciens cardinales, quorum unus erat de Ordine Fratrum Prædicatorum. Gregory XII. escapes from Lucca.

fol. 206. col. 1. Hoc anno, comes Canciæ dominus Edmundus Holand, admirallus maris Anglicani, in obsidione castri de Briac in Britannia, occisus est. The earl of Kent is killed at S. Brieux.

Hoc insuper anno fuit magnum gelu in Anglia, quod duravit per xv. septimanas. A great frost.

Aquæ insuper fluminum in partibus Borealibus Angliæ vehementer inundaverunt super terram in principio Septembris; et in nocte Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ tantus impetus aquæ descendit de montibus in villam de Ware, ut domos prosternebat, et homines præ timore clamaverunt per totam villam, credentes se submergi; et conventus Fratrum Minorum ibidem ita replebatur aqua ut ea die nec missa aut officium Divinum ibidem diceretur. An inundation in the North. Sept. The town of Ware flooded. 8 Sept.

Hoc anno dux Burgundiæ cum magno exercitu revertebatur in Franciam, et Rex Franciæ recessit a civitate Parisiensi. Quæ quidam civitas apertis portis ducem, cum suo exercitu, cum gaudio recepit. The duke of Burgundy occupies Paris.

Hoc insuper anno, transfretaverunt versus Concilium Generale episcopus Sarum, Robertus Halum, episcopus The bishop of Salisbury, &c.,

A.D. 1408. leave England for the council of Pisa. Sancti David, abbas monasterii Sanctæ Mariæ de Eborum, prior ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, quorum quilibet habebat a clero Angliæ mille marcas ut dicebatur pro expensis.

[A.D.] 1409. The council of Pisa. 25 Mar.—7 Aug. Anno Domini M. IIII.C. nono, et anno regni regis Henrici 4ti nono, convenit Concilium Generale apud Pisam in festo Annuntiationis Beatæ Mariæ ; quod postea translatum est ad Constanciam. Transfretavit insuper ad Concilium Generale episcopus Dunolmiæ, cum magno apparatu.

Item comes de Dunbar, factus Anglicus et comes Richmundiæ, ut prædicitur, fugiit iterum in Scotiam, dicens quod ipse finxit se Anglicum ut comitem Northumbriæ, Henricum Percy, et alios inimicos regni Scociæ occidi procuraret vel destrui.

The popes rejected by the council. Hoc etiam anno, domini apud Concilium in Pisa, probabant papas perjuros, hæreticos, et schismaticos, et eos recusabant. Gregorius vero stipatus cognatione sua et aliis armatis, in quodam castro juxta Venetias se tenebat, dicens se perjurum non esse, quia de plenitutudine potestatis Apostolicæ absolvit seipsum ab illo juramento, et alteri similiter commisit potestatem sufficientem ut ipsum absolveret. Consimiliter et alter in Arrogonia dicebat, qui tamen misit ambaxiatores ad Concilium, dicens quod si Concilium statueretur in alio loco ipse veniret et resignaret. Concilium autem respondit se resignatione non indigere remittens nuntios vacuos. fol. 206. col. 2.

The cardinals proceed to a new election. Cardinales intraverunt conclav . . . palatii, et per scrutinum ibidem xj. diebus permanentes in electione et arctati, concordare non valebant; tandem in festo Sanctorum Johannis et Pauli unus prudens cardinalis antiquus ante schisma ordinatus surrexit, dicens : " Ita-
" lici nolunt Gallicum, Gallici nolunt Romanum nec
" Italicum eligere, ergo eligamus unum indifferentem.
" Hic est unus valentissimus clericus qui plus egit in
" hoc Concilio sua sapientia quam omnes nos, Petrus
" de Candia, Frater Minor, cardinalis et archiepiscopus
" Mediolanensis, qui prius fuit episcopus Pisanus, so-

" lemnis et nominatissimus Doctor in Theologia, sicut A.D. 1409.
" satis ostendunt facta sua; pro Deo eligamus illum.
" Ego vero eligo ipsum. Quid dicitis vos, patres?" Election of Alexander V.
Qui omnes singillatim assenserunt. Qui sic electus ductus fuit in ecclesiam, et in Translatione Sancti Thomæ solemniter coronatus. 26 June.

Hoc tempore dux Andigaviæ, qui et dux Provinciæ fuit, supplicabat papæ ut daret sibi regnum Cisiliæ et Neapolitanum, quod olim antecesssor suus possedit, et ipse regem Neapoli expugnaret. Et papa concessit, ita ut regnum ipsum quod speciale patrimonium Beati Petri esse dinoscitur, ab eo teneret solvendo annuum redditum consuetum. Louis of Anjou renews his claim to the kingdom of Naples.

Iste papa vocatus est Alexander Quintus. Hic autem fuerat studens Northwici et Oxoniæ, eratque jocundus vir et eloquens in Latina lingua et Græca, in qua natus et nutritus fuit; Frater autem Minor quidam legebat Evangelium in Græco, in die coronationis suæ. Character of Alexander V.

Auditaque electione prædicta Rex Franciæ, et omnis civitas Parisius, solemnes processiones faciebant, et similiter aliæ civitates. In Anglia vero non ita cito fecerunt, sed plurimi murmurabant. Quidam de Anglia intendebant proposuisse in hoc Concilio quod capitulum dudum foret revocatum, sed visa fratris electione tacebant. Processions in Paris celebrating his election.

Papa, receptis obedientiis prælatorum et homagiis temporalium dominorum de papatu tenentium, in dignitate papali plenarie confirmatus, in præsentia omnium dixit: "Dolemus de istis duobus contendentibus pro
" papatu. Dicunt quod jam est error pejor priore, quia
" prius fuerunt duo papæ, modo sunt tres. Veniant
" ad nos, et non erit error. Veniant et resignent, et
" nos prius resignabimus, et alius eligatur."

fol. 206. v. col. 1. Hoc anno sanguis visus est ebullire de fontibus in diversis partibus Angliæ, et consequenter de dysenteria multi moriebantur. Dysentery in England.

A.D. 1409. Papa remisit omnia arreragia debita Curiæ Romanæ ab initio Curiæ usque ad electionem suam.

Reply of the Pope to a candidate for an Irish see.

Quidam autem Frater Minor venit ad papam, petens ab eo episcopatum in Hibernia. Cui papa dixit: "Vade "ad illam ecclesiam, et servias illi, ut ipsi ibidem te "petant in episcopum, et cum electus fueris nos con- "firmabimus tuam electionem."

The bishop of Salisbury returns from the Council.

Episcopus Sarum rediens de Concilio narravit Regi acta Concilii, modum electionis, commendans personam electi, et quomodo Rex Franciæ et civitates ultramarinæ solemnes processiones fecerunt laudantes Dominum pro ecclesiæ unitate.

A procession in London, and a sermon at Paul's Cross to celebrate the termination of the schism.

Et de mandato Regis archiepiscopus Cantuariensis convocavit processionem magnam Londoniæ feria sexta sequenti, et factus est sermo in Cruce Sancti Pauli ubi narrata sunt omnia prædicta, et intrantes post sermonem in ecclesiam Sancti Pauli cantaverunt solemniter hymnum, "Te Deum laudamus;" ubi insuper archiepiscopus concessit omnibus præsentibus xl. dies indulgentiæ. Et similiter episcopi qui ibi fuerunt totidem concesserunt. Misitque archiepiscopus omnibus suffraganeis suis hæc consimiliter in suis ecclesiis facere. Deinde nuntiata fuerunt hæc, ut prædictum est.

Dux Provinciæ, et dominus Balthasar, antipapa, et cardinalis Bononiæ, cum grandi exercitu, contra Regem Neopolitanum ascenderunt.

A.D. 1410. A parliament. 27 Jan.

Hoc tempore factum est parliamentum Londoniæ post festum Sancti Hillarii, in quo Rex dixit cistas suas fore vacuas, et se graviter indebitatum, petens decimam et dimidiam a clero, et quintamdecimam et dimidiam laicorum. Duravitque parliamentum usque ad Pascha, et nihil actum est tunc.

Execution of Thomas Badby for heresy.

In hoc parliamento combustus fuit hæreticus laicus, qui dicebat quod Corpus Christi non erat in altari, sed panis benedictus tantum. Et cum quæreretur ab eo coram Rege et parliamento quid dixisset si fuisset cum Christo in Cæna quando Christus dixit: "Hoc est

" Corpus Meum," respondit: "Dixissem quod Ipse dicit A.D. 1409.
" falsum." Et cum insipienter verba ad sui defensionem multiplicaret, visa est quædam aranea horribilis repere super labia sua; quam cum quidam amovere voluisset, dixit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis: "Sine;
" nunc videbimus quis eum docet loqui." Qui cum comburi cœpisset, clamavit dicens: "Miseremini mei;" et quamcito potuerunt assolverunt eum, extrahentes ipsum de igne. Et venerunt ad ipsum episcopi cum solemnitate decenti portantes Corpus Christi, et quæ-
fol. 206. v. col. 2. rebant si crederet ibi esse Corpus Christi. Respondit quod non. Et iterum composuerunt ignem, et ipsum intromiserunt. Clamavitque sicut prius; tamen noluit fateri ibi esse Corpus Christi. Tunc totaliter combustus fuit, et ad ignem sempiternum transivit.

He refuses to recant.

In hoc parliamento statutum fuit quod fratres quatuor Ordinum libere prædicarent contra hæreses Lollardorum, per totum regnum, sine prohibitione episcoporum, non obstante statuto quocunque edito in contrarium in convocatione cleri vel parliamento.

Statute against the Lollards.

Anno Domini 1410, et regni Henrici 4ti decimo, statim post Annuntiationem venit in Angliam magister Hospitalariorum generalis, cum turba militum et familia copiosa, missus a papa ad Reges Angliæ et Franciæ, per quem hortatur eos papa ut tractent de pace, et promittit se cum omnibus cardinalibus tractatui interesse. Et resumptum fuit parliamentum, in quo Rex exegit decimam et dimidiam decimæ a clero, et quintamdecimam cum dimidia laicorum. Item statutum fuit quod omnes curati manerent in ecclesiis suis hospitilitatem tenentes; quare multi recesserunt de curia Regis, domibus episcoporum et aliorum dominorum, et de mansionibus suis apud Londoniam.

[A.D.] 1410. Arrival of a papal nuncio.

The parliament meets again. 7 April.

Eodem anno, dux Burgundiæ fecerat quoddam castellum ligneum valde magnum, cum multis gunnis et pulveribus pertinentibus, cogitans hoc anno obsidere Calesiam cum magno apparatu, in Sancto Audomaro;

The duke of Burgundy prepares to besiege Calais.

A.D. 1410. sed unus de eadem villa, accepto auro a Calesianis, apposuerunt ignem per noctem, et dictum castellum combustum fuit totaliter; et sic propositum ducis impeditum fuit. Unus incendiariorum captus fuit, et amara morte occisus. Et dixit moriens, quod hoc fecit ne sanguis humanus effunderetur. Item dicebatur quod abbatia Sancti Bertini de igne ipsius castelli combustum[1] fuit.

Antipapa Gregorius latenter fugiit in regnum Neapoli per Mare Adriaticum; ibidem vocans se papam cum assistentia Regis Karoli. Tunc certi domini de Anglia transierunt mare ad tractandum de pace inter Reges Angliæ et Franciæ secundum monitionem papæ.

Death of Alexander V. 3 May.

Alexander papa Quintus, cum sedisset mensibus x., moritur Bononiæ, longo et efficaci sermone exhor[tans] circumsedentem cœtum cardinalium ad diligendum unitatem ecclesiæ. fol. 207. col. 1.

Election of John XXII. 17 May.

Quo mortuo, eligitur Balthasar cardinalis Bononiæ, qui Johannes XXIII. vocatus est. Hic vir strenuus, et auro abundans, dicit se velle Karolum et Gregorium omnino extinguere. Alexander emiserat vivens citationes prælatis ut convenirent ad Concilium Generale post duos annos futurum, proponens in eo multa utilia statuisse. Et si vixisset pacem inter Christianos pro posse voluit procurasse. Sepultus vero fuit apud Fratres Minores in Bononiâ.

A.D. 1411. Strange fish caught in the Thames.

Anno Domini M°.IIII.C undecimo, Regisque Henrici Quarti undecimo, post festum Sancti Michaelis, Thamisia London' fluxit et refluxit ter in die naturali, et capti fuerunt pisces in Thamisia magni et ignoti generis, qui videbantur aliqua nova prognosticare.

The duke of Orleans and others march against the duke of Burgundy.

Hoc anno, dux Aurelianensis, adunatis sibi ducibus de Berry, de Burbon', et Britanniæ, comite de Arminac, et aliis magnatibus Franciæ Australis, ducem Burgundiæ prosequitur in ultionem mortis patris sui, cum

[1] *combustum*] Sic in B.

magno exercitu, dicens quod Rex Franciæ non facit sibi justitiam. Dux autem assistentia Regis Franciæ et primogeniti sui collegit nobiles multos et populum Franciæ Borealis ac Flandriæ, et quosdam de Alemannia et Scotia. Misitque ad Regem Angliæ, petens auxilium Anglicorum; promisitque dare filiam suam principi primogenito suo in uxorem. Missique sunt ad eum comites Arundell' et Kyme, cum aliis nobilibus et exercitu decoro. Dux autem Aurelianensis venit, cum exercitu magno, ad villam vocatam Seynclo juxta Parisius, ut civitatem et Regem caperent, ac ducem Burgundiæ et ejus exercitum destruerent; sed exercitus Anglicorum obviabat sibi in Seynclo citius quam dux credebat, et multi de suo exercitu occisi sunt, et ipse dux, cum cæteris, fugiit. Et Anglici repatriabant, cum magnis donis et gratiarum actionibus eis factis a Rege Franciæ, primogenito suo, et duce Burgundiæ.

A.D. 1411.

The earl of Arundel sent to assist the duke of Burgundy.

The duke of Orleans is defeated at S. Cloud.

Hoc anno factum est parliamentum Londoniis, in quo Rex habuit a quolibet valente expendere per annum xx. li. sex solidos et viij. d.

A parliament. 3 Nov.

Anno Domini 1412°, et anno Regis Henrici 4ti 12°, dux Aurelianensis et cæteri duces de parte sua miserunt ad Regem Angliæ, petentes auxilium ad vindicandum mortem patris sui.[1] Ipse . . . que reddere Regi totam Aquitaniam et ipsum intrare (?) ut hæreditatem suam ibidem possideat. Dicebatque se habere filias honestas, quas filiis Regis daret, et firmam pacem inter Angliam et Franciam pro viribus procuraret, salva fidelitate coronæ Franciæ debita.

fol. 207. col. 2.

A.D. 1412. The duke of Orleans seeks the assistance of Henry IV.

Fecitque Rex filium suum Thomam ducem Clarenciæ, quem, cum duce Eborum et aliis magnatibus, ac xx. milibus hominum, misit ad eos, ut Aquitanniam in manus Regis Angliæ seisiret. Qui apud Hamptoniam prospere transierunt. Sed antequam transirent dicebatur dominos esse concordatos.

The king creates his son Thomas duke of Clarence, 9 July; and sends an army into France.

Hoc anno, papa Johannes xxiii. misit quendam Fratrem Minorem Generalem Ordinis in Angliam, petens

The pope sends to

A.D. 1412. the king to ask assistance against the king of Naples and Gregory XI.

a Rege ut filium suum Thomam mitteret ad Romam, ut capitaneus fiat exercitus papalis contra Regem Neapoli et Gregorium antipapam, et ut sineret nuntium suum prædicare cruciatam et [p]ecunias colligere in regno suo, promittens indulgentiam omnibus conferentibus et adjuvantibus. Et dispensavit cum præfato Thoma filio Regis ut duceret in uxorem uxorem patrui sui. Rex breviter respondebat quod noluit depauperare regnum suum propter papam. Et quod oportebat ipsum mittere exercitum in Aquitaniam ad recuperandum hæreditatem suam. Generalis tamen mansit in Anglia in expensis Fratrum Minorum ab Annuntiatione usque ad Augustum, distribuens gratias suas et colligens pecunias.

The king refuses.

The king of Naples submits to John XXII.

Interim Rex Neapoli et papa Gregorius submiserunt se papæ Johanni, sub hac forma, quod ipse Rex Karolus regnaret pro tempore vitæ suæ, et quia hæredes non habebat Ludovicus Rex Cisiliæ post eum regnaret; et antipapa factus est cardinalis et legatus papæ in regno Neapolitano.

[A.D.] 1413°.

A.D. 1412.

Anno Domini 1413°, et anno Regis Henrici 4^ti^ 13°, dominus Thomas, secundo genitus Regis Henrici Quarti, factus est dux Clarenciæ; qui cum magno exercitu, ut supradictum est, intravit Franciam in adjutorium ducis Aurelianensis, qui guerram habuit contra ducem Burgundiæ; et cum ibidem venisset audivit quod concordati fuerunt.

The duke of Clarence ravages Normandy.

A.D. 1413.

Sed dux Clarenciæ per viam cuncta vastavit versus Aquitanniam transeundo, et Burdegal' hyemavit. Et tandem post Pascha rediit in Angliæ, cum exercitu satis parvo, sine honore.

Eodem autem anno . . . . Johannes Branford (?), dux Exon', capitaneus transiit (?) fol. 207. v. col. 1.

The king is requested to resign the crown to his son.

[E]odem autem anno, facta fuit conventio inter principem Henricum primogenitum regis, Henricum episcopum Wintoniensem, et alios quasi omnes dominos Angliæ, uter (?) ipsorum alloqueretur Regem ut red-

deret coronam[1] Angliæ, et permitteret primogenitum suum coronari, pro eo quod erat ita horribiliter aspersus lepra. Quo allocuto ad consilium quorundam dominorum cedere noluit sed statim equitavit per magnam partem Angliæ non obstante lepra supradicta. A.D. 1413. He refuses.

Et rediens London', apud Westmonasterium in domo abbatis, in quadam bassa camera quæ "Jerusalem" appellatur mortuus est circiter festum Sancti Cuthberti, cum regnasset XIII. annis et dimidio; apud Cantuariam sepultus est. He dies in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster. 20 March.

Et Henricus primogenitus, princeps Walliæ, dux Cornubiæ, comes Cestriæ, natus apud Monnemouth in Wallia, XX. die Martii, Dominica in Passione Domini, apud Westmonasterium coronatur. Coronation of Henry V. [20 Mar.] 9 April.

Eodem autem anno, in hebdomada Natalis Domini, in festo Sanctorum Innocentium, accidit Winchelseiæ subitum tonitruum; et coruscatio campanile Sancti Ægidii cum tota ecclesia et campanis in cineres vertit, nec potuit humano adjutorio relevari. The church of S. Giles at Winchelsea destroyed by lightning. [28 Dec.]

Eodem anno, in festo Nativitatis Beatæ Virginis, apud Sclusam ecclesia ejusdem Virginis percussa est, et villa de Ponte Roberti combusta est. The church of S. Mary of Sluys struck. [8 Sept.]

Et juxta Eboracum, circa festum Sanctæ Katerinæ, campanile quoddam consimiliter combustum est usque ad medium; sed, emisso voto a circumstantibus ad[2] Sanctum Ricardum archiepiscopum Eborum, subito ignis cessavit, et sic medietas campanilis incombusta remansit, cunctis ibidem hominibus Deum et Sanctum Ricardum glorificantibus.[3] Half of a bell-tower at York saved from combustion by S. Richard of York. [25 Nov.]

[1] *coronam*] corõe. B.

[2] *ad*] Interlined in B. over a subpuncted "a." Miraculum Sancti Ricardi archiepiscopi Eborum. in marg. B.

[3] The Chronicle terminates near the middle of a column, the remaining thirteen lines of which and the whole of the succeeding column are blank.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Aaron, I. 35 ; death of, 39.

Abdon (*Labdon*), judge of Israel, I. 42, 43, 44.

Abden and Sennes, SS., mart., III. 261.

Abel, birth of, I. 20 ; murder of, *ib.* ; hundred years' lamentation of Adam and Eve for, *ib.*

——, of Denmark, murders Eric VI., I. 390 ; killed in a campaign against the Frisians, *ib.*

Abijah, son of Rehoboam (*Jeroboam*), king of Judah, I. 47 ; defeats Jeroboam, *ib.*

Abimelech, son of Gideon, judge of Israel, I. 42.

Abingdon (*Abindonia*), abbey of, founded by Edgar, III. 21 ; date of foundation of, 328.

Abram, son of Terah, birth of, I. 32 ; goes down into Egypt, *ib.* ; returns and separates from Lot and dwells in Mamre, *ib.* ; (Abraham) goes into Canaan, 33 ; the first monotheist according to Josephus, *ib.* ; covenant with, *ib.* ; death of, 35.

Abydos, island of, site of, II. 115 ; bridge built by Xerxes in, *ib.*

Achaia, deluge in, during reign of Og, I. 35 ; a province of Greece, called from Achæus, II. 66 ; nearly insular, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; chief city of Corinth, *ib.*

Acius (al. Acacius). *See* S. Felix III.

Acquila, the first interpreter of the Law of Moses, fl., I. 323.

Acre, capture of, I. 384 ; surrendered to Richard I., III. 82.

Acton-Burnel, parliament and statutes of, III. 146.

Adam, creation of, I. 18 ; names all creatures, 19 ; prophecy of, *ib.*, 23 ; death of, 22 ; age of, at birth of Seth, *ib.*, 23.

Adelais (*Eadeleya*), daughter of William the Conqueror and Queen Matilda, III. 42, 60 ; married to Stephen, Count of Blois, *ib.* ; takes the veil at Mersenne (*Marcenniacum*), *ib.*

Adelais, daughter of the duke of Lorraine, married to Henry I., III. 59 ; receives the county of Salop, *ib.*

Adelais, daughter of Louis [VII.] of France, received into the custody of Henry II. and betrothed to Richard Count of Poitou (Rich. I.), III. 90 ; debauched by the king, *ib.* ; discarded in consequence by Richard, *ib.* ; re-demanded by Henry II. from the king of France for his son John, *ib.*

Adeodatus, pope, pontificate of, I. 221 ; III. 281.

Adolphus (*Arstulphus*) elected king of the Goths, I. 345 ; married to (Placidia) sister of Honorius, *ib.*

Adrian, reign of, I. 322, 323 ; III. 253, 254 ; clemency of, towards the Christians, I. 323.

——— I., pope, I. 236, 237 ; III. 284 ; convokes a council at Rome, I. 237.

——— II., pope, I. 245 ; III. 288.

——— III., pope, I. 246 ; III. 289 ; decrees that no emperor shall interfere with the papal election, I. 246.

——— IV., pope, I. 272, 273 ; election of, III. 68 ; a native of S. Alban's, *ib.* ; suc-

Adrian IV.—*cont.*
ceeds, III. 298 ; converts the Norwegians, I. 271 ; lays Rome under an interdict, 272 ; excommunicates William, king of Sicily, 273 ; first resides in Cività Vecchia, *ib.* ; ob. III., 299.
——— V., pope, I. 282 ; succeeds, III. 305.
——— S., and Natalia, mart., III. 263.
[Adrianople], battle near, between the Christians and Turks, III. 238 ; fate of the Christian prisoners at, *ib.*
Aeldred (*Aldredus*), archbishop of York, crowns William the Conqueror, III. 38.
Aelfeah, S. (*Alphegus*), abbot of Bath, made bishop of Winchester by S. Dunstan, III. 25 ; becomes archbishop of Canterbury, 26 ; martyred by the Danes, *ib.*
Aelfred the Great, son of Aethelwulf, anointed king by Leo IV., I. 242 ; first of all English kings, receives his crown and kingdom from the pope, II. 188 ; succeeds, III. 7 ; translates the laws of Dunwallo and Martia into Saxon, II. 154 ; publishes a third set of laws founded on the former, *ib.* ; never went out of church before the end of the mass, 188 ; attacked during mass by the Danes, waits until it is over, and then kills Coseg and his son, *ib.* ; fights nine battles in one year with the Danes, *ib.* ; defeated by the Danes at Wilton, III. 7 ; retreats into Wessex (*Westseax*), collects an army, and pursues them, *ib.* ; makes peace with them, *ib.* ; proceeds to Exeter, *ib.* ; defeated at Chippenham, *ib.*, 8 ; collects another army and pursues the Danes to Abindon (*Ethandune*), where he defeats them, 8 ; makes peace with them on condition of their accepting Christianity, *ib.* ; length of reign of, II. 188 ; the most learned of the Saxon poets, *ib.* ; character of, *ib.* ; gains the aid of five kingdoms against the Danes, recovers London, and a part of Mercia, *ib.* ; first reigns over all England, *ib.* ; dies, III. 9 ; is buried at Winchester, II. 188 ; III. 9 ; and translated by his
Aelfred the Great—*cont.*
son Edward the Elder to New-Minster, now Hyde, II. 188 ; sends gifts to Rome and to S. Thomas in India, *ib.* ; founds the monastery of "Adelingia" and New-Minster, or Hyde, in Winchester, *ib.* ; division of the day by, *ib.*, III. 9 ; distribution of his time by, III. 9 ; "handbook" of, *ib.* ; works of, *ib.* ; carries the psalter always, 189.
———, son of Aethelred II. and Emma, sent abroad by Cnut, II. 185 ; escapes to his uncle Richard, duke of Normandy, *ib.* ; sent to Normandy, III. 46 ; sent for on the death of Harthacnut, II. 185, 194 ; III. 31 ; lands at Sandwich, II. 194 ; is received by Godwine, earl of Kent, *ib.* ; captured and taken bound to Gyldefordesdown, *ib.* ; carried to Ely, 195 ; cruelly murdered, *ib.* ; by earl Godwine, III. 31, 46 ; buried there, II. 195.
Aelle, of Northumbria, proceeds to York after the death of Osberht, III. 4 ; is killed by the Danes at Ellecroft, *ib.*
———, first king of Sussex, II. 158.
Æneas, genealogy of, II. 203 ; attempts to save the lives of Hecuba, Cassandra, and Polyxena at the fall of Troy, 204 ; escapes from Troy, I. 303 ; arrives in Italy, I. 43, 304 ; II. 204 ; is received by Latinus, II. 205 ; defeats Turnus, I. 304 ; II. 205 ; allied with Evander, defeats Latinus and Turnus, I. 43, 44 ; marries Lavinia, daughter of Latinus, I. 304 ; II. 205 ; reign of, over the Latins, *ib.* ; the father of Ascanius and Silvius by Lavinia, I. 302.
Æneas Silvius, king of the Latins, I. 45, 304.
Æoliæ islands, the, why so called, II. 118 ; also called Vulcaneæ, *ib.* ; why, *ib.* ; names of, *ib.* ; also called Monstripodæ Sonoræ, *ib.*
Aescwini (*Oswynus*), of Wessex, II. 161.
Aethelbald, of Wessex, II. 168 ; indolence of, *ib.* ; is buried at Sherborne, *ib.*
Aethelberht, S., of East Anglia, slain by Offa of Mercia, II. 160.

Aethelbert, son of Aethelwulf, II. 168; is buried at Sherborne, *ib.*

————, king of Kent, receives S. Augustine, II. 367; is baptized, 368; endows S. Augustine and his followers with possessions in Canterbury, *ib.*; incites Aethelfrith, king of Northumbria, and other Saxon kings to destroy Dinohot and his monks at Bangor, 369; governs the land south of Trent, with Norfolk and Suffolk, 378; asks Aethelfrith (of Northumbria) to marry his daughter Argentile to the strongest man in his kingdom, 379; death of, 368. *See* Havelok.

Aethelbrith (? Aethelbert), of Essex (? Kent), III. 1.

Aelthelfrith, of Northumbria, II. 167; defeats Aidan, king of Scots, *ib.*; and others, incited by Aethelbert of Kent, invade the British territory, II. 369; reach Legecestria and are met by Brotmayl, *ib.*; drive him from the city, 370; martyr the monks, *ib.*; attacks Bangor, *ib.*; is repulsed by the British chiefs, *ib.*; meets Cadwan, and makes peace with him, *ib.*, 371; sends his wife out of the kingdom, *ib.*; wife of, gives birth to Edwin, *ib.*

Aethelfrith, son of S. Oswald of Northumbria, expelled by Oswi, II. 376.

————, of Deira (? Northumbria), III. 2.

Aethelred, son of Aethelwulf, joins Aethelwulf against the Danes, III. 6; wounded at Reading, 7; dies, and is buried at Wimborne (*Wouborne*), II. 168; III. 6.

———— II., pretensions of Elfrida (*Estrilda*) in favour of, III. 23; the son of Edgar and Elfrida, II. 171, *ib.*; succeeds, III. 24, 291; accident at baptism of, 24; prediction of S. Dunstan concerning, *ib.*; conduct of, at his coronation, *ib.*; prophecy of S. Dunstan concerning, II. 171, *ib.*; marries Emma, daughter of Richard, duke of Normandy, II. 193; retires into Normandy, III. 25; monsters and miracles *temp.*, in the Third Book of the Eulogium after the history of the Roman emperors, *ib.*; peace between, and Richard duke of Normandy made by pope John XV., *ib.*; sons of, 24; sons by queen Emma, *ib.*; by Elgiva, his concubine, *ib.*; miracle in time of, in Third Book of Eulogium, 26.

Aethelric, of Northumbria, II. 167.

Aethelstan, son of Edward the Elder, III. 10; succeeds, I. 249; III. 10, 290; defeats the Scots, II. 166; defeats Constantine, king of Scots, and makes him a tributary, 189; visits shrine of S. John of Beverley, 166; vow of there, *ib.*; asks for a supernatural proof of the supremacy of the English over the Scots, *ib.*; cuts a rock through at Dunbar castle, *ib.*; endows the territory of S. John of Beverley, *ib.*; defeats Arnalaphus of Ireland at Brunanburgh, *ib.*; obtains a new sword by the prayers of S. Odo of Wilton, *ib.*; receives a present of a ship from Harald, king of Norway, 189; expels Guthfred, king of Northumbria, *ib.*; expels Haumondus and another, pagan kings of Northumbria, III. 10; becomes sole king of England, II. 189; a great benefactor of the church of Bath, *ib.*; S. Dunstan banished in time of, *ib.*; drives the Cornish men from Exeter, *ib.*; makes the Tamar the boundary of his kingdom, and the Wye of Wales, *ib.*; the first Saxon king of Loegria, 384; defeats the Picts of Cumberland and Westmoreland, III. 10; fights with the Picts and Scots, *ib.*; fights the battle of Donelew (co. Wilts) with Arnalafus, king of the Northumbri, *ib.*; miracle in favour of there, *ib.*; dies at Gloucester, 11; is buried at Malmesbury, II. 189, *ib.*; presents sent to, by Hugh Count (*Rex*) of Paris (*Francorum*), III. 12; account of his conception and birth in the Gesta (Regum Anglorum) of William of Malmesbury, 13. *See* Britain.

Aethelstan, son of Aethelred II. and Elgiva, III. 25.

Aethelwine (*Athelwyn*), nephew of Aethelstan, killed at Donelew, III. 10; buried at Malmesbury, 11; at the head of the bier of S. Aldhelm, 13; the son of Ethelweard, 13.

Aethelwold, S., bishop of Winchester, fl., III. 21; advises Edgar to make new religious foundations in England, *ib.*; ob., III. 291; successor of, 25.

Aethelwulf, of Wessex, descent of, from Noah, II. 167; king of England, I. 241; concedes all the territory of his father but Wessex to Aethelstan his brother, 168; grants a tithe of his kingdom to the clergy, *ib.*; goes to Rome and pays Peter's pence, I. 242, *ib.*; (Eldulf) fights the Danes at Englefield, III. 6; joined by Aethelred and Aelfred, *ib.*; fights the battles of Ashdune, Basing, and Merton, *ib.*; is buried at Winchester, II. 168; reigns, III. 287.

Aethilbald, of Mercia, II. 163; grant of, to monasteries, *ib.*, 164.

Aethilred, of Mercia, succeeds, II. 163; wastes Kent, *ib.*; abdicates and becomes a monk, I. 230, 231; becomes first a monk and then abbot of "Harderna," II. 163.

Æthiopia, why so called, II. 45, 57; character of divisions of, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; people and products of, 45; two divisions of, 46; Æthiopia Mauritaniæ and Æthiopia Exusta, *ib.*; origin of people of, *ib.*; called from the Niger, *ib.*; monsters of, *ib.*, 47.

Africa, boundaries of, II. 2, 10; assigned to Ham after the Deluge, 10; called Libya, why, 38, 39, 56; why called Africa, 38, 39; extent and boundaries of, 39; provinces of, *ib.*; (Proper), site of, 42, 57; produces fickle men, 75, 105; Pagans from, invade England, III. 9.

Agamemnon, king of Mycenæ, I. 44.

Agapitus, pope, pontificate of, I. 205; visits the emperor Justinian, and dies at Constantinople, *ib.*; translated to Rome, *ib.*; III. 275.

Agapitus II., pope, I. 251; III. 291.

Agatha, S., martyrdom of, I. 188.

———, wife of Edward, son of Edmund Ironside, III. 29.

Agathon, S., fl., I. 343.

———, pope, pontificate of, I. 222; III. 281.

Ages of world: First, I. 23, 24; epochs assigned to commencement of, 23; durations assigned to, 24; terminates in Noah, *ib.* Second, from the birth of Abraham to king David, termination of, I. 33, 45. Third, termination of, I. 55.

—— of the world: of the natural law, of the written law, and of the law of grace, extent of, III. 246.

Agilmundus, king of the Lombards, discovers seven infants born at once, I. 348, 349.

Agrippina, wife of Claudius Cæsar, poisons him, I. 317.

Ahab, son of Omri (*Zambri*), king of Israel, I. 47; his sons slain by Jehu, 48.

Ahaz, son of Jotham, king of Judah, I. 51.

Ahaziah, son of Ahab (*Josaphat*), king of Israel, I. 48.

Ahaziah (*Azarias*, or *Zacharias*), son of Jehoram (*Zoram*), king of Judah, I. 48; not mentioned in the genealogy of our Lord by S. Matthew, *ib.*; slain by Jehu with his brethren, *ib.*

Aidan, S., bishop of Lindisfarne, or Durham, dies, I. 215; (of Durham), III. 2.

[Aigue-Blanche], Peter, bishop of Hereford, a Burgundian, taken by the barons in his cathedral, III. 121; imprisoned in Edresley castle, *ib.*

Alania, situation of, II. 59; a part of Scythia in Europe, 82; extent of, 83; account of, *ib.*

Alanus, a descendant of Japhet, arrives in Greece (?), I. 300 ; his sons and grandsons, *ib.* ; his pedigree up to Adam, *ib.*, 301.

——— Somniator, verses by, I. 419, 420.

———, son of Hoel, son of Hoel the Great, II. 374 ; Hoel, son of, *ib.*

———, king of Armorica, nephew of Salomon, receives Cadwallader, II. 381 ; consults the prophetic books for, 383 ; advises him to obey the angelic voice, *ib.* *See* Cadwallader.

Alaric (*Albericus*), king of the Goths, enters Italy, I. 345 ; wastes Rome, *ib.* ; dies at Constantinople, *ib.*

——— II., king of the Goths, defeat of, by Clovis, king of the Franks, I. 352.

Alba, a region of the Idumæans, now called Gabalena, II. 54.

Alban, S., martyred, II. 266, 272 ; III. 264, 265.

———, foundation of monastery of, III. 328.

Albanactus, king of Albania, defeated by Hymbar, king of Hundland, II. 221 ; slain by him, *ib.*

Albania, a division of Britain, called from Albanactus, II. 143 ; ravaged by Roderic, king of the Picts, 181 ; northern part of, given to them by Marius, 182 ; given to Albanactus by Brutus, 220 ; now called Scotia, *ib.* ; men of, seek the aid of Locrinus, 221 ; king of, carries a sword of gold before king Arthur, 327.

Albania, a province of Asia Major, called from the colour of its inhabitants, II. 31 ; coldness of, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; large dogs of, *ib.* ; account of one by Pliny, *ib.* ; people of, *ib.*

Albanian kings, the. *See* Laurentine kings.

Albanus and Vespasian, legend of, I. 145, 146.

Alberic, marquis, defeats the Saracens with pope John X., I. 249 ; is murdered by the Romans, *ib.*

Albert, S., martyrdom of, I. 377.

Albigenses, the, mission of Cistercian abbots to convert, I. 388.

Albion, island of, account of, II. 215 ; site of, 216 ; called Brutannia by Brute, *ib.* ; account of first colonisation of, *ib.*, 217, 218.

Albula, the, why called Tiber, I. 304.

Alcluyd, city of, founded by king Ebranous, II. 151 ; situated on the Solway and destroyed by the Danes, *ib.* ; remains of extant, though not discovered, *ib.*

Alcuinus, S., sent by S. Paul into Gaul, I. 165.

Alcuin (*Albinus* or *Alquinus*), preceptor to Charlemagne, fl., I. 237 ; made abbot of S. Martin's by him, *ib.*

Alderia, William d', condemned to the gallows, III. 48 ; confesses to Osmund, bishop of Sarum, *ib.* ; address of, to the crowd at the place of execution, *ib.*

Aldhame, Francis de, execution of, at Windsor, III. 197.

Aldhelm, S., grant of site of Malmesbury abbey to, by Eleutherius, archbp. of the West-Saxons, I. 221, 222 ; grant to, from pope Sergius I., 224 ; a pupil of S. Meildulph, 225 ; studies in Kent under Adrian, *ib.* ; returns to Meldunum and becomes a monk under S. Meildulph, *ib.* ; receives the site of the monastery of Malmesbury from S. Eleutherius, bishop of Wessex, 226 ; becomes abbot of Malmesbury, III. 280 ; evidence of different facts in the life of, I. 226 ; his learning, *ib.* ; his life, by Farricius, abbot of Abingdon, *ib.*, 227 ; death of, 227, 230 ; III. 282 ; sepulture of, I. 227 ; bier of, at Malmesbury, III. 13 ; translations of, I. 227, 228 ; said to be a nephew of king Ini, by William of Malmesbury, 228.

Aldredus, king of Armorica, sends his brother Constantine to expel the Pagans from Britain, II. 273.

Alemannia, called from the river Lemannus, II. 83 ; called also Germania, *ib.* ; boundaries of, according to Isidorus, *ib.*, 84 ; character of people of, 84 ; provinces

Alemannia—*cont.*
of: Austria, Bavaria (*Barcaria*), Suevia, Alsatia (*Alsaria*), *ib.*; schism between princes of, in the election of a successor to the emperor Frederic II., I. 279, 390.
Alexander the Great, I. 16; monster born in reign of, 17; born, 60, 310; his death, 61; parallel between, and a stone, 434. *See* Dindimus.
———— Jannæus reigns in Judæa, I. 62.
———— the Senator. *See* S. Stephen, legend of translation of.
———— Severus, reign of, I. 329.
————, bishop of Cappadocia, elected bishop (patriarch) of Jerusalem, I. 178.
———— I., S., pope, I. 172, 173; III. 254; converts Hermes the Prefect, I. 173; beheaded and buried in the Via Numentana, *ib.*; translated to the church of S. Sabina, *ib.*
———— II., pope, I. 263, 264; III. 295; celebrates a council by the request of the emperor Henry IV. at Mantua, against Candulus, bishop of Parma, I. 264; sends William, duke of Normandy, a banner, III. 35.
———— III., pope, I. 273, 274; III. 299; condemns four antipopes, I. 273; restores the abbot and convent of S. Anastasius, ejected by Frederick Barbarossa, 274.
———— IV., pope, I. 279; III. 303; proceeds against heretics, I. 279.
———— V., Peter de Candia, a Friar Minor, bishop of Pisa, cardinal archbishop of Milan, election of, at the council of Pisa, I. 287; III. 414; coronation of, III. 414; accedes to the claim of Louis, duke of Anjou and Provence, touching Naples and Sicily, *ib.*; called Alexander V., *ib.*; a student at Norwich and Oxford, *ib.*; a pleasant man, *ib.*; a good Latin and Greek scholar, *ib.*; a Friar Minor reads the Gospel in Greek at coronation of, *ib.*; processions in Paris and elsewhere, celebrating
Alexander V.—*cont.*
election of, *ib.*, 416; murmurs in England at election of, *ib.*; receives the obediences of the prelates and the homages of the temporal lords holding of the papacy, *ib.*; declaration made by, *ib.*; remits the arrears of debts to the papal court up to his election, 416; reply of, to a Friar Minor asking for an Irish see, *ib.*; commendation of, by the bishop of Salisbury, *ib.*; a procession in London, and a sermon at Paul's Cross, celebrating the election of, *ib.*; the *Te Deum* sung in S. Paul's, and an indulgence granted to all present, in celebration of election of, *ib.*; sends the Master of the Hospitallers to Henry IV. and Charles VI. to negociate for a peace, 417; promises to be present with his cardinals at the treaty, *ib.*; ambassadors sent from England to France, in pursuance of advice of, 418; death of, at Bologna, *ib.*; dying speech of, to his cardinals, *ib.*; citations to a General Council by, *ib.*; would, if he had lived, have laboured for peace, *ib.* buried at the church of the Friars Minors at Bononia, *ib.*
———— I., king of Scots, removes the body of his father Malcolm (Canmore) from Tynemouth to Dumfermline, III. 39.
———— II., king of Scotland, III. 150.
———— III., king of Scotland, does homage to Henry III., III. 138; marries the daughter of the count of Flanders, 148; marries Margaret, daughter of Henry III., at York, *ib.*, 148; present at the coronation of Edward I., 141; does homage to him, 142; killed by the fall of his horse, 148; children of, by the second wife, *ib.*, 149.
————, son of Alexander III., king of Scotland and queen Margaret, dies without issue, III. 148, 149.
Alexandria, General Council at, relative to celebration of Easter, I. 177; capture of, III. 333.
Alexandrinus (? Ammonius), quoted, I. 76.

Alexius Comnenus, emperor of the East. *See* Guiscard, Robert.
Alexius, S., ob., III. 269.
Alfonso VI., king of Castile (*Galatia*), expels the Saracens, III. 45.
Alfraganus, opinion of, as to the magnitude of the fixed stars, I. 8.
Alfred of Beverley, I. 3.
Alhfrith of Northumbria, death of, I. 230.
Alice, countess of Burgundy, daughter of Richard II., duke of Normandy, II. 192.
Alidur of Tintagel (*Tyntagol*), II. 347.
Aliens, expelled by Henry III., III. 115; lands, &c., given to, by king John, taken into the hands of Henry III., *ib.*
Alifatina (or Aliphatina), king of Hispania, II. 336; commands under Lucius against the Britons, 351; attacks the division of the king of Scotia and the duke of Albania, 352; killed, 354.
Alla of Northumbria, II. 167.
Allek (or Allectus), sent to Britain, II. 265; murders Carausius, *ib.*; is murdered by Asclepeodotus, *ib.* 266.
Allobroges, province of, taken from Rome by king Arthur, II. 330.
All Saints, feast of, instituted in France and Germany, I. 241.
Almaric, condemned by the Council of Lateran, I. 276; burnt at Paris, *ib.*
Alphonso [IX.], (*Edelfus*), king of Castille (*Alemannia*), marries Eleanor daughter of Henry II. of England, III 72.
Alphonso, son of Edward I., death of, at Windsor, III., 147; is buried at Westminster, *ib.*
Alps, the, surround Italy on the east, north, and west, II. 70; rivers rising out of: — the Rhine, Danube, Rhone, &c., *ib.*
Alric, king of Kent, succeeds Edelbert, II. 369.
Alsatia, invaded by the English, I. 285; *See* Alemannia.
Alwine, bishop of Winchester, imprisoned for a supposed intimacy with Queen Emma, II. 185.
Amalric (*Almaric*), king of Jerusalem, takes and destroys Heliopolis (*Babylon*), III. 72.
Amand, S., ob., III. 279.
Amaziah, son of Joash, king of Judah, I. 49; not mentioned in the genealogy of our Lord by S. Matthew, 48.
Amazonia, partly in Asia and partly in Europe, II. 35.
Amazons, the, descendants of the Goths, II. 32, 35; account of, 35, 36; two queens of, Marsepia and Lampeta, 35; occupied the Campi Themiscirii, 33, 53.
Ambresbury (*civitas Ambri*), massacre of the Britons at, II. 280; nuns of, massacred by Gurmundus, son of the king of Africa, 307; nuns of, expelled and again restored by Henry II., III. 90.
Ambrose, S., translates Hegesippus, I. 3; ordains Antiphons, 194; composes the preface to the mass, 201; bishop of Milan, 342; III. 268; composes hymns, I. 344; fl., III. 269.
Amon, son of Manasseh, his evil reign, I. 53; is slain by his servants, *ib.*
Amphibalus, S., converts S. Alban, II. 272; martyrdom of, *ib.*; church of at Winchester, 364.
Anacletus, S., pope, I. 171, 172; III. 253; buried near S. Peter, 172; identified with S. Cletus by Eusebius, *ib.*; a different person according to Damasius, *ib.*
Anaclerus, or Anterus, S., pope, I. 180, 181; martyred, 181.
Anastasia, S., martyrdom of, I. 185; III. 263.
Anastasius (The Silentiary, Emperor of the East), I. 349, 350.
———— II., reign of, I. 361; is degraded and becomes a priest, *ib.*
————, S., the monk, legend of, I. 218. *See* Heraclius.
————, patriarch of Constantinople, supports Constantine IV., I. 363.
———— I., S., pope, I. 195, 196; III. 269.
———— II., S., pope, I. 202; III. 274.

Anastasius III., pope, I. 249 ; III. 290.
——— IV., pope, I. 272 ; III. 298.
——— and Vincentius, SS., translation of, I. 219.
Anaxagoras, a hearer of Anaximenes, I. 51 ; teaches Archelaus and Democritus, *ib.*
Anaximander, a pupil of Thales Milesius, I. 51.
Anaximenes, a hearer of Anaximander, I. 51 ; asserts air to be the first principle of nature, *ib.*
Anchises, son of Trous, I. 302 ; the father of Æneas, *ib.*
Ancoles (or Antololes), the, II. 44.
Ancus Martius, king of Rome, I. 308.
Andover, III. 20 ; a priest killed at, in the presence of the people, by lightning, 80.
Andrew, S., apostle, I. 89, 162 ; translation of, III. 267 ; and S. Luke, evangelist, translation of, I. 340.
Andrew's, S., William, bishop of, III. 160.
Androgeus, son of Cheryn, king of Britain, II. 247.
———, son of Lude, made duke of Kent by Cassibalan, II. 249, 250 ; Euelinus, nephew of, kills Hirenglas, the nephew of Cassibalan, 253 ; seeks the aid of Cæsar against Cassibalan, *ib.* ; sends hostages to Cæsar, 254 ; pleads for peace with him, 255, 256 ; goes to Rome with him, 256.
Angesil, king of the Franks (a mistake ; *See* II. xlvii., note [1]), descent of, from Clotaire II., II. 122. *See* Batilda.
Angles. *See* Angli, Saxons.
Angles, in Britain. *See* Britain.
Anglesey, isle of (*Insula Monia*), in North Wales, moving stone in, II. 138, 139 ; site of, 144 ; extent of in cantreds (*tancredis*), *ib.*
Angli (Saxons the), begin to reign in Britain, II. 382 ; (Britons, the), harassed by Yvor and Ini, 384.
Anglia, account of first colonisation of, II. 84; called Britain from Brute, *ib.*; history of kings of, his successors, to be found in the Historia Britonum, 85. *See* Britain.
Anglia—*cont.*
Angus, Andrew, earl of, does homage to Edward I., III. 165.
Anguselus, made king of the Scots by Arthur, II. 318 ; goes to Caerleon, 325 ; speech of, 334, 335 ; commands a wing of the army of king Arthur against the Romans, 348 ; killed at Rutupis, 360.
Anian, S., abbot of Lindisfarne, afterwards bishop, commits to writing the communications of S. Arnulph, II. 187 ; sends them to Alfrith of Northumbria, *ib.* *See* S. Arnulph, Beda.
Anicetus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 175 176 ; III. 256 ; buried in the cemetery of S. Calistus, I. 176.
Animals, whether created hurtful or no, I. 9 ; generated by corruption not created before the fall, 10.
Anjou (*Andegavia*) a province of Gaul, II. 86.
———, the duchy of, lost by king John. III. 92.
———, Fulk, earl of, a daughter of married to William, son of the emperor Henry V. and Maud, III. 59.
——— [Geoffrey], son of, marries the empress Maud, 60 ; rebels against Stephen, III. 67.
——— [Louis], duke of, duke of Provence, petitions the pope [Alex. V.] for the kingdom of Naples and Sicily, III. 415 ; request of, granted on condition that the kingdom should be held of the pope at the usual annual rent, *ib.* ; advances against [Ladislas] king of Naples with a large army, 416 ; allies of, *ib.* ; king of Sicily, to reign in Naples after Ladislas (Charles), 420.
Anlaf (*Arnalafus*), king of the Northumbri, defeated at Donelew by Aethelstan, III. 10.
Anna, king of East-Anglia, II. 159 ; slain by Penda, 160.

Anne, S., mother of the Blessed Virgin, born, I. 63; marries Joachim, 64; marries Cleophas, *ib.*; marries Salome, or Zebedee, *ib.*

Anne of Bohemia, queen of Richard II., marriage of, III. 355; present at a feast in the refectory of the Friars Minors, at Sarum, 369; dies at Sheen, and is buried at Westminster, 371; said by Richard II. to have kneeled to the duke of Gloucester for the life of Simon de Burley, 372.

Annunciation, the, sacred events on, III. 247, 248.

Annunciations, in Old and New Testaments, I. 45.

Ansegisus, archbishop of Sienna, receives relics from pope John VIII., I. 245.

Anselm, S., archbishop of Canterbury, cons., I. 266; III. 296; goes to Rome, 51; visits Hugh, abbot of Cluny, at Mersenne, 52; vision communicated to, by the abbot, *ib.*; recalled by Henry I., 56; forbids the marriage of the clergy, 64; ob., *ib.*, 301.

Antenor, the betrayer of Troy, expelled by the sons of Hector, II. 204; reigns in the Chersonese, *ib.*

Anterus, S., pope, I. 181; III. 260.

Anthimus, condemnation of, I. 205, 206, 207.

Anthony, S., abbot, fl., I. 339; dies, III. 266.

————, of Padua, a Friar Minor, death of, I. 279.

Antioch, destroyed by an earthquake, I. 350; taken by the Saracens, III. 296; sack of, by the sultan (Bibars I.), I. 391.

————, bishop of. *See* S. Ignatius, S. Peter.

Antiochus, king of the Assyrians, invades Judæa, I. 62; resisted by Judas Maccabæus, *ib.*

Antipodes, the, II. 46, 58.

Antipope, the, an ally of Louis of Provence. *See* Bologna, cardinal of.

Antonius, S. (the hermit), death of, I. 189. *See* S. Paul the first hermit.

Antoninus, Pius, reign of, I. 323, 324; succeeds Adrian, III. 255; character of, 256.

Antony and Lepidus, associated with Octavianus (Augustus Cæsar), I. 313.

Apollinaris, S., sent by S. Peter into Italy to Ravenna to preach the gospel, I. 165.

————, decollation of, III. 252.

————, bishop of Neapolis, flourishes, I. 177.

————, of Antioch, I. 194.

Apostles, three callings of, I. 75, 76; length of ministry of, in Judæa after Crucifixion, I. 90.

Appearances in firmament, I. 242.

Appelbischire, contains Westmoreland, II. 153.

Appio, king of Lybia, makes the Romans heirs of the kingdom in his will, I. 63.

Apra, S., dau. of S. Hilary of Poitiers, I. 181.

Apulia, a region of Italy, II. 87; account of, *ib.*; medicinal springs of, *ib.*; chief town of Brundusium, *ib.*

Aquinas, Thomas, S., a Friar Preacher, fl., III. 129; dies in the Cistercian abbey of Fossa Nova, on his way to the council of Lyons, 141.

Aquitannia, a province of Gaul, II. 85; the Loire in, *ib.*; description of, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*

Arabia, description of, II. 22, 23; called "Eudomenon" and "Beata," 22, 51, 52; products of, 22, 23.

Ara Cœli, legend of the, I. 69, 70, 314.

Aragonia, a province of Spain, II. 99; once inhabited by the Goths, and called from Aragothia, *ib.*; crossed by the Ebro (*Hibris*), *ib.*

Aram, son of Terah, birth of, I. 32; death of, *ib.*

Arator, sub-deacon and poet, fl., I. 351.

Arbaces, first king of the Medes, I. 49.

Arcadia, situation of, II. 66; called from Arcas, *ib.*; afterwards named Sicyonia from Sicyonius, *ib.*

Archadius, Emperor, excommunicated by S. Innocent I., I. 196.

Archelaus, the teacher of Socrates, I. 51.

Arezzo (*Aretenum*), II. 111.
Argentile, daughter of Aethelbert of Kent, II. 379. *See* Aethelbert of Kent, Havelok,
Argentyn, Giles, killed at Bannockburn, III. 195.
Argives, kingdom of the, commencement of, under Inachus, son of Isis, I. 34.
Argog, account of, II. 54; now a village near Gerasa in Arabia, *ib.*
Arian heresy, rise of, I. 338.
Arimathæa. *See* Ramathæa.
Aristobulus, son of Jonathas, brother of Simon, is made king and high priest of the Jews, I. 62.
Aristones Argus, an instructor of Plato, I. 424.
Aristotle, the philosopher, hears Plato, I. 60; reported to be the child of an incubus, 61.
Arius, death of, I. 340.
Ark, the building of, I. 16; plan and dimensions of, according to Rabanus, Josephus, and S. Augustine, *ib.*; blanks in autograph of Eulogium for drawings of, 27, note [6].
Ark of Coyenant secreted by Jeremiah in the First Captivity, I. 58; to remain hidden until the Day of Judgment, according to the Jews, *ib.*
Armagnac [*Arminac*], [Bernard], count of, an ally of [Charles] duke of Orleans, III. 418.
Armanus Teutonicus, hymns composed by, I. 202.
Armenia, called from Armenon, II. 32, 53; anciently called Ararath, 33; situation of, *ib.*, 53; divided into Upper and Lower Armenia, *ib.*; account of, *ib.*
————, the king of, visits France and England for aid, III. 357; is well endowed by Richard II., *ib.*
Armenians, the, converted, III. 276.
Armorica, called Britannia Minor by Maximus, II. 270.
Armori[c]a, dux of, troops promised by to king Arthur against the Romans, II. 335.
Arnandus, preaches against worldly possessions at Rome, I. 386.
Arnulphus, S., fl., I. 202.
Arnulph, Emperor, reign of, I. 373; dies of a pediculous disease, *ib.*
————, S., bishop, arrives in Britain, II. 187; visits Jerusalem, the Promised Land, Damascus, Constantinople, Alexandria, &c., *ib.*; is driven, on his return, on the West coast of Britain, and received by S. Anian, abbot of Lindisfarne, *ib.*; communications of, to him, *ib.* *See* S. Anian, Beda.
Arphaxat, birth of, I. 30.
Arsenius, S., fl., I. 343; becomes a monk, *ib.*
Artabanus, king of Persia, reigns fraudulently, I. 59.
Artaxerxes (*Machokir*), Macrocheir, or Longimanus, king of Persia, I. 59.
———— Mnemon, king of the Persians, I. 66; also called Assuerus by the Hebrews, *ib.*; extent of his empire, *ib.*
———— Ochus, king of the Persians, I. 60.
Arthinail, king of Britain, II. 248.
Arthur, son of Uther Pendragon and Igern, birth of, II. 306, 307; coronation of by S. Dubritius, archbishop of Caerleon, 308; character of, *ib.*; collects an army, and proceeds to York against the Saxons, 309; defeats them, *ib.*; besieges them in York, *ib.*; orders Cador, duke of Cornwall, to intercept Baldulphus, *ib.*; is advised to raise the siege on account of the arrival of a fleet under Cheldricus, 310; returns to London, *ib.*; calls a council, and sends messengers to Hoelus, *ib.*; receives him, *ib.*; proceeds to the relief of Kaerludcoit (Lincoln), in Lindesey, *ib.*; defeats the Saxons, and pursues them to the "Nemus Colidonis," *ib.*, 311; surrounds them there, 311; permits them to return to Germany, *ib.*; hastens to relieve Bath, 312; enters Somersetshire, *ib.*; fights the battle of Caerbadon, 312, 313; shield, Prudwen, sword, Caliburnus, and lance, Ron, of, *ib.*; defeats the Saxons, 314; goes to relieve Hoelus in

Arthur, son of Uther Pendragon—*cont.*

Alcluyd, *ib.*; moves on to Murryf, 315; surrounds the Picts and Scots in the marsh of Lumocium, *ib.*; defeats Gylamurius, who comes to their assistance, 316; celebrates the Nativity, at York, 317; restores the church, and appoints Piramus his chaplain archbishop, 318; endows the brothers Loth, Urianus, and Angesulus, *ib.*; marries Genwara, *ib.*; reduces Hibernia, and takes Gillamurius prisoner, 319; attacks Yslandia and reduces it, *ib.*; tribute paid to, by Doldautus, king of Gutlandia, and Gervasius, king of the Orcades, *ib.*; institution of the Round Table by, 320; invades Norwegia, *ib.*; defeats Riculfus. 321; invades Gaul, and defeats Follo the tribune, *ib.*, 322; besieges Follo in Paris, 322; single combat between and Follo, *ib.*, 323; Paris surrenders to, 324; divides his army, *ib.*; holds his court in Paris, *ib.*; gives Estrusia (Normannia) to Beduerus and Andegavia to Kayus, *ib.*; returns to Britain and celebrates Pentecost, *ib.*, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329; letter of the emperor Lucius to, 330, 331; address to the consules upon, 331, 332, 333; reply of Hoelus to, 333, 334; speech of Anguselus to, 334, 335; expedition of, to Rome, 335, 336, 337; contest of with a giant, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341; sends messengers to Lucius, 342; conflict between Britons and Romans in absence of, 343, 344, 345; battle between and Lucius, and defeat of Romans, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358; relieves Hoelus and Walwainus, 357; kills Sertorius, king of Libya, and Policetes, king of Bithynia, *ib.*; sends the body of Lucius to the Roman senate, 359; hears of the treachery of Mordred and the unfaithfulness of Ganhumara, *ib.*; returns to Britain, 360; is met by Mordred on landing, *ib.*; besieges him in Caerleon, 361; pursues him to the river Cambla, *ib.*; defeats him, 362; is mortally wounded and dies, 363; dies, I. 206; dies at Glastonbury, III. 275 (*bis*); is buried in the conventual church in the island of Avallon, II. 363; discovery of sepulchre of, temp. Ric. I., *ib.*; epitaph of, *ib.*; fabled return of, 385; prophecy of Merlin as to, *ib.*; discovery of body of, and of his queen at Glastonbury, III. 90, 91.

———, son of Geoffrey, earl of Britanny (nephew of king John), III. 80; taken prisoner at the castle of Mirabeau, 93, 112; murdered by him, 112.

Artogallo, son of Morwid, II. 245; crowned king by the Britons, 246; is deprived, *ib.*; is again crowned by Elidurus, *ib.*; called "rex pietatis," *ib.*; is buried at Kairleyr, *ib.*

Arviragus, son of Kymbeline, II. 257; rallies the Britons after the death of Gwider, 258; avenges his death, *ib.*; is besieged by Claudius in Winchester, 259; makes peace with him, *ib.*; accepts his conditions, and is crowned king of the Britons, *ib.*; marries Gewisa, *ib.*; refuses the tribute to Rome, 260; fights a battle with Vespasian at Exeter (then Kaerpenhuelgoit), *ib.*; is reconciled to him by Gewisa, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Claudiocestria, 261.

Arundel, Edmund [Fitz-Alan], 7th earl of, one of the judges of Thomas, earl of Lancaster, III. 196; taken at Shrewsbury, and executed at Hereford, 198, 199.

———, John de, son of Richard, earl of, sent with an army as seneschal into Gascony, III. 347; fleet of, wrecked on the coast of Ireland, *ib.*

——— [Richard Fitz-Alan], 9th earl of, III. 347; advises the impeachment of Michael de la Pole, chancellor, 359; one of the commission for receiving and disposing of the crown-revenues of Richard II., *ib.*; appointed keeper of the sea, 360; captures the ships of the king of France on their return from Rochelle, and takes them to Winchelsea, *ib.*;

Arundel [Richard Fitz-Alan], &c.—*cont.*
presence of Richard II. at the installation of brother of, for the purpose of taking prisoner, 371 ; brought by the archbishop before the king, 372 ; delivered to the earl of Nottingham, *ib.* ; sent to Carisbrook castle, *ib.* ; goods of, confiscated, *ib.* ; the appellants against, for lese-majesty, 373 ; charter of pardon to, revoked, 374 ; brought before parliament, *ib.* ; the appeal and accusation against read to by the duke of Lancaster, *ib.* ; declines to answer, *ib.* ; pleads a general pardon, 375 ; and the king's indulgence, *ib.* ; refuses to put himself on the king's mercy, *ib.* ; is sentenced to death, and beheaded on Tower Hill, *ib.* *See* Gloucester, duke of.

———, [Thomas Fitz-Alan], 10th earl of, son of foregoing, lands with the duke of Lancaster, III. 381 ; created earl of Arundel by Henry IV., 385 ; (?) sent, with the earl of Kyme, to the assistance of the duke of Burgundy, 419 ; defeats the duke of Orleans at S. Cloud, *ib.*

———, Thomas de, bishop of Ely, appointed chancellor, vice Michael de la Pole, III. 360 ; commanded to seal a commission to himself and others to receive and dispose of the crown revenues, *ib.* ; petitions the king to treat of peace with the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, 364 ; regulation of, touching preachers in a convocation at London, 367 ; postulated by the monks of Canterbury for the archbishopric, 371 ; installation of, *ib.* ; asked by the king to bring his brother, the earl of Arundel, before him, *ib.* ; takes him to the king at Westminster, 372 ; waits for his reappearance until the evening, and returns to Lambeth, *ib.* ; parliament made to accuse him by the king, 376 ; the prolocutor interrupted by the king, *ib.* ; is ordered to depart, *ib.* ; forbidden to appear again in parliament, *ib.* ; is sentenced to perpetual banishment and deprivation, *ib.* ; refuses

Arundel, Thomas de—*cont.*
to go, *ib.* ; consents on the promise of the king that he shall be recalled shortly, *ib.* ; preaches against the luxury of the court, 377 ; leaves Dover, *ib.* ; declared to be dead by Richard II., 377 ; banished for life, 379 ; repairs to the pope, *ib.* ; escapes assassination on the journey, *ib.* ; reception of, by the pope, *ib.* ; lands with Henry duke of Lancaster and the son of his brother the earl of Arundel, 381 ; announces to the king the necessity of his abdication at Conway castle, 382 ; condemns Richard II. to imprisonment for life, 383 ; preaches a good sermon on the accession of Henry IV., 384 ; gives up, as chancellor, the great seal to the king, and receives it from him, *ib.* ; announces the date of the coronation, *ib.* ; crowns the king, *ib.* ; restitution made to, by Walden, 385 ; entreats the king to spare his life, *ib.* ; removes from Canterbury to Windsor, *ib.* ; the earls of Huntingdon, Kent, and Salisbury said to intend to take life of, near Kingston, *ib.* ; is warned by a messenger from the king, 386 ; returns to Reigate, *ib.* ; one of the household of, passing through Kingston, interrogated by the earl of Kent, and robbed by his servants, *ib.* ; degrades [William Sautre] a heretic, 388 ; pacifies the king in the case of a friar of Cambridge, 389 ; recommends Henry IV. to reserve archbishop Scrope for the judgment of the pope or parliament, 407 ; prepares a document for presentation to the pope, *ib.* ; convokes the Council of Oxford (? London), 412 ; letter to, from Gregory XII., 413 ; orders a procession in London to celebrate the termination of the Great Schism, *ib.* ; grants an indulgence, *ib.* ; orders his suffragans to do the same, *ib.* ; conduct of, at the examination of Badby, 417.

Asa, son of Abijah, king of Judah, I. 47.

Asaph, S. [John Trevour II.] bishop of advises Parliament not to neglect the

Asaph S.—*cont.*
claim of Owen de Glyndwr, III. 388; reply of parliament to, *ib.*
Ascalon, taken by the Christians, I. 386; present name of Philistiim, II. 52, 56.
Ascanius, king of the Latins (son of Æneas and Creusa) succeeds Æneas, I. 304; II. 205; founds Alba, I. 44, 304; his reign, *ib.*
Aschillus, king of the Dani, II. 326; troops supplied to king Arthur by, against the Romans, 335; (king of the Daci), commands in the army of king Arthur against the Romans, 348; attacked by the king of the Parthi, 352; killed at Cambla, 363.
Ascliopades (or Asclepeodotus, duke of Cornwall), elected king of Britain, II. 265; murders Allectus, *ib.*; party of, behead Gallus, his colleague, in London, *ib.*; besieges Trinovantum, and kills Allec, 266; is defeated and killed by Coel, *ib.*
Ashdune, or Ashdown (*Ellendoun*), battle of, I. 240; III. 6, 286; (*Assenduna*), church built at, by Cnut, III. 29.
Asia, its boundaries, II. 2, 10, 11, 15; its proximity to Europe at the Bosphorus, 3; assigned to Shem after Deluge, 10.
Asia Minor, boundaries of, II. 34, 53; seven cities of, 53; provinces of, 34, 53.
Asshburne, Thomas, an Augustinian friar, present at a great council, III. 337; opinion of, on the claim of Gregory XI. to the lordship of the temporalities of the kingdom, 338.
Assisi, II. 111.
Assur, son of Shem, expelled from Babylon by Nimrod, I. 29.
Assyria, a province of India, called from Assur, son of Shem, II. 19, 51; boundaries of, *ib.*; purple first invented in, *ib.*; unguents first employed in, *ib.*; perfumes and fumigations first used in, *ib.*
Assyrian empire, the, I. 298; date of commencement of, 32; termination of, contemporary with commencement of the Roman, *ib.*, 299.
Astolphus (*Arstulphus*), king of the Lombards, I. 234; becomes king of the Lombards, 363; defeated by Pepin, *ib.*, 364, 365.
Asturia, a province of Hispania Citerior, II. 98; site of, *ib.*; people of, why called Astures, *ib.*; description of, and people of, *ib.*, 99. *See* Spain.
Athaliah, daughter of Ahab, reign of, I. 49; destroys all the royal race of the house of Jehoram, *ib.*
Athanasius, S., composes the créed, "Quicunque vult," at Alexandria, I. 192; exiled by Constantius II., 340; death of, 194; III. 268.
Athens, II. 68; chief city of Attica, 83.
Athol (*Atheles*), earl of, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.
———, John, earl of, taken prisoner in an interdicted church, is condemned, 191.
Atrapes, king of the Assyrians, I. 49.
Attica, anciently called Greece, II. 83. *See* Athens, Demosthenes.
Attila (*Totila*), king of the Huns (Vandals), lays waste Italy, I. 199; persuaded not to approach Rome by S. Leo, *ib.*; vision of, 200.
Atys, king of the Latins, I. 304.
Aubigny (*Daubene*), burned by James de Audley and John Chandos, III. 218.
Audeley, Hugh de, imprisoned, III. 198; created 11th earl of Gloucester, 202.
————, James de. *See* Mortimer.
————, James de, burns Aubigny, 218. *See* Gris-Motoun.
Augustine, S., Treatise of, De Civitate Dei, employed by the author, I. 3; conversion from Manichæism to the true faith, I. 344; bishop of Hippo (*Yponia*), fl., I. 346; III. 270; death of, I. 346; III. 270; homilies of, passage in relating to portents before the arrival of the Lombards in Italy, I. 211; his account of Paradise, II. 13; of its situation, *ib.*; proof of the immortality of the soul by, in his De Civitate Dei, 200; illustrations of: the salamander, *ib.*; burning mountains of Sicily, *ib.*; incorruptibility of peacock's flesh, *ib.*; unripe apples, 201; quick lime, *ib.*; fountains in Garamantia, *ib.*
————, (the monk), sent by pope Gregory the Great to Britain, I. 354;

Augustine, S.—*cont.*
II. 366 ; finds Christianity established in a part of the island, 367 ; pretensions of, to supremacy, resisted by Dinohot, abbot of Bangor, *ib.* ; lands in the isle of Thanet, and sends to Aethelbert of Kent, *ib.* ; invited by him to a colloquy, *ib.* ; preaches to him, 368 ; converts the Saxons, III. 278 ; is made archbishop of Canterbury, II. 368 ; buried in the monastery of SS. Peter and Paul, Canterbury, III. 21.
Augustinian Friars, the, obtain a dispensation to eat flesh, III. 340 ; are to keep the fast observed by the Friars Minors before the Nativity, *ib.*
Augustudunum, II. 341 ; skirmishes between the Romans and Britains near, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347 ; loss of Britains in, 346, 347.
Augustus Cæsar, the length of his reign, I. 65 ; refuses deification, 69 ; consults the Sibyl, *ib.* ; his greatness, 70 ; closes the Temple of Peace, *ib.* ; takes a census at Rome, *ib.* 71 ; reign of, 313 ; luxurious habits of, *ib.* ; character of, and legend of the Ara Cœli, 314 ; death of, 315 ; III. 348 ; sepulture of, I. 315.
Auray, battle of, III. 236, 237.
Aurelian, reign of, I. 333 ; ninth persecution of Christians under, *ib.*
Aurelius Ambrosius, son of king Constantine, II. 273, 281 ; returns to Britain, besieges and kills Vortigern, 302 ; defeats the Saxons, *ib.* ; Otta, son of Hengist, and the Saxons pardoned by, *ib.* ; gives to the Saxons a territory near Scotland, *ib.* ; sends to Ireland for the Chorea Gigantum, *ib.* ; founds Stonehenge, *ib.* ; is poisoned at Winchester, *ib.* ; and is buried there, *ib.*
Aurelius Conanus, king of Britain, reign of, II. 365.
Aurora, an, of great brilliancy, III. 229 ; another, 240 ; another account of, described to the author by two fellow monks, 241, 242.
Austria, withdrawn from the Roman empire, I. 295 ; the south boundary of Bohemia, II. 72 ; a province of Germany, 84.
Austria, Leopold, duke of, brother of, killed by Richard I., III. 82 ; his hatred of Richard in consequence, *ib.* ; takes him prisoner in Almain, *ib.* ; dispute between, and the pope, 83 ; dies excommunicate, *ib.*
Author (of Eulogium), reasons given by, for writing it, I. 1, 2 ; authorities employed by, 3 ; a compiler only, 4 ; mark used by, to distinguish his own additions, 5 ; his own scribe, *ib.*
Auvergne (*Alvernia*), a province of Gaul, II. 86 ; chief city of Clermont (*Mons Clarus*), *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.*

B.

B——, S., curses the devil in a female demoniac, and cures her, III. 55.
Baal, priests of, slain by Jehu, I. 48.
Baasha, king of Israel, I. 47.
Babel, building of tower of, and confusion of tongues, I. 29.
Babylon, II. 20 ; confusion of tongues took place there, *ib.* ; description of, by S. Jerome on Isaiah, *ib.* ; by Orosius, 21, 22 ; Nabugodonosor, king of, captivity of Jews under, *ib.* ; destruction of, under Belshazzar by Cyrus and Darius, 21 ; now a desert, *ib.* ; called from Babel, *ib.* ; commenced by Nimrod and finished by Semiramis, 22 ; remains of walls of, 22 ; hundred gates of, *ib.* ; fall of, contemporaneous with rise of Roman empire (Orosius), *ib.* ; (Heliopolis), capture and destruction of, by Amalric, king of Jerusalem, III. 72.
Babylonia, description of, II. 20, 21, 51 ; called so from Babylon, *ib.*, 21, 22, 51.
Bactria, a region of Asia, called from the Bactrus, II. 30 ; account of, *ib.* ; camels produced by, *ib.*
[Badby, Thos.], execution of, for heresy on transubstantiation, III. 416 ; profane reply of, to a question, before Parliament, *ib.* 417 ; legend concerning, 417 ; begs for mercy, and is removed from the stake, *ib.* ; refuses to recant, *ib.* ; again begs for

[Badby, Thos.]—*cont.*
mercy, but refuses to recant, *ib.*; is burned, *ib.*
Badlesmere (*Badesmer*), Bartholomew, execution of, at Canterbury, III. 197.
Badon, II. 326.
Baldok, Robert de, priest, one of the judges of Thos., earl of Lancaster, III. 196.
Baldred (*Aldredus*), last king of Kent, expelled by Egbert, king of Wessex, II. 157, 369.
Baldulphus, brother of Colgrinus, killed at Caerbadon, II. 314. *See* Colgrinus.
Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury, Richard I.
Balearic Isles, the, why so called, II. 119; Aphrodisiades and Gymnasie, commonly called Majorica and Minorca, *ib.*
Balliol, Edward, father of John Balliol, III. 150.
———, Edward, son of John Balliol, marriage proposed between, and Joan, daughter of the king of France, III. 160; and the English, defeat the Scots at Gladsmuir, 200; relieved by Edward III. at Berwick, 201; does homage to him at Newcastle, 202.
——— John de, lord of Galway (*Galwadia*), an adherent of Henry III., III. 123; a competitor for the crown of Scotland, 150, 151; the auditors appointed by Edward I. report in favour of, 155; coronation of, in the abbey of Scone, *ib.*; does homage and fealty to Edward I., 156, 157; receives the kingdom from him, 157; obtains absolution from his oath from the pope, 158, 159; concludes a treaty with Philip IV. of France against England, 160; renounces his allegiance to Edward, *ib.*; negotiates for peace with him, *ib.*; submits to him absolutely, *ib.*; gives his son as a hostage, *ib.*; patent of, delivering his kingdom to Edward, *ib.*, 162; is sent to the Tower of London, 163; swears fealty, and does homage to Edward at Westminster, 165; is liberated at the request of the pope, and taken to France, 170.
Balliol, Guy de, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
Bangor, number of monks in, under Dinohot, II. 367; monks of, attacked by Aethelfrith of Northumbria, and martyred, 370.
———, John, bishop of, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham castle, III. 363. *See* also Daniel.
Banna, the, in Ulster, II. 128.
Bannockburn, battle of, III. 194, 195, 307.
Baptism, informal, by Olimpius, an Arian bishop, a curious result of, I. 350.
Barak. *See* Deborah.
Barba, the, II. 335, 337.
Barbara, S., martyred, III. 272.
Bardolf, Hugh, 1st lord, III. 158.
——— [Thomas], 5th lord, escapes from Berwick castle into Scotland, III. 408; defeat and death of, near Tadcastre 411. *See* Northumberland, Henry de Percy, earl of.
Barlaam, S., the hermit, fl., I. 194; III. 268.
Barnabas, S., apostle, discovery of body of, I. 201, 349; preaches at Rome before S. Peter, 201; first preacher of the gospel in Rome during the residence of S. Peter at Antioch, 165.
Barnet, John, bishop of Worcester, translated to Bath, III. 232, 313; report that he would be translated to Ely, 242.
Barons, the, dissension between and king John, III. 112; hold London against him, *ib.*; letter of, to Henry III., 124, 125; deprived, after battle of Evesham, 133; collect an army and harass the royal party, *ib.*; fortify Kenilworth castle, 134; are besieged by Henry III., *ib.*; surrender the castle, 135; adherents of Simon de Montfort recalled from exile, 135.
Barri, island of, in Demetia, near Cardiff, miraculous chink in, II. 137.
Bartholomew, S., translations of, I. 352; invention of, 420; translation of, to Rome, *ib.*
Bartholomæus, quoted, I. 68, 71.
Baruch, the book of, burnt by Jehoiakim, I. 54.

Basil, S., bishop of Cæsarea, fl., I. 194, 343; persecuted by Julian the apostate, 341; his vision, *ib.*; death of, I. 189; III. 268; his account of the situation of Paradise, II. 14.
Basilisk, the, found in Upper Egypt, II. 28; its venomousness, *ib.*
Basing, battle of, III. 6.
Basingwerk, fountain of S. Winifred in, II. 139.
Basina, wife of Basinus, king of Thuringia, leaves her husband, and marries Childeric, king of the Franks, I. 350.
Basinus, king of Thuringia, receives Childeric, king of the Franks, I. 350.
Basle, council of, deposes Eugenius IV., I. 289; anathema pronounced in, against vexers of the church and of ecclesiastics, 291.
Basset, Philip, an adherent of Henry III., III. 123.
———, Ralph, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
Bassianus, son of Severus, elected king of the Britons, II. 265; contest between, and Geta, *ib.*; is murdered by Carausius, *ib.*
Bassus, the accuser of S. Sixtus III., condemnation of, I. 198.
Bath (*Batonia*), city of, founded by king Bladud, II. 150; called Cairbadoun, *ib.*; afterwards called Bath by the Angles, *ib.*; (*Acamannum*), III. 20; donations of Eadgar to, *ib.*
——, Jocelin, bishop of, present at the coronation of Henry III., III. 113.
——, John, bishop of, III. 54, 55.
——, Ralph, bishop of. *See* Salopia.
——, see of, contains Somerset, II. 180.
Batilda, daughter of Clotaire II., II. 121; marries Ausbert, 122; Arnald, son of, *ib.*; Arnulf, grandson of, marries the daughter of Pepin, *ib.*; Angesil, great grandson of, king of the Franks, *ib.*
Battle abbey, foundation of, III. 329; legend of the foundation of, 39, 40; dedicated to S. Mark, evangelist, 40; Gilbert, first abbot of, 46.
Bavaria(?), (*Barnatica*), marches of a west boundary of Bohemia, II. 72; (*Navarri*), south boundary of Thuringia, *ib.*; (*Barcaria*), a province of Germany, 84.
———, [Louis], duke of. *See* Blanche, dau. of Henry IV.
Bayona, II. 103.
Beatrice, S., legend of passion of, III. 263.
Beatrix, daughter of Henry III. and Eleanor of Provence, (countess) duchess of Britanny, III. 119; enters a religious order on the death of her husband, *ib.*; present at the coronation of Edward I., 141.
Beauchamp, John, knight, (of Kyderminster ?) seneschal of the household, taken and beheaded at the Tower of London, III. 366.
———— (*Bello Campo*), John de (of Bedford), killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
————, John de (of Warwick), knight, brother of [Thomas], 12th earl of Warwick, ob., III. 312.
Beaufort, Henry, bishop of Lincoln, solemnizes the marriage of Henry IV. and Joan, duchess of Brittany, III. 403.
Beaulieu (*Bellus Locus*), (Winton dioc.), Cistercian abbey of, founded by king John, III. 111.
Beaumont, Henry de, 1st lord, III. 200.
Beauvoir (*Beauer*), castle of, seized by John and recovered by Richard I., III. 83.
Beche, John de la, imprisoned, III. 198.
———, Philip de la, imprisoned, III. 198.
Beda, an authority employed by the writer of the Eulogium, I. 3; a disciple of S. Benedict Biscop, or Bisope, 220, III. 280; his Gesta Pont. Angl. quoted, I. 221; fl., 360; III. 281; composes a martyrology, founded on the writings of S. Anian, II. 187; death of, I. 233; III. 283; assertion in his Chronicles that S. Aldhelm was a disciple of S. Meildulf, I. 226.
Bedfordshire (*Bedefordschire*), II. 152.
Bedwerus, pincerna of king Arthur, II. 324; dux of Normannia, 326; serves at the coronation banquet of Arthur, 328; accompanies Arthur in his attack on the giant of S. Michael's Mount, 338; sent

Bedwerus—*cont.*
with Roman prisoners to Paris, 345; commands against the Romans, 348; killed by Bottus, king of the Medi, 353; buried at Bayeux (*Baiocæ*), 358.

Beek (or Bek), Antony de, elected bishop of Durham, III. 146; consecrated by the archbishop of York, *ib.*; empowered to negotiate for peace with John Balliol, 161.

Beket, Thomas à, archdeacon of Canterbury, appointed chancellor, III. 69; consecrated archbishop of Canterbury, 70, 74; dedicates the church of Reading, 299; is banished, 61, 74; at the council of Northampton, 70, 81; escapes by night, *ib.*, 299; banishment of, I. 274; goes into France to pope Alexander [III.], III. 81; retires from the abbey of Pontigny, in consequence of a letter of Henry II. to the abbot, 71; is murdered in his cathedral church, 72, 74, 87, 299; verses on death of, 87; translation of, 116, 301. *See* S. Thomas of Canterbury.

[Bela IV.], king of Hungary, attacks [Premislas II.] king of Bohemia, I. 391; and is defeated after a great battle, *ib.*; peace between them, *ib.*

Belgabred, the singer, king of Britain, II. 248.

Belgica, a province of Gaul, II. 86; boundaries of, *ib.*; account of, *ib.*

Beling Street, the, runs from West to South, II. 146; commences in S. David's, in West Wales, and proceeds to Southampton, *ib.*

Belinus, king of the Britons, I. 60; (Belyn) and Bren, sons of Dunwallo, reign jointly over Britain, II. 236; (Belyn) invades the territory of Brennius, II. 237; refuses to restore his wife and ships, captured by Gwithlac, 238; defeats him, *ib.*; calls a council at York, *ib.*; liberates Gwithlac, 239; confirms the laws of Dunwallo, *ib.*; repairs the royal roads, *ib.*; meets Brennius with his army, 241; is reconciled to him by the interposition of their mother Conwen, *ib.*; occupies Italy, 242; invades Asia, *ib.*; leaves

Belinus—*cont.*
Brennius in Italy, and returns to Britain, *ib.*; founds the city of Kaernse-upon-Usk, afterwards called Urbs Legionum, *ib.*; builds Belyngate, on the Thames, 242; dies, 243; and Brennius takes Rome, 332.

Belisarius frees Rome from the Goths, I. 206; dies in exile in Syracusa, *ib.*

Belus, son of Nimrod, I. 30; called also Zoroastes, *ib.*; enters Assyria, 31; death of, *ib.*

Benedict, S., abbot, fl., I. 351; III. 274; translation of, I. 221; II. 121; III. 281.

———, Biscop, S., founds the monastery of Wearmouth, I. 220; founds two monasteries at Wearmouth, III. 280.

——— I., pope, I. 211; III. 277; dies during the invasion of the Lombards, I. 211.

——— II., pope, I. 223; III. 281.

——— III., pope, I. 243, 244; III. 288.

——— IV., pope, I. 248; III. 289.

——— V., pope, I. 252; III. 291; is delivered to the emperor Otho I. and dies at Hamburgh, I. 252.

——— VI., pope, III. 292; strangled, I. 253.

——— VII., pope, I. 253, 254; III; 292.

——— VIII., pope, I. 258; III. 293; ejected, I. 258; legend concerning, mentioned by Petrus Damascenus, *ib.*

——— IX., pope, I. 259, 260; III. 294; deposed and restored, I. 259; again deposed, *ib*; legend concerning, 260; sells the papacy to Gregory VI., *ib.*

——— X., antipope, I. 263; III. 295.

——— XI., pope, cons., I. 282; succ., III. 306.

——— XII., pope, death of, I. 282; III. 206, 308.

[——— XIII.], pope, I. 286; is expelled from France, and goes to Arragon, III. 412; cardinals of, join the cardinals of Gregory XII., at Pisa, *ib.*; said to have been commissioned by Gregory XII. to absolve himself from his oath,

[Benedict XIII.]—*cont.*
414; declares this, *ib.*; sends ambassadors to the Council of Pisa, *ib.*; promises, if it is removed to another place, to appear and resign, *ib.*; messengers of, sent back to, by the Council, *ib.*
Benevento taken by the emperor Otho II., I. 420.
Berengarius, heresy of, condemned, I. 382; recantation of, *ib.*
————, of Aquitain, founds Berwick, II. 262.
Berenger, reign of, I. 374.
———— II., and Adalbert, kings of Italy, reign of, I. 375; expelled by Otho I., who marries Adelaide (*Dalida*), widow of Lothaire, *ib.*
Berforde, Simon de, execution of, III. 201.
Berkley, Maurice de, knight, 7th lord, surrenders to Edward II., III. 197; dies a prisoner at Wallingford Castle, *ib.*
————, Thomas de, 8th lord, son of foregoing, surrenders to Edward II., III. 197, 218.
———— [Thomas de], 10th lord, Keeper of the Seas, retaliates on the Bretons, III. 395.
————, Maurice de, son of T[homas] de B[erkley], badly wounded before Poitiers, III. 224.
Berkshire (*Barkschire*), II. 152; called from a barked oak in Windsor forest, *ib.*
Bernard, S., abbot of Clairvaux, fl., III. 66; preaches the second crusade, I. 386; death of, III. 66.
Bernardius, S., Friar Minor, death of, I. 290; commences the reform of his order, *ib.*
Bernicia, boundaries of, II. 165; first king of, Ida, *ib.*
Berniers, James, knight, taken and beheaded at the Tower of London, III. 366.
Berry, the duke of, an ally of [Charles] duke of Orleans, III. 418.
Bertrandi, Roger, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Berwick, castle of, built by king John, III. 113; siege and reduction of, by Henry IV., 408.
Besiles, Mathew de, warden of Gloucester castle, [taken] by the barons, III. 121.
Betanzos (*Brigancia*), a city of Gallicia, II. 76; lighthouse at, xli. *note* [1].
Bethfrid defeats the Picts, I. 230.
Bigod, Hugh, and four hundred men, escape at the battle of Lewes towards Pevensey Castle, III. 128.
Birds, in Italy, set fire to towns by carrying burning brands, I. 422.
Birinus, S., sent into England by Honorius I., III. 279.
Birstan, S., bishop, legend of, I. 422.
Birthright, definition of, I. 35.
Bishop, apostolic method of consecrating, I. 176.
Bishops, of England, declare themselves freed from their oath to the empress Maud on her second marriage, III. 61.
Bisser and Bourgillon, the comte de, territory of, III. 220.
Bithynia, a province of Asia Minor, named from Bithynus, II. 34; formerly called Bebicia ("Hebicia, Ebicia, and Ebricia" MSS.) and Mygdonia, *ib.*; the same as Major Phrygia, *ib.*; cities in, destroyed by an earthquake at the Crucifixion, I. 80. *See* Nichomedia.
Bladon, or Ingelbourne-Castel, built by Dunwallo Molmuntius, I. 225; city of, destroyed, *ib.*
Bladud, son of Rudhudibras, king of Britain, I. 49; II. 227; founds Kæerbadon, now Bath, and makes hot baths in it, *ib.*; Elias contemporary with, *ib.*; teaches necromancy, *ib.*; attempts to fly, falls on the Temple of Apollo in Trinovantum, and is dashed to pieces, *ib.*; the monastery of S. Paul said to be on the site of the Temple, *ib.*
Blaise, S., martyrdom of, I. 188; III. 263.
Blake, John, esquire, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham castle, III. 363; drawn and hanged by order of the five lords, 366.
Blakehoumore, II. 9.
Blanche, eldest daughter of Henry IV.,

Blanche—*cont.*
married at Cologne to [Louis] duke of [*filio ducis*] Bavaria, III. 403.

Bledericus, duke of Cornwall, defeats Aethelfrith of Northumbria before Bangor, II. 370; killed there, *ib.*

Bledudo, king of Britain, II. 248.

Blight in Ireland, III. 289.

Blois, Stephen, count of, marries Adelais, daughter of William the Conqueror, III. 42; a leader of the first crusade, I. 383.

—— a castle in the comté of, on the Cher, III. 220.

—— Charles de, defeat of, at Auray, III. 235, 236.

Blood, the Holy, sent by the patriarch of Jerusalem to Henry III., III. 138.

——, a fountain of, in Genoa, I. 250.

——, a fountain emits, I. 310.

——, effusion of, at a feast, I. 312.

——, rain of, at Brixen (*Brixia*), I. 372.

——, a fountain emitting, in Hampstead (Berks), III. 51.

——, a rain of, III. 70.

——, fountain emits, at "Gellich," in England, III. 297.

—— seen to flow from springs in England, III. 415; consequent dysentery, *ib.*

Blottorius killed, II. 355.

Boemi, the, Sclavians, II. 62. *See* Sclavia.

Boemund recovers the Holy Sepulchre, I. 266.

Bœotia, a province of Hellas, called from "bos," II. 68, 69; Thebes, a city of, 69; called also Aonia, *ib.*; aphrodisiac lake in, *ib.*

Boethius, exiled by Theodoric, I. 202; composes his "De Consolatione Philosophiæ," *ib.*; works of, "De Trinitate," and "De Hebdomadibus," III. 66.

Bogardus, a Dane, killed at Chippenham, III. 7.

Bohemia, a part of Mœsia, II. 71; situation of, *ib.*, 72; description of, 72; the Elbe flows through, *ib.*; remarkable animal in, *ib.*; boundaries of Hungary, Poland, Austria, Bavaria (*Barnatica*), Germany, and Misnia, *ib.*; a boundary of Saxony, 108.

Bohun, William de, created 5th earl of Northampton, III. 202.

Bolingbroke, Henry de, son of John of Ghent, duke of Lancaster, created earl of Derby, III. 361. *See* Henry IV.

Bologna (*Bononia*), Balthazar, cardinal of (afterwards John XXII.), an ally of Louis of Provence against the king of Naples, III. 416. *See* Pope John XXII.

Bonaventurus, Frater (a Minorite), fl., III. 129, 130.

Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, first celebrates mass in the cathedrals of Wales, II. 173.

——, S., converts the Germans, I. 231; consecrated by S. Gregory II., 232; afterwards archbishop of Mentz, *ib.*; martyrdom and sepulture of, *ib.*

—— I., S., pope, I. 197; III. 270.

—— II., S., pope, I. 204.; III. 275

—— III., pope, I. 215; III. 278.

—— IV., pope, I. 215, 216, 217; III. 278; obtains from the emperor Phocas a concession that the see of S. Peter shall be head of all the Churches of the world, 216; begs the Pantheon of Phocas, *ib.*; consecrates it to S. Mary and All Martyrs, 217; the feast of the Dedication changed from May to November by a pope Gregory, *ib.*; and observed as the day of God and Mary his Mother, and All Saints, *ib.*

—— V., pope, I. 217; III. 279.

—— VI., pope, I. 247, 248; III. 289.

—— VII., pope, I. 252, 253; III. 292; returns to Constantinople and dies, I. 253.

—— VIII., pope, consecrated, I. 282; III. 306; claims the kingdom of Scotland as a fief of the apostolic see, 172; grounds of claim of, *ib.*, 173; admonition of, to Edward I. to release the Scotch prisoners, to remove his officers from Scotland, and to send procurators to the papal court, *ib.*, 174; reply of Edward I. to claim of, *ib.*, 175, 176, 177,

Boniface VIII.—*cont.*
178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183; reply of barons to admonition touching procurators, *ib.*, 184, 185; accused of heresy, simony, and homicide, 186; dies, 306; said to have attempted to obtain temporal sovereignty, 338; but to have been repulsed in England and France, *ib.*

——— IX., election of, I. 286; III. 368; creates the archbishop of York (?) a cardinal, *ib.*; attempts to translate the richer English bishops, *ib.*; prevented by statute from translating bishops without royal assent, *ib.*; applied to by Richard II. to promote Roger Walden to the see of Canterbury, 377; a nuncio from, brings bulls of, 378; fears to offer consolation to Thomas de Arundel, 379; declares the sentence against him void by a bull, and denies the vacancy of the see of Canterbury, 385; grants an indulgence to all contributors to the aid of Manuel II. against the Turks, 388; death of, 402.

Bordeaux refuses to admit John of Ghent as duke of Aquitain, III. 370; ground of the refusal, 371; the betrayer of, taken by the English, and drawn and hanged at London 399.

———, Francis, archbishop of, arrives in England to treat on peace, III. 412; puts off his "capellus" on entering into the presence of Henry IV. in Westminster Hall, *ib.*; puts off his "capicium" on reaching the middle of the hall, *ib.*; half puts it off on approaching the king, 413; reception of, by the king, *ib.*; convokes the Council [of London], *ib.*; preaches a sermon before the king, *ib.*; final answer to, on the part of England, *ib.*

Borelus Cenomannensis, II. 326; sent with Roman prisoners to Paris, 345; attacked and killed by the Romans, 346.

Boso of Richeden (Oxenfordia), II. 326; commands a troop of infantry in the army of king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348; penetrates the division of Alifatina and Catullus to that of the king of the Parthi, 352.

———, consul of Uadobon, sent as herald to Lucius, by king Arthur, II. 342; engaged in a skirmish with the Romans, *ib.*; speech of, to the Britons, 344.

Bosphorus, the, II. 3; narrowness of, *ib.*; called Brachium S. Georgii, *ib.*

Boston, the merchants' booths at, set on fire by Robert Chamberlain (*Camerarius*), III. 148; a great part of the town of, and the church of the Friars Preachers in, burned, *ib.*

Botevileyn, Roger, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

Botourt, John, escape of, III. 198.

Bottus, king of the Medi, II. 336; commands under Lucius against the Britons, 351, 352; kills Bedwerus, 353; killed by Hirelgas, his nephew, 354.

Boulogne (*Bononia*), count of, betrothed to a daughter of William (I.), king of Scotland, III. 113.

———, Godfrey, duke of. *See* Godfrey.

Bourbon, Jacques de, a town and castle belonging to, III, 217; wife of, dwelling there, *ib.*

——— [John], duke of, an ally of [Charles] duke of Orleans, III. 418.

Boys, Edward de, knight, killed at the taking of Roche Guyon, III. 208.

Brabantia, a province of Germany, II. 85; boundaries of, *ib.*; account of, *ib.*

Braccana. *See* Byzacena.

Bradebourn, Henry, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.

Bramham-Moor, battle of, III. 411.

Brandan, S. (or Brendan), commences his voyage, I. 210.

Branford (?), John, duke of Exeter, enters [France] with an army, III. 420.

Breaute (*Breut*), Fulk de, ravages England, III. 108; fortifies Bedford castle against Henry, 115; is banished, and taken prisoner in Coventry, 116; is exiled, *ib.*

Brecknock (*Bregheynoc*), a fish-pond of marvellous properties in, II. 136.

Brembro, Nicholas, knight, condemned, drawn, and hanged, III. 366.

Brennius, or Bren, son of Dunwallo, seeks the aid of the king of Norway against his brother Belynus, II. 237 ; sails to Britain with an army of Norwegians, *ib.* ; is attacked by Gwithlac, king of the Danes, *ib.* ; Elfyngle, wife of, carried off by him, *ib.* ; re-assembles his navy, and lands in Albania, 238 ; demands the restitution of his ships and wife by Belinus, *ib.* ; attacks him, and is defeated, *ib.* ; escapes to Gaul, *ib.* ; makes an alliance with Seginus, duke of the Allobroges, 239 ; marries his daughter, 240 ; succeeds to his dukedom, *ib.* ; makes a league with the Gauls, and invades Britain, *ib.*, 241 ; is reconciled to Belinus, *ib.* ; invades France with Belinus, 242 ; reduces Italy and Almain with him, *ib.* ; attacks and captures Rome with him, *ib.* ; founds the city of Brenstou, now called Bristow (Bristol), *ib.* ; returns to his own territory, *ib.*

Bretons, the, are repulsed by the common people in Somerset, III. 403. *See* Lord Berkeley, Plymouth.

Brette [Bernardet], de la, killed at the assault on the donjon of Romorentin Castle, III. 220.

———, seigneur (*dominus*), de la, nephews of, III. 217.

Brian, nephew of Cadwallo, sent to Britain, fortifies Exeter, II. 375 ; besieged by Penda, king of Mercia, *ib.*

Brian, son of the earl of Anjou, present at the second marriage of the empress Maud, III. 61.

Bridget, S., her opinion as to the wickedness of the world, I. 284 ; sent to Urban V., from Sweden, for the confirmation of the order of S. Saviour, 285 ; death of, 351.

Bridlington, John of, asserted prophecy of the restoration of Richard II., III. 391.

Brieux, S., castle of, in Brittany, siege of, III. 413.

Brignai, battle of, III. 229.

Bristol, the Council of, convoked by Gwalo, the papal legate, III. 113 ; fealty and homage sworn to Henry III. at, *ib.* ; nine English bishops at, *ib.* ; the Welsh excommunicated at, 114.

Britain, dimensions of, II. 81 ; site of, *ib.* ; formerly called Albion, why, *ib.*, 139 ; then Britain from Brut, *ib.* ; next Saxonia, from the Saxons, *ib.* ; and Anglia, from the Angli, *ib.* ; or from the Germanici who conquered it, 81 ; or, according to Isidorus, because situated in a corner of the globe, 140 ; called by Charlemagne "Camera Sua," *ib.* ; length of circuit of, 113 ; products of, *ib.*, 140 ; wool of, sought for by Flanders ; hides and skins of, by Normandy ; iron, tin, and lead of, by Gascony ; minerals and salts by Ireland, *ib.* ; verses of one Henry on, *ib.*, 141 ; hot springs in, 141 ; stones at Stonehenge in, *ib.* ; cavity at Cherdhole in, *ib.* ; salt springs in, *ib.* ; marsh in, *ib.*, 142 ; fountain in, 142 ; pit in, *ib.* ; lakes in, *ib.* ; tumulus in, *ib.* ; wood near Wimborne Minster, *ib.* ; three chief divisions of : Loegria, Cambria, and Albania, 143 ; islands of : Wight, Anglesey, Man, and Thanet, 144, 145 ; four great roads of : Fosse, Watling Street, Beling Street, and Ikeneld Street, 145, 146 ; rivers of : the Thames, Severn, and Humber, 147, 148 ; ancient cities of, 148, 149 ; chief cities of, 149, 150, 151 ; monarchy of, uninterrupted from Brute to Julius Cæsar, 156 ; tributary to the Romans from Julius to Severus, *ib.* ; the Scots and Picts, after the cessation of the Roman power, harass, *ib.* ; people of, invite the Saxons to aid them against the Picts, *ib.* ; are driven into Wales under Catericus, by the Saxons and Picts, and Gurmundus, king of Ireland, *ib.* ; Angles, the, reduce and divide into seven kingdoms, *ib.* ; Aethelstan, sole monarch of, *ib.* ; Danes, the, infest, from Ethelwulf (*Ewlfus*), father of Aelfred the Great, *ib.* ; reign in, for thirty years, 157 ; S. Edward

Britain—*cont.*
Confessor and Harold reign in, *ib.*; Normans now govern, *ib.*; kingdoms of, 157–168; ecclesiastical division of, by SS. Fuganus and Damianus, 172; first inhabited by the Britons, 181; Picts arrive in Ireland from Scythia, and are sent by the Scots there to North of, *ib.*; Gratian and Valentinian invite the Picts from Scythia, and send them to, 182; Picts inhabit North, *ib.*; Scots, under Renda, settle in, *ib.*; Saxons invited to, by Britons against Picts and Scots, defeat them, and drive Britons into Cambria, *ib.*; called Anglo-Germans, *ib.*; people of, called Angles, by Egbert of Wessex, *ib.*; Danes occupy from time of Egbert to Edward Confessor, *ib.*; Flemings, temp. Henry I., settle in the East of, near "Mailros," *ib.*; they migrate to the west of, near Haverford, 183; the Normans, under duke William, conquer and settle in, *ib.*; at present inhabited by Scots in Albania, Britons in Cambria, Flemings in West Wales, and throughout by a mixture of Saxons and Normans, *ib.*; troops furnished to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.

Britannia, John de, 8th earl of Richmond, joins the crusade, III. 136.

————, 9th earl, nephew of Edward I., is sent into Gascony, 158.

Britannicus, son of Claudius Cæsar, I. 317.

Britanny (*Britannia Minor*), site of, II. 81; colonized by the Britons, *ib.*, 82.

————, Hawisia, countess of, daughter of Richard Sans-Peur, duke of Normandy, II. 192; daughter of William Longue-Epée, duke of Normandy, III. 330.

————, Joan, duchess of, widow of John de Montfort. *See* Joan.

———— [John de Montfort], duke of. *See* Montfort, John de.

———— [John], duke of, an ally of [Charles] duke of Orleans, III. 418.

————, Alan Fergant, earl of, marries Constantia, daughter of William the Conqueror, III. 41, 42.

Britanny, Geoffrey, earl of, son of Henry II., birth of, III. 69, 80; goes to the king of France against his father, 88; rebels with his brothers, 89; the duchy of Britanny given to, 92.

Britons, Saxons, Angles, Book of Gesta of, compiled by Aelfred the Great, III. 9.

———, the, retire before the Saxons into Cornwall and Wales, II. 366; Thronus and Thadiocus, archbishops of, take refuge in Wales, *ib.*; others go to Britanny, *ib.*; territory of, invaded by Aethelfrith of Northumbria, 369; vices of, according to Gildas, 373; civil discords among, under Cadwallader, 380; famine and pestilence among, *ib.*; a few left in Wales, 381; subjection of, to the Saxons, 382; not to reign in Britain until the relics of Cadwallader had been brought from Rome thither, *ib.*; government of, committed to Yvor and Ini, by Cadwallader, 383; called Gwalenses, and not Britones, 384; never have recovered the sovereignty of the island, *ib.*; occasional rebellion of, against the Saxons, *ib.*; drunken boast of, 385.

[Bromfield, John de], made abbot of Bury by the pope (Urban VI.), III. 347; celebrates mass with his adherents, *ib.*; is summoned before the chancellor, and imprisoned, *ib.*

————, Roger de, execution of, III. 196.

Brotmayl, consul of Legecestria, II. 369.

Bruce, Edward le, father of Robert Bruce, the competitor, III. 150.

———, Edward le, brother of Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, is killed in Ireland, III. 194.

———, Nigel de, brother of the king, taken prisoner, and sent to Berwick, III. 189; is drawn, hanged, and quartered, 190.

———, Robert le, lord of Annandale (*Vallis Anandiæ*, *Wale Danand*), an adherent of Henry III., III. 123; is taken prisoner at the battle of Lewes, 128; a competitor for the crown of Scotland, 150, 151.

———, Robert le, son of foregoing, joins the crusade, III. 136.

Bruce, Robert le, son of the foregoing, murders John Comyn at Dunfermline, III. 188 ; is crowned at Scone, *ib.*, 189 ; is defeated by the English under Aymer de Valence, 189 ; escapes to the island of Cantyre, *ib.* ; wife of, taken prisoner to Berwick, *ib.* ; and sent to England by the king, 190; returns to Cantyre, besieges Henry de Percy, but is compelled to raise the siege, *ib.* ; daughter of, placed in a nunnery by Edward I., *ib.*; in concealment, 191 ; defeats Aymer de Valence, 192; besieges the earl of Gloucester in Ayr, *ib.*; raises the siege, and escapes to the marshes, *ib.* ; is crowned a second time, 193.

Bruer, la, Cistercian house of, founded, III. 74.

——, William de la, justiciary of king John, sent by him to accompany Stephen Langton to England, III. 96.

Brukeburgh (or Brokenbern), I. 225.

Brunanburgh, battle of, II. 166.

Bruniggus, the Saxon, killed at Cambla, II. 363.

Brute (*Bruto, Brutus*), brother of (Silvius), Posthumus, prophecy of magician with respect to, fulfilled, II. 205 ; kills his mother and father, *ib.* ; is expelled from Italy, *ib.* ; arrives at the islands of the Tyrrhenian Sea, *ib.* ; is expelled on account of the murder of Turnus by Æneas, 206 ; arrives in Gaul, and founds the city of Tours, *ib.* ; is expelled from Italy, and arrives in Greece, *ib.* ; finds the descendants of the Trojans in slavery under king Pandrasus, *ib.* ; becomes secretary to Pandrasus, *ib.* ; the Trojans appeal to, *ib.* ; removes from the court with the Trojans, 207 ; threat of Pandrasus to exterminate them and, *ib.* ; begs to be suffered to depart with them, *ib.* ; is refused, *ib.* ; is attacked by Pandrasus, and defeats and captures him, *ib.* consults with his followers as to his fate, *ib.*, 208 ; decides to follow the advice of Mempricius, 208 ; is given Inogwen, daughter of Pandrasus, in marriage,

Brute (*Bruto, Brutus*)—*cont.*
209 ; receives a present of a fleet from him, *ib.* ; departs, and reaches Loegria, *ib.* ; sends an exploring party forward, 210 ; proceeds with Gerion, the augur, to the Temple of Diana, and consults her as to the land he is to inhabit, *ib.* ; reply of Diana to, 211 ; goes in search of the desert island indicated by her, *ib.* ; reaches Africa, *ib.* ; is attacked by pirates, *ib.* ; sails for the columns of Hercules, *ib.* ; sees the Syrens, *ib.* ; reaches the Tyrrhenian Sea, *ib.* ; discovers some descendants of the Trojans under Corinæus, *ib.*, 212 ; is joined by them, 212 ; reaches Aquitania, and anchors at the mouth of the Loire, *ib.* ; messengers sent to, by Goffar, meet Corinæus, and attack him, *ib.* ; Goffar collects an army to revenge the death of Imbertus on, *ib.* ; meets and defeats him, with the aid of Corinæus, 213, 214, 215 ; sails for the unknown island, and lands on the "littus Totenesium," 215 ; son of Silvius, son of Ascanius, comes to Great Britain, I. 44 ; drives the giants in Albion to the caves, II. 216 ; calls it "Brutannia," *ib.* ; portion of, given by, to Corinæus, called by him "Corinæa," and afterwards "Cornuagallie," *ib.* ; attacked by Gogmagog, 218 ; orders him to be reserved for Corinæus, *ib.* ; builds the city of Nova Troja, or Trinovantum, 219 ; three sons of, by Inogwen : Locrinus, Albanactus, and Kamber, 220 ; makes laws, *ib.* ; gives Albania to Albanactus, and Kambria to Kamber, *ib.* ; dies, and is buried in Nova Troja, *ib.*

Brutus, conquers Spain, I. 62.

Brutus Viride-Scutum, reigns in Britain, I. 47 ; remains in Britain, with Ebrancus, II. 226 ; succeeds him, *ib.*

Buch, the Captal (*capitaneus*) de, ravages the neighbourhood of Vierzon, III. 218 ; an esquire of [Raymon de Zedulach], killed at the assault on the donjon of the castle of Romorentin, 220.

Buchan [John Comyn], earl of, sent into England by Edward I., III. 163.

Buchan [Isabella], countess of, secretly leaves her husband and proceeds to Scone, to place the crown on the head of Robert Bruce, III. 189 ; is taken prisoner, and confined in a wooden cage on the wall of Berwick, *ib.*

Buckingham, Thomas, 4th earl of. *See* Gloucester.

Buckinghamshire (*Bockynghamschire*), II. 152.

Buern, butsecarl, wife of, forced by Osberht of Northumbria, III. 3 ; seeks aid of Godrik (Guthorm), king of Denmark, *ib.*

Buerna, dux of Deira, killed at Chippenham, III. 7.

Bulgarians, the, waste the Roman territory, I. 359 ; peace made with, 360.

Burdinus, antipope, expelled, I. 269 ; elected by Henry V., 385 ; imprisoned, *ib.*

Burgh (? Peterborough), abbey of, founded by Edgar, III. 21 ; church of, *ib.*

Burgh, Hubert de, made custos and justiciary of England, III. 115 ; dispute between the king and the barons relative to the suspension of, 116, 117.

Burghersh (*Borowasch*), Bartholomew de, takes two fortified towns in Perigort, III. 215 ; constructs a hurdle at the siege of Romorentin, 220.

Burgundy, a part of Gallia Senonensis, II. 87 ; called from Bourg (*Burgæ*), *ib.* ; or from "burgus," 123 ; account of, 87 ; inhabitants of, near the Alps, suffer from goître, *ib*, 123 ; rupture of a mountain in, I. 389.

————, Gerard, count of, translates the body of S. Mary Magdalene, I. 234.

————, Charles, duke of. *See* Charles, Maximilian.

———— [John Sans Peur], duke of, confesses that the duke of Orleans was put to death at his instigation, III. 410 ; is excluded from the royal council, *ib.* ; goes to Flanders and Almain, and assembles a large army, *ib.* ; asks aid of Henry IV., *ib.* ; is refused, *ib.* ; summoned by the king of France, *ib.* ; declines to appear before him unless the murder is approved of, *ib.* ; threatens

Burgundy—*cont.*

the councillors of the king with death, *ib.* ; returns to France with a large army, 413 ; the king retires from Paris before, *ib.* ; is received joyfully by the Parisians, *ib.* ; constructs and arms a wooden tower for the siege of Calais, in S. Omer, 417 ; expedition of [Charles] duke of Orleans against, 418 ; aided by the king of France and the dauphin, assembles an army of men of North France, Flanders, Almain, and Scotland, *ib.*, 419 ; sends for aid to Henry IV., 419 ; promises his daughter in marriage to the Prince of Wales, *ib.* ; the earls of Arundel and Kyme sent to, *ib.* ; defeats the duke of Orleans at S. Cloud (*Seynclo*), *ib.* ; makes presents to the English on their return, *ib.* ; reconciliation of with duke of Orleans reported to dukes of Clarence and York before their arrival in France, 419 ; to duke of Clarence on his arrival, 420 ; murder of, I. 289.

————, Philip the Hardy, duke of. *See* Philip.

————, Philip, duke of. *See* Maximilian.

Burley, Simon de, constable of Dover Castle, III. 358, 359 ; knight of the garter, taken and beheaded at the Tower of London, 366.

Burnham, nunnery of, founded by Henry III., III. 138.

Bury, [John de Tymworth], elected abbot of, by the monks, III. 347. *See* Bromfield, John de.

——, the prior of, the king's justiciar, put to death by the insurgents under Wat the Tyler, III. 354.

Byzacena (in Africa), called from two towns, Adrumetum, II. 42, 57 ; and Byzacum, 47 ; description of, 42, 47.

Byzantium founded, I. 308.

C.

Cacada, the earliest name of Carthage, II. 48.

Cadmus, the inventor of letters, according to S. Augustine, I. 40.

Cador, dux of Cornubia, defeats the Saxons under Baldulphus, II. 309 ; sent by Arthur to pursue the Saxons after Caer-Badon, 314 ; seizes their ships, *ib.* ; follows them to the Isle of Thanet and puts Cheldricus to death, *ib.* ; joins Arthur at Alcluyd, 315 ; king of Cornubia, goes to Caerleon, 325 ; speech of, 331 ; sent with Roman prisoners to Paris, 345 ; attacked by the Romans, 346 ; rescued by Guichardus, *ib.* ; commands a wing of the army of king Arthur against the Romans, 348.

——— of Limenic, killed at Cambla, II. 363.

Cadorus, dux of Cornubia, sent to Constantine to obtain leave to elect a king of Britain, II. 269 ; returns in eleven days from Rome to Trinovantum, *ib.*

Cadwallader, son of Cadwallo, king of Britain, called Diedwalda (Caedwalla of Wessex) by Beda, II. 379 ; son of a sister of Penda, 380; goes to Armorica, *ib.* ; is received by Alanus, king of Armorica, *ib.* ; seeks aid of him to expel the Saxons out of Britain, *ib.* ; is warned by an angelic voice to desist and to go to Rome, *ib.* ; consults Alanus, *ib.* ; commits the government of Britain to Yuor and Ini, 383 ; goes to Rome and is received by pope Sergius, *ib.* ; dies there, *ib.*; angelic message to, relative to return of Arthur and expulsion of Saxons, 385. *See* Alanus, Britons, Saxons.

Cadwallo, king of the Venedoti (or Norgwalenses), goes to Caerleon, II. 325.

———, son of Cadwan, birth of, II. 371 ; sent to Salomon, king of Armorica, *ib.* ; gives permission to Edwin of Northumbria to wear the crown, *ib.*; revokes it, *ib.*; his threat against Edwin, *ib.* ; defeated by Edwin, escapes to Ireland, *ib.* ; return of, to Britain prevented, *ib.* ; goes to Armorica, *ib.* ; reply of, to Salomon, 373 ; invades Britain, 375 ; defeats Penda of Mercia, and with his aid defeats Edwin at Hatfield Moor, *ib.* ; massacres the Saxons, *ib.* ; defeats Osric of Deira, *ib.* ; Eadan, king of Scots, *ib.* ; attacks S. Oswald of Northumbria, 376 ; sends Penda to fight with him, *ib.* ; defeats him at Burn, *ib.* ; king of Kent, kills him, III. 2 ; permits Wlfred, son of Penda, to succeed him, II. 377 ; makes peace between him and Oswy of Bernicia, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.* ; body of, embalmed, enclosed in a statue, and placed on a gate of London, *ib.* ; the church of S. Martin built under it, 378.

Cadwanus, duke of the Venedoti, defeats Aethelfrith of Northumbria before Bangor, II. 370 ; elected king at Legecestria by the British chiefs, *ib.* ; pursues Aethelfrith beyond the Humber, *ib.* ; peace made between, and Aethelfrith, *ib.*, 371 ; receives the wife of Aethelfrith, 371 ; wife of, gives birth to Cadwallo, *ib.*

Caedwalla, of Wessex, II. 161.

Caerbadoun, ancient name of Bath, II., 148.

Caerbrank, the ancient name of York, II. 148.

Caercerci, ancient name of Cirencester, II. 148.

Caerdorun, ancient name of Dorchester, II. 148.

Caerglau, ancient name of Gloucester, II. 148.

Caergorangon, the ancient name of Worcester, II. 148.

Caergrant, ancient name of Cambridge, II. 148.

Caerirthei, ancient name of Chichester, II. 148.

Caerken, the ancient name of Canterbury, II. 148.

Caerleon, the "goldclif," near, II. 136, 137.

Caerleon-upon-Usk ; Caerlegion, ancient name of, II. 148 ; or Cairusch, situated at the mouth of the Usk, near Glamorgan, 151, 325 ; founded by Belinus, 151 ; long the metropolis of S. Wales, *to.* ; walled by the Romans, *ib.* ; legates of the Romans met king Arthur there, *ib.*

———————, archbishop of, created by SS. Fuganus and Damianus, II. 172 ; all Cambria subject to, *ib.* ; see removed

Caerleon-upon-Usk—*cont.*
from, to Menevia by king Arthur, 173. *See* David, Dubritius.
Caerleyl, ancient name of Lugubalia (Carlisle), II. 148.
Caerlirioirn, ancient name of Leicester, II. 148.
Caerlud, ancient name of London, II. 148.
Caerludcoyt, ancient name of Lincoln, II. 148.
Caermerthyn, ancient name of Urbs Merlini, II. 148.
Caerpaladur, ancient name of Shafton or Shaftesbury, II. 148, 149.
Caerperis, ancient name of Porchester, II. 148.
Caersegent, ancient name of Silecestre, not far from Reading, now a ruin, II. 148.
Caerwent, ancient name of Winchester, II. 148.
Cæsarea, massacre of Christians of, by the Jews and Saracens, I. 352.
————, Council of, III. 257.
Cain and Calmana, twins, birth of, I. 20.
Cainan, son of Enos, birth of, I. 22 ; death of, *ib.*
Caircestria, II. 326.
Cairo, the metropolis of Egypt, II. 28.
Caius, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 185, 186 ; martyrdom of, 185, 335 ; III. 262, 263.
Calais, siege of, by Edward III., III. 211 ; surrender of, 212 ; garrison of, pay of, in arrear, 411; seizes the wool of the merchants of, *ib.* ; merchants of, complain to Henry IV., *ib.* ; he asks a loan of them, *ib.* ; excuse themselves, *ib.* ; the king declares he will have money from them, *ib.* ; grant money to him, to be secured by the chancellor, the archbishop of Canterbury, and the duke of York, *ib.* ; wooden tower constructed by [John] duke of Burgundy for siege of, 417 ; inhabitants of S. Omer bribed by the men of, burn it, 418. *See* S. Omer.
Caligula, reign of, I. 316.
————, succeeds Tiberius, III. 249.
Calistus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 179 ; martyrdom of, *ib.* ; III. 259.
———— II., pope, I. 268, 269 ; III. 297.
Calistus, III., pope, I. 291.
Calvary, taken into Jerusalem by the wall of Adrian, I. 323.
Cambridgeshire (*Cantebrigeschire*), II. 152.
Cambyses, son of Cyrus (called Assuerus by Ezra the prophet), succeeds him, I. 56 ; slays Arphaxat, king of the Medes, *ib.* ; called Nabugodnosor in the book of Judith, *ib.* ; sends Holofernes into Israel, *ib* ; lays waste Egypt, *ib.* ; dies in Damascus, *ib.* ; his treatment of an unjust judge, *ib.*
Camont (a mistake), lord, the people of, take some of the men of the sires de Craon and Boucicault, III. 219.
Campania, a province of Italy, II. 89 ; chief town of Capua, *ib.* ; other cities of Naples and Puteoli, 90.
Cana, miracle at, opinions as to relative dates of and public preaching of our Lord and calling of disciples, I. 76.
Canaan, a region in Syria, occupied by the sons of Canaan, son of Ham, after the Deluge, II. 34; seven of the ten nations descending from them destroyed by the children of Israel, *ib.*
Candulus, bishop of Parma, attempts to invade the papacy, I. 264 ; is condemned by the council of Mantua, *ib.*
Canopia, II. 28.
Cantabria, a province of Spain, II. 89.
Canterbury, archiepiscopal see of, removed from London to, by S. Augustine, II. 172 ; removed from, to Lichfield by Offa of Mercia, *ib.* ; restored to, by Coenuulf of Mercia, *ib.*, 173 ; number of bishops subject to, in England and Wales, *ib.* *See* Province of.
————, Anselm, archbishop of. *See* Anselm.
————, Augustine, archbishop of. *See* Augustine.
————, Baldwin, archbishop of, consecrated, III. 75; anoints Richard I. king, 81 ; goes to the Holy Land with him, *ib.* ; dies on the journey, *ib.*, 300.
———— ————, Boniface, archbishop of. *See* Boniface.
———— ————, Dunstan, archbishop of. *See* Dunstan.

Canterbury, Edmund, archbishop of. *See* Edmund.
———, John, archbishop of. *See* Peckham.
———, Justus, archbishop of. *See* Justus.
———, Lanfranc, archbishop of. *See* Sanfranc.
———, Laurentius, archbishop of. *See* Laurentius.
———, Mellitus, archbishop of. *See* Mellitus.
———, Richard, archbishop of. *See* Richard.
———, Robert, archbishop of. *See* Robert.
———, Roger, archbishop of. *See* Walden.
———, Simon, archbishop of. *See* Islip, Langham.
———, Stephen, archbishop of. *See* Langton.
———, Stigand, archbishop of. *See* Stigand.
———, Theobald, archbishop of crowns Henry II., III. 68; death of, 70 74.
———, Theodorus, archbishop of, I. 221 ; first exercises archiepiscopal power over the whole of Britain, *ib.* ; dies, 230.
———, [Thomas de Arundel], archbishop of. *See* Arundel.
———, Thomas, S., archbishop of. *See* Beket, Thomas.
———, William Corbois, archbishop of. *See* William.
———, William Courtenay, archbishop of. *See* Courtenay.
———, William Witlesey, archbishop of. *See* Witlesey.
———, a burgess of, killed by the insurgents under Wat the Tyler, III. 354; charters, &c., burned by them in, *ib.*
———, city of, founded by Rudhudibras, son of Leil, II. 149 ; called Kaerken, *ib.* 148 ; then by the Angli Dorobornia, 149 ; nearly burned by accident, III. 70 ; nearly burned, 80.
Canterbury, (*Dorobernia*), entered by S. Augustine and his followers, II. 368 ; the metropolitan see established there by Aethelbert, *ib.* ; monastery outside walls of, founded by Aethelbert, and endowed by Ealdbad, *ib.*
———, fair of, to be held in the principal street, III. 346; removed within the priory, *ib.*
———, monasteries of S. Augustine's and Christ Church, foundation of, III. 328.
———, monastery of [ChristChurch?] prior of, proceeds to the Council [of Pisa], III. 414.
Canterbury, monks of, refuse to leave the Isle of Thanet, III. 358.
———, province of, sees subject to, in England, II. 179, 180 ; in Wales : Llandaff, S. David's, Bangor, and S. Asaph, 180 ; primate of, primate of "all England," 181 ; relation between, and primate of York defined before William the Conqueror, and amicably settled under Edward III., *ib.*
Cantilupe, Peter de, a monk and supporter of Stephen Langton, banished by king John, III. 94.
Cantred (*Tancreda*), a measure of surface, II. 144 ; derivation of, *ib.*
Caph, king of Britain, II. 248.
Capitol at Rome, partly burnt, I. 179, 305.
Capua, in Campania, founded by Silvius Capys, I. 304.
Capoir, king of Britain, II. 248.
Cappadocia, a province of Asia Major, II. 33 ; situation of, *ib.*, 53 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; river Halys (Albis) runs through, 33 ; city of Mozeta in, *ib.*
Caracalla and Geta, reign of, I. 328.
Carausius, low origin of, II. 265 ; obtains permission from the Roman senate to defend the British sea coast, *ib.* ; seizes on the supreme power, *ib.* ; is murdered by Allectus, *ib.*
Carchemish (?), king of Assyria, lamentation of, for Josiah, I. 53.

Cardiff, siege and destruction of, by Owen Glyndwr, III. 401.
Caria, divided by the river Hermus from Phrygia, II. 37.
Carinthi (*Corinthi*, MSS.), the, Sclavians II. 62. *See* Sclavia.
Carinthia (*Korinthia*), a small province of Germany, II. 101; boundaries of: Hungary (*Pannonia*), Italy, the Danube, and Dalmatia, *ib.*, 102 ; inhabitants of, suffer from goître, 102 ; animals of, *ib.*
——— (*Corinthia*), in Major Sclavia, II. 62, perhaps identical with former.
Carlisle, II. 9 ; founded by Leir, II. 151 ; part of Roman Wall in, *ib.*
———, bishop of. *See* Merks.
Carlisle, county of (*Cairleylschire*), contains all the county of Cumberland, II. 153. *See* Preface, vol. ii.
———, see of, created by Henry I., II. 179.
———, a vein of silver found at, III. 64.
Carloman, son of Charles Martel, becomes a monk, I. 364 ; II. 122.
Carmania, II. 51.
Carmelite, a, accuses the duke of Lancaster of treason, III. 349; fails in the proof, and is drawn and hanged at Sarum, and buried in the cemetery of S. Martin there, 350.
Carmentis, mother of Latinus, invents Latin letters, I. 42.
Carpathos, island of, II. 117 ; site of, *ib.*
Carta de Foresta confirmed by Henry III., III. 120.
Carthage founded. *See* Dido.
Carthago in Spain (Carthagena and Franca), founded by Dido, II. 48 ; destroyed by Scipio, *ib.*, 49 ; rebuilt by the Romans, *ib.*
——— in Africa, situation of, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; description of, *ib.*
Carthusians, order of, founded, I. 266 ; by Bruno, of Cologne, 268 ; commenced about the same time as the Cistercian, III. 55 ; first entry of, into their habitations, 75.
Carucius, II. 336 ; commands an ambush against the Britons conveying Roman prisoners to Paris, 346.
Carus, Carinus, and Numerianus, reign of, I. 334.
Cassander, the son of, reigns in Macedonia, I. 62.
Cassibalan, son of Ely, II. 248 ; succeeds his brother Lude, 249 ; refuses to pay tribute to Julius Cæsar, 250 ; prepares to resist the second invasion of Cæsar, 251 ; drives piles into the bed of the Thames, 252 ; defeats the Romans, *ib.* ; celebrates his victory, *ib.*, 253 ; wastes the territory of Androgeus, 253 ; raises the siege of Trinovantum and meets Cæsar near Dorobornia, 254 ; is defeated and sends Androgeus to make peace, 255 ; becomes tributary to Cæsar, 256 ; dies and is buried at York, *ib.*
Cassibalianus, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Cassiodorus, I. 3 ; fl., 351 ; mentions a Socrates in the Hist. Trip., 423.
Cassidæi, a name of the Chaldæans, II. 21.
Castile [Alfonso], king of, elected emperor, I. 279.
Cathaphrygæ or Montanists, heresy of, arises, I. 176 ; the, III. 256.
Catellus, king of Britain, II. 247.
Catullus (or Catellus) Quintus, II. 336 ; commands an ambush against the Britons conveying Roman prisoners to Paris, 346 ; is killed, 347.
Catericus, defeat of Britons under. *See* Britain.
Cathelich, church of, III. 21.
Catigern (*Katigern*, *Catigernus*), son of Vortimer, II. 277.
Catinus, city of, in Sicily, foundation of, I. 52.
Cato Polyhistor, flourishes, I. 64.
Cato the Stoic flourishes, I. 63.
Ceawlin (*Edaulinus*) of Wessex, II. 161 ; expelled by the Britons and Angles, *ib.*
Cecilia, abbess of Caen, daughter of William the Conqueror and queen Matilda, III. 41 ; dies unmarried, 42.
———, S., mart., III. 259.
Cedar, derivation of name, II. 51, 54 ; inhabited by the Ishmaelites, 27. *See* Saracens.

Cedda, bishop of [Essex]. *See* Sigiberht I. of Essex.

Cedonius, S., a blind man restored to sight by Jesus, accompanies the disciples at dispersion, I. 155.

Celtiberia, a province of Spain, II. 89. *See* Spain.

Cene, a region of the Idumæan princes, II. 54.

Cenelm, of Mercia, II. 164 ; is martyred, *ib.* ; and buried at Winchcomb, *ib.*

Centaurs, origin of fable of, according to Isidorus, II. 67.

Centwine (*Centon*), of Wessex, II. 161.

Ceolraed, of Mercia, II. 163.

Cerdic, arrives in Britain, II. 160 ; obtains the supremacy of Wessex, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.*

Chalcedon, Council of, condemns Eutichus and Dioscorus, I. 348.

———, Third Council of. *See* S. Leo. I.

Chaldæa, or Cassidæa, from Caseth, son of Nahor, II. 21 ; situated near the Euphrates, *ib.* ; plain of Durath in, where the Tower of Babel was built, *ib.*

Chalus-Chabrol (*Caluca*), castle of, near Limoges, besieged by Richard I., III. 84 ; surrendered, *ib.*

Chamberlain, Robert. *See* Boston.

Champagne (*Campania*), in Gallia Senonensis, II. 90 ; Troyes (*Civitas Tretensis*), chief town of, *ib.*

Chandos, John de, assists De Montfort at the battle of Auray, III. 236. *See* Gris-Motoun.

Charlemagne, son of Pepin, I. 136 ; II. 122 ; besieges the Lombards in Papia, I. 236 ; restores to the Roman see the donations of Pepin, *ib.* ; is crowned, I. 365 ; succeeds, III. 284 ; goes to Rome, 285 ; besieges Papia and Desiderius, king of the Lombards, I. 367, *ib.* ; spear of, sent by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, III. 12 ; identical with that which the centurion thrust into the side of our Lord, *ib.*; made advocate of S. Peter, II. 122 ; emperor of the West, I. 367, 368, 369 ; II. 122 ; his character and habits, I. 368 ; goes to the Holy Land, *ib.* ; accepts a part of the crown of thorns, a nail of the cross, a part of the cross, the napkin, the chemise of the blessed Virgin, the arm of S. Simon from the emperor of the East, and brings them to Aix-la-Chapelle to the Basilica of the Virgin, 369 ; portents preceding death of, *ib.*; death of, 370; III. 286. *See* Adrian I., Leo III.

Charlemagne, son of Pepin.—*cont.*

Charles, duke of Burgundy, defeats the French, I. 293 ; his epitaph, *ib.*

Charles Martel, son of Pepin le Bref, king of the Franks, II. 122 ; ob. III. 283 ; seen by S. Eucherius in hell, *ib.* ; why, *ib.* ; relieves Rome from the Lombards, I. 233 ; succeeds Pepin, 363 ; defeats the barbarians, *ib.* ; his damnation certified to by S. Eleutherius, 364.

——— the Bald, reign of, I. 372.

——— le Gros or the Less, son of Louis II., demoniacal possession of, I. 372 ; reign of, 372, 373 ; concessions to the Normans by, 373.

——— V., king of France, seizes on Ponthieu, and takes Abbeville, III. 334; acknowledges Clement VII. 341.

——— VI., king of France, makes a treaty with the duke of Britanny, III. 351 ; advances against the bishop of Norwich, and drives him out of Flanders, 357; assembles a fleet at Sluys for the invasion of England, 398 ; relinquishes the attempt, 359; parliament summoned at London to ordain remedy against, *ib.*; alarm of, at the murder of [Louis] duke of Orleans, 410 ; and council of, inquire into the murder, *ib.* ; retires from Paris on the return of the duke of Burgundy into France, 413 ; celebrates the election of Alexander V. by processions, 415 ; a papal nuncio sent to, to treat on peace between, and England, 417 ; and the dauphin assist the duke of Burgundy against [Charles] duke of Orleans, 419 ; and the dauphin and the duke make presents to the English on their return after the defeat of the duke of Orleans at S. Cloud, *ib.*

[Charles VII.], when dauphin, assists [John Sans Peur], duke of Burgundy, III. 419 ; makes presents to the English after the defeat of the duke of Orleans at S. Cloud, *ib.*

Charles (de Pace), of Durazzo, king of Naples, III. 347.

———, king of Naples. *See* Ladislas.

Charles [of Anjou], king of Sicily, excommunicated, I. 391 ; defeats Conradin, nephew of the emperor Frederic II., and his allies, 392 ; receives his kingdom from pope Urban [IV.], *ib.*

Chastellayn, Richard, an eye-witness of the earthquake in Rhodes in A.D. 1364, relates it to a "commonachus" of Malmesbury, III. 237.

Chelricus, duke of the Saxons, killed, II. 363. *See* Mordred.

Cheneus, II. 326.

Cheni, William, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.

Cherdhole, marvellous cavity in earth at, II. 141.

Cherltoun, John de, knight, surrenders to Edward II., III. 197.

Cheryn, king of Britain, II. 247.

Chester, II. 143.

———, county of (*Chesterschire*), II. 153.

———, monk of, disregards the authority of the ancients, II. 130 ; opinion of, as to the expulsion of snakes from Ireland, *ib.* ; opposes Beda, and attacks William of Malmesbury as a dreamer, 131 ; probable reason of this, *ib.*

———, see of, contains Chester, Coventry, Lichfield, Stafford, Derby, half of Warwick, part of Salop, half of Lancashire up to the Ribel, II. 180.

———————, transference of, to Coventry, III. 54, 55.

———, Hugh, 2nd earl of, repulses Magnus [III.], III. 51.

———, John, earl of. *See* Scot.

———, Ralph, 7th earl of. *See* Ralph.

———, the men of, join the duke of Ireland, III. 365 ; conduct of, at Radcot Bridge, *ib.*

Chesterfield, battle of, I. 282 ; III. 394.

Chester-le-Street, Aldwine (*Edmundus*), bishop of, removes the see of, to Durham, II. 179.

Chetura, also called Hagar, wife of Abraham, I. 34.

Cheyny, John, knight, sentenced to perpetual imprisonment III. 376.

Chichester, see of, contains Sussex and Isle of Wight, II. 174, 180 ; temp. Theodore, archbishop (of Canterbury), bishop of, was situated at Selesey, 174 ; bishops of, from Solfrid to Stigand, *ib.* ; see of, changed from Selsey to, *ib.*

————, Richard, bishop of. *See* Richard.

————, Thomas, bishop of, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, III. 363 ; banished, 366.

Childebert I., king of the Franks, succeeds Clovis I., II. 121 ; holds the kingdom with his sons, (brothers,) Theodoric I., Clodomir, and Clothaire, *ib.*

———— III., son of Theodoric III., *ib.*

Childeric I., king of France, expelled his kingdom, I. 350 ; the father of Clovis, *ib.*

Childericus, expected with reinforcements from Germany, II. 309 ; arrival of fleet under, in Albania, 310 ; flight of, at Caerbadon, 314.

Chilperic (*Cheldricus*) I., son of Clothaire I., king of the Franks, II. 121 ; holds the kingdom with his brothers, Caribert I., Gundian, and Sigisbert I., *ib.*

———— II. (Daniel), II. 121.

———— III., reigns in France, I. 364 ; II. 121 ; imprisoned by Pepin le Bref, I. 364 ; deposition of, II. 121.

Chinmarchus of Trigeria, killed, II. 355.

Chion, island of, why so called, II. 118.

Chippenham, battle of, between Aelfred the Great and the Danes, III. 7, 8.

Christ, date of conception of, I. 65 ; date of nativity of, *ib.*, 314 ; II. 257 ; III. 247 ; born on the same day of the week as Adam sinned, I. 66, 160 ; explanation of a difficulty, *ib.*, 161 ; born at Bethlehem, 67 ; particulars of nativity, *ib.*, 69 ; legends of, 67, 68, 71, 72 ; miracles

Christ—*cont.*
at, II. 257 ; Temple of Peace at Rome falls at, *ib.* ; oracle respecting it, *ib.* ; circumcision of, I. 67, 72 ; adoration of, 67, 72 ; presentation in the temple of, 67 ; taken into Egypt, *ib.* ; returns, II. 248 ; disputation in Temple, I. 73 ; II. 248 ; baptism of, I. 73 ; II. 249 ; opinions as to date of baptism of, I. 77 ; performs miracle at Cana, 73; length of ministry of, according to S. John Chrysostom, 74; temptation of, *ib.*, 75 ; ejects buyers and sellers from the Temple, *ib.* ; calls the apostles SS. Peter, Andrew, James, and John thrice, 75, 76 ; performs miracle of loaves and fishes, *ib.* ; passion of, 80, 81 ; date of crucifixion of, according to Cassiodorus, 80 ; according to Dionysius, II. 249 ; phenomena after, I. 80, 81 ; appears to S. James the Less, on the day of the resurrection, 143 ; appearances of, after resurrection, 153, 154.
Christina, S., martyred, III. 263.
————, the nun, daughter of Edward, son of Edmund Ironside, III. 29.
Christopher, pope, I. 248 ; is ejected, and becomes a monk, *ib.* ; III. 289.
Chronica Glastoniæ quoted, I. 157.
Chronicle, Kalendary, plan of, III. 245 ; meaning of word, *ib.*
Chryse and Argyre (*Crisse et Argire*), islands of, site of, II. 114; products of, 115.
Chrysostom, S. John, quoted as to length of ministry of our Lord, I. 74. ; fl., III. 270.
Ciborea, mother of Judas Iscariot, I. 83 ; marries Judas, 84.
Cilicia, named from Cilix or Cetus, II. 38, 54 ; boundaries of, 38 ; crossed by the Cydnus, *ib.*, ; Coritus in, *ib.* ; metropolis of Tarsus, *ib.*, 54.
Cinque Ports, men of the, defeated by the mariners of Normandy, III. 157 ; defeat them, *ib.*
Cirencester, II. 8.
———— —— (*Circestr'*), an esquire of, sends a servant to the court of Henry IV. at Windsor, to bring him an account of
Cirencester—*cont.*
the feats of arms, III. 385 ; plot of the earls of Huntingdon, Kent, and Salisbury disclosed to, by him, 386.
Cisillius, king of Britain, II. 233; son of, *ib.*
Cissancestre, a name of Chichester, II. 148.
Cistercians, first monastery of, founder, I. 267.
Cistercians, order of, commenced in England by one Hardyng, III. 55; and in Burgundy, *ib.* ; gift of Henry II. to, 80 ; subsidy exacted from, by king John, 97 ; members of, refuse to comply without the consent of a general chapter, *ib.* ; escape to foreign parts, *ib.*
Cithero (?), the poet, flourishes at Athens, temp. Serug, I. 31.
Cività Vecchia (*Urbs Vetus*), II. 111.
Clair, S., death of, I. 279.
Clairvaux, abbey of, founded by S. Bernard, I. 267.
Clare, Gilbert de, 6th earl of Gloucester, signs the barons' letter to Henry III., III. 125 ; commands the second division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, 127 ; demands the surrender of the king of Almain, and the prisoners taken by him from Simon de Montfort, 130 ; separates from him and joins the defeated nobles, *ib.* ; advances on Evesham, 132.
———, Thomas de, joins the Crusade, III. 136.
———, S., William de, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III, 161.
Clarence, Lionel, Thomas, dukes of. *See* Lionel, Thomas.
[Clarendon, Roger de, knight], natural brother of Richard II., and one of his household, tried at Westminster for a conspiracy against Henry IV., III. 392 ; confesses to have received letters declaring Richard II. to be alive, *ib.* ; hanged, 389.
Claremont, council of, I. 266.
Claudiocestria, II. 326.
Claudius Cæsar invades Britain, I. 77, 171, 316 ; II. 257 ; subdues the Orcades, &c., I. 171 ; II. 259 ; destroys Kaerperis

Claudius Cæsar—*cont.*
(now Porchester), 259; pursues Arviragus to Winchester (then Kaergwent), *ib.*; offers his daughter Gewisa in marriage to Arviragus if he will hold Britain of the Romans, *ib.*; names the city built on the site of the marriage of Arviragus and Gewisa Kaerglou, 260; son of Gloy, duke of Wallia, *ib.*; returns to Rome, *ib.*; reign of, I. 316, 317; short memory of, *ib.*, 317; expels the Jews from Rome, III. 250.

——— II., reign of, I. 333.

Clavering, John de, taken prisoner at Bannockburn, III. 195.

Clement, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 169, 170, 171; appointed his successor by S. Peter, 168; cedes the succession to SS. Lucius and Cletus, 169; account of the appointment, 170; is martyred, 169; discovery of body by S. Cyril, apostle of the Sclavi, *ib.*; carried to Rome, *ib.*; buried in the church of S. Clement, *ib.*; III. 253; translation of, 267. *See* S. Cyril, apostle of the Sclavi.

——— II., pope, III. 294; elected pope by the emperor Henry III., I. 260, 262.

——— III., pope, I. 275.

——— IV., pope, I. 281; excommunicates the Londoners and the men of the Cinque Ports, III. 139; ob. at Viterbo, 304.

——— VI. (archbishop of Rouen), pope, succeeds, I. 283; changes the jubilee, I. 284; III. 206, 308; ob. 309.

——— VII., pope, I. 286; election of, III. 341; acknowledged by France, Spain, and Scotland, *ib.*; sends a nuncio to Richard II., 346.

Cleopatra, I. 62.

Cletus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 169; opinion of some writers as to his dignity, 167; buried in the Vatican, 169; III. 252.

Cliçon, lord (Oliver) de, and others, rebel against John (de Montfort), duke of Brittany, III. 334.

Clifford, Richard, bishop of Worcester, celebrates at Cologne the marriage of Blanche, daughter of Henry IV., III. 403.

———, Robert de, sent with the English army against Robert Bruce, III. 189; killed at Bannockburn, 195.

———, Roger de, an adherent of Henry III., III. 123; joins the crusade, 136; captured by David, brother of Llewelyn, prince of Wales, in Hawarden Castle, 145. *See* Mortimer.

———, execution of, at York, 196.

Clinton, William de, created 11th earl of Huntingdon, III. 202.

Clocks, marking the twenty-four hours invented, III. 336.

Clothaire I., brother of Childebert I., king of the Franks, II. 121; marries S. Rhadegunda, *ib.*

——— II., son of Chilperic I. (*Cheldricus*), and father of Dagobert I. and Batilda, II. 121; orders queen Brunehilda to be executed, III. 278.

——— III., son of Clovis II., king of the Franks, II. 121.

Cloten, king of Cornwall, II. 234; son of Dunwallo, *ib.*; by mistake for Dunwallo, 235.

Clotenus, king of Britain, II. 248.

Cloud, S. (*Seynclo*), near Paris, defeat of [Charles] duke of Orleans at, by [John Sans Peur] duke of Burgundy and the English, under the earl of Arundel, III. 419.

Clovis I., king of the Franks, baptism of by S. Remigius, I. 202, 350; II. 121; expels the Goths, *ib.*

——— II., son of Dagobert, I. *ib.*

——— III., son of Theodoric, III. *ib.*

Cluny, monastery of, founded by William, duke of Aquitaine, I. 249; by William of Burgundy, 374, 422.

———, Hugh, abbot of, vision of, with reference to the death of William Rufus, III. 52.

Cnut (*Cnuto, Knude, Cnutus*), reign of, III. 26, 27, 28, 29, 30; accession of, II

Cnut (*Cnuto, Knude, Cnutus*)—*cont.*
193; divides England with Edmund Ironside, III. 26; reigns over the kingdom of the Mercians, *ib.*; punishes Eadric Streona, the murderer of Edmund, 27; treatment of the sons of Edmund, *ib.*; sends them to Denmark with Wlgar to be put to death, 28; founds two monasteries of S. Benedict, 29; rebuilds the monastery of S. Edmund, *ib.*; restores many others, *ib.*; builds churches on the sites of his battles, *ib.*; donations of, to Winchester, *ib.*; dies and is buried at Winchester, 30; sons of, *ib.*; invades England and is defeated by Edmund Ironside, whom he afterwards defeats, 27; peace made by Edmund, *ib.*; succeeds Edmund, 28; is king of Denmark, England, Norway, Scotland, and the Scilly Isles, *ib.*; marries Emma, widow of Aethelred II., and sister of Richard II., duke of Normandy, *ib.*; II. 193; children of, by, III. 28; goes to Rome, *ib.*; story of the sea and, *ib.*; death of, *ib.*, I. 259; III. 293; son of, by Alicia Hamptonensis, III. 28.

—— II., king of the Danes, killed, III. 44.

Coat, Holy, the, invention of, III. 69.

Cobham, John de, appointed one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues of Richard II., III. 360; sentenced to perpetual imprisonment, 376; recalled by Henry IV., 385.

Cocherel, battle of, III. 233, 234.

Coel founds Colchestre, or Kaercolin, II. 266; defeats Allectus, *ib.*; is crowned king, *ib.*; answer of, to the demand of the Romans for tribute, 267; gives his daughter Helena in marriage to Constantius, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Colchester, *ib.*

Cœlestinus I., S., bishop of Rome, pontificate of, I. 197, 198; III. 271; sends S. Palladius to Scotland, *ib.*; and S. Patrick to Ireland, *ib.*

———— II., pope, I. 271; III. 298.

———— III., pope, I. 275; crowns Henry VI. emperor, *ib.*

Cœlestinus IV., pope, I. 278.

———— V., pope, consecrated, I. 282; III. 306; ob., *ib.*

Cœlestius, the Pelagian, condemned by Innocent I., I. 196.

Cœnobius, S., bishop of Florence, I. 263.

Coenraed of Mercia, receives the kingdom from Aethilred, I. 230; goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, *ib.*; becomes a monk, 231; becomes a monk at Rome, II. 163; vision of, *ib.*

Coenuulf of Mercia, II. 164; restores the Church of Canterbury to its supremacy, *ib.*; defeats Egbert Pren, king of Kent, and restores him to liberty, and Winchecomb, in presence of Cuthred of Kent, *ib.*

Coil, king of Britain ("King Cole"), II. 263; peaceful reign of, *ib.*; dies and is buried at York, *ib.*

Coillus, king of Britain, II. 247.

Coinage, deteriorated by clipping, is renewed by Edward I., III. 145.

Colchester, abbot of, fined for treasonable words against Henry IV., III. 402.

————, monastery of, founded, III. 329

Colepepper, Thomas, execution of, at Winchelsea, III. 197.

Colgrinus commands an invasion of the Saxons, II. 308; Saxons under, reduce a great part of Britain, *ib.*; collects the Saxons, Scots, and Picts, and meets Arthur near the river Duglas, 309; is defeated by him and besieged in York, *ib.*; attempt of brother of (Baldulphus) to relieve him, *ib.*; stratagem of Baldulphus to gain an interview with, *ib.*; killed at Caerbadon, 314.

Collis Carbonum, II. 143.

Cologne, a great storm at, I. 244; situated to the west of Westphalia, II. 73.

————, Ralph, bishop of, translates the bodies of the three Magi from Milan, III. 86.

————, Robert of, III. 55.

Colubraria, island of, II. 119.

Columban, S., comes from Ireland to Burgundy, I. 360.

Columba, S., presbyter, comes from Scotland to preach to the English, III. 276 ; ob., 277 ; called also Kolumkill, *ib.*

———, murder of, I. 333.

Colvyle, one, feat of, before Cressy, III. 210.

Comet, a, called Veru (a spit), I. 286, 287.

———, I. 288.

———, I. 293 ; two positions of, and two directions of its tail, *ib.* ; a very hot summer, &c., follow, *ib.*

——— appears before the death of pope Urban (? Innocent IV.), I. 391.

———, I. 339.

———, visible in A.D. 1086, III. 45.

———, III. 51.

———, and two full moons, III. 64.

———, III. 297.

———, III. 302.

——— appears in the west, III. 389 ; tail of, points upwards, *ib.*

Commage, city of, II. 23, 52.

Commagena, province of Syria, boundaries of, II. 23, 52.

Commission appointed to receive and dispose of the Crown revenues of Richard II., III. 360 ; authorized by parliament to levy tallages, if needful, *ib.*

Commodus, reign of, I. 326.

Comyn, Edmund, of Kilbrid, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.

———, Eustace, father of John Comyn the competitor, III. 150.

———, John, an adherent of Henry III., III. 123 ; commands the Scots at the battle of Lewes, and is taken prisoner, 128 ; lord of Badenaugh, a competitor, 150, 151 ; sent into England by Edward I., 163 ; does homage and swears fealty at Westminster to Edward I. 165.

———, junior, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161 ; slain by Robert Bruce, 188.

———, earl of Buchan. *See* Buchan.

Conanus Meriadok, the daughter of, Octavius left in marriage to, II. 269 ; crowned king of Armorica by Maximus, 270 ; sends to Diamot, duke of Cornwall, for agriculturists, 271 ; and for wives for his people, *ib.*

Connaught, island of S. Brendan in, II. 128.

Conon, pope, I. 223, 224 ; III. 281.

Conrad I., king of Germany, reign of, I. 374.

——— II. (the Salique), reign of, I. 379, 380, 381. *See* Lupold, Count.

——— III., reign of, I. 386 ; commands second Crusade, *ib.*

——— IV., son of Frederic II., takes Naples, I. 391 ; death of, *ib.*

Conradin, nephew of the emperor Frederic II., attacks Charles, king of Sicily, in alliance with the Lombards, &c., I. 391 ; is defeated and beheaded, 392.

Constance, council of, I. 286, 288.

Constans (or Constantius), the senator, sent to Britain to demand tribute of king Coel, II. 267 ; marries Helena, the king's daughter, *ib.* ; takes Helena as a concubine, I. 337 ; is elected king and crowned at Trinovantum, II. 267 ; dies at York, I. 337 ; II. 267.

——— (*Constantius*), son of Constantine, II. 273 ; enters the monastery of S. Amphibalus in Winchester, 274 ; is crowned king by Vortigern, 275 ; is murdered by a Pict, *ib.*

——— II. (*Constantinus*), emperor, reign of, I. 358, 359 ; assassinated, I. 221 ; III. 280.

Constantia, daughter of William the Conqueror and queen Matilda, III. 41, 42 ; married to Alan Fergant, 42 ; poisoned by her subjects on account of her severity, *ib.*

Constantine, pope, I. 230, 231 ; obtains a renewal from Justinian of the privileges of the Roman church, 231 ; III. 282.

———, antipope, I. 235, 236 ; deposed and blinded, 236.

——— (the Great), birth of, I. 337 ; II. 257 ; defeats the emperor Maxentius, I. 337 ; II. 268 ; legend concerning the appearance of the cross to, I. 337 ; reign of, 338 ; baptized by pope Silvester, *ib.* ; said by some to have been re-

Constantine (the Great)—*cont.*
baptized by S. Eusebius, bishop of Nichomedia, *ib.*; his peculiar love of the clergy, 339; emends the Roman code, 59; life of, among the emperors, II. 268; leaves Octavianus (or Octavius) in Britain on going to Rome, *ib.*; obtains the monarchy of the whole world, *ib.*; takes with him to Rome the uncles of Helena, Leulinus, Trahern, and Marius, *ib.*; sends Trahern to Britain against Octavius, *ib.*; obtains the imperial power, 332, 333; III. 265; the sword of, given by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, 12.
———— III., son of Heraclius, I. 356.
———— (Pogonatus), reign of, I. 359, 360.
———— IV., reign of, I. 363, 364.
———— V. and Irene, reign of, I. 365, 366.
————, brother of Aldred, king of Armorica, defeats Gwanus, II. 273; is crowned king of Britain at London by Gocelin, *ib.*; sons of, *ib.*; is murdered by a Pict, 274.
————, nephew of king Arthur, son of Cador, duke of Cornubia, succeeds king Arthur, II. 363; reign of, 364; insurrection of Saxons under the sons of Mordred against, *ib.*; defeats the Saxons and puts the sons of Mordred to death, *ib.*; killed by his nephew Conanus, *ib.*; buried at Stonehenge, *ib.*
Constantinople, ancient prophecy touching the impregnability of, I. 275, 276; III. 93; double sense of, *ib.*; taken, *ib.*; by the French and Venetians, I. 275, 276; by the Turks, 290; betrayed by a Genoese (?), *ib.*; besieged and taken by the Saracens, 362; legend of inscription discovered in, 366; empire of, passes from the Romans to the Franks, II. 122; second council of, I. 194; council of, under Justinian, I. 207; condemnation of Theodorus and his associates, *ib.*
Constantius and Galerius, reign of, I. 337; division of the Roman empire, *ib.*
Constantius II., reign of, I. 340, 341.
Consuls commence at Rome, I. 58; created at Rome, 309; cessation of, *ib.*
Coradin, son of Saphadin, takes Jerusalem, III. 114.
Corbacrus (or Gurbadruc, 244), king of Britain, II. 243; invades Denmark, *ib.*; meets with the fleet of the Basclenses among the Orkneys, *ib.*; grants them the island of Hibernia, 244; dies and is buried at Caerleon, *ib.*
Cordelia, daughter of Leir, reigns, I. 50; imprisoned by Morgannus and Cunedagius, *ib.*; marries Aganippus, king of the Franks, II. 228; receives Leyr with honour, 231; invades England with him, *ib.*; is crowned at Trinovantum, 232; loses her husband, *ib.*; is defeated by her nephews, Margannus and Cunedagius, *ib.*; dies in prison, *ib.*
Corff Castle, III. 23.
Corinæus, combat of, with Gogmagog, II. 218, 219; appeals to Locrinus in favour of his daughter Gwentolen, 222.
Corinth, in Achaia, account of, II. 66.
Cornelian and Cyprian, SS., mart., III. 262.
Cornelius (Nepos), quoted, I. 153.
————, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 182; III. 261; removes the bodies of SS. Peter and Paul from the catacombs, *ib.*; I. 167; buries that of S. Peter near the place of his crucifixion, *ib.*; beheaded, *ib.*
Cornhille, Falk de, a monk and supporter of Stephen Langton, banished by king John, III. 94.
Cornubia, king of, carries a golden sword before king Arthur, II. 327; reigning in Wessex (*Vestseax*), defeated by Offa. III. 2.
Corsica (*Korcisa in Asia*), account of, II. 91; island of, boundaries and dimensions of, 116.
Cos, the island of, account of, II. 90; site of, 115; Hippocrates born in, *ib.*
Cosmas and Damianus, SS., martyrdom of, I. 188; III. 264; pilgrimage to bodies of, at Bourg Dieu, III, 218.

Cotha, a region of the Assyrians, II. 54, 55 ; first possessed by Canaan, son of Ham, 55.

Cotta, Quintus, II. 336.

Council, Great, summoned by Edward III. to consider the right of Gregory XI. to command the levying of a subsidy against the Florentines, III. 337 ; proceedings of, *ib.*, 338, 339.

Courtenay, W[illiam], bishop of London, publishes a bull of Gregory XI. against the Florentines at Paul's Cross, III. 335; summoned before the chancellor, *ib.* ; obliged to revoke the publication, *ib.* ; account of the revocation by proxy of, *ib.*, 336 ; as archbishop of Canterbury, one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown-revenues of Richard II., 360 ; regulation made by, touching preachers, 367 ; death of, 371.

Coventry, toll on, remitted at the instance of Matilda, queen of William the Conqueror, I. 266.

————, Robert, bishop of, III. 54, 55.

————, William, bishop of, present at the coronation of Henry III., III. 113.

Crakowe, worn in A.D. 1361–2, description of, III. 231.

Creation, the, account of, I. 7–13 ; division of works of, 7 ; works of six days of, 7–9 ; different terminations assigned to, 13.

Crediton (*Cridinton*) [and Cornwall], see of, removed to Exeter, II. 174.

Crepynges, Walter de, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.

Crescentius, the consul, revolt of, I. 377 ; deposes pope Gregory (V.), *ib.* ; besieged in castle of S. Angelo, by Otho III., taken and beheaded, *ib.* *See* John XVI., John XVII., popes.

Cressingham, Hugh de, appointed treasurer of Scotland, III. 163.

Cressy, battle of, III. 210, 211, 309 ; list of killed on the French side, 210 ; panic of the French at, 211.

Crete, island of, site of, II. 115 ; also called Hecatompolis, *ib.* ; account of, *ib.*

Cretyng, Adam, III. 158.

Cross, Holy, the, description of, I. 90, 91 ; the inscription on, in Greek, 90 ; the invention of, by the empress Helena, 339; invention of, I. 190; III. 265; nails in the, legends concerning, I. 339 ; part of, removed to Paris under S. Louis, 357 ; portion of, sent by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, III. 13; left by him to (the abbey of) Malmesbury, *ib.* ; appearance of, 75 ; is taken by the Saracens, *ib.*, 76 ; and carried to Babylon, 76 ; taken, 79 ; taken by the Saracens, 300.

Crown of Thorns, the, brought into France, III. 119.

Croyland (*Crolandia*), church of, III. 21.

Crusade, the First, I. 267 ; progress of, *ib.*; I. 383, 384. *See* Acre, Blois, S. Giles, Godfrey, Jerusalem, &c.

————, the Second, I. 271, 386. *See* S. Bernard, Conrad III., Greeks.

————, the Third, I. 387 ; embraced by Henry II. and Louis VII., III. 300.

————, the Fourth, I. 392, 393 ; peace made with the infidels, 392 ; broken, *ib.*; death of papal legate accompanying, 393 ; dispersion of the Christians, *ib.*

Crucifixion, legend of Voice in Temple after, I. 81.

———— of a man at Abberbury, who had declared himself to be Jesus at the Council of Oxford, III. 138.

Cumberland given by Edmund to Malcolm, king of Scots, III. 11.

————, Picts of. *See* Picts.

Cunedagius, king of Britain, I. 50 ; divides Britain with Marganus, II. 232 ; defeats and kills him, 233 ; at Glamorgan, I. 50 ; sole monarch of Britain, II. 233 ; contemporary prophets and events, *ib.*

Curati, ordered to return home, III. 417 ; leave the court, the houses of the bishops, and other lords, and their mansions in London, *ib.*

Cursalis, from Caircestria, II. 326 ; commands under king Arthur against the Romans, 348 ; killed, 354.

Curse, against the serpent, why pronounced, I. 20.

Cuthbert, S., his vision, I. 215 ; bishop of Lindisfarne, *ib.* ; translation of, from Lindisfarne to Durham, with the see, III. 292.

Cuthred, king of Kent, reigns in name only, II. 369.

Cuza, son of Assur, I. 30.

Cyclades, the, islands of, II. 115 ; why so called, 116 ; number, site, extent, and boundaries of, *ib.*

Cyclops, the, I. 16.

Cyclos, island of, II. 117.

Cynewealh (*Kenwalkius*), king of Wessex, II. 161 ; founds Winchester cathedral, *ib.* ; munificence of, *ib.* ; gives a third of his kingdom to his nephew, *ib.*

Cynric, king of Wessex, II. 161.

Cyprian, S., bishop of Carthage, martyrdom of, I. 182, 332 ; fl., 332 ; translation of, to Lyons, 238 ; III. 285.

Cyprian and Justina, SS., mart., III. 263.

Cyprus, island of, called from the city of Cyprus, II. 78, 115 ; also called Paphos, *ib.* ; site of, 115 ; products of, 78 ; chief city of, Nichotia, *ib.* ; boundaries of, according to Orosius, *ib.* ; taken by Richard I., III. 82.

———, the king of, arrives in London with the king of Lithuania (*Lecto*) a captive, and the "dominus de Jerusalem," III. 233 ; comes to England and France for aid against the Saracens, 333 ; receives money and men from the kings of both, *ib.*

Cyril, bishop of Alexandria, fl., I. 346.

——, S., monk, apostle of the Sclavi, brings the body of S. Clement to Rome, I. 244, 245 ; buried by the side of S. Clement. *See* Clement.

Cyrus, king of Persia, his education and career, I. 55, 56 ; vigorous memory of 15.

Cythera, island of, also called Porphyris, II. 117.

D.

Daci, the, descendants of the Goths, II. 32, 59 ; anciently called Dagos, 59 ; account of, *ib.*

Dacia, in Europe, first inhabitants of, II. 59 ; situation of, *ib.* ; character of people of, *ib.* ; reduced by king Arthur, 321.

Dædalus, invents flying birds, I. 41, 42 ; constructs the Cretan labyrinth, 42.

Dagobert I. (king of the Franks), son of Clothaire II., II. 121.

——— II., son of Childebert II., *ib.*

Dalmatæ, the, Sclavians, II. 62. *See* Sclavia.

Dalmatia, a province of Greece, called from Delos, its chief city, II. 65 ; boundaries of, 66 ; character of people of, *ib.*

———, in Major Sclavia, II. 62 ; perhaps identical with preceding.

———, a boundary of Carinthia, 102.

Damasus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 193, 194 ; III, 268 ; his death, 194.

——— II., pope, I. 262 ; III. 294.

Damietta, taken by Pelagius, bishop of Alba, III. 114 ; geographical position of, *ib.* 115 ; anciently called Heliopolis (*Eliopoleos*), 115.

Danes, tribute paid by, to the British, from the time of Belinus to the arrival of Havelok, II. 238 ; under Hingwar and Hubba, invasion of England by, III. 4 ; land in East Anglia, *ib.* ; reach York, *ib.* ; ravage Northumbria, *ib.* ; proceed to Lincoln and Lindesey, and winter in Nottingham, *ib.* ; servants of, winter in Holand, *ib.* ; go to Thetford, 5 ; martyr S. Edmund of E. Anglia, *ib.* ; arrive at Reading, 6 ; fight the battle of Englefield with Aetheluulf, of Wessex, *ib.* ; defeat Aetheluulf, Aethelred, and Aelfred, *ib.* ; are defeated at the battle of Ashdune (Ellendoun), *ib.* ; are driven back to Englefield, *ib.* ; are defeated at Basing, *ib.* ; are victorious at Merton, *ib.* ; defeat Aelfred at Wilton, 7 ; make peace with him, *ib.* ; take Exeter, *ib.* ;

Danes—*cont.*
retire into Essex, *ib.*; defeat Aelfred at Chippenham, *ib.*, 8; are defeated by him at Ethandune, 8; pray for peace, *ib.*; Gordinus, king of, baptized, *ib.*; and the whole people of, *ib.*; are entertained at London, and return (to Denmark), 9; conquered by Edmund I., 14; invade England, 25; martyr S. Aelfeah, archbishop of Canterbury, 26.
Danes in Britain. *See* Britain; East Anglia, kingdom of.
Danius, king of Britain, II. 244.
Danube, the. *See* Alps.
Daniel, the prophet, interprets the vision of Nebuchadnezzar, I. 55; visions of, under Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, Darius, and Cyrus, *ib.*
———, S., bishop of Bangor, death of, II. 364.
Dardanus, son of Saturn, goes to Asia with his son Trous, I. 302; founds Troy, *ib.*
Dares Phrygius, his Historia Trojæ used by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.
Darius Hystaspes, king of the Persians, I. 55; his stratagem to secure the throne of Babylon, 57, 58; succeeds Cambyses, 56; orders the rebuilding of the Jewish temple, *ib.*; anecdote of him, *ib.*
——— Nothus, king of the Persians, I. 60.
———, son of Arsanius (Codomanus), king of the Persians, begins to reign, I. 61; is put to death, *ib.*
David, S., consecrated archbishop [of Caerleon], II. 329; dies at Menevia, I. 206; II. 364; III. 275; is buried at Menevia, *ib.* *See* Mango.
———, 9th earl of Huntingdon, marries his three daughters to Edward Balliol, Eustace Comyn, and Edward Bruys, III. 150.
———, brother of Llewelyn, prince of Wales, favoured by Edward I., III. 144; is made a knight by him, *ib.*; receives from him Tenby castle, *ib.*; and the widowed daughter of the countess of Derby in marriage, *ib.*; incites the Welsh to rebellion, 145; takes Roger de Clifford prisoner in Hawarden castle, *ib.*
———, king of India. *See* Tartars, the.
———, king of Israel, I. 45; death of, 46.
——— [I.], king of Scotland, takes the oath of fealty to the empress Maud, III. 60; ravages the lands of the king of England, Stephen, beyond the Humber, 73.
——— [II.], king of Scotland, taken prisoner at Neville's cross, III. 212; (Durham), 369; comes to London, 233.
David's, S. (*Menevia*), see of, established by king Arthur, II. 173; Sampson, bishop of, removes, with his pall, to Armorica, *ib.*; bishops of, after him, without the pall, *ib.*; loses its archiepiscopal privilege, *ib.*
———, [Henry Chicheley], bishop of, proceeds to the Council [of Pisa], III. 413, 414.
———, [Geoffrey], bishop of, power of pronouncing in Wales and Ireland the papal sentence against king John conceded to by Pandulph and Durand, III. 99.
Day and Night, order of succession of, since the Passion, I. 66.
Dead Sea, the, description of, I. 33; account of, II. 40.
Dearth, famine, and pestilence, in consequence of the tribute levied by William Rufus, III. 50.
Deborah and Barak, judges of Israel, I. 41.
Decapolis, a region on the other side of Jordan, II. 55.
Decius, reign of, I. 331; III. 261.
———, junior, reign of, I. 332.
Decretals. *See* Reymund.
Dee, the, II. 143; triumph of Edgar on, III. 17, 21.
Deira, boundaries of, II. 165,
———, king of, defeated by Offa, III. 2.

Delawar, lord, III. 218.

Delisle, John, created a baron at Cressy, III. 211.

———, (*Del Yle*), Warin, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.

Delos, island of, site of, II. 116; why so called, *ib.*; products of, *ib.*

Deluge, the Noachian, II. 9; causes of, according to Josephus and Methodius, I. 24, 25; the Achaian, II. 9; the Thessalian, *ib.*; a, from an inundation of the Tiber, III. 277.

Democritus, teaches Pythagoras, I. 51; dies, 60; his beautiful eyes, *ib.*; his love of women and theirs for him, *ib.*; puts out his eyes, *ib.*; continence of, 422.

Demosthenes fl., I., 427; the most famous "doctor" of Attica, II. 83; commendation of, by (Dionysius) Areopagita, according to Epiphanius, *ib.*

Demetia, king of, carries a golden sword before king Arthur, II. 327.

Demetrius (II.), reigns in Macedonia, I. 62.

Denia (*Dene*), the count of, taken prisoner by John Hawle and Richard Shakyll, III. 342; his liberation demanded of Richard II. by the Spanish, *ib.* *See* Hawle.

Derby, Henry, 9th earl of. *See* Lancaster.

———, Robert [de Ferrers, 8th earl of], sons of, excluded from the benefit of the Dictum de Kenilworth, III. 135.

[? ———] William de Ferrers (*Ferariis*), 6th earl [of], present at the coronation of Henry III., III. 113.

Derbyshire (*Derbischire*), II. 152.

Dernyntoun, John de, a friar preacher, confessor to Henry III, III. 143.

Derwent, battle of, between Vortimer and the Saxons, II. 273.

Desiderius, becomes king of the Lombards, I. 365; taken prisoner by Charlemagne, 236.

Despencer (*de Dispensariis*), Hugh 1st [lord], justiciary of England, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.

Despencer, Hugh, the elder, one of the judges of Thos., earl of Lancaster, III. 196; executed at Bristol, 198.

———————, the younger, escapes with Edward II. from Bannockburn, III. 195; executed at Hereford, 198.

Despenser (*Le Spensier*), [Thomas] lord, created 12th earl of Gloucester, III. 377; [*dux Gloucestriæ*] taken at Bristol and beheaded in the market place by the mob, 386.

Deusdeditus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 217; III. 279.

Devil, the, appears in Crete in the form of Moses to the Jews, and promises them a dry journey into the promised land over the sea, I. 347; appearances of, III. 51.

Devises (*Deuise*), Castle of, built by Roger, bishop of Sarum, III. 61.

Devonshire (*Deuenschire*), or Devonia, II. 152.

Deyvyle, Jocelyn, execution of, at York, III. 197.

Didimus, S., of Alexandria, fl., I. 343.

Dido founds Carthage, I. 45.

Dies, derivation of, I. 7.

Digwallus, son of Capoir, king of Britain, II. 248.

Dindimus and Alexander the Great, correspondence of, I. 428, 429, 430, 431, 432; interview of, 432, 433, 434.

Dinoot, abbot, I. 299. *See* Bangor.

Diocletian and Maximian, reign of, I. 335; III. 263; persecute the Christians, *ib.*, II. 265, 266.

Diogenes the Cynic flourishes, I. 60, 425; said to be the disciple of Anaximenes by Johannes Polycraticus, *ib.*; account of, *ib.*; visit of Alexander the Great to, 426; anecdotes of, *ib.*, 427.

Dionysius, the first teacher of Plato, I. 424.

———, S. (Areopagita), buries the bodies of SS. Peter and Paul, I. 170; (S. Denis) sent into Gaul to Paris by S. Clement, *ib.*, 320; (Areopagita)

Dionysius, S.—*cont.*
beheaded by Fencennius, *ib.*, 171; (Areopagita), III. 253. *See* S. Ignatius.
————, bishop of Corinth, flourishes, I. 177.
————, bishop of Milan, dies in exile, I. 340.
————, king of Sicily, excuse of, for abstracting the gold plates from the gilt statues in a temple, I. 161, 162, 427; story of a philosopher and, by S. Innocentius, 162; death of 427.
————, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 184, III. 262.
Dionysus, or Liber Pater, fl., I. 40.
Disciples of our Lord, dispersion of, I. 155.
Dodan in Æthiopia, products of, II. 47.
Doldautus, king of Gutlandia, submits to Arthur, II. 319.
Doldamus, king of Godlandia, II. 326; troops supplied to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.
Dolys, Castle of, in Normandy, miracle at, III. 79.
Domesday Book, the particulars of the Great Survey, entered in, III. 46.
Dominic, S., Friar Preacher, sent to convert the Albigenses, I. 388; canonization of, I. 278; fl. in Spain, III. 93; born in Karologa, *ib.*
Domitian, reign of, I. 320; second persecution of Christians under, *ib.*
Domnus I., pope, pontificate of, I. 222; III. 281.
———— II., pope, I. 252; III. 292.
Donatus, the grammarian, the preceptor of S. Jerome, fl., I. 340.
————, S., bishop, fl., I. 344.
Donaut, II. 326.
Donelew, battle of, between Aethelstan and Arnalafus, III. 10.
Donewald, king. *See* Malmesbury, Castle of.
Donnedale, Thos. de, one of the household of Henry, 1st duke of Lancaster, killed, III. 228.
Dorchester, Eata (*Ethla*, *Cata*), bishop of, II. 177.
Dorchester, see of, held by the bishops of Lyndsey, *ib.*; transferred to Lincoln by Remigius, 174, 177.
Dorobornia, II. 326; sometimes asserted to be the name of Dover, instead of Canterbury, 149.
Dorset, II. 152.
————, marquis of. *See* Somerset, earl of.
Dover, a monk of, kills twenty-seven Normans, III. 159.
Drawers, first invented by Semiramis, I. 28.
Dress (of English in A.D. 1361–62), account of, III. 230, 231; attack on the English on account of, 231.
Dribi, Philip de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Drought in France, I. 385; universal, III. 303.
Dublin, Robert, archbishop of, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, III. 363.
————, marquis of. *See* Vere.
Dubritius, S., archbishop of Caerleon, undertakes the coronation of king Arthur, II. 327; crowns him in Silecester, 308; speech of, before the battle of Caerbadon, 312.
Dufnal, king of the Wallenses, compelled to join the triumph of Edgar on the Dee, III. 17.
Dumanus, bishop of Winton, II. 330.
Dunbar, Patrick, earl of March, III. 151.
Dunbar, earl of [March], joins the English and is created earl of Richmond, III. 387; escapes to Scotland, 414; declares that he professed himself to be on the English side in order to compass the deaths of the earl of Northumberland and other enemies of Scotland, *ib.*
Dunkeld, William, bishop of, III. 160.
Dunstan, S., abbot of Glastonbury, made bishop of Worcester and bishop of London by Edmund, III. 14; commendation by, of goodness of Edred, *ib.*; vision of, at birth of Edgar, 16; anger of, at Edgar, 18; condemns him to a seven years' penance, 20; crowns him at Bath, *ib.*; archbishop of Canter-

Dunstan, S.—*cont.*
bury, I. 228 ; III. 21 ; voices heard by, in the monastery of SS. Peter and Paul there, *ib.* ; another legend as to, *ib.*, 22 ; and other bishops elevate S. Edward the Martyr to the throne, 23 ; baptises Aethelred, II. 24 ; prophetic remark concerning him, *ib.* ; prophecies the bloodshed of his reign, *ib.*, 25 ; makes S. Aelfeah bishop of Winchester, 25 ; death of, 252 ; III. 292.

Dunstaple, appearance of Jesus Christ at, in the air, III. 91.

Dunwallo Molmuncius, king of the Britons, I. 59 ; institutes right of sanctuary, II. 145, 236 ; lays down four royal roads in Britain, 145 ; the first law-maker in England, 154 ; son of Cloten, attacks Rudak, king of Scotland, 235 ; defeats and kills Rudak, king of Cambria, and Scaterius, king of Albania, *ib.* ; makes a golden crown, *ib.* ; institutes the laws called "Leges Molemontinæ," *ib.* ; character of, *ib.*; cognomen of "Molmount," 236 ; first of British kings wore a crown, *ib.* ; establishes weights and measures, *ib.* ; founds the cities of Malmesburgh, Tettonburgh, and Lacock, *ib.* ; dies and is buried in the Temple of Concord at Trinovantum, *ib.* ; divides the kingdom between his sons, *ib.* ; laws of, translated by Gyldas from British into Latin, 239 ; by Alfred the Great from Latin into English, *ib.* ; book of, still at Winchester, *ib.*

Durham, John, bishop of, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, III. 363.

——— [Thomas Langley, cardinal] bishop of, proceeds to the Council of Pisa, III. 414. *See* Beek, Insula.

Dysentery, mortality from, in England, III. 415.

E.

Eadanus, king of the Scotti, killed by Cadwallo, II. 375.

Eadbald, king of Kent, succeeds Aethelbert II. 368 ; refuses to receive Christianity, *ib.* ; possessed by an unclean spirit, according to Beda, *ib.* ; preached against by S. Laurentius, archbishop of Canterbury, is baptised, *ib.* ; builds a church to the Mother of God in the monastery of S. Peter, *ib.* ; endows the monastery outside the walls of Canterbury, founded by his father, *ib.* ; dies, I. 215, *ib.*

Eadmer, his story of the vision of Hugh, abbot of Cluny, III. 51, 52.

Eanfled, daughter of Edwin of Northumbria, baptism of, I. 214.

Earcombert, king of Kent, succeeds Eadbald, II. 368 ; destroys the idols throughout England, *ib.* ; institutes a fast of forty days, *ib.*, 369 ; favours Christianity, *ib.*

Earthquake in Italy, I. 234.
———, I. 274.
——— in Naples, I. 291.
——— in Syria, I. 336.
——— at Constantinople, I. 363.
——— in England, followed by a dearth of fruit, and a late harvest, III. 49.
———, III. 62.
———, III. 138.
——— in the south and west of England, III. 142 ; followed by a pestilence and a rot among sheep, *ib.*
——— in Burgundy, III. 298.
———, a, III. 303.
———, wind, and rain from All Saints to Pentecost, III. 303.
———, III. 304.
——— in Flanders and England, III. 356 ; a second in the same week, *ib.*

East Anglia, bishops of, II. 175, 176 ; Felix, Thomas, Boniface, Bisi, 175 ; see of, divided into Doninoc and Elmham, *ib.*, 176 ; one bishop of, at Elmham,

East Anglia—*cont.*
176 ; see of, translated to Thetford, *ib.* ; and Norwich, temp. Herbert, *ib.*
———— (*Estengle*), king of, defeated by Offa, III. 2.
————, kingdom of, contained Norfolk and Suffolk, II. 159 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; martyrdom of S. Edmund, king of, *ib.*, 160 ; occupied, with the kingdom of Essex, by the Danes, 159 ; Edward the Elder unites both to his own kingdom, *ib.*, 160 ; kings of, ruled in Cambridgeshire, Norfolk, and Suffolk, *ib.* ; list of kings of, from Reodwald to Edward the Elder *ib.*, 160.
East Saxons, the conversion of, I. 215.
Eba, dux of Mercia, joins Wlfred, son of Penda, against Oswi of Bernicia, II. 377.
Ebbesford (*Epiford*), battle of, II. 279.
Ebosus, or Eborus, island of, site of, II. 119.
Ebrancus, son of Mempricius, I. 46 ; II. 224 ; succeeds his father in Britain, II. 224 ; invades Gaul, *ib.* ; founds the city of Kaerbrank beyond the Humber, 225 ; founds the city of Alcluid and of Mount Agned, now Castrum Puellarum, or Edanburgh, from Edan, king of Scots, *ib.* ; founds Mons Dolorosus, *ib.* ; his twenty wives, I. 46 ; his twenty sons and thirty daughters, *ib.* ; names of them, II. 225 ; sends his daughters to Silvius Alba, in Italy, who are married to Trojan nobles, I. 47 ; II. 226 ; sons of, reduce Germany, *ib.*
Ebroin (*Ebronius*), major of the palace, temp. Theodoric III., II. 121 ; puts S. Leger to death, *ib.*
Echion, dux of Boecia (? *Bœotia*), II. 336.
Eclipse of the sun predicted by Thales, I. 55.
Eclipses of the sun, I. 205 ; III. 232, 249, 275, 285, 287, 298, 299, 300, 302 ; *ib.*, 303.
———— of the moon, I. 279, 380 ; III. 303 ; *ib.*, 305, 356, 397.
Edbert, king of Kent, succeeds Wihtraed, II. 369.
————, dux of Mercia, joins Wlfred, son of Penda, against Oswi of Bernicia, II. 377.
Edelbert, king of Kent, succeeds Edbert, II. 369.
Edgar, son of Edmund [I.], under age at the death of his father, III. 14 ; succeeds, I. 251 ; III. 16 ; coronation of, at Bath (*Acamannum*), by SS. Dunstan and Oswald, III. 20 ; holiness of, 16 ; popularity of, *ib.* ; bravery and munificence of, *ib.* ; quotation from the Gesta of William of Malmesbury as to, *ib.*, 17 ; revelation to S. Dunstan at birth of, 16 ; founds many monasteries, *ib.* ; triumph of, at Caerleon and on the Dee, 17 ; reforms the church, *ib.* ; appoints Elurícus abbot of Malmesbury, *ib.* ; donations of to that abbey, *ib.* ; vices of, 18 ; son of, by Egelflida, S. Edward, *ib.* ; daughter of, by Wilfrida, S. Eilditha, *ib.* ; sends Ethelwold to Ordgarus, "dux" of Cornwall, for his daughter in marriage, *ib.* ; grants the prayer of Ethelwold to marry Estrilda, daughter of Ordgarus, 19 ; visits Estrilda, wife of Ethelwold, *ib.* ; murders Ethelwold in the forest of Wherewell, *ib.* ; adopts the bastard son of Ethelwold, *ib.* ; abduction of a nun by, 20 ; condemned to penance by S. Dunstan in consequence, *ib.* ; abduction of the daughter of a "dux" at Andover, *ib.* ; happy death of, *ib.* ; buried at Glastonbury, *ib.* ; 291 ; opening of tomb of, by Edward, abbot of Glastonbury, 20 ; translation of, *ib.* ; mutilation of remains of, by the abbot, 21 ; miraculous cures at tomb of, *ib.* ; religious foundations of, *ib.* ; triumph of, on the Dee at Chester, *ib.*
Edgar [Atheling], son of Edmund Ironside, claim of, to crown of England favoured by some English nobles, II. 197 ; son of Edmund and Agatha, III. 29.
Edgitha, daughter of earl Godwine, marries Edward the Confessor, II. 195 ; III. 32.

Edinburgh, founded by Eb ancus, II. 150 ; called "Castrum Puellarum," *ib.* ; now called Edanburg, from king Edan, temp. Ethelfrith of Northumbria, *ib.*

Edington, William de, bishop of Winchester, death of, III. 240 ; liberality of, *ib.* ; funeral of, at the hospital of "Bones Homes," or "Bone gent," founded by, *ib.*

——— (*Hedendoun*), (Sarum dioc.), the Bones Homes enter their habitation at, III. 311, 312.

Edmund de Abingdon, S., chancellor of Sarum, fl., III. 117 ; is made archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.* ; consecrated, *ib.* 302 ; consecrates Robert Grosse-Teste bishop [of Lincoln], 138 ; death of, at Beysi abbey, 118, 302 ; friendship of, for the Friars Preachers, 118; legend of, *ib.*, 119; canonization of, I. 278.

Edmund, S. (of East Anglia), martyrdom of, I. 244 ; I. 372; II. 159, 160 ; III. 5, 6, 288 ; king of Norfolk, III. 6.

Edmund's Bury, S., monastery of, founded, III. 329 ; rebuilt by Cnut, 29.

Edmund [I.], brother of Aethelstan, succeeds, I. 250 ; III. 11, 290 ; expels Anlaf (*Ernulf*) and Raegenald (*Reynald*), pagan kings, from Northumbria, III. 11 ; defeats the Picts in Cumberland, *ib.* ; gives Cumberland to Malcolm (*Malcolinus*), king of Scots, *ib.* ; donations of, to Glastonbury, *ib.*, 12 ; murdered at Canterbury, 13 ; buried at Glastonbury, 14 ; defeats the Scots and Danes, *ib.* ; makes S. Dunstan, abbot of Glastonbury, bishop of Worcester, and of London, *ib.* ; sons of, Edwy (*Eadwinus*) and Edgar, *ib.* ; grant by, to S. Dunstan, *ib.*

——— Ironside, son of Aethelred II., III. 24 ; by Elgiva his concubine, 25 ; reign of, 26 ; murdered by Edric Streona (*Stratton*), *ib.* ; reigns over Wessex, *ib.* ; is buried at Glastonbury, *ib.* ; killed, according to some, by a magic statue, *ib.* ; friendship between and Cnut, *ib.* ; sons of, 27 ; defeats Cnut, *ib.* ; makes peace with him, retaining Wessex, and conceding Mercia, *ib.* ; sons of, sent into Denmark by Cnut, 28 ; their fate, *ib.*, 29.

Edmund Ironside—*cont.*

———, son of Edmund Ironside, sent to Denmark to be put to death by Cnut, III. 28 ; spared by Wlgar, *ib.* ; taken to Hungary and dies, *ib.*

———, earl of Lancaster, second son of Henry III. and Eleanor of Provence, III. 119 ; comes to England from the Holy Land, 140 ; named "Crouchback," is asserted to be the eldest son of Henry III. by John of Ghent, 369 ; also to have relinquished his claim to the crown to Edward I., by reason of his deformity, 370 ; the earldom of Lancaster said to have been given to, in compensation, *ib.* ; the heirs of, to reign after Edward I., *ib.* ; Henry (Bolingbroke) descended from, on the mother's side, *ib.* ; asserted to have been a man of elegant form by (Roger), earl of March, and not the eldest son, *ib.*

——— de Langley, earl of Cambridge, fourth son of Edward III., embassy touching marriage of, to [Margaret] duchess of Burgundy, III. 235 ; resistance of the pope, *ib.* ; it is believed that the marriage is broken off, *ib.* ; parliament summoned by reason of, it is said, *ib.* ; sent to Flanders, with the bishop of Ely and others, to see her, 237 ; has no conversation with her in private nor in public, *ib.* ; consequence of this to, and the lady, *ib.* ; sent to the Black Prince, 333 ; marries the second daughter of Peter the Cruel, 334 ; created 1st duke of York by Richard II., 358, 361; appointed one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues, 360 ; appointed guardian of the realm, 381 ; refusal of the people to join him against the duke of Lancaster, *ib.*

———, of Woodstock, 4th earl of Kent, third son of Edward I., birth of, III. 171, 306 ; beheaded at Winchester, 199, 308.

Edred, third son of Edward the Elder, and brother of Aethelstan, succeeds, III. 14 ; commended by S. Dunstan, *ib.* ; revelation to S. Dunstan of the salvation of, *ib.* ; buried at Winchester, *ib.* ; donations of, to Winchester, 15; death of horse of S. Dunstan on news of death of, *ib.* ; buried by S. Dunstan, *ib.*

Edric, king of Kent, succeeds Hlotheri, II. 369.

———, Streona (*Stratton*), murders Edmund Ironside, III. 26 ; is put to death by Cnut, 27.

Edsige (*Eilsidius*), archbishop (of Canterbury), consecrates Edward the Confessor at Winchester, III. 32.

Edward, abbot of Glastonbury, opens the tomb of Edgar, III. 20 ; mutilates the remains, 21 ; goes mad and breaks his neck, *ib.*

Edward the Elder, son of Alfred the Great, succeeds, III. 9, 289 ; expels the Danes from East Anglia and Essex, and unites both to Wessex, II. 160 ; defeats [Constantine III.], king of Scots, 189 ; three sons of, *ib.* ; unites Mercia and Wessex, *ib.* ; reduces the Mercians, the East and West Anglians, the Northumbrians and Danes, the Scots, and the Britons (or Welsh), *ib.* ; makes a truce with the Danes of Northumbria and the pagans of Africa, III. 10 ; never defeated, II. 189 ; expels the Danes, *ib.* ; reigns over all England to the Humber, *ib.* ; dies, and is buried at Winchester, III. 10.

———, S. (the Martyr), son of Eadgar and Egelflida, III. 18 ; succeeds, 23, 291 ; date of coronation of, 23 ; murdered at Warham, I. 252 ; III. 231, 291 ; in the New Forest, I. 377 ; by Elfrida (*Estrilda*), III. 23 ; buried first at Warham, I. 252 ; III. 23, 291 ; a second time at Shafton (*Scaftonia*), I. 252 ; III. 23 ; murdered at Corff Castle by Elfrida, according to Petrus Pictaviensis, III. 23.

———— (the Confessor), son of Aethelred II. and Emma, II. 193 ; III. 25 ; is sent abroad by Cnut, II. 185 ; is sent into Normandy, III. 25 ; escapes with his brother Alfred, to his uncle Richard, duke of Normandy, II. 193 ; sent for after the murder of Alfred, 195 ; sent for after the death of Harthacnut, 185 ; III. 31 ; succeeds, *ib.* ; III. 294 ; consecrated at Winchester by archbishop Eadsige, III. 32; unfitness of, for government, 31 ; miracles of, *ib.* ; vision of seven sleepers, *ib.* ; cures at Westminster by, *ib.* ; banishes earl Godwine, II. 183 ; sends his son and grandson to William, duke of Normandy, *ib.* ; marries Eadgitha, daughter of Godwine, 195; III. 32; preserves his virginity, II. 195; gives the possessions of Godwine to his son Harold, *ib.* ; promises to make duke William his successor, 183, 184 ; oath of him, III. 32 ; remark of, on the oath taken by Harold to duke William, II. 184 ; ill-treats his mother Emma, *ib.* ; at the advice of archbishop Robert confines her in the monastery of Wharwell, *ib.* ; sends for duke William to come and receive the kingdom of England from him, III. 33 ; sends the son and nephew of Godwine into Normandy, as hostages for the gift, 36 ; dedicates the church of SS. Peter and Paul at Westminster, visions of, 32; leaves his kingdom to William (of Normandy), *ib.* ; sends Siward of Northumbria against (*Macbeoth*), king of Scots, and makes Malcolm, king of the Cumbri, king, *ib.* ; combines the laws of Dunwallo, Martia, and Alfred the Great, now called the laws of Edward Confessor, II. 154 ; interpretation of peculiar terms in, *ib.*, 155, 156; dies, II. 196; III. 32, 295; and is buried at Westminster, II. 196; III. 32, 60; royal line of England from Cerdic of Wessex terminates in, II. 196 ; hesitation of nobles in the choice of a successor to, *ib.*, 197 ; translations of, III. 70, 135 ; the liberties and customs granted by, conceded by charter by Henry I., 63.

Edward, son of Edmund Ironside, sent to Denmark to be put to death by Cnut, III. 28 ; spared by Wlgar, *ib.* ; taken to the king of Hungary, *ib.* ; marries his daughter [Agatha], *ib.* ; issue by, 29.

——— [I.], son of Henry III. and Eleanor of Provence, III. 119 ; birth of, *ib.*, III. 302 ; is baptised by Otho, the papal legate, 119 ; is named in honour of S. Edward (Confessor), *ib.* ; as earl of Cornwall, advises the king to apply to the pope for absolution from his oath [to observe the Provisions of Oxford], 120 ; proceeds to the Castle of Bristol, 122 ; the town turns against him, *ib.* ; escapes to Windsor, *ib.* ; accompanies the king at the siege of Northampton, 123 ; is received in the Castle of Lewes, 124; letter of, and Richard, king of the Romans, to the barons, 126, 127 ; commands, with William de Valence and John de Warenne, the first division of the royal army at the battle of Lewes, 127 ; is separated from the army in pursuit of the Londoners, *ib.* ; returns from the pursuit, 128 ; grief of, at not finding the king, *ib.* ; meets him in the priory, *ib.* ; desires to fight a second battle, *ib.* ; is taken prisoner, I. 281 ; III. 304; is given as a hostage for his father to Simon de Montfort, III. 128 ; taken about with de Montfort, 129 ; placed in Dover Castle, *ib.* ; is taken to Hereford, I. 281 ; III. 130, 304 ; escapes from custody, and proceeds towards Worcester, III. 130, 131, 304 ; escapes to Wigmore Castle, 304 ; collects a large force and takes Gloucester, 131 ; captures the earl of Oxford near Kenilworth, *ib.* ; returns to Worcester, 132 ; prevents the junction of De Montfort and his son, *ib.* ; advances on Evesham, *ib.* ; fights the battle of Evesham, *ib.* ; advises the convocation of a parliament, 133 ; single combat of, with Adam Gordon (*Gurdoun*), a rebel, *ib.*, 134 ; marries [Eleanor of Castile], 303 ; joins the Crusade and goes to the Holy Land,

Edward [I.]—*cont.*

I. 392 ; III. 136 ; attempt to assassinate, at Acre, III. 136; age of, at his succession to the crown, 139; character and personal appearance of, *ib.* ; is proclaimed king in the New Temple, London, while absent in the Holy Land, by Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, and Gilbert, earl of Gloucester, 140 ; arrives in Sicily, and is received by king Charles, *ib.* ; goes to Rome, *ib.* ; passes through Italy, *ib.* ; arrives in France, and does homage to the king for Gascony, *ib.* ; contest of, with [De Bearn], *ib.*; lands in England, 141 ; coronation of, and queen Eleanor, *ib.* ; receives the homage of [Alex. III.], king of Scotland, 142 ; holds a parliament at London, *ib.* ; a fifteenth paid to, *ib.* ; places Eleanor de Montfort in the suite of the queen, 143 ; imprisons her brother Aymer, *ib.* ; besieges Llewelyn in Snowdon Castle, *ib.* ; pardons him, *ib.* ; gives Tenby Castle to David, his brother, 144 ; gives him the daughter of the earl of Derby in marriage, *ib.* ; gives up Eleanor de Montfort to Llewelyn, *ib.* ; is present at their marriage, with the queen, *ib.* ; renews the clipped coinage, 145, 305 ; returns from France, and repairs the tomb of Henry III., 145 ; marches against David and Llewelyn, *ib.* ; sends the head of Llewelyn to London, 146 ; holds a parliament at Acton-Burnel, *ib.* ; proceeds through West Wales, and enters Glamorgan, 147 ; leaves Bristol for Canterbury, and is going to France, but returns to Amesbury, on account of the illness of the queen-mother, *ib.* ; goes to France, and meets the king at Amiens, *ib.* ; does homage to him for his possessions in France, *ib.* ; is nearly killed, with his queen, by lightning, *ib.*, 148 ; expels the Jews from England, 148 ; a fifteenth of their goods granted to, *ib.* ; sends for Margaret, the "Maid of Norway," 149 ; holds a parliament at Norham, where he declares his claim to be

Edward [I.]—*cont.*
lord paramount of Scotland, *ib.*; letter of submission of the competitors for the Scottish crown to, 151, 152; instrument granting seisin of the land to, 152, 153, 154, 155; sends both documents to the abbeys in England, 155; elects forty auditors to decide upon the rival claims, *ib.*; receives the homage and fealty of John Balliol, 157; is summoned by the king of France to answer for the mariners of the Cinque Ports, *ib.*; does not appear and is amerced, *ib.*; negotiates for peace, *ib.*; sends an army to recover Gascony from the French, which is defeated, *ib.*; assembles an army and marches to Newcastle, 160; summons John Balliol to answer for his treason, *ib.*; crosses the Tweed and besieges Berwick, *ib.*; takes Dunbar Castle, 161; takes the castles of Roxburgh, Edinburgh, Stirling, and Jedworth, and ravages Scotland, *ib.*; summons Balliol to Brechin, *ib.*; sends the bishop of Durham to treat for peace, *ib.*; goes into the mountains, 162; removes the stone of Scone to Westminster, *ib.*; calls a parliament at Berwick and receives the homage and fealty of the Scotch nobles, 163; appoints a warden, treasurer, and justiciary of Scotland, *ib.*; sends Balliol to the Tower of London, *ib.*; summons the Scotch nobles before him at Westminster, 164; makes them swear fealty and do homage to him, 165; ransoms the prisoners in Gascony, 166; sails to Flanders, *ib.*; makes a truce with France for two years, *ib.*; calls a parliament, and causes fealty to be sworn to his son Edward, *ib.*, 167; forbids the clergy to buy and sell without special licence, 306; summons the earl of Hereford, the earl marshal, and others, to accompany him to Flanders, 167; appoints his son regent in his absence, *ib.*; appoints the bishop of London, the earl of Warwick, &c. his advisers, *ib.*; empowers the prince to call a parliament and demand a subsidy, *ib.*; confirms Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta in Flanders, and pardons the earls of Hereford and of Norfolk, 168; a subsidy granted to, *ib.*; returns to England and calls a parliament at York, *ib.*; summons the Scotch nobles, who do not come, *ib.*; assembles his army at Roxburgh, 169; sufferings of soldiers of, from shortness of provisions, *ib.*; relief of army of, *ib.*; marches against the Scots, *ib.*; meets with an accident, *ib.*; fights the battle of Falkirk, *ib.*; confirms Magna Carta and grants perambulation of the forest, 170; assents to the prayer of the papal legates for the liberation of John Balliol, *ib.*; marries Margaret, sister of Philip IV. of France, at Canterbury, *ib.*; holds a parliament in London, *ib.*; goes to Berwick, *ib.*; ravages Scotland, 171; besieges and takes Stirling Castle, *ib.*, 306; receives the bull of Boniface VIII., claiming the kingdom of Scotland, 172; assembles a parliament at Lincoln to consider the claim, 174; replies to it, *ib.*; letter of, to the pope, defending his right, 175–183; invades Scotland, 185; concludes a truce with the Scots, at the instance of Philip IV., 186; returns to England, and calls a parliament, *ib.*; ravages Scotland as far as Caithness, *ib.*; winters at Dunfermline, 187; besieges and takes Stirling Castle, *ib.*; appoints justices of Trailbâton, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; banishes the Flemings at the request of the king of France, 188; calls a parliament, where the Scots swear fealty, *ib.*; at Lanercost, 190; sends the wife of Robert Bruce to England, *ib.*; executes the adherents of Bruce, *ib.*; banishes Peter de Gaverston, *ib.*; marches into Scotland, *ib.*; holds a parliament at Carlisle, 191; answer of, to the papal legate touching the marriage between prince Edward and the princess Isabella of France, 192; sends prince Edward back to England, *ib.*; summons his

Edward [I.]—*cont.*
army to Carlisle, *ib.*, 193; falls ill of dysentery, 193; moves towards Scotland by short journeys, *ib.*; reaches Burgh-on-the-Sands, *ib.*; dies there, *ib.*, 307; length of reign of, 193; age of, *ib.*; is buried at Westminster, *ib.*; prayer of author for soul of, *ib.*; asserted by John of Ghent to have been the second son of Henry III., 369; the eldest by Roger, earl of March, 370. *See* Edmund, earl of Lancaster.
——— [II.], of Caernarvon, born, I. 282; III. 147, 305; appointed regent during his father's absence in Flanders, III. 167; empowered by the king to call a parliament and demand a subsidy, *ib.*; marches into Scotland, 189; proposed marriage between, and the princess Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. of France, 192; sent back to England from Scotland to await the reply of the king of France, *ib.*, 193; coronation of, 193, 307; by the archbishops of York and Canterbury, 193; marries the princess Isabella, 194, 307; and Isabella crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; present at the funeral of Peter de Gaverston, 194; is defeated at Bannockburn, 195, 307; escapes with Hugh Despenser, 195; is sent to Kenilworth Castle, 199; resigns his crown to prince Edward, *ib.*; dies at Berkeley, *ib.*, 308; and is buried at Gloucester, 199.
——— [III.], son of Edward II., birth of, at Windsor, III. 194, 307; accompanies queen Isabella to France, 198; crown resigned to, by Edward II., 199; coronation of, *ib.*, 307; besieges the Scots in Stanhope Park, 201; goes to Haydon Bridge, *ib.*; and to Berwick to relieve Edward Balliol, *ib.*; lays siege to it, *ib.*; fights the battle of Halidon Hill, *ib.*; takes Berwick, *ib.*; receives the homage of Edward Balliol at Newcastle, 202; holds a parliament, and creates the Black Prince earl of Cornwall, *ib.*; dispute between, and the king of France, *ib.*; is unsuccessful in obtaining the possessions seized by the French king, 203; assembles a large force, and embarks at Orwell, *ib.*; stays at Antwerp, *ib.*; proceeds to Cologne, and makes a treaty with the emperor Louis IV. against France, *ib.*; returns into Brabant and declares his right to the arms of France, *ib.*; quarters them, *ib.*; invades France with the duke of Brabant, *ib.*; wastes Cambresis and Vermandois, *ib.*; holds a parliament, and grants certain remissions in return for an aid, 204; confirms Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta, *ib.*; embarks for Flanders, and defeats the French fleet at Sluys, 205; wastes the North of France, *ib.*; besieges Tournay, *ib.*; concludes a truce with the king of France, *ib.*; raises the siege, *ib.*; invades Brittany, and loses many of his troops from bad food, *ib.*; concludes a three years' truce with France, at the instance of the pope, 206; suffers a great storm at sea on returning to England, *ib.*; embarks at Portsmouth under the conduct of [Godfrey] Harcourt, knight, *ib.*; lands at La Hogue, 207; burns Valognes, *ib.*; takes Charentan, *ib.*; takes Caen, *ib.*; captures the constable and marshal of France, *ib.*; wastes the neighbourhood, *ib.*; diverges towards Bayeux, *ib.*; reaches Lisieux, *ib.*; stays there and listens to the offers of the papal nuntios for peace, *ib.*, 208; sends them back to Rome, 208; finds the bridge over the Seine destroyed, *ib.*; crosses a branch, and assaults and takes the Castle of Roche-Guyon, *ib.*; arrives at Poissy, 209; repairs the bridge, *ib.*; takes Poix, *ib.*; Airaines surrenders to, *ib.*; crosses the ford of Blanque Taque, *ib.*; defeats a body of French, *ib.*, 210; comes in sight of the French army, 210; fights the battle of Cressy, *ib.*, 211; sends the body of the king of Bohemia to Amiens to his son for burial, 211; creates two barons and fifty knights on the field, *ib.*; repairs to Calais

Edward III.—*cont.*

Edward III.—*cont.*

and lays siege to it, *ib.*; Calais surrenders to, 212; returns to England, after granting a truce, at the instance of the pope, *ib.*, 213; suffers a great loss of men from a storm, 213; exclamation of at, *ib.*; efforts of the cardinals of Perigort, Urgel, and another with, for peace, 227, 310; unsuccessful, 227; solemnizes Christmas, with the queen, at Marlborough, *ib.*, 310; goes, with her, to Bristol, and holds nocturnal hastiludes, *ib.*; holds a parliament at London, 227, 311; holds hastiludes at Windsor on S. George's Day, *ib.*; passes the summer at Marlborough and Cosham, *ib.*; goes to Calais secretly, and returns the next night, 312; embarks at Sandwich and lands at Calais, 228; crosses to France, 312; commences the invasion of France, 228, 312; sufferings of army of, 228; wastes France, and drives the French up to the walls of Paris, *ib.*; verses on, *ib.*; loses many men by bad weather, *ib.*, 229; returns to England, 229; holds a parliament, at which the Statute of Purveyors is enacted, 230; holds a parliament at London, 232, 313; in which a statute is enacted against excessive use of gold ornaments, 232; receives king John of France, *ib.*; names the "dominus de Jerusalem" Edward, after baptism, 233; accompanies the remains of the king of France for some distance out of London, *ib.*; repairs Windsor Castle, 234; commences Sheppey Castle, 333; is building Sheppey Castle, near London, 234; calls a parliament at London, *ib.*; asks a grant of the toll on exported wools, 235; remark of author on cupidity of, *ib.*; calls a parliament, where the claim of Urban V. to the tribute promised by king John is refused, 239; remark of author on the refusal, *ib.*; recals John of Ghent from a visit to the Black Prince, 241; preferment conferred on Simon Langham by, 240, 241; descent of, from Rollo, 330, 331, 332; children of, 332; assumes the title of king of France, 335; takes the Florentines under his protection, *ib.*; statute of, against papal presentation, 336; sends the earl of Hereford against the Flemings, *ib.*; assembles a great council at Westminster, to consider the right of Gregory XI. to command a subsidy, 337; lies off Sandwich, intending to relieve Rochelle, but is prevented by the wind, 339; refuses his assent to the election of [Simon Langham or Adam Easton], cardinal, as archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; summons the king of Navarre to Clarendon, 340; treats with him on an exchange of territory, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; length of reign of, *ib.*

Edward III.—*cont.*

——— (*Edwardus Quartus a Conquæstu*) the Black Prince, son of Edward III. and Philippa of Hainault, birth of, at Woodstock, III. 200; made first duke of Cornwall, *ib.*, 202; knighted at La Hogue by his father, 207; embarks at Plymouth, 215, 309; lands at Bordeaux, *ib.*, 309; ravages France, 309; itinerary of, 215–226; enters Bergerac, 215; enters Perigort, *ib.*; reaches a cathedral town belonging to the bishop, 216; spends the night near a castle called Rammesforde, *ib.*; arrives at Brantôme, *ib.*; passes the night at Quisser, *ib.*; at Marton, *ib.*; reaches Rochechauart, *ib.*; the abbey of Peruche, *ib.*; comes to Lesterp, and takes the abbey, *ib.*, 217; reaches Belac, and spares the town, 217; reaches a town and castle belonging to Jacques de Bourbon, *ib.*; reaches Lusac, *ib.*; S. Benoît-du-Saut, *ib.*; Argenton, *ib.*; Chateauroux, S. Amand, and Bourg-Dieu, 218; Issoudon, *ib.*; La Ferté, *ib.*; Lury, *ib.*; crosses the Cher, *ib.*; sleeps at Vierzon, *ib.*; reaches Frank, *ib.*; receives news that the French king desires to fight, *ib.*; his great joy at it, *ib*; approaches Orleans, *ib.*; hears that Craon and Bourcicault are coming against him

Edward, the Black Prince—*cont.*

ib.; proceeds to Romorentin, which he assaults and takes, *ib.*, 220; lays siege to the donjon, 220; fires it, *ib.*; it surrenders to him, *ib.*; arrives at Aumonke, on the Loire, near Tours, *ib.*; crosses the Indre, and sleeps at Monbazon, 221; receives the cardinal of Perigort and others, who plead for peace, *ib.*; hears news of the dauphin and of the king of France, *ib.*; passes through Ste. Maure, and sleeps at La Haye, on the Creuse, *ib.*; hears news that the French king is trying to get before "us," *ib.*; reaches Chastel-Heraud, on the Vivane, *ib.*; hears that the French king had lodged on the Saturday night preceding at Chavigny, *ib.*; orders his baggage to be taken over the river that night, *ib.*; marches rapidly towards the French, and hears that they are pushing on towards Poitiers, *ib.*; leaves the road from Chavigny to Poitiers, and hurries after them, *ib.*; scouts of, come upon the French rear-guard, defeat and scatter it, but do not pursue, *ib.*; passes the night in the wood where the skirmish took place, *ib.*; sufferings of army of, for want of water, *ib.*; advances on Poitiers, *ib.*; meets the cardinal of Perigort, who again pleads for peace, *ib.*, 223; permits a negotiation, 223; perceiving the motive of the delay, breaks off the discussion, and determines to give battle, *ib.*; deliberates with his people which way to take towards the French, 224; first enters the wood which separates the two armies, *ib.*; comes in sight of the main body of the French, *ib.*; encourages his men, *ib.*; dismounts and fights on foot, *ib.*; fights the battle of Poitiers, 225, 309; reaches La Roche, 225; Conté, 226; Roffec, *ib.*; crosses the Charente, and comes to Vertueil and Monton, *ib.*; lies at Rochefoucault, *ib.*; at Ville-Bois, *ib.*; at Ste. Claye, *ib.*; crosses the Droune and lies at S. Antoine on the Lisle, *ib.*; crosses the Lisle, reaches S. Emilion, crosses the Dordoune, *ib.*; reaches Bordeaux, *ib.*, 309; stays at Libourne, and then goes to Bordeaux, 226; lands at Plymouth with the king of France and his prisoners, *ib.*, 227, 310; enters London, 227, 310; proceeds to Gascony, 231; reaches Bordeaux, and is joyfully received by the whole territory, 231; proposed visit of John of Gaunt to, 241; crosses over to Aquitain, 333; asks leave of the king to assist Peter the Cruel, *ib.*; enters Spain with a large army, and defeats Henry the Bastard (at Najara), 334; takes the sword of Spain, *ib.*; exacts heavy taxes from the people of Aquitain, *ib.*; falls ill of dysentery, *ib.*; appealed against to the court of Charles V. by the nobles of Aquitain, *ib.*; takes Limoges, and returns to England, 335; present at a great council at Westminster, 337; calls the archbishop of Canterbury "an ass," 338; dies, and is buried at Canterbury, 340.

————, son of the Black Prince, birth of, at Angoulême, III. 236; baptised at Chastillon (?), *ib.*; date of birth of, *ib.*;

————, son of Edmund de Langley, created 1st earl of Rutland, III. 361.

Edwiga, S., of Poland, canonization of, I. 280.

Edwin (*Edwyn*), son of Aethelred II., III. 24; by Elgiva, 25.

Edwin of Northumbria, birth of, II. 371; sent to Salomon, king of Northumbria, *ib.*; asks Cadwallo permission to wear his crown, *ib.*; succeeds, 167; baptism of, I. 214; wears the crown without licence, II. 371; defeats Cadwallo, 372; oppresses the Britons, *ib.*; destroys the navy of Cadwallo, and prevents his return, *ib.*; defeated and killed at Hatfield Moor, by Cadwallo and Penda of Mercia, 375.

Edwine, daughter of Aethelred II. and Elgiva, III. 25.

Edwy (*Edwynus*), son of Edmund [I.], under age at the death of his father, III. 14; succeeds, 15, 291; persecutes S. Dunstan, 15; liberated from hell by the prayers of that saint, *ib.*; obedience of Scots to, *ib.*; beauty and luxury of, *ib.*; plunders and banishes the monks throughout England, *ib.*; banishes S. Dunstan to Flanders, *ib.*; turns the abbey of Malmesbury into a stable, 16; dies, and is buried at Winchester, *ib.*, 17.

Egbert, king of Kent, succeeds Earcombert, II. 369.

———, of Wessex, succeeds, II. 161; obtains Northumbria, 167; king of all Britain, 161, 167; is buried at Winchester by Aetheluulf, 167.

Egbrithtus, the Saxon, killed at Cambla, II. 363.

Egfrith, of Mercia, II. 164.

Egric, of East Anglia, II. 159; slain by Penda, of Mercia, *ib.*

Egwine, S., bishop of Worcester, buries S. Aldhelm, I. 226, 232; death of, I. 232; III. 282; sepulture of, I. 232.

Egypt, kingdom of, date of commencement of, I. 31; flight into, of S. Joseph and S. Mary, legends of:—Of the obedient palm-tree, I. 73; of the spring, *ib.*; of the dragons, *ib.*; of the lion, 74; formerly called Aeria, II. 53; named from Egyptus, 27, 53; boundaries of, 27, 28, 53; want of rain in, 28, 53; inundations of Nile in, 28; terminates in Canopia, *ib.*; famous cities of, *ib.*; divided into Upper and Lower, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; monsters in former, *ib.*

Ehud, judge of Israel, I. 40.

Eilafius, the Saxon, killed at Cambla, II. 363.

Eilditha, S., daughter of Edgar and Wilfrida, III. 18; (*Editha*) a nun at Wilton, 21.

Eiulath, or Eiula, a province of Upper India, II. 90; surrounded by the Ganges, *ib.*; elephants in, 91; gold and gems in, 55.

Ela, countess of Salisbury, relict of William Longue-Epée, removes the Carthusians established by him at Heythorp to Henton, III. 117; founds Laycock abbey, *ib.*; becomes a nun there, *ib.*; is made abbess, *ib.*; death of, *ib.*

Elagabalus, reign of, I. 328.

Elah, son of Baasha, king of Israel, I. 47; killed by Zimri, *ib.*

Elamites, a name of the Persians, II. 88.

Elath, the region and city of Esau, in Edom, II. 55.

Eldadus, king of Britain, II. 247.

Eldol, king of Britain, II. 248.

Eldolf, earl of Gloucester, escapes from the massacre at Ambresburg, II. 280.

Eleanor, daughter of Geoffrey, earl of Brittany, imprisoned in Bristol Castle by king John, III. 112.

[Eleanor] of Aquitain, queen of Henry II., coronation of, III. 75; present at the coronation of Richard I., 81; imprisoned for adultery by Henry II., 89; attempts of Henry II. to divorce her, 90.

———, princess, daughter of Henry II., birth of, III. 70; married to Alphonso (III.), king of Castille (*Alemannia*) in Normandy, 72.

———, second daughter of the count of Provence, married to Henry III. at Canterbury, III. 117; coronation of, at Westminster, 119; children of, and Henry III., *ib.*; attempts to go from the Tower of London to Windsor by the river, 121; is attacked by a mob on [London] bridge and driven back to the Tower, *ib.*; as queen-mother, present at the coronation of Edward I., 141; is ill at Amesbury, 147; becomes a nun there, *ib.*

———, of Castile, queen of Edward I., death of, III. 149; burial of, at Westminster, *ib.*

Eleazar, son of Moses (and Zipporah), I. 39.

Eledaucus, king of Britain, II. 248.

Eledenius, archbishop of Alcluyd, II. 330.

Eleutherius, bishop of Wessex, gives the site of the monastery called Malmesbury to S. Aldhelm, I. 226 ; his testimony to the education of S. Aldhelm therein, *ib.*

Eleutherus, S., pope, III. 257 ; pontificate of, I. 176, 177 ; sends SS. Fuganus and Damianus to Britain, 177 ; converts Lucius, king of the Britons, III. 257 ; martyrdom of, I. 177.

Elfelmus, earl, daughter of, the mother of Harold Harefoot, III. 30.

Elfrida (*Estrilda*), daughter of Ordgar, dux of Cornwall, asked by Edgar in marriage, III. 18 ; marries Ethelwold, 19 ; visited by Edgar, refuses to disguise her beauty from him, *ib.* ; unfaithfulness of, *ib.* ; founds a nunnery at Wherwell in expiation, 20 ; becomes the second wife of Edgar, and the mother of Ethelred II., 23 ; murders S. Edward the martyr at Corff Castle, *ib.* ; hearing of the miracles done by him attempts to visit his tomb, *ib.* ; being supernaturally prevented retires to the nunnery of Wherwell and repents, according to Petrus Pictaviensis, *ib.*

Elgiva (*Algiua*), daughter of Egilbert, sons and daughter of Aethelred II., by, III. 25.

Eli the priest, judge of Israel, I. 44.

Eliakim, son of Josiah, made king of Judah by Pharaoh-Nechoh, and called Jehoiakim, I. 54 ; slays Uriah the prophet, *ib.* ; imprisons Jeremiah, *ib.* ; burns the book of Baruch, *ib.*

Elidur, son of Morwid, II. 245 ; is made king of Britain, 246 ; abdicates in favour of Artogallo, *ib.* ; crowns him, *ib.* ; is restored, *ib.* ; attacked and defeated by his brothers Urgenius and Peridurus, *ib.* ; imprisoned by them, *ib* ; liberated and a third time elevated to the throne, *ib.*, 247 ; called "pater desolatis," 247 ; dies and is buried at Carlisle, *ib.*

Elijah, prophecies, I. 48 ; fasts and is taken up into heaven, *ib.* ; translation of, to Alexandria, 348.

Elisha, prophecies, I. 48. ; death of, 49 ; buried near Herod's house at Jerusalem, 77.

Eliud, king of Britain, II. 248.

Elizabeth, S., mother of S. John Baptist, born, I. 64 ; residence of the Virgin with, 67 ; salutation of, 72.

————, daughter of the king of Hungary, visions of, III. 70 ; relict of [Louis IV.] landgrave of Thuringia, canonization of, I. 277.

Ellecroft, so called from the death of Aelle (*Elle*) of Northumbria, III. 4.

Elon, judge of Israel, I. 43, 44 ; his reign not counted by the Septuagint, *ib.*

Elphes, wife of Boethius, daughter of the king of Sicily, composes the hymn, "Felix per omnes," I. 205.

Elwine (*Elwyn*), nephew of Aethelstan, killed at Donelew, III. 10 ; buried at Malmesbury, 11 ; at the head of the bier of S. Aldhelm, 13 ; son of Ethelweard, *ib.*

Ely, see of, created by Henry I., II. 176 ; contains Cambridgeshire all but the marsh-district (*Merlonde*), 180.

——, bishops of. *See* Arundel, Barnet, Eustace.

Ely, king of Britain, II. 248.

Elynbrige, Roger de, execution of, at Gloucester, III. 197.

Emma, daughter of Richard I., duke of Normandy, II. 192; of William Longue-Epée duke of Normandy, III. 330 ; a supposed relationship, between and Robert the Devil, the cause of the Norman invasion, II. 184 ; queen of Aethelred II., sons of, by, III. 25 ; marries Cnut, 28; sons of Cnut by, *ib.*; banished with Harthacnut by Harold Harefoot, II. 184 ; banished by him, III. 30 ; friendship of, for earl Godwine, II. 184 ; recalled by Harthaknut, at his instance, III. 31; deprived of her jewels by Edward Confessor, II. 184 ; is banished at the instance of Robert, archbishop of Canter-

Emma—*cont.*
bury, *ib.* ; undergoes the ordeal of fire, *ib.*, 186. *See* Alwine, bishop of Winchester.
Emaus, disciples going to, appearance of our Lord to, I. 153 ; rebuilt, III. 259.
Empedocles, the philosopher, flourishes, I. 59 ; destroys himself by jumping into the crater of Mount Ætna, *ib.*
Empires of the World, the, I. 297, 298.
England, counties of, II. 151, 152, 153, 154 ; nine southern divided by the Thames from the rest, 152 ; sixteen eastern and northern formerly tried by Denelaga, 153 ; eight midland by Merchenlaw, *ib.* ; at present thirty-two shires in, *ib.* ; and if Northumberland be divided into six, then thirty-seven, 154 ; described and measured in hides and carucates by William the Conqueror, *ib.* ; number of, and of knights' fees, vills, and parish churches in, *ib.*
———, lawgivers and laws of, II. 154.
——— people of, character of, II. 168, 169, 170, 171 ; southern, milder than the northern, 169 ; addicted to eating and drinking, *ib.* ; to dress, *ib.* ; military aptitude of, *ib.* ; success in war of, *ib.* ; inquisitiveness of, *ib.* ; love of travel of, *ib.* ; fitness for all sorts of industry of, 170 ; love of change of, *ib.* ; opinion of pope Eugenius of, *ib.* ; confusion of ranks in costume of, *ib.* ; ancient prophecy concerning, *ib.*, 171 ; fear of its fulfilment now, *ib.*
——— name of derived from Hengist, II. 280.
——— royal line of, from Egbert to Edward the Confessor, unbroken, III. 60.
——— disturbed state of, in A.D. 1391, III. 369 ; in A.D. 1393–4, *ib.*
Englefield, battle of, III. 6.
Enmaunus, son of Malgo, II. 374 ; goes to Armorica, *ib.* ; gives his daughter to Hoel, son of Hoel the Great, *ib.*
Enniaunus, son of Artogallo, king of Britain, II. 247 ; deposed, *ib.*
Enoch, son of Cain, birth of, I. 21 ; city of, founded by Cain, *ib.*
———, son of Jared, birth and translation of, I. 22 ; invention of letters by, *ib.*
Enos, son of Seth, birth of, I. 21 ; first invokes the name of God, *ib.* ; opinion of the Hebrews on this, *ib.*, 22 ; death of, 22.
Eohric, king of East Anglia, II. 160.
Eorpwald, of East Anglia, II. 159 ; killed by a Pagan, *ib.*
Ephesus, I. 158.
———, council of, I. 347 ; III. 271 ; convoked by S. Celestinus I., I. 198 ; condemnation of Nestorius at, *ib.*
Ephrata, II. 55.
Epiphanius, bishop of Nicæa, I. 192.
Epiphany, the (*Theophania*, *Bethphania*), explanation of, I. 74.
Epiri, the, II. 46.
Epistrophus, king of the Greeks, II. 336.
Erecthonius, king of Athens, invents the quadriga, I. 40.
Eric VI., king of Denmark. *See* Abel.
—— XIII., king of Denmark. *See* Philippa, daughter of Henry IV.
Ermeric, son of Ochta, II. 308.
Esau, son of Isaac, birth of, I. 34. *See* Jacob.
Essex (*Estsex*), II. 152.
———, kingdom of, II. 158 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; first king of, Saeberht, *ib.* ; often long subject to the kings of Mercia, *ib.* ; annexed by Egbert of Wessex, *ib.* ; kings of, ruled in Essex and half of Hertfordshire, *ib.* ; commenced about the same time as the kingdom of East Anglia, *ib.* ; kings of, from Sleda to Swithraed, *ib.*, 159.
———, bishop of. *See* Cedda.
———, men of, subject to the bishop of London, II. 175 ; III. 1.
Ethandune (*Abindon*), battle of, III. 8.
Ethelburga, daughter of Ini of Wessex, II. 161.
Etheldripa, S., daughter of Anna of E. Anglia, II. 159 ; marries Tonberht of Sussex, *ib.*, 160 ; marries Egfrid of

Etheldripa, S.—*cont.*
Northumbria, 160; preserves her virginity and becomes an abbess, *ib.*; body of, discovered by Sexburga her successor uncorrupted, *ib.*
Ethelfieda (*Egelflida*) the Fair (*Candida*), daughter of Ordmerus, first wife of Edgar, III. 18.
Ethelher of East Anglia, II. 160; slain by Oswi of Northumbria, with Penda of Mercia, *ib.*
Ethelwold sent by Edgar to Ordgarus, dux of Cornwall, to ask his daughter in marriage for the king, III. 18; falls in love with her himself, *ib.*; brings back a false report of her, *ib.*; permitted by Edgar to marry her, 19; returns to Cornwall and marries Estrilda, daughter of Ordgarus, *ib.*; begs her to disguise her beauty before the king's visit, *ib.*; murdered by Edgar in Wherewell forest, *ib.*
Ethiopians and Phœnicians, the, adopt circumcision from the Egyptians, I. 47.
Eu, William d', accused of treason before William Rufus, III. 48; is castrated and blinded, *ib.*
Eudoxia, empress, idolatry of, I. 196.
Eugenia, Prothus, and Hyacinthus, SS., legend of, I. 326.
Eudosia, legend of, I. 209.
Eugenius I., pope, I. 220; III. 280.
——— II., pope, I. 240; blinded and martyred, *ib.*; III. 286.
——— III., pope, I. 271, 272; retires after his election, *ib.*; is recalled and consecrated, *ib.*; invited into France by Louis [VII.], celebrates a council at Rheims, *ib.*; III. 298.
——— IV., pope, I. 289, 290; expelled from Rome, 289; cited by the Council of Basle, *ib.*; recovers Rome, 290; deposed, *ib.*
Eulogium, the, contents of five books of, I. 3; appropriateness of title, 4; first called Compendium by the author, *ib.*, note [5].
Euphemia, S., confession of, I, 185; martyrdom of, *ib.*; III. 263.
Euphrates, king of Greece, I. 47, 48.
Europe, its boundaries, II. 2, 10, 58; assigned to Japhet after Deluge, 10; called after Europa, daughter of Agenor, 58; extent and course of, *ib.*; southern part of, "surrounded" by the Mediterranean sea, *ib.*; joins it, 82.
———, inhabitants of, descendants of Shem, I. 29.
———, colonization of, by the three sons of Alanus, I. 300.
Eusebius, bishop of Cæsarea, I. 191; his Ecclesiastical History, 3; his addition to the reigns of Joshua, Samuel, and Saul, 43.
———, bishop of Vercelli, exiled by Constantius II., I. 340; stoned, III. 267.
———, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 190; III. 265.
Eustachius, S. (*Placidus*), baptism of, III. 254; martyrdom of, I. 172; III. 254; fl. under Trajan, 322.
Eustace, nephew of Philippa of Hainault, queen of Edward III., said to have been present at the battle of Auray, and to have taken many prisoners and much booty, III. 236.
———, bishop of Ely, III. 94.
Eustorgius, S., translates the Three Magi from Constantinople to Milan, III. 71.
Eutropius, I. 3.
Eutyches (*Eutices*), heresy of. *See* S. Leo I.
Eutychianus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 184, 185; buries three hundred and forty-two martyrs, 185; III. 262.
Evander comes from Arcadia into Italy, I. 42.
———, duke of Syria, II. 536; king of, kills Borellus, 346; is killed, 347.
Evaristus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 172; martyrdom of, *ib.*; buried in the Vatican, *ib.*; III. 253.
Eve, creation of, I. 19; temptation and fall of, *ib.*; tempts Adam, *ib.* *See* Yssa.
Evesham, battle of, I. 282; III. 132.
———, monastery of, founded, III. 329.
Evestinus, S., a disciple of S. Paul, I. 165.

Ew, [Raoul] count of, constable of France, taken prisoner by Edward III., III. 207.
Exeter, see of, contains Devon and Cornwall, II. 180.
———, Walter of, I. 3.
———, John, duke of. *See* Branford.
Exodus, the, interval between descent of Jacob into Egypt and, I. 37.
Ezekiel, the prophet, prophecies in Babylon, I. 54.
Ezra (*Esdras*), restores the Books of the Law, burned by the Chaldæans, 59; comes into Judæa, I. 59; dies, *ib.*

F.

Fabianus, pope, pontificate of, I. 181, 182; legend concerning election of, 181; translates the body of S. Pontianus to Rome, 180; martyrdom of, 182; III. 260.
———————, bishop of Constantinople. *See* S. Leo I.
Falkirk, battle of, III. 169, 306; great slaughter of Scots at, *ib.*
Famine, universal, a, I. 239, or 244.
——— in Italy, I. 351, 372.
———, a great, III. 73.
———, a severe, III. 80.
———, a, in England, III. 195; a great, in England, III. 138.
———, a, described by S. Luke, III. 250.
———, universal, a, III. 286.
——— and mortality, III. 288.
———, a, III. 289.
——— and mortality, from bad air, in England, III. 298.
——— and mortality, III. 300.
———, universal, for two years, III. 307.
Farricius. *See* S. Aldhelm.
"Fasciculus Temporum," the, quoted, I. 286.
Fast of three years, a, I. 370.
Fasts, the Four Great, institution and intention of, I. 434, 435.
Faunus, son of Picus, king of Italy, I. 42.
Faustina, the daughter of Antoninus Pius, falls in love with a gladiator, I. 324; how her passion was cured, *ib.*
Faversham, monastery of, founded, III. 329.
Felicissimus, Agapitus, Laurentius, and Hyppolitus, SS., martyrdom of, I. 183, 184.
Felicitas, S., account of martyrdom of, by S. Gregory, I. 171.
———————, martyrdom of, III. 253.
Felix I., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 184; III. 262.
—— II., pope, election of, I. 192; ejects two Arian bishops from a council, *ib.*; deposed by Constantine, 193; pontificate of, *ib.*; decollation of, *ib.*; III. 268.
—— III., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 201; condemns Peter, bishop of Alexandria and Acius, *ib.*; sends SS. Germanus and Lupus to Britain, 349; III. 273.
—— IV., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 204; excommunicates the patriarch of Constantinople, *ib.*; III. 275.
—— V., pope, I. 290.
——, S., presbyter, mart., III. 263, 264.
"Feodum laicum." *See* Hugh, cardinal and legate.
Ferramund, king of the Franks. *See* Franks.
Fergant, Alan, earl of Britanny. *See* Britanny, earl of.
Ferrers (*Ferariis*), William de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Ferrex, son of Gordobugo, king of Britain, murdered by his brother Porrex, II. 234.
Festus, procurator of Judæa, III. 251.
Fife, Duncan, earl of, does homage to Edward I., III. 165; is absent in England at the coronation of Robert Bruce, 189.
Finchamstead, fountain at, emits blood, I. 268.
Finian, bishop of [Lindisfarne]. *See* Sigiberht I., of Essex.

Finland (*Wynlandia*), situation of, II. 78 ; account of people of, 79.
Fire, Greek, III, 120.
First-born, from Noah to Aaron, performed sacerdotal functions, I. 33.
Fitz-Allan. *See* Arundel.
Fitz-Hamo, Robert, vision of a monk communicated to, touching the death of William Rufus, III. 52; informs the king, who treats the matter with contempt, *ib.*
Fitz-Hugh, John, sent by king John to accompany Stephen Langton to England, III. 96.
Fitz-John, John, commands, with (Gilbert de Clare and) William de Mount-Camoys, the third (second) division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, III. 127.
Fitz-Simon, Simon, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Fitz-Walter, Robert, one of the leaders of the barons against king John, III. 112.
Fitz-Warin, Fulk, present at the battle of Gladsmuir, III. 200.
Fitz-William, William, junior, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.
Flambard, Ralph, the exactions of, III. 47 ; makes the taking of a stag a capital crime, 48 ; imprisoned, 56.
Flanders [Baldwin], first count of, I. 372.
————, countess of, daughter of Richard II., duke of Normandy, II. 192 ; daughter of Richard I., duke of Normandy, III. 330.
———— [Charles], count of, assassinated, III. 297.
Flandria, a boundary of Brabant, II. 85 ; a province of Gallia Belgica, 100 ; boundaries and description of, and of people of, *ib.*
Flemings and French go to Le Bay for salt, III. 336; defeated by the earl of Hereford, *ib.*
————, the, declare themselves injured by the English sailors, III. 401 ; take many English prisoners, *ib.*
Flemyng, William, knight, execution of, at Cardiff, III. 197.
Flint Castle, II. 143.
Florence, II. 111.
Florentines, the, refuse to be governed by Gregory XI., III. 335 ; bull of the pope commanding general expulsion of, and confiscation of goods of, published at Paul's Cross, *ib.* ; mayor of London seals doors of, and takes them to the king, *ib.*
Florian, reign of, I. 334.
Fluina, wife of Japhet, enters the ark, I. 27.
Follo, tribune of Gaul, under the emperor Leo. *See* Arthur.
Forest, forfeit of, clerks to be taken before secular judge for, III. 81.
———, New, the, deaths of royal persons in, III. 41.
Formosus, pope, I. 246, 247 ; escapes from pope John VIII., 247 ; is degraded and restored by pope Marinus, 245, 247; mutilation of body of, 247, 249 ; recovery of body of, 249 ; III. 289.
Fortinus, S., bishop of Lyons, martyrdom of, I. 325.
Fortunate Isles, the, account of, by Pliny and Isidorus, II. 14 ; erroneously believed to be identical with Paradise, *ib.* ; their situation according to Isidorus, *ib.*
Fortunatus (Venantius), writes the "Gesta S. Martini," I. 210 ; removes from Italy to Tours, *ib.* ; is made bishop of Poitiers, 211.
Fosse-way, the, runs from south to north, II. 145, 146 ; commences at Totnes, goes through Devon, Somerset, Bath, Cirencester, Cotteswold, near Coventry, to Leicester, through Lincoln, and Durham, to Berwick, and terminates at Caithness, 146.
Francia, present name of Gaul, II. 76, 100 ; called from the Franks, 100 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; Paris, chief city of, *ib.* ; laid waste by Henry V. of England, I. 289 ; by John, duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; a remarkable fountain in, II. 123. *See* Gallia.
———, (or Franconia), a boundary of Thuringia, II. 72. *See* Franconia.

Francis, S., of Assisium, renounces the world, III. 96, 97 ; founds the order of Minorites, I. 276 ; III. 97 ; death of, I. 277 ; canonization of, 278 ; translation of, *ib.*

Franconia, a province of Germany, called from the Franks, II. 99 ; chief town, Frankfort (*Helenopolis*), on the Maine (*Mogus*) ; boundaries of : Thuringia, the Danube, Suecia, the Rhine territory, [metropolis Mentz (*Maguntia*), on the Rhine], *ib.* ; description of, *ib.*

Frankfort (*Helenopolis*). *See* Franconia.

Franks (*Franci*), the, descendants of the Trojans, II. 120 ; a name of the Sicambri, from Francus, *ib.* ; or named from their "feritas" (*frak*), 121 ; or from being *freed* by Charlemagne, after his return from Spain, 120 ; as Sicambri, under Francus, elect Ferramund their king, and reduce the country between Sicambria and the Rhine, 121 ; elect Clovis, *ib.* ; cross the Rhine and recover the territory up to the Loire from the Romans, *ib.* ; empire of the West passes to, 122.

Frator, a region in Egypt, II. 55.

Frea, worship of, II. 277 ; Friday called from, and dedicated to, by the Saxons, *ib.*

Freculphus quoted, I. 23, 25.

Frederick Barbarossa, supports the opponents of Alexander III., I. 274 ; is reconciled to the pope, *ib.* ; reign of, I. 386, 387.

Frederick [II.], elected emperor, I. 389 ; crowned by Honorius [III.], *ib.* ; invades Apulia, 279 ; deposed and excommunicated by him, *ib.* ; III. 303 ; deposed at the Council of Lyons, III. 138 ; murders his son in prison, I. 389 ; death of, at Naples, 279 ; death of, III. 138, 303.

——— III., emperor, I. 295.

French, the, defeated in Turkey, I. 287 ; come to England, III. 299.

——— and Scotch, treaty between, and intended invasion of England by, III. 358 ; fear to give battle to Richard II., *ib.*

Fretum, derivation of, II. 5 ; Gaditanum or Gaditarium, the, formed by the irruption of the Atlantic ocean, 3 ; Siculum formed by the disruption of Sicily from Italy, 5.

Friars, the alms of the, abolished, III. 355.

——— of the Four Orders, in the army of archbishop Scrope and the earl of Nottingham, treatment of, by the soldiers of the earl of Westmoreland, III. 407.

——— Mendicants, ordered to work, III. 335 ; not summoned to the Council of Oxford [? London], 412.

——— Minors, Order of, founded by S. Francis of Assisium, I. 276 ; III. 97 ; confirmed, 116.

——— ——— the, offer a sum to pope Boniface [VIII.] to be allowed to hold possessions, III. 170.

——— ———, [John de Tyssyngton], one of the, a regent at Oxford, condemns the heresy of Wickliffe on Transubstantiation, III. 351 ; "determination" of, still preserved among the University archives, *ib.*

——— ——— ———, a general chapter of, held at Leicester, III. 389 ; injurious words against Henry IV. prohibited at, *ib.* ; power granted at, to every president of imprisoning the utterers, *ib.* ; eight friars hanged, *ib.*

——— ———, one, of the convent of, at Aylesbury accused to the king of treasonable words by a lay brother, III. 390 ; brought before the king, *ib.* ; taken before a judge at Westminster with a secular priest, sentenced, and drawn, hanged, and beheaded, *ib.*, 391.

——— ——— one, of the convent of, at Bristol, remark of the dying idiot respecting, 394.

——— ——— one, of the convent of, at Cambridge, accused of speaking against Henry IV., III. 389 ; sentenced to fight

Friars Minors—*cont.*
her with one hand tied, *ib.* ; accusation against him withdrawn, *ib.* ; the king pacified by the archbishop of Canterbury, a friend of, *ib.*
————————, convent of, at Cardiff spared by Owen Glyndwr, III. 401 ; ask him for their books, &c. in the castle, *ib.* ; his reply to, *ib.*
————————, one, of the convent of, at Leicester discloses a conspiracy for the restoration of Richard II. to Henry IV., III. 391 ; accuses several of his brother friars before the king and the lords at London, *ib.* ; captured by a Welshman, 394 ; confesses he had informed against his brethren, and is put to death, *ib.*
————————, one, of the convent of, at Leicester, a Magister Theologiæ, accused of treasonable words against Henry IV., 391 ; eight of brother-friars of, accused of an intention to join an assembly near Oxford for the discovery of Richard II., *ib.* ; brought before the king with his brethren, *ib.* ; confesses to having interpreted the prophecy of [John], a canon of Bridlington, fancifully, *ib.* ; declares Richard II. to be the true heir to the crown, *ib.* ; is sent to the Tower with his colleagues, 392 ; is tried at Westminster. *ib.* ; accused, with his colleagues, of declaring in sermons that Richard II. is alive, and of exciting the people to seek him in Scotland, *ib.* ; of enjoining as a penance journeys in quest of him into Wales, *ib.*, 393 ; of collecting by mendicancy a large sum and sending it to Owen Glyndwr, to aid him in invading England, 393 ; of sending into Scotland for troops to be assembled near Oxford for the purpose of finding Richard II., *ib.* ; the Londoners and the men of Holbourn refuse to try them, *ib.* ; a jury of Islington and Highgate impannelled, who find them guilty, *ib.* ; they are sentenced to be drawn, hanged, and beheaded, *ib.* ; preaches a sermon at Tyburn and declares his innocence, *ib.* ; execution of, *ib.* ; removal of bodies of, to the convent, *ib.* ; the men of Islington and Highgate excuse themselves to the colleagues of, *ib.*, 394 ; head of, taken to Oxford, and crimes of, proclaimed by the University crier, 394.
————————two, of the convent of Leicester, taken by the household of the prince [of Wales] in Lichfield and executed, 394.
————————, convent of, at London, appeals to the pope against the minister of the Order, III. 403 ; and to the mayor of London, 404 ; send to the general of the Order, *ib.* ; get the king informed of the facts, *ib.* ; messenger of, receives letters from the king to the general, *ib.* ; testimony given by the burgesses of London before the king to the good conduct of, *ib.* ; messenger of, goes to the papal court and gets letters from the papal commissary appointing commissioners to enquire and act in the matter, *ib.* ; inform against him to the archbishop of Canterbury and the king, 405 ; the commissioners petition the king to command appearance of, at the chapter of Oxford, convoked by them, *ib.* ; they obtain the king's writ for this, *ib.*
————————, the, in England, schism amongst, III. 403, 404, 405 ; the minister of, revokes ancient privileges, especially of the convent of London, 403 ; appoints a warden and lector, *ib.* ; refuses to confirm the election of the warden made by them, *ib.* ; commanded by the mayor of London to keep the peace, 404 ; yields and goes on a visitation in the north, *ib.* ; appeals to the king and accuses the convent of London of disorder, *ib.* ; receives letters from the king, *ib.* ; commissioners appointed by the papal commissary report excesses of, 405 ; prohibited by the king from leaving England, *ib.* ; cited by the commissioners to Colchester Castle, *ib.* ; leaves England without appearing before

Friars Minors—*cont.*
them, *ib.*; denounced by them, *ib.*; vicar of, inhibits the friars from attending the chapter at Oxford convoked by the commissioners, *ib.* *See* London, convent of; Henry IV.
————, provincial of, not to hold office for more than seven years, III. 409; bull of Gregory XII., commanding this, *ib.*
———— of Ware unable to perform service by reason of a flood, III. 413.
————, one of the, petitions pope Alexander V. for an Irish see, III. 416; recommendation of the pope to, *ib.*
————, general of, sent by pope John XXII. to England to ask aid against the king of Naples and the anti-pope, III. 419, 420; remains in England at the expense of the Order collecting money, 420.
——— Preachers, provincial of, present at a great council, III. 337; begs to be excused from expressing an opinion on the claim of Gregory XI. to be lord of the temporalities of the kingdom, *ib.*; suggests an appeal to the Holy Spirit for guidance, 338.
————, obtain a dispensation from pope (Gregory XI.) to eat flesh, 339; empowered by statute to preach against the heresies of the Lollards, 417.
————, one of the, made a cardinal by Gregory XII., III. 413.
Frideswida, S., death of, I. 233; III. 283; sepulture of, I. 233.
————, translation of, III. 75.
Frisel, Simon, killed near Perth, III. 190; said to be a distant relative of Edward I., 191.
Frisia (*Frigium*), a boundary of Westphalia, II. 73; extends from the mouth of the Rhine to the Danish sea, 74; people of, called Frisones and Germans, *ib.*; character of, 75; a boundary of Saxony, 108.
Frisones, the. *See* Frisia.
Frost, I. 244.
Frost, a long, I. 371.
——, a severe, III. 50, 232.
——, a long, III. 288.
——, a, of fifteen weeks in England, III. 413.
Fuganus and Damianus, SS., sent to Britain by S. Eleutherus, I. 177; baptise king Lucius and the Britons, II. 264; ecclesiastical division of Britain by, *ib.*; return to Rome, *ib.*
Fulbert, S., bishop fl., I. 378; bishop of Chartres, fl., III. 22; sacred compositions of, I. 378; vision and cure of, III. 22.
Fulgentius, bishop, the orator, fl., I. 349; preaches, III. 273.
————, king of Britain, II. 247.

G.

Gad, the seer, prophesies, I. 45.
Gades, Island of, II. 2; divides Europe and Africa, 48; origin of name of, *ib.*; products of, *ib*; site and products of, II. 114.
Gætulia, a province of Africa, II. 41, 57; called from the Gethæ, 41; site of, 43, 57.
Gaius, II. 336.
Gaius Metellus, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352.
Galatia, a province of Asia Minor, called from the Galli, II. 53, 54; who were afterwards named Gallo-Græci, *ib.* *See* Rucea.
Galba, reign of, I. 318.
Galeas, II. 384.
Gallienus, reign of, I. 332.
Galienus (*Galen*), fl., I. 324.
Galilee, a region of Palestine, called so from the whiteness of its inhabitants, II. 26, 52; divided into Upper and Lower, 26; their position, *ib.*, 52; divided into Galilee of the Gentiles, and Galilee, 55; their situation, *ib.*; description of, according to Isidorus, 26.
Gallacia, the eastern boundary of Norway II. 80.

Gallia, situation of, II. 75 ; called from the whiteness of its people, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.*, 76 ; produces fierce and acute men, 75, 105 ; formerly divided into Belgica (*Belga*), Celtica, and Togata, 76 ; inhabited now by the Franci, and called Francia, *ib.* *See* letter F., *ib.* ; temp. Julius Cæsar, divided into : Gallia Belgica from the Rhine to the Seine, 120 ; from the Seine to the Loire, Gallia Lugdunensis, now called Burgundia Superior, *ib.* ; from the Loire to the Garonne, Gallia Aquitannica, *ib.* ; Gallia Celtica, the upper part of Aquitannica, *ib.* ; from the Garonne to the Mediterranean, Gallia Narbonensis, now Gothia, and Gascony, *ib.* ; people of, defeat the Romans, 122 ; reduced by Julius Cæsar, *ib.* ; occupied by the Romans, *ib.* ; then by the Vandals and Huns, *ib.* ; then by the Suevi and Burgundi, *ib.* ; then by the Goths and Sicambri, *ib.*, 123 ; then by the Norwegians and Danes, 123 ; provinces of : Flanders, Brabant, Picardy, Normandy, Poitou, Aquitain, Brittany, Anjou, Gascony, Burgundy, &c, *ib.* ; taken from Rome by king Arthur, 330 ; duces of, furnish troops to him against the Romans, 335.

——, conversion of. *See* SS. Alcuinus, Martialis, Potentianus, and Savinianus.

Gallicia, a province of Spain, II. 101 ; named from the whiteness of its people, *ib.* ; colonised by the Greeks after the Trojan war, *ib.*

Galluc, or Gaulauc, Saresburiensis, II. 326, 354.

Gallus, the colleague of Allectus, beheaded, II. 265 ; gives his name to "Gallebrook," or Walbrook, also called Wallo.

Gallus and Volusian, reign of, I. 332.

———, S., abbot, disciple of S. Columban, fl., I. 357.

Galomini, the, a nomadic people of Africa, II. 41, 42 ; called so from Gaulon, near Æthiopia, 42.

Ganhumara, or Genwara, queen of king Arthur, II. 318 ; escapes from York to Caerleon, and enters the nunnery of S. Julius Martyr, 361.

Ganhumara, or Genwara—*cont.*

Ganges, the, account of, from Pliny, II. 90, 91.

Garamantes, the, account of, II. 42, 46.

Garamantia, situation of, II. 45, 57 ; fountain there, *ib.* ; Garama, chief town of, *ib.*

Gascony, anciently part of Aquitain, II. 111 ; site and boundaries of, *ib.* ; separated from the Provincia Tholosana by the Garonne, which enters the ocean near Bordeaux, the metropolis of, 112.

Gaulales, the, II. 44.

Gaverston, Peter de, banished by Edward I., III. 190 ; recalled by Edward II., and created earl of Cornwall, 193 ; marries [Margaret] daughter of the 7th earl of Gloucester, *ib.* ; is captured by the earl of Warwick in presence of the earls of Lancaster, Pembroke, and Hereford, *ib.* ; is beheaded, *ib.* ; is buried at Langley in the presence of Edward II., *ib.* ; beheaded (near Warwick), III. 307.

Gelasius I., S., bishop of Rome, pontificate of, I. 201, 202 ; III. 273 ; account by, of martyrdom of SS. Peter and Paul, I. 166, 167.

———— II., pope, I. 268 ; III. 297.

Gella, account of, II. 55.

Gemel, account of, II. 55.

Geneviève, S., of Paris, fl., I. 202, 348.

Gengulfus, S., martyrdom of, I. 235 ; a judgment on his wife, *ib.*

Genoa, taken by the Saracens, I. 250.

Geoffrey of Monmouth, I. 3 ; II. 359.

George, S., martyrdom of, I. 188, 336 ; III. 263.

Gerara, account of, II. 55.

Gerard, S., of Hungary, martyrdom of, I. 260.

Gerinus Carnotensis brings twelve "pares" of Gaul to the coronation of king Arthur, II. 327 ; troops supplied by them, 335 ; sent as a herald to Lucius by king Arthur, 342 ; engaged in a skirmish with the Romans, *ib.* ; commands a troop of

Gerinus Carnotensis—*cont.*
infantry in the army of king Arthur against the Romans, 348 ; penetrates the division of Alifatina and Catellus, and attacks that of the king of the Parthi, 352.
Gerloch, duchess of Aquitain, daughter of Rollo, II. 191.
Germania, situation and boundaries of, II. 60 ; people of, *ib.* ; products of, *ib.* ; divided into Superior near the Northern Ocean, and Inferior near the Rhine, *ib.* *See* Alemannia.
Germanus, S., bishop of Paris, fl., I. 211 ; dies, and is buried in the church of S. Germain-des-Près, *ib.*
——— and Lupus, SS., come to England against Pelagius, III. 272 ; S. Germanus ob.; *ib.*
Geroncius, king of Britain, II. 247.
Geroudon, Cistercian abbey of, founded by Robert, 2nd earl of Leicester, III. 71.
Gersan, son of Moses (and Zipporah), I. 39.
Gervase and Prothais, SS., martyrdom of, I. 156 ; translation of, III. 71.
Gervasius, king of the Orcades, II. 319.
Gessur, account of, II. 55.
Geta, son of Severus, killed by Bassianus, II. 265.
Ghent, privileges of, abolished at the instance of the Flemings, III. 355 ; men of, appeal to England for aid, *ib.*
———, John of, third son of Edward III., duke of Lancaster in right of the daughter of Henry, late duke of Lancaster, his wife, III. 333 ; sent to the Black Prince, *ib.* ; marries the eldest daughter of Peter the Cruel, 334 ; invades France with the duke of Brittany, 336 ; goes to Bruges to treat on peace with the duke of Berri, *ib.* ; returns unsuccessful, *ib.* ; conditions insisted on by the French with, *ib.* ; enters France at Calkewelhulle near Calais, *ib.* ; the French march against, *ib.* ; they treat on peace with, in order to gain time for getting in the harvest, *ib.* ; returns to England, *ib.* ; mortality from dysentery in army of, *ib.* ; attempts to take S. Malo
Ghent, John of—*cont.*
in Normandy, but is repulsed, 339 ; made guardian of Richard II., 340 ; is accused by a Carmelite friar of treason, 350 ; the Savoy, a manor of, burned by the mob under Wat the Tyler, 352 ; said to be about to invade England with the Scots, 353 ; expedition of, into Spain, 358, 359; makes a treaty with [Henry III.], king of Spain (Castille), and marries his eldest daughter [Catherine], to him, 359 ; marries his daughter [Philippa] to [John I.], king of Portugal, *ib.* ; mortality in army of, in Spain, 367 ; the king of Spain decides to give battle to, *ib.* ; goes into Portugal and gives his daughter in marriage to the king, *ib.* ; spreads a report in Spain, that he had sent to England for another army, *ib.* ; in consequence the king of Spain compounds with, *ib.* ; returns to England, *ib.* ; sent to France to treat of peace with the king of France at Amiens, 369 ; expenses of, and his suite paid by the king, *ib.* ; explains the conditions of peace to the parliament at London, *ib.*; opinion of, as to the quartering of the French arms and the occupation of Calais, *ib.* ; petitions the parliament on the claim of his son Henry to the crown of England, *ib.* ; opposed by the earl of March, *ib.* ; asserts the descent of his son by the mother's side from Edmund "Crouchback," eldest son of Henry III., *ib.*, 370 ; silenced by the king, 370 ; petitions the king to give him the duchy of Aquitain, *ib.* ; petition of, assented to, *ib.* ; goes into Aquitain, *ib.* ; excluded by Bordeaux, &c., *ib.* ; returns to England, 371 ; summoned by the king to the installation of Thomas de Arundel, as archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.* ; reads the appeal and accusation against the earl of Arundel, 374 ; declares the royal pardon and indulgence granted to him to have been revoked, 375 ; advises him to put himself on the king's mercy, *ib.* ; declares the sentence against him, *ib.* ;

Ghent, John of—*cont.*
informs the king of a treasonable accusation made against him by the duke of Norfolk, 379; dies and is buried in S. Paul's Church, London, 381. *See* Lancaster, duke of.
Giants, birth of, I. 24-26.
Giant, Spanish, a, combat of, with king Arthur, II. 337, 338, 339, 340, 341.
Gideon, judge of Israel, I. 41.
Giffard, John, execution of, at Cardiff, III. 197.
Giffert, king of the Wallenses, compelled to join the triumph of Eadgar on the Dee, III. 17.
Gilbert, bishop of Rheims, afterwards bishop of Ravenna, and then pope Silvester II., I. 253. *See* Silvester II.
Gilbertus Poretanus, fl. in France, III. 66; comments on the books of Boethius, "De Trinitate," et "De Hebdomadibus," *ib.*
Gildas, I. 3; translates the laws of Dunwallo and Martia from British into Latin, II. 154; testimony of, to the vices of the Britons, 273.
Giles, bishop of Hereford, III. 94.
——, S., count of, sister of, and the sultan Saphadin, legend concerning, III. 78.
——, fl., I. 227, 231, 369; III. 282.
——, church of, III. 21.
Gillamor, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Gillamurius, king of Hibernia, II. 326; troops supplied to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.
Gillapatrik, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Gillasel, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Gillawm, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Gladsmuir, battle of, III. 200, 308.
Glass invented in Rome, temp. Tiberius, I. 72.
Glastonbury, formerly called the island of Avallon, I. 157.
—— abbey, first founded by permission of Arviragus, I. 157; III. 328; a second time, by S. Aldhelm, III. 328; donation of Edmund to, 11, 12; S. Dunstan, abbot of, 13; dispute at, between abbot Thurstan and the convent, I. 265, 416, 417; III. 295.
Glaucus invents welding, I. 53, 308.
Globe, inhabited, survey of, undertaken by command of Julius Cæsar, II. 1; completed in the consulate of Saturnius, *ib.*; seas, islands, mountains, provinces, cities, rivers, and nations, in number of, *ib.*; circumference of, *ib.*; length of, from east to west, or from India to the columns of Hercules, 2; breadth of, from the southern shore of the Oceanus Æthiopicus to the mouth of the river Tanais, *ib.*; division of, into Asia, Europe, and Africa, according to S. Augustine and Pliny, *ib.*; according to Isidorus, 10; division of, according to Orosius, Isidorus, and Pliny, among sons of Noah, *ib.*
Gloucester, founded by Claudius Cæsar, and called Cladiocestria, II. 150; founded temp. Arviragus, and called Kaerglon by Claudius, 260; or from Gloy, son of Claudius, Gloycestre, *ib.*
——, monastery of, founded, III. 329.
——, Gilbert de Clare, 6th earl of. *See* Clare.
——, Gilbert (de Clare), 8th earl of, kills many of the Welsh near Lantilawhr, III. 145. *See* Robert, archbishop of Canterbury.
——, 10th earl of, killed at Bannockburn, III. 195.
——, Ralph, earl of, accompanies Richard I. to the Holy Land, III. 81.
——, Robert, 1st earl of, natural son of Henry I., takes the oath of fealty to the empress Maud, III. 60; (*Henricus*), present at the second marriage of the empress, 61; seeks aid of the duke (earl) of Anjou against Stephen, 65; takes Warham, and puts the garrison to death, *ib*; taken prisoner in the Castle of Devizes, 73; is exchanged for king Stephen, *ib.*
——, Audeley, Hugh, 11th earl of. *See* Audeley.
——, Despensier (*Le Spensier*), [Thomas], 12th earl of. *See* Despenser.

Gloucester, Thomas, 4th earl of Buckingham, son of Edward III., 1st duke of sent to aid the duke of Britanny, III. 350; ill success of expedition of, 351; returns to England, *ib.*; created 1st duke of, by Richard II., III. 358, 361; and his party advise the impeachment of Michael de la Pole, chancellor, 359; appointed one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown-revenues of Richard II., 360; sent for, with the earls of Arundel and Warwick, by the king, 364; warned of an ambush, they assemble their forces in Hornsey (*Haryngay*) Wood, *ib.*; is brought by the archbishop of Canterbury before the king, *ib.*; reply of, to the king, *ib.*; demands a parliament, *ib.*; goes with the earls and their army to the field of S. John, *ib.*, 365; they send for the mayor of London, and are received by the city, 365; summoned by the king to the Tower of London, they refuse to go, *ib.*; joined by the earl of Derby and the earl marshal, they meet the duke of Ireland (at Radcot Bridge), near Oxford, *ib.*; they behead the chief councillor of the duke of Ireland, and seize the royal standard, *ib.*; destroy the rebels at Radcot Bridge, 366; summon a parliament at Westminster, *ib.*; proceedings of, *ib.*; they exhibit articles against the duke of Ireland and others; and sentence them, *ib.*; agree never to meet three at a time in the presence of the king, *ib.*; oppose the conditions of the peace with France at the parliament of London, 369; oppose the petition of John of Ghent for a grant of the duchy of Aquitain, 370; (the duke only) taken at his manor of Pleshy by the king, 372; committed to the custody of the earl of Nottingham, and confined in the castle of Calais, *ib.*; the appellants against, for lese majesty, 373; replies to their accusations in an English letter, *ib.*; ordered to be put to death by the king, *ib.*; smothered secretly by the servants of the earl of Nottingham at Calais, *ib.*;

Gloucester, Thomas—*cont.*
they report the natural death of, *ib.*; is sentenced to perpetual disherison after death, 375, 376; households of, and his adherents, deprived of their possessions by Richard II., III. 379. *See* Henry IV.; Serle, William.

Gloucestershire, III. 153.

Glyndwr, Owen de, complaint of, to parliament against lord Grey de Ruthyn, III. 388; ill success of, *ib.*; advice of the bishop of S. Asaph to parliament touching, *ib.*; reply of parliament touching, *ib.*; takes lord Grey prisoner, 389; money said to have been sent to, by the Minorite Friars in aid of an invasion of England, 393; captures Edmund Mortimer, 394; is asked to join the Percies, *ib.*; refuses to trust them, *ib.*; wastes South Wales and lays siege to Cardiff, 401; takes the town, *ib.*; burns it all but one street, in which was a Minorite convent, *ib.*; destroys the castle, and carries off the treasure, *ib.*; reply of, to Minorites asking for their books, &c., *ib.*

————————, son of, taken by the English, and imprisoned in the Tower of London, III. 402.

Gnavius and Melga, invasion of Britain by, II. 271; expulsion of, by the Romans, *ib.* *See* Gwanus.

Gocelinus, bishop of London, applies for aid against Gwanus to the king of Armorica, II. 272, 273; lands with Constantine at Totnes, 273; crowns him at London, *ib.*

Godboldus, king of the Orcades, killed at Hatfield Moor, II. 375.

Godfrey, duke of Boulogne, a leader of the First Crusade, I. 383; made king of Jerusalem, 384.

————, duke of Spoleto. *See* Normans, the.

Godrik, or Guthorm, king of Denmark, appoints Hingwar and Hubba to command his fleet against England, III. 3; becomes king of East Anglia, II. 160.

Godstow, nunnery of (Linc. dioc.), founded by king John for the soul of Fair Rosamond, III. 111.

Godwine, earl of Kent, advises Harthacnut to recall queen Emma, III. 31 ; treachery of, to Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., II. 194, 195 ; III. 46 ; banished by Edward Confessor, II. 183 ; is reconciled, and gives his sons, Wlnoth and Haco (*Hatus*), son of Sweyn, his son, as hostages to the king, who sends them to William, duke of Normandy, *ib.* ; death of, *ib.*, 185, 195 ; friendship of queen Emma for, 185.

Goître, inhabitants of Burgundy and of Carinthia suffer from, II. 87, 102.

Gorbonian, II. 326.

Gorbonianus, son of Morwid, king of Britain, II. 245 ; founds Grantham and Grantabrigia, *ib.* ; dies and is buried at Trinovantum, *ib.* ; son of, king of Britain, 247.

Gordian (junior), reign of, I. 330.

——— and Ephimachus, SS., mart., III. 268.

Gordinus, king of the Danes, missing after the battle of Ethandune, III. 8 ; presented to Aelfred the Great by the Danes, *ib.* ; baptised at Westminster, *ib.*

Gordobugo, king of Britain, II. 233 ; sons of, *ib.* ; goes to Gaul to Siwardus, king of the Franks, 234.

Gordon (*Gurdoun*), Adam, a rebel, with others, settles near the road between Alton and Farnham Castle, III. 133 ; robs the country, 134 ; fights a single combat with prince Edward, *ib.* ; surrenders to him, and is sent to the queen-mother at Guilford, *ib.* ; is restored to his inheritance, *ib.*

Gordoun, Bertram, wounds Richard I. before the Castle of Chalus-Chabrol, III. 84 ; is brought before the king, *ib.* ; their conversation, *ib.* ; receives his pardon, *ib.*

Gorgades (*Gorgones*), islands, site of, II. 114.

Gorgonius, S., mart., III. 263.

Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, present at a banquet at Trinovantum, II. 303 ; leaves it without permission, 304 ; refuses to return, *ib.* ; seeks aid against Uther Pendragon from the Irish, *ib.*, places his wife Igern in Tintagol, *ib.* ; is besieged by the king, *ib.* ; is killed, 306.

Gothia, a province of Scythia Inferior, called from Magos, son of Japhet, II. 32, 53 ; boundaries of, 32. *See* Scythia.

Gothlandia, island of, II. 32 ; its trade with Germany, Gaul, &c., *ib.*

Goths, the, anciently called Gethæ, II. 32 ; their character, *ib.* ; the Daci, Gætuli, and Amazons originate from, *ib.*

Goun, worn by the English, description of, III. 230 ; etymology of, *ib.*

Grafasantes, the, II. 46.

Grandison (*Gransoun*), Otho de, joins the Crusade, III. 136.

Gratian, emperor, I. 343 ; killed at Lyons by Maximus, II. 270.

———, the monk, composes Decreta, I. 386.

Gratianus (Municeps), sent to Britain by Maximus, II. 272 ; lands at Portsmouth, *ib.* ; massacres the Pagans, *ib.* ; crowned king of Britain, *ib.* ; put to death by the Britons, *ib.*

Gravesend (*Grauysende*), attacked by the French and Spanish, III. 340 ; manor of the king (Richard II.) there burned, *ib.*

Greece and Italy, first inhabitants of, according to Origen and Demosthenes, I. 299.

———, called from Græcus, II. 63 ; seven provinces of : Dalmatici, Epiri, Hellades, Thessaly, Macedonia, Achaia, Crete, and the Cyclades, *ib.* ; description of, and people of, *ib.*, 64 ; character of men of, 75, 105.

Greeks, the, descendants of Shem, I. 29 ; invent letters, 40 ; adulterate the flour of the Christians in the Second Crusade, 386.

Gregory the Great, S., (archdeacon of the apostolic see), pun of, in reference to the English boys, II. 167 ; sends S. Augustine to England, *ib.* ; composes his "Moralia super Job," I. 212 ; pontificate of, 213, 214 ; III. 277 ; his theological works, I. 212 ; ordains the stations in Lent, 213 ; mutilates the Pagan idols, *ib.* ; appoints a great Litany for the plague, *ib.*, 214 ; first uses the title "Servus servorum Dei," in his letters apostolic, 214 ; his works in danger of being burned by his enemies, but saved by his deacon Peter, *ib.* ; ob., III. 278 ; account by, of appearances in Italy, I. 353.

——— II., pope, I. 231 ; excommunicates the emperor Leo, 232.

——— III., pope, I. 232, 233 ; excommunicates the emperor Leo, 232 ; convokes a council at Rome, 233 ; sends for assistance against Luitprand to Charles Martel, *ib.* ; creates an archbishop of Vienna, *ib.* ; III. 283.

——— IV., pope, I. 240, 241 ; III. 287.

——— V., pope, I. 255 ; called formerly Bruno, *ib.* ; III. 292.

——— VI., pope, I. 261 ; his severity against robbers, *ib.* ; his disputes with the cardinals, *ib.* ; legend concerning, *ib.* ; purchases the papacy of Benedict IX., I. 260 ; III. 294 ; ejected by the emperor Henry III., III. 294.

——— VII. (Hildebrand), pope, I. 264, 265 ; III. 295 ; taken prisoner by Censius, the son of the emperor Henry IV., and rescued by the Romans, I. 265 ; excommunicates the emperor, *ib.* ; deposed by him, *ib.* ; besieged by him in the Castle of S. Angelo, *ib.* ; relieved by Robert Guiscard, *ib.* ; restored, and dies in Apulia, *ib.* ; killed by poison, 266 ; ob., III. 296. *See* Henry IV., Emperor ; Hildebrand.

——— VIII., pope, I. 275 ; opposes the emperor Henry IV., I. 383 ; absolves his subjects from their allegiance, *ib.* ; pronounces the emperor a heretic, *ib.* *See* Henry IV., Emperor.

——— IX., pope, I. 277 ; succ., III. 302 ; death of, I. 278. *See* Reymund.

——— X., pope, I. 281 ; election of (Theobald, archdeacon of Liege), III. 136 ; goes to Acre with prince Edward, *ib* ; holds a General Council at Lyons, 141 ; cons., 304 ; ob., 305.

——— XI., pope, I. 285 ; III. 335 ; dissension between, and the Florentines, *ib.* ; issues a bull against them, *ib.* ; claims the lordship of all temporalities as Christ's vicar, and the spiritual and chief lordship of the kingdom of England, by gift of king John, III. 337 ; commands Edward III. to levy a tallage in his aid against the Florentines, *ib.* ; a council summoned to consider claim of, *ib.* ; supported by the archbishop of Canterbury, the prelates, and John Owtred, *ib.* 338 ; opposed by Mardesley and Asshburne, 338 ; finally opposed by the archbishop and the prelates, *ib.*, 339 ; donation of king John in support of claim of, declared void by the temporal lords, 339 ; nuntios sent to, with the reply of both, *ib.* ; sent for by the Romans, 340 ; goes to Rome, *ib.* ; dies at Rome, *ib.* ; cardinals threatened with death by the Romans, unless they elect a Roman or an Italian in room of, *ib.* ; bull of, against Wickliffe, sent to the university of Oxford, 347 ; conclusions recited in bull of, referred to the regents, 348.

——— XII., pope, I. 287 ; election of, III. 409 ; oath taken by, after election, *ib.* ; bull of, directed to the general of the Friars Minors, limiting the tenure of the office of provincial to seven years, *ib.* ; agreement between, and the antipope to resign, *ib.* ; sends the general of the Friars Minors to Henry IV., and, through Almain, and prelates, and nobles, to publish his proposal of resignation, *ib.* ; to quiet the cardinals, pretends he

Gregory XII—*cont.*
is about to leave Rome to resign, *ib.* ; promises [Ladislas], king of Naples, to make him emperor, if he will hold Rome in his absence, and prevent the election of another pope, *ib.* ; leaves Rome with his cardinals, 411 ; arrives at Lucca, and hearing of the siege of Rome by Ladislas, refuses to proceed or to resign, *ib.* ; accused of perjury by his cardinals, who retire to Pisa, *ib.* ; excommunicates them, and creates others, *ib.* ; they appeal against, to a General Council, &c., *ib.* ; they prevent the escape of, from Lucca, 412 ; they appeal for aid against, to various potentates and prelates, *ib.* ; escapes from Lucca, 413 ; writes to Henry IV., and the archbishops, and the duke of York, *ib.* ; arrives at Sienna (*Cenas*) and creates cardinals, *ib.* ; deposed by the Council of Pisa, 414 ; remains in a castle near Venice, *ib.* ; declares that he had absolved himself from his oath, and had commissioned the anti-pope to do the same, *ib.* ; escapes into the kingdom of Naples by the Adriatic, 418 ; aided by Charles [Ladislas] of Naples, proclaims himself pope, *ib.* ; threat against, by John XXII., *ib.* ; aid against, and Ladislas asked of Henry IV. by the pope, 419, 420 ; submission of, to the pope, 420 ; is created a cardinal and legate in the kingdom of Naples, *ib.*

Gregory Nazianzen, S., fl., I. 194.

———, S., bishop of Tours, fl., I. 355.

Grey, [Reginald de], of Ruthyn, 3rd lord, alleged to have seized some of the lands of Owen de Glyndwr, in Wales, III. 388 ; undertakes the defence of North Wales against Glyndwr, *ib.* ; taken prisoner by him, 389 ; ransom and liberation of, 395.

Grifud, II. 326.

Grimbaldus (with the Lombards) defeats the Franks in Italy, I. 358, 359 ; dies, 359.

Gris-Motoun, and eighty "lances" defeated by John Chandos and James de Audeley, with ten "lances," III. 219 ; the first to run away, *ib.*

Gris-Motoun—*cont.*

Grosse-teste, Robert, consecrated at Reading bishop (of Lincoln), by S. Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, III. 138 ; death of, *ib.*, III. 303 ; character of, 138.

Grym, the merchant. *See* Havelok the Dane.

Grymesby. *See* Havelok the Dane.

Gubioun, Hugh, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

Guentolinus, king of Britain, II. 244.

Guerth, brother of Harold II., advises him to defer giving battle to duke William until his forces are increased, II. 199 ; is killed at the battle of Hastings, *ib.*

Guesclin, Bertrand du, with a body of English, assists Henry the Bastard against Peter the Cruel, III. 333 ; expels the English from the Great Company, 334 ; takes cities and castles in Aquitain, *ib.*

Guibert, bishop of Ravenna, elected pope by the emperor Henry IV., I. 265.

Guichardus, duke of Pictavia, defeated by Hoelus, II. 324, 326 ; rescues the escort of the Roman captives under Cador and Borellus, 346 ; commands under king Arthur, against the Romans, 348.

Guiderius, king of the Britons, refuses tribute to Rome, I. 76, 77, 84, 89.

Guienne, the duchy of, divided from the realm of France by the Cher, III. 218.

Guiscard, Robert, children of, I. 384 ; defeats the emperor Alexius Comnenus, *ib.* *See* Emperor Henry IV., Gregory VII.

Guiterius and others attack Cador and Borellus, II. 346 ; killed by the Britons, 347.

Gulf (Sinus), definition of, and examples, II. 45. *See* Mediterranean Sea, Ocean.

Gundoferus, prefect of Aquileia. *See* S. Mark, Evangelist.

Gunnasius, king of the Orcades, II. 326 ; troops supplied to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.

Gurguncius, king of Britain, II. 248.
Gurgustius, son of Riuallo, king of Britain, II. 233.
Gurmundus, king of the Africans, reduces Hibernia, II. 365 ; assists the Saxons to expel Katericus, *ib.* ; gives Loegria to the Saxons, 366 ; dies, *ib.* ; in Gaul, II. 125 ; called " Gudrum " by William of Malmesbury, III. 9, 10. *See* Gwanus, Ireland ; Malmesbury, Castle of.
Guthlac, S., anchorite, ob. at Croyland, III. 282.
Gwalenses (Welsh), etymology of, II. 384.
Gwalo, the papal legate, sent to aid king John against Louis of France, III. 109 ; excommunications pronounced by, against the barons, of little effect on account of the popular feeling against the king, *ib.* ; present at the coronation of Henry III., 113 ; convokes a great council at Bristol, 113, 114 ; is recalled, 114.
———, chief of the Gwalenses, II. 384.
Gwanus (? also Gnavius, 271), escapes the massacre of the Pagans by Gratianus Municeps, II. 272 ; again invades Britain, *ib.* ; called by some Gurmundus from Africa, *ib.* ; by William of Malmesbury, Gutrum, *ib.* ; is killed near Calne by Constantine, 273. *See* Gnavius.
Gwendolen, queen of Locrinus, drowns Estrilda, his concubine, and her daughter Habran in the Severn, II. 222, 223 ; orders the river to be called Habran, 223 ; reigns until the majority of her son Madhan, *ib* ; resigns her crown to him, *ib.* ; governs Cornwall, *ib.*
Gwider, son of Kymbelinus, king of Britain, I. 89 ; II. 257 ; refuses the tribute to the Romans, *ib.* ; assembles an army to oppose the invasion of Claudius, *ib.* ; is killed by Hamo, 258.
Gwido, anti-pope (Paschal), condemned by Alexander III., I. 273.
Gwithlac, king of the Danes, carries off Elfyngle, wife of Brennius, II. 237 ; lands in Northumbria with her, and is carried to Belinus, *ib.* ; becomes tributary to him, *ib.* ; is liberated, and returns with Elfyngle to Denmark, 239.
Gwithlac—*cont.*
Gyllamurius, king of Hibernia, assists the Saxons against Arthur, 315 ; taken prisoner, 319.
Gysois, S., I. 192.

H.

Habakkuk, quoted as to Nativity, I. 69.
Hacluyt, Edmund, imprisoned, III. 198.
Hail storms, I. 312 ; III. 90.
Hainault, John of, with an army of Hainaulters, lands in England with queen Isabella, III. 198.
———, the countess of, intercedes between Edward III. and Philip VI. of France, III. 205.
Hainaulters, the, burn the parish of S. Nicholas in Ousgate at York, III. 199 ; conflict between, and the townspeople, *ib.*, 200.
Hales (*Haylys*), monastery of, founded by Henry III., III. 138.
——, the abbot of, defeated and killed near Tadcastre, III. 411. *See* Northumberland, Henry de Percy, earl of.
[——, Robert], master of the Hospitallers, and treasurer of England, put to death by the mob under Wat the Tyler, III. 353.
Halidon Hill, battle of, III. 201, 308.
Halo, a solar, III. 64, 296.
Halos and parhelia seen in the year of the banishment of Thomas à Beket, III. 74 ; also in the year of the commencement of the dissensions between S. Thomas of Canterbury and Henry II., 80.
Hamo (or Haumond), kills Gwider, II. 258 ; is killed by Arviragus and thrown into the ford near Hampton, *ib.* ; gives his name to the place (*Haumondestoun*), *ib.*
Hampshire (*Hamptschir*), II. 152.

Hanaldus, king of the Danes, baptism of, I. 370.

Hardyng. *See* Cistercian Order, the.

Harecourt [Geoffrey de], accompanies Edward III. on the Cressy expedition, III. 207.

Harlotte, a kind of shoe, description of, III. 231.

Harold I. (Harefoot), putative son of Cnut, succeeds, I. 259 ; III. 293 ; reported to be the son of Cnut by the daughter of the earl Elfelm, reign of, III. 30 ; elected by the Danes and Londoners, *ib.* ; opposed by the Angles, *ib.* ; banishes Emma, *ib.* ; dies at Oxford and is buried at Westminster, *ib.*

——— Hardràda, supports Tostig against Harold II., II. 197 ; reaches Stamford, *ib.* ; is defeated, *ib.*, III. 33 ; and killed, III. 33.

——— [II.], son of Godwine, earl of Kent, obtains permission from Edward Confessor to visit Wlnoth and Haco in Normandy, II. 183 ; stays at Bosham, 196 ; is wrecked on the coast of Ponthieu, II. 183, 196 ; III. 33 ; made prisoner, II. 196 ; III. 33 ; sends to William, duke of Normandy, *ib.* ; is given up to him, II. 183, 196 ; III. 33 ; promise of Edward to the duke communicated to, II. 183, 184 ; oath of, to William, II. 184, 196 ; III. 33 ; returns to England, *ib.* ; informs the king of the transaction, II. 184 ; some of the English nobles favour pretensions of, 197 ; crowns himself, *ib.* ; causes himself to be crowned, III. 33 ; defeats Tostig and Harold Hardràda at Stamford, II. 197 ; defeats Harold Hardràda, III. 33 ; monopolises the booty, 197 ; III. 34 ; is deserted by his colleagues, *ib.* ; reasons of, for not sending to pope Alexander II., III. 35 ; sends spies into the Norman camp, 36 ; their report to, *ib.* ; sends back the messengers of William unsatisfied, II. 198 ; marches with a few stipendaries towards Hastings, *ib.* ; is deserted by the people, disregards the advice of his brother Guerth, 199 ; army of, spends the night before the battle of Hastings in drinking and singing, III. 37 ; fights on foot with his brothers, *ib.* ; is killed, II. 199 ; III. 38 ; body of, mutilated by a Norman soldier, and begged of duke William by his mother, III. 38 ; buried by her at Waltham in the church of the Holy Cross, *ib.* *See* William I.

———, son of Harold II. *See* Magnus (III.), king of the Norwegians.

Harthaknut, son of Cnut and Emma, II. 194 ; son of Cnut, III. 30 ; coronation of, by the Danes and Angles, *ib.* ; reign of, II. 194 ; III. 30 ; dies at Lambeth (*Lamhuda*), *ib.* ; death of, III. 294 ; and is buried at Winchester, III. 31 ; recalls Emma from exile by the advice of earl Godwine, *ib.* ; number of dishes eaten at supper by, II. 169.

Hasting, Henry de, warden of Kenilworth Castle, III. 135.

Hastings, John de, lord of Abergavenny (*Bergeveni*), III. 151.

Hatfield Moor (*Hedfeld*), battle of, II. 375.

Haumondus, Pagan king of Northumbria, expelled by Aethelstan, III. 10.

Havelok the Dane, story of, II. 378, 379 ; son of the king of the Danes, II. 238 ; placed under the care of a duke by his dying father, 378 ; life of, attempted by his guardian, *ib.* ; escapes and meets with Grym, an English merchant, *ib.* ; taken to Grymesby by him, *ib.* ; to the court of king Edelfrid, *ib.* ; marries Goldborough, heiress to the crown of Britain, II. 239 ; Argentile, niece of king Ethelbert given in marriage to, by Edelfrid, 379 ; becomes master of Britain, *ib.* ; is killed by the Saxons and buried at Stonehenge, *ib.*

Hawle, John, and Richard Shakyll, refuse to produce their prisoner, the count de Denia, III. 342 ; are committed to the Tower of London, *ib.* ; escape to Westminster, *ib.* ; are attacked there by the

Hawle, John—*cont.*
constable of the Tower, Hawle is killed during high mass, while Shakyll returns, *ib.*

Heber, son of Sala, birth of, I. 30 ; death of, *ib.*

Hebrews, chronology of, from Adam to the Passion, III. 246.

Heer, son of Hyder, death of, II. 347.

Hegesippus, an authority used by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3 ; fl., 325.

Helen, rape of, I. 42 ; recapture of, by Castor and Pollux, *ib.*

Helena, empress, character of, II. 267 ; surnamed "Stabularia," *ib.* ; discovers the Holy Cross at Jerusalem, 268 ; translation of, I. 371.

Helfgrim, sent by Hugo, count of Paris, with presents to Aethelstan, III. 12.

Hellas (or Helladia), called from Hellena, II. 67 ; divided into Bœotia and Peloponnesus, 68. *See* Hellespont.

Hellespont, the, II. 61 ; Ophiades live on borders of, *ib.* ; situation of, *ib.* ; bridge built by [Xerxes] over, *ib.* ; called from Hellas, *ib.* ; part of the Mediterranean sea, III. 3.

Hengist explains to Vortigern the customs and religion of the Saxons, II. 276, 277 ; begs a walled city of Vortigern, 277 ; second request of, 278 ; builds a castle, now called Lancaster, *ib.* ; sends to Germany for his daughter Rowena *ib.* ; invites Vortigern to a banquet, *ib.* ; begins to domineer over the king, 279 ; sends secretly to Germany for aid against Vortimer, *ib.* ; defeated in Kent by Vortimer, *ib.* ; sent for by Rowena, 280 ; "explanation" of his invasion to the Britains, *ib.* ; arranges a massacre of the Britons at Ambresbury, *ib.* ; gives his name to Britain, "Hengistlond," *ib.* ; first king of Kent, 157 ; taken prisoner by Eldolf, duke of Gloucester, II. 302 ; beheaded by Escol at Kemingburg, *ib.* ; cruelty of, 307. *See* Horsa.

Henry, king of Africa, the Arian, banishes three hundred bishops into Sardinia, I. 349.

——— II. the Bastard, made king of Castille, III. 333 ; sends to Bertrand du Guesclin for aid against Peter the Cruel, *ib.* ; defeated (at Najara), 334.

——— III., king of Castille, treaty of, with John of Ghent, III. 359 ; marries [Catherine] the eldest daughter of, *ib.* *See* Ghent, John of.

———, brother of [Alfonso X.], king of Castille, joins Conradin against Charles (of Anjou), king of Sicily, I. 392.

——— I. (the Fowler), son of Otho, duke of Saxony, emperor, reign of, I. 374, 375.

——— II. (the Lame), emperor, reign of, I. 378, 379 ; gives his sister in marriage to Stephen, king of the Hungarians, I. 379.

——— III. (the Black), emperor, crowned by pope Clement II., I. 260 ; reign of, 381, 382.

——— IV., emperor, reign of, I. 382, 383, 384 ; disputes with pope Gregory VII., 383 ; does penance to him, 265 ; calls a council at Brixen, *ib.* ; elects Guibert, bishop of Ravenna, pope, *ib.*, 383 ; deposes Gregory, *ib.* ; besieges him in the Castle of S. Angelo, 265, 384 ; defeated by Robert Guiscard, *ib.* ; escapes to Sienna, 265. *See* Gregory VII.

——— V., reign of, I. 384, 385 ; disputes with pope Calistus [II.], 385 ; marries Matilda, daughter of Henry I., king of England, III. 59.

——— VI., reign of, I. 388 ; coronation of, by pope Celestin [III.], I. 275.

———, duke of Saxony (the Lion), marries Matilda, daughter of Henry II. of England, III. 71 ; sons of, by her, *ib.*

———, son of Henry, duke of Saxony, and Matilda, daughter of Henry II., III. 71.

Henry [I.] succeeds William (Rufus), III. 41 ; permits Robert Courthose to resume possession of Normandy, *ib.* ; his mother's possessions left to, by his father, 44 ; orders the payment of a sum to Fitz-

Henry [I.]—*cont.*
Arthur for the land in which to bury the Conqueror, 45 ; elected king, 56 ; reforms the abuses of his brother's reign, *ib.*; imprisons Ranulf Flambard, *ib.* ; is crowned at London, *ib.* ; marries Maud, daughter of Malcolm [III.], king of Scots, 57 ; description of his person and character, *ib.* ; founds the monastery of Reading, *ib.* ; his two sons by queen Maud drowned on the same day, 58 ; makes a truce with Robert Courthose, *ib.* ; discord with him, *ib.* ; passes into Normandy, *ib.* ; is joined by the magnates of Normandy, *ib.*; imprisons Robert for life, *ib.* ; betroths his daughter Maud to the emperor Henry V., 59 ; comes to England with her, *ib.* ; settles the succession, *ib.* ; the lords swear fealty to her, 60 ; sends her into Normandy to be betrothed to the son (Geoffrey) of Fulk, earl of Anjou, *ib.* ; he returns from Normandy to England, 62 ; goes to Normandy, *ib.* ; returns to England with his daughter, *ib.* ; passes into Normandy for the last time, *ib.* ; falls ill, 63 ; arranges his affairs and dies, *ib.*, 298 ; his heart taken to Rouen, 63 ; his interior to the monastery of S. Mary-des-Près, *ib.* ; his body kept at Caen, and ultimately carried to Reading, and buried there, *ib.* ; character of, *ib.* ; grants all the liberties conceded by Edward the Confessor by charter, *ib.* ; his licentiousness, 40.

———, surnamed "Curtmantel," son of the empress Maud and Geoffrey Plantagenet, III. 64 ; king of England (Henry II.), *ib.* ; lands in England, 65 ; besieges the Castle of Malmesbury, 66 ; treaty between, and Stephen, *ib.*, 67, 74 , made the successor of Stephen, 67 ; succeeds him, I. 273 ; III. 298 ; is summoned from Normandy, III. 68 ; lands in England, *ib.* ; is crowned, *ib.*, 74 ; at Westminster, by Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, 68 ; destroys the castles given by Stephen to his adherents, 69 ;

Henry—*cont.*
seizes the vills, &c., alienated by him, *ib.* ; makes new coinages, I. 274 ; III. 69, 75, 300 ; lays siege to and takes Toulouse, III. 70 ; writes to the abbot of Pontigny, 71 ; orders the coronation of prince Henry, 72, 299 ; crosses to Normandy, and marries the princess Eleanor to Alphonso (III.), (*Edelfus*), king of Castille (*Alemannia*, 72) ; makes William (the Lion) of Scotland and David his brother swear fealty to himself and prince Henry, 80 ; ill fortune of, after the murder of Thomas à Beket, 87 ; invades and reduces Ireland, *ib.* ; supernatural warning to, on his return, at Cardiff Castle, 87, 88 ; rupture between, and prince Henry, 72, 75, 88, 299 ; three sons of, take part against, 72, 88, 89 ; the prince supported by the kings of France and Scotland, 72 ; William, king of Scotland rebels against, 88 ; warning to, by an Irishman, 88 ; by Philip of East-Derby in Normandy, *ib.*, 89 ; [Louis VII.], king of France, in opposition to, 89 ; is reconciled to prince Henry, 72, 75 ; inquires secretly of the king of France the names of the abettors of the prince, 72 ; his fury at the answer, *ib.* ; pays 40,000 marks to Rome for the murder of S. Thomas, 75 ; the crown of Jerusalem offered to, *ib.* ; forgives the prince, 73 ; is crowned a second time, I. 275 ; does penance for the murder of à Beket, III. 80 ; expels the canons from Waltham, and introduces regulars, *ib.*, 90 ; takes an oath to undertake a crusade, 89 ; compounds by promising to found three monasteries in England, 90 ; execution of his promise by, *ib.* ; receives into his custody [Adelais] the daughter of the king of France, *ib.* ; debauches her, *ib.* ; attempts to divorce queen Eleanor in order to marry her, *ib.* ; imprisons the queen for adultery, 89 ; story of "Fair Rosamond," *ib.* ; seeks the friendship of cardinal Hugelin, 90 ; petitions the king of France to give Adelais in marriage to

Henry—*cont.*
his son John, with Poitou and Anjou, *ib.*; letter of, sent by the king to his son Richard, *ib.*; takes part in the Third Crusade, I. 387; falls ill at Chinon, III. 79; dies, I. 387; III. 76, 79, 300; is buried at Fontevraud by the archbishops of Tours and Treves, in the presence of the count of Poitou (Rich. I.), 80; makes a donation to the Cistercian Order, *ib.*; sons of, *ib.*

——— [III.], son of king John and queen Isabella, birth of, I. 388; III. 111, 301; coronation of, by Peter, bishop of Winchester, at Gloucester, III. 113; fealty and homage sworn to, at the council of Bristol, *ib.*; Welsh refuse to obey, 114; truce between, and prince Louis, *ib.*; defeats him at Lincoln, *ib.*; confirms Magna Carta, 115; a subsidy granted to, *ib.*; takes Bedford Castle, *ib.*; lays the first stone of the new work at Westminster (Abbey), 116; is present at the translation of S. Thomas of Canterbury, *ib.*; assents to the translation of the see of Old Sarum, *ib.*; coronation of, at Westminster, by Stephen Langton, archbishop of Canterbury, 138; at London, 301; dispute between, and the barons, relative to the suspension of Hubert de Burgh, 116, 117; marries Eleanor, second daughter of the count of Provence, at Canterbury, *ib.*; defeats Roderick, king of Connaught, II. 125; sends troops to rescue the papal legate at Oseney, 118; children of, by queen Eleanor, 119; founds the monasteries of Hales and Burnham, 138; receives the cross from Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, 138; confirms Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta, 120; a fifteenth granted to, in consequence, *ib.*; the confirmation and grant confirmed at the parliament of Oxford, *ib.*; advised by prince Edward to get absolution from his oath from the pope, *ib.*; does so, *ib.*; war commenced between the barons and, *ib.*; makes war upon Llewelyn ap Gruffud, 303; goes to France and resigns Normandy, 138, 139; remains in the Tower of London with the queen, 121; a peace between, and the barons, *ib.*, 122; party of, fortifies and victuals Windsor Castle, 122; Henry de Almain and others adhere to, *ib.*; S. Louis of France mediates between the barons and, *ib.*; justiciaries and barons of the exchequer of, imprisoned by the Londoners, *ib.*; takes Northampton, 123; proceeds to Nottingham, *ib.*; takes Kingston Castle, 124; proceeds to Winchelsea, and receives the men of the Cinque Ports into his peace, *ib.*; reaches Lewes, and is received in the priory, *ib.*; answer of, to the barons' letter, 125, 126; foragers of, attacked by the barons near Lewes, 127; division of army of, at the battle of Lewes, *ib.*; commands the third division in person, *ib.*; is taken prisoner, I. 281; III. 127, 304; and detained in the priory, 128; prince Edward given to De Montfort as a hostage for, *ib.*; dismisses his followers, *ib.*; writes to the garrison of Tunbridge Castle to return home, *ib.*, 129; taken about with De Montfort, 129, 131, 132; restored to power after the battle of Evesham, 133; convokes a parliament at Winchester, *ib.*; deprives the city of London of its ancient privileges and liberties, *ib.*; disinherits the rebel leaders, *ib.*; bestows their lands on his followers, *ib.*; prepares a shrine for the body of S. Edward Confessor, 135; furnishes incendiaries at Norwich, 137; dies, *ib.*, 304; is buried at Westminster, 137; devoutness of, *ib.*; reply to S. Louis of France as to preference of the mass to sermons, *ib.*; personal appearance of, *ib.*; described as a lynx by Merlin, *ib.*

Henry IV. [Henry de Bolingbroke], son of John of Ghent, created earl of Derby, III. 361; joins the duke of Gloucester and his adherents, 365; claims of, to the crown, pressed by his father, 369;

Henry IV.—*cont.*
descent of, on his mother's side, from Edmund Crouchback, "eldest" son of Henry III., *ib.*, 370; pardon granted to, for his expedition with the duke of Gloucester against the duke of Ireland, 374; created duke of Hereford, 377; informs his father of a treasonable accusation made to him by the duke of Norfolk against Richard II., 379; appeals against the duke for the treason and the murder of the duke of Gloucester, *ib.*; a day appointed for a duel between, and the duke of Coventry, *ib.*; banished for ten years by the king, *ib.*; an annuity granted to, *ib.*; forbidden to communicate with Thomas de Arundel, *ib.*; the king's fear of, *ib.*; after the death of his father lands in the North of England with Thomas Arundel and the son of the earl, 381; is joined by the earl of Northumberland, *ib.*; writes to the city of London, calling himself duke of Lancaster, and seneschal of the kingdom, and declaring his wish to restore it to its former liberty, *ib.*; the Londoners adhere to, *ib.*; the royal castles delivered to, *ib.*; besieges the treasurer and others in Bristol Castle, *ib.*; captures and beheads them, *ib.*; goes to the king with Thomas de Arundel at Conway Castle, and announces to him the necessity of his abdication, 382; proceeds to Westminster, 383; enters the hall, *ib.*; declares his descent from Henry III., *ib.*; and his claim to the crown, which is assented to, *ib.*, 384; is led by the archbishops of Canterbury and York to the throne, 384; the great seal, &c., given up to and returned by, *ib.*; coronation of, announced by the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; coronation of, *ib.*; first anointed with the holy oil, *ib.*; continues the parliament, *ib.*; examines the adherents of Richard II., *ib.*; prohibits condemnation without liberty of reply, 385; annuls the proceedings of the last parliament of Richard II., *ib.*; creates

Henry IV.—*cont.*
the son of the earl of Arundel earl, *ib.*; recalls the earl of Warwick and John de Cobham from exile, *ib.*; causes the charters of which Richard had compelled the signature to be publicly burned at London, *ib.*; creates his son Henry prince of Wales, *ib.*; degrades all the dukes created in the last parliament of Richard II., *ib.*; forces Walden to restore his receipts from the see of Canterbury to Thomas de Arundel, *ib.*; grants him his life at Arundel's entreaty, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Windsor, *ib.*; hastiludes at court of, *ib.*; plot of the earls of Huntingdon, Kent, and Salisbury against, discovered to, by one of the household, 386; warns the archbishop of Canterbury of, *ib.*; changes his route, and moves by night to London, *ib.*; truce between, and the French broken, 387; borrows money of the Londoners, who remind him of his promise to abstain from loans and tallage, *ib.*; invades Scotland, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; calls a parliament at London, and levies a tenth and fifteenth, *ib.*; pays the expenses of the emperor Manuel II. in England, 388; presents him with 4,000*l.*, *ib.*; rebellion in Wales against, *ib.*; invades North Wales and the Isle of Anglesea, *ib.*; army of, massacre the Friars Minors of Lamasia, *ib.*; returns to England, Glyndwr not appearing, *ib.*; delivers the captive friars to the order, 389; orders restitution to be made to the convent, *ib.*; wishes to introduce English friars, *ib.*; injurious words against prohibited at a chapter of the Minorites at Leicester, *ib.*; a friar of Cambridge accused of speaking against, *ib.*; pacified by the archbishop of Canterbury, a friend of the friar, *ib.*; discontent of the people with, *ib.*; interview between, and a Minorite of Aylesbury accused of treasonable words, 390; conspiracy against, discovered to, by a Minorite of Leicester, 391; nine of the friars accused by him

Henry IV.—*cont.*
before, *ib.* ; examines a master in theology, *ib.*, 392 ; refuses the prayer of the minister of the order of Minorites, 392 ; decides to punish the offenders, *ib.* ; invades Wales, and is stayed by great storms, 394 ; loses many of his army from the cold, *ib.* ; marries [Joan], widow of John de Montfort, duchess of Brittany, daughter of the king of Navarre, 395 ; holds a parliament at London, and levies a tenth and fifteenth, *ib.* ; the commons inquire of, what has become of the treasure of Richard II., *ib.* ; reply of, to, *ib.* ; the commons request the examination of officials of, *ib.* ; refusal of, *ib.* ; is challenged by the duke of Orleans, *ib.* ; refuses to fight, *ib.* ; abusive language of the duke to, *ib.* ; refuses the request of the earl of Northumberland, 396 ; refuses to ransom Edmund Mortimer at the request of Henry Percy, *ib.* ; calls him a traitor and draws on him, *ib.* ; proclamation of Henry Percy against, *ib.* ; assembles an army and meets the Percies near Shrewsbury, *ib.* ; treats with Henry, 397 ; advises him to put himself in the royal grace, *ib.* ; defeats them, *ib.* ; visited by a hermit, whom he orders to be beheaded, *ib.* ; in great danger at the battle of Shrewsbury, *ib.* ; invades Wales, but soon returns, *ib.* ; sends the Scotch earls, prisoners of Henry Percy, to London, *ib.* ; denies their assertion that Richard II. is alive in Scotland, *ib.* ; summons the earl of Northumberland, *ib.* ; the clergy grant a half-tenth at request of, 399 ; summons a parliament and asks a large tallage, *ib.* ; pleads in excuse the war with the Welsh, Scots, Irish, and French in Gascony, the custody of Calais, and the English sea, *ib.* ; reply of commons to, *ib.* ; petitioned to diminish the tolls by the commons, *ib.* ; refuses to do so, *ib.*, 400 ; dispute between, and the commons lasts from Hilary to Easter, 400 ; demands a tax on land, *ib.* ; it is conceded

Henry IV.—*cont.*
by the parliament to, under certain conditions as to its levy and expenditure, *ib.* ; apparently assents to the conditions, *ib.* ; the earl of Northumberland swears fealty to, *ib.* ; aliens removed from household of, *ib.* ; officials of, accused of plundering him, *ib.* ; their great wealth, *ib.* ; reply of, to the accusation, *ib.* ; summons the keeper of Richard II. before parliament to explain the appearance of a letter from him, *ib.* ; his answer to, *ib.* ; the men of Cardiff send for aid to, 401 ; pays no attention to their request, *ib.* ; abbots of S. Osith and Colchester pay a fine to, 402 ; calls a parliament (the Layman's Parliament), at Coventry, *ib.* ; excludes men learned in law from it, *ib.* ; exacts two-tenths and two-fifteenths, *ib.* ; inquiry of, after the murderers of the duke of Gloucester, *ib.* ; marries Joan, duchess of Brittany, at Winchester, 403 ; marriage of princess Blanche, the eldest daughter of, to [Louis] duke of Bavaria, *ib.* ; sends letters to the general of the Order of Minorites, 404 ; on the appeal of the minister of the Order in England sends letters revoking these, *ib.* ; testimony before, to the good behaviour of the convent of London, *ib.* ; excesses of the minister reported to, by the papal commissioners, 405 ; prohibits him from leaving England, *ib.* ; friars inform against him to, *ib.* ; grants writs to the commissioners for the protection of the chapter of Oxford, *ib.* ; said to have been stricken with incurable leprosy at the death of archbishop Scrope, *ib.* ; confers the office of earl marshal on the earl of Westmoreland, *ib.* ; archbishop Scrope and the earl of Nottingham presented to, at Pomfret Castle, 407 ; goes to York, *ib.* ; burgesses of, implore mercy of, *ib.* ; a knight of the hall of, threatens that if the archbishop is spared all (the household) will desert the king, *ib.* ; the archbishop of Canterbury appeals to, in favour of Scrope, *ib.* ; refuses to

Henry IV.—*cont.*
listen to him, *ib.*; goes to dinner with him, *ib.*, 408; is stricken with leprosy, *ib.*; confiscates the goods of the city, *ib.*; marches into the North against the rebels, *ib.*; besieges Berwick Castle, takes it, and puts the garrison to death, *ib.*; marches into South Wales, and relieves Coyfy Castle, *ib.*; his baggage and jewels taken by the Welsh, *ib.*; message of, to the pope touching the execution of Scrope, *ib.*; calls a parliament at Westminster, 409; subsidy granted to, by the clergy, *ib.*; lay subsidy refused until promise of, to render account of receipts be fulfilled, *ib.*; reply of, *ib.*; reply of officers of, *ib.*; gives his daughter [Philippa] in marriage to [Eric] of Denmark, *ib.*; a fifteenth granted to, by the commons, *ib.*; refuses aid to the duke of Burgundy, 410; neglects to pay the garrison at Calais, 411; complaint of merchants of Calais to, *ib.*; borrows money of them, *ib.*; present at the Council of Oxford [?London] 412; receives Francis, archbishop of Bordeaux, in Westminster Hall, *ib.*, 413; sermon preached by the archbishop before, 413; assistance promised by, to the Church, and England to be represented at the General Council, *ib.*; letter to, from Gregory XII., *ib.*; receives an account of the proceedings of the Council of Pisa from the bishop of Salisbury, 416; commands a procession to be ordered by the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; calls a parliament and demands a tenth and a half from the clergy and a fifteenth and a half from the laity, *ib.*; statute of, against the Lollards, 417; a papal nuncio sent to, and to the king of France, to treat on peace between England and France, *ib.*; last parliament of meets again, *ib.*; levies a subsidy, clerical and lay, *ib.*; commands all curati to return to their churches, *ib.*; they retire from the court of, *ib.*; ambassadors sent to France by, to treat on peace, 418; aid sought from, by the duke of Burgundy, 419; sends an army to assist him under the earls of Arundel and Kyme, *ib.*; calls a parliament and imposes an income-tax, *ib.*; aid of, asked by the duke of Orleans, *ib.*; promises of the duke to, *ib.*; creates his son Thomas duke of Clarence, *ib.*; sends him, with the duke of York, and 20,000 men to seize Aquitain, *ib.*; asked by the pope to send the duke of Clarence to Rome to command the papal army against the king of Naples and Gregory XII., *ib.*, 420; and to permit the nuncio to preach a crusade in England, and to collect money by indulgence, 420; refuses, *ib.*; why, *ib.*; petitioned to resign his crown to prince Henry, *ib.*, 421; by the advice of a few lords refuses to do so, 421; notwithstanding his leprosy travels through a large part of England, *ib.*; returns to London, and dies in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster, *ib.*; buried at Canterbury, *ib.*

Henry V., eldest son of Henry IV., created prince of Wales, III. 385; wounded at the battle of Shrewsbury, 397, 398; the daughter of [John Sans Peur], duke of Burgundy, offered in marriage to, by the duke, 419; convention entered into between, and the bishop of Winchester, and nearly all the nobles to petition the king to resign his crown to, 420, 421; duke of Cornwall and earl of Chester, 421; born at Monmouth, *ib.*; is crowned at Westminster, *ib.*; dies miserably, I. 289.

——— [I.], king of France, ob., I. 264; III. 295.

——— [I.], king of Navarre, death of, III. 141; [Blanche], widow of, marries Edmund, earl of Lancaster, son of Henry III., *ib.*; children of, by him, *ib.*

———, prince, son of Henry II. of England, is betrothed to [Margaret], daughter of Louis VII. of France, III. 70; married to her, 89; coronation of, I. 274; III. 72, 74, 92, 299; is excom-

Henry [I.]—*cont.*
municated, 74; rupture between, and his father, I. 274; III. 72, 75, 89, 299; is supported by the king of France, 72, 88; and Scotland, 72; reconciled, 72, 75; at the instance of Louis [VII.] of France, 72; falls ill and receives the forgiveness of his father, 73; dies abroad, 75; death of, I. 275; III. 91; is buried at London, III. 73; fealty of William the Lion of Scotland and David his brother to, 80; verses on, 91.
———, son of [Richard], king of Almain, takes the side of the barons against Henry III., III. 121; is taken prisoner, *ib.*; to be released on the reconciliation between the barons and the king, *ib.*; goes over to the king in the parliament at London, 122; commands, with his father, the second division of the royal army at the battle of Lewes, 127; is given as a hostage for his father to De Montfort, 128; placed in Dover Castle, 129.
———, son of Robert Courthose, killed in the New Forest, III. 41.
———, of Lancaster, lord Monmouth, son of Edmund (Crouchback), earl of Lancaster, and [Blanche], queen of Navarre, III. 141.
——— (or Haimeric), son of S. Stephen, king of the Hungarians, and his wife, virginity and death of, I. 259.
Henton, near Bath, Carthusian house of, III. 79.
Heptarchy, the, kingdoms of, II. 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168.
Heraclius, the emperor, translates the body of S. Anastatius, the monk, to Rome, I. 218; defeats Phocas, I. 356; reign of, 356, 357, 358; removes the Holy Cross to Constantinople, 357; learns from the stars that his kingdom is in danger from a circumcised people, and commands the conversion of the Jews, subjects of the king of the Franks, 357; becomes a Jacobite by disputing with the patriarch Zacharias, *ib.*
[Heraclius], the patriarch of Jerusalem, visits England, III. 75.
Herculanus, S., slain by the king of the Goths, I. 352.
Hercules, life and exploits of, I. 40, 41; dispute as to the extent of the name, 41; becomes epileptic, and destroys himself, 42.
Hereford (Co.), battle between the English and Welsh in, III. 86.
Herefordshire (*Herfordeschir*), II. 153.
Hereford, see of, contains Heref. and Salop, II. 180.
———, bishops of. *See* Giles, Thomas.
——— Humphrey [de Bohun], 6th earl of, commands, with Henry de Montfort, the first division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, III. 127.
———, Humphrey de Bohun, 7th earl of, refuses to accompany Edward I. to Flanders, III. 167; attends the parliament, which refuses a subsidy until Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta shall have been confirmed, *ib.*; is pardoned for his refusal, 168; son of, taken prisoner at Bannockburn, 195; drawn and hanged, 196.
——— [Humphrey de Bohun], 11th earl of, seizes the ships of the Flemings and French, laden with salt from Le Bay, and takes them into Southampton, III. 336; said to have been hanged by order of Edward III., *ib.*; disappears after the death of the earl of Warwick, *ib.*
Herman, bishop of Wilton, builds the bell-tower at Malmesbury, I. 262; III. 294.
Hermes, Eventius, Theodolus, and Alexander, SS., martyrdom of, 173.
——— Pastor, S., writes a treatise on Easter, I. 175; legend on, *ib.*
Hermit, vision of, reported to Innocent VI. while a cardinal, I. 284.
———, a, lives upon the Holy Eucharist, taken once a month, for fifteen years, I. 293.
———, the, who predicted the misfortunes of Richard II. visits Henry IV., III.

Hermes—*cont.*
397 ; is ordered to be beheaded by him, *ib.*
Hermon, account of, II. 55.
Herod [Antipas], deposed and banished, I. 316 ; tetrarch of Galilee, II. 97 ; tetrarch of Trachonitis, summoned to Rome, loses his tetrarchy, III. 249 ; escapes to Spain with his wife Herodias, *ib.*
———, tetrarch of Ituræa [? Archelaus], kills himself, III. 247.
Herods, three, — Ascalonita, Antipas, Agrippa, — parentage of and verses on, I. 80.
Herod, house of, at Jerusalem, I. 77. *See* Elisha, S. John Baptist, Obadiah.
Hertfordshire (*Hertfordschire*), II. 152.
Hespera Ultima, a name of Hispania, II. 70.
Hesperides, islands, why so called, II. 114; site of, *ib.*
Hexham, Wilfred, bishop of York, restored to, II. 178 ; Tunberht, bishop of, *ib.* ; see of, lasts to the invasion of the Danes, 179.
Heythorp, Carthusians of. *See* Ela, countess of Salisbury.
Hezekiah, king of Judah, reigns, I. 52 ; dies, *ib.* ; his eulogy in the book of Kings, 53.
Hiderus, son of Ur, assists the Britons at Augustodunum, II. 344.
Hilarion, S., I. 192.
Hilda, S., abbess of Streaneshalch, or Whitby, death of, I. 222 ; III. 281 ; is buried at Glastonbury, *ib.*
Hildebrand, cardinal, legate in Gaul (afterwards Gregory VII.), proceeds against simoniacal bishops, I. 382 ; legend of one of them, *ib.*, 383.
Hillary, S., elected bishop of Poitiers, I. 181 ; erroneously said to have composed the Athanasian creed, I. 192; fl., I. 343.
———, pope, pontificate of, I. 200 ; III. 272 ; addition made by, to the "Gloria in excelsis," I. 201.
Hingwar and Hubba chosen by Guthorm (*Godrik*) to command the Danes invading England, III. 3 ; fight the battle of Englefield, 6.
Hippocrates, the physician, flourishes, I. 59.
Hippolytus, S., bishop, fl., I. 329.
Hippopotamus, the, abundant in Egypt, II. 28, 29.
Hirelgas, death of, II. 346.
———, nephew of Bedwerus, avenges the death of his uncle, II. 354.
Hirtacus, king of the Parthi, II. 336 ; commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 351 ; attacked by Gerinus and Boso, 352.
Histria, situation of, II. 62.
Hlotheri (*Lotharius*), king of Kent, succeeds Egbert, II. 369 ; killed in a battle with the South Saxons, *ib.*
Hoelus (Magnus), son of the sister of Arthur, by Budicius, king of Armorica, sent for to aid the Britons against the Saxons, II. 310 ; arrives at Southampton (*Portus Hamonis*), *ib.* ; left sick in Alcluyd, 312 ; commands one-half of the army of Arthur, and reduces Wasconia, 324 ; king of the Armorican Britons, II. 330 ; speech of, 333, 334 ; Helena, niece of, carried of by a giant, 337 ; builds a basilica over her body, now called "Tumba Helenæ," 341 ; commands in the army of king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348 ; rallies the Britons, and penetrates to the emperor Lucius, 354, 355 ; driven back by the Romans, 356 ; relieved by king Arthur, 357 ; sent with the army of Gaul to Rome, 359.
———, son of, II. 375.
———, son of Alanus, son of, II. 375.
Hofni and Phineas, destruction of, I. 44.
Holand, servants of Danes winter in, III. 4.
———, Florence, count of, III. 151.
Holdinus, dux of the Ruthoni, II. 326 ; commands under king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348 ; killed, 354 ; buried in Tirnand in Flanders, 358.

Holme, foundation of monastery of, III. 328.
Holofernes, beheaded by Judith, I. 57.
Holond, Thomas de, wounded at the taking of Roche-Guyon, III. 208.
Holy Coat, the, invention of, I. 271, 272; III. 69; by S. Gregory, bishop of Antioch, and S. Thomas, bishop of Jerusalem, I. 354.
Homer, I. 44.
Homildon (or Humbledown) Hill, battle of, III. 395.
Honorius, bishop of Jerusalem. *See* S. John Baptist.
——— I., pope, pontificate of, I. 218; (II.), pope, III. 279; ob., *ib.*
——— II., pope, I. 269; III. 297.
——— III., pope, I. 276, 277; ob., III. 302.
——— IV., pope, cons. and death of, I. 282; III. 305; ob., *ib.*
———(emperor of the East), and Archadius (emperor of the West), reign of, I. 344, 345.
Horace, birth of, I. 63; dies at Rome, 64, 314.
Hormisdas, pope, pontificate of, I. 203; III. 274.
Hornsey-Wood (*Silva de Haryngay*), near London, the duke of Gloucester and his party assemble in, III. 364.
Horsa (and Hengist) land at Dover (*Dorobornia, quæ nunc Cantuaria vocatur*), II. 276; interview of, with Vortigern, *ib.*, 277; he grants territory to, 277; assist him in defeating the Picts, *ib.*; (Horsa) is killed at Ebbeford (*Epiford*), 279.
Hosea, of the tribe of Issachar, prophecies, I. 50.
Hostel, Thomas de, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
Howlond, Robert de, surrenders to Edward II., III. 197.
Hubba (*Ubba*), king of the Danes, killed at Chippenham, III. 7; buried at "Ubbeslawe," in Devon, 8.
Hugh, cardinal and legate, comes to England and gives authority to bring clerks before the secular judge for "forisfactum forestæ" and "laicum feodum," III. 81.
———, count of Paris, presents from, to Aethelstan, description of, III. 12, 13.
———, S., bishop of Lincoln, consecration of, III. 75; prior of the Carthusian house of (Henton) Witham, election of as bishop of Lincoln, 79; death of, 117; translation of, 145.
Humber, the, flows through Beverley, and divides Northumbria, II. 9; called from Humbar, or Hymbar, king of the Huns, or of Hundland, 148, 221; from the south of York it runs through Lyndesey, *ib.*; the Trent falls into it at Eyrmyn, *ib.* *See* Hymbar.
Humbronenses, Robert (de Mowbray), earl of. *See* Mowbray.
Hunal, king of the Wallenses, compelled to join the triumph of Eadgar on the Dee, III. 17.
Huncimartino, John de, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.
Hundred, or cantred, meaning of, II. 153.
Hungaria, divided into Superior (and Inferior), II. 61; Major in Scythia Ulterior, *ib.*; Huns issue from, and colonise Pannonia, *ib.*; (*Pannonia*), the east boundary of Bohemia, 72; of Carinthia, 101.
Hungary, king of, [Coloman], resists pope Paschal II., I. 267.
———————, [S. Stephen], receives the sons of Edmund Ironside. *See* Agatha, Edmund, Edward, Wlgar.
——— John (*Lodowicus*), king of, alive, II. 238; one of the Christian commanders at the battle near Adrianople, *ib.*; character of, *ib.*
Hungarians, the, ravage the Roman territory, I. 249.
Huntingdon, Henry of, one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.

Huntingdon, David, 9th earl of. *See* David.
————, [John Holand], brother of [Thomas Holand], 8th earl of Kent, half-brother of Richard II. [III. 386] created 13th earl of, III. 361; one of the appellants against the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, 373; created duke of Exeter, 377; the earldom of Arundel granted to, by the king, 379; plot of, and the earls of Kent and Salisbury, against Henry IV., disclosed to a prostitute by one of the household of the conspirators, and by her to one of the royal household, and by him to Henry IV., 385, 386; said to be in ambush near Kingston, 385; is taken, disguised, in a mill at Prittlewell, in Essex, and beheaded at Pleshy, 386; head of, placed on London Bridge, *ib.*
————, William, 11th earl of. *See* Clinton.
Huntingdonshire (*Huntyndounschire*), II. 152.
Hyginus, S., pope, pontificate of, 174, 175; martyrdom of, 175; III. 255.
Hymbar or Humbar, king of Hundland, or the Huns, attacked by Kamber and Locrinus, drowns himself in the Trenta, II. 221; gives his name to it, *ib.*
Hyrcanæ, the, wonderful birds in Hyrcania, II. 30; found in Germany, *ib.*, 60.
Hyrcania, called from the Silva (*filia*) Hyrcana, II. 30; extent of, from Mount Caucasus to Scythia, *ib.*; cannibals in, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; conquered by Johannes Hyrcanus, son of Simeon, *ib.*, 31.

I.

Iberia, a region of Asia, near Pontus and Armenia, II. 31; produces herbs useful in dyeing, *ib.*; conversion of, by a Christian woman, I. 191.
Ibzan, judge of Israel, I. 42, 43, 44.
Icaria, island of, II. 117.
Iceland, beyond Norway, II. 112; boundaries of, *ib.*, 113; why called so, 113; white bears in, *ib.*; sterility of, *ib.*; people of, live on fish and by hunting, *ib.*
Ida, first king of Northumbria, II. 167.
Idolatry, invented by Ninus, I. 30.
Idols, different names of, derived from Belus, I. 30.
Idumæa, notice of, II. 55, 56; in Arabia, named from Edom or Esau, II. 91, 101; description of, *ib.*
Idwallo, son of Wigenius, king of Britain, II. 247.
Ignatius, S., disciple of S. John the Evangelist and bishop of Antioch, letter of, to him on S. James the Just, I, 142; letter of, to the Blessed Virgin, 158; reply of Virgin to letter of, *ib.*; commanded by Trajan to sacrifice to the gods, *ib.*; refuses, *ib.*; the Christians intercede for him, *ib.*; writes to the Roman churches not to hinder his passion, *ib.*; commendation of, by S. Dionysius, *ib.*; is martyred, *ib.*, 322; III. 253; legend touching the fragments of his body, I. 322.
Ikeneld Street (*Belinstrete*, A.), the, runs from west to north, II. 146; commences in S. David's, proceeds through Hereford, Worcester, Wick, Birmingham, Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfield, through York, to the mouth of the Tyne, called now Tynemouth, *ib.*
Ilia [Rhea], daughter of Numitor, gives birth to Romulus and Remus, I. 305; is buried alive, *ib.* *See* Romulus and Remus.
Ina, king of Wessex, I. 227.
Inachus. *See* Argives, kingdom of.
Index, autograph to, the Eulogium, III. 314–327.
India, Christ preached in, by two boys, I. 191; account of, II. 15, 16, 17; called from the Indus, 15; boundaries of, *ib.*; islands of, Taprothane, Chryse (*Crisa*), and Argyre (*Argine*), *ib.*; fecundity of,

India—*cont.*
ib.; products of, *ib.*; Golden Mountains of, *ib.*; riches and populousness of, *ib.*; Pliny's account of, 16, 17, 18; philosophers of, called Gymnosophistæ (*Gignosophistæ*), 16; monstrous men in, *ib.*, 17.
Indiut, S. (or Liduit), of Holland, I. 290.
Ingelbourne-castel. *See* Bladon.
Ingenis, of Legecestria, commands under king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348.
Ingwen, from Legecestria, II. 326.
Ini, of Wessex, II. 161.
——, nephew of Cadwallader, leaves Armonica and lands in the port of Sillia, III. 1; attacks the Saxons, *ib.*; is anointed a Saxon king, *ib.*; dies at Rome, *ib.*; miracle at death of, *ib.*
Innocent I., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 196; condemns Pelagius, Cœlestius, and Julianus, and excommunicates the emperor Archadius, *ib.*; III. 270.
——— II., pope, I. 270; his contest with Peter, anti-pope, and Roger, duke of Apulia, *ib.*; crowns Lothaire II. emperor, *ib.*; III. 297.
[Innocent III.], pope, pontificate of, I. 275, 276; composes Decretals and a treatise, "De Miseria conditionis humanæ," 275; confirms the election of Stephen Langton as archbishop of Canterbury, at Viterbo, III. 92; begs king John to permit Langton to remain in his office, and the prior and convent of Canterbury to live in their monastery, *ib.*, 93; commissions William, bishop of London, and others, to command this to the king, or to place England under an interdict, 94; sends Pandulph and Durand to the king, 97; incites the king of France to invade England, 101; sends Pandulph a second time to England, 102; sends the cardinal of S. Martin to take the homage of John, 107; sends a legate, Gwalo, in aid of king John against Louis of France, 109.
Innocent IV., pope, I. 278, 279; deposes the emperor Frederic II. at the Council of Lyons, III. 138.
——— V., pope, I, 281, 282; III. 305.
——— VI., pope, succeeds, III. 309; tries to make peace between England and France, 310; fortifies and victuals his palace at Avignon, for fear of the Great Company, 229; dies of dropsy, *ib.*; death of, I. 283; III. 313; legend touching, I. 284.
——— [VII.], pope, I. 287; election of, III. 402; promises to endeavour to restore unity, *ib.*; excommunicates (?) the murderers of archbishop Scrope and their abettors, *ib.*; commands the archbishop of Canterbury to denounce them, *ib.*; death of, 409.
——— VIII., pope, I. 295; grants indulgences, *ib.*
Innocents, massacre of, III. 247.
Insula, Robert de, bishop of Durham, death of, III. 146.
Interdict, the, pronounced against England, I. 278, 388; III. 94, 95; relaxation of, I. 388; III. 107, 108, 301; date and duration of, III. 301.
Inundation (at Rome ?), I. 212; and storms, I. 294; III. 72; destroys the crops, *ib.*; washes up the bones of a giant in England, *ib.*; in the north of England, III. 413.
Ipolitus, duke of Crete, II. 336.
Irad, son of Enoch, birth of, I. 21.
Ireland, blight and famine in, I. 246; remarkable island in, II. 14; invaded by Henry II., first of the kings of England, III. 80; tribute exacted from by him, *ib.*; situation of, II. 80; why called Hybernia, *ib.*; description and products of, *ib.*; temperateness of, *ib.*; poisonous animals unknown in it, why, *ib.*; sea of, or Irish Sea, hardly navigable, *ib.*, 81; character of people of, 81; idleness of, *ib.*; rebellion of, against king John, III. 96; (Hibernia or Scotia), called from Iberus, II. 114; occupied by giants before the Deluge, 123; arrival of Heberus and

Ireland—*cont.*
Hermonnius, *ib.*; after the Deluge inhabited by Gatelus, nephew of Prehennius, and husband of Scota, daughter of Pharaoh, *ib.*, 124; people of, called Gatuli, from Gatelus, 124; language of, called "Gattelak," *ib.*; Gurguncius sends the Basclenses to colonise, *ib.*; people of, converted by St. Patrick, *ib*; kings of, up to Sedlundius, *ib.*; the Norwegians under Turgesius occupy, *ib.*; build castles in, *ib.*; Gurmundus subjugates and builds the castles according to the Britons, *ib.*; Medes, king of, *ib.*; arrival of Amelanus, Siracus, and Ivorus in, *ib.*; Dublin, Waterford, and Limerick founded in, *ib.*; introduce the axe (*Sparth*) into, *ib.*; kings of, from Turgesius, to Roderic, king of Connaught, who was defeated by Henry III., *ib.*; characteristics of people of, *ib.*; dress of, 126; arms of, *ib.*; indolence of, *ib.*; musical instruments used by, *ib.*; mountaineers in, habits of, *ib.*; fickleness of, *ib.*; men of, relieve the bladder sitting, women standing, 127; remarkable old women in, and Wales, *ib.*; wonderful islands in, *ib.*; lake in Ulster, the purgatory of S. Patrick, *ib.*, 128; island in Connaught consecrated by S. Brendan, 128; wonderful fountains in, *ib.*; S. Kevin's willows in, *ib.*; marvellous lake in Ulster, *ib.*, 129; seven years' miracle in Ossory, *ib.*; lakes in, 129; birds of S. Colman in, *ib.*; vindictiveness of people of, *ib.*; chastity and drunkenness of clergy of, *ib.*; excellence of few good Irish, *ib.*; almost all saints of, confessors, and no martyr, *ib.*; relics in, *ib.*, 130; sworn upon with more reverence than the Gospels, 130; products of, *ib.*; character of soil and surface of, 131; melancholic race in, 139; (*Ir Terra*), so called from Irnalaphus, 244.

———, duke of. *See* Vere.

Irish, the, "veri Anglici," ask aid of Richard II. against the pure Irish, III. 370; ordered to return to Ireland, *ib.*

Irnalaphus, king of the Basclenses, receives a grant of Hibernia from Corbacrus, II. 244; gives his name to it, *ib.*

Isaac, son of Abraham and Sarah, birth of, I. 33; marries Rebecca, 34; death of, 36.

Isachar, the father of SS. Anne (mother of the B. V. M.) and Emeria (mother of S. Elizabeth), *ib.*

Isaiah, prophesies, I. 50, 51; prophesies under Jotham, king of Judah, 51; sawn asunder, by order of Manasseh, 53; quoted as to Nativity, 69.

Isabella, daughter of the count of Angoulême, queen of king John, III. 111; sons of, by him, *ib.*, 112; present at the coronation of Henry III., 113.

———, queen of Edward II., coronation of, III. 194; is sent to France with prince Edward, to treat for peace between Edward II. and Charles IV. of France, 198; lands in England with Roger Mortimer and others, *ib.*; death of, 227, 311; at "Rising, near London," 227; cause of death of, according to report of some, *ib.*, 311; funeral of, *ib.*

———, second queen of Richard II., marriage of, III. 371; coronation of, at Westminster, *ib.*; deprived of her dower, 387; sent to France, *ib.*

———, daughter of Edward III. and Philippa of Hainault, birth of, at Woodstock, III. 200; marriage of, to [Ingelram] de Courcy, 236.

Isauria, origin of name, II. 37, 54; Seleucia, metropolis of, *ib.*; (and Cilicia), situation of, 53; horses of, *ib.* *See* Pamphylia.

Isidorus Etymologicus, one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; fl., 357; his account of the division of the world between the sons of Noah, II. 10; his account of situation of Paradise,. 13; chronology of, III. 246.

Isis, I. 34; brings the rudiments of letters from Greece into Egypt, *ib.*

Isis, (*Isa*, *Ysia*), the, rises near Cirencester, II. 8. *See* Thame, Thames.

Islands, derivation of word, II. 113; account of most notable, *ib.*, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119; of the ocean, 113, 114, 115; of the Mediterranean, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119.

Islip, Simon de, archbishop of Canterbury, death of, III. 239; funeral of, at Canterbury, *ib.*

Israelites, the, serve Cusan, king of Mesopotamia, I. 40.

Italy, conversion of, I. 194; colonisation of, by Janus, 301; formerly peopled by the Greeks, II. 69; and called Magna Græcia, I. 407; II. 69; then Hespera, I. 407; II. 70; then Satirus, *ib.*; then Saturnia, II. 69; then Latium, I. 407; II. 69; then Ausonia, I. 407; then Italia, from Italus, *ib.*, II. 69; boundaries of, II. 69; lakes and rivers of, *ib.*; provinces of, I. 407; products of, II. 69, 70; races inhabiting, I. 407; Lombards enter, *ib.*; kings of, from Ibor and Aion to Albinus, *ib.*; first inhabited by Armenon, son of Alanus, son of Japhet, according to Solinus, II. 202; according to Dares Phrygius, by Æneas, 204.

Ituræa and Trachonitis, II. 52.

Iulus (*Iulius*), son of Ascanius, I. 304.

Ives, S. (*Ivonis*), church of, III. 21.

J.

Jabel, son of Lamech, birth of, I. 21.

Jacob, son of Isaac, birth of, I. 34; buys Esau's birthright, steals Jacob's blessing, and goes into Mesopotamia, 35; marries Leah, *ib.*; compact of, with Laban, *ib.*, 36; goes into Egypt, 37.

———, king of the Wallenses, compelled to join the triumph of Eadgar upon the Dee, III. 17.

Jair, judge of Israel, I. 42.

James, S., the Less, son of Alphæus, born, I. 64.; ordination of, bishop of Jerusalem, 81; why called "frater Domini," 82, 142, 159; sanctity of, *ib.*; celebrates the first mass at Jerusalem, 82, 142, 160; his vow, 82, 83, 143, 160; preaches to the Jews, 143; and our Lord, the children of two brothers, Joseph and Cleophas, 142, 159; martyrdom of, III. 251.

——— the Just, brother of our Lord, martyrdom of, I. 318.

——— S., the Greater, son of Zebedee, born, I. 64.; decollation of, III. 249, 250.

———, S., the hand of, taken away from Reading, III. 68.

Janus, a descendant of Alanus, expelled from Egypt and Greece, arrives in Europe, I. 301; reigns in Italy, *ib.*; his deeds, *ib.*

Japhet, descendants of, I. 29.

Jared, son of Mahalaleel, birth and death of, I. 22.

Jay, Brian, preceptor of the Knights Templars in England, killed at the battle of Falkirk, III. 169.

Jehoahaz, son of Jehu, king of Israel, I. 49.

———, son of Josiah, king of Israel, I. 54; taken captive into Egypt by Pharaoh-Nechoh, *ib.*

Jehoash, son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel, I. 49.

Jehoiakim (*Eliachim* or *Joachim*), son of Josiah. *See* Eliakim.

Jehoiakin, son of Jehoiakim, I. 54; surrenders to the king of Babylon, and is taken captive, *ib.*

Jehoram, son of Ahab (*Josaphat*), king of Israel, I. 48; slain by Jehu, *ib.*

Jehu, king of Israel, I. 48; slays Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jezebel, the sons of Ahab, and the priests of Baal, *ib.*

Jephthah, judge of Israel, I. 42; his vow, 43.

Jeremiah, the prophet, lamentation of, for death of Josiah, I. 53; imprisoned, 54.

Jeroboam, son of Jehoash, king of Israel, I. 49.

Jerome, S., preaches, III. 269 ; composes the "Gloria Patri," I. 193 ; hears S. Apollinaris of Antioch, 194 ; emends the Psalter, *ib.* ; translates the Scriptures into Latin, 195, 344 ; on the name of the father of Judas Iscariot, 83 ; dies at Bethlehem, in Palestine, 346 ; death of, III. 269. ; buried near the Holy Manger in the Church of S. Mary the Greater at Rome, 69.

Jerusalem, II. 26, 52 ; the "Umbilicus Terræ," 26 ; history of siege of, by Vespasian and Titus, I. 145-153 ; taken by Vespasian and Titus, I. 319 ; III. 252 ; destroyed by the Persians, I. 356 ; captured by the Saracens, 267 ; recovered by the Crusaders, *ib.*, 384 ; III. 296 ; taken by Saladin, I. 275, 387 ; III. 75, 76, 79 ; the crown of, offered to Henry II. of England, III. 75 ; taken by Coradin, son of Saphadin, 114.

————, "dominus de," accompanies the king of Cyprus to London, III. 233 ; is converted to Christianity, baptised, and named Edward by Edward III., *ib.*

————, bishop of. *See* S. Simeon ; S. James, son of Alphæus.

Jesus, son of Ananias, martyrdom of, I. 144.

——, the son of Sirach, composes the Book of Wisdom, I. 62.

Jews, the, Babylonish captivity of, terminates, I. 55 ; make alliance with the Romans, and adopt their laws, 63 ; forty years granted to, for repentance, 143 ; miracles during that period, *ib.*, 144 ; attempt to rebuild Jerusalem, but are miraculously prevented, 152, 153 ; number of, killed in the siege by Vespasian and Titus, 153 ; rebel under Nero, 318 ; massacre of, at the coronation of Richard I., III. 85 ; their houses burned and plundered, *ib.* ; capture and expulsion of, by king John, 96 ; burned at Northampton for conspiring to employ Greek-fire to burn the city of London, 120 ; expelled from England, 305 ; in England, hanged for clipping, 144 ; in Spain, baptised, 279.

Jezebel, daughter of the king of Tyre, wife of Ahab, I. 47 ; slain by Jehu, 48.

Joachim, abbot, fl. in Calabria, I. 387 ; III. 86 ; comments of, on the Apocalypse and the Prophets, III. 86 ; prophesies the ill-success of the First Crusade, *ib.* ; the number, acts, &c. of the "Viri apostolici" of the future, *ib.*

[Joan], widow of John de Montfort, duchess of Brittany, daughter of the king of Navarre, queen of Henry IV., marriage and coronation of, III. 395 ; married to Henry IV. at Winchester, by Henry Beaufort, bishop of Lincoln, 403 ; daughters (?) of, and aliens accompanying removed from household, 400.

Joan, queen of France, death of, I. 284.

——, queen of David II. of Scotland, death of, III. 229, 230, 313.

——, pope, (John VII.), legend of, I. 243 ; III. 287 ; (Joanna), III. 289.

——, princess, daughter of Henry II., birth of, III. 71.

Joash, son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, not mentioned in the genealogy of our Lord by S. Matthew, I. 48 ; preserved by the sister of Ahaziah, wife of Jehoiada, the high priest, 49 ; reigns, 49 ; repairs the temple, *ib.*

Job, or Jobab, king of the Medes, identical with the scriptural Job, I. 34.

John, son of Henry II., birth of, III. 71 ; espouses the cause of his brother Henry against his father, 72 ; removes the arm of an image of the infant Jesus from the Castle of Dolys in Normandy, 72 ; surnamed "Lackland," 80, 91 ; why, 92 ; present at the coronation of Richard I., 81 ; his joy at the capture of that king by the duke of Austria, *ib.* ; resisted by many of the nobles, *ib.* ; Windsor Castle, &c. re-

John, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
covered from, *ib.*, 83 ; escapes into Normandy, and is concealed by the king of France, *ib.* ; begs forgiveness of Richard, *ib.* ; is appointed his heir, 84, 85 ; Adelais of France demanded for, by Henry II., 90 ; succeeds Richard I., 91, 300 ; made earl of Mortaigne in Normandy, *ib.* ; of Gloucester, *ib.* ; coronation of, I. 277 ; III. 92, 300 ; loses the duchy of Anjou and Normandy, 92, 112, 301 ; expels the prior and convent of Canterbury for electing Stephen Langton archbishop, 92 ; refuses to assent to the request of the pope (Innocent III.) in favour of Langton, 93 ; besieges Arthur in Normandy, (? relieves the Castle of Mirabeau), *ib.* ; takes him prisoner, *ib.*, 112 ; murders him and imprisons his sister in Bristol Castle, 112 ; supports (John Grey) bishop of Norwich for the see of Canterbury, and deprives and expels the supporters of Langton, 94 ; refuses to assent to the papal commands communicated by William, bishop of London, and others, *ib.* ; seizes the temporalities of the bishops, 95 ; treats with them for a reconciliation, *ib.* ; refuses to make restitution, *ib.* ; sends for Stephen Langton, 96 ; goes to Chilham, *ib.* ; returns to London, *ib.* ; exacts tribute for the Irish war, *ib.* ; seizes all the possessions of the archbishop and prior, and orders all bulls brought into England to be burned with the bearers, 97 ; demands a subsidy of the Cistercians, who leave England, *ib.* ; interview of, with Pandulph and Durand at Northampton, 98, 99, 100, 101 ; orders a clerk approved of coining to be flayed, 101 ; sends messengers to the pope promising subjection to the church, 102 ; waits for Pandulph at Canterbury, *ib.* ; swears obedience to the Church to him, *ib.* ; resigns his kingdom and crown to the pope, 103 ; makes a charter of submission, *ib.*, 104, 105 ; receives the crown from Pandulph, and sends letters of recall to the archbishop and the exiles, 105 ; meets him at Winchester, 106 ; is reconciled to him and absolved from the sentence of excommunication, *ib.* ; amount of compensation paid by, to Langton, the prior, and others, *ib.*, 107 ; does homage to the pope for his dominions, 107 ; grants Malmesbury Castle to Loryng, abbot of Malmesbury, 108, 301 ; redress demanded of, by Ralph, earl of Chester, and the barons, 108 ; concedes Magna Carta, *ib.* ; dissension between, and the barons, 112 ; sends to Normandy for aid against his subjects, 108 ; hatred of the people to, 109 ; proceeds towards Lincoln, *ib.* ; stays at the abbey of Swineshead, *ib.* ; story of his poisoning by a monk there, *ib.*, 110, 111 ; goes on to Newark, 111 ; dies, *ib.*, 301 ; dies there and is buried at Worcester, *ib.* ; the abbey of Beaulieu founded by, *ib.* ; the abbey of nuns of Godstow (Linc. dioc.), founded by, for the soul of Fair Rosamond, *ib.* ; married to Isabella, daughter of the earl of Angoulême, *ib.* ; his son Henry by, born, *ib.* ; his son Richard, earl of Cornwall, by, *ib.*, 112 ; cruelty of, *ib.* ; vengeance on Peter of Pomfret, *ib.*, 113 ; receives the fealty of William (I.) of Scotland, 113 ; builds Berwick Castle and wastes Scotland, *ib.* ; takes the two daughters of William as hostages, *ib.*

—— [II.], king of France, said to be coming to fight the Black Prince, III. 221 ; said to be trying to get before the English, *ib.* ; said to have been at Chavigny, *ib.* ; said to be waiting the advance of the prince in a plain in battle array, 222 ; army of, divided into three bodies, 224 ; taken prisoner at the battle of Poitiers, 225, 309 ; returns to London, 232, 313 ; with a million for his expenses in captivity, 232 ; unsuccessful petitions of, to Edward III., *ib.* ; dies at London, 233, 313.

[John I.], king of Portugal, marries

[John I.]—*cont.*
[Philippa], daughter of John of Ghent, III. 359. *See* Ghent, John of.
John Baptist, S., conception of, I. 64, 160; period of gestation of, 65, 160; comparison between him and Christ, *ib.*; begins to preach and baptise, 74; III. 249; is beheaded, I. 77; tradition of marriage of (S. John Evangelist in text) with Mary Magdalene, *ib.*; dates of incarceration and decollation of, *ib.*; decollation of, III. 249; imprisoned in the Arabian Castle of Macheronta, *ib.*; body of, buried at Sebaste, in Palestine, I. 77; head of, near Herod's house at Jerusalem, *ib.*; bones of, collected in the time of Julian the Apostate and burned, I. 77; III. 267; great part of dust of, secretly carried off by some monks of Jerusalem, I. 77, 78; finger of, with which he pointed at our Lord when he uttered the words "Ecce Agnus Dei," contained in it, 78; bones of, sent to Athanasius, bishop of Alexandria, *ib.*; reveals his head to two Eastern monks in the time of Marcianus, who show it to abbot Marcellus, who shows it to Honorius, bishop of Jerusalem, *ib.*; taken to Constantinople, and thence to Amiens, *ib.*; distinctive marks of, *ib.*, 79; bones of animals burned on vigil of feast of, why, *ib.* 80; the face of, brought by Gwalo from Constantinople to Amiens, III. 93, 94.
——, S., of Campestra, miracles and death of, I. 290; victories of, in Hungary, 291; defeats the Turks, 290; commences the reform of the order of Friars Minors, *ib.*
—— Chrysostom, S., fl., I. 192.; priest of Antioch, made bishop of Constantinople, 195; exiled by the emperor Archadius, 196.
—— Damascene, S., translated into Latin, I. 386; his account of Paradise, II. 12, 13.
—— the Deacon (*Johannes Diaconus*), writes a life of Gregory the Great, I. 245.
John, S., the Eleemosynary, bishop of Alexandria, I. 356; III. 278.
——, S., the Evangelist, son of Zebedee, born, I. 64; III. 247; recognizes our Lord after the Resurrection, I. 153; exhortation of, "Filioli, diligite alterutrum," 158, 159; is placed in a vessel of boiling oil, *ib.*; sent to Patmos, *ib.*, 320; III. 252; recalled from exile by the emperor Nero, I. 321; returns to Ephesus, and there writes his Gospel, III. 253; writes the Apocalypse, I. 158, 159, 320; death of, III. 253. *See* S. Ignatius.
—— and Paul, SS., martyrdom of, I. 194; and Gallicanus, mart., III. 268.
—— Polycraticus quoted, I. 60.
—— Scotus, comes to France, I. 372; goes to England, III. 9; stays at Malmesbury, *ib.*; dies there, I. 372; is put to death there by his pupils, III. 9.
——, the esquire of Charlemagne, dies three hundred and sixty-one years after him, I. 386.
——, son of Edmund (Crouchback), earl of Lancaster, and Blanche, queen of Navarre, III. 141.
——, S., John de, III. 158.
——, S., I., pope, pontificate of, I. 204; III. 274; sent by Theodoric to Justin, patriarch of Jerusalem, to intercede for the Arians, I. 204; imprisoned by Justin, *ib.*; miracle by, III. 274; dies at Ravenna, I. 204; translated to Rome, *ib.*
—— II., pope, pontificate of, I. 205; condemns Anthimus, *ib.*; III. 275.
—— III., pope, pontificate of, I. 210, 211; III. 276.
—— IV., pope, pontificate of, I. 219; III. 280.
—— V., pope, I. 223; III. 281.
—— VI., pope, I. 229; III. 282.
—— VII., pope, I. 231; III. 282.
—— VIII., pope, I. 245; anoints Charles the Bald emperor, *ib.*; III. 289.
—— IX., pope, I. 248; convokes the Council of Ravenna, and annuls all the

John, IX., pope—*cont.*
decrees of Stephen VI. against Formosus I., *ib.*
—— X., pope, I. 249, 250; defeats the Saracens, 249; is strangled in prison, 250; III. 290.
—— XI., pope, I. 250; III. 290.
—— XII., pope, I. 251, 252; son of Alberic, 251; his election forced, *ib.*; his vices, *ib.*; the cardinals write to the emperor Otho I. concerning, 252; ejection of, *ib.*; III. 291.
—— XIII., pope, III. 291.
—— XIV., pope, I. 254; dies in consequence of starvation in the Castle of S. Angelo, *ib.*; III. 292.
—— XV., pope, I. 254; formerly Gerbert, mentioned by William of Malmesbury, *ib.*; miracle touching, III. 25; makes peace between Aethelred II. and Richard, duke of Normandy, *ib.*, 292.
—— XVI., pope, I. 254; persecuted by Crescentius, retires into Tuscany, *ib.*; sends for aid to the emperor Otho, and Crescentius humbles himself, *ib.*; III. 292.
—— XVII., anti-pope, elected by Crescentius, I. 255; is blinded, *ib.*; III. 292.
—— XVII., pope, I. 257; III. 293.
—— XVIII., pope, I. 257; III. 293.
—— XIX., pope, I. 259; III. 293.
—— XX., pope, I. 282; III. 305.
—— XXI., pope, I. 282; (a mistake).
—— XXII., pope, I. 282; death of, III. 202, 308.
—— XXII. (or XXIII.), pope, Balthasar, cardinal of Bologna, election of, III. 418; declares he will crush [Ladislas] (*Carolum*), and Gregory XII., *ib.*; petitions Henry IV. to send his son Thomas to Rome to command the papal army against [Ladislas] of Naples, and Gregory XII., 419, 420; and to allow his nuntio to preach a crusade in England, and to collect money by indulgence, 420; dispensation of, to Thomas, duke of Clarence, *ib.*; is refused by Henry IV., *ib.*; pope, I. 288. *See* Anti-pope.
——, anti-pope (Calistus III.), condemned by Alexander III., I. 273.
Jonadab, the priest, I. 49.
Jonah prophesies the destruction of Jerusalem, I. 50.
Jonathal Dorocestrensis, II. 326; commands under king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348.
Jonathan concludes a league with the Romans and Spartans, I. 62.
Jonithus, son of Noah, birth of, I. 28; invents astronomy, and predicts future events, 29.
Joppa reduced by Richard I., III. 85.
Josaphat, and Barlaam, hermit, SS., fl., I. 194; III. 268.
Joseph, S., or Barsabas, son of Alphæus, born, I. 64.
———, of Arimathæa, arrives in Great Britain, with twelve disciples, sent by S. Philip, apostle, I. 157; grant of land to, by Arviragus, in the island of Avalon, *ib.*; builds a church there dedicated to the Virgin Mary, *ib.*; is buried there with two bottles of the Bloody Sweat, *ib.* *See* Titus.
———, son of Jacob and Rachel, birth of, I. 35; sold by his brethren to merchants, 36; by them to Potiphar, *ib.*; marries his daughter, *ib.*; death of, 37; embalmed and preserved until the Exodus, *ib.*
Joshua succeeds Moses, I. 40; death and burial of, in Tamnassara, *ib.*
Josiah slain by an archer of Pharaoh Necho, I. 53; his good deeds, 54; his sons Eliachim or Jeconias, Jehoahaz (*Joachaz*), or Sellium, and Mathania, or Zedekiah, *ib.*
Josephus, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; his treatise "De Viris Illustribus," quoted, 143; account by, of prodigies during forty years after Crucifixion, *ib.*, 144; besieged in Jonapara by Vespasian, I.

Josephus—*cont.*
147 ; begs his life of Vespasian, 148 ; announces the death of Vitellius to him, *ib.* ; cures Titus of a nervous disorder, 149, 150 ; becomes his friend, 150 ; testimony of, to miracles of our Lord, 316.
Jotham, son of Uzziah, king of Judah, I. 50.
Jovian, reign of, I. 342.
Jubal, son of Lamech and Ada, I. 21 ; hears the prophecy of Adam, 23 ; erects two columns containing a chronicle of antediluvian events, which existed in Syria temp. Freculphus, *ib.*
Judæa, a region of Palestine, called from Judah, II. 25, 52 ; formerly called Canaan, *ib.* ; extends in length from Arfa to Julias, *ib.* ; in width from Mount Lebanon to the Lake of Tiberias, 26, 52 ; its chief city Jerusalem, *ib.* ; description of region, 26 ; called the Promised Land, *ib.* ; geographical position of, *ib.* ; Jordan divides Galilee from, *ib.* ; Dead Sea on its confines, *ib.*
Judah separated from Israel, I. 46 ; without a king, 49.
Judas Maccabæus opposes Antiochus, I. 62.
——— Iscariot, kiss of, why given, I. 82, 142 ; apocryphal life of, I. 83, 84 ; hangs himself, 89.
——— Thaddæus, S., son of Alphæus, born, I. 64.
Judeyl, king of the Wallenses, compelled to join the triumph of Edgar on the Dee, III. 17.
Judith, history of, written, I. 55.
Julian, bishop, said to be Simon the Leper, III. 251.
——— the Apostate, becomes a monk, I. 340 ; the imperial dignity promised him by a magician, 341 ; reign of, 341 ; III. 267 ; punishment of, I. 80.
——— the Usurper, I. 327.
——— the Pelagian, condemned by Innocent I., I. 196.
Juliana, wife of Alexander the senator, *See* S. Stephen, legend of translation of.
Julius, S., pope, I. 191, 192 ; exile of, 192 ; persecution of, by Constantine, *ib.*
———, S. (*Julianus*), pope, III. 267.
Julius Cæsar, mental power of, I. 15 ; commences the codification of Roman law, 59 ; emperor, 63 ; invades Britain, *ib.* ; first sees the shore of Britain, II. 249 ; speech of, on the occasion, *ib.*, 250 ; demands tribute of Cassibalan, 250 ; invades Britain, *ib.* ; is met and repulsed by the Britons, *ib.*, 251 ; single combat of, with Nennius (son of Ely), 250 ; restores the Gauls to peace, 251 ; invades Britain again, *ib.* ; fleet of, destroyed in the Thames, 252 ; is defeated by Cassibalan, *ib.* ; takes refuge in a tower on the "litus Morianorum," *ib.* ; invades Britain, and lands in Rutupis, 254 ; defeats Cassibalan, *ib.* ; exacts tribute from him, 256 ; winters in Britain, *ib.* ; returns to Gaul, *ib.* ; proceeds to Rome against Pompey, *ib.* ; after reducing the Gauls, Almannici, and Britons, feared to engage in war with the Dani, Gothi, Norici, and the northern races, II. 109 ; his genius, I. 63 ; his laws, *ib.* ; reforms the calendar, *ib.* ; why called Cæsar, *ib.* ; saying of Cicero (*Cithero*) in his praise, *ib.* ; portents at murder of, 312, 313.
Justin, patriarch of Jerusalem, vision of a hermit respecting, and pope John I., in hell, I. 204. *See* John I.
———, abbreviates Trogus Pompeius, I. 324 ; dedicates a book on Christianity to the emperor Adrian, *ib.*
——— I., reign of, I. 350, 351.
——— II., reign of, I. 352, 353.
Justina and Cyprianus, SS., martyrdom of, I. 187.
Justinian I., reign of, I. 351, 352 ; converted from the Eutychian heresy, 351 ; his legal writings, *ib.* ; defeats the Vandals, *ib.* ; builds the church of S. Sophia, 352.
——— II., reign of, I. 360 ; banished by Leo, *ib.* ; recovers the empire, 360, 361 ;

Justinian II.—*cont.*
put to death by Philipicus Bardanes, 361.
Justus, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Paulinus.
Justus, S., bishop of Vienne, martyrdom of, I. 325.

K.

Kairdureburgh, I. 225.
Kaius, dapifer to king Arthur, made dux of Andegavia, II. 324, 326 ; serves at the coronation banquet of king Arthur, 328 ; accompanies Arthur in his attack on the giant of S. Michael's Mount, 338 ; commands against the Romans, 348 ; is killed, 353 ; is buried at Camum, 358.
Kamber, king of Kambria. *See* Brutus, Locrinus.
Kambria, II. 8 ; a division of Britain, called from Kamber, 143 ; once divided on the east by the Severn from England, *ib.*; now, as Wales, divided on the north, at Chester, by the Dee, and on the south, at Strogoyl Castle, by the Wye (*Vaga*), from England, *ib.* ; Offa's foss in, from Bristol, across the sources of the Severn and Dee, up to the mouth of the Dee, near Chester, and near Flint Castle, by the Collis Carbonum, *ib.* ; the part of Britain given to Kamber by Brutus, 220 ; now called Gwallia, *ib.* ; language of, British, *ib.*
Katericus, king of Britain, reign of, II. 365 ; attacked by the Saxons under Gurmundus, and driven to Silecester, escapes over the Severn into Wales, *ib.*
Katherine, S., virgin, martyrdom of, I. 189, 337 ; III. 265.
————, of Siena, daughter of S. Bridget, I. 285 ; canonization of, 292.
Kenilworth Castle, besieged, I. 282; III. 304.
Kenilworth, the Dictum de, III. 134, 135. *See* Barons, deprived ; Montfort, Simon de ; Derby, Robert earl of.
Kenneth III. (*Kynadius*), king of Scots, compelled to join the triumph of Edgar on the Dee, III. 17, 21.
Kent (*Cantuaria*), kingdom of, II. 157 ; extent of, from the Thames to the ocean, *ib.* ; duration of, under fifteen kings, to Baldred, *ib.* ; annexed by Egbert (*Edburtus*), king of Wessex, *ib.*, 152 ; kings of, from Aethelbert to Baldred, 368, 369; kingdom of, in litigation for six years, 369; the prey of usurpers, *ib.*; fall of, under Baldred, *ib.* ; king of, reigning in Mercia, defeated by Offa, III. 2 ; a battle in, between Vortimer and the Saxons, II. 279.
——, Edmund, earl of. *See* Edmund.
—— [Thomas de Holand], 8th earl of, proceeds against the insurgents under Wat the Tyler in Kent, III. 354. *See* Huntingdon, earl of.
—— [Thomas de Holand], 9th earl of, one of the appellants against the duke of Gloucester, III. 373 ; created duke of Surrey, 377 ; discovery of plot of, and of the earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, against Henry IV., 385, 386; interrogates one of the household of archbishop Arundel from a window at Kingston, 386; threat of to, against the archbishop, *ib.* ; orders his servants to take his horse and money, *ib.* ; moves, with the earl of Salisbury, to Cirencester, *ib.* ; is taken by the townspeople, after a severe resistance, and beheaded, *ib.* *See* Huntingdon ; Salisbury, earls of.
——, Edmund de Holand, 10th earl of, marriage of, to Lucia, sister of the duke of Milan, III. 410; as admiral of the English seas is killed at the siege of the Castle of S. Brieux, in Britanny, 413.
Kenten, father of Ini, III. 1.
Khosrou (*Cosdrue*), king of the Persians, defeated by Heraclius, I. 357.
Kilbelin, II. 326.
Kimmar, king of Britain, II. 233.

Kimmarus, king of Britain, II. 244.
Kincar, II. 326.
Kirkeban, father of Havelok, II. 379.
Knowles, Robert, knight, assists De Montfort at Auray, III. 236 ; sent with an army into France, 339 ; is driven back, and returns to England, *ib.* ; consulted by Richard II. during the rebellion under Wat the Tyler, 353 ; advises the issue of a proclamation to the effect that the duke of Lancaster is about to invade England, *ib.* ; the mayor of London orders the city to arm and follow, *ib.* ; recommends mercy, 354; commands the mob to disperse, *ib.* ; rebuilds Rochester Bridge, 367 ; death of, 411 ; buried in the [church] of the Carmelite Friars, London, *ib.*
Kymbelinus, son of Tennaneius, brought up and "knighted" by Augustus Cæsar, II. 256, 257 ; reigns in Britain, I. 64 ; II. 256 ; death of, I. 76 ; II. 257 ; is buried at Trinovantum, II. 257 ; sons of, *ib.*
Kymmar, dux of Dorobernia, II. 326.
Kyngestoun, John de, escape of, III. 198.
Kynocus, bishop of Lampeter, succeeds S. David in the archbishopric of Caerleon, II. 364.

L.

Labyrinths, the four, of Egypt, Crete, Lemnos, and Italy, I. 42.
Lacedæmonia, also called Spartania (*Spettania*), situation of, II. 64 ; people of, named from Lacedæmon, son of Shem (*Semele*), *ib.* ; origin of their name Spartani, *ib.*
Lacedæmonians (and Spartans), revolt against the Mycenians (*Mycenos*), I. 50.
Laco, nephew of Gurgustius, king of Britain, II. 233.
[Ladislas], king of Naples, promise of Gregory XII. to make him emperor, III. 410 ; besieges Rome, 411 ; expedition against, by Louis of Provence, 416 ;
[Ladislas]—*cont.*
[called Charles], assists Gregory XII., 418 ; threat against, by John XXII., *ib.* ; aid against, and Gregory asked of Henry IV., by the pope 419, 420 ; submits, with Gregory, to the pope, 420 ; conditions of the submission, *ib.*
Lælius Hamo, general of the expedition of Claudius Cæsar against Britain, I. 77.
——— Ostiensis, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352.
Laguinus of Bodloanum, killed, II. 355.
Laibourn, Henry de, imprisoned, III. 198.
Lakes, defined, II. 6 ; examples : Lacus Asphalti or Mare Mortuum, account of, dimensions of, *ib.*; Lacus Tiberiadis, *ib.* ; Lacus Benacus, 6, 7; Larius 6 ; Lucrinus and Avernus, 7.
Lamasia, Friars Minors of, put to death by the soldiers of Henry IV., III. 388 ; taken and delivered to the Order, 389 ; restoration made to convent of, *ib.* ; English friars to be introduced into, by Henry IV., *ib.*
Lambert, S., bishop of Vercelli, martyrdom of, I. 227 ; III. 281.
Lamech, son of Matussale, birth of, I. 21 ; institutes bigamy, *ib.* ; wives of, *ib.*
———, son of Methuselah, birth of, I. 22.
Lampeter, bishop of. *See* Kynocus.
Lancaster, founded, II. 278 ; called in Saxon "Twhancastre," in British "Kaerkerri," in Latin "Castrum Corrigiæ," *ib.*
———, Henry of, created 9th earl of Derby, III. 202 ; as 1st duke of Lancaster, injured in the leg at the hastiludes at Windsor, 227, 311 ; embarks at Sandwich for France, 228, 312 ; lands at Calais, 228 ; besieges "Mount Eider," *ib.*, 312 ; (son of Henry, 3rd earl of Lancaster), dies and is buried at Leicester, 312.
———, John of Ghent, 2nd duke of, son of Edward III., intends to go to Edward the Black Prince, but is recalled by Edward III., 241. *See* Ghent, John of.

Lancaster, Edmund, 1st earl of. *See* Edmund.

————, Henry of, 3rd earl of, and lord Monmouth, III. 141.

————, Thomas, S., 2nd earl of, son of Edmund, 1st earl, and [Blanche], queen of Navarre, III. 119. 141 ; present at the capture of Peter de Gaverston, 194 ; taken at Boroughbridge (*Burbrige*) by Andrew de Harkley, 196 ; is executed at Pomfret, III. 119, 141, 196, 307.

———— Thomas of, son of Henry IV. *See* Thomas.

Lancashire (*Lancasterschire*), contains five small shires, hundreds, or wapentakes: West Derby, Salford, Leylond, Blackburnshire, and the territory of Lancaster, II. 153.

Land, a tax of twelve pence on twenty shillings levied on, by Henry IV., III. 400 ; lands in the hands of ecclesiastics before 8 Edward I. excepted, *ib.* ; conditions imposed on the levy by the commons, *ib.*

Lando, pope, I. 249 ; III. 290.

———, anti-pope (Innocent III.), condemned by Alexander III., I. 273.

Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, anoints William Rufus king, III. 55, death of, I. 266 ; III. 296.

[Langham], Simon, bishop of Ely, translation of, to Canterbury, III. 240 ; first a monk of Westminster, *ib.*, 241 ; then abbot, 241 ; then bishop of Ely, *ib.* ; elected a cardinal (of S. Xystus), III. 334 ; goes through Paris to Avignon and unsuccessfully attempts to excuse Edward III., *ib.* ; papal nuncio to England, *ib.* ; reprimanded by the pope and cardinals for uncovering to the king, *ib.*, 337; clears himself, 337; presents money to the monks of Canterbury, *ib.* ; postulated to the see (? or Adam de Easton) by them, 339 ; resigns his claim, *ib.*

Langton, Stephen, cardinal, elected archbishop of Canterbury by the prior and convent, III. 92 ; the election accepted and confirmed by the pope [Innocent III.] at Viterbo, *ib.* ; consecration of, 301 ; sends back the bishops of London, &c. to England, 95 ; is sent for by king John, and returns to Canterbury, 96 ; refuses to accede to the conditions proposed by him, *ib.* ; returns to Rome, *ib.* ; recalled to England by the king, 105 ; is reconciled to him at Winchester, and absolves him from the sentence of excommunication, 106 ; celebrates a council, *ib.* ; amount of compensation demanded by, and the prior of Canterbury and others from the king, *ib.*, 107 ; presides over a parliament held at London, 107 ; crowns Henry III., III. 138.

Langton, Stephen—*cont.*

Laostenes, king of the Assyrians, I. 46.

Lateran, Council of (11th General), III. 81.

———, Council of (12th General), I. 276.

Latimer, William, taken prisoner at Bannockburn, III. 195.

Latin kings, the. *See* Laurentine kings.

Latinus, son of Faunus, king of Italy, I. 43.

Latium, derivation of, I. 301.

Laund [Walter de Baldocke], prior of, hanged, III. 389 ; tried at Westminster, 392 ; confesses to have received letters declaring the survival of Richard II., *ib.*

Laurence, S., archdeacon, III. 262.

Laurentine, Latin, Silvian, and Albanian kings reign in Italy, I. 51.

Laurentius and Vincentius, SS. *See* S. Sixtus II.

————, S. *See* SS. Felicissimus, &c.

————, anti-pope. *See* S. Symmachus.

————, S., archbishop of Canterbury, preaches against Eadbald, king of Kent, II. 368.

Lawgivers, ancient: Moses, of the Hebrews; Mercurius Trismegistus, of the Egyptians; Solon, of the Athenians; Lycurgus, of the Lacedæmonians; Numa Pompilius, of the Romans, I. 59.

Laycock, abbey of (Sarum diocese), founded by Ela, countess of Salisbury, III. 117.
Lazarus, first bishop of Cyprus, second death of, I. 90 ; accompanies disciples at dispersion, 155.
Legend entitled " Cura Sanitatis Tiberii, Cæsaris Augusti et Damnatio Pilati," I. 131–141.
——— of the Singers, or Dancers, I. 255, 379, 399, 400 ; III. 392.
——— of the Jew who discovered the Holy Book, I. 389, 390.
Legends, a collection of, I. 393–407.
——— of Palumbus, 393, 394, 395.
——— of the Hidden Treasure, 396, 397.
——— of the Man changed into an Ass, 398, 399.
——— of the Witch of Berkeley, 400, 401, 402, 403.
——— of the Body of Pallas, 403, 404.
——— of the Thrifty Cellarer, 404, 405.
——— of S. Thomas and the Holy Oil, I. 406, 407 ; III. 380.
——— of the Burgess's wife and the Blessed Virgin, III. 76, 77, 78.
Leger, S. (*Leodegarius*), fl., I. 202 ; martyrdom of, under Ebronius, proconsul, I. 221 ; II. 121 ; III. 280.
Leicester, II. 9 ; founded by king Leir on the Soar, II. 150 ; bishops of, [Sexwulf], Totta, II. 177 ; see of, united to Lindsey by Lefwine, *ib.* ; abbey of, of black canons, founded by Robert, earl of Leicester, III. 71.
———, the countess of (wife of Simon de Montfort), resides at Montargis, III. 142 ; sends her daughter to Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, accompanied by her brother Aymer (de Montfort), *ib.* *See* Montfort, Eleanor de.
———, Robert, 2nd earl of, death of, III. 71 ; abbeys founded by, *ib.*
Leicestershire (*Leycestreschire*), II. 152.
Leil, son of Brutus [Viride-Scutum], king of the Britons, I. 47 ; II. 226 ; founds the city of Cairleil, *ib.* ; contemporary events, II. 226.
Leinster (*Lagenia*), S. Colman's birds in, II. 129.
Lendowalyn, king of Loegria, II. 234.
Lengiæ, II. 347.
Lent, fast during, first institution of, I. 166.
Leo I., emperor of the east, reign of, I. 348, 349.
—— III., reign of, 362, 363.
—— IV., reign of, I. 365 ; his cupidity, *ib.*
——, king of the Romans, II. 359.
——, S., the Great, pope, pontificate of, I. 198, 199, 200 ; writes seven epistles to Fabianus, bishop of Constantinople, 198 ; refutes the heresy of Eutyches, *ib.* ; convokes the Council of Chalcedon, *ib.* ; his additions to the canon of the mass, *ib.* ; his feast, 199 ; legend illustrating his purity, *ib.* ; induces Attila, king of the Huns, to withdraw from Italy, *ib.* ; legend of the apparition to Attila, 200 ; III. 271, 272.
—— II., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 223 ; III. 281.
——, pope, I. 229.
—— III., pope, I. 238 ; taken prisoner, blinded, and muted, *ib.* ; released by Charlemagne, *ib.* ; III. 285.
—— IV., pope, I. 242 ; composes a collect, and defeats the Saracens, *ib.* ; composes another collect, *ib.* ; anoints Alfred, son of Aetheluulf, king, I. 242 ; III. 287.
—— V., pope, I. 248 ; III. 289.
—— VI., pope, I. 250 ; III. 290.
—— VII., pope, I. 251 ; III. 291.
—— VIII. (VI.), pope, I. 252 ; restoration of, *ib.* ; III. 291.
—— IX., pope, I. 262 ; III. 294.
Leodegarius, consul of Colonia, II. 326.
——— Bolonensis, killed, II. 354.
Leonard, S., fl., III. 274 ; baptised by S. Remigius, *ib.*
Leontius (*Leo*), reign of, I. 360 ; put to death by Justinian, 361.
———, S., the father of Origen, martyrdom of, I. 327.
Leppidus, II. 336.
Lestrange (*Extraneus*), Hamo. *See* Mortimer.

Leuwine (*Lewyn*), brother of Harold II., killed at the battle of Hastings, II. 199.
Lewes, the battle of, I. 281 ; III. 127, 128, 304. *See* Henry III., Edward I., Montfort, Simon de, &c.
———, monastery of, founded, III. 329.
[Leybourne, Roger de, omitted in the list of adherents of Henry III., III. 123.] *See* Mortimer.
Leyr, king of Britain, II. 227 ; builds the city of Kaerleyr, now Leicester, on the Soar, *ib.*; three daughters of : Regan, Gorgonilla, and Cordeilla, *ib.* ; quarrels with Cordeilla, 228 ; marries Gorgonilla and Regan to the dukes of Albania and Cornwall, *ib.* ; refuses to endow Cordeilla, *ib.* ; is attacked by the two dukes and deprived of his kingdom, *ib.* ; lives with Margannus, duke of Albany, *ib.* ; his retinue proposed to be diminished by Gonorilla, *ib.* ; goes to Conedagius, duke of Cornwall, *ib* ; Regan refuses to allow him to remain with more than one knight, *ib.* ; crosses over to Gaul, *ib.* ; lamentation of, *ib.* 230 ; sends to Cordeilla, *ib.* ; is received by her and Aganippus, 231 ; an army assembled in France by Aganippus in aid of, *ib* ; invades England with Cordeilla, and lands at Dover, *ib.* ; defeats and kills the king of Scotland and earl of Cornwall, *ib.* ; is crowned again at Trinovantum, 232 ; dies, and is buried at Leicester, by Cordeilla, *ib.*
Liberius, S., bishop of Rome, pontificate of, I. 192, 193; exiled by Constantine, 192; restored on becoming an Arian, 193 ; condemned by S. Damasus, 194; III. 268.
Libya Cyrenensis, a province of Africa, called from its metropolis Cyrene, II. 39 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; description of, 40 ; origin of inhabitants of, *ib* ; river Phuth runs through, *ib.*
Lichfield, see of, removed to Chester, II. 174 ; bishops of, 176, 177 ; Diuma, Ceollach, Trumhere, Jaraman, Ceadda, 176 ; Winfred, Sexwlf (abbot of Wodhamford), Cudwine, Headdi, Aldwini, Wor, 177.
Lilbourne (*Lisscbona*), council at, before the invasion of England by William, duke of Normandy, III. 35.
Limoges, viscount of, refuses to surrender a knight to Richard I., III. 84 ; his territory invaded by the king, *ib.*
Lincoln, the chief city of Lyndesey, II. 149; its founder unknown, *ib.* ; presumed to have been founded by king Lude, since Caerludcoid (its ancient name), is derived from *Caer*, *coid*, and *lud*, *ib.*; Danes at, III. 4 ; (Castle of), besieged by Stephen, 73 ; see of, contains the counties between the Thames and Humber, II. 180.
———, Henry, bishop of. *See* Beaufort.
———, S. Hugh, bishop of. *See* Hugh.
———, Robert, bishop of, dies, III. 74.
———, Robert, bishop of. *See* Grosse-Teste.
Lincolnshire (*Lincolneschire*), II. 152.
Lindesey, Danes at, III. 4.
———, Ethelwine, bishop of, II. 177 ; united to Leicester by Remigius, *ib.*
Lindisfarne (also Holy Island), Eata, bishop of, II. 178 ; see of, lasts to the invasion of the Danes, 179 ; Eardulf, bishop of, removes see of, to Chester-le-Street (*Cumbrebrigh*), now Hubbeforde-on-Tweed, *ib.* ; see of, translated to Durham, I. 254. *See* Cuthbert, Finian.
Linus, bishop of Rome, succeeds S. Peter, I. 167; length of his pontificate, *ib.* 168; is martyred and buried near S. Peter, 168 ; opinion of some writers as to his dignity, *ib.*; beheaded by order of Saturninus, *ib.* ; buried first in the Vatican, *ib.*, then removed by Gregory, bishop of Ostia, in the church of S. Laurentius, *ib.*; appointed by S. Peter, *ib.*; III. 252.
Lionel, 1st duke of Clarence, 2nd son of Edward III., returns from Ireland, III. 241; sends William de Wyndesor there, *ib.*; marries his daughter to the 3rd earl of March, 333 ; crosses the sea in order to marry the daughter of the duke of Milan, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*
Lisanias, brother of Herod and Phillip, tetrarch of Abelina, II. 98. *See* Tetrarchies.

Lisimiaco, Guy de, uterine brother of Henry III., escapes at the battle of Lewes, towards Pevensey Castle, III. 128.

Lithuania (*Lectonia*), a province of Scythia, II. 102 ; description of, *ib.*

Litter in the Holy Manger brought to Rome by the empress Helena, I. 69 ; placed in the basilica of the church of S. Mary the Greater, *ib.*

Liutprand, king of the Lombards, besieges Rome, I. 232, 233.

Livonia, site of, II. 102 ; customs of people of, *ib.* 103.

Llandaff, [Henry], bishop of, power of pronouncing the papal sentence against king John in Wales and Ireland given to, by Pandulph and Durand, III. 99.

Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, death of, III. 119.

————, prince of Wales (son of Griffin, son of the foregoing), joins Simon de Montfort, III. 131 ; betrothed to Eleanor de Montfort, 142 ; is defeated and retires to Snowdon Castle, 143 ; surrenders to Edward I., *ib.*; conditions of his pardon, *ib.*; marries Eleanor de Montfort, 144 ; lays waste Cardigan and Stradewi, 146 ; marches towards Buelth, *ib.*; is met by John Giffard and Edmund de Mortimer, who defeat him, *ib.* ; is killed, I. 282 ; III. 146, 305 ; with all his troops, III. 146 ; his head is cut off and sent to Edward I., *ib.*; it is sent by him to London, and fixed in the Tower, *ib.*

Lobeth, account of, II. 56.

Locrinus, son of Brutus, king of Britain, I. 44 ; coronation of, II. 221 ; promised by Brutus to the daughter of Corinæus, *ib.*; happy reign of, *ib.*; with the aid of Kamber, who meets him at Nottingham, attacks Hymbar, king of Hundland, *ib.*; falls in love with his daughter Estrilda *ib.*; forced by Corinæus to marry Gwentolen, 222 ; constructs a subterranean house for Estrilda, *ib.*; daughter of, by her, *ib.*; crowns her queen, *ib.*; separates from Guendolen, *ib.*; attacked, defeated, and killed by her, *ib.* ; length of reign of, 223.

Locrinus—*cont.*

Locusts, plague of, I. 311 ; pestilence in consequence of destruction of, *ib.*

Loegria, a division of Britain, called from Locrinus, II. 143, 220 ; extends no further than the Humber, *ib.* ; given to the Saxons by Gurmundus, 366 ; church of, deserted, *ib.*

Lollards, the disciples of Wickliffe proved to be, III. 351 ; regulations made against at the Council of Oxford, 412 ; statute empowering the Friars Preachers to preach against heresies of, without prohibition, 417.

Lombard merchants, the, accused by their colleagues of defrauding the crown, III. 234 ; imprisoned in the Tower of London, *ib.*; released on paying a fine to the king, *ib.* ; popular account of amount of defalcations of, *ib.*

Lombards, the, portents premonitory of their arrival in Italy, I. 211 ; the conversion of, by S. Barbarus Benevetannus, 352 ; acquire possession of Lombardy, *ib.* ; cut their hair, 353 ; their costume, *ib.* ; invade Italy, 211 ; besiege Rome, 212 ; reduce Italy, III. 276.

Lombardus, Petrus, bishop of Paris, "the Master of the Sentences," III. 66 ; writes the "Liber Sententiarum," and new glosses on the Psalter and the Epistles of S. Paul, *ib.*

Lond, brother of Cassibalaunus, builds a wall round Trinovantum, and calls it Kaerlond, or the city of Lond, II. 219.

London, II. 8 ; situated on the Thames, 149 ; founded by Brute, and called Trinovantum, *i.e.*, New Troy, *ib.* ; called Caerlud by king Lud, *ib.* ; then by the Saxons, London, *ib.* ; and Londres by the Normans and French, *ib.*; several houses overturned in, by a violent wind, III. 50 ; a great council at, 59, 60 ; stone bridge commenced at, by Petrus Capellanus de Colechurch, 81 ; city of, plot of Jews at Northampton to burn it,

London—*cont.*
discovered, 120; citizens of, imprison the justiciaries and barons of the exchequer of Henry III., 122; nearly burnt, 292; taken by the barons, 301; men of, at the battle of Lewes, put to flight by prince Edward, 127; deprived of its ancient liberties and privileges by Henry III. at the parliament of Winchester, 133; privileges of, withdrawn by Richard II., 367; men of, refuse to lend money to the king, *ib.*; mayor, sheriffs, &c. of, summoned to Woodstock, 368; bakers, butchers, and brewers of, accused of making excessive profits, *ib.*; mayor, &c. throw themselves on the king's mercy, *ib.*; deprived of the government of the city, *ib.*; the new officers placed by the king in, impose so heavy a tax that some persons leave the city, *ib.*; receive the king, and give him the keys of the city and 40,000*l.*, *ib.*; the government of the city restored to, *ib.*
———, Council of, temp. William I. edict of, removes episcopal sees from small towns to cities, II. 173, 174.
———, Council of, in which the marriage of the clergy is condemned, III. 64.
———, Council of, III. 413; convoked by Francis, archbishop of Bordeaux, *ib.*; sermon preached at, by him, *ib.*; answer of England given at, touching the schism, *ib.*
———, archbishop of, II. 326.
———, archbishop of, created by SS. Fuganus and Damianus, II. 172; all Cornwall and Loegria, up to the Humber, subject to, *ib.*; archiepiscopal privilege granted to, by S. Gregory, *ib.*
———, bishops of. *See* Courtenay, S. Dunstan, Gocelinus, Mellitus, Robert, Thronus, Wyna.
———, William, bishop of, and others, commissioned by pope [Innocent III.] to command king John to suspend interference with Stephen Langton and the prior and convent of Canterbury, III. 94; in case of his refusal to place England under an interdict, *ib.*; they pronounce an interdict, *ib.*, 95; their temporalities seized by the king, 95; they excommunicate his ministers, *ib.*; they leave England and complain to Langton, who sends them back, *ib.*; negotiations with, for reconciliation by the king, *ib.*; they refuse to erase the restitution clause from their charters, *ib.*, 96; are sent to Langton by him to bring him back to England, 96.
———[William Courtenay], bishop of, one of the examiners of Wickliffe, III. 347; begs him to keep silence, 348. *See* Courtenay; Gregory XI.
Longius (*Longinus*), pierces the side of Christ by command of Pilate, I. 166; cured of blindness, *ib.*; converted to Christianity, *ib.*; instructed by the apostles in Cæsarea, *ib.*; becomes a monk, *ib.*; is martyred, *ib.*; bishop, death of, III. 250.
Longue-Epée, William [3rd earl of Salisbury], ob., III. 303.
Lords Temporal, opinion of, as to the validity of king John's donation of the kingdom of England to the pope, III. 339.
Lorth, king of Norguegia, II. 326; troops supplied to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.
Loryng, Walter, abbot of Malmesbury, petitions king John for the Castle of Malmesbury, III. 61.
Losyng, Herbert, buys the bishopric of Thetford from the abbot of Ramsey, III. 54; a great simonist, *ib.*; verses on, 55; a brother of, made abbot of Winchester, 54.
Lothaire I., reign of, I. 371; becomes a monk, *ib.* *See* Sergius II.
——— II., reign of, I. 385.
——— (II.), emperor, assists pope Innocent II. against Roger, duke of Apulia, I. 270.
———, king of Italy, reign of, I. 375.
Loth, made consul of Thotonesia by Arthur, II. 318; king of Norguegia, commands in the army of king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348.

Louis I., son of Charlemagne, succeeds him, III. 286 ; and Lothaire, reign of, I. 370 ; orders the baptism of the Bohemians, *ib.* ; ob., I. 241 ; III. 287.

—— II., emperor, present at the ordination of pope Nicholas I., I. 244 ; reign of, 371, 372.

——, the Blind, reign of, I. 373, 374 ; puts to flight Berenger, king of Italy, 373 ; taken and blinded by Berenger, 374.

—— VI., king of France, succ., III. 296.

—— VII., king of France, reconciles Henry II. and his son, III. 72 ; informs the king of the names of the fomenters of the quarrel, *ib.* ; goes on a pilgrimage to Canterbury and deposits there a precious stone from his ring, 75 ; dies, 300.

—— IX., S., king of France, is captured, III. 303.

——, prince (afterwards Louis VIII.), son of Philip II., king of France, sent for by the commonalty of England, III. 108 ; is received in England with his army, *ib.* ; arrives at Rochester, and takes the Castle, 109 ; hangs all the foreigners in it, *ib.* ; is received in London, *ib.* ; takes the Castles of Reigate, Guildford, Farnham, and the city of Winchester, *ib.* ; takes Odiham Castle, *ib.* ; besieges Dover Castle, 114 ; returns to London, *ib.* ; the Tower of London surrendered to, *ib.* ; takes Hertford Castle *ib.* ; Berkhampstead Castle, *ib.* ; makes a truce with Henry III., *ib.* ; is defeated by him near Lincoln, *ib.*

Lucy, S., the virgin, martyrdom of, I. 189 ; III. 265.

Lucia, sister of the duke of Milan, married to Edmund de Holand, earl of Kent, III. 410.

Lucina, S., petitions S. Cornelius to remove the bodies of SS. Peter and Paul from the catacombs, I. 182 ; buries that of S. Paul in the Via Ostiensis, *ib.*

Lucius Catellus, commands under the emperor Lucius against the Britons, II. 351 ; attacks the division of the king of Scotia and the duke of Albania, 352.

——— Hiberius, address of, to his generals, II. 350, 351 ; advances from Lengriæ against king Arthur, 351 ; defeated and killed, 358 ; body of, sent to the Roman senate by Arthur, 359 ; letter of, to king Arthur, II. 330, 331 ; commands the assembling of an army to subjugate Britain, 336 ; names of allies of, *ib.* ; refuses to leave Gaul, 342 ; moves towards Augustodunum, 347. *See* Arthur.

———, king of Britain, II. 263 ; III. 257 ; sends to pope Eleutherius, I. 176, 177 ; II. 264 ; conversion of, III. 257 ; is baptised by SS. Fuganus and Damianus, I. 177 ; II. 264 ; dies, II. 264.

———, S. pope, pontificate of, I. 183 ; exile of, *ib.* ; martyrdom of, *ib.* ; III. 261.

——— II., pope, I. 271 ; III. 298.

——— III., pope, I. 274 ; III. 300.

Lucius—*cont.*

Lude, son of Ely, king of Britain, II. 248 ; improves Trinovantum, *ib.* ; builds Porthlud or Ludgate there, 249 ; dies, and is buried in a tower in it, *ib.*

Lugdebras, son of Leil, king of Britain, I. 48.

Luitprand (*Lupandus*), king of the Lombards, ransoms the body of S. Augustine, bishop of Hippo, from the Saracens, I. 362.

Luke, S., Evangelist, translation of, III. 267

Lupold, count, story of, I. 379, 380, 381.

Lury, ancient town of, once stood on the border of the duchy of Guienne, III. 218.

Lusitania (*Lusitaniel*), a province of Spain, description of, II. 50.

Lycaonia, account of, II. 37.

Lycia, so called because it joins Cilicia, II. 38, 54 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; Mount Chimæra in, *ib.* ; otherwise Lycaonia, description of, 49 ; chief city of, Lystra, *ib.* ; SS. Paul and Barnabas come to Lystra and Derbe from Iconium, *ib.*

Lycurgus, gives laws to the Lacedæmonians, I. 50.
Lydia, anciently called Mæonia, II. 37; Amia Moema, 49; called from Lydus, or Lyda, 37, 50, 54; boundaries of, *ib.*; surrounded by the river Meles (Hellespont, 37; Helles, 50), 37, 50; Pactolus and Hermus enrich it, *ib.*
Lyons, Council of (13th General), I. 278.
——–, 14th General Council at, III. 141; nuntios sent to, by the Tartars and the Greeks, *ib.*
Lyre, the, invented by Mercury, I. 41.

M.

Macbeth, king of Scots, killed by Siward, "dux" of Northumbria, III. 32.
Macedonia, also called Emathia, II. 64; called from Macedon, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; the country of Alexander the Great, *ib.*; Mount Olympus in, *ib.*; account of, from Pliny, 65.
Macedonius, condemnation of, at Constantinople, I. 194.
Macha, account of, II. 56.
Macharii, SS., the, fl., I. 343.
MacMorough (*Makamor*) and the chiefs of the pure Irish, captured, and taken to England by Richard II., III. 371.
Macrinus, reign of, I. 328.
Macrobius, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.
Maddan, son of Locrinus, reigns with Guendoloen his mother, I. 45; king of the Britons, II. 223.
Madidus, king of the Medes, reigns, I. 52.
Madoc, insurrection of the North-Welsh under, III. 158; is taken prisoner to London and beheaded, *ib.*
Magedan, II. 56.
Magi, the, names of, in Hebrew, Greek, and Latin, I. 70; invention of the bodies of, near Milan, III. 70; translation of, to Cologne, by Reynald, bishop elect of Cologne, chancellor of the emperor Frederick I., 70, 71; translated from Constantinople to Milan by S. Eustorgius, 71; the three, translation of, from Milan to Cologne, 86; from Persia to Constantinople, 87; and by Pope Sergius to Milan, *ib.*
[Magna Carta], conceded by king John, III. 108; confirmed by Henry III., 115, 120; a subsidy granted for, 115.
Magnesia, a province of Greece, II. 65.
Magnus III., king of the Norwegians, (*Norici*), with Harold, son of Harold II., king of England, reduces the Orkneys, &c., III. 51; lands at Anglesea, and is repulsed by the earls of Chester and Shrewsbury, *ib.*
Mahalaleel, son of Cainan, birth and death of, I. 22.
Mahomet, fl., I. 357; death of, 218; III. 279.
Maifitus, S., fl., at Vienna, III. 272.
Maine, the. *See* Franconia.
Maiolus, third abbot of Cluny, I. 422.
Malalehel, son of Irad, birth of, I. 21.
Malberidur, II. 326.
Malcolm (*Malcolinus*), king of the Cumbri, compelled to join the triumph of Edgar on the Dee, III. 17.
——– I., king of Scots, receives Cumberland from Edmund I., III. 11.
——– III., Canmore, king of the Cumbri, made king of Scots by Edward the Confessor, III. 32; submits to William the Conqueror, 39; breaks the treaties between them, *ib.*; false oath of, to William Rufus, *ib.*; contention between and, 47; is slain by Robert de Mowbray, earl of Northumberland, by the men of, 39, 47; buried at Tynemouth, 39; and carried by his son Alexander to Dumfermline, *ib.*; renders homage to William at Berwick, 46; and gives hostages for his fealty, *ib.*; dies, *ib.* *See* Margaret, grand-daughter of Edmund Ironside.

Malcolm IV. (*David*), king of Scotland, gives up to Henry II. all his possessions acquired during the reign of Stephen in the north of England, III. 69.
Malgo, king of Britain, reign of, II. 365.
Malim, son of Mempricius, II. 223. *See* Maddan.
Malmanasius, king of Islandia, II. 326; troops supplied to king Arthur against the Romans by, 335.
Malmesbury, abbey of, history of its foundation, I. 224, 225, 226, 227; founded, III. 279, 328; donations of Edgar to, 17; destroyed by Edwi, I. 229; turned into a stable by, III. 16; cross worn by Aethelstan in battle among the relics at, 11; part of the Cross and Crown of Thorns left to, by him, 13; his nephews buried at, 11, 13.
————, Aldhelm, abbot of. *See* Aldhelm.
————, Eluricus, abbot of, III. 17.
————, Robert, ob., III. 301.
————, Walter, abbot of. *See* Loryng.
————, William de Colern, abbot of, ob., III. 306.
————, Adam de la Hoke, abbot of, death of, III. 204.
————, Simon de Aumeney made abbot of, III. 309; ob., 313.
————, John Tyntern, abbot of, death of, III. 214.
————, T[homa]s [de] Br[omh]am, made a monk of, III. 300.
————, bell tower at, built by Herman, chaplain of Edward the Confessor, and bishop of Wilton, I. 262.
————, Castle of, date of erection of, 229; built by Roger, bishop of Sarum, III. 61; anciently the site of a castle of king Donewald, *ib.*; destroyed by Gurmundus, *ib.*; its great strength, *ib.*; its distance from the church-tower, *ib.*; begged of king John by Walter Loryng, abbot of the monastery of, *ib.*; besieged by Henry, son of the empress Maud, 66; ineffectual attempt of Stephen to relieve it, *ib.*; granted by king John to Walter Loryng, abbot of Malmesbury, 108, 301.
Malmesbury, earthquake at, I. 178; lepers' hospital at, 229.
————, William of, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; calls Gurmundus "Gudrum," III. 10; writes the life of S. Aldhelm, I. 226, 227. *See* Chester, monk of.
Malta (*Midelina*), situated in the Mare Adriaticum, II. 92; arrival of St. Paul at, *ib.*
Mamertus, S., bishop of Vienna, institutes the Rogations, I. 200, 348.
Mammæa, the mother of Alexander Severus, put to death by her son, I. 329; hears Origen, III. 259.
Man, creation of, I. 11; dignity of, *ib.*; analogies between and external world, 13–16; differences between and external world, 17; weakness of, *ib.*, 18; fall of, 19, 20; expulsion of, from Paradise, 20.
——, Isle of (*Eubonia Insula*), site of, II. 144; divided into two islands, *ib*; marvels in; *ib.*, 145; always inhabited by the Scots, 145.
Manasseh, son of Hezekiah, reigns, I. 53; his crimes, *ib.*; led captive to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar, *ib.*
Mandevile, Geoffrey de [5th earl of Essex], one of the leaders of the barons against king John, III. 112.
Mandewyl, William de, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
Manfred, usurps the kingdom of Sicily, I. 392; deprived by Urban IV., 280.
Manley, Edmund, killed at Bannockburn, III. 195.
Mango, king of the Venedoti, commands the burial of S. David, archbishop of Caerlon, at Menevia, II. 364.
Manichæans, rise of the, I. 334; converted, not to communicate together with Christians, 194, 195.
Mantes, burned by William the Conqueror, III. 44.

Manuel II., emperor of the east, visits, England, III. 388, 403; for aid against the Turks, 388; has daily private mass according to the Greek rite, in his chamber, *ib.*; collects a sum by the papal indulgence, and receives an aid from Henry IV., *ib.*

Mapcatel, II. 326.

Mape, Walter, made archdeacon of Lincoln, I. 276; III. 300.

Mapelaudeddelin, II. 326.

Mapledauc, II. 326.

Mapnogoid, II. 326.

Mappapo, II. 326.

Mappoil, II. 326.

Mar, Donald, earl of, does homage to Edward I., III. 165; is killed at Gladsmuir, *ib.*

Marcellinus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 186, 187, 188, 189; compelled by Diocletian to sacrifice, 186; does penance, *ib.*; is beheaded, *ib.*; legend concerning his sepulture, *ib.*, 187; III. 263.

Marcellus I., S., pope, pontificate of, I. 189; conjured by his predecessor Marcellinus not to perform sacrifice, 186; death of, 189; III. 265.

Marcellus Mutius (*Mutuus*) attacks Walwanus, the nephew of king Arthur, and is killed by him, II. 343.

[March] Mortimer, Roger, senior [1st earl of], surrenders to Edward II., III. 197; is sent to the Tower of London, *ib.*; escapes, *ib.*; lands with queen Isabella in England, 198; taken in the chamber of the queen at Nottingham, 201, 308; executed at London, 201.

——— [Roger Mortimer], 2nd earl of, dies and is buried in France, III. 312; the son of, decorated with the insignia of knighthood by Edward III., III. 207.

——— 4th earl of, opposes the claim of John of Ghent for his son Henry, earl of Derby, to the crown, III. 369; asserts his descent from Lionel, second son of Edward III., *ib.*; silenced by the king, 370; proclaimed heir to the crown by Richard II., 361; is slain in Ireland, *ib.*, 379; the heirs of, declared to be the true heirs of the crown of the line of Lionel [duke of Clarence], 402; abduction of, by a lady of the queen's chamber [Constance of York], *ib.*; the duke of York accused of the abduction of, by her, *ib.* *See* Dunbar.

March [Roger Mortimer]—*cont.*

Marche, William de la, treasurer to Edward I., III. 155.

Marcia, wife of Guentolinus, queen of Britain, II. 244.

Marcian, emperor of the East, and Valentius, reign of, I. 348.

Marcus Agrippa, legend concerning, I. 320.

Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus, reign of, I. 324, 325; reigns alone, 325.

——— Curtius, legend of, I. 60, 310.

Mardisley (or Mardesley), John, Friar Minor, preaches before Edward III., III. 337; asked by him to be present at a great council, *ib.*; proves the pope to have no temporal dominion as Christ's vicar, 338.

Mare Boreale, II. 8.

Margadud, king of the Demetæ, defeats Aethelfrith of Northumbria before Bangor, III. 370.

Marganus (and Cunedagius), divide Britain between them, II. 232; governs from the Humber to Caithness, *ib.*; persuaded to attack Cunedagius, *ib.*; defeated and put to flight by him, 233; killed by him in Kambria, even now called after him "Margan," *ib.*

Margannus, son of Artogallo, king of Britain, II. 247.

Margaret, daughter of Edward, son of Edmund Ironside, III. 29, 60; marries Malcolm [III.], king of Scots, *ib.*; Maud, daughter of, *ib.*; mother of the empress Maud, *ib.*

———, daughter of Henry III. and Eleanor of Provence, queen of Scotland, III. 119; marries Alexander (III.), king of Scotland, 138; is present at the coronation of Edward I., 141.

Margaret, daughter of Alexander (III.), king of Scotland and queen Margaret, III. 148 ; marries (Eric) king of Norway, 149.

————, the "Maid of Norway," acknowledged heir to the kingdom of Scotland, III. 149 ; is sent for by Edward I., falls sick on her voyage to Scotland, and dies in the Orkneys, *ib.*

[————], daughter of the count of Flanders, negotiations touching marriage of, and Edmund, earl of Cambridge, III. 235, 237 ; offered in marriage to Richard II., 355 ; married to [Philip the Hardy] duke of Burgundy, *ib.*

Maria and Hermanna, SS., death of, I. 346.

Marianus Scotus, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.

Marinus, pope, I. 245.

Marius (or Mario), king of Britain, II. 261 ; defeats and kills Rodrik, king of Aquitain, *ib.*, 262 ; erects a stone commemorative of the victory, 262 ; is called afterwards Westmarius, and gives his name to "Westmerland," *ib.* ; grants land to the men of Rodrik, *ib.* ; founds Chester, 263 ; dies, and is buried at Carlisle, *ib.*

———, II. 336.

Mark, S. (Evangelist), son of S. Peter, writes his gospel in Rome from the teaching of S. Peter, I. 165 ; (?) sent by him to preach, *ib.* ; dies, and is buried at Alexandria, III. 251 ; martyrdom of at Aquileia under Gundoferus, I. 166 ; translation of body of, to Venice, *ib.*, 348.

————, pope, pontificate of, I. 191 ; III. 267.

[Marmioun, Philip, omitted in the list of adherents of Henry III., III. 123.]

Marsan, the seigneur (*dominus*) de, holds two fortified towns in Perigort against the French, III. 215.

Marshal, William, junior (afterwards 4th earl of Pembroke), one of the leaders of the barons against king John, III. 112.

Marsilia, the prince of, converted and baptised by S. Peter at Jerusalem, I. 156. *See* S. Mary Magdalene.

Martha, S., accompanies disciples at dispersion, I. 155.

Martia, queen of the Britons, laws of, II. 154.

Martialis, S., sent by S. Paul into Gaul, I. 165.

Martin, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 220 ; his feast-day celebrated on the morrow of S. Martin of Tours, *ib.*, III. 280. *See* Paul II., patriarch of Constantinople.

——— II., pope, III. 289.

——— III., pope, I. 251 ; III. 291.

——— IV., pope, cons., I. 282 ; III. 305 ; ob., *ib.*

——— V., pope, I. 289 ; union restored by election of, *ib.*

——— S., monastery of, legend concerning, I. 237.

————, death of, I. 341.

———— of Tours, fl., I. 343 ; III. 269 ; ob., I. 341 ; III. 269 ; translation of, and legend, I. 246. *See* S. Patrick.

Martinus (*Polonus*), epoch of Nativity according to, I. 65 ; quoted, 69.

Mary, daughter of Edward I., takes the veil, III. 147.

Mary Magdalene, S., appearance of our Lord to, after the resurrection, I. 153 ; accompanied by many of the disciples expelled from Judæa, 155 ; arrives at Marsilia, *ib.* ; preaches against the idolatry of the natives, *ib.* 156 ; converts the prince, 156 ; settles there, and receives angelic consolation, *ib.* ; dies, III. 251 ; translation of, I. 234 ; opinions as to her place of sepulture, *ib.*

Mary S., the daughter of Cleophas, born, I. 64 ; married to Alphæus, *ib.*

[Mary Salome,] S., daughter of Zebedee, born, I. 64.

Mary, S., *mother* of SS. Gervase and Prothase, martyrs (or S. Valeria, martyr, and SS. Gerv. and Proth., martyrs), translation of, III. 71.

Mary, S., the Blessed Virgin, ministers to S. Elizabeth, I. 67 ; put away on her return by S. Joseph, *ib.* ; assumption of, III. 250. *See* Virgin, the Blessed.

Mary-le-Bow, S. (*Ad Arcus*), church of unroofed, III. 50.

Mary the Greater, S., church of, called "Ad Præsepe," built by S. Sixtus III., I. 198.

Masaga and Maon, account of, II. 56.

Mascusius, the pirate, compelled to join the triumph of Edgar on the Dee, III. 17.

Mass, licence to celebrate, with chalices of tin, petitioned from the pope, III. 83.

Mastiffs, destruction of, by order of king John, I. 422.

Mathias, king of Hungary, death of, I. 295.

Matilda, queen of William the Conqueror, brought from Normandy into England, III. 39 ; crowned, *ib.* ; death of, I. 265, 266 ; III. 40, 295 ; sons of William by her, III. 40, 41 ; daughters of William by her, 41, 42 ; gains the remission of the toll on the town of Coventry, 266.

———, daughter of Henry II. ; marries Henry, duke of Saxony, III. 71, 299 ; sons of, by him, *ib.*

———, countess, leaves her possessions to the see of S. Peter, I. 264. *See* Normans, the.

Matthias, S., calling of, in the room of Judas, I. 83.

Matthew, S. (Evangelist), writes his Gospel, I. 165 ; III. 249 ; Hebrew autograph of Gospel of, discovered with body of S. Barnabas, I. 201 ; autograph of Gospel of, discovered at Rome, 349.

Maud, daughter of Margaret and Malcolm [III.], III. 29 ; marries Henry I. (Beauclerk,) *ib.*, 57 ; her two sons by him, William and Richard (?), 58 ; ob., 297.

———, daughter of Henry I. (and queen Maud), III. 29 ; married to the emperor Henry V., 59 ; son of, by him, *ib.* ; fealty sworn to, by the lords spiritual and temporal, 60, 297 ; sent into Normandy to marry the son of Fulk, earl of Anjou, 60 ; returns to England, 62 ; fealty again sworn to, at Northampton, 62 ; left childless by the emperor, marries Geoffrey Plantagenest, earl of Anjou, 64 ; sons of, by him, *ib.* ; besieged by Stephen in Oxford, 65 ; escapes in disguise, *ib.* ; rebels against Stephen, 67.

Matussale, son of Malalehel, birth of, I. 21.

Mauduyt, John, imprisoned, III. 198.

———, Thomas, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.

Mauganus, bishop of Silecester, II. 330.

Maugerius, comes Curbuliensis, son of Richard Sans Peur, II. 192 ; son of William Longue-Epée, duke of Normandy, III. 330.

Maugerus, archbishop of Rouen, son of Richard II., duke of Normandy, II. 192 ; son of Richard Sans Peur, III. 330.

Maulus. *See* Mempricius.

Maunsel, Thomas, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

Maurice, reign of, I. 354, 355 ; dispute of, with pope Gregory, *ib.* ; visions of, *ib.* ; murder of, by Phocas, *ib.*

———, S., commander of the Theban legion, martyrdom of, III. 263 ; standard of, sent by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, 13.

———, monastery of. *See* Sigismund, king of Burgundy.

Maurus, S. (*S. Maurice*), disciple of S. Benedict, fl., I. 205 ; abbot, dies and is buried near Paris, 211.

Mauric[i]us Cardorcanensis, death of, II. 347.

Mauricius Silvanus, commands under Lucius against the Romans, II. 352.

Mauritania, why so called, II. 43, 57 ; provinces of— Sitifensis, 44, 57 ; called so from the city of Sitife, 44 ; Cæsariensis, 44 ; boundaries of both, *ib.* ; Tingitana, from Tingis, 44 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; products of, *ib.*

Maurius Lepidus, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 351 ; (Marius) killed, 354.

Mauron, consul of Wygornia (*Warwick*), II. 326.

Mautravers, John, junior, escape of, III. 198.

Maxentius, appointed to the East by Galerius, I. 337 ; converts the church of S. Lucina into a stable, 189 ; usurpation of, II. 268 ; Romans appeal to Constantine for aid against, *ib.*

———— the Armenian elected in room of Constans II., I. 358 ; put to death by Constantine Pogonatus, *ib.*

————, S., abbot, fl., I. 202.

Maximianus (? Galerius), obtains the sovereignty of Britain, and the imperial power, II. 332, 333 ; destroys the Christian churches, Sacred Writings, and the priests and believers in Britain, 266.

————, (? Maximus), sent by Constantine to Britain to marry the daughter of Octavius, II. 269; is crowned king, 270; invades Armorica and defeats and kills king Imbald, *ib.* ; gives it to Conanus Meriadok, *ib.* ; reduces Gallia Ulterior and Germany, *ib.* ; elected emperor by the army in Britain, *ib.* ; is killed by Theodosius I. at Aquileia, *ib.* ; goes to Rome, *ib.* ; invades Armorica, 271 ; sends Gratianus (Municeps) to Britain, 272 ; is killed at Rome, *ib.*

————, emperor. *See* Diocletian.

Maximilian, archduke of Austria, elected king of the Romans, I. 295 ; crowned at Aix, *ib.* ; marries Maria, daughter of Charles, duke of Burgundy, *ib.* ; his son Philip, duke of Burgundy, *ib.*

Maximilla, I. 176.

Maximinus, S., accompanies the apostles out of Judæa, I. 155 ; S. Mary Magdalene committed to, by S. Peter, *ib.*

————————, receives S. Athanasius, I. 122 ; on the adoration, the baptism, and the miracle at Cana, I. 76.

Maximin I., reign of, I. 330.

Medard, S., bishop of, death of, I. 207.

——— and Gildard, SS., fl., III. 273.

Medes, the, descendants of Shem, I. 29.

Media, called from Medus, III. 51 ; II. 92 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; description of, *ib.*

Mediterranean Sea, the (*Mare Magnum, Mediterraneum*), arises at the Columns of Hercules, II. 3 ; gulfs in : Hispanicus, Gallicus, Ligustrus, Tyrrhenus, and Creticus, *ib.* ; Ionius, 4 ; course of, along Pontus, Thrace, and Mœsia, up to the Paludes Mœotides, 3 ; termination of, *ib.* ; islands of Colchos and Patmos in, *ib.* ; whirlpools, Scylla and Charybdis in, 4.

Meildulph, S., an Irish monk, leaves Ireland, I. 224 ; arrives in England, and settles at Bladon or Ingebourne castle, 225 ; his scholars form a convent there, *ib.* ; is the instructor of S. Aldhelm, 225 ; death of, 222.

Melchiades, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 190 ; III. 266.

Melchisedek, king of Salem, meets Abram, I. 32 ; identified with Shem by the Hebrews, 33.

Mellitus, S., first bishop of London, as archbishop of Canterbury, consecrates a church founded by Eadbald, II. 368. *See* Saeberht, Seaxred.

Mempricius, king of the Britons, reigns, I. 45 ; murders his brother Maulus, 46 ; II. 223 ; murders his brother Malim, 224 ; exterminates the British nobles, *ib.* ; unnatural practices of, *ib.* ; is devoured by wolves, *ib.*

Menahem, son of Gad, king of Israel, I. 50.

Menelaus, king of Lacedæmonia, I. 44.

Menevia, abbey of, founded by S. Patrick, II. 364.

Menteith, Roger [? Alexander], earl of, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161 ; does homage to Edward I., 165.

Mentz (*Maguntia*), capital of the Provincia Rhenensis ; capture of, I. 293. *See* Franconia.

Mercia, kingdom of, boundaries of, II. 161; Penda, son of Wibba, first king of, *ib.* ; last Ceoluulf, after the expulsion of Hardred by the Danes, 162 ; united to Wessex by Edward the Elder, *ib.* ; divided into West, Middle, and East Mercia, *ib.* ;

Mercia—*cont.*
kings of, ruled what counties, *ib.*; list of, from Penda to Cenelin, *ib.*, 163, 164, 165; bishops of, 176, 177; and Lindsey, at first ruled by one bishop at Lichfield, 176; five bishops of, established by archbishop Theodore, at Worcester, Leicester, Lindsey, [Lichfield], and Dorchester, 177; king of, defeated by Offa, III. 2.
Mercians, kings of. *See* Essex.
————, the, defeat the Northumbrians, III. 2. *See* Wulfheri.
Merianus, king of Britain, II. 248.
[Merks, Thomas], bishop of Carlisle, taken at London and tried, III. 387; imprisoned and deprived, but afterwards released, *ib.*
Merlins, the two: Ambrosius, II. 137; born at Caermarthen, temp. Vortigern, 138;—Silvestris, buried in the island of Berdisseia, 137; born in Scotland, and called also Calidonius, 138; why, *ib*; prophesied temp. Arthur, *ib.*
Merlin (Ambrosius), discovery of, in Caermarthen by the legates of Vortigern, II. 282; sent with his mother to the king, *ib.*; explains the cause of the failure of the king's workmen in building the tower, 283, 284; prophecy of, 285–301; prophecy to Arthur concerning the restoration of the Britons, 382; carmina of, 383; prophecy of, in reference to the expulsion of the Saxons by the Britons, 385.
Merton, battle of, III. 6.
Mesopotamia, bounded by the Tigris and Euphrates, II. 19, 51; situation of, 19.
Messalina, wife of Claudius Cæsar, testimony of Juvenal as to character of, I. 317.
Messania, ancient name of Canopia, II. 28.
Messen, account of, II. 56.
Methodius, bishop and martyr, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.
Methuselah, son of Enoch, birth and death of, I. 22; dates assigned to death of, by Septuagint and S. Jerome, 24.
Metullus, II. 336.
Meteor, at sunrise, I. 312.
Meteors, appearance of, III. 51.
Micah, prophesies, I. 48.
——— and Habakkuk, the bodies of, discovered at Jerusalem, 345.
Mice, devour a noble, I. 383.
Michael I., reign of, I. 367; defeated by Crunnus (*Crumenus*), king of the Bulgarians, retires into a monastery, *ib.*
Michael's Mount, S., giant of, II. 338.
Micipsa, king of Babylonia, II. 336; killed, 354.
Midas, king of Phrygia, I. 41, 52.
Middlesex (*Midelsex*), II. 152.
Milan, II. 111.
Militus, Chronicle of, quoted, I. 153.
Milk, rain of, I. 310.
Milvius, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352; (Quintus) killed, 354, 336.
Mincio, the (*Mincius*), rises in Lake Benaco, II. 7.
Minotaur, the, I. 42.
[Mirabeau], Castle of, in Normandy, prince Arthur taken prisoner at, III. 93, 112; prophecy of Merlin concerning, 93.
Misnia, a province of Germany, adjoining Poland and Bohemia, II. 103; boundaries of, *ib.*; description of, *ib.* *See* Bohemia.
Mœsia, called from "Messis," II. 60, 65; situation and boundaries of, *ib.*
Momonia, fountain in, II. 128.
Money, an exchange of, made throughout England, III. 138.
Monothelites, the, persecuted by Constantine Pogonatus, I. 359.
Monsters, whether descended from Adam or Noah, I. 16; prophetic creation of, *ib.*, 17.
Monster, birth of, I. 195, 212; in Gascony, a, birth of, 250, 251; female, birth of, 294; birth of, 311; appearance of, in the Nile, 355, 356; born in Byzantium, 355; born in Gascony, 376; double from

Monster—*cont.*
the navel upwards, *ib.*; in England, III. 62; double-headed, quadruple-armed and footed, and two-sexed, born of a noble lady in Paris, temp. Richard I., 85; a, born in Italy, 277; a, born in Gascony, 290.

Montague, William de, created 4th earl of Salisbury, III. 202.

————, [William de, 5th earl], son of, decorated with the insignia of knighthood by Edward III., at La Hogue, 207.

Montanus, I. 176.

Montfort, Aymer de, accompanies his sister Eleanor to England, III. 142; is taken prisoner with her, 143; confined first in Corfe Castle, and then in Sherborne Castle, *ib.*

————, Eleanor de, daughter of Simon de Montfort, sent by the countess of Leicester to Llewelyn, prince of Wales, III. 142; taken prisoner with her brother Aymer off the Scilly Isles by four ships of Bristol, 143; retained in the suite of the queen, *ib.*; is delivered to Llewelyn by Edward I., 144; marries him, *ib.*

————, Henry de, commands, with the earl of Hereford, the first division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, III. 127; is killed at the battle of Evesham, 132; is buried in the presence of prince Edward, 133.

————, Henry de, execution of, at Bristol, III. 197.

————, John de, defeats Charles of Blois at Auray, III. 235, 236; returns to England, 335; invades France with John of Ghent, *ib.*; requested to return to Britanny, 350; subjects of, seek the aliance of England, *ib.*; makes a truce with Charles VI. of France, 351; intercedes for the bishop of Norwich with him, 357.

————, Peter de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123; killed at the battle of Evesham, 132.

Montfort, Simon de, 6th earl of Leicester, leader of the barons, attacks the foreign adherents of Henry III., III. 121; takes the bishop of Hereford, Peter Aigue-Blanche), *ib.*; takes Gloucester, Worcester, and proceeds to the south of England, *ib.*; Henry de Almain and others desert him, 122; goes to London, 124; besieges Rochester, *ib.*; raises the siege and marches against the king, *ib.*; signs the barons' letter to Henry III., 125; advances on the vill of Lewes, 127; division of army of, at the battle of Lewes, *ib.*; commands the fourth division of, with Thomas de Pelvestoun, *ib.*; attacks the Castle of Pevensey, 128; sends to treat for peace, *ib.*; princes Edward and Henry given as hostages to, for their fathers, *ib.*; takes the king and his son with him, and occupies all the royal castles, 129; imprisons Richard, king of the Romans, in the Tower of London, and princes Edward and Henry in Dover Castle, *ib.*; takes the Castles of Hereford, Hay, Ludlow, &c., *ib.*; makes peace with Roger de Mortimer, &c., *ib.*; marches southwards to meet the French force reported to have arrived in the king's aid, *ib.*; his iniquitous monopoly of the ransoms of prisoners, &c., 130; refuses to give up the king of Almain and the captives taken by the earl of Gloucester, *ib.*; proceeds to Gloucester, *ib.*; makes an alliance with Llewelyn, prince of Wales, and lays waste the possessions of the earl of Gloucester, 131; returns from South Wales and stays at Kemcsey, *ib.*, 132; removes to Evesham by night, 132; attempts to join his son at Kenilworth Castle, but is prevented by prince Edward, *ib.*; is surrounded by the prince, the earl of Gloucester, and Roger de Mortimer, *ib.*; fights the battle of Evesham, *ib.*; is defeated and killed, *ib.*, I. 281; sons of, excluded from the benefits of the Dictum de Kenilworth, III. 135.

————, Simon de (jun.), taken prisoner

Montford, Simon de—*cont.*
at Northampton, 123; sent to Windsor Castle, *ib.*; enters Kenilworth Castle, 131; escapes from thence, 135.

Moon, a cross-shaped appearance in, I. 238; the, turns of the colour of blood, 378, 379; the Holy Cross appears in the, III. 68; the, the sign (of the Cross) appears in, 74; appearance of a Cross round, 285.

Mordredus, son of Loth, II. 318.

Mordred, nephew of king Arthur, care of Britain committed to, before Roman invasion under Lucius, II. 336; usurps his crown, 359; sends Chelricus, duke of the Saxons, to Germany for aid, 360; meets Arthur and fights a great battle at Rutupis, *ib.*; put to flight by Arthur, *ib.*; enters Wintonia, 361; besieged there by Arthur, sallies out and is defeated, *ib.*; retreats into Cornwall, *ib.*; is defeated and killed at the battle of Cambla, 362, 363.

———, sons of, rebel against Constantine, and take London and Winchester, 364; defeated and put to death, *ib.*

Morgan, insurrection of the West Welsh under, III. 158; is taken prisoner to London and beheaded, *ib.*

Morley, Robert de, joins Edward III. at Sluys with the fleet of the North, III. 205.

Mortality in Rome, I. 212; III. 195; in countries adjoining England, *ib.*; believed to have been universal, *ib.*; in England, 294, 296.

Mortimer, Edmund de, taken by Owen de Glyndwr, III. 394; ransom of, refused by Henry IV. to Henry Percy, 396; sister of, married to Percy, *ib.*; marries the daughter of Glyndwr, 398; nativity of, legend respecting, *ib.*

——— (*Mortuo Mari*), Roger de, 6th lord, an adherent of Henry III., III. 123; with James de Audley, Roger de Leybourne, Roger de Clifford, Hamo Lestrange, Hugh de Turbelvyle, &c., renews the war against Simon de Montfort after the battle of Lewes, 149; their castles taken, *ib.*; they make peace with the earl, *ib.*; advances on Evesham, 132.

Mortimer, Roger de, junior, surrenders to Edward II., 197.

Morwid, son of Danius by Tangustella, king of Britain, II. 244; defeats and kills the king of the Moriani, *ib.*; cruelty of, 245; is devoured by a wild beast, *ib.*

———, consul of Claudiocestria, II. 326; commands a reserve legion against the Romans under king Arthur, 347; attacks and defeats them, 357.

Mosarius, king of the Assyrians, I. 51.

Moses, birth of, I. 37; is hidden in the bulrushes, 38; is found and named by Cherimit, daughter of Pharaoh, *ib.*; is brought up by her, *ib.*; nursed by his mother, *ib.*; brought to Pharaoh, *ib.*; his conduct, *ib.*; cause of his hesitation of speech, *ib.*; defeats the Ethiopians, and marries Tharbe, daughter of their king, 39; slays the Egyptian, and flees into Midian, *ib.*; marries the daughter of Jethro, *ib.*; petitions Pharaoh to liberate the Israelites, *ib.*; leads them through the Red Sea, *ib.*; into the Promised Land, *ib.*; dies in Mount Abarim, and is buried in the Valley of Moab, *ib.*; etymology of name, 38.

Mountain, separated from another mountain, I. 389.

Mount Camoys (*Monte Camisii*), William de, with (Gilbert de Clare and) John Fitz-John, commands the third (second) division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, III. 127.

Mowbray (*Molbreia*), Robert de, 8th earl of Northumberland (*comes Humbronensium*, 47), kills Malcolm III., king of Scots, and his son, III. 39, 47; dispute between, and William Rufus, 48; is condemned to perpetual imprisonment, *ib.*

———, John, execution of, at York, III. 196.

Mowbray, Thomas, 2nd earl of Nottingham, created earl marshal, III. 361. *See* Nottingham.
——— [Thomas], earl marshal, son of foregoing. *See* Nottingham.
Moyses, S., fl., I. 343.
Mucio, S., fl., I. 343.
Mull Aethelwald, king of Northumbria, II. 167; slain, *ib.*
Murrain, universal, a, I. 244; and mortality, 371; in England, III. 62; a, 288.
Murref, Alexander de, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.
Mustensar, king of the Africans, II. 336.

N.

Nabaioth, account of, II. 56.
Nabathæa, a province of Asia, called from Nabaioth, II. 93; site of, *ib*; description of, *ib.*
Nabor, S., head of, translation of, III. 71.
Nadab, son of Jeroboam, king of Israel, I. 47; killed by Baasha, *ib.*
Nahor, son of Serug, birth of, I. 31; death of, 32.
———, son of Terah, birth of, I. 32.
Nails, one of the, used at the Crucifixion, sent by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, III. 12.
Naples and Sicily, the kingdom of, part of the patrimony of S. Peter, III. 415; held at an annual rent of the pope, *ib.*
Narbonensis (Gallia), site of, II. 104; the Rhone in, *ib.*; Marseilles (*Marcilia*), the chief port of, *ib.*; dimensions of, according to Agrippa, *ib.* *See* Pictavia.
Narcissus, patriarch of Jerusalem, death of, I. 178.
Nathan the prophet, I. 45; of the tribe of Simeon, prophesies the destruction of Nineveh, 51.
Nativity, legends of:—The fountain of oil beyond the Tiber, I. 67; the circle round the sun, *ib.*; the fall of the golden statue, *ib.*; of the Temple of Concord, *ib.*; the eclipse of four days, 68; the brighter sunshine, *ib.*; the earthquake, the universal peace, the speaking oxen, and lamb, *ib.*; vision of the Virgin, 71; legend of the midwives, *ib.*; of the adoration of the ox and ass, *ib.*; of the universal destruction of sodomites, *ib.*; fast preceding institution of, 166.
Navarre [Charles II.], king of, treats with Edward III. at Clarendon, touching an exchange of territory, III. 340.
——— [Theobold II.], king of, dies in Sicily, I. 393.
Naxos, island of, why so called, II. 117; site of, *ib.*
Nazarius and Celsus, SS., martyrdom of, III. 251.
Nebuchadnezzar the Great, king of Babylon, I. 54.
Nectanebis, king of the Egyptians, I. 60.
Negropont, capture of, by the Turks, I. 293.
Nennius, son of Ely, II. 248; single combat of, with Julius Cæsar, *ib.*
Nereus and Achillæus, SS., martyrdom of, I. 168, 185; III. 263.
Nero succeeds Claudius, III. 250; reign of, I. 317, 318; first persecution of Christians under, 318; III. 250; suicide of, *ib.*
Nerva, reign of, I. 321.
Nestorius, heresy of, condemned by the Council of Ephesus, I. 198, 347.
Nevile [Ralph], 8th lord of Raby, created 1st earl of Westmorland, III. 377; earl marshal, 405.
Neville's Cross, battle of, III. 211, 212, 309.
Nevyn, in N. Wales, island of Berdisseia in, II. 137.
Newark (*Neuwerk*), Castle of, seized by John, and recovered by Richard I., III. 83.
Newington (*Neuwyntoun*), Robert de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Newmarket (*Novo Mercato*), Adam de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.
Nicanor, S., ordained deacon, I. 81.

Nice, first Council of, I. 190, 191, 338.
——, second Council of, I. 366.
Nicephorus, coronation of, I. 366 ; banishes Irene, *ib.* ; reign of, *ib.* ; defeated and killed by Crunnius (*Crutinus*), king of the Bulgarians, *ib.*
Nichodemus, Apocryphal Gospel of, I. 92–129.
Nicholaitæ, the, I. 81.
Nicholas I., pope, I. 244, 245 ; III. 288 ; ob., *ib.*
——— II., pope, I. 263 ; convokes a council at Rome, and condemns the heresy of Berengarius, *ib.* ; III. 295.
——— III., pope, cons., III. 305.
——— IV., pope, cons., I. 282 ; III. 305 ; ob., 306.
——— V., pope, I. 291 ; defeats the duke of Savoy, *ib.* ; deposed, *ib.*
———, S., death of, III. 265 ; translation of, I. 266.
———, abbot of S. Ouen, son of Richard III., duke of Normandy, II. 192 ; son of Richard II., duke of Normandy, III. 330.
———, priest-cardinal, of S. Martin, takes the homage of king John, III. 107.
Nicholaus, S., ordained deacon, I. 81 ; his self-denial, *ib.* ; followers of, called the Nicholaitæ, *ib.* ; opinion of S. Jerome on, *ib.*
———, of Patera, death of, I. 189.
———, I. 191.
Nichomedia, a city of Bithynia, where Hannibal poisoned himself, II. 34.
Nile, source of, believed to be near the origin of the Tigris, II. 28. *See* Egypt.
Nimrod, I. 29.
Ninus, first king of Assyria, I. 298 ; builds Nineveh, 29, 31 ; conquers Assyria, 30, 31 ; death of, *ib.*, 32. *See* Idolatry and Idols.
Noah, son of Lamech, birth of, I. 23 ; builds the ark, 26 ; enters it, 27 ; covenant with, *ib.* ; becomes a husbandman, 28 ; drunkenness of, *ib.* ; death of, *ib.* ; sons of, divide the world after the Deluge, 300.
Norfolk (*Northfolke*), II. 152.
Norfolk, duke of. *See* Nottingham, 2nd earl of.
———, Roger Bigod, 6th earl of, earl marshal, refuses to accompany Edward I. to Flanders, III. 167 ; attends the parliament which refuses a subsidy until Magna Carta and Carta de Foresta shall have been confirmed, *ib.* ; is pardoned for his refusal, 168.
———, a Friar Minor of, commends Richard II. in a sermon, III. 389 ; alleges that he is alive, *ib.* ; is delivered out of the king's prison to the Order for correction, *ib.*
Noricum (*Ager Noricus*), II. 61.
Norma (or Noëma), daughter of Lamech, by Sella, I. 21.
Normandy, also called Neustria, II. 103 ; named from the Norici, *ib.*, 104 ; boundaries and description of, 104 ; metropolis of, Rouen on the Seine, *ib.* ; duchy of, becomes subject to the kingdom of England, III. 59 ; lost (by king John), I. 277 ; III. 92 ; resigned by Henry III. to S. Louis, III. 139.
———, dukes of, from Rollo to William the Conqueror, II. 191, 192 ; III. 330 ; from Rollo to Richard II., I. 373. *See* Rollo.
Norman prophet, verses by, I. 420.
Normans, the, and the Danes ravage Gaul, I. 246 ; lay waste Campania, 264 ; expelled by Godfrey, duke of Spoleto, and the countess Matilda, *ib.* ; invasion of England by the, account of the origin of, II. 183, 184 ; the, land at Dover, III. 159 ; are driven off by the constable of the Castle, the monks, and townspeople, *ib.* *See* Britain.
Northampton, a council at, fealty sworn to the empress Maud at, III. 62.
———, William, 5th earl of. *See* Bohun.
Northamptonshire (*Northamptounschire*), II. 152.
Northumbri, the, III. 9.
Northumberland (*Northumberlond*), II. 152, 153 ; chief city of, Newcastle-on

Northumberland—*cont.*
Tyne, 152; extends from the Tyne to the Tweed, *ib.*, 153. *See* Northumbria.
————, [Henry] de Percy, 12th earl of, joins the duke of Lancaster, III. 381; with his son, Henry Percy, defeats the Scots, 395; and others said to have the treasure of Richard II., *ib.*; requests payment for the custody of the marches of Scotland, *ib.*, 396; refused by Henry IV., 396; summoned from Northumberland by the king, 398; agrees to come if the king will promise not to injure him before he has excused himself in parliament, *ib.*; goes to the king, *ib.*; declares that his son had acted without his advice, *ib.*; is excused and swears fealty on the cross of S. Thomas in Parliament, 400; escapes from Berwick Castle into Scotland, 408; sent into England by the Scots nobles, 411; reaches Tadcastre with a small army, with lord Bardolf, and the abbot of Hayles, *ib.*; defeated and slain, with them, by the sheriff of York, *ib.*; heads of, placed on London Bridge, *ib.* *See* Bardolf, lord; Dunbar; Hales, abbot of.
————, [Robert], 8th earl of. *See* Mowbray, Robert de.
Northumbria, one see in, of York, II. 178; diocese of, divided into York, Lindisfarne, Hexham, and Candida Casa, *ib.*; changes of these sees, 179; Carlisle, see of, created in, *ib.*; church of, deserted, 366; anciently extended from the Humber to the Tweed, 147, 153.
————, bishop of. *See* Paulinus.
————, kingdom of, II. 165; boundaries of, *ib.*; divided into Deira and Bernicia, *ib.*; death of Osberht and Ella, kings of, *ib.*; Danes reign in, *ib.*; Aethelstan defeats the Scots and Welsh, and governs, *ib.*; church of, deserted, II. 366; king of, reigning in East Anglia (*Estengle*), defeated by Offa, III. 2; ravaged by the Danes, 4.
————, Pagan kings of. *See* Arnalfus, Haumondus, Raegenald.
Norway, situation of, II. 79; divided from the Goths by the Alba, *ib.*; description of, *ib*; sun appears to set in the north in summer in, *ib.*; sun invisible in winter, *ib.*; products of, 80; boundaries of: "Gallacia," Iceland, Ireland, and the British ocean, and the limits of Dacia and Gothia, *ib.*
Norwich, [Henry Spenser], bishop of, obtains authority from the pope to preach a crusade against the anti-pope, 356; discussion in parliament as to the propriety of his commanding the army to be sent into France, *ib.*; collects a sum by promising indulgence to the living and absolving the dead, *ib.*, 357; success of the crusade, 357; invades Flanders, fights a battle near Dunkirk, and calls himself "Conqueror of West Flanders," *ib.*; writes to the king of France calling on him to depose the anti-pope, *ib.*; besieges Yprès, *ib.*; troops of, die of the bloody flux, *ib.*; defeated by the French, *ib.*; the duke of Britanny intercedes for, *ib.*; returns with his army to England, *ib.*; deprived of his temporalities, *ib.*
————, Herbert Losyng, bishop of, III. 54, 55. *See* Losyng.
————, [John de Grey], bishop of, power of pronouncing in England the Papal sentence against king John granted to, III. 99. *See* John, king.
————, monastery of, founded, 329; monastery in the town burnt by the citizens, 137; punishment of the incendiaries of, *ib.*; pope Alexander V. a student at, 415.
————, see of, contains the Marshland, Norfolk, and Suffolk, II. 180.
————, S. William of, crucified by the Jews, III. 73.
Notherius, abbot of, S. Gallus, composes the Sequentiæ, I. 201.
Nottingham, situated on the Trent, II. 149; formerly called Snotingham, *ib.*; meaning of the word, *ib*,; council at, justiciars, &c., present at, banished to

Nottingham—*cont.*
Ireland by parliament, III. 366; (*Snotyngham*), Danes winter at, III. 4; Castle of, seized by John, and recovered by Richard I., III. 83; proceedings of a council at, 361, 362, 363; the chief justiciars and a sergeant-at-law summoned to, 361; queries proposed to them and replies of, *ib.*, 362, 263; remark of one of them after leaving the Castle, 364.
————, county of (*Notynghamschire*), II. 152.
————, [Thomas Mowbray], 2nd earl of, earl marshal, joins the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, III. 365; the earl of Arundel given in charge to, by the king, 372; the duke of Gloucester committed to the custody of, as captain of Calais, *ib.*; one of the appellants against the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, 373; commanded, on pain of death, by the king to kill the duke, *ib.*; goes over to Calais, *ib.*; servants of, smother the duke secretly, *ib.*; pardon granted to, for his expedition with the duke against the duke of Ireland, 374; created duke of Norfolk, 377; the earldom of Arundel given to, on his creation by the king, *ib.*; informs Henry, duke of Hereford, of the king's intention of putting them both to death, 379; denies having done so, *ib.*; appealed against by the duke for treasonable words, and the murder of the duke of Gloucester, *ib.*; a day appointed for a duel between, and the duke at Coventry, *ib.*; banished for life by the king, *ib.*; dies at Venice, *ib.* *See* Gloucester, duke of.
————————, son of, earl marshal, execution of, at York, III. 405; complains to archbishop Scrope of the transference of the office of earl marshal to the 1st earl of Westmoreland, *ib.*; marches with the archbishop against the earl, 406; is taken prisoner with him by the treachery of the earl, *ib.*, 407; presented to the king at Pomfret Castle, *ib.*; condemned and executed while the king is at dinner, 408.
Novatian, condemned as a heretic and degraded, I. 182; omitted from the catalogue of pontiffs, *ib.*
Novum Castrum (*Newcastle-on-Tyne*), II. 9. *See* Northumberland.
Nox, derivation of, I. 8.
Numa Pompilius, king of Rome, I. 308.
Numidia, in Africa, why so called, II. 43, 57; extends from the Ampsaga (Bagrada, 57) to Zeugis, *ib.*; boundaries of, 43; description of, *ib.*; marble from, *ib.*; chief cities of, *ib.*
Nuneaton, near Coventry, convent of, founded by Robert, earl of Leicester, III. 71.

O.

Obadiah (*Abdias*), prophesies, I. 48; buried near Herod's house at Jerusalem, I. 77.
Obolus, the, formerly semicircular, is made round like the denarius, that the prophecy of Merlin might be fulfilled, III. 145.
Obscuration of the sun for sixteen days, I. 366.
Occultation by the new moon, I. 382.
Ocean, the, surrounds the globe, II. 4; tides in, *ib.*; whirlpools in (Umbilicum Maris, etc.), *ib.*; gulfs in, Caspius, Indicus, Persicus, Arabicus, *ib.*
Octavianus, or Octavius, left in Britain by Constantine, II. 268; duke of the Gewisei, rebellion of, *ib.*; defeats Trahern, *ib.*; pursues him into Albania, and is defeated, 269; seeks aid of Gumpertus, king of Norway, *ib.*; returns to Britain, and kills Trahern at Staynesmore, *ib.*; expels the Romans, and is crowned a second time, *ib.*; leaves his daughter in

Octavianus—*cont.*
marriage to Conanus Meridok, *ib.*; death of, *ib.*
Odbrithtus, king of Norwegia, killed at Cambla, II. 363.
Odo, bishop of Bayeux, conspiracy of, against William Rufus, III. 47.
——, S., first abbot of Cluny, I. 422.
——, the earl, banished by Harold (II.), III. 46.
Offa, of Mercia, II. 164; defeats Cynewlf of Wessex, *ib.*; beheads S. Aethelberht of E. Anglia, and invades his kingdom, *ib.*; translates S. Alban, *ib.*; attempts to transfer the archbishopric of Canterbury to Lichfield with the archbishop Lambert, *ib.*; transfers it, 176; obtains from Pope Adrian permission that the bishops of Mercia and East Anglia should be subject to the see of Lichfield, 164; subjugates the kings of Mercia, Deira, Wessex (*Vestseax*), and East Anglia (*Estengle*), Kent, Sussex, Cornwall, and Northumbria, III. 2.
Officials of the empire by whom the emperor is elected, I. 378; memorial verses on, *ib.*
Offridus, son of Edwin of Northumbria, killed at Hatfield Moor, II. 375.
Offrid, sent by Hugo, count of Paris, with presents to Aethelstan, III. 12.
Oist, son of Hengist, surnamed Oiric, succeeds him, II. 307.
Omar I. (*Humarius*), builds a mosque on the site of the Temple at Jerusalem, I. 358.
Omer, S., men of, bribed by men of Calais, burn a wooden tower constructed by [John] duke of Burgundy for the siege of Calais, III. 418; some of incendiaries taken and put to death, *ib.*; abbey of S. Bertin in, said to have been burned, *ib.*
Ophir, a province of India, description of, II. 17; otherwise Terra Aurea, *ib.*; named from Ophir, *ib.*, 56; situated near Eiulath (*Evilah*), 18.
Orders, religious, foundation and founders of, I. 436, 437, 438.
Ordgarus, "dux" of Cornwall, Ethelwold sent to demand daughter of, in marriage for Edgar, III. 18; Estrilda, daughter and heir of, 19. *See* Estrilda.
Orestes, son of Agamemnon, slays his mother, II. 204; slays Neoptolemus, son of Achilles, *ib.*
Organ, sent by Constantine [Copronymus] to Pepin le Bref, I. 236; III. 284.
Origen, is educated at Alexandria, I. 327; account of, 329; fl. in Alexandria, III. 259, 262.
Orkneys, the site of, II. 81, 114; reduced by Magnus (III.), king of the Norwegians, III. 51. *See* Claudius.
Orleans [Charles], duke of, with the dukes of Berry, Bourbon, and Britanny, the count of Armagnac, and others of South France, marches against the duke of Burgundy, III. 418; arrives at S. Cloud, (*Seynclo*) near Paris, 419; met by the English army, and defeated, *ib.*; flight of, *ib.*; seeks the aid of Henry IV., *ib.*; [promises] to restore Aquitain to Henry, *ib.*; to give his daughters in marriage to the king's sons, *ib.*; and to endeavour to establish peace between England and France, *ib.*; the duke of Clarence sent into France to assist, 420; reconciliation of, and the duke of Burgundy reported to the dukes of Clarence and York before their arrival in France, 419; reported to the duke of Clarence on his arrival, 420.
———, [Louis], duke of, challenge of, to Henry IV., III. 395; lies near Bordeaux with an army, and cuts off supplies, 399; retreats on the defeat of the count de S. Pol, *ib.*; murder of, I. 287; III. 410; confession of the duke of Burgundy, III. 410; boasts, according to the duke, that he was the father of the queen's children, *ib.*
Ormesbi, William de, appointed justiciary of Scotland, III. 163.
Orosius, one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; his account of the division of the world

Orosius—*cont.*
between the sons of Noah, II. 10 ; epoch of Nativity according to, I. 65 ; chronology of, III. 246 ; fl., I. 195.

Orwen, daughter of Edelfrid, II. 378.

Osberht of Northumbria, story of his quarrel with Buern, III. 3 ; attacked by the Danes at York, 4 ; is killed there, *ib.*

Osith, S., abbot of, accused of treasonable words against Henry IV., III. 402 ; pays a fine, *ib.*

Osmund, bishop of Salisbury, I. 228 ; III. 48 ; introduces secular canons into the monastery there, I. 266 ; III. 296 ; dedicates the church of Sarum, I. 266 ; III. 50, 296 ; dies, III. 296.

Osric, king of Deira, killed by Cadwallo, II. 375.

Ossory, miracle in, II. 129.

Oswald, S., of Northumbria, defeats Penda of Mercia at Heavenfield, II. 376 ; is defeated and slain by Cadwallo and Penda, *ib.*, III. 2 ; date of death of, 2 ; martyrdom of, I. 215 ; III. 279.

———, son of, a brother of S. Oswald of Northumbria, expelled by Oswi, II. 376.

———, S. [bishop of Worcester], crowns Edgar at Bath, III. 20 ; fl., 21.

Oswi of Bernicia, succeeds S. Oswald of Northumbria, II. 376 ; expels Aethelfrith and Oswald, *ib.* ; sends presents to Penda, 377 ; defeats Penda, *ib.* ; rebelled against by Wlfred, son of Penda, Eba, and Edbert, *ib.* ; peace made between them, *ib.*

Oswine (of Deira), S., martyrdom of, I. 215 ; III. 2 ; burial of, at Tynemouth, *ib.* ; translation of, 58.

———, of Mercia, short reign of, II. 163.

Othniel, judge of Israel, I. 40.

Otho, reign of, I. 318.

——— I., emperor, king of Almain, I. 375 ; expels Berenger II. and Adalbert out of Italy, *ib.* ; marries Adelaide, *ib.* ; crowned emperor, *ib.* ; besieges Rome, 252 ; deposes John XII. and Benedict V., 376.

——— II. (and III.), reign of, I. 377 ; takes Beneventum, *ib.* ; defeated by the Saracens, *ib.*

——— III., reign of, I. 377, 378. *See* Crescentius.

Othos, the three, emperors by succession, and not election, I. 378.

Otho IV., reign of, I. 388, 389 ; goes to war with the Romans, 388 ; deprives Frederic (II.) of Apulia, *ib.* ; defeated by him, 389.

———, apostolic legate, comes to England, III. 118 ; is received in the abbey of Oseney, near Oxford, *ib.* ; is besieged by the scholars there, and makes his escape into the bell-tower, *ib.* ; is escorted to the king by an armed force, *ib.* ; excommunicates the scholars at London, *ib.* ; and breaks up the schools, *ib.*

———, son of Henry, duke of Saxony, and Matilda, daughter of Henry II., III. 71.

Otta (Octa, or Ochta), son of Hengist, makes peace with Aurelius Ambrosius, II. 302; rebels with Eosa against Uther-Pendragon, 307 ; is taken, with him, imprisoned, and put to death, *ib.* ; succeeds Oist, 308.

Ottobonus, cardinal-deacon of S. Adrian, and papal legate, III. 135 ; comes to London, 139 ; imposes an interdict on the Londoners and men of the Cinque-Ports, *ib.* ; suspends the bishops of London and Chichester, *ib.* ; celebrates a council at London, *ib.* ; takes a tenth of the revenues of the prelates for three years, *ib.* ; is elected pope (Adrian V.), *ib.*

Ouen, S., consecrated bishop, I. 218 ; III. 279 ; death of, I. 228 ; III. 281 ; sepulture of, I. 228.

Oueno, king of Britain, II. 248.

Ovid, on the transformation of species, I. 17 ; on the life of Hercules, 40, 41 ; death of, 315.

Owen, brother of Llewelyn, prince of Wales, imprisoned by Llewelyn, III. 144 ; liberated at the request of Edward I., *ib.*

Owtred, John. a monk of Durham, present at a great council at Westminster, III. 337; reply of, as to the claim of Gregory XI. to be lord of the temporalities of the kingdom, 338 ; afterwards denies the claim, *ib.* ; reply of, to the Black Prince, 339.

Oxford, II. 326.

———, Council of, III. 138.

———, [? London], Council of, III. 412 ; proceedings of, touching papal presentations, *ib.*; reservation of debts to the papal chamber until the termination of the schism, *ib.* ; regulations made at, touching licences to preachers against the Lollards, &c., *ib.*

———, proceedings of University of, in reference to the bull of Gregory XI., commanding the imprisonment of Wickliffe, III. 348. *See* Gregory XI.

———, vice-chancellor of, confines Wickliffe, *ib.*; is summoned before the council, *ib.* ; imprisoned, 349 ; but liberated, *ib.*

———, regents of, give in their opinions on the conclusions of Wickliffe to the chancellor, III. 348 ; condemn his heresy on transubstantiation, 351. *See* Friars Minors.

———, chancellor of, decides that they are true, but of ill sound, III. 348 ; is summoned before the council, *ib.* ; deprived, and resigns in convocation, 349.

———, scholars of, compose a treasonable (English) song against one of the royal household, and sing it outside his lodgings in, III. 348 ; discharge arrows at his window, *ib.*

———, the empress Maud besieged by Stephen in, III. 65.

———, [Sarah], countess of, report of survival of Richard II. to, III. 401 ; arrested and confined in the Tower of London for expressing joy at the news,

Oxford, [Sarah] countess of—*cont.* *ib.* ; liberated on payment of a heavy ransom, *ib.*

———, chapter of Minorites summoned at by papal commissioners, III. 405. *See* Friars Minors.

———, [Robert de Vere] earl of, taken prisoner by prince Edward, III. 131.

———, Provisions of, III. 122.

[Oxford], scholars of, go to Oseney to see the papal legate, III. 118 ; are beaten and wounded by his men, *ib.* ; besiege him there, *ib.* ; are excommunicated and dispersed, *ib.* ; go to Northampton and Salisbury, *ib.*

Oxfordshire (*Oxenfordschire*), II. 153.

P.

Padua, province of, II. 111.

Pafuncius, S., I. 192, 343.

Pagans, from Africa, invade England, III. 9 ; join the Danes of Northumbria, 10 ; truce with, under Edward the Elder, *ib.*

Palestine, called from the city of Philistæa, II. 24 ; from Philistiim, 52 ; its metropolis Athalena (Ascalon ?), now called Philistiim, 24 ; or Philistiim, now called Ascalon, 52 ; its boundaries, 25, 52.

Palladius, S., mission of, to Scotland, I. 197.

Pallas, birth of, I. 34; invents weaving, *ib.*

———, son of Evander, killed, I. 44 ; discovery of body of, 381.

Paltok, the, description of, III. 231 ; more fit for ecclesiastical use than lay, *ib* ; never worn by king Solomon according to the Books of Kings, *ib.*

Pamphylia, also called Isauria, and why, II. 93 ; chief city of Seleucia, founded by Seleucius Antiochus, *ib* ; site of, *ib.*

Pandrasus, king of Greece. *See* Brutus.

———, king of Egypt, II. 336 ; commands under Lucius against the Britons, 352.

Pandulph and Durand, papal legates, sent to king John, III. 97; message borne by, *ib.* 98 ; arrive in England, 98 ; interview of, with John at Northampton, *ib.*, 99, 100, 101; absolve his subjects from their allegiance, 99 ; excommunicate his supporters, 100 ; (Pandulph) saves a clerk from flaying, 101 ; return of, to the pope, *ib.*

———, sent a second time to England, 102 ; receives the oath of king John, *ib.*, 103 ; takes the crown and retains it for five days, 103 ; returns it, 105 ; meets Stephen Langton at Winchester, 106 ; returns to Rome, *ib.* ; the English barons sworn before, to resist any infraction of the laws of the realm, 108 ; comes to England, 114 ; is present at the translation of S. Thomas of Canterbury, 116.

Pannonia, situation of, II. 61 ; once occupied by the Huns, and from them called Hungaria, *ib.* ; a part of Mœsia, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.*, 62; description of, 61; called from the Alpes Penninæ, *ib.*

Pansa and Hircius, guardians of Octavianus (Augustus Cæsar), I. 313.

Pantheon, the, at Rome, account of, I. 216; called Sancta Maria Rotunda, 217 ; granted by the emperor Phocas to pope Boniface IV., 356.

Pan-pipes, the, invented by Mercury, I. 41; called syringæ from Syringa, the wife of Cadmus, *ib.*

Papacy, vacant, III. 264.

Papias, S., sent by S. Paul to preach the gospel, I. 165.

Paradise occupied for seven hours only by Adam and Eve, I. 20.

———, rivers of, II. 7 ; description of, 11, 12, 13, 14 ; account of, after Rabanus, 51.

Parliament at London, III. 122 ; many of the adherents of De Montfort desert him at, *ib.*

———, a, at London, III. 195 ; oath taken at, by the commonalty of England, *ib.* ; its observance, *ib.*

Parliament at Oxford, III. 120 ; provisions of, to be observed by Henry III. on the first reconciliation between him and the barons, 121.

Parliaments. *See* under reigns of the kings during which they were held.

Parthenii, the, found Tarentum, I. 53.

Parthi, the, occupy Scythia, and call it Parthia, II. 18.

Parthia, extent of, II. 18 ; provinces in Arachosia, Parthia, Assyria, Media, and Persida, between the Indus and Tigris, *ib.* ; account of, from Pliny and Isidorus, *ib.* ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; kingdoms of, extend from Mons Caspius to the Scitharii, *ib.*

Paris, death of, 42.

Parmenides, the philosopher, flourishes, I. 59 ; sits ten years on a rock and excogitates Dialectics according to Boethius, De Consolatione Philosophiæ, *ib.*

Paron, island of, why so called, II. 117 ; products of, *ib.*

Pascentius (*Pascent*), son of Vortimer, II. 227 ; (of Vortigern ?) defeated and killed by Utherpendragon, 307.

Paschal S., I., pope, I. 239 ; III. 286.

——— II., pope, I. 267, 268 ; III. 296.

Pastor, S., fl., I. 192, 343.

Patrick, S., abbot, leaves Ireland, I. 203 ; nephew of S. Martin, of Tours, 197 ; converts the Irish, *ib.*, II. 124 ; purgatory of, 127, 128 ; staff of, at Dublin, 130 ; leaves Ireland, I. 203 ; death of, *ib.* ; III. 273.

Patrick, earl, [? of Dunbar] does homage to Edward I., III. 165.

Paul, S., conversion of, I. 156, 162 ; III. 249 ; sent to Rome, I. 165 ; by Festus, III. 251; lodged in a public granary, I. 165 ; corresponds with Seneca, *ib.*; asserts the final destruction of the world by fire before Nero, *ib.* ; consequent persecution of his followers, *ib.* ; beheaded at the Aquæ Salviæ, in the Via Ostiensis, I. 167 ; decollation of, III. 251 ; buried by S. Lucina, I. 182.

Paul, S., the first hermit, retires to the desert, I. 188, 332 ; III. 263 ; visited by S. Antonius the hermit, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.* ; legend relative to his sepulture. *ib.*

————, I., pope, I. 235, 244 ; III. 284.

————, II., pope, I. 292, 293 ; III. 288.

————, patriarch of Constantinople, persecutes the Latin catholics, I. 219 ; condemned by pope Theodore, *ib.* ; excommunicated by S. Martin, 220 ; recalled by Constans II., *ib.*

Paula and Eustochium, buried at Bethleem, I. 69.

Paulinus, ordained bishop of the Northumbrians by Justus, archbishop of Canterbury, I. 214.

Paulinus, S., bishop of Treves, dies in exile, I. 340.

Paul's, S., Cathedral, struck by lightning, III. 116; a great earthquake under, 381.

Paulus Diaconus, one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.

——— Monachus Cassiensis, quoted, I. 42.

Paunesfot, Grimbald, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

Peada (*Weda*), of Mercia, II. 162 ; governs the South Mercians by the gift of Oswine, *ib.* ; marries daughter of, and becomes a Christian, *ib.*, 163.

Peckham, John, Friar Minor of the diocese of Chichester, archbishop of Canterbury, III. 144, 145.

Peitwyne, Gilbert, justiciary of king John, sent by him to accompany Stephen Langton to England, III. 96.

Pekah (*Factee*), son of Remaliah, king of Israel, I. 51.

Pelagia, S., courtesan, death of, III. 264.

Pelagius I., pope, pontificate of, I. 207, 208, 209, 210 ; purges himself of an accusation of the murder of Vigilius, 208 ; builds the church of SS. Philip and James in Rome, 209 ; sanctions the translation of S. Laurentius to Corstantinople, *ib.* ; III. 276.

——— II., pope, pontificate of, I. 211, 212 ; III. 277.

Pelagius, heresy of. *See* Innocent I.

————, bishop of Alba, takes Damietta, III. 114.

Peleg, birth of, I. 30 ; death of, *ib.*

Pellitus the augur, predicts the return of Cadwallo to Eadwin of Northumbria, II. 372 ; killed by Brianus, nephew of Cadwallo, 376.

Pelvestoun, Thomas de, commands the fourth division of the barons' army with Simon de Montfort, at the battle of Lewes, III. 127.

Pembroke, demoniacal region in, II. 137 ; the countess of, possesses the town of Belac, III. 17.

————, [John Hastings], 12th earl of, sent to Gascony as custos, III. 339 ; attacked and taken prisoner by the Spanish, *ib.*

————, William Marshal, 3rd earl of, present at the coronation of Henry III., III. 113.

————————, 4th earl of. *See* Marshal.

Penda, of Mercia, II. 162 ; puts to death Edwin, *ib.* ; S. Oswald of Northumbria, *ib.*, 376, III. 2 ; Sigiberht, Egric, and Anna, of E. Anglia, II. 162 ; exiles Cynewealh of Wessex, *ib.* ; aid against Oswy of Bernicia sought from, by Oswald and Aethelfrith, 376; asks permission of Cadwallo to fight Oswy, 377 ; put to death by him, 162, 377 ; children of, and Kinesuutha, 162 ; tolerates the preaching of Christianity, *ib.*

Pentapolis, also called Palestine, on the borders of Arabia, from the five cities which were destroyed, II. 40, 52, 53 ; Dead Sea there, 40 ; richness of, before destruction, *ib.*, 41 ; apples of Sodom found in, *ib.*

————, in Africa, called from the five cities of Berenice, Tenchira, Cyrene, Ptolemais, and Apollonia, II. 40, 56, 57 ; adjoins Libya Cyrenensis, 40, 57.

Pepin, mayor of the palace under Dagobert I. (a mistake for Dagobert II.), II. 121 ; surnamed "Vetulus" or "Brevis," son of Angesil, king of the Franks, and father of Charles Martel, 122.

Pepin (le Bref), son of Charles Martel, his share of the kingdom, I. 364 ; anointed king of the Franks, I. 234, 364 ; II. 122, 284 ; delivers Rome from the Lombards, 365 ; dies, *ib.*, III. 284.

[Percy, Henry de, 7th lord, omitted in the list of adherents of Henry III., III. 123.]

Percy, Henry de, sent against Bruce, III. 189 ; is besieged by him, 190.

———, Nicholas de, escape of, III. 198.

———, Thomas, knight, seneschal of the household of Richard II., chosen procurator of the clergy in parliament, III. 373 ; created 2nd earl of Worcester, III. 377 ; seneschal of the king's household in Conway Castle, treachery of, 381 ; joins Henry, his nephew, in raising an army against Henry IV., 396 ; is taken and beheaded, 397.

———, Henry (surnamed "Hotspur"), with the earl of Northumberland, defeats the Scots, 395 ; married to the sister of Edmund Mortimer, 396 ; petitions the king for the ransom of Mortimer, *ib.* ; refused by him, *ib.* ; is called a traitor by him, *ib.* ; assembles an army in the march of Scotland, with his uncle, *ib.* ; joined by the men of Chester, *ib.* ; sends to Glyndwr, who declines to join them, *ib.* ; joined by many of the Welsh, *ib.* ; enters Lichfield with the army, *ib.* ; issues a proclamation against Henry IV., *ib.* ; accusations of, against, 397 ; reply of the king to, *ib.* ; refuses to put himself in the grace of, *ib.* ; makes an attack on the royal army with thirty men, *ib.* ; kills the earl of Stafford, *ib.* ; is killed, *ib.* ; is beheaded after death, *ib.* ; head of, placed on the gate of York, *ib.* ; a comet appears on head of, 398 ; the northern knights and esquires in the battle with, return to Northumberland and retire into the castles, *ib.* ; Scotch earls, prisoners of, sent to London by Henry IV., *ib.*

Peredur, II. 326.

Peregrinus, S., sent to Gaul by S. Sixtus I., I. 173 ; martyrdom of, 174.

Perigort, the cardinal of, pleads with the Black Prince for peace at Monbason, III. 221 ; on the road to Poitiers, 222, 223 ; motive of his interposition, 223 ; comes to London with the cardinal Urgel and another to negotiate for peace, 227, 310 ; unsuccessfully, 227.

Permenas, S., ordained deacon, I, 81.

Pershore, monastery of, founded, III. 329.

Persia (or Persida), boundaries of, II. 51, 88 ; magic first invented in, *ib.* ; called from Perseus, 51 ; from Persidus, 88 ; inhabitants of, held as of no account, before Cyrus, *ib.* ; Medes always more powerful than, *ib.* ; Elam, city of, *ib.* ; Elemaida, city of, *ib.*

———, king of, baptism of, I. 359.

Persians, the, descendants of Shem, I. 29.

Pertinax, reign of, I. 326, 327.

Perugia (*Parusius*), II. 111.

Pestilence, in England, I. 272.

————, the first great, commences in Melcombe, III. 213 ; rages in Dorset, Devon, and Somerset, *ib.* ; reaches Bristol, *ib.* ; moves northwards, *ib.* ; severity of, *ib.* ; a fifth of the population of England swept off by, *ib.* ; sterility consequent upon, *ib.*, 214 ; consecration of new cemeteries in consequence of, 214 ; cheapness of provisions and rarity, nevertheless, of buyers, *ib.* ; duration of, for more than two years in England, *ib.* ; ceases, *ib.* ; scarcity of servants in consequence of ravages of, *ib.*

————, the third great, 339.

————, the fifth great, in England, 369.

————, a great, in England, 410 ; rages in the West, *ib.*

Peter, S., Apostle, bishop of Jerusalem, celebrates mass there for four years, I. 89 ; appearance of our Lord to, 154. celebrates the first mass in the East, I. 162 ; II. 258, 259 ; arrives at Antioch, *ib.* ; founds the church there, II. 258 ; becomes bishop of Antioch, 89, 162 ; is imprisoned by Theophilus, 162 ; interceded for by S. Paul, 163, 164 ; raises the son of Theophilus from the

Peter, S., Apostle—*cont.*
dead, 164 ; converts Theophilus and the people of Antioch, *ib.*; comes to Rome, *ib.*, 259 ; III. 250 ; visits Rome, temp. Claudius, I. 317 ; is bishop of Rome, I. 89, 164; III. 250 ; writes two canonical epistles, I. 164; sends S. Mark, Evangelist, into Egypt, II. 259 ; institutes the fasts preceding Easter and the Nativity, I. 166; crucified, III. 251; in the Via Aureliana, I. 167; buried in the Vatican, *ib.* ; again buried by S. Cornelius, 182.
———, and S. Paul, legend of the attempted theft and recovery of the bodies of, during the pontificate of Cornelius, I. 167 ; removal of bodies of, by S. Cornelius, 182. *See* Marsilia, S. Maximinus.
——, antipope, attacks Innocent II., I. 270 ; spoils the monastery of S. Peter, *ib.*
——, bishop of Alexandria. *See* S. Felix III.
——, bishop of Compostella, hymn, composed by, I. 202.
——, (the Cruel), king of Spain, reported to have married a Jewess, III. 333; subjects of, absolved from their fealty by the pope, *ib.*; is deposed by the pope, *ib.*; expelled by Du Guesclin, *ib.*; comes to Gascony, and seeks the aid of the Black Prince, *ib.*; taken prisoner and murdered by order of the Bastard, 334.
——, Friar Preacher, mart., I. 279; III. 304 ; canonization of, I. 278, 279.
Peterborough, foundation of monastery of, III. 328.
Peter's pence, first paid by Aethelwulf to Leo IV., I. 242.
Petreius, skirmish of, with the Britons near Augustodunum, II. 343, 344, 345 ; taken prisoner, 345.
Petronax of Brixen (*Brixianus*), rebuilds the monastery of S. Benedict, I. 231.
Petronilla, S., Virgin, daughter of S. Peter, Apostle, translation of, I. 235.
Petrus Comestor, fl., I. 274, 387 ; III. 86 ; death of, 73 ; his Historia Scholastica and Allegoriæ Veteris and Novæ Legis, *ib.*, 86 ; his sermons, 86 ; (Magister Historiarum), his account of Paradise, II. 12 ; one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.
Petrus Lombardus, Master of the Sentences, fl., I. 386.
Phalangos (*Spalangos*), island of, II. 115.
Pharaoh Amonophis, oppresses Israel, I. 37 ; commands the destruction of the male infants of the Israelites, *ib.* ; why, *ib.*
Pharphia, wife of Shem, I. 27.
Philip, S., Apostle, martyrdom of, I. 90 ; III. 250. *See* S. Joseph of Arimathæa.
———, S., ordained deacon, I. 81.
——— (the Arabian), reign of, I. 330, 331 ; baptism of, 331 ; III. 260.
———, brother of Herod [Antipas], tetrarch of Ituræa and Trachonitis, II. 52, 97.
——— (I.), king of France, succeeds his father Henry (I.), III. 295; joke of, touching the obesity of William the Conqueror, 43 ; death of, 296.
——— II., "Augustus," king of France, war between, and Henry II., III. 90 ; refuses to give Adelais in marriage to John, son of Henry II., and sends the letter of Henry II. containing the request to Richard, count of Poitou, *ib.* ; joins (*Lodowicus*) the Third Crusade, I. 387 ; quarrel of, with Richard I., III. 82 ; takes the vill and castle of Gisors, *ib.* ; attacks and is defeated by Richard (at Gisors), *ib.* ; escapes with difficulty, *ib.*; goes with Richard I. to the Holy Land, but returns, 85 ; reduces Normandy, Brittany, Anjou, Poitou, and Maine (*Cenomannia*), in revenge for the murder of prince Arthur, III. 112.
——— IV., king of France, meets Edward I. at Amiens, III. 147 ; summons Edward I. to answer for the men of the Cinque Ports, 157 ; sends the constable of France to occupy Gascony with an armed force, *ib.* ; refuses to make peace, *ib.* ; makes a treaty with John Balliol, 160; sends troops to Berwick in aid of

Philip IV.—*cont.*
the Scots against Edward I., 165; sues for a truce with him, 166; asks him to expel the Flemings from England as he had expelled the Scots from France at the request of Edward, 188; gives the Castle of Mauléon to a knight, who refuses to surrender it, 192.
——— VI., king of France, seizes on lands and towns in Gascony,&c., III. 202; refuses to make restoration to Edward, 203; collects an army to oppose him and his allies, but retires on Paris, *ib.*; marches to the relief of Tournay against Edward, 205; concludes a truce with him, *ib.*; letter of, to him [blank left for], 209; twice unhorsed, and wounded in the thigh and throat at Cressy, 210, 211; goes to the relief of Calais, but retires, 212.
———, son of John II. of France, said to be at Tours with a thousand men-at-arms, III. 221; taken prisoner at Poitiers, 225, 309.
——— II., king of Macedon, I. 60, 427; put to death by Pausanias, 61.
[Philip], duke of Burgundy, The Hardy, alive, III. 355.
Philippa, of Hainault, queen of Edward III., meets with an accident in hunting at Cosham, III. 227.
[Philippa], daughter of Henry IV., marriage of, to [Eric, afterwards] king of Denmark, III. 409.
Philippicus Bardanes (*Philippus*), reign of, I. 361; his eyes put out, *ib.*
Philistini and Cacazatini, origin of, II. 25.
Philistæi, the, same as Palæstini, II. 24, 25; formerly named Allophili, their origin, 25; character, *ib.*; reduce the Mazanæ Insulæ. (*See* Preface, Vol. II., p. xxix., note [4]).
Philofilo, his Questions on Genesis quoted, I. 29.
Phocas, reign of, I. 356.
Phœnicia, named from Phœnix, brother of Cadmus, II. 24; boundaries of, *ib.*; description of, *ib.*
Phœnix, the, appearance of, in Egypt, I. 317; description of, after Pliny and Isidorus, *ib.*
Phoroneus, son of Inachus, gives laws to the Greeks, I. 34.
Phraortes, king of the Assyrians, reigns, I. 53.
Phrygia, origin of name of, II. 36, 54; also called Dardania, *ib.*; boundaries of, 36, 37; divided into Major and Minor, 37, 54; Smyrna in former, Ilium in latter, *ib.* (Preface, Vol. II., p. xxxii).
Picardia, a province of Gallia Belgica, II. 105; cities of: Belgica, Beauvais (*Beluaca*), Amiens, Arras (*Attrabata*), Tournay, 106; divided into Superior and Inferior, *ib.*; site of each, *ib.*; character of people of, *ib.*
Pictavia, a province of Gallia Narbonensis, II. 105; antiently inhabited by Picts, Angles, and Scots, *ib.*; site and boundaries of, *ib.*; character of people of, *ib.*
Picts, the, of Cumberland and Westmoreland, defeated by Aethelstan, III. 10; the, defeated in Cumberland by Edmund, 11.
Picus, son of Saturn, succeeds him in Italy, I. 302; father of Faunus, *ib.*
Pontius Pilate, made procurator of Judæa, I. 72, 315; III. 249; the son of king Tyrus and Pila, daughter of the miller Atus, I. 72; apocryphal life of, 84–89; apocryphal letter of, to Claudius, 129, 130; brought to Rome after the crucifixion, 316; banished, *ib.*; commits suicide, *ib.*, III. 249.
——— ——— and Judas, early friendship of. *See* Judas Iscariot, apocryphal life of.
Pinneren, king of Loegria, killed by Dunwall (*Clonten*), II. 235.
Pir, king of Britain, II. 248.
Pisa, II. 111.
——, Council of, I. 287; III. 414, 415; English ecclesiastics present at, 413, 414; expenses of, contributed to by the English clergy, 414; assembles on the Feast of the Annunciation, *ib.*; is afterwards removed to Constance, *ib.*;

Pisa, Council of—*cont.*
the bishop of Durham proceeds to, *ib.*; deposes the pope and anti-pope, *ib.*; ambassadors sent to, by Benedict XIII., *ib.*; the cardinals proceed to, a scrutiny, and cannot agree, *ib.*; suggestion of one of them to elect the cardinal archbishop of Milan, agreed to, 415; proposal intended to have been made at, by some of the English, *ib.*

Pius, S., I., pope, pontificate of, I. 175; martyrdom of, *ib.*; III. 256.

—— II., pope, I. 292.

Plate, church, melted down to contribute to the ransom of Richard I., III. 83.

Plato, his division of the sciences, I. 51; death of, 60; date of his birth, *ib.*; account of, 424, 425.

Pliny (the Elder), his Natural History, employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; his account of the division of the world between the sons of Noah, II. 10; calls islands what are really provinces and regions, 82.

—— (the Younger), I. 322; fl., III. 253.; testimony of, as to Christians, *ib.*

Plymouth, suddenly attacked, plundered, and burned by the Bretons, III., 395; destruction of, revenged by lord Berkeley, keeper of the seas, *ib.*

Podynton, the baron of, killed at Shrewsbury, III. 397.

Poitiers, battle of, III. 225, 309; obstinacy of, 225; legend of an armed knight fighting in the air against the French at, *ib.*; prisoners taken at, *ib.*; loss on both sides at, *ib.*

Poland (*Polonia*), the north-east boundary of Bohemia, II. 72; joins Misina, 103.

Pole, Michael de la, chancellor, III. 359; impeachment of, advised at a parliament at London by the duke of Gloucester, the earls of Arundel and Warwick, and their party, *ib.*; counsels the king to dissolve the parliament, *ib.*; charges against, 360; is deposed and condemned to perpetual imprisonment in Corf Castle, *ib.*; sent to Windsor Castle by the king, *ib.*; recalled by him to London, *ib.*; proclaimed 3rd earl of Suffolk, *ib.*; restored to liberty, *ib.*; created 3rd earl of Suffolk, 361; a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, 363; escape of, 365; condemned to perpetual exile by parliament, 366.

Pol, S. (or S. Paul), the count of, lies off Bordeaux, and cuts off the supplies by sea, III. 399; put to flight by the English, *ib.*; makes an attack on the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; writes a defiance to Henry IV., *ib.*; returns into France, *ib.*; lays siege to the Castle of Marc, near Calais, 401; makes a disgraceful retreat on the appearance of the men of Calais, *ib.*; many of his army killed and taken by them, *ib.*

Poll-tax, rebellion against, under Wat Tyler, III. 351, 352, 353, 354; an inquiry into the collection of, petitioned from the chancellor, in Kent and Essex, 351; mortality after collection of, in Kent, *ib.*; the collector of, summoned before the justice in Essex, *ib.*; he suspects a new tax and arms his friends, *ib.*; the justice takes to flight, 352; progress of the insurrection in Hertford, Erith, Maidstone, the Weald, and Canterbury, *ib.*; the grievances of the people explained by [Walter], the Tyler of Essex, to the bishop of Rochester, *ib.*; the city of London refuses to close the gates against the mob, at the request of the mayor and burgesses, *ib.*; the burgesses send a message to the mob, *ib.*; a herald sees demons in the crowd of insurgents, and soon after dies, 353; the mob arrives in London, *ib.*; murders committed by, *ib.*; the prisons opened, *ib.*; the iron chains of Newgate taken to the church of the Minorites, *ib.*; the marshalsea broken open, *ib.*; the insurgents proceed to the Tower and behead the chancellor and the treasurer, *ib.*; obtain letters patent of liberty from the king, *ib.*; a

Poll-tax—*cont.*
proclamation issded by the advice of Sir Robert Knowles, to the effect that the duke of Lancaster was about to invade England, *ib.*; the mob assembles in Smithfield to meet the king, *ib.*; the mayor arms the city, *ib.*; Wat the Tyler killed, 354; the mob is surrounded in S. John's field, loses heart, and is allowed to disperse, *ib.*; they issue proclamations in Canterbury, *ib.*; murders committed by, in Suffolk, Norfolk, Sussex, and the diocese of Winchester, *ib.*; proceedings against, in Essex, Herts, and Kent, *ib.*

Policetes, duke of Bithynia, II. 336.

———, duke of Phrygia, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352; killed by king Arthur, 357.

Polycarp, S., disciple of S. John Apostle, visits Rome, I. 175; III. 256; arrests the heresy of Valentinus, *ib.*; martyrdom of, I. 325.

Pomerania. *See* Sclavia.

Pomfret, Peter of, visions of, III. 112; prophecies that the length of king John's reign will be fourteen years, *ib.*; the king, having reigned three years longer, is enraged against the prophet, *ib.*; he is drawn and hanged, 113; his prophecy true, for the king had been for three years tributary to Rome, *ib.*

Pompey the Great first reduces laws to writing, (a code?,) I. 59; deprives Aristobulus of the sovereignty of the Jews, and replaces him by Hyrcanus, 63.

Ponte Roberti, vill de, burned [by lightning], III. 421.

Pontianus, S., pope, pontificate of, I. 180; banished to the island of Sardinia, *ib.*; martyred, *ib.*; translated to Rome by S. Fabian, *ib.*; III. 259.

Pontigny, abbot of, receives a minatory letter from Henry II. touching his protection of Thomas à Beket, III. 71.

Pontus, near the Mare Ponticum, account of, II. 56.

Popes, three at once, I. 287.

Porrex, son of Gordobugo, king of Britain, murders his brother Ferrex, II. 234; cut into very small pieces by his mother Indon, *ib.*

———, king of Britain, II. 247.

Portugal, [Ferdinand], king of, refuses to acknowledge Clement VII., III. 341.

Potentianus, S., sent by S. Paul into Gaul, I. 165.

Potinenses, duces of, troops furnished to king Arthur against the Romans, II. 335.

Potiphar, rendered impotent as a punishment for buying Joseph, I. 37; priest of Heliopolis, *ib.*

Præmonstratensians, order of, founded by Votbert of Cologne, I. 268; by Robert of Cologne, III. 55.

Prague, death of a reader at, for denying the Immaculate Conception, I. 284.

Praxed, Timothy, and Nonnatus, SS., martyrdom of, I. 175.

——— S., virgin, death of, I. 325; III. 256.

——— church of, made a monastery of Greek monks, I. 239.

Preacher, friar, a, intrigues against Richard II. in Ireland, III. 370; is captured and sent to the Tower of London, *ib.*; delivered into the prison of his order at the prayer of the provincial, *ib.*

Preachers, regulation touching, III. 367.

Prester, John. *See* Tartars, the.

Priam, king of Troy at its fall, genealogy of, II. 203; assisted against the Greeks by Memnon and the Amazons, I. 42; son of Trous, 302.

Primacy, question of, mooted between the archbishops of Canterbury and York, III. 46. *See* Canterbury.

Printing, invention of, at Mentz, I. 292.

Prisca, I. 176.

Priscian, an authority employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3; fl. at Constantinople, 210; fl., 351.

Priscelina, Justa, and Pelagius, heresies of, I. 345.

Priscillian, the poet, fl., III. 269.
Probus, reign of, I. 334.
Procharus, S., ordained deacon, I. 81.
Prodigies, examples of, I. 15, 16.
Prometheus, brother of Atlas, why said to have created men, I. 134; ring invented by, 35.
Prophecy, an ancient, with interpretation, I. 417, 418, 419.
Prophetiæ Aquilæ, the, II. 383.
Prosper, S., fl., I. 348.
Prothus, Hyacinthus, and Eugenia, SS., martyrdom of, I. 183.
——— and Jacinctus, SS., mart., III. 261.
Provinces, omitted by Isidorus and Rabanus, II. 82.
Ptolemy, the astronomer, fl. I. 324.
Ptolomæus Alexander, king of the Egyptians, I. 62.
———— Euergetes, reigns, I. 62.
———— Euergetes (II.), I. 62.
———— Philadelphus, succeeds Alexander the Great, I. 61; releases the Jews from captivity, *ib.*; causes the Holy Scriptures to be translated by the seventy interpreters, *ib.*
———— Philometer, I. 62.
———— Physcon, alias Soter, king of the Egyptians, I. 62; expelled by Cleopatra to Cyprus, *ib.*
Puerphara, wife of Noah, I. 27.
Purveyors, statute of, III. 230.
Pyernot, or Peter's Almoign, I. 264.
Pygmæa, a region of India, II. 93, 94.
Pyrena, in Europe, II. 88; boundaries of, 89; description of, *ib.*
Pyrenees, the, run from south to west, II. 88, 89.
Pythagoras (*Putagoras*), flourishes, I. 58.

Q.

Quartodecimans, the, condemned at the Council of Rome, I. 177.
Quenburga, dau. of Ini of Wessex, II. 161.
Quintianus or Quintilianus, nephew of Lucius. *See* Walwanus, nephew of king Arthur.
Quintillus, reign of, I. 333.
Quintus Carucius, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352.
Quiricus and Julitta, SS., martyrdom of, I. 180; III. 259.

R.

Rabanus (*Maurus*), fl., I. 370; III. 286; composes his treatise, "De Cruce Christi," I. 239.
Rachis, king of the Lombards, becomes a monk, I. 362. *See* Pope Zacharias.
Radcot Bridge (*Rotcotbrigge*), battle of, III. 365, 366.
Raegenald (*Reynald*), expelled from Northumbria by Edmund, III. 11.
Ragav (or *Reu*), son of Peleg, birth of, I. 30; death of, *ib.*
Rainbow, the, a symbol of the two judgments, I. 27; will not be seen for forty years before the last judgment, and why, *ib.*
Rains, heavy, I. 421, 422; III. 50, 69; injury to the harvest and the sowing, and the fall of (church) towers and old walls (?) in England and Normandy in consequence, 69.
Ralph, bishop of Rheims, deposition and restoration of, I. 253.
———, 7th earl of Chester, accuses king John of neglecting the laws and statutes of Edward the Confessor, III. 108;...and the barons reconciled to the king at Runnimede (*Rowmed*), near Stanes, *ib.*
Ramathæa, also called Canzota, and Arimathæa, site of, II. 94; named from Ramathaim, *ib.*; description of, *ib.*
Rammesbury and Sherborne, sees of, removed to Salisbury, II. 174.
Ramsey (*Rameseie*), abbey of, III. 21; church of, *ib.*

Ramsey, abbot of. *See* Losyng, Herbert.
Ratrardus, king of the Frisians (*Frisones*), refuses baptism on the ground that it is safest to go with the majority, I. 362.
Ravenna, church of, reconciled to the Apostolic see, I. 222.
———, Council of, 248.
———, mission to. *See* S. Apollinaris.
Reading, church of, dedicated by S. Thomas à Beket, I. 274 ; III. 299.
———, Danes at, III. 6 ; the hand of S. James brought to, 68.
——— (*Radynge*), Simon de, executed with Hugh le Despenser, jun., at Hereford, III. 198.
Reblatha, now Antioch, II. 56.
Redergius, king of Britain, II. 248.
Red Sea, the, account of, II. 4, 5.
Reform of monasteries, I. 293.
Regni, II. 326.
Rehoboam, son of Solomon, reigns over Judah and Benjamin, I. 46.
Remigius, S., flourishes in France, I. 159 ; builds church of SS. Peter and Paul at Paris, I. 202 ; death of, 207.
———, and Vedast fl., III. 273.
Remus, killed by Fabrus, a general of Romulus, I. 51, 52.
Reodwald, of East Anglia, tenth from Woden, II. 159 ; all the provinces of the Angles and Saxons south of Humber subject to, *ib.* ; murders Aethelfrith of Northumbria in favour of Edwin, *ib.* ; converted at the instance of Edwin, *ib.* ; deserts the faith at the instance of his wife, *ib.*
Reuben, son of Jacob and Leah, birth of, I. 35.
Reymund, Friar Preacher, compiles New Decretals, by order of pope Gregory IX., III. 138.
Reynald, bishop elect of Cologne, translates the Three Magi from Milan to Cologne, III. 70, 71 ; translates the body of S. Mary, mother of SS. Gervase and Prothase martyrs, (S. Valeria martyr, and SS. Gervase and Prothase martyrs, *al.*), and the head of S. Nabor, 71.
Rhetoric taught at Rome, I. 62.
Rhine, the, a boundary of Westphalia, II. 73 ; of Brabantia, 85. *See* Alps.
Rhinoceros (*Cinoroceros*, MSS.) the, II. 28 ; its venomousness such that all who look it straight in the face immediately perish, *ib.*
Rhodes, island of, why so called, II. 116 ; colossus of, *ib.* ; an earthquake in, III. 237, 238, 239 ; described to a fellow-monk of Malmesbury, by Richard Chastellayn, an eye-witness, 237, 238.
Rhœtia (*Reucia*, MSS.), account of, II. 60.
Rhone, the. *See* Alps.
Richard I., son of Henry II., born and made earl of Oxford, III. 74 ; espouses the cause of his brother Henry against his father, 72 ; goes to the king of France against his father, 88 ; rebels with his brothers, 99 ; betrothed to Adelais, daughter of Louis VII. of France, 90 ; discards her, *ib.* ; letter of Henry II. demanding her for his son John, sent to, by the king of France, *ib.* ; consequent hatred of, for his father, *ib.* ; the duchy of Aquitain assigned to, 92 ; present at the funeral of Henry II., 80 ; succeeds Henry II., I. 387 ; III. 81, 300 ; comes from Normandy to England, III. 81 ; is crowned by Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, assisted by the archbishops of Rouen, Treves, and Dublin, *ib.* ; massacre of Jews at coronation of, 85 ; goes to the Holy Land, 81, 85 ; reduces Joppa, 85 ; takes Acre and Cyprus, and recovers the losses of the Christians, 82 ; quarrels with Philip Augustus, *ib.* ; defeats him, *ib.* ; is seized by Leopold, duke of Austria, in Almain, I. 276, 387 ; III. 300 ; his ransom is raised in England, I. 276 ; III. 83, 300 ; he is set at liberty, III. 83 ; lands in England, *ib.* ; takes the castles of Nottingham, &c., disinherits his enemies and is crowned a second time, *ib.* ; demands the surrender of a knight from the viscount of Limoges, 84 ; invades his territory, *ib.* ; besieges the Castle of

Richard I.—*cont.*
Chalus Chabrol, and is wounded there by an arrow from a cross-bow, *ib.*; sends for the abbots of the Cistercian Order, and confesses to them, *ib.*; extracts the shaft with his own hands, *ib.*; orders the soldier who wounded him to be brought before him, *ib.*; pardons him, *ib.*; acknowledges his brother John as his successor, *ib.*, 85; divides his treasure between Otho, king of the Romans, his servants, and the poor, 85; dies, I. 277; III. 85, 300; William (I.) of Scotland, does homage to him at Canterbury, 85; permits tournaments to be held in England, *ib.*; commands uniformity of measures and weights, *ib.*; is buried at Fontevraud, 86; his epitaph, *ib.*; heart of, taken to Rouen, *ib.*
——— II., son of the Black Prince, succeeds Edward III., III. 340; coronation of, at Westminster, *ib.*; exacts a tenth and fifteenth, *ib.*; progress of, *ib.*; commands the liberation of the count de Denia, 342; commits Hawle and Shakyll to the Tower of London, *ib.*; summons the abbot of Westminster before him, *ib.*; calls a parliament at Gloucester, 345; exacts a heavy tallage, *ib.*; power of granting protection to insolvents from misfortune affirmed, and to robbers or fraudulent detainers denied, in reference to the privilege of sanctuary claimed by the abbey of Westminster, *ib.* 346; statute of, for the removal of fairs from churches and cemeteries, *ib.*; petitioned by Urban VI. and Clement VII. to acknowledge them, *ib.*; refers the decision to the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; member of household of, complains to, of an insult inflicted on him by the Scholars of Oxford, 348; summons a parliament at Westminster, 349; exacts a tenth and fifteenth, *ib.*; is said by the Commons to be abounding in wealth, *ib.*; statute of, commanding observance of a statute of Edw. I., touching benefices of aliens, *ib.*; summons a parliament at

Richard II.—*cont.*
Northampton, *ib.*; exacts a poll-tax, 350; men of Britanny ask alliance of, *ib.*; exportation of bullion prohibited in a parliament at London without licence of, 351; goes to Blackheath with the archbishop of Canterbury during the rebellion under Wat the Tyler, 352; alarm of, 353; grants letters patent of liberty to them, *ib.*; consults with Sir Robert Knowles on the means of getting them out of London, *ib.*; goes to Smithfield, *ib.*; desires a massacre of the insurgents, 354; goes into Essex and Herts, and punishes the malefactors, *ib.*; marries Anne of Bohemia, sister of the emperor Wenceslaus, 355; [Margaret] of Flanders offered to, in marriage, *ib.*; summons a parliament at London, makes peace with the insurgents, and exacts a tenth and fifteenth, 356; statute of, enforcing the observation of the previous statutes against beneficed aliens in England, *ib.*; lords of parliament of, propose to send an army into France, *ib.*; refuses to move in the matter, *ib.*; liberality of, to the king of Armenia, 357; statute of, in parliament at London, touching rape, *ib.*; invades Scotland, 358; burns Edinburgh, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; creates his uncles Edmund and Thomas dukes of York and Gloucester, *ib.*; commands the nobles to remain near London in fear of an invasion by the king of France, *ib.*; orders the shrine of S. Thomas to be delivered to the constable of Dover Castle, and the isle of Thanet to be evacuated, *ib.*; influence of the earl of Oxford, Michael de la Pole, chancellor, and Simon de Burley upon, 359; calls a parliament at London to ordain remedy against the king of France, *ib.*; dissolves the parliament, *ib.*; refuses to attend it, *ib.*; but is compelled to appear, 360; sends Michael de la Pole to Windsor Castle, *ib.*; compelled to consent to the appointment of a commission by the parliament

Richard II.—*cont.*
to receive and dispose of the crown revenues in consequence of his complaints of their insufficiency, and his constant exactions of tallages, *ib.*; recalls Michael de la Pole to London, *ib.*; causes him to be proclaimed earl of Suffolk, *ib.*; restores him to liberty, *ib.*; holds a parliament at Westminster, *ib.*; creations of nobility at, 361; causes the earl of March to be proclaimed heir to the crown, *ib.*; calls a council of his justiciars, &c. in Nottingham Castle, *ib.*; the questions proposed by him to them, with their answers, *ib.*, 362, 363; tries to entrap the duke of Gloucester, and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, into an ambush, 364; goes to Westminster, *ib.*; assents to the petition of the archbishop of Canterbury, and admits the duke and earls to his presence to treat of peace, *ib.*; interview between, and them, *ib.*; grants the duke a parliament, *ib.*; consents, at the instance of the archbishop, to receive them again, *ib.*; changes his mind, and goes to the Tower of London, *ib.*; sends for the duke and earls to the Tower, *ib.*; summons the mayor, and orders him to arm the city, *ib.*; ejects him on his refusal, and sends the duke of Ireland to raise the men of Chester and the West under the royal standard, *ib.*; opposes the five lords appellants in parliament, but is unable to save the condemned, 366, 367; is compelled by the lords to renew his coronation oath, 367; to swear that he will not injure them for their proceedings, *ib.*; issues letters patent of full indulgence, *ib.*; is still unreconciled, *ib.*; in a parliament at London, deprives the Londoners of some of their privileges, *ib.*; grants licence to foreign merchants to make parcel sales, *ib.*; asks the Londoners to lend him money, *ib.*; is refused by them, *ib.*; summons the mayor, sheriffs, &c. to Woodstock, *ib.*, 368; accuses the bakers, brewers, and butchers

Richard II.—*cont.*
of making excessive profits, 368; deprives them of the government of the city, *ib.*; places new officers therein, *ib.*; visits the city, receives the keys, and a loan, *ib.*; feasts the chapter of Friars Minors at Sarum, with queen Anne, 369; sends the duke of Lancaster to Amiens to treat of peace with France, *ib.*; pays his expenses, *ib.*; calls a parliament at London, *ib.*; conditions of peace proposed to, by the king of France, *ib.*; silences John of Ghent and the earl of March, 370; grants the duchy of Aquitain to John of Ghent, *ib.*; answers the petition of the Irish for aid, *ib.*; exacts a tenth and fifteenth, *ib.*; commands the return to Ireland of all the Irish, *ib.*; crosses to Ireland with an army, *ib.*; in danger, by the agency of a Friar preacher, *ib.*; takes MacMorough and other Irish chiefs to England, 371; proposes a thirty years' truce to the king of France, and asks his daughter (Isabella) in marriage, *ib.*; present at the installation of Thos. de Arundel as archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; reason of presence of, *ib.*; interview of, with the king of France at Calais, *ib.*; marries Isabella of France, and brings her to England, *ib.*; asks the archbishop of Canterbury to bring the earl of Arundel, his brother, before him, *ib.*; swears on the Host not to injure the earl, 372; delivers him to the care of the earl of Nottingham, *ib.*; sends him to Carisbrook Castle, and confiscates his goods, *ib.*; arrests the duke of Gloucester at Pleshy, and commits him to the custody of the earl of Nottingham, *ib.*; assembles an army in the West of England, and asks the aid of the Welsh (*Galli*), *ib.*; exacts a heavy tribute from bishops, abbots, &c., *ib.*; sends a justiciar [Wm. Rickhill] to the duke of Gloucester, for his reply to the accusations against him, 373; the reply being unsatisfactory, commands the earl of Nottingham, on

Richard II.—*cont.*
pain of death, to kill the duke, *ib.*; rides through London at the head of a hundred thousand armed men, *ib.*; holds a parliament at Westminster, *ib.*; obliges the clergy to choose Thomas Percy, seneschal of the household, as their procurator, *ib.*; revokes the commission of regency, 10 Ric. II., 374; revokes all the statutes passed in the parliaments 10 and 11 Ric. II., *ib.*; revokes all the indulgences, and the charter of pardon granted to the earl of Arundel, *ib.*; statutes of, against compassing the king's death, &c., *ib.*; excludes the sons and grandsons of the condemned from parliament, *ib.*; pardons the earls of Derby and Nottingham, *ib.*; pardons those placed in the commission, and not executing it, *ib.*; causes the parliament to accuse the archbishop of Canterbury, 376; interrupts the prolocutor, and orders the archbishop to depart, *ib.*; annuls pensions, &c., granted by, and collations to benefices made by the condemned, *ib.*; takes them into his own hands, *ib.*; the attempt to procure the reversal of the acts of this parliament declared treason by, *ib.*; persuades the archbishop of Canterbury to leave England, *ib.*; promises his speedy recal, *ib.*; oath prescribed by statute of, to the lords of this parliament, and their heirs, 377; all contraveners of its statutes excommunicated at Paul's Cross, *ib*; writes to the pope for the promotion of Roger Walden to be archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; appoints a committee to continue the business of parliament, *ib.*; returns to the West, 378; great state of, *ib.*; calls a council at Nottingham, *ib.*; complains of his insecurity, on account of the dislike of the Londoners, and the men of the seventeen adjoining counties, *ib.*; demands a pledge of security from them, *ib.*; a sum of money collected by the city and each of the counties and presented to, in sign of peace, *ib.*; ordains the sealing of blank charters, binding the observation of the statutes of the parliament, &c., *ib.*; the clergy compelled by the bishops to seal blank charters of, *ib.*; clause intended to be inserted in them by, *ib.*, 379; deprives the households of the duke of Gloucester and his adherents, 379; banishes the dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, and Thomas Arundel, archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; summons a council, and announces his desire to go to Ireland, and to visit the shrine of S. Thomas of Canterbury, *ib.*; expresses his want of confidence in the men of London and of Kent, 380; conducted to Canterbury, guarded by a strong escort, by the archbishop, *ib.*; his daily gift to the citizens, *ib.*; reconducted to London by the archbishop, *ib.*; takes the royal jewels out of the Tower, *ib.*; discovers the eagle and bottle, with the legend of S. Thomas and the Holy oil, *ib.*; wears the eagle round his neck, *ib.*; sends a hermit to the Tower, *ib.*; makes his will, *ib.*; appoints the duke of York guardian of the realm, and sails with a large army for Ireland, 381; hears of the execution of the treasurer by the young duke of Lancaster, *ib.*; decides to oppose him, *ib.*; lands in North Wales, *ib.*; is deserted by his army, *ib.*; seneschal of household of, breaks his wand at Conway Castle, *ib.*; domestics of, desert, *ib.*; complaint of, *ib.*; writes to the seneschal of the archbishop of Canterbury in favour of Thomas de Arundel, *ib.*; promises him and the duke of Lancaster to renounce the crown, *ib.*; surrenders to the duke, *ib.*; is taken to the Tower of London, and placed under a guard, *ib.*; reads the deed of renunciation presented to him by the prelates and nobles, *ib.*, 383; confesses his misdeeds, 383; renunciation of, read and accepted at Westminster hall, *ib.*; articles against, read there, *ib.*;

Richard II.—*cont.*
is deposed, *ib.*; homages of all subjects of, surrendered by proxy, *ib.*; condemned by Thomas de Arundel to imprisonment for life, *ib.*; character of, 384; imprisoned in Pomfret Castle, *ib.*; adherents of, examined in parliament, *ib.*; plot of earls of Huntingdon, Kent, and Salisbury, for restoration of, discovered and defeated, 385, 386; despairs of his restoration in consequence, 387; confesses that the plot was originated by himself at Conway Castle, *ib.*; said to have starved himself to death from grief, *ib.*; body of, exposed at St. Paul's, London, *ib.*; funeral of, *ib.*; is buried at Langley, *ib.*; restoration of, desired by the people, 389; letters, as if from, to friends of, declaring him to be alive, *ib.*; report of survival of, spread over England, *ib.*; exultation of a Friar Minor of Aylesbury at reported survival of, 390; the friar declares he would fight for, with whatever arms he had in his hand, *ib.*; army to meet near Oxford for the discovery of, 391, 393; contest of, with Henry IV., said to have been prophecied by a Friar Minor of Leicester, *ib.*; opinion of the friar as to the character of abdication of, *ib.*, 392; declared to be living by the Minorites in sermons, 392; the people excited by them to seek him in Scotland, *ib.*; and in Wales, 393; said to have arrived in Scotland, 394; the report that he is there spreads, *ib.*; treasure of, said to be in the hands of the earl of Northumberland and others, 395; badge of, 396; Henry Percy declares himself to have been one of the chief agents in the expulsion of, *ib.*; also that Henry IV. reigned worse than, *ib.*; declared by the Scotch earls, prisoners of Henry Percy, to be alive in Scotland, 398; high tolls raised by, 399; forged letter of, sent to parliament, 400; keeper of summoned before the parliament to explain this, *ib.*; reply of, *ib.*; report of

Richard II.—*cont.*
survival of, still increases in England, 401; is said to be residing in the castle of the duke of Rothsay (*Roseye*), called Albion, *ib.*; reported to be alive to the countess of Oxford, *ib.*; signet of, stolen by William Serle, 402; letters declaring survival of, sealed with it, sent by Serle from Scotland to friends of, in England, *ib.*; a person like, said to be living in Scotland by Serle, *ib.*; report of survival of, does not however cease, 403; Scots keep it up, *ib.*

Richard, earl of Cornwall, son of king John and queen Isabella, III. 111; is made king of Almain, I. 279; III. 112, 303; accompanies Henry III. at the siege of Northampton, III. 123; (king of the Romans), letter of, and prince Edward, to the barons, 126, 127; commands, with his son Henry, the second division of the royal army at the battle of Lewes, 127; is taken prisoner, 128; is imprisoned in the Tower of London, 129; ob. at the abbey of Hales, and is buried there, 304.

———, second son of William the Conqueror and queen Matilda, III. 41; premature death of, *ib.*; [Henry], nephew of, killed in the New Forest, *ib.*

———, son of Henry I. and Maud (?), drowned, III. 58.

——— Sans Peur, duke of Normandy, II. 191; III. 330; succeeds, III. 22; legend concerning, *ib.*; peace made between, and Athelred II., by pope John XV., 25.

——— II., duke of Normandy, II. 192; III. 330.

——— III., duke of Normandy, II. 192; III. 330.

———, prior of Dover, elected archbishop of Canterbury, III. 89; appearance of our Lord to, *ib.*; death of, in consequence, *ib.*

———, bishop of Chichester, death of, III. 138; canonization of, *ib.*; translation of, *ib.* 143.

Richard Strongboghe, ob., III. 299.

Richmond, Dunbar, duke of. *See* Dunbar.
———, John de Britannia, earls of, *See* Britannia.
Richomarius, killed, II. 355.
Rickerius, consul, sent with Roman prisoners to Paris, II. 345.
[Rickhill, Wm.], one of the justiciars sent to the duke of Gloucester, III. 373; brings back the answer of the duke to Richard II., and retains a copy sealed with the royal seal, *ib.*
Riculfus, king of the Norwegians, killed by Arthur, II. 321.
Rievaulx, William of, one of the authorities employed by the compiler of the Eulogium, I. 3.
Rimo, son of Peredurus, king of Britain, II. 247.
Rinchonia, so called from Mentz, and the Rhine, II. 106; account of, *ib.*
Ritho, the giant of Mount Aravius, II. 340; victory of king Arthur over, 341.
Riuallo, son of Cunedagius, king of Britain, II. 233; rain of blood and plague of flies in reign of, followed by mortality, *ib.*
Rivers, enumeration of famous, II. 7; the Geon, *ib.*; Ganges, *ib.*; called in scripture Phison, *ib.*; Tigris, *ib.*; Euphrates, *ib.*; Indus, *ib.* 8; Hydaspes, 8; Bactrus, *ib.*; Oaxis (Choaspis), *ib.*; Araxis, *ib.*; Orontes, *ib.*; Jordan, *ib.*; Eusis (Phasis), *ib.*; Cydnus, *ib.*; Pactolus, Hermus, Meander, Tanais, Inachus, Padus (Po), Tiber or Albula, Danube, Rhone, Rhine, Ebro, Mincius, Tagus, Bœtis, Severn, Tamaisa (Thames), *ib.*; Humber, 9; Trent, Tweed, Solway, (Sulwath), Tyne, Tees, Ouse, Soar, &c., *ib.*
Robert (the Wise), king of France, I. 257; legend concerning, *ib.*
——— II., king of Scotland, acknowledges Clement VII., III. 341.
——— III., king of Scotland, writes to [Charles VI.], king of France, announcing the arrival of "somebody" in Scotland, III. 394.
———, bishop of London and archbishop of Canterbury, accuses queen Emma of intimacy with Alwine, bishop of Winchester, II. 185; is banished by Harold II., III. 46; escapes from England and dies suddenly, II. 186.
———, de Kylwardbi, archbishop of Canterbury, III. 137; and Gilbert, 7th earl of Gloucester, proclaim Edward I. king, 140; appoint guardians of the realm, and proclaim his peace, *ib.*
——— de Winchelsea, archbishop of Canterbury, consecrated, III. 159; dies, 194.
———, archbishop of Rouen, son of Richard Sans Peur, II. 192; son of Richard II., duke of Normandy, III. 330.
——— (the Devil), duke of Normandy, II. 192; III. 330; appoints his son William his successor before his visit to Jerusalem, II. 192; dream of, III. 34; goes to Jerusalem, *ib.*; death of, I. 259; II. 192; III. 293.
———, duke of Normandy, son of Richard II., duke, II. 192.
——— Courthose, son of William the Conqueror and queen Matilda, III. 40, 41; is refused Normandy, 40; goes to Italy to obtain the daughter of count Boniface, but unsuccessfully, *ib.*; reported return of, 56, 57; incites the king of France against his father, 41; Normandy left to, *ib.*, 44; loses the crown of England in consequence, *ib.*; mortgages Normandy to William Rufus, 41; goes on the Crusade, 41, 64; miraculous illumination of taper of, on Easter Day at Jerusalem, 64; chosen king, *ib.*; returns to Normandy, 64; takes possession of it, 41; comes to England and claims the crown, 58; makes a treaty with Henry I., which he breaks, *ib.*; is defeated by him, 64; taken by him, 58, 64; taken to England, 58; and condemned to perpetual imprisonment, *ib.*, 64; report that he was blinded, 58; a comet and two full moons portend death of, 64; is buried at Gloucester, 58; a son of [Henry], killed in the New Forest, *ib.*;

Robert Courthose—*cont.*
in France at the death of William the Conqueror, 45.
Roche Guyon, castle of, taken by the English, III. 208; ancient metrical prophecy current in France touching, *ib.*, 209.
Rochelle, taken by the French, III. 339; a port of Aquitaine, famous for its wine, *ib.*
Rochester, bishop of, has no parish, II. 174.
———, see of, presides over Kent, 179.
———, [Gilbert], bishop of, power of pronouncing in Scotland the papal sentence against John, conceded to by Pandulph and Durand, III. 99.
———, [Thomas], bishop of. *See* Straw, Jack.
———, bridge of, broken up by ice, 351; rebuilt, 367.
———, monastery of, founded, 329.
Rodagius, king of the Goths, killed by the Romans, I. 346.
Roderick, king of Connaught, defeated by Henry III., II. 125.
Roderic, brother of Llewelyn, prince of Wales, imprisoned by him, III. 144; escapes to England, *ib.*
Rodrik, king of Aquitain, invades Britain, II. 261; is killed at Staynesmor, *ib.*; men of, do homage to king Westmer, 262; receive a grant of territory from him, *ib.*; seek wives from the Britons, *ib.*; go to Ireland for them, *ib.*; and their Irish wives mutually unintelligible, *ib.*; language compounded of dialects of both, 263.
Rogations. *See* S. Mamertus.
Roger, king of Sicily, son of Robert Guiscard, I. 384.
——, duke of Apulia, expelled by Innocent II., I. 270.
Rokesley, Eymer de, knight, killed, III. 211.
Rollo (temp. Ethelred), a Dane, lands in England, II. 190; defeated by the English, *ib.*; lands in France, *ib.*; takes Rouen, and calls it Normannia, *ib.*; reduces
Rollo—*cont.*
Normandy, *ib.*; wastes France, *ib.*; archbishop of Rouen sent to, by Charles the Simple, *ib.*; peace made between Charles and, at S. Clair sur Epte, 191; grant of land to, I. 373; II. 191; does fealty to Charles, is baptised and christened Robert, I. 373; II. 191; marries Gisla, daughter of Charles, II. 191; marries a second time Popa, *ib.*; children of, by, *ib.*; buried at Rouen, III. 22.
Roma, II. 70, 71; called anciently Saturnia, 71; people of, first called Latini, *ib.*; then Romani from Remus and Romulus, *ib.*; and from Romulus, *ib.*; called Quirites from the Sabine *quiris*, *ib.*; produces grave men, 75, 105; foundation of, by Remus and Romulus, I. 51, 52; date of foundation of, 52, 410; census taken at, 61, 62; census at, 310, 315; church of, first possesses property, 180; early kings near, 409; foundation of, by Romulus, *ib.*; by Remus and Romulus, *ib.*; description of, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415; famine in, 165; taken by the Goths, 345; besieged by the Goths, 351; relieved by Belisarius, *ib.*
———, Council of, I. 382.
Romagna, the (*Romania*), II. 111.
Roman Empire, the, transferred from the Greeks to the Romans, I. 234; commencement of, under Procas Silvius, 298, 299; foundation of, by Romulus, 305; date of, 306; eulogy of, 306, 307.
Roman girl killed by lightning, I. 311.
——— triumph, description of, I. 415.
——— customs, various, I. 416.
Romania, or Nova Roma, accountof, II. 71.
Romanicenses, the name applied to themselves by the Greeks, II. 71.
Romans, the, descendants of Shem, I. 29; great battle between them and the Huns, 347; return to Rome, after expelling the Danes, Huns, and Picts, II. 271; account of their retirement by Gildas, 272; expedition of, against Britain,

Romans, the—*cont.*
under Lucius, leaders of, 336; power of, in Britain, ceases. *See* Britain.
Romanus I., pope, I. 247; III. 289.
Romorentin, the sires of Craon and Boucicault take refuge there, III. 219; town of, assaulted and taken, *ib.*, 220; the "doungeon" of, resists, 220; it is fired, *ib.*; the garrison in vain attempt to put out the fire with wine and water, *ib.*; they negotiate and surrender, *ib.*
Romulus and Remus, birth of, I. 51, 302; nurture of, 302, 303, 305; illegitimate sons of Ilia Rhea, 303; two accounts of their delivery to Faustulus, *ib.*; exposed and brought by him to Atta Laurentia his wife, 305; defeat Amulius, and restore Numitor, *ib.*
————, nephew of Madidus, founds Rome, 52; calls the citizens who favour him, Quirites, *ib.*; elects senators, called Patres, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*, 308; is believed to have been translated to the gods, 52.
Roos (*Ros*), William de, 7th lord, III. 151.
Rosamond (Fair), story of, III. 89; buried at Godstow, near Oxford, *ib.*; epitaph on, *ib.*
Ross and Haverford, men of, descended from the Flemings, II. 168; character of, 169.
Ros, earl of, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.
Rothelan, fountain of Tetyngil in, II. 138.
Rothenger, the Dane, killed at Ashdune, III. 6.
Rothsay (*Roseye*), duke of, castle of, called Albion, III. 401.
Rottingdean (*Rotyndene*), Winchelsea, Rye, Stonore, attacked by the French and Spanish, III. 340.
Rowena, daughter of Hengist, offers a cup of wine to Vortigern, II. 278; poisons Vortimer, 279. *See* Vortigern, Hengist.
Royn, the Dane, lays waste Reading, III. 6, 7.
Ruben, father of Judas Iscariot, I. 83, 84.
Rucea (or Rucena), a province of Asia Minor, II. 94; boundaries of, *ib.*; language of, *ib.*; part of, called Galatia, *ib.*
Rudak, king of Wales, with Scaterius, is defeated and killed by Dunwallo (*Cloten*), II. 234.
————, king of Scotland, attacked by Dunwallo, son of Cloten, II. 235.
Rudhudibras, son of Leyl, king of Britain, II. 226; founds Kaerkeyn, now Canterbury; Kaerguent, or Winchester; and the town of Mount Paladur, now Shaftesbury, *ib.*; contemporary prophets and kings, 227.
Rufinus, S., of Aquileia, fl., I. 195.
Rum, son of Malgo, II. 375.
Rutheni, the, Sclavians, II. 62; wear long hair, *ib.* *See* Sclavia.
Rutini, duces of, troops furnished to king Arthur against the Romans by, II. 335.
Rutland [Edward], 1st earl of, one of the appellants against the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, III. 373; created 2nd duke of Albemarle, 377.
Rypon, John, clerk, a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, III. 363.

S.

Sabbath, the, institution of, I. 12.
Sabœa, or Saba, land of, in Arabia, precious stones in, II. 23; boundaries and description, 195.
Sabines, the, rape of, I. 52, 308; Statius, king of, 52.
Sabinian, pope, I. 214, 215; III. 278; killed by a blow on the head from S. Gregory the Great, in a vision, I. 215.
Saeberht, of Essex, nephew of Aethelberht of Kent, converted by S. Mellitus, first bishop of London, II. 158.
Saints, All, feast of, instituted, III. 278.
Sala, son of Arphaxat, birth of, I. 30.
Salisbury [Herbert], bishop of, power of pronouncing in Scotland the papal sentence against king John granted to, III. 99.
————, Hubert, bishop of, accompanies Richard I. to the Holy Land, III. 81.

Salisbury, Jocelin, bishop of, dies, III. 300.
———— [Robert Halum], bishop of, proceeds to the Council [of Pisa], III. 413; returns and informs Henry IV. of the proceedings, 416.
————, Osmund, bishop of. *See* Osmund.
————, Roger, bishop of, builds the castles of Sherborne, Devises, and Malmesbury III. 61; present at the coronation of Stephen, 65; dies, 298.
————, see of, contains Dorset, Berks, and Wilts, II. 180; translated to New Sarum, III. 116. *See* Rammesbury.
————, dedication of church of, by Osmund, bishop of, I. 266; III. 50, 296; new church of, dedicated by Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, I. 280; III. 303; unroofed, 50.
————, Ela, countess of. *See* Ela.
———— [John de Montague], 6th earl of, one of the appellants against the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, III. 373; created earl of Salisbury, 377; plot of, and of the earls of Huntingdon and Kent against Henry IV. discovered, 385, 386; arrives at Cirencester with the earl of Kent, 386; is taken and beheaded, *ib.*; men of, set fire to houses in the town, &c.; are captured, brought to the king at Oxford, and beheaded, *ib.*; head of, placed on London Bridge, *ib.*
————, William Longue-Epée, 3rd earl of. *See* Ela, Longue-Epée.
———— [William de Montague], 5th earl of, sent to summon the king of Navarre to Clarendon by Edward III., III. 340.
Salomon, king of Armorica, receives Cadwallo and Edwin of Northumbria, II. 371; receives Cadwallo after his expulsion from Britain, 372; speech of, to, *ib.*, 373; son of Hoelus, son of Alanus, son of Hoelus (son of Hoelus Magnus), and a daughter of Enmaunus, son of Malgo, 375.
Salop, great part of, ravaged by the Welsh, III. 401.
Salopia (or Schrobesbur'), Ralph de, bishop of Bath, death of, III. 232, 313.
Samaria, a region of Palestine, called from the city of, II. 52, 95; city of, called Sebastia, *ib.*; site of, *ib.*; people of, called Samaritans, *i.e.*, captives; why, 95.
Samos (*Samnum*), island of, site of, II. 118; the Samian Sibyl and Pythagoras Samius, born in, *ib.*; "vasa Samia" invented in, *ib.*
Sampson, judge of Israel, I. 44.
————, S., archbishop of York, expelled by the Saxons, II. 317; succeeded by Theliaus, 330.
Samuel, judge of Israel, I. 44.
———— Penissel, king of Britain, II. 248.
Sapi, John de, imprisoned, III. 198.
Sara, S., abbess, fl., I. 343.
Saracens, the, lay waste Sicily, I. 221; advance on Rome, 241; expelled by Louis I., *ib.*; waste Sicily and Apulia, *ib.*; defeated by the Lombards under Guy, and the Gauls under Louis le Debonnaire, *ib.*; expelled by pope Leo IV., 242; destroy the church of S. Benedict in Monte Cassino, 245; under Manfred, defeated by the Crusaders, 280; (or Ishmaelites), ought to be called Agarenes, as descended from Hagar, II. 27; habits of, *ib.*; prophecy of their possession of the earth for eight months, by Methodius, *ib.*; compelled by Alphonso [VI.] (*Aldefunsus*), king of Castille (*Galatia*), to retire, III. 44, 45.
Sarah, wife of Abraham, I. 32; death of, 34.
Sardinia, island of, why so called, II. 119; dimensions of, *ib.*; products of, *ib.*
Sarepia and Sabina, SS., martyrdom of, I. 323.
Sarma (? Servia), in Major Sclavia, II. 62.
Sarmatia, account of, II. 107.
Saron, or Saronas, situation of, II. 56.
Saturn, the son of Janus, succeeds him in Italy, I. 301, 302.
Saul, king of Israel, judge, I. 45; death of, *ib.*

[Sautre, William, clerk], denies transubstantiation, III. 388; is degraded by the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; is burned at Smithfield, *ib.*; accomplices of, recant at Paul's Cross, *ib.*

Savinianus, S., sent by S. Paul into Gaul, I. 165.

Saxonia, a province of Germany, II. 107; people of, descended from the Greeks, *ib.*; expel the Thuringi, *ib.*; description of, *ib.*; boundaries of; Boceia (? Boemia), Westphalia, Frisia, Thuringia, *ib.*, 108; (*Saxones*), a boundary of Thuringia, II. 72; (*Saxonia*), of Westphalia, 73; (*Saxones*), of Misnia, 103; wars in Flanders, and, &c., I. 290.

Saxons, the, account of, by Isidorus, II. 84; Angles descended from, *ib.*; gain possession of Britain, I. 349; repent of their promise to Arthur, and return to Britain, II. 311; land at Totnes, *ib.*; waste the land up to the Mare Sabrinum, *ib.*; lay siege to Bath, 312; send to Gurmundus for aid against Katericus, 365; overrun the kingdoms of Kent, Wessex, Mercia, Northumbria, East Anglia, and Essex, according to the Brut, 366; governed in Britain by three kings, *ib.*; destroyed by pestilence in Britain, 381; send to Germany for their compatriots, who land in Northumbria, and overrun the island, *ib.*; occupy Loegria under Aethelstan, their first king, 384; fabled return of Arthur to expel them, 385; prophecy of Merlin with regard to, *ib.*; and angelic prophecy to Cadwallader in Armorica concerning, *ib.* *See* Britain.

Scarcity, great, I. 387.

——— in England, temp. Hen. III., III. 120.

——— in England, III. 159.

Scater, king of Scotland, II. 234; is defeated and killed by Dunwallo (*Cloten*), 235.

———, king of the Demeti (or Suthgualenses), goes to Caerlon, II. 325.

Scharshille, William, chief justiciar of England, becomes a friar minor at Oxford, III. 334; dies before his profession, *ib.*

Schism in the Church foreshewn to S. Bridget, I. 285; by reason of, from Urban VI. to Martin V. the true pope unknown; 286, 290.

Sciopodæ, the, I. 16.

Scipio (Africanus), conquers Africa, I. 62.

Sclavia, a part of Mœsia, II. 62; people of, Boemi, Wandali, Rutheni, Dalmatæ, and Carinthi (Corithi), some pagans, some follow the rites of the Greek, some of the Latin church, *ib.*; description of regions peopled by inhabitants of, *ib.*; divided into major (containing Dalmatia, Sarnia (? Servia), Carinthia), *ib.*; account of people of, *ib.* 63; minor, extent of, 63; language of, *ib.*; called Sclavia Poemitanea (? Pomerania), *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; description of, and of people of, *ib.*

Scone, stone of, removed by Edward I. to Westminster, III. 162.

Scotch nobles, the, after swearing fealty to Edward I., send for aid against him to the king of France, III. 165.

Scotland (Scotia), II. 9; musical instruments of, 126; site of, 131; once called Albania, 132; then Pictavia, from the Picts, *ib.*; now Scotia, from the Scots who came from Ireland and reigned to the time of William Rufus, *ib.*; character of people of, *ib.*; S. Andrew chiefly venerated in, *ib.*; account of the claims to the crown of, of John Comyn, John Balliol, and Robert Bruys, III. 149, 150.

Scot, John, last earl of Chester, dies without an heir, III. 118.

Scots, conquered by Edmund, III. 14; do not rebel during the reign of Henry II., 80; appoint twelve peers to govern Scotland, 159; besieged in Stanhope Park, 308.

——— and Picts, harass Britain. *See* Britain.

Scottus, derived from Sottus (a fool), and why, II. 263.

Scrope, Richard, archbishop of York, execution of, at York, III. 405 ; miracles worked by, at the time of the account, *ib.* ; preaches against the bad government of Henry IV. in York cathedral, *ib.*, 406 ; causes the sermon in English to be affixed to the gates of York, 406 ; and to be preached by neighbouring "curati," *ib.* ; assembles an army, and, with the earl of Nottingham, marches against the earl of Westmoreland, *ib.* ; is taken prisoner by him, *ib.*, 407 ; presented to the king at Pomfret Castle, 407 ; condemned and executed while the king is at dinner, 408 ; dying words of, *ib.* ; a bell-tower near York saved by intercession of, 421.

Scrope, William, lord [brother of Stephen, second baron Scrope, of Masham], treasurer of England, created 1st earl of Wilts, III. 377. *See* Wilts.

Scylla and Charybdis, situated in the Mediterranean Sea, II. 4 ; situated near the Mare Ægyptium, and not in the Mare Siculum, 5.

Scythia (or Gothia, called from Magog), old boundaries of, II. 29 ; more modern boundaries of, *ib.* ; inhabitants of, *ib.* ; cannibals in, *ib.* ; gold and precious stones in, *ib.* ; rivers of Oscorus (al. Moschorus), Fasides, and Araxes, *ib.*

———, in Europe, extent of, II. 58 ; Superior in Asia, *ib.* ; Inferior, situation of, *ib.* ; divided into Alania, the Palus Mæotis, Gothia, Dacia, Rhætia, and Germania, *ib* ; description of, 59.

Sea, the greatest depth of the, III. 2.

Season, an early, I. 280 ; III. 304.

Seaxred, son of Saeberht, and Sigeweard, kings of Essex, expel S. Mellitus, bishop of London, II. 158 ; are slain by the men of Wessex, *ib.*

SS. Sebastian, Anastasia, Agnes, Lucia, Gervais, and Prothais, Agatha Virgin, Quintinus, Grisogonus, Cosmas, and Damianus, martydoms of, I. 335.

SS. Sebastian, Gorgonius and Tiburtius, translation of, I. 241.

Sebbi, king of Essex, II. 158 ; becomes a monk, *ib.*

Segrave, John de, warden of Scotland, defeated by the Scotch near Edinburgh, (at Roslin), III. 186 ; taken prisoner at Bannockburn, 195.

[Segrave, Nicholas de, commands the third division of the barons' army at the battle of Lewes, omitted in the list in III. 127.]

Seleucius, king of Syria, sends the Jews back to their own cities, I. 62.

Selraed, son of Sigeberht the Good, king of Essex, II. 159 ; slain, *ib.*

Semiramis, succeeds Ninus, I. 31 ; invents breeches, *ib.* ; subjugates Ethiopia, *ib.* ; conquers India, *ib.* ; marries her son by Ninus, *ib.* ; is put to death by him, *ib.*

Sempringham (*Semplingham*), Gilbert of, fl., III. 66.

Seneca, correspondence of, with S. Paul, I. 165.

Sennacherib (also called Salmanazar), king of the Chaldæans, defeats Hosea, king of Israel, and besieges Samaria for three years, I. 52.

Sera, a province of the East, II. 96 ; produces the raw material of silk, *ib.*

Sergius I., pope, I. 224–229 ; III. 281 ; confirms the liberties of the monastery of Malmesbury, I. 224 ; testimony of, to the foundation of a monastery at Malmesbury by S. Meildulf, 226 ; to its dedication to SS. Peter and Paul, *ib.* ; Cadwallader ordered to go to, II. 382 ; receives him, 383.

——— II., pope, I. 241 ; III. 287 ; first changes his name, I. 241 ; crowns the emperor Lothaire I., *ib.*

——— (III.), pope, I. 248, 249 ; III. 289 ; imprisons Christopher and beheads the dead body of Formosus, I. *ib.*

——— IV., pope, I. 258 ; III. 293.

Sericus, king of the Vandals, wastes Africa, I. 347.

Serle [*Cerle*], William [John], one of the murderers of the duke of Gloucester, taken in Scotland by the English, III. 402 ; drawn, hanged, and cut down alive in many places in England, *ib.* ; executed at London, *ib.* ; confesses to have stolen the signet of Richard II. on his surrender in Wales, *ib.* ; to have escaped to Scotland, *ib.* ; and to have sent letters to England, sealed with the signet, declaring Richard to be alive, *ib.* ; declares that a person like Richard exists in Scotland, *ib.*

Serlo, abbot of Gloucester, I. 228.

Serpent, enormous, discovered by one Regulus, I. 310.

Serses, or Seres, king of the Ituri, or Ituræi, II. 336 ; commands under Lucius against the Britons, 352.

Sertorius, king of Libya, II. 334 ; commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352 ; killed by king Arthur, 357.

Servius Tullius (*Nobilis*), king of Rome, I. 309.

Serug, son of Reu, birth of, I. 31 ; death of, *ib.*

Seth, birth of, I. 21 ; death of, 22 ; age at death according to Isidorus and the Septuagint, *ib.*; kindred of, and Cain separate, 25.

Setoun, Christopher de, brother-in-law of Robert Bruce, taken prisoner, III. 190 ; sent to Dumfries and executed, *ib.*

———, wife of, sister of Bruce, placed in a nunnery, *ib.*

Severus (Augustus), appointed to the West by Galerius, I. 337.

——— (Septimus), reign of, I. 327 ; expedition of, to Britain, II. 264 ; death of, 265 ; conquers the rebellious Britons, *ib.* ; builds a wall between Albania and Deira, from Newcastle to Carlisle, *ib.* ; is killed by Fulgenius, duke of the Picts, and buried at York, *ib.*

Severinus, S., pope, I. 218; III. 279.

Severn, the (*Sabrina*), divides Anglia and Kambria, II. 8 ; called, in British, Habren, from Hibren, drowned in it by Q. Gwendoloena, 147; named, by corruption, in Latin, Sabrina, and in Saxon, Severn, *ib.* ; rises in Wales, and runs to the east to Shrewsbury, thence to the south to Brigges, thence to Worcester, Gloucester, and Bristol, where it falls into the Western Ocean, *ib.* ; once the boundary between Cambria and Loegria, 148, 143.

Sexburh (*Sexburga*), wife of Cynewealh, of Wessex, succeeds him, II. 161.

Shafton, or Shaftesbury (*Schaftonia*), city of, founded by Rudhudibras, II. 150 ; (*Seftonia*), 383.

Shakyll, Richard. *See* Hawle, John.

Shem, Ham, and Japhet, births of, I. 24; dispersion of, 28 ; descendants of, 29.

Sheppey castle, in course of construction by Edward III., III. 234 ; commenced by him, 333.

Sherborne (*Scirbourn*), castle of, built by Roger, bishop of Sarum, III. 61.

———, see of. *See* Rammesbury.

Shrewsbury (*Salopia*), site of, on the Severn, II. 150 ; called "Scrobesbure" in English, in British "Pengwern," from the shrubs growing on the hill on which it stands, *ib.* ; once part of Powis, *ib.*

——— (or Hateley Field), battle of, III. 396, 397; fought on the night of the Feast of St. Mary Magdalene, 397 ; loss at, *ib.* ; memorial verses on, 398.

———, Hugh [de Montgomery], 2nd earl of, is killed in repelling Magnus (III.) king of the Norwegians, III. 51. *See* Wales.

Shropshire (*Salopschire*), II. 154.

Sibyl, the (Erophila), flourishes, I. 53.

——, the, carmina of, II. 383.

Sibyls, the, account of, I. 420, 421 ; derivation of word "Sibylla," 421.

Sicambri, the, called from Sicambria in Pannonia, founded by Armenon, II. 120. *See* Franks.

Sichelinus, king of the Norwegians, II. 320.

Sichem, in Samaria, II. 96 ; afterwards named Neapolis, *ib.* ; account of, from S. Jerome on Genesis xviii., *ib.* 97; conferred upon Charles, count of, by Urban IV., I. 280 ; lost by the Saracens, 372.
Sicily, called Sicania from Sicanus, II. 77, 118 ; Sicilia from Siculus, *ib.* ; also called Dimatria, 77 ; signification of that name, and of Trimatria, *ib.* ; formerly named Trinacria, from the promontories of Pelorus, Pachinus, and Lilybæus (*Libbæus*), 118 ; site of, 77, 118 ; Mount Ætna in, *ib.* ; Scylla and Charybdis in straits of, *ib.* ; Syracuse, metropolis of, *ib.* ; products and circuit of, 78, 118 ; once joined to Italy, according to Sallust, 118 ; comedy first invented in, 77, 78.
Sickness, in England, III. 92.
Sicyon, kingdom of, date of commencement of, I. 32.
Sicyonia. *See* Achaia.
Sidrac, the Dane, killed at Englefield, III. 6.
Siesia, the valley of, II. 347.
Sigheri, king of Essex, II. 158.
Sigiberht, of East Anglia, II. 159 ; founds a school, *ib.* ; becomes a monk, *ib.* ; slain with Egric his successor by Penda of Mercia, *ib.*
——— I., king of Essex, baptised by Finian, bishop of [Lindisfarne], reconverts the East Saxons by Cedda, bishop of [Essex], II. 158 ; slain by his relatives, *ib.*
Sigismund, king of Burgundy, founds the monastery of S. Maurice, I. 203, 352.
———, king of Hungary, I. 288 ; defeats the Turks in nine battles, *ib.* ; crowned by Eugenius IV., *ib.*
Silecester. *See* Caersegent, Mauganus.
Sillia, port of. *See* Yvor and Ini.
Silverius, pope, I. 206 ; III. 257 ; deposed because he refuses to restore the Arian Anthimus, exiled and murdered, I. 206. *See* Virgilius.
Silvester, S., pope, I. 190, 191 ; III. 266, convenes the Council of Nice, I. 190 ; baptises Constantine, *ib.* ; weighs the bones of SS. Peter and Paul, and builds two churches to contain them, 167.
——— II., pope, I. 255, 256 ; III. 292, 293 ; legend of his compact with the devil and its results, I. 255, 256, 257.
———, III., bishop of Sabina, elected pope on the deposition of Benedict IX., I. 259, 260 ; ejected, *ib.*, III. 294.
Silvian kings, the. *See* Laurentine kings.
Silvius, brother of Ascanius, succeeds him, II. 205.
———, Ægyptius, king of the Latins, I. 46.
———, Agrippa, king of the Latins, I. 49, 304.
——— Alba, king of the Latins, I. 46, 304.
——— Amulius (*Aremulus*), king of the Latins, I. 304.
——— Amulius (*Protesilius junior* = Procæ filius junior), king of the Latins, I. 56 ; expels his brother Numitor, 305.
——— Aremulus (*Armelus*), king of the Latins, commences the foundations of Rome, I. 48.
——— Aventinus, king of the Latins, I. 49, 305.
——— Capys, king of the Latins, I. 47, 304.
——— Carpentis (*Capetus*), king of the Latins, I. 48, 304.
——— Latinus, king of the Latins, I. 304.
——— Posthumus, son of Æneas and Lavinia, succeeds Ascanius, I. 44, 304.
——— Procas, king of the Latins, I. 50, 305.
——— Tiberinus, king of the Latins, I, 48, 304 ; drowned in the Albula, afterwards called the Tiber, *ib.*
Simeon, S. (*Symon Cleophas*), succeeds S. James as bishop of Jerusalem, I. 171; martyrdom of, *ib.*, 322.
Simoniacal bishop, a, legend of, I. 382, 383.
——— changes of sees in England, III. 232.
Simphorianus, S., mart., III. 262.

Simplicius, S., I., pope, I. 200 ; III. 273.
———— and Faustinus, SS., mart., III. 264.
Siriacus, pope, I. 180 ; resigns the papacy, *ib.*; accompanies the Eleven thousand Virgins, and is martyred with them, *ib.*
Siricus, S., pope, I. 194, 195 ; III. 269.
Sisebustus, king of the Goths, reduces many Roman cities, and converts his Jewish subjects to Christianity, I. 357; occupies Roman cities in Spain, 358.
Sisillius, king of Britain, II. 244, 248.
Sisinnius, pope, I. 230; III. 282 ; schism between laity and clergy at Rome, in time of, I. 230.
Siward, duke of Northumbria, defeats and kills (Macbeth), king of Scots, III. 32.
Sixtus, I., pope, I. 173, 174 ; III. 254 ; martyrdom of, I. 174.
—— II., I. 183, 184; III. 262 ; martyrdom of, I. 183; brings SS. Laurentius and Vincentius from Spain to Rome, 184.
—— III., I. pope, 198 ; III. 271 ; purges himself of the accusation of Bassus, I. 198.
—— IV., pope, I. 294, 295 ; and Laurentius, mart., III. 261.
———— and Primus, translation of, I. 239.
Sleda, tenth in descent from Woden, king of Essex, II. 158.
Sleepers, Seven, the, of Ephesus, legend of, I. 199, 347 ; awake, III. 262.
Sluys, the church of St. Mary of, struck [by lightning], III. 421.
Snape, church of, founded, III. 329.
Sneezing, origin of benediction after, I. 213.
Snowdon, mountains of, II. 138.
Socrates, death of, I. 60, 423; two persons of that name, 423; anecdotes of, *ib.*, 424.
Sogdianus, king of the Persians, I. 60.
Solinus, his treatise de Mundi Mirabilibus, I. 3.
Solomon, king of Israel, I. 46 ; his daily household consumption, *ib.*
Solway, the, separated the Britons and Picts, II. 151.
Somerset, II. 152; fight between crows and starlings in, III. 403 ; Bretons, the, ravage, and are repulsed by the common people, *ib.*
———, [John Beaufort], 1st earl of, created 1st marquis of Dorset, III. 377 ; as earl of Somerset, present at the marriage of the princess Blanche, 403.
Sosimus, pope, I. 197 ; III. 270.
Soter, S., pope, I. 176; III. 257 ; martyrdom of, *ib.*
Soules, John de, III. 160.
———, Nicholas de, III. 151.
———, Roger de, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.
Souls, All, institution of Feast of, I. 217.
Southampton (*Hamptona*), attacked by pirates, III. 24.
Spain, (*Hispania*), first named from the Ebro (*Hiberus*), II. 76 ; then from the Ispalus, *ib.* ; called also Espera, *ib.* ; situation of, *ib.* ; provinces of, Terraconensis, Carthaginensis, Lusitania (*Liticina*) Gallicia, Bœtica, and Tingitania (*Nigitanea*) in Africa, *ib.* ; divided into Citerior and Ulterior, *ib.*; first corner of, boundaries of, *ib.* ; second corner of, in which Betanzos (*Brigancia*) is situated, *ib.* ; third corner of, *ib.* ; commendation of, by Pliny, *ib.* ; people of, descendants of the Greeks, 77 ; provinces of: Gallicia, Asturia, Celtiberia, *ib.* ; invaded by Miramomus, I. 276.
———, kings of, acknowledge Clement VII., III. 341.
———, brother of the king of, and John de Vienne, attack the Isle of Wight, &c., III. 340 ; becomes a minorite, 349.
Spalding (*Spaldynge*), church of, III. 21.
Spear, Holy, legend of Invention of, I. 383, 384.
Spitingeus I. (*Spiringeus*), duke of the Boemi, conversion of, by S. Vencellaus, I. 374.
Spoleto, valley of, II. 111.
Stafford [Edmund], 6th earl of, killed at Shrewsbury, III. 397.
Stamford Bridge, battle of, III. 33.

Standard, battle of the, III. 67.
Star of the Magi, its peculiarities according to Fulgentius, I. 72.
Stars, falling, I. 365; III. 296.
Statius, king of the Sabines, I. 52.
Statue, legend of a, I. 381, 382.
Stauracius, reign of, I. 366.
Stephen, S., ordained deacon, I. 81; martyrdom of, 89, 156, 162; legend of, translation of, by S. Augustine, in his De Civitate Dei, 208, 209; translation of III. 270.
——— and Laurentius, SS., legend of exchange of relics of, between the Romans and the Constantinopolitans, I. 209, 210.
———, earl of Mortaigne, (*Moritonii, comes*), count of Blois (*Bononiæ*), nephew of Henry I., by his sister Adela, takes the oath of fealty to the empress Maud, III. 60; contentions between, and the empress (Maud), 61; succeeds, 298; usurps the crown, 67; coronation of, 65, 73; dissensions between, and his subjects, 65; takes Warham Castle, *ib.*; besieges Maud in Oxford, *ib.*; contest between, and Robert (*Henricus*), earl of Gloucester, *ib.*; attempts to relieve Malmesbury Castle, *ib.*; is taken prisoner at Lincoln, I. 270; III. 67, 73, 293; is imprisoned at Bristol, 73; is exchanged for the earl, *ib.*; retires from (?) Lincoln, *ib.*; makes a treaty with Henry, duke of Normandy, 66, 67, 74, 298; makes him his successor, 67; falls ill in Kent, *ib.*; dies, I. 273; III. 67, 74, 298; is buried at Faversham, 67; character of, *ib.*; confirms the liberties granted to the barons by Henry I., *ib.*; grants them in addition Liberty of the Forest, *ib.*
———, king of the Hungarians. *See* Henry (the Lame).
——— S., I., pope, I. 183; III. 261; beheaded, I. 183.
——— II., pope, I. 234; III. 284; seeks aid against the Lombards, I. 363, 365; anoints Pepin, king of the Franks, *ib.*
——— III., pope, I. 236; III. 284; revokes all the ordinances of his predecessor, and degrades the clergy ordained by him, I. 236.
——— IV., pope, I. 239; III. 286.
——— V. [?], pope, I. 244; III. 288.
——— V. (VI.), pope, I. 246; III. 289.
——— VI., pope, I. 247; III. 289; consecrated bishop by Formosus, *ib.*; his proceedings against Formosus, *ib.*
——— VII., pope, I. 250; III. 290.
——— VIII., pope, I. 251; III. 291; imprisoned and mutilated, I. 251.
——— IX., pope, I. 263; III. 295; legend concerning, I. 263.
Stigand, archbishop (of Canterbury), William the Conqueror will not receive the crown from, III. 38.
Stina, S., sacred stigmata exhibited by, I. 294.
Stirling Castle, siege of, III. 171, 187, 306; surrender of, to Edward I., *ib.*
Stœchades, islands, site of, II. 119.
Stonehenge, stones at, II. 141; stones composing, brought from Ireland by Merlin, 302, 303, 364.
Strabo, acute vision of, I. 15.
Strabus, the poet, a disciple of Rabanus Maurus, I. 239.; I. 370; III. 286; his work de Officio Ecclesiastico, I. 370; his account of Paradise, II. 12, 13.
Strathern, the earl of, does homage to Edward I., III. 165.
Straw, Jack, and Thomas Melro, summon the bishop of Rochester before them at Blackheath, III. 352.
Strogoyl Castle, II. 143.
Sturio, S., ordained deacon, I. 81.
Suaelraed (*Swefredus*), king of Essex, becomes a monk, II. 158, 159.
Sudbury, Simon, presented to the see of Canterbury by pope (Gregory XI.), III. 339; denounces the murderers of Sawle, 342; petitions Richard II. to allow the fair at Canterbury to be again held within the priory, 346; ordered by the king to hear and decide between the nuncios of Urban VI. and Clement VII., *ib.* 347; decides in favour of Urban VI.,

Sudbury, Simon—*cont.*
347 ; commences the cathedral church and the walls of the city of Canterbury, *ib.* ; one of the examiners of Wickliffe, *ib.* ; begs him to keep silence, 348 ; made chancellor, 350 ; decides to spend the revenues of his see on building, *ib.* ; carelessness touching the heresy of Wickliffe and transubstantiation, *ib.* ; beheaded by the mob under Wat the Tyler, 353.
Suecia, in Scythia Inferior, II. 108 ; people of, reduced nearly all Asia and Europe, 109 ; the Amazons descended from, *ib.*
Suevia, a province of Germany, II. 109 ; divided into Superior and Inferior, 109 ; site and character of, *ib.* ; (*Suevi*), a boundary of Thuringia, 72.
Suffolk (*Southfolke*), II. 152.
———, Michael, 3rd earl of. *See* Pole, Michael de la.
——— [Robert de Ufford], 1st earl of, constructs a hurdle at the siege of Romorentin, III. 220.
Sullee, William de, execution of, III. 196.
Sulpicius Subbuculus, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352.
Sun, eclipses of the. *See* Eclipse.
——, the, a halo round, III. 284.
Suns, three seen, I. 290.
Surrey (*Southrai*), II. 152.
Susac, king of Egypt, I. 47.
Sussex (*Southseax*), II. 152.
——— (*Suthseax*), king of, reigning in Deira, defeated by Offa, III. 2.
———, kingdom of (*Southsaxonum regnum*), boundaries of, 158 ; first king of Aelle, *ib.*
Suthburga, daughter of Sui, of Wessex, a nun at Wimborne, II. 161.
Sweyn, king of the Danes, forces Aethelred II. to retire to Normandy, III. 25 ; reigns, II. 193 ; joined by the nobles of Anglia, Northumbria, Britannia or Wallia, III. 25 ; is killed, *ib.* ; and buried at York, *ib.*
Swithelm, king of Essex, II. 158.
Swithin, S., dies, I. 244, 371 ; III. 288.
Swithraed, king of Essex, II. 159 ; defeated by Egbert, of Wessex, *ib.*
Symmachus, S., pope, I. 202 ; III. 274 ; contest between him and Laurentius, I. 202 ; decided at Ravenna in favour of S. Symmachus before Theodoric, *ib.* ; makes Laurentius bishop of Nucherium (*Nocera*), I. 203 ; is falsely accused, Laurentius recalled and elevated to the pontificate, *ib.* ; is restored, and Laurentius condemned, *ib.*
Symon, S., martyr, crucifixion of, by the Jews, I. 294.
——— Chananæus, son of Alphæus, born, I. 64.
Syracuse, city of, foundation of, I. 52.
Syrens, the, inveigle seamen, I. 44.
Syria, named from Syrus, II. 23, 52 ; boundaries of, *ib.* ; description of, 23, 24 ; inhabitants of, 23 ; Nabathæi and Saraceni live in deserts, 24 ; becomes subject to Rome, I. 62, *bis.*
Syrus, S., sent by S. Paul to preach the gospel, I. 165.
Sywardbi, Richard de, senior, taken prisoner at Dunbar, III. 161.
Syringa, wife of Cadmus. *See* Pan-pipes, invention of.

T.

Tacitus, reign of, I. 334.
Tadcastre, battle near. *See* Bramham-Moor.
Talbot, Gilbert, lord, imprisoned, III. 198 ; present at Gladsmuir, 200.
———, Richard, son of foregoing, wounded at the assault of Roche-Guyon, III. 208.
Tane, Ralph, III. 158.
Tankerville, count of, marshal of France, taken prisoner by Edward III., III. 207.
Tarquinius Priscus, called Superbus, king of Rome, I. 308, 309.
——— Superbus, exiled, I. 58 ; a second time king of Rome, 309.

Tartars, the, rise of, I. 388; come from the mountains of India, *ib.*; put to death David, king of India, son of Prester John, *ib.*

Taprobane, an island of India, II. 97; account of, *ib.*; site of, 115.

Tapsus (*Taplum*), island of, site of, II. 118.

Tears, Valley of, near Valley of Hebron, I. 20.

Tedion, king of Britain, II. 248.

Temperaments, the Four, I. 435, 436.

Templars, the, arrest and imprisonment of, in England and Scotland, III. 194.

———, order of, foundation of, I. 385.

Temple, the, at Jerusalem, burnt by the king of Babylon, I. 55; rebuilt by Zerubbabel and Jeshua, the son of Jozadak, *ib.*; three buildings of, under Solomon, Darius, and Judas Maccabæus, 58; fire of altar in, hidden in captivity, discovered burning, *ib.*

Tenedos, island of, II. 116, 117; why so called, *ib.*

Tenescoros (*Sardanapalus*), king of the Medes, I. 49.

Tennancius, son of Lude, made duke of Trinovantum and Cornwall by Cassibalan, II. 249, 250; succeeds Cassibalan, 256.

Terah, son of Nahor, birth of, I. 32.

Tetrarchies, kingdom of Jews divided into, II. 97; Galilee, Ituræa (*Myrrhæa*), Trachonitis, and Abelina, *ib.*, 98.

Teucer, duke of Bithynia, commands under Lucius against the Britons, II. 352.

Tewkesbury, monastery of, founded, III. 328.

Thadiocus, archbishop of York. *See* York.

Thalamon, the most beautiful of the Sabines, given to Romulus, I. 52.

Thalassar, a region of Syria, II. 56.

Thales Milesius, flourishes, temp. Romulus, I. 51; the earliest physical philosopher among the Greeks, *ib.*; first predicts solar and lunar eclipses, *ib.*

Thame, river of, runs near Dorchester, and falls into the Isis (*Ysia*), II. 147.

Thame, wick of, II. 8.

Thames, the, divides the East of England, II. 8; flows through London, *ib.*; falls into the North Sea, *ib.*; rises in a small spring near Cirencester, where it is called Isa, *ib.*; flows to the wick of Tame, and is there called Tamise, *ib.*; composed of two rivers, the Thame (*Thama*) and the Isis (*Isa*), 147; rises in a small spring near Tetbury, near Cirencester, *ib.*; from Dorchester to the sea called Tamys, *ib.*; the boundary between Kent and Essex, 149; dried up, I. 268; III. 297; overflows, III. 51; dried up at London, 64; frozen over, 68; at London, ebbs and flows three times in one day, 418; large fish of an unknown kind caught in, *ib.*

Thanet (*Thanatos*), island of, II. 114; why so called, *ib.*; ordered to be evacuated in fear of a French invasion, III. 358; islanders of, and monks of Canterbury, refuse to leave, *ib.*

Thecla, S., removes the finger of S. John Baptist, with which he pointed out our Lord to the Apostles, into the monastery of S. Mauricius, I. 78.

Thelesforus, S., pope, I. 174; III. 255; martyrdom of, I. 174.

Theliaus, bishop of Llandaff, II. 330. *See* Sampson.

Theman, a region of Edom, II. 56; situation of, *ib.*

Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

Theodoric, the Arian, attempts to compel Justin I. to tolerate the Arians, I. 350; imprisons pope John, I. *ib.*; dies, vision respecting, 351.

——— I., king of the Franks, brother of Clothaire III., II. 121.

——— II., *ib.*

Theodorus, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

——— I., pope, I. 219; III. 280.

——— (II.), pope, I. 247; III. 289; resists Stephen VI., and restores all the decrees of Formosus I., *ib.*

Theodosius (Gratian, Valentinian II., and), emperor of the East, reign of, I. 343.
———— II. (and Honorius), emperor of the East, reign of, I. 345, 346.
———— (III.), reign of, I. 362; expelled by Leo, and becomes a clerk, *ib.*
Theodolus, his Poetica, quoted, I. 41.
Theodulphus, story of, I. 374.
Theophilus, of Sicily, legend of, I. 207.
————, of Antioch. *See* S. Peter apostle.
Thessalia, a province of Greece, called from Thessalus, II. 67; boundary of, *ib.*; chief city of, Thessalonia, *ib.*; Mount Parnassus in, *ib.*; the country of Achilles and the Lapithæ, *ib.*; deluge in, *ib.* *See* Deluge.
Thetford, Danes at, III. 5.
————, church of Holy Trinity in, III. 21.
————, see of, transfered to Norwich, II. 174; III. 54, 55; bought of the abbot of Ramsey by Herbert Losyng, 54, 55.
Theuser, duke of Phrygia, II. 336.
Theutenes, king of Rome, I. 44.
Thlanburk or Burthton, near Ingelbourne, nuns of, I. 228; their suppression, 229; situation of nunnery of, *ib.*
Tholosana Provincia, II. 111, 112.
Thomas, S., appearance of our Lord to, and Apostles, I. 153.
———— of Canterbury, legend of, and the Holy Oil, 406, 407; shrine of, ordered to be delivered to Simon de Burley, constable of Dover Castle, 358; eagle and bottle of Holy Oil given to, by the Blessed Virgin, found in the Tower of London, with the legend, by Richard II., 380.
————, of Brotherton, son of Edward I., birth of, III. 171, 306.
————, S., bishop of Hereford, death of, I. 282; III. 146, 305.
————, of Lancaster, son of Henry IV., made keeper of the sea, III. 401; burns some small towns near Sluys in the Isle of Cagent, *ib.*; takes three carricks of
Thomas, of Lancaster—*cont.*
Genoa, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*; created 2nd duke of Clarence, 419, 420; sent with an army and the duke of York to recover Aquitain, *ib.*; they embark at Southampton, *ib.*; the dukes reported to be reconciled before they have made their passage, *ib.*; dispensation granted to, by John XXII., 420; enters France to aid the duke of Orleans against the duke of Burgundy, *ib.*; reconciliation of the dukes reported to, on his arrival, *ib.*; ravages the country on his march towards Aquitain, *ib.*; winters at Bordeaux, *ib.*; returns to England, *ib.*
Thorney (*Torneie*), abbey of, founded by Edgar, III. 21, 329; church of, 21.
Thorns, Crown of, a portion of, sent by Hugh, count of Paris, to Aethelstan, III. 13; left to (the abbey of) Malmesbury, *ib.*
Thracia, a province of Greece, II. 109; origin of name of, *ib.*, 110; boundaries of, *ib.*; ancient inhabitants of, the Massagetæ, Sarmatæ, and Scythæ, *ib.*; crossed by the Hebrus, *ib.*
Thracians, the, become subject to the Romans, I. 62.
Thrasimundus (*Transmundus*) in Africa closes the churches, I. 349.
Thronus, archbishop of London, retires to Wales with the relics of the Saints, II. 366.
Thule (*Tile*), Island of, site of, II. 114; why so called, *ib.*
Thunderstorms and whirlwinds, III. 49.
Thuringia, a province of Germany, situation of, between the Saxons, the Franci, and the Westphali (? the duchy of Saxony, Francia, and Westphalia), II. 72; boundaries of: the Bohemian Saxons, the Franconians and Bavarians, the Suevi, the Westphalians, *ib.*; account of people and products of, 73; a boundary of Westphalia, *ib.*; of Franconia, 99; of Misnia, 103; of Saxonia, 108.
Thurstan, abbot of Glastonbury. *See* Glastonbury.

Tiber, the, formerly the Albula, called Tiber from Silvius Tiberinus, I. 304; from Tibris, king of the Albani, II. 8; great inundation of, I. 212.

Tiberias, Sea of, appearance of our Lord to disciples at, after Resurrection, I. 153.

Tiberius Cæsar, peculiarity of eyesight of, I. 15; born, 64; reign of, 315, 316; succeeds, III. 248; remarkable law made by, I. 316.

——— II., reign of, I. 353; his almsgiving, and remarks of his wife Sophia thereon, *ib.*; his reverence for the Holy Cross, and the lucrative results thereof, 354.

——— III. reign of, I. 360, 361; put to death by Justinian, 361.

Tiburtius and Hippolytus, SS., translation of, from Rome to S. Denis, I. 240; III. 286.

——— and Valerian, SS., translation of, I. 239.

Timothy, S., the disciple of S. Paul, martyred at Rome, under Nero, I. 156, 165; III. 250; translation of, 267.

Tides, the, peculiar to the ocean, III. 5.

Tigris, the, source of, according to Pliny and Isidorus, II. 33.

Tipetoft, Paganus, 1st lord, killed at Bannockburn, III. 195.

Tirel, Walter, comes from France to England, III. 53; accompanies William Rufus in hunting, *ib.*; accidentally kills him by an arrow discharged at a stag, *ib.*; escapes, *ib.*

Tithes and first-fruits, I. 32, 33.

Titus, left at Jerusalem by Vespasian, I. 148; besieges it for two years, 150; grief of, at the sight of the dead bodies of the Jews, *ib.*; takes the city, and destroys the Temple, 151; legend of discovery by, of Joseph of Arimathæa, 152; succeeds to the empire, *ib.*, III. 252; goodness of, I. 152; burns the Temple, and levels it with the ground, 153; reign of, 319.

Titus, S., disciple of S. Paul, I. 165.

Tochet, William, execution of, at Pomfret, III. 196.

Todard', Vicomte de, his Castle of La Ferté, III. 218.

Tola, judge of Israel, I. 42.

Tonsure, origin of the, I. 164.

Tostig, brother of Harold II., invades England with Harald Hardráda, II. 197; is killed at the battle of Stamford Bridge, *ib.*

Toulouse, besieged and taken by Henry II., III. 70.

Touraine (*Thuronia*), a part of Aquitaine, called from Tours, II. 73; description of, and of people of, *ib.*

Tournaments, first permitted in England, 3 Richard I., III. 85.

Tournay, siege of, III. 308. *See* Edward III.

Tours, situated in Touraine on the Loire, II. 73; Council of, III. 299.

Trachonitis, situation of, II. 52; in India (corr. Judæa), 97.

Trahern. *See* Constantine, Octavius.

Trailbaston, justices of, app., III. 187, 306.

Trajan, reign of, I. 321, 322; death of, III. 252.

Tregoz (*Tregor*), Robert, 3rd lord, killed at the battle of Evesham, III. 132.

Trent, the, dried up, III. 64. *See* Humber, the.

Tresylian, Robert, justiciar, condemned, drawn, and hanged, III. 366.

Trinovantum, or Nova Troja, names of: Kaerlud, Kaerlundeyn, Londres, Lunden, II. 249.

Tripolitana, in Phœnicia, named from Tripolis, II. 41.

——— in Africa, II. 41, 57; called from three cities, 41; Æta, Sabrata, and Leptis, 57; boundaries of, 41.

Tripoli (*Triple*), [Raymond] count of, desires to marry the queen of Jerusalem, III. 76; allies himself with Saladin and abjures Christianity, *ib.*; deserts the Christians, *ib.*; dies vomiting blood after the capture of Jerusalem, *ib.*; dies mad, 79.

Troglodytæ, the, II., account of, 46.
Trogodia, a region of Æthiopia, II. 98; inhabitants of called Troglodytæ, *ib.*; the best myrrh grows in, *ib.*
Trogus Pompeius, I. 3; fl., 324. *See* Justin.
Trojan war, the, I. 42.
Trophinus, S., a disciple of S. Paul, I. 165.
Trous, son of Dardanus, descendants of, I. 302.
Troy, the province of, called Dardania, II. 110; named from Trous, *ib.*
——, city of, named from Trous, son of Ericthonius, son of Dardanus, II. 203; taking of, I. 42, *ib.*; fate of the leaders of the Greeks surviving the capture of: Ulysses, Diomedes, Ajax Locrus, Menelaus, Nestor, Agamemnon, and Neoptolemus, 204; Hebrew, Assyrian, and Ægyptian rulers contemporary with fall of, 204, 205; date of fall of, 205; I. 302.
Trucmaur, in West Wales, marvellous tumulus in, II. 137.
Trussel, William, escape of, III. 198.
Tubalcain, son of Lamech and Sella, birth of, I. 21.
Tullus Hostilius, king of Rome, I. 53, 308; enlarges the city by the addition of the Mons Cœlius, 53.
Tunbridge, garrison of, written to by Henry III., at the dictation of Simon [de Montfort], to return home, III. 128, 129; proceed to Croydon and attack the fugitives there, 129.
Turbelvyle, Hugh. *See* Mortimer.
Turbervile, Thomas, treachery of, III. 163, 164; character of, revealed to the English court, 164; is taken and executed in London, *ib.*, 306.
Turgesius, murdered, II. 125. *See* Ireland.
Turks, the, successes of, in the East, I. 293; result of their victories, I. 294; besiege Rhodes, *ib.*; believe Jesus to have been a great prophet, according to the Koran (*Alcoranum*), III. 114.
Turnus. *See* Æneas.
Tuscia, a province of Italy, II. 110; site of, *ib.*; called from the use of incense (*thus*), 111; formerly named Æmilia, *ib.*; boundaries of, *ib.*; description of, *ib.*
Tyes, Henry, 2nd lord, execution of, at London, III. 197.
Tyler, [Wat] the, of Essex, explains the popular grievances to the bishop of Rochester at Blackheath, III. 352; approaches the king covered at Smithfield, *ib.*; ordered to uncover by the mayor, 354; stabbed by an esquire of the king, the mayor, and a burgess, *ib.*; dies, *ib.* *See* Poll-tax.
Typtot, Robert, III. 158.

U.

Ubbeslawe (co. Devon), burial place of Hubba, king of the Danes, III. 8.
Ulster, fountain in, II. 128; lake in, *ib.*
Umfraville, Ingram de, earl of, III. 160.
Urban, S., I., pope, I. 179, 180; III. 259; baptises S. Valerian, I. 180; is beheaded, *ib.*; translation of, 239.
——— II., pope, I. 266; III. 296.
——— III., pope, I. 275; III. 300.
——— IV., pope, I. 280; illness and death of, accompanied by a comet, I. 391; death of, III. 304.
——— V., succeeds Innocent VI., I. 283, 285; election of, III. 313; pontificate of, I. 285; requested by the Romans to return to Rome, III. 334; visits Rome and returns to Avignon, *ib.*; death of, 335; answer of, to the cardinals on his death-bed, *ib.*
——— VI. (archbishop of Bari), I. 285; elected pope, III. 341; coronation of, *ib.*; the cardinals' estimate of, *ib.*; they obtain preferment from, *ib.*; offends them by attempting to repress their simony, *ib.*; declared by them to be no

Urban VI.—*cont.*
true pope, *ib.* ; they rob the court of, elect Clement VII. in room of, and remove to Avignon, *ib.* ; opinions of the learned as to the effect on the sacraments of the ordination of bishops by, and as to election of, *ib.*, 342 ; sends a nuncio to Richard II., 346 ; is acknowledged by England, 347 ; deposes the king of Naples and Sicily, and makes Charles of Durazzo king, *ib.* ; grants licence to preach a crusade against the anti-pope to the bishop of Norwich, 356 ; grants indulgence to his followers and contributors, *ib.* ; gives him power to take any religious persons with him, *ib.* ; grants indulgence to John of Ghent for his Spanish expedition, *ib.* ; death of, 368.
Urbgenius, of Badon, II. 326 ; commands under king Arthur against the Romans, II. 348 ; killed, 354.
Urgel, the cardinal of. *See* Perigort, cardinal of.
Uriah, the prophet. *See* Jehoiakim, king of Judah.
Urianus, king of Britain, II. 247.
———, brother of Anguselus, king of Albania, made king of the Murifenses by Arthur, II. 318 ; goes to Caerleon, 325.
———, son of, succeeds Anguselus, II. 360.
Ursatius, the Arian bishop, ejected by Felix II. from a council, I. 192.
Ursula, S., daughter of Diamot, duke of Cornwall, sent to Conanus with the Eleven Thousand Virgins, II. 271.
Uther Pendragon, son of Constantine, II. 273, 281 ; crowned king of Britain, 302, 303 ; defeats the Saxons, &c., 303 ; gives a banquet at Trinovantum, *ib.* ; falls in love with Igern, wife of Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, *ib.*, 304 ; sends for Gorlois, 304 ; invades Cornwall, *ib.* ; besieges Gorlois, *ib.* ; advised by Ulfin of Ridcaradoc to besiege Tintagol, 305 ; is changed into Gorlois by Merlin, *ib.* ; gains access to Igern, *ib.* ; marries her, 307 ; gives his daughter Anna in marriage to Leil, *ib.* ; dies, and is buried at Ambresbury within Stonehenge, *ib.* ; is sent into Kambria by his brother Aurelius against Pascentius, son of Vortigern and Gyllomannus, king of Ireland, and kills them near Menevia, *ib.* ; is crowned, *ib.* ; defeats and captures Octa, son of Hengist and Eosa, *ib.* ; kills them, *ib.* ; dies of poison, *ib.*, 364.
Uzziah, king of Judah, I. 49, 50.

V.

Valence, Aymer de, 10th earl of Pembroke, sent with an army into Scotland against Robert Bruce, III. 189 ; defeats him near Perth, *ib.* ; captures his wife and brother and sends them to Berwick, *ib.* ; defeated by Bruce, 192 ; present at the capture of Peter de Gaverston, 194.
——— (*Valentiis*), William de, 9th [earl of Pembroke], an adherent of Henry III., III. 123 ; commands, with prince Edward and John de Warenne, the first division of the royal army at the battle of Lewes, 127 ; escapes towards Pevensey Castle, 128.
Valens, the Arian bishop, ejected by Felix II. from a council, I. 192.
———, emperor of the East, reign of, I. 342.
———, Gratian, and Valentinian II., reign of, I. 343.
Valentine, pope, I. 240 ; III. 287.
Valentinian, emperor of the West, reign of, I. 342, 343.
——— II. (and Theodosius), reign of, I. 344.
——— expelled from Rome by Maximus, II. 270 ; strangled at Vienne by Arbogastus, *ib.* *See* Valens.
——— III. (and Theodosius II.), emperor of the West, reign of, I. 346, 347.

Valentinus, Adrianus, Natalia, and Gorgonius, SS., martyrdom of, I. 186 ; III. 263.
Valeria, S., martyr, translation of. *See* S. Mary.
Valerian and Gallienus, reign of, I. 332.
———, S., husband of S. Cecilia, baptism of, I. 179 ; and Cecilia, martyrdom of, 178, 179.
Valerius Maximus, testimony as to similarity between Homer and Plato, I. 425.
[Vallibus, John de, omitted in the list of adherents of Henry III., III. 123.]
Vandals, the, waste Gaul and Spain, I. 345 ; and Huns waste Paris and other places, 348.
Vedast, S., ob., III. 278.
Venedotia, king of, carries a golden sword before king Arthur, II. 327.
Venetia, province of, site of, II. 112 ; extensive power of, *ib.* ; suppression of the piracy of the Dalmatians and Sclavians by, *ib.*
Venetians, the, aid pope Eugenius IV. in recovering Rome, I. 290.
Vencellaus, S., martyrdom of, I. 375 ; legend respecting, *ib.*
[Venour, William], mayor of London, sent for by the duke of Gloucester and the earls of Arundel and Warwick, III. 365; brings them to the Guildhall ("aulam communem civitatis"), *ib.* ; ordered by the king to arm the city, *ib.* ; reply of, *ib.* ; ejected by the king, *ib.*
Verdoun, John de, 5th lord, joins the Crusade, III. 136.
Vere, Robert de, earl of Oxford, created 1st duke of Ireland, III. 359; created 1st marquis of Dublin, 361 ; a witness to the replies of the justiciars at Nottingham Castle, 363 ; sent with the king's letters patent, and the royal standard, to raise the men of Chester and the West, 365 ; meets the duke of Gloucester and his allies near Oxford, *ib.* ; advised by one of his knights to avoid a battle, *ib.* ; escapes with his confessor, *ib.* ; chief councillor of, beheaded by the allies, *ib.* ;
Vere, Robert de—*cont.*
goes to the isle of Sheppey, and thence into Germany, *ib.* ; condemned to perpetual exile by parliament, 366 ; (?) an appellant against the duke of Gloucester and his adherents, 373.
Vesci, John de [5th baron ?], joins the Crusade, III. 136 ; represents his father [William de Vesci], 6th baron, III. 151.
Vespasian, derivation of name of, I. 145 ; miraculous cure of, 146 ; obtains licence to invade Judæa from Tiberius, *ib.* ; sent by Claudius to Britain, II. 260 ; prevented from landing by Arviragus, *ib.* ; makes peace and returns to Rome, 261 ; proceeds to Judæa to repress the rebellion, temp. Nero, *ib.* ; III. 251 ; arrives at Jerusalem, and lays siege to it, I. 146 ; attacks Jonepara, 147 ; death of Vitellius announced to, by Josephus, 148 ; goes to Rome, *ib.* ; leaves Titus at Jerusalem, *ib.* ; reign of, 319 ; campaigns of, in Germany and Britain, *ib.* ; death of, III. 252.
Victor, S., pope, I. 177, 178 ; III. 258 ; convokes a General Council at Alexandria (Rome ?), I. 177 ; martyrdom of, 178 ; date of his feast, *ib.*
——— II., pope, I. 262, 263 ; III. 295, 296 ; celebrates a council at Florence, and degrades many bishops for simony, 262, 263.
Victor, anti-pope, I. 273 ; III. 299 ; condemned by Alexander, III. *ib.*
———, S., Hugh de ; fl., I. 385 ; death of, III. 66; works of: "De Opera Sex Dierum," "De Sacramentis," "De Archa," *ib.*
———, Richard de, fl., III. 66 ; writes a short treatise, "De Trinitate et Unitate," and comments historically on the beginning and end of Ezekiel, *ib.*
Victorinus Rhetor, I. 192.
Vienna, derivation of, I. 233.
———, John de, attacks the Isle of Wight, &c., III. 340 ; commands an army of French and Scotch for the invasion of England, 358.

Vigenius (or Hygames), son of Morwid, II. 246 ; defeats Elidurus, *ib.* ; divides the kingdom of Britain with Peredurus, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.*

Vigilius, pope, I. 206, 207 ; commanded by the empress Theodora to restore Anthimus, refuses, and is banished, 206, 207 ; dies in exile, 207 ; raises a faction against Silverius, and obtains his deposition, *ib.* *See* Pelagius I.

Vincentius, S., preaches in Spain, I. 184.

————, Levita, martyrdom of, I. 187 ; III. 263.

———— of Valentia, martyrdom of, I. 337.

Virgil, born near Mantua during the consulship of Pompey and Crassus, I. 63. ; death of, *ib.*, 314 ; is buried at Neapolis, *ib.*

Virgilius, publishes his work, I. 206 ; III. 275 ; is buried at Neopolis, I. 206.

Virgin, Blessed, the, conceived at the end of the Fifth Age, I. 65 ; born, 63 ; her father Joachim, 64 ; married to Joseph, brother of Cleophas, *ib.* ; death of, 90 ; her age, *ib.*, 156, 157 ; letter of, to S. Ignatius, 158 ; legend concerning an image of, in the Castle of Dolys, in Normandy, and two blaspheming players, III. 79.

Virgins, Eleven Thousand, the, martyrdom of, I. 181, 348 ; II. 271 ; III. 260. *See* S. Ursula.

Vironia, a small province to the east of Dacia, II. 74 ; account of, and of people of, *ib.* ; now belongs to the Danes, and is inhabited by Danes and Germans, *ib.*

Vitalian, pope, I. 221 ; composes the "cantus Romanus," *ib.* ; III. 280.

Vitellius, reign of, I. 318.

Vitus and Modestus, SS., martyred, I. 168 ; III. 252.

Vortigern, earl of Wessex, advice of, to the Britons after the death of Constantine, II. 274 ; goes to Winchester to Constans, *ib.* ; influence of, over him, 275 ; orders a massacre of the Picts, *ib.* ; is elected king, and crowned at London, *ib.* ; irruption of Picts, Danes, and Scots during reign of, 276 ; interview of, with

Vortigern—*cont.*

Horsa and Hengist, *ib.*, 277 ; sons of, 277 ; defeats the Picts, *ib.* ; grants land in Lyndesey to Hengist, *ib.* ; grants him the site of Lancaster, 278 ; falls in love with Rowena, *ib.* ; marries her, 279 ; is expelled by the Britons, *ib.* ; accepts the aid of the Saxons against Vortimer, *ib.* ; is again crowned king, *ib.* ; taken prisoner by Hengist at Ambri, 280 ; escapes into Cambria, *ib.* ; attempts to build a tower there, 281 ; ill success of, *ib.* ; consults his magicians as to cause of his failure, *ib.* ; advice of, to, *ib.* ; sends legates to find the person indicated by them, *ib.* ; interview of, with Merlin and his mother, 282, 283 ; hears the prophecy of Merlin, 284 ; is burned in the tower by Aurelius 302.

Vortimer, son of Vortigern, II. 277 ; king of Britain, 279 ; fights four battles with the Saxons, *ib.* ; is poisoned by Rowena, *ib.*

W.

Wake, Baldwin, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

———, Nicholas, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

Walbrook. *See* Gallus, Wallo.

Walden, Roger, a layman, the promotion of, to the see of Canterbury, petitioned by Richard II., III. 377 ; consecration of, 378 ; celebrates his entry into Canterbury, *ib.* ; conducts the king to Canterbury with a strong guard of the men of Chester, 380 ; entertains the escort, *ib.* ; reconducts the king to London, *ib.* ; requested by a Northern hermit to advise the king to restore the possessions of the disinherited lords, *ib.* ; begs him to address the king personally, *ib.* ; sends him to the king, *ib.* ; removes his jewels from the palace at Canterbury, 381 ; jewels of, taken at Rochester and placed in the castle, 382 ; obliged by Henry IV.

Walden, Roger—*cont.*
to make restitution to Thomas de Arundel, 385 ; life of, spared at the entreaty of Arundel, *ib.*; taken at London and tried, 387 ; pardoned, *ib.*
Wales, musical instruments of, II. 126 ; metrical account of, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139 ; derivation of name of Kambria, from Kamber, 132 ; called Wallia from Guallare, *ib.*; or from Guallo, 133 ; character and products of, *ib.*; divided into North and South by the Tewy, *ib.* ; North called Venedocia ; South, Demetia, *ib.*; formerly three curiæ in, at Caermarthen, Anglesea, and in Powis, in Penguerne (now Shrewsbury), *ib.*; formerly seven bishops of, 134 ; now four, *ib.*; costume, arms, food, and habits of, *ib.*, 135, 136 ; fish-pond at Breconc, 136 ; rock near Caerleon, *ib.*; island of Barri, near Cardiff, 137 ; demoniacal region at Pembroke, *ib.* ; wonderful tumulus at Trucmaur in West Wales, *ib.*; island of Berdisseia, at Nenyn, in North Wales, *ib.*; mountains in Snowdon, called by the Cymry " Eriri," 138 ; lakes on, *ib.*; moveable island in, *ib.* : locomotive stone in Anglesea in, *ib.*; proof of powers of, by Hugh, earl of Shrewsbury, temp. Henry I., *ib.*; rock in, 139 ; island of hermits in, *ib.*; fountain of S. Winfred at Basingwerk in, *ib.* ; spotted stones in, *ib.*; occupied by the Britons, 381, 382, 384.
———, sees of, II. 180.
Wallace (*Waleys le*), William, invades England, III. 166 ; commands the Scots against the English, 186; is taken, removed to London, and sentenced to be hanged as a thief, beheaded as a spoiler and ravisher, and drawn and quartered as a traitor, *ib.*, 188 ; execution of, *ib.*, 306.
Wallo, drowned in a brook, called from him " Wallebrok," II. 266.
Walter of Oxford, supplies the account of the battles between king Arthur and Mordred, II. 359.
———, bishop of Worcester, III. 94.
Waltham, church of S. Cross at, canons introduced into, by Harold, III. 38; body of Harold buried there, by his mother, *ib.* ; canons of, converted into regulars by Henry II., III. 80, 90.
———, [Nicholas Morys] abbot of, appointed one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues of Richard II., III. 360.
Walwanus, son of Louth, nephew of king Arthur, II. 318, 321 ; sent by him as herald to Lucius, II. 342 ; kills Quintianus, nephew of Lucius, *ib.*; attacked by Marcellus Mutius, 343 ; and Petreius, *ib.*; commands against the Romans, II. 348; rallies the Britons and penetrates to the emperor Lucius, 354 ; single combat between, and Lucius, 356 ; driven back by the Romans, *ib.*; relieved by king Arthur, 357 ; killed at Rutupis, 360.
Wandali, the, Sclavians, II. 62. *See* Sclavia.
Wandragesilus, S., abbot, death of, I. 221 ; III. 280.
Wapentake, or hundred, derivation of, II. 153.
Ware, the town of, flooded, III. 413 ; Minorites there unable to perform service in consequence, *ib.*
Warenne, John de [5th earl of Surrey and earl of Sussex], holds Rochester against Simon de Montfort, III. 124 ; commands, with prince Edward and William de Valence, the first division of the royal army at the battle of Lewes, 127 ; escapes towards Pevensey Castle, 128 ; kills Alan de la Zouche (*Souche*) ; the king's justiciary, 135 ; appointed warden of Scotland, 163.
Warham, III. 23 ; taken by Robert, earl of Gloucester, 65.
Warinus, abbot of Malmesbury, I. 228.
Warwick, Henry [de Newburgh], 1st earl of, assists Henry I. in settling the discords among the nobles, III. 56.
———, [Thomas de Beauchamp], 13th earl of, sent to aid John of Ghent, III.

Warwick, [Thomas de Beauchamp]—*cont.* 336; defeats the French, *ib.*; advises the impeachment of Michael de la Pole, the chancellor, 359; appointed one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues of Richard II., 360; sent for by the king, 364; taken and sent to the Tower of London, 372; appellants against, for lese majesty, 373; is brought before parliament and sentenced to death, 375; confesses his misdeeds, *ib.*; puts himself on the king's grace, *ib.*; is condemned to perpetual imprisonment in the Isle of Man, *ib.*; is recalled by Henry IV., 385. *See* Gloucester, duke of.

————————————, 12th earl of (father of foregoing), said to have died of poison at Calais, III. 336.

Warwickshire, II. 153.

Watevyle, Berengar de, taken prisoner at Northampton, III. 123.

————, Robert, imprisoned, III. 198.

Watling-street, the, runs from south-east to north-west, II. 146; begins at Dover, passes through the middle of Kent, near London, by S. Alban's, Dunstaple, Stratford, Towcester, Lillebourne, by Mons. Gilberti, near Shrewsbury, by Stratton, through the middle of Wales, to Cardigan, and terminates in the Irish Sea, *ib.*

Wells, transference of see of, to Bath, III. 54, 55.

Welsh, the, rise against the Normans, lay waste Chester and the parts of Salop, III. 50; defeated by the English in Herefordshire, 86; rebellion of, under Madoc and Morgan, 158; rebellion of, against Henry IV., III. 388.

Wenta, pit in, II. 142.

Weser (*Visera*) the, a boundary of Westphalia, II. 73.

Wessex, kingdom of, II. 160; boundaries of, *ib.*; Cerdic and Cynoric, first kings of, *ib.*; other kingdoms of Anglia united to, *ib.*; list of kings of, from Cerdic to Egbert, *ib.*, 161; counties contained in, *ib.*; king of, defeated by Offa, III. 2; termination of royal line of, 32.

————, bishops of, II. 174, 175; Birinus, establishes see of, at Dorchester, 174; see of, removed to Winchester under Aegilberht, *ib.*; Wini, bishop of, 175; Leutherius, Hedda, *ib.*; two sees established in, by Theodore, archbishop (of Canterbury), *ib.*; Daniel, bishop of Wilton *ib.*; Aldhelm, bishop of Sherborne, *ib.*; sees of Wells, Crediton, and Cornwall added to, *ib.*; see of Rammesbury added to, *ib.* *See* Elentherius.

Westminster Abbey, foundation of, III. 328; new work commenced in, 116; the first stone of, laid by Henry III., *ib.*; a fire in, 170; desecration of, by the murder of John Hawle during high mass, 342; monks of, cause the denunciation of the violators of their church, *ib.*; abbot of, refuses to appear before Richard II., *ib.*; legend of foundation of, *ib.*, 343, 344, 345; deprived of its temporalities for contempt, at the parliament of Gloucester, 345; discussion on privileges of sanctuary claimed by, *ib.*, 346; a monk of, kills a fellow-monk at the high-altar, 346; petition to Richard II., that the abbot of, be obliged to detain debtors on penalty of paying their debts, if he desire to enjoy the privilege, *ib.*; the privilege declared sacred because lucrative, *ib.*

————————, first statutes of, III. 142.

Westmoreland, [Ralph] Nevile, 8th lord of Raby, created 1st earl of, III. 377; office of earl marshal conferred on, 405; captures archbishop Scrope and the earl of Nottingham by a stratagem, 406, 407; the army of, pursues the army of the archbishop, 407.

Westphalia, a boundary of Thuringia, II. 72; a province of Lower Germany, boundaries of: Saxony, Thuringia, the Rhine and Cologne, the (Northern) Ocean and Frisia, and the Weser, 73; account of, and of people of, 74.

Wheat, cheapness of, in England, III. 148; sold for 12*d.* a quarter, 305; sold for 20*s.* a sum, 306; sold for 40*s.* a sum, 307.

Wherewell, forest of, murder of Ethelwold by king Edgar in, III. 19.

Wherewell, monastery of, III. 23.

Whitby (*Whitebi*), co. York, occupied by black monks of the Order of S. Benedict, I. 222. *See* S. Hilda.

Wickliffe (*Wicclif, Wiccliffe*), John, called the flower of Oxford, III. 345; disputes against the possessions of the church, *ib.*; commends the Order of Minorites, *ib.*; declares that lay founders have the power of alienating ecclesiastical possessions, *ib.*; bull of Gregory XI., commanding incarceration of, sent to Oxford, 347; the imprisonment opposed in congregation by, and his friends, 348; commanded to keep "in Aula Nigra" by the vice-chancellor, *ib.*; submits to the sentence, *ib.*; reply of, to the decision of the chancellor on conclusions of, *ib.*; proves the truth of them before the archbishop of Canterbury and the bishop of London, *ib.*; is begged by them to keep silence, *ib.*; denies transubstantiation at Oxford, 350; doctrine of, preached by his disciples, 351; attacks religious orders at Oxford, 354, 355; disciples of, corrupt the popular faith, and write books in English, against the friars, *ib.*; death of, 367; is buried at Lutterworth, *ib.*; exhumed, and bones of, burned, *ib.*

Wight, Isle of (*Insula Vecta Wyth*), site and length of, II. 144; descent of the French and Spanish on, III. 340.

Wihtraed (*Wythredus*), son of Egbert, king of Kent, frees the kingdom from foreign invasion, II. 369; death of, *ib.*

Wildfire destroys the wheat and hay in Derby, I. 260, 382; III. 294.

Wilfrida, not a nun at the time of the birth of S. Eilditha, III. 18.

William, count, son of Richard III., duke of Normandy, II. 192; son of Aethelred II. and Emma, III. 330.

William, duke of Aquitaine, death of, I., 249; III. 289; Cluniac monastery founded by, *ib.*

———, earl of Anjou (*Angy*), son of Richard Sans Peur, II. 192; son of William Longue-Epée, III. 330.

———, king of Apulia, son of Roger, king of Sicily, I. 384.

——— (the Conqueror), son of Robert the Devil and Helen, II. 192, 193; birth of, III. 34; appointed heir by his father at Fécamp, II. 193; succeeds to the dukedom, I. 259; II. 193; III. 293; rigorous government of Normandy by, III. 34; England promised to, by Edward Confessor, 32; is made heir in the Confessor's will, *ib.*; attempts to deprive Wulstan, bishop of Worcester, *ib.*; sent for, when duke, by the Confessor to receive the kingdom of England, 33; puts off his visit, *ib.*; liberates Harold II., *ib.*; oath of Harold to, II. 196; sends him to England, III. 33; dream of his father touching, 34; some of the English nobles favour claims of, to the crown, II. 197; sends to Harold on his usurpation, *ib.*; determines to invade England, III. 35; prepares a fleet, *ib.*; reasons of, for the invasion, 46; sends to Alexander II., and receives a banner from him, II. 198; III. 35; convokes an assembly of Norman nobles, *ib.*; arrives at S. Valéry-sur-Somme, III. 35; is detained by contrary winds, *ib.* causes the body of S. Valéry to be carried in procession, *ib.*; sails from S. Valéry, II. 198; first embarks himself, III. 35; lands in England, II. 198; at Hastings, III. 36; falls on leaving his ship, *ib.*; interpretation of the omen by, *ib.*; restrains his army from plunder, II. 198; III. 36; rests for a fortnight, *ib.*; sends the standard of Harold to the pope, 37; army of, passes the night before the battle of Hastings in confession, and in the morning receives the Holy Communion, *ib.*; disposition of forces of, *ib.*; addresses

William (the Conquerer)—*cont.*
his army, *ib.* ; puts on his armour inside out, *ib.* ; remark of, upon the blunder, *ib.* ; commands his men to feign a retreat, *ib.* ; defeats Harold, II. 199 ; conquest of England by, I. 264 ; III. 295 ; dismisses the soldier who mutilated the body of Harold, III. 38 ; goes to London and is received by the citizens, *ib.* ; is proclaimed and crowned on Christmas day by Aeldred, archbishop of York, *ib.* ; coronation of, at London, II. 199 ; brings his wife, Matilda, to England, III. 39 ; causes her to be crowned, *ib.* ; legend of the foundation of Battle Abbey by, *ib.*, 40 ; successful legislation of, against thieves, II. 199 ; safety of life and property in reign of, *ib.* ; refuses Normandy to his son Robert, III. 40 ; lays waste the site of the New Forest, 41, 46 ; despoils the abbeys in England, 46 ; his treatment of foreigners and munificence to foreign monasteries, 42 ; orders the Great Survey, 46 ; reduces Scotland and receives the homage of Malcolm [III.], *ib.* ; reduces Wales, *ib.* ; personal appearance and strength of, 42, 43 ; his great love of hunting, II. 199 ; III. 43 ; his habit of holding great banquets on the great feasts, III. 43 ; enmity between, and the king of France, *ib.* ; joke of the king on his obesity, *ib.* ; retort of, *ib.* ; favourite oath of, *ib.* ; invades and lays waste France, *ib.*, 44 ; burns Mantes, and approaching too near the flames, falls ill, 44 ; another account of the cause of his illness, *ib.* ; returns to Rouen, and takes to his bed, *ib.* ; death of, foretold by his physicians, *ib.* ; impatience of, *ib.* ; ultimate resignation of, *ib.* ; divides his kingdom, *ib.* ; orders the liberation of prisoners, &c., *ib.* ; dies, I. 266 ; II. 199 ; III. 44 ; body of, carried up the Seine to Caen, III. 45 ; dispute with Fitz-Arthur touching right of sepulture of, *ib.* ; settled by a payment, *ib.* ; is buried at Caen, II. 199.
——— [?Adeliza], daughter of, promised in marriage to Harold II. ; dies young, III. 42.
William [? Adeliza]—*cont.*
William Rufus, son of William the Conqueror and queen Matilda, III. 40 ; killed in the New Forest, 41, 55 ; succeeds, 41 ; England left to, by his father, 44 ; sails to England before his death, 45, 47 ; divides his treasure at Winchester, 45 ; born in Normandy before the invasion, 46 ; his affection to his father, *ib.* ; left his successor, *ib.* ; anointed king by archbishop Lanfranc, 55 ; gets possession of his father's treasure, 47 ; resists the conspiracy of Odo, bishop of Bayeaux, *ib.* ; his contention with Robert in Normandy, *ib.* ; and with Malcolm, king of Scotland, *ib.* ; his beauty and prodigality, *ib.* ; exhausts his treasure and becomes avaricious, *ib.* ; assisted by Ranulf Flambard, he plunders rich and poor, *ib.*, 48 ; is often conspired against by the nobles, 48 ; condemns Robert de Mowbray to perpetual imprisonment, *ib.* ; blinds and castrates William d'Eu, *ib.* ; condemns William d'Alderia to be hanged, *ib.* ; description of his person, 49 ; remarkable occurrences during reign of, *ib.*, 50, 51 ; vision of Hugo, abbot of Cluny, before death of, 52 ; dream of, before his death, *ib.* ; dream of a monk, touching, *ib.* ; his division, *ib.* ; is shot by Walter Tirel, 53 ; his body carried in a waggon to Winchester and buried there, 54 ; his delay in filling up ecclesiastical vacancies, *ib.* ; builds the New Hall at London (Westminster Hall), 55.
William [I.], king of Scots, invades Northumbria, III. 63 ; is defeated and taken at Alnwick by the men of York, *ib.* ; does homage for his kingdom to Richard I. at Canterbury, 85 ; rebels against Henry II., 88 ; and David, his brother, swear fealty to Henry II. and to prince Henry, his son, after the coronation of the latter, 80 ; swears fealty to king John at Lincoln, on the cross of

William [I.]—*cont.*
Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, 113; betroths his daughter to the count of Boulogne (*Bononia*), without the king's consent, *ib.*; gives his two daughters to the king as hostages, and swears fealty to him, *ib.*
William Longue-Epée, duke of Normandy, son of Rollo, II. 191; III. 330; death of, III. 22.
————————, son of the empress Maud and Geoffrey, earl of Anjou, III. 64.
————, monk, son of Richard II., duke of Normandy, II. 192; son of Richard Sans Peur, III. 330.
————, son of Henry I. and Maud, drowned, III. 58, 297.
————, son of Henry, duke of Saxony, and Matilda, daughter of Henry II., III. 71.
————, son of the empress Maud and the emperor Henry V., III. 59; marries the daughter of Fulk, earl of Anjou, *ib.*; is drowned at Barfleet, *ib.*
————, [Corbois], archbishop of Canterbury, takes the oath of fealty to the empress Maud, III. 60.
Wilyntoun, Henry de, execution of, at Bristol, III. 197.
————————, John de, imprisoned, 198.
Wilton, III. 21.
————, bishop of. *See* Herman.
Wilts, William le Scrope, first earl of, treasurer of England, attempts to bribe the people to join the duke of York against the duke of Lancaster, III. 381; besieged in Bristol Castle by the duke, taken, and beheaded, *ib.*
Wiltshire, II. 152; formerly called Provincia Severiana, and why, *ib.*
Wimborne, III. 7; near Bath, grove near, II. 142.
Winchelsea, church of S. Giles at, destroyed by lightning, III. 421.
Winchester (*Wyntonia*), founded by Rudhudibras and called Caerwent, II. 150; afterwards called Wynchestre by the English, from Wyne, bishop of Wessex, *ib.*; destroyed by Igo, II. 168.
————————, parliament at, III. 368; sums paid in the port of Dover by priests on their way to Rome for benefices, and by foreign merchants by exchange, brought to, *ib.*; statute of, against papal translations, *ib.*; and presentations, *ib.*
————————, abbot of. *See* Losyng, Herbert.
————————, Castle of, seized by John, and recovered by Richard I., III. 83.
————————, see of, contains Hants and Surrey, II. 180.
————————, Aelfeah, bishop of. *See* Aelfeah.
————————, Alwine, bishop of. *See* Alwine.
————————— [Henry de Blois], bishop of, present at the coronation of Stephen, III. 65.
————————, Henry [Beaufort], bishop of, convention between, and Henry, prince of Wales, and others, to petition Henry IV. to resign his crown to prince Henry, III. 420, 421.
————————, John, bishop of. *See* Edington.
————————, Peter [de Rupibus], bishop of, power of pronouncing sentence against king John given to, III. 99; crowns Henry III. at Gloucester, 113.
————————, William, bishop of. *See* Wykeham.
Winchelcumbe, monastery of, founded by Coenulf of Mercia, I. 233 (*see* note); III. 283, 328; tower of, struck by lightning, III. 49.
Wind, a great, I. 290; III. 229, 301.
Windsor Castle, fortified and victualled by the royal party, temp. Henry III., III. 122.
Wyndesor, William de, sent to Ireland by the duke of Clarence, III. 241.
Winfred, S., virgin, fate of descendants of executioner of, II. 139; fountain of, *ib.*; reposes at Shrewsbury, *ib.*

Wine and wax fail, so that mass can hardly be performed, III. 306.
Winter, a mild, in England, III. 202.
Witlesey, William, archbishop of Canterbury, present at a great Council at Westminster, III. 337; declares the pope (Gregory XI.) to be lord of the temporalities of the kingdom, as the vicar of Christ, *ib.*; sneers at the friars, 338; hesitates what reply to make to the claim of Gregory, *ib.*; called "an ass" by the Black Prince, *ib.*; forced by him to give an answer, *ib.*; death of, 339.
Woden, the Saxon name of Mercury, II. 276; Wednesday (*Wodenesdai*), called from, and dedicated to, by the Saxons, 277.
Woodstock, imparkation of, by Henry (I.), I. 269; III. 297.
Wool, mixed with rain, fall of, I. 342.
Worcester, Bosel, bishop of, II. 177.
———, Dunstan, bishop of. *See* Dunstan.
———, Egwine, bishop of. *See* Egwine.
———, John, bishop of. *See* Barnet.
———, Oswald, bishop of. *See* Oswald.
———, Richard, bishop of. *See* Clifford.
———, Walter, bishop of. *See* Walter.
———, Wulstan, bishop of. *See* William the Conqueror, Wulstan.
———, see of, contains Gloucester, Worcester, and half Warwick, 180.
Wulfheri, son of Penda, elected king by the Mercians, III. 2; (*Wlfred*) succeeds Penda by permission of Cadwallo, II. 377; rebels against Oswi, *ib.*; makes peace with him, *ib.*; favours Christianity, 163; deprives [Cynewealh] of Wessex of the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; gives it to Edelwalk of Sussex, *ib.*; confers the see of London on Wyna, *ib.*
Wlgar, sent by Cnut to Denmark with the sons of Eadmund Ironside, III. 28. *See* Edmund, Edward.
Wulstan, bishop of Worcester, fl., III. 32; miracle performed by, at tomb of
Wulstan.—*cont.*
S. Edward the Confessor, *ib.*; death of, *ib.*; translation of, 114.
Wye, the (*Vaga*), II. 143.
Wygornia (*Warwink*), II. 326.
Wykeham, William de, elected bishop of Winchester, III. 242; an account of his consecration promised, *ib.*; one of a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues of Richard II., 360; alive at Waltham, 403.
Wyna, bishop of London. *See* Wulfheri.

X.

Xantippe, wife of Socrates, I. 423.
Xerxes (I.), son of Darius Hystaspes, king of Persia, I. 58, 59; monster born in reign of, I. 17; his bridge of boats over the Bosphorus, II. 3.
——— (II.), king of the Persians, I. 59.

Y.

York, archbishop of, created by SS. Fuganus and Damianus, II. 172; all Northumbria and part of Albania subject to, *ib.*; see of, stationary, *ib.*, 173; Albania removed from subjection to, 173; bishops of Durham and Carlisle subject to, *ib.*, 326.
———, Aeldred, archbishop of. *See* William the Conqueror.
——— [Alexander Nevile], archbishop of, appointed on a commission to receive and dispose of the crown revenues of Richard II., III. 360; a witness to the replies of the justices at Nottingham Castle, 363; escape of, 365; condemned to perpetual exile by parliament, 366.
——— [Henry Bowet], archbishop of, receives letters from Gregory XII., III. 413.

York, Paulinus first bishop of, II. 178 ; takes the pall with him into Kent, *ib.* ; Egbert, bishop of, recovers it, *ib.* ; Wilfred, bishop of, *ib.* ; expelled, 177, *ib.* ; restored to Hexham, 177 ; Bosa, bishop of, 178.

———, Richard, archbishop of. *See* Scrope.

———, Roger, archbishop of, crowns prince Henry, son of Henry II., and is excommunicated, III. 72, 74.

———, Sampson, archbishop of. *See* Sampson.

———, Thadiocus, archbishop of, retires into Wales, II. 366.

———, Theliaus, archbishop of. *See* Theliaus.

———, Thurstan, archbishop of, sends troops against the Scots at Northallerton (*Alunton*), III. 67.

———, Wilfrid, S., archbishop of, death and sepulture of, I. 227.

———, William de la Zouche, archbishop of, fights the battle of Neville's Cross, III. 212.

———, William, S., archbishop of, translation of, III. 146.

——— (*Eboracum*), city of, II. 9; founded by Ebrancus, II. 150 ; burned by William the Conqueror, *ib.* ; besieged by the Danes, III. 4 ; half of a bell-tower near, saved from combustion by the intercession of S. Richard, archbishop of York, 421.

———, 1st duke of. *See* Edmund.

——— [Edward], son of Edmund de Langley, 1st duke of, 2nd duke of, receives letters from Gregory XII., III. 413 ; is sent with Thomas, duke of Clarence, to recover Aquitain, 419 ; accused of the abduction of the heirs of the earl of March, 402 ; is confined in Pevensey Castle, *ib.* *See* Thomas, duke of Clarence ; Edward, son of Edmund of Langley.

———, monastery of S. Mary of, abbot of, proceeds to the Council [of Pisa], III. 414.

York, William de, killed at Evesham, III. 132.

———, province of, sees in : Durham and Carlisle, II. 181 ; primate of, primate "of England," *ib.*; relation between, and primate of Canterbury, *ib.*

———, sheriff of [Thomas Rokeby], defeats the earl of Northumberland and lord Bardolf near Tadcastre, III. 411.

Yorkshire (*Eborakeschire, Provincia Eborake*), II. 152 ; once contained all Northumbria, from the bend of the Humber to the Tweed, *ib.* ; now reaches from the bend of the Humber to the Tyne only, *ib.* *See* Preface, vol. II.

Yssa, or Eve, etymology of, I. 19.

Yvor (*Yuor*), son of Cadwallader, government of the Britons committed to, by him, II. 383 ; harasses the Angli (Britons), 384 ; leaves Armorica and lands in Sillia, III. 1; attacks the Saxons, *ib.*; killed, *ib.*

Z.

Zachariah, son of Jeroboam, king of Israel, I. 50 ; slain by Shullum, son of Jabez, *ib.*

Zacharias, son of Joiada, stoned by Jehoash, I. 49.

Zachary, pope, I. 233, 234 ; III. 283 ; ordains Carloman, brother of Pepin, I. 234; receives Ratchis, king of the Lombards, into the monastic life, *ib.*

Zaxarses (*Saracus*), king of Assyria, I. 54.

Zedekiah, made king of Judah and Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar, pays tribute, I. 54.

Zeeland (*Selandia*), boundaries of, II. 108 ; description of, *ib.*

Zeno, emperor of the East, I. 349.

———, the philosopher, flourishes, I. 59.

Zenocrates, remarkable continence of, I. 61.

Zephirinus, S., pope, I. 178, 179 ; III. 258.

Zerubbabel, son of Salathiel, obtains permission to rebuild the Temple, from Darius Hystaspes, I. 58; executes the decree by means of Zachariah and Haggai, *ib.*

Zeugitana (*Zeugia* or *Zeugis*), situation of, II. 42, 57; description of, 43.

Zimri, king of Israel, I. 47.

Zoroastes. *See* Belus.

Zouche, Alan de la, 4th baron, killed at Westminster Hall by John de Warenne, earl of Surrey and Sussex, III. 135, 136.

———, created a baron at Cressy, III. 211

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners, or under the Direction of the Right Honourable the Master of the Rolls, which may be purchased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London; Messrs. J. H. and J. Parker, Oxford and London; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh; and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

Rotulorum Originalium in Curia Scaccarii Abbreviatio. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* Henry Playford, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price*, 25*s.* boards, or 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

Calendarium Inquisitionum post Mortem sive Escaetarum. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* John Caley and John Bayley, Esqrs. Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828) boards: vols. 2 and 3, *price* 21*s.* each; vol. 4, *price* 24*s.*

Librorum Manuscriptorum Bibliothecæ Harleianæ Catalogus. Vol. 4. *Edited by* The Rev. T. H. Horne, (1812), folio, boards. *Price* 18*s.*

Abbreviatio Placitorum, Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* The Right Hon. George Rose and W. Illingworth, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

Libri Censualis vocati Domesday-Book, Indices. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. Small folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21*s.*

Libri Censualis vocati Domesday-Book, Additamenta ex Codic. Antiquiss. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. Small folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21*s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM, large folio. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts) 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices (1819—1828). *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each, except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. H. HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42*s.*

"FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ," &c.; or, Rymer's Fœdera, A.D. 1066—1391. New Edition, Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21*s.* each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s.* 6*d.*; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s.* each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834). Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81*s.*, cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

Proceedings and Ordinances of the Privy Council of England, 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir N. Harris Nicolas. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth, 98*s.*; or separately, *price* 14*s.* each.

Rotuli Litterarum Patentium in Turri Londinensi asservati, a.d. 1201—1216. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s.*

Rotuli Curiæ Regis. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s.*

Rotuli Normanniæ in Turri Londinensi asservati, a.d. 1200—1205; also, from 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s.* 6*d.*

Rotuli de Oblatis et Finibus in Turri Londinensi asservati, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

Excerpta e Rotulis Finium in Turri Londinensi asservatis. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* Charles Roberts, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

Fines sive Pedes Finium sive Finales Concordiæ in Curia Domini Regis. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Kalendars and Inventories of the Treasury of His Majesty's Exchequer; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

Documents and Records illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth, *Price* 18*s.*

Rotuli Chartarum in Turri Londinensi asservati, a.d. 1199—1216. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Registrum vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price* 8*s.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.*

—— 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.*

—— 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Monumenta Historica Britannica, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late Henry Petrie, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. John Sharpe, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42*s*.

Registrum Magni Sigilli Regum Scotorum in Archivis Publicis asservatum. A.D. 1306—1424. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s*.

The Acts of the Parliaments of Scotland. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson and Cosmo Innes, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s*. Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 ; *price* 10*s*. 6*d*. each.

The Acts of the Lords Auditors of Causes and Complaints. A.D. 1466—1494. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s*. 6*d*.

The Acts of the Lords of Council in Civil Causes. A.D. 1478—1495. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s*. 6*d*.

Issue Roll of Thomas de Brantingham, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s*.

—— Royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s*.

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above, James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s*.

—— Royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s*.

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above ; Henry III.—Henry VI. ; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s*.

—— Royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s*.

Notes of Materials for the History of Public Departments. By F. S. Thomas, Esq. Demy folio (1846). *Price* 10*s*.

Handbook to the Public Records. By F. S. Thomas, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853.) *Price* 12*s*.

State Papers during the Reign of Henry the Eighth. 11 vols. 4to., cloth, (1830—1852), with Indices of Persons and Places. *Price* 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.* ; or separately, *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

Historical Notes relative to the History of England ; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. By F. S. Thomas, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856.) *Price* 40*s.*

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[Imperial 8vo. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume.]

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reigns of Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1547–1580, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Robert Lemon, Esq., F.S.A. 1856.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of James I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610.
Vol. II.—1611–1618.
Vol. III.—1619–1623.
Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* John Bruce, Esq., V.P.S.A. 1858–1862.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.
Vol. II.—1627–1628.
Vol. III.—1628–1629.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
Vol. V.—1631–1633.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1860–1863.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.
Vol. II.—1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Scotland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Markham John Thorpe, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* H. C. Hamilton, Esq. 1860.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.

Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. Noël Sainsbury, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Edward VI. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savants de France. 1861.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Mary. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savants de France. 1861.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.

Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. Bergenroth.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.

In the Press.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* H. C. Hamilton, Esq. Vol. II.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. II.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. Vol. V.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Robert Lemon, Esq., F.S.A.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* John Bruce, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. VI.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham.

In Progress.

Calendar of State Papers relating to England, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* Rawdon Brown, Esq.

Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. Bergenroth. Vol. II. Henry VIII.

Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. Noël Sainsbury, Esq. Vol. III. East Indies, China, and Japan.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.
2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.
3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* H. R. Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.
4. Monumenta Franciscana; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.
5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.
6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.
7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.
8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* C. Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis), Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, Esq., B.A.

10. Memorials of King Henry the Seventh : Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi ; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq.

11. Memorials of Henry the Fifth. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. Cole, Esq.

12. Munimenta Gildhallæ Londoniensis ; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* H. T. Riley, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

13. Chronica Johannis de Oxenedes. *Edited by* Sir H. Ellis, K.H.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* T. Wright, Esq., M.A.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c., of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana (A.D. 449—1298). *Edited by* H. R. Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.

17. Brut y Tywysogion ; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Williams ab Ithel.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* C. Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Williams ab Ithel.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

22. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.

23. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited by* B. Thorpe, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden.

24. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vol. I. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq.

25. Letters of Bishop Grosseteste, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* H. R. Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. *By* T. Duffus Hardy, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216–1235. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.

28. The Saint Albans' Chronicles:—The English History of Thomas Walsingham, Monk of Saint Albans. Vol. I., 1272–1381. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I.—447–871. *Edited by* J. E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

In the Press.

Le Livere de Reis de Brittanie. *Edited by* J. Glover, M.A., Chaplain of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. *Edited by* W. Hardy, Esq.

The Wars of the Danes in Ireland: written in the Irish language. *Edited by* the Rev. J. H. Todd, D.D., Librarian of the University of Dublin.

A Collection of Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* George W. Dasent, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.

A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. Vol. II. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.

Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. II. *Edited by* the Rev. J. Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham.

Polychronicon Ranulphi Higdeni, with Trevisa's Translation. *Edited by* C. Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vol. II. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq.

Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Secretary to Henry VI., with other Letters and Documents. *Edited by* the Rev. George Williams, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vol. III. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. II. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.

Original Documents illustrative of Academical and Clerical Life and Studies at Oxford between the Reigns of Henry III. and Henry VII. *Edited by* the Rev. H. Anstey, M.A.

The History and Cartulary of St. Peter's Monastery at Gloucester. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.

Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

The Saint Albans' Chronicles :—The English History of Thomas Walsingham, Monk of Saint Albans. Vol. II. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

Roll of the Privy Council of Ireland, 16 Richard II. *Edited by* the Rev. James Graves.

Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First, Vol. I. Ricardi Regis Iter Hierosolymitanum. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.

Annals of Tewkesbury, Dunstaple, Waverley, Margan, and Burton. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge.

Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. II. 872–1066. *Edited by* J. E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

In Progress.

Historia Minor Matthæi Paris. *Edited by* Sir F. Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. II. *By* T. Duffus Hardy, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

March 1863.